

**AN EXEGETICAL EXPOSITION ON SPIRITUAL  
AND DEMONIC WARFARE PERTAINING TO  
INSANITY AND PSYCHOSIS**

by

**ALETTA C. M. FOUCHÉ**

*Bachelor of Ministry (Cum Laude)*

*Master of Sociology*

*Philosophiae Doctor in Divinity (Cum Laude)*

Submitted in accordance with the requirements for the degree of

**PHILOSOPHIAE DOCTOR**

Of

**THEOLOGY**

in

**CHRISTIAN COUNSELING**

at

**ST. CLEMENTS PRIVATE SWISS UNIVERSITY**

PROMOTER

**Prof Dr CONNIE MJ BRAND DLitt PhD MTh**

# *Overview of Contents*

DEDICATION .....	III
ACKNOWLEDGEMENTS .....	IV
DECLARATION OF AUTHENTICATION.....	V
SUMMARY .....	VI
SHORTENED TABLE OF CONTENTS .....	IX
EXTENDED TABLE OF CONTENTS .....	X

## *Dedication*

I am dedicating this first and foremost to my Friend and Saviour Jesus Christ, who has enabled and equipped me to do this doctorate in preparation for the days to follow in His army. All the glory and the honour to Him for this end product and for everything I have achieved in my life. Everything written in this doctorate was done in an act of worship to Him, under the guidance of the Holy Spirit.

Secondly, I am dedicating this to my husband, Morné Fouché, without whom I would have not been able to complete this doctorate. His patience, support, prayers and encouragement (and help with the kids) pushed me through the times I was down and times when things became overwhelming.

-----ooo000ooo-----

# *Acknowledgements*

I would like to acknowledge and whole-heartedly thank the following people who contributed to this thesis:

1. Professor Dr Connie Brand, my promoter and teacher: an inspiration of brilliance and perfection;
2. my father-in-law, Steve Fouché, who helped me patiently with my spelling and grammar;
3. my mom, Corrie de Lange (my biggest fan), and mother-in-law, Téa Fouché, for prayers, support, love and encouragement; and
4. my sisters, Thea Myburgh and Kirsten LaKock, for all the assistance in typing.

-----o0o-----

## *Declaration of Authentication*

I, the undersigned, \_\_\_\_\_,

declare that this dissertation is my original work, compiled and utilised especially to fulfil the purposes and objectives of this study and has not been previously submitted to any other university for a higher degree. I certify that all information contained herein, and all application materials submitted by me, are true, correct and accurate to the best of my knowledge and belief.

\_\_\_\_\_

Signature

\_\_\_\_\_

Date

-----o0o-----

# *An Exegetical Exposition on Spiritual and Demonic Warfare Pertaining to Insanity and Psychosis*

by

ALETTA C. M. FOUCHÉ

PROMOTER: Prof Dr Connie MJ Brand (DLitt PhD MTh)  
DEGREE: Philosophiae Doctor of Theology in Christian Counseling  
INSTITUTION: St Clements Private Swiss University

## *Summary*

God is leading us toward the climax of human history and the return of Jesus Christ, while Satan, our enemy, is trying to prevent God's purposes from being fulfilled. Spiritual warfare is an essential aspect of our Christian walk, yet many believers are uncertain about how they can and should participate in spiritual battles. Today, more than ever, they need to know their enemy, his tactics and his strategies for the days to come or else they will be deceived and destroyed through their ignorance. Numerous people, saved or unsaved, are separated from God because of sin. If this sin is not identified, confessed and repented, we cannot live the life of abundance and liberty God intended for us to live; most will not be able to stand through the encroaching battles.

What is the mind? This question has baffled philosophers and scientists alike for thousands of years. Are our thoughts and perceptions merely the product of neurochemical changes and electrical discharges in our brain? Or is our mind something more, something immaterial, more than the sum of our parts? I believe the truth is somewhere in the middle. The functioning of our brain is integral to the existence of our mind, but that alone is not sufficient to explain it. Likewise, to imagine our mind as completely separate and unrelated to the physical does not seem correct either. Body and soul (mind) are intimately connected, each clearly affecting the other. We retrieve a past memory of a fearful event in our brain, and our physiology reacts. Our sensory receptors are activated by familiar stimuli in the environment, and past thoughts and feelings rush to consciousness.

Mental instability affects the lives and well-being of millions of people throughout the world. The exact number of persons who suffer from some form of mental illness is not known. The extent of mental instabilities and the high social and economic costs associated with it are considerable. But what is truly the most damaging aspect of mental illness is its shattering effect on its victims and their families. Suicide, divorce, alcoholism, drug abuse, unemployment, child abuse, damaged social relationships, and wasted lives, not to mention the incalculable pain and mental anguish suffered by those involved, are among the consequences of mental illness.

A substantial body of evidence has accumulated over the past several decades supporting the conclusion that the social environment has important consequences for mental health. Unlike psychiatrists and clinical psychologists who usually focus on individual cases of mental disorder, sociologists approach the subject of mental abnormality from the standpoint of its collective nature; that is, they typically analyse mental disorder in terms of group and larger societal processes and conditions that affect people and their mental state.

Ideas about the causes of insanity and psychosis have changed from those of evil spirits in pre-literate times to contemporary views based largely upon medical perspectives. In the twentieth century, there were three revolutions that initiated highly influential patterns of treatment for the mentally ill: (1) psychoanalysis and the theories of Sigmund Freud; (2) the widespread use of psychoactive drugs to treat mental patients; and (3) the establishment of

community mental health centres. To date, the twenty-first century has yet to make its contribution to the successful and complete treatment of mental disorders including insanity and psychosis; it merely treats the causes, never the root, merely attempting to make it more bearable to live with.

The time has come to expose the real enemy behind all mental illness, especially insanity and psychosis. The bottom line is that the child of God has an enemy who has been busy for the past six thousand years planning the destruction of the believer through domination, manipulation and control. He has always been the one behind insanity and psychosis, the author behind every cause of mental illness, a master in disguise and deception, a blame-shifter and liar par excellence.

On the one side, the enemy is busy bringing into place a system, called the One World Order by some, with a global plan for dependency and control of mankind in all aspects of life. On the other side, there is the issue of sin. Sin is never stagnant. It is always accumulating and intensifying, continuously escalating to greater levels of evil and perverseness. Both these sides are actively involved in creating the platform for insanity and psychosis, to the extent that insanity and psychosis become merely time bombs for numerous people, waiting to go off.

-----o0o-----



# *Shortened Table of Contents*

PROLEGOMENA.....	1
CHAPTER 1: THE ANATOMISATION OF THE HUMAN BRAIN.....	15
CHAPTER 2: THE DELINEATION OF INSANITY AND PSYCHOSIS.....	87
CHAPTER 3: DISSEVERING THE MIND.....	193
CHAPTER 4: SATAN’S STRATEGY OF MANIPULATION, DOMINATION AND CONTROL.....	293
CHAPTER 5: SATAN’S STRATEGY OF DESTRUCTION THROUGH SIN.....	545
CHAPTER 6: THE ANSWER TO INSANITY, PSYCHOSIS AND DEMON POSSESSION...	717
CONCLUSION.....	877
ANNEXTURE.....	887
BIBLIOGRAPHY.....	909
TERMINOLOGY AND ABBREVIATIONS.....	937

-----o0o-----

# *Extended Table of Contents*

<i>Prolegomena</i> .....	1
INTRODUCTION AND BACKGROUND .....	1
FORMULATION OF PROBLEM STATEMENT.....	3
PURPOSE AND SIGNIFICANCE (AIMS OF THE RESEARCH) .....	5
OBJECTIVES AND RESEARCH QUESTIONS .....	6
THESIS, HYPOTHESES AND RESEARCH STATEMENT .....	7
DEMARCATON INCLUDING SCOPE AND LIMITATION .....	9
LITERATURE REVIEW.....	10
RESEARCH METHODOLOGY .....	10
REFERENCING .....	14
 <i>1. The Anatomization of the Human Brain</i> .....	 15
1.1. INTRODUCTION .....	15
1.1 THE BRAIN .....	17
1.1.1 Neurons .....	18
1.1.2 Neurotransmitters .....	18
1.1.3 Brain Structures .....	21
1.1.4 Brain Theories .....	24
1.1.4.1 Schizophrenia .....	25
1.1.4.2 Depression .....	26
1.1.4.3 Obsessive Compulsive Disorder .....	26
1.2 THE ENDOCRINE SYSTEM .....	26
1.2.1 Hormones .....	27
1.2.2 Hormone Imbalances.....	27
1.2.3 A Summary of the Endocrine glands .....	29
1.3 EPIGENETICS .....	30
1.3.1 Mental Illness and Genetics.....	31
1.4 THE BRAIN AND THE MIND .....	31
1.5 THE BRAIN AND THOUGHTS.....	32
1.5.1 Memory.....	34
1.5.2 Areas in the Brain Connected to Thoughts.....	35
1.5.3 Brain Lateralization .....	37
1.5.4 Unaccustomed Memories .....	40

1.5.4.1	Body Memory .....	40
1.5.4.2	Cell Memory .....	42
1.6	THE BRAIN AND SUBSTANCE ABUSE .....	44
1.6.1.1	Hallucinogens .....	44
1.6.1.2	Amphetamines .....	45
1.6.1.3	Cocaine .....	46
1.7	BRAIN IMAGING TECHNIQUES .....	47
1.7.1	Functional Magnetic Resonance Imaging .....	48
1.7.2	Computed Tomography Scanning .....	48
1.7.3	Positron Emission Tomography .....	48
1.7.4	Electroencephalography .....	48
1.7.5	Magnetoencephalography .....	49
1.7.6	Near Infrared Spectroscopy .....	49
1.7.7	High-resolution Imaging Technology .....	49
1.8	THE CHEMICAL DESIGN OF THE BRAIN .....	51
1.8.1	Chemical Addictions .....	51
1.8.2	The Chemical Adam .....	55
1.8.3	Chemical Imbalances .....	61
1.9	THE INJURED BRAIN .....	64
1.9.1	Neurodegenerative Disorders .....	64
1.9.2	Traumatic Brain Injury .....	66
1.9.3	Head Injury .....	68
1.9.4	Prenatal Injury .....	69
1.9.5	Infections .....	70
1.9.6	Anti-NMDA Receptor Encephalitis .....	73
1.9.7	General Paresis .....	73
1.9.8	Primary Brain Tumours .....	74
1.9.9	Cerebral Achromatopsia .....	74
1.10	NUTRITION .....	75
1.11	THE BRAIN AND THE BIBLE .....	78
1.12	CONCLUSION .....	83
2.	<i>The Delineation of Insanity and Psychosis</i> .....	87
2.1.	INTRODUCTION .....	87
2.2.	THE PHILOSOPHY OF MENTAL ILLNESS .....	89
2.3.	AN OVERVIEW ON MENTAL DISORDERS .....	90
2.3.1	Mood Disorders .....	91

2.3.1.1	Symptoms of Mood Disorders .....	91
2.3.2	Personality Disorders.....	92
2.3.2.1	Symptoms of Personality Disorders .....	92
2.3.3	Anxiety Disorders.....	93
2.3.3.1	Symptoms of Anxiety Disorders .....	93
2.3.4	Eating Disorders .....	94
2.3.4.1	Symptoms of Eating Disorders.....	94
2.3.5	Sleep Disorders .....	95
2.3.5.1	Symptoms of Sleep Disorders.....	95
2.3.6	Sexual and Gender Identity Disorders.....	95
2.3.6.1	Symptoms of Sexual and Gender Identity Disorders .....	96
2.3.7	Conduct Disorder.....	97
2.3.7.1	Symptoms of Conduct Disorder .....	97
2.3.8	Somatoform Disorders.....	98
2.3.8.1	Symptoms of Somatoform Disorders .....	98
2.3.9	Factitious Disorders .....	99
2.3.9.1	Symptoms of Factitious Disorders .....	99
2.3.10	Developmental Disorders .....	100
2.3.10.1	Symptoms of Developmental Disorders.....	100
2.3.11	Dissociative Disorder .....	100
2.3.11.1	Symptoms of Dissociative Disorders.....	101
2.3.12	Impulse Control Disorder .....	101
2.3.13	Cognitive Disorders .....	102
2.3.13.1	Symptoms of Cognitive Disorders .....	103
2.3.14	Adjustment Disorder .....	103
2.3.14.1	Symptoms of Adjustment Disorder.....	104
2.3.15	Substance Abuse Disorder .....	105
2.3.15.1	Symptoms of Substance Use Disorders .....	106
2.3.16	Organic Mental Syndromes and Disorders.....	106
2.3.16.1	Symptoms of Organic Mental Syndromes and Disorders .....	107
2.3.17	Schizophrenia .....	107
2.3.17.1	Symptoms of Schizophrenia .....	108
2.3.18	Mental Disorders due to a General Medical Condition .....	109
2.3.18.1	Other Conditions that may be a Focus of Clinical Attention .....	109
2.4.	CLASS, RACE, FAMILY and MENTAL HEALTH .....	109
2.5.	SOME SECULAR TREATMENTS OF MENTAL ILLNESS .....	111
2.5.1	Medication .....	111

2.5.1.1	Antidepressants .....	111
2.5.1.2	Anxiolytics .....	112
2.5.1.3	Antipsychotics .....	112
2.5.1.4	Mood Stabilisers.....	113
2.5.2	Psychotherapy .....	113
2.5.3	Electroconvulsive Therapy.....	114
2.5.4	Psychosurgery .....	114
2.5.5	Deep Brain Stimulation .....	115
2.5.6	Hypnosis .....	115
2.6.	SOME EFFECTS OF MENTAL DISORDERS.....	115
2.6.1	Cognitive Dysfunction .....	115
2.6.2	The Irregular Nature of Mental Illness .....	117
2.6.3	Co-morbidity .....	117
2.6.4	Side Effects of Medications .....	117
2.6.5	Addiction .....	118
2.6.6	Tardive dyskinesia .....	120
2.6.7	Death .....	121
2.6.8	Self-Harm.....	123
2.6.9	Family Life .....	123
2.6.10	Reactive Attachment Disorder .....	125
2.6.11	Society .....	126
2.7.	SOME STATISTICS ON MENTAL DISORDERS .....	127
2.7.1	Canada .....	127
2.7.2	UK.....	128
2.7.3	Australia.....	128
2.7.4	America.....	129
2.7.5	South Africa .....	130
2.8.	INSANITY .....	131
2.8.1	Definition .....	131
2.8.2	Forms and Varieties of Insanity .....	133
2.8.3	The Classification of Insanity .....	137
2.8.4	Insanity Associated Diseases .....	138
2.8.4.1	Epilepsy.....	138
2.8.4.2	Hystero-epilepsy .....	138
2.9.	AN OVERVIEW ON PSYCHOTIC DISORDERS.....	139
2.9.1	Introduction .....	139
2.9.2	Psychotic Depression .....	140

2.9.3	Schizophrenia .....	141
2.9.4	Schizophreniform Disorder .....	141
2.9.5	Schizoaffective Disorder .....	142
2.9.6	Schizotypal Personality Disorder .....	143
2.9.7	Delusional Disorder .....	144
2.9.8	Depressive Disorder .....	145
2.9.9	Bipolar Disorder .....	146
2.9.10	Post-Traumatic Stress Disorder (PTSD).....	147
2.9.11	Complex Post-Traumatic Stress Disorder (PTSD) .....	148
2.9.12	Intensive Care Unit Psychosis .....	148
2.9.13	Brief Psychotic Disorder .....	149
2.9.14	Torture Syndrome .....	149
2.9.15	Psychotic Disorder Due to a General Medical Condition .....	151
2.10.	PSYCHOSIS .....	152
2.10.1	Introduction .....	152
2.10.2	Brief Reactive Psychosis .....	154
2.10.3	Korsakoff Psychosis .....	154
2.10.4	Postpartum Psychosis .....	155
2.10.5	Secondary Psychosis .....	156
2.10.6	Menstrual Psychosis.....	158
2.10.7	Myxedematous Psychosis .....	158
2.10.8	Stimulant Psychosis.....	159
2.10.9	Shared Psychotic Disorder .....	159
2.10.10	Cycloid Psychosis.....	160
2.10.11	Substance-induced Psychosis.....	160
2.10.12	Psychosis in the Elderly .....	161
2.11.	THE CAUSES OF PSYCHOSIS IN GENERAL .....	163
2.11.1	Psychological Causes of Psychosis .....	164
2.11.2	The role of Substances in Psychosis.....	164
2.11.3	Environmental Causes of Psychosis .....	165
2.11.4	Genetics and Psychosis .....	165
2.11.5	Brain Changes and Psychosis.....	166
2.11.6	Signs and Symptoms of Psychosis.....	166
2.11.7	Changes for People to Develop Psychosis.....	168
2.12.	THE TREATMENT OF PSYCHOSIS IN GENERAL .....	168
2.13.	DISQUALIFYING CONDITIONS FOR PSYCHOSIS .....	170
2.13.1	Manic and Mixed Episode.....	171

2.13.2	Spiritual Crisis .....	172
2.13.3	Ganser Syndrome.....	172
2.13.4	Energy Therapies .....	173
2.13.5	Pervasive Developmental Disorders.....	174
2.14.	FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS .....	175
2.14.1	If I develop psychotic symptoms, do I have a mental illness? .....	175
2.14.2	What are the more common mental illnesses?.....	175
2.15.	THE BIBLE AND MADNESS .....	176
2.15.1	Introduction .....	176
2.15.2	Old Testament .....	176
1.12.1	New Testament.....	182
2.15.3	Summary .....	185
2.16.	SYMBOLISM ASSOCIATED WITH INSANITY.....	187
2.16.1	Star of Insanity .....	187
2.16.2	Full Moon .....	187
2.16.3	Inverted Funnel .....	188
2.16.4	Stone of Madness .....	189
2.16.5	Chinese Symbols of Insanity .....	190
2.16.6	Japanese Symbols of Insanity .....	190
2.17.	CONCLUSION .....	191
3.	<i>Discovering the Mind</i> .....	193
3.1.	INTRODUCTION .....	193
3.2.	MAN'S IMAGE AND LIKENESS.....	194
3.3.	MENTAL MODELS .....	196
3.4.	THE SOUL.....	198
3.4.1	The Will.....	199
3.4.2	The Mind.....	200
3.4.2.1	How the Mind Works .....	202
3.4.2.2	The Conditions of the Mind .....	204
3.4.3	The Conscience.....	211
3.4.3.1	The Defiled Conscience .....	212
3.4.3.2	The Seared Conscience.....	212
3.4.3.3	The Bad Conscience .....	213
3.4.3.4	The Guilty Conscience .....	215
3.4.4	The Spirit and the Mind.....	216
3.4.5	Emotions .....	217

3.4.6	Self-Esteem .....	218
3.5.	THE MIND AND THOUGHTS .....	220
3.5.1	The Origin of Thoughts .....	222
3.6.	THE BATTLE FOR THE MIND .....	224
3.7.	MINDSETS .....	228
3.7.1	Introduction .....	228
3.7.2	The Wilderness Mentality .....	231
3.7.3	The Greek Mind-set .....	234
3.7.4	The Humanistic Mind-set .....	237
3.7.5	The Babylonian Mind-set .....	239
3.7.6	The Spartan Mind-set .....	241
3.7.7	The Sodomite Mind-set .....	246
3.7.8	The Victim Mind-set .....	251
3.8.	THE SPIRIT .....	254
3.8.1	The Mind of the Spirit .....	254
3.8.1.1	Communion .....	254
3.8.1.2	Intuition .....	255
3.8.1.3	Conscience .....	255
3.8.1.4	The Mind of the Spirit .....	256
3.8.1.5	Spiritual Senses .....	257
3.8.1.6	Seat of Power .....	257
3.8.1.7	Inheritance .....	257
3.9.	MENTAL DEATH .....	258
3.10.	THE MAD MIND .....	259
3.11.	THE BATTLE FOR THE MIND .....	263
3.11.1	The Realm of Darkness .....	263
3.11.2	Spiritual Death .....	267
3.11.3	Escapism .....	270
3.11.3.1	A spirit of Escapism .....	272
3.11.4	Death to Self .....	273
3.11.5	Strongholds .....	278
3.11.6	Stronghold of Christ-likeness .....	282
3.12.	THE RENEWAL OF THE MIND .....	283
3.13.	THE MIND OF CHRIST .....	284
3.14.	CONCLUSION .....	290



## 4. *Satan's Strategy of Manipulation, Domination and Control*

293

4.1.	INTRODUCTION .....	293
4.2.	MANIPULATION AND DOMINATION .....	297
4.2.1	Manipulation .....	297
4.2.2	Seven Areas of Vulnerability.....	298
4.2.3	Methods of Manipulation.....	299
4.2.4	Domination.....	302
4.3.	POWERS OF DARKNESS .....	303
4.3.1	Current and Future Powers of Darkness .....	305
4.3.2	Satan and His Seed .....	305
4.3.3	The Third Eye .....	308
4.3.4	Demonization.....	311
4.3.5	Satan's Strategy .....	314
4.3.5.1	Luciferianism .....	315
4.3.5.2	Demon Worship .....	317
4.3.5.3	Demonic Enmeshment.....	319
4.3.5.4	Satanic Imprisonment of the Brain and Mind .....	323
4.3.5.5	The Demonised Brain and Mind.....	323
4.3.5.6	The Cursed Brain and Mind .....	324
4.3.5.7	The Bewitched Brain and Mind .....	324
4.3.5.8	Brain and Mind under Evil Yokes .....	324
4.3.5.9	Brain and Mind Surrounded by a Band of Wickedness.....	324
4.3.5.10	Brain and Mind Under an Evil Covenant .....	325
4.3.5.11	Brain and Mind that Harbour Evil Seeds .....	325
4.3.5.12	Brains Averse to the Scriptures.....	325
4.3.5.13	Satanic Embargo.....	325
4.3.5.14	Satanic Exchange .....	326
4.3.5.15	Secret Organisations/Societies .....	327
4.3.6	Strategic Influence due to Music.....	329
4.3.6.1	A Short History of Music Types .....	329
4.3.6.2	The Power of Music .....	331
4.3.6.3	Cathedrals.....	333
4.3.7	Television and Movies .....	335
4.3.7.1	History of Television and Movies .....	336

4.3.7.2	The Power of Television and Movies .....	336
4.3.8	Fantasy Role-Playing Games (RPG).....	338
4.3.8.1	Dungeons and Dragons .....	340
4.4.	ALTERED STATES OF CONSCIOUSNESS .....	340
4.4.1.1	Introduction .....	340
4.4.2	Dangers of Altered States of Consciousness .....	341
4.4.3	Examples of What Can Cause Altered States of Consciousness.....	345
4.4.3.1	Spiritism .....	345
4.4.3.2	Hypnotism .....	347
4.4.3.3	Gnostic State.....	350
4.4.3.4	The Alien Agenda.....	351
4.4.3.5	Crop Circles .....	354
4.4.3.6	Mind-Altering Drugs .....	356
4.4.3.7	New Age: Some Interpretations of the Movement .....	359
4.4.3.8	Altered Mind States in the Church Today .....	362
4.4.3.9	Religious Ecstasy.....	364
4.5.	CURSES.....	365
4.5.1	Curses in General.....	365
4.5.2	Curses over Cities .....	368
4.5.3	Curses on Time .....	369
4.5.4	Curses on Things.....	370
4.6.	TRAUMA AND THE DEVASTATING EFFECTS THEREOF.....	370
4.6.1	Types of Trauma.....	372
4.6.2	Problems with Parent and Child Association .....	373
4.6.3	Developmental Trauma Disorder .....	374
4.6.4	Effects of Trauma .....	377
4.6.5	Abuse.....	378
4.6.5.1	The Effects of Abuse.....	380
4.6.6	Sexual Abuse.....	382
4.6.6.1	The Effect of Sexual Abuse.....	383
4.6.7	Ritual Abuse .....	384
4.6.7.1	Neshamah.....	385
4.6.7.2	Satanic Ritual Abuse (SRA).....	386
4.6.7.3	Dissociative Identity Disorder (DID) .....	391
4.6.8	Trauma Bonds to Time .....	395
4.7.	SORCERY.....	396
4.7.1	Witchcraft.....	396

4.7.1.1	The Religion of Witchcraft .....	397
4.7.1.2	A Brief History of Madness Associated with Witchcraft.....	398
4.7.1.3	The Weapons of Witchcraft .....	402
4.7.1.4	Witchcraft and Sex .....	405
4.7.1.5	Witchcraft and Music.....	408
4.7.1.6	Witchcraft and Abuse .....	415
4.7.1.7	Witchcraft and the Golden Triangle.....	417
4.7.1.8	Witchcraft and the Third Yoga Chakras .....	419
4.7.1.9	Witchcraft and the Placenta .....	422
4.7.1.10	Marine Witchcraft .....	424
4.7.1.11	Black Magic, Sorcery, Witchcraft .....	425
4.7.2	Magick .....	427
4.7.2.1	Sexual Magick.....	428
4.7.2.2	Vampirism and Lycanthropy.....	430
4.7.2.3	Sexual Magick in the Church Today .....	434
4.7.2.4	Bone Magic .....	435
4.7.3	Shamanism.....	438
4.7.3.1	Shamanic Sorcery.....	438
4.7.3.2	Voodoo Shamanism.....	440
4.7.4	Other Forms of Sorcery and Witchcraft .....	441
4.7.4.1	Voodoo.....	441
4.7.4.2	The Tokolosh .....	445
4.7.4.3	Poltergeist .....	447
4.7.5	Powers of Darkness Associated with Sorcery, Witchcraft and Magick .....	450
4.7.5.1	Lilith.....	450
4.7.5.2	Kali .....	451
4.7.5.3	Babalon .....	452
4.7.5.4	Hecate .....	452
4.7.5.5	Asmodeus .....	453
4.7.5.6	Thoth .....	453
4.7.5.7	Kundalini .....	454
4.7.5.8	Pan.....	457
4.7.5.9	Mami Wata .....	458
4.7.5.10	Anubis .....	459
4.7.6	Testimony on the Workings of Witchcraft .....	459
4.8.	SOCIAL CULTURE STRUCTURES.....	460
4.9.	ENVIRONMENTAL STRESSORS .....	460

4.10.	OCCULT CONTROL.....	461
4.10.1	Zero Point (Maya) .....	462
4.10.2	Magical Will.....	463
4.10.3	Herbs .....	463
4.10.4	Occult Poisoning .....	465
4.10.5	Mind Control .....	467
4.10.5.1	Techniques of Mind Control .....	468
4.10.5.2	Modern Methods of Mind Control .....	469
4.10.5.3	Hypnotic Mind Control.....	472
4.10.5.4	Religious Cults .....	473
4.10.5.5	Silva Mind Control .....	475
4.10.5.6	Trauma-based Mind Control .....	476
4.10.5.7	Monarch Mind Control.....	479
4.10.5.8	Evidence of Mind Control in the Church.....	492
4.11.	PSYCHOTRONIC WEAPONS.....	493
4.11.1	Nanotechnology .....	496
4.11.2	Electromagnetic Control .....	498
4.11.3	Vaccine Implants .....	500
4.11.4	Microchips.....	500
4.11.5	Tesla Technology .....	501
4.11.6	Electromagnetic Disease Transmission.....	503
4.11.7	Thought Control .....	504
4.11.8	Electromagnetic Devices .....	504
4.11.9	Electromagnetic Satellite Technology.....	506
4.11.10	Magnetic Manipulation .....	506
4.11.11	Music .....	506
4.11.12	Artificial Telepathy .....	506
4.12.	PHARMAKEIA .....	508
4.12.1	Illusionist .....	509
4.12.2	Manipulation through Sickness.....	511
4.12.3	Caduceus.....	511
4.13.	DEMONIC ENTITIES ASSOCIATED WITH MANIPULATION, DOMINATION AND CONTROL .....	513
4.13.1	Victim Spirit.....	513
4.13.2	Jezebel .....	515
4.13.3	Death and Hell .....	516
4.13.4	Belial .....	517

4.13.5	Mesmerising Spirit .....	521
4.13.6	Spirit of Anti-Christ.....	522
4.13.7	Spirit of Fear .....	524
4.13.8	Spirit of Mind Control .....	525
4.14.	EVIL DESIGNS .....	526
4.15.	SOUL FRAGMENTATION .....	528
4.15.1	The Fragment of the Soul .....	528
4.15.2	Regions of Captivity.....	532
4.15.2.1	The Place of Darkness.....	532
4.15.2.2	Gates of Darkness .....	534
4.15.2.3	The Abyss, Pits and Deeper Places.....	535
4.15.2.4	Places of Death.....	536
4.15.2.5	God Put People in Prisons Too .....	538
4.16.	CONCLUSION .....	539
5.	<i>Satan's Strategy of Destruction through Sin.....</i>	<i>545</i>
5.1.	INTRODUCTION .....	545
5.2.	SATAN's ARSENAL .....	548
5.2.1	Hopelessness .....	548
5.2.2	Loneliness.....	549
5.2.3	Worthlessness and Insecurity .....	552
5.2.1	Guilt .....	553
5.2.2	Shame .....	557
5.2.3	Denial.....	558
5.2.4	Rejection .....	559
5.2.5	Grief .....	562
5.2.6	Depression.....	566
5.2.7	Lies .....	570
5.2.8	Lovelessness .....	573
5.3.	SIN: OVERT AND COVERT EXISTENCE .....	574
5.3.1	Origin of Sin .....	574
5.3.2	Definition of Sin.....	575
5.3.3	An Act of Sin .....	577
5.3.4	The Sin Nature or Inbred Sin .....	578
5.3.5	The Effects of Sin after Regeneration.....	579
5.3.6	The Consequences of Sin .....	582
5.3.7	Sin and Responsibility .....	585

5.4.	POSSIBLE SIN ASSOCIATED WITH MENTAL ILLNESS .....	586
5.4.1	Idolatry .....	586
5.4.1.1	Self-Idolatry .....	587
5.4.1.2	Moon Worship .....	588
5.4.1.3	Baal Worship .....	588
5.4.2	Witchcraft and Sorcery .....	588
5.4.3	Rebellion .....	589
5.4.4	Obedience/Disobedience .....	590
5.4.5	Anger .....	592
5.4.6	Jealousy .....	597
5.4.7	Hatred .....	598
5.4.8	Pride .....	601
5.4.9	Violent Offenders .....	604
5.4.10	Sexual Immoralities .....	606
5.4.10.1	Sexual Addiction is a Chemical Addiction .....	611
5.4.10.2	Harlotry and Fornication .....	611
5.4.10.3	Prostitution .....	613
5.4.10.4	Pornography .....	615
5.4.10.5	Sodomy .....	617
5.4.10.6	Incest .....	619
5.4.10.7	Bastard and Incest Curses .....	620
5.4.10.8	Bestiality .....	623
5.4.10.9	Rape .....	623
5.4.10.10	Sexual Fantasy .....	624
5.4.10.11	Paedophiles and Child Molestation .....	624
5.4.10.12	Consequences of Sexual Perversity .....	625
5.4.11	Demonic Entities associated with Sexual Immorality .....	628
5.4.11.1	Asmodeus .....	628
5.4.11.2	Hermes .....	629
5.4.11.3	Set/Sirius .....	630
5.4.11.4	Baphomet .....	630
5.4.11.5	Satan .....	630
5.4.11.6	Ammon and Moab .....	631
5.4.11.7	Marine Spirits .....	631
5.4.11.8	Kaeseme .....	632
5.4.12	Fear .....	632
5.4.12.1	The Fear of Man Leads to Witchcraft .....	634

5.4.12.2	Anxiety .....	635
5.4.12.3	Stress .....	639
5.4.12.4	Worry.....	641
5.4.13	Unforgiveness .....	642
5.4.13.1	Bitterness .....	643
5.4.14	Occult Involvement .....	645
5.4.14.1	Fertility Cults .....	647
5.4.14.2	The Celts and Druids .....	649
5.4.15	Secret Societies .....	650
5.4.15.1	Freemasonry .....	652
5.4.15.2	Knights Templar .....	654
5.4.15.3	Rosicrucianism .....	654
5.4.16	Covenants.....	655
5.4.16.1	Vows and Dedications.....	656
5.4.17	Addictions .....	656
5.4.18	Substance Abuse.....	659
5.4.18.1	Prescription Drugs.....	661
5.5.	FALSE BELIEFS .....	663
5.5.1	Self-Deception .....	665
5.5.2	Religion .....	666
5.5.3	Mythology .....	668
5.5.3.1	Lyssa - Greek Mythology .....	669
5.5.3.2	Mania - Greek Mythology .....	670
5.5.3.3	Dionysus (Bacchus) - Greek Mythology .....	672
5.5.3.4	Odin – Norse Mythology.....	678
5.5.3.5	Huli Jing – Chinese Mythology .....	679
5.5.3.6	Daeva – Iranian Mythology .....	679
5.5.3.7	Dybbuk – Jewish Mythology.....	679
5.5.3.8	Wodhanaz – Germanic Mythology .....	680
5.5.3.9	The Fox - Japanese Occult Lore .....	681
5.6.	IN UTERO .....	682
5.6.1	In the Womb Experiences.....	682
5.6.2	Abortion .....	684
5.6.3	The Placenta.....	686
5.7.	SUICIDE AND SELF-MUTILATION .....	686
5.8.	GENERAL NOTES ON SIN.....	687
5.9.	TRANSGRESSIONS .....	688

5.10.	INIQUITIES .....	688
5.10.1	Psychic Heredity .....	693
5.11.	AREAS AFFECTED BY SIN, INIQUITY AND REBELLION.....	694
5.11.1	Time.....	694
5.11.2	Land.....	694
5.11.3	People.....	695
5.11.3.1	Names.....	695
5.11.3.2	Spiritual Structures or Devices.....	696
5.11.3.3	Tattoos and Body Piercing.....	697
5.11.3.4	Fear Create Bonds.....	698
5.11.3.5	Soul Ties .....	700
5.11.3.6	Lost Joy.....	702
5.11.4	Office .....	704
5.11.5	Belongings.....	704
5.12.	Strongholds.....	704
5.12.1	Demonic Stronghold.....	704
5.12.2	Super Demonic Stronghold.....	706
5.13.	GOD ALSO SENDS CALAMITIES .....	706
5.13.1	Biblical Examples.....	707
5.13.2	The Days Ahead .....	708
5.14.	WORLDLINESS .....	711
5.15.	CONCLUSION .....	713

## 6. *The Answer to Insanity, Psychosis and Demon Possession*

717

6.1.	INTRODUCTION .....	717
6.2.	THERE IS ALWAYS HOPE.....	720
6.3.	JESUS, THE ONLY ANSWER .....	721
6.3.1	The Foundation of Jesus' Ministry.....	723
6.3.2	The Blood of Jesus .....	725
6.3.3	The Battle is The Lord's.....	726
1.12.2	Victory over the World .....	727
6.3.4	Joining Jesus' Army.....	728
6.3.5	Dare to Believe .....	730
6.4.	THE ROLE OF THE HUMAN SPIRIT.....	731
6.4.1	Ministering to the Human Spirit.....	734



6.4.2	Seat of Dominion .....	735
6.4.3	Ministering with the help of the Human Spirit .....	735
6.4.4	Nishe-Anointings.....	737
6.4.4.1	A Motion Anointing .....	737
6.4.4.2	A Time Anointing.....	737
6.4.5	Passivity of the Spirit .....	738
6.4.6	The Wounded Spirit.....	739
6.4.7	Spirit Fragmentation .....	740
6.4.8	Trapped in Outer Darkness .....	741
6.4.9	Alien Human Spirits (AHSs).....	742
6.4.9.1	Earth Bound Spirits .....	742
6.4.9.2	Metempsychosis .....	743
6.4.9.3	Astral Projection .....	744
6.4.9.4	Dealing with Alien Human Spirits .....	745
6.5.	SPIRITUAL WARFARE .....	748
6.5.1	Introduction .....	748
6.5.2	Spiritual Warfare Prayers.....	751
6.5.3	Setting the Captives Free .....	751
6.5.4	Powerful Weapons Available .....	752
6.5.4.1	Humility .....	753
6.5.4.2	Prayer.....	753
6.5.4.3	If My People Will Turn from Their Wicked Ways.....	754
6.5.4.4	The Name of the Lord .....	754
6.5.4.5	The Extensions of the Lord .....	755
6.5.4.6	Communion .....	757
6.5.4.7	Baptism .....	762
6.5.4.8	Anointing .....	764
6.5.4.9	Praying in Tongues .....	764
6.5.4.10	Armour of God.....	765
6.5.4.11	Fasting .....	768
6.5.4.12	The Spirit of God and His Gifts .....	770
6.5.5	The Role of Heavenly Angels .....	771
6.5.6	The Court Case .....	773
6.5.6.1	Dealing with Covenants .....	774
6.5.6.2	Dealing with False Agreements .....	775
6.5.6.3	Dealing with Defilement through Enmeshment.....	776
6.5.6.4	Cleansing the Body from Defilement.....	776

6.5.6.5	Cleansing Time from Defilement.....	776
6.5.6.6	Dealing with Spiritual Structures or Devices .....	777
6.5.6.7	Cleansing Land from Defilement.....	777
6.5.6.8	Cleansing Possession from Defilement .....	778
6.5.6.9	Cleansing the Soul from Defilement.....	778
6.5.6.10	Cleansing the Office .....	778
6.6.	THE COUNSELING PROCESS .....	779
6.6.1	Defining Biblical Counselling .....	779
6.6.2	A Mind Change .....	780
6.6.3	A Lifestyle Change.....	781
6.6.4	The Full Picture.....	782
6.6.5	The Contribution of the Brain in a Counselling Session .....	783
6.6.6	Spiritual Growth .....	785
6.6.7	The Mental Picture of God .....	787
6.6.8	Strongholds.....	789
6.6.9	The Process of Breaking Free from Bondage .....	789
6.6.10	A Note on Scientific Medical Diagnosis .....	791
6.6.11	The Motivation of Counselling .....	791
6.6.12	Counselling the Insane .....	792
6.6.12.1	Family Support .....	792
6.6.12.2	Suicide .....	793
6.6.12.3	It is a Process.....	794
6.7.	DEMONIC WARFARE THROUGHT DELIVERANCE .....	796
6.7.1	Definition of Deliverance.....	799
6.7.2	Location for the Deliverance .....	801
6.7.3	Deliverance through the Blood .....	802
6.7.4	Sin.....	803
6.7.4.1	True Repentance .....	804
6.7.4.2	Dealing with Sin .....	807
6.7.5	Discerning the Spirits through the Holy Spirit Guidance .....	809
6.7.5.1	Demons.....	809
6.7.5.2	Personalities/Alters .....	811
6.7.6	Principalities and Powers linked to Insanity and Psychosis.....	813
6.7.6.1	Principalities .....	814
6.7.6.2	Powers .....	815
6.7.7	Demonic Entities linked to Insanity and Psychosis.....	815
6.7.7.1	Mystery Demons .....	816

6.7.7.2	Deaf and Dumb Spirit.....	818
6.7.7.3	Familial Spirits.....	820
6.7.7.4	Familiar Spirits .....	820
6.7.7.5	Cthulhu.....	821
6.7.7.6	Khush .....	822
6.7.7.7	Schizophrenia .....	822
6.7.7.8	Spirit of Insanity.....	823
6.7.8	Dealing with the Demonic through Deliverance .....	824
6.7.8.1	Looking at a Biblical Example .....	824
6.7.8.2	Challenging Demons .....	826
6.7.8.3	Deliverance Prayer Points for Madness of the Mind (Heart).....	827
6.7.8.4	Deliverance Prayer Points for the Brain .....	827
6.7.9	The Deliverance Process.....	829
6.7.9.1	Step 1 - Preparation for Deliverance Session .....	829
6.7.9.2	Step 2 - Conditions for Deliverance .....	830
6.7.9.3	Step 3 – Renewal of the Heart, Senses and Will .....	830
6.7.9.4	Step 4 – Preparing the Brain .....	831
6.7.9.5	Step 5 – Dealing with the Strongman.....	832
6.7.10	Deliverance Hints.....	834
6.7.10.1	The Uncontrolled Person .....	835
6.7.10.2	The Emergency Call.....	838
6.7.11	Why Deliverance is not Successful.....	838
6.7.11.1	General Reasons .....	838
6.7.11.2	Misuse or Misunderstanding of Authority .....	839
6.7.11.3	Medication .....	840
6.7.11.4	Only through the Finger of God.....	841
6.7.11.5	Dealing with Emotions and Habits .....	842
6.7.11.6	Ongoing Sins.....	842
6.7.11.7	Forgiveness.....	843
6.7.11.8	Passivity .....	844
6.7.11.9	Not Wanting to give up Demonic Powers.....	845
6.7.12	Final Notes on Deliverance.....	846
6.7.12.1	Binding and Loosing.....	846
6.7.12.2	The Importance of Protein.....	847
6.7.12.3	Prescribed Medication and Drugs .....	848
6.7.12.4	Clean the Place of Deliverance when Done.....	848
6.7.13	Aftercare .....	849

6.7.13.1	Seven Steps in Retaining Deliverance .....	850
6.8.	INNER HEALING .....	851
6.8.1	Inner Healing Ministers the Love of Jesus .....	853
6.8.2	Helpful Tips for Accomplishing Inner Healing .....	854
6.8.3	Life's Three Basic Questions .....	855
6.8.4	A Model for Recovery .....	858
6.8.5	Dealing with Power and Anger .....	862
6.8.6	Healing the Soul .....	864
6.9.	PHYSICAL HEALING .....	865
6.9.1	Healing the Brain .....	868
6.10.	LIGHT, JOY AND PEACE .....	868
6.10.1	Light .....	868
6.10.2	Joy .....	870
6.10.3	Peace .....	872
6.11.	FINAL NOTES .....	873
6.12.	CONCLUSION .....	874
<i>Conclusion</i> .....		877
<i>Annexure</i> .....		887
EXAMPLE PRAYERS .....		887
Sealing-Off Prayer BEFORE Deliverance – Example Prayer .....		887
Dealing with Covenants - Example Prayer .....		890
Prayer of Renunciation for Sodomy and Sexual Abuse – Example Prayer .....		892
DEALING WITH THE HUMAN SPIRIT .....		899
Engaging with the God-given Human Spirit – An Example .....		899
Partnering with the God-given Human Spirit in Cleansing the Brain .....		901
Partnering with the God-given Human Spirit in Cleansing the Endocrine System.....		902
COMMON DEMONIC GROUPINGS .....		903
PSYCHIATRIC DRUGS .....		904
FERTILITY GODS AND GODDESSES .....		906
RECOMMENDED READING AND STUDYING .....		907
Spiritual Warfare and Deliverance .....		907
The Human Spirit .....		907
<i>Bibliography</i> .....		909
Books .....		909

Internet Resources.....	919
Academic Dissertations.....	934
Magazines.....	934
Seminar and Conferences .....	935
Audio .....	935
Academic Publications .....	935
Visual Technology.....	936
Interviews.....	936
<i>Terminology and Abbreviations.....</i>	<i>937</i>
Terminology .....	937
Abbreviations .....	944

-----oOo-----



## *Prolegomena*

### **INTRODUCTION AND BACKGROUND**

The ultimate motivation and expected value is

*To keep Satan from getting the advantage over us;  
for we are not ignorant of his wiles and intention.*

*2 Corinthians 2:11*

Millions of adults and children worldwide are being diagnosed with mental disorders each year. Yet the issue of mental health remains surrounded by stigma and misunderstanding. The problem of mental instability requires greater attention as a major twenty-first century public health challenge. Among millions of people, fewer than half get help, even though 80 to 90 percent of mental disorders are treatable using medication and other therapies<sup>1</sup>. These disorders take an enormous toll on individuals and families, as well as society.

Christians cannot ignore the uncomfortable reality of mental instability today. In April 2013, the evangelical community was stunned by the news that the youngest son of Rick Warren, a prominent Christian figure, died by suicide after a lifelong battle with mental illness. One can't say what a young man with access to mental health care, a loving family, and a relationship with Christ was thinking and feeling as he took his own life<sup>2</sup>. But one needs to acknowledge that there was a problem.

---

<sup>1</sup> Smith, 2013, p. 5

<sup>2</sup> Christianity Today [Online] Available from: <http://www.christianitytoday.com/women/2013/april/healthier-christian-response-to-mental-illness.html> [Accessed: 1 April 2014]

Experts say more than 90 percent of people who die by suicide have a mental disorder, while most people with mental illness do not die this way<sup>3</sup>. He is one of many to die by suicide each year, and thousands more attempt to do so, imagine it, or live out a number of other frightening symptoms of mental illness.

We are in a battle for souls. We have an enemy and we need to familiarise ourselves with his strategy. God's Word is very explicit as to the end result of a lack of knowledge and ignorance in the following passages:

- Hosea 4:6 states:

*My people are destroyed for lack of knowledge; because you [the priestly nation] have rejected knowledge, I will also reject you that you shall be no priest to Me; seeing you have forgotten the law of your God, I will also forget your children.*

- Isaiah 5:13-14 warns:

*<sup>13</sup>Therefore My people go into captivity [to their enemies] without knowing it and because they have no knowledge [of God]. And their honorable men [their glory] are famished, and their common people are parched with thirst. <sup>14</sup>Therefore Sheol (the unseen state, the realm of the dead) has enlarged its appetite and opened its mouth without measure; and [Jerusalem's] nobility and her multitude and her pomp and tumult and [the drunken reveler] who exults in her descend into it.*

God's people, therefore, will suffer and eventually be taken into captivity if they continue in ignorance and sin. The outcome of this declaration is sadly more prevalent than ever before. More people are sick, ill, and in captivity today than ever before.

This thesis is presented from theological, psychological and sociological points of view and will endorse that mental instabilities escalating to the point of insanity and psychosis have been a plan of the enemy to destroy God's people from the beginning of time, influencing and directing our everyday lives for centuries. Even in today's time and age, these forces, both covert and overt, are dynamic and detectable.

---

<sup>3</sup> National Alliance on Mental Illness  
[http://www.nami.org/Template.cfm?Section=About\\_Mental\\_Illness&Template=/ContentID=53155](http://www.nami.org/Template.cfm?Section=About_Mental_Illness&Template=/ContentID=53155) [Accessed: 25 March 2014]

[Online] Available from:  
ContentManagement/ContentDisplay.cfm&

## FORMULATION OF PROBLEM STATEMENT

In modern usage, *insanity* is seen as an informal unscientific term signifying mental instability. In the medical profession the term *insanity* is now sidestepped in favour of diagnoses of specific mental disorders, while the presence of delusions or hallucinations is broadly referred to as *psychosis*.

*Psychology* means knowledge of the soul whereas *psychiatry* refers to treatment of the soul. Both secular psychology and psychiatry have disappointed most people who have sought help for mental instabilities, including insanity and psychosis, because both have abandoned the metaphysical, thus ignoring the unseen spiritual. Psychiatry is largely dominated by modern day medicine men, doctors who often depend exclusively on prescription drug treatment. Psychology, on the other hand, is no better than psychiatry. Today, psychology depends largely on cognitive work and talk-therapy treatment from the neck up, and therefore is only able to treat about 10 percent of the problem.

Looking to drugs as the answer to mental disorders is proving to be merely a treatment of the symptoms, not dealing with the root of the problem. In themselves, drugs bring their own complications, many of which are fatal.

Although the Bible does not specifically address brain or psychological problems, it does refer to people being healed of all types of maladies. The Lord works not only through miracles, but also through the medical profession, counselling, and environmental changes. He does not want anyone to remain in hopeless suffering, and He calls all to come to Him with their burdens to find life<sup>4</sup>. The Lord also calls His children to extend love and the gospel to those who hurt, especially those who are the most vulnerable<sup>5</sup>. The Bible says anyone who calls upon the name of the Lord shall be saved<sup>6</sup>. Those who suffer from insanity and psychosis can have hope in Jesus for a life more abundant<sup>7</sup>.

Biblically, the soul came into being when God breathed into clay. That makes us a combination of both dust and divinity. That also means that the soul is metaphysical; it goes beyond the body and intellect to incorporate a full range of mystical realities like emotions, spirituality, our unconscious, the heart, and the mind as distinct from the brain. That's why

---

<sup>4</sup> Matthew 11:28-30

<sup>5</sup> James 2:1-4

<sup>6</sup> Romans 10:13

<sup>7</sup> John 10:9-11



neither medicine nor cognitive therapy can cure the complex human organism known as the soul. Biblical psychology sees man as a creature made in God's image, a spiritual being abiding temporarily in a physical dwelling called a body. Since the essence of God is both Love and Spirit, man requires His spiritual love to fill all inner emptiness.

When man tries to satisfy his deepest longings with things, sensual pleasures, or even self-righteous religion, he come up empty and can damage his very soul in the process. Therefore, a spiritual solution is needed. Any therapy that fails to utilise appropriate spiritual methods simply *cannot* treat the whole human personality. To be sure, medicine and informed cognitive therapy have a role. The patient is ultimately responsible for his own healing. A person must *want* to be healed and must be in touch with reality to be treatable. Drugs can certainly help restore a person to rationality so that he can receive proper healing and therapy. But only true spiritual therapy can make a person whole.

Morton Kelsey, in his book *Christo-psychology*, contributes the following statement<sup>8</sup>:

*A theology that does not spring from dealing with spiritual reality is little more than an entertaining intellectual enterprise.... But psychological theology, theology of experience, leads us into confrontation and encounter with the whole realm of spirit, neutral, demonic and angelic. Few people come away from this meeting unscathed. We are wounded and can be transformed; we come to know the dark night of the soul. It is no wonder that intellectual theology is more popular in most Christian circles, particularly academic ones, than the approach of experience. Who wants to be wounded again and again – even if new wounding brings transformation and insight? Obviously, only a theology that understands the experience of human brokenness and hurt is able to help those who have been wounded and are seeking help.*

Galatians 3:1 substantiates that there is more than what the eye can see:

*O you poor and silly and thoughtless and unreflecting and senseless Galatians! Who has fascinated or bewitched or cast a spell over you, unto whom—right before your very eyes—Jesus Christ (the Messiah) was openly and graphically set forth and portrayed as crucified?*

---

<sup>8</sup> Kelsey, M T (1984) *Christo-Psychology*. Crossroad Pub Co.

Who has bewitched the Galatians? The Galatians had been saved, baptized in the Holy Spirit and had seen God working miracles among them. Nonetheless, they were bewitched. A person can be saved, baptized and experience miracles; it is, however, no guarantee that a person will not be bewitched by the deceptive power of the enemy – in a word, through witchcraft. The aim of witchcraft in the Church was to hide the reality of Jesus Christ crucified. The root problem of the Galatians was that the reality of Jesus Christ crucified had been obscured by an evil satanic power that had moved in. The two resulting problems were carnality and legalism.<sup>9</sup>

Uzoma iterates that Christians get weakened and flummoxed in the mind by accusations, making them unable to pray. Consideration of these accusations opens the door to demons and powers of darkness.<sup>10</sup> He goes further<sup>11</sup>:

*These manipulations and intercourse, presently operating on the highest rate of occult velocity, are designed by the “god of this world” to suffocate humanity through the illusion of mundane gratification of the senses.*

## **PURPOSE AND SIGNIFICANCE (AIMS OF THE RESEARCH)**

Every living person on earth will have to make a decision between life and death: God or Satan. Satan has orchestrated extreme measures (legal rights through the bloodlines) to make sure that he will be the chosen one.

The purpose of this research thesis is as follows:

- to provide an overview of the deeper meaning and knowledge through a systematic review of the literature (past and present), thereby facilitating a better understanding of mental disorders with the focus on insanity and psychosis;
- to demonstrate that Satan uses sin to deceive Christians, resulting in mental, psychological and spiritual blindness and leading them to destruction and death;
- to educate Christians and non-Christians alike as to the dangers and ramifications of participation in sin;

---

<sup>9</sup> Prince, D (1984) *Lucifer Exposed*. UK: Derek Prince Ministries, pp. 75-76

<sup>10</sup> Uzoma, I N (2007) *How to overcome Witches and Wizards and all the Powers of Darkness*. Nigeria: Harbinger Christian Publications, pp. 29-31

<sup>11</sup> *Ibid*, p.16

- to guide counselors in identifying the root cause when dealing with mental instabilities escalating towards insanity and psychosis;
- to document and expose the strategies used by Satan to lure and entrap people in the snare of lies and deception for the primary reason of manipulation and domination; and
- to demonstrate that Satan is a defeated enemy in the area of the mind and needs to be dethroned with great force.

The results of this research will benefit all Christian believers and non-Christians in several significant ways:

- by shedding light on the dark and sinister identity of Satan as revealed through the light of the Gospel of Jesus Christ; and
- by educating, warning, rebuking, correcting and encouraging both Christians and non-Christians of Jesus Christ's urgent message of radical repentance and preparation in order to be found blameless at the coming of the Lord, in spirit, soul and body<sup>12</sup>.

## **OBJECTIVES AND RESEARCH QUESTIONS**

The objectives of this research are to answer the following questions:

- Why are Christians still defeated and afflicted today?
- Why do Christians not receive breakthrough and healing when desperately needing it?
- Where are the power of the Word and the promises of Jesus that His children will do greater and mightier things than Him?
- What is Satan's battle plan when it comes to mental instabilities escalating to insanity and psychosis?
- What is the method Satan will deploy through deception to achieve this destruction of the children of God?
- How authentic and relevant are mental disorders today?
- What are the legal rights through sin that are used by Satan to cause mental instabilities and deceive and destroy Christians?
- How have the bloodlines been prepared to bring about mental instabilities?
- How can a person be forced to do things against his will? How will Satan apply mental instabilities to manipulate and dominate people in the last days?

---

<sup>12</sup> Philippians 2:15; Colossians 2:2; 4:8; 1 Thessalonians 4:17; 5:23

- How is it possible to do mind scrambling and mind theft?
- What role do communion and baptism play in protection against mental instability?
- What shadows of sin relating to sorrow, death and old things are in the way of growing in the Lord?
- What role does the demonic play in mental disorders, especially in insanity and psychosis?
- What role does the occult play in the mind and soul?
- What role does a human spirit play in mental disorders, especially insanity and psychosis?
- If one suspects that there might be a bloodline root, what can be done?
- If the strategy of destruction is known, what must the Christian do to counter this attack and get equipped for the battle?
- Is there a link between demon possession and insanity?
- If Satan is defeated, what must be done to claim this victory in the region of the mind?

## THESIS, HYPOTHESES AND RESEARCH STATEMENT

The nature of sin has not only corrupted the mind of humans but has infected the body as well. A human is a triune being, which simply means that people are spirits with souls and reside in temporal bodies. Satan's plan is to destroy humanity's mind and eventually kill the body. He combines fear and illusion to produce unhealthy cravings and preoccupy man's thoughts, resulting in sickness and disease. The aim of this research is to uncover the strategy Satan uses to destroy soul and body.

Sin destroys the mind first, and eventually the body develops physical sickness. Emerson Ferrell defines *thoughts* as the source of sin and *blood* as the medium for destruction<sup>13</sup>. White agrees that sin is not simply wrong behaviour. It has its roots in the mind.<sup>14</sup> Today especially, Christians must decisively determine to set and adhere to certain standards pertaining to what they allow into their minds.<sup>15</sup> This thesis will illustrate the destructive path of sin, beginning first with the mind and finishing in the body, bringing the person full circle into mental instability.

---

<sup>13</sup> Ferrell, L E (2010) Immersed in Him. United States of America: Destiny Image Publisher Inc., p. 92

<sup>14</sup> James 1:14-15

<sup>15</sup> White, T B (1990) The Believer's Guide to Spiritual Warfare. UK: Regal Books, p. 162

This research will identify the following:

- mental disorders, including insanity and psychosis;
- the foremost legal rights through sin used by Satan to bring on mental instabilities leading to insanity and psychosis in the last days, bringing forth and portraying deceptions which have been prepared by Satan for the destruction of Christians;
- key attributes and characteristics of mental instabilities relevant today which are linked to the spirit, soul and body;
- the dilemma of insanity and psychosis in a person's thought life through the bloodlines and the influence it has to ultimately overpower and destroy him;
- what can be done to prevent mental instabilities;
- the spiritual and demonic warfare needed to win the battle of the mind; and
- Jesus Christ from Nazareth as the answer to the problems fashioned by mental instabilities including insanity and psychosis.

*Bless the Lord, O my soul, and forget not all His benefits: Who forgives all your iniquities who heals all your diseases.*

*Psalms 103:2-3*

*For I will restore health to you, and heal you of your wounds, says the Lord.*

*Jeremiah 30:17*

This thesis presents the following: an exegetical exposition on spiritual and demonic warfare pertaining to insanity and psychosis.

This thesis will define and identify the presence and relevance of mental instabilities as well as the areas and/or legal rights (also referred to as roots) that are ultimately responsible for causing insanity and psychosis. These areas of influence on the person (and indirectly on a society associated with the person) can come through the bloodlines and/or directly through a person's involvement in sin, either directly or indirectly. This in turn contributes to the separation between the person and God through the disobedience of God's commandments and Word, a separation which will open the door to ignorance, deception and ultimately, the destruction of this person.

This thesis will furthermore endeavour to defend and prove that it is of great essence for Christians called to the specific assignment of revealing the spiritual and physical entities

belonging to the Kingdom of Darkness to have a deep personal relationship with the Lord Jesus Christ – and to be led by unction of His Holy Spirit.

## **DEMARCATIION INCLUDING SCOPE AND LIMITATION**

This thesis will show, through the use of data, the identification and occurrence of what contributes toward the result of insanity and psychosis in all areas and practices of life, throughout the world. It will include research of the Persians, Spartans, Romans, Greeks, Babylonians and Assyrians, Semites, Pagans, and Egyptians. The research will include an historical look at insanity and psychosis, and the areas and/or practices that can result in mental instabilities, to identify names, characteristics, styles, methods and mannerisms by which a model can be built to identify the potential existence of either insanity or psychosis in a person's bloodline.

This thesis, however, will *exclude* the following:

- recounting, in detail, the treatment, the extent and influence of the treatment of mental disorders through psychology, psychiatry and drugs.

The following tasks were performed:

- mental instabilities, including insanity and psychosis, together with their roots, are defined and identified (both historically and Biblically) to build a comprehensive and in-depth understanding of nature and its influence;
- a dissection of the mind is done in order to understand the contribution of thoughts and emotions;
- the brain is dissected in order to understand its functions and the role a damaged brain plays in mental illnesses;
- Satan's strategy relating to manipulation and dominations is presented, including a review of his methods of destruction; and
- Jesus Christ is presented as the 'Way and the Truth and the Life'<sup>16</sup>, the answer to the problem of mental instabilities and its influence on all areas of life.

---

<sup>16</sup> John 14:6

## **LITERATURE REVIEW**

In constructing this research project, executing the research and analysing the data, a broad and deep body of literature was considered, literature which crosses numerous disciplines, including psychology, psychiatry, pre-history and history, religious studies, sociology, symbology and theology.

While an exhaustive account of all the relevant literature in these disciplines would be a dissertation-size undertaking in and of itself, it is instructive to examine some of the key texts, theories and concepts which inform and underpin this research. Such an examination also helps root this project in a larger scholarly and ethnographic context.

## **OLD AND NEW TESTAMENT**

1. The Bible – King James Version (unless otherwise stated).

## **OTHER RESOURCES**

1. published and unpublished documentation such as books, magazine articles, and Internet information;
2. audio visual recourses such as television programs, videos and DVDs;
3. seminars and conferences attended;
4. case studies; and
5. formal and informal interviews.

All data from the available above-mentioned sources is integrated and consolidated to conclude the data collection stage.

## **RESEARCH METHODOLOGY**

Research methodology is the general approach a researcher takes in carrying out a research project; to some extent, this approach dictates the particular tools the researcher selects. A combination of diverse qualitative designed methodology types is intended to be used, such as ethnography, hermeneutics, historical analysis, phenomenology, sociology,

symbolology and theology. However, quantitative design types are used to examine some social work.

- *Ethnography*. Ethnography is a form of qualitative research coming mostly from the field of anthropology. The goal of ethnographic research is to tell the whole story of a group's daily life, and to identify the cultural meanings, beliefs and patterns of that group.
- *Hermeneutics*. Biblical hermeneutics is part of the broader hermeneutical question, relating to the problem of how a person should understand the Holy Scripture. By definition, this is a theological act, that is, part of the discourse of a faith community. Theological hermeneutics as traditional Christian Biblical exegesis considers hermeneutics in the tradition of explication of the text, or exegesis, to deal with various principles that can be applied to the study of Scripture.
- *Historical Analysis*. Essential reasons for conducting historical analysis are as follows:
  - to uncover the unknown and to answer questions;
  - to identify the relationship of the past to the present; and
  - to assist in understanding the culture in which people live.
- *Phenomenology*. Phenomenology is occasionally considered a philosophical perspective as well as an approach to qualitative methodology. It has a long history in numerous research disciplines including psychology, sociology and social work. Phenomenology is a school of thought that emphasises people's subjective interpretations of the world. Mainly, phenomenology studies the structure of various types of experiences ranging from perception, thought, memory, imagination, emotion, desire and volition to bodily awareness, embodied action and social activity. The academic report is audience-oriented, as follows:
  - It will reveal in-depth understanding of the topic.
  - It will answer the readers' important questions about the topic.
  - It will define terms and concepts the readers need to know.
  - It will use language the reader will understand.
  - It will use persuasion, not undocumented assertions, to argue the topic.
  - It will use reviewed publications or other reliable, credible sources to support ideas.



The approaches are scientific knowledge gained through observation and studies of various fields.

- *Qualitative Research Paradigm.* Qualitative research can be defined as research conducted with a range of methods which uses qualifying words and descriptions to record and investigate aspects of social reality. In general, qualitative research is used to “answer questions about complex nature of phenomena, often with the purpose of describing and understanding the phenomena from the participants’ point of view”<sup>17</sup>. The qualitative approach is also referred to as the interpretive, constructivist, or anti-positivist approach. Interpretivism, or the qualitative approach, is a way to gain insights through discovering meanings by improving our comprehension of the whole. Qualitative research explores the richness, depth and complexity of phenomena.<sup>18</sup>
- *Assumptions of Interpretivism as Research Paradigm.* The underlying assumptions of interpretivism, or the qualitative research paradigm, are based on a “world view” characterised by the following points:<sup>19</sup>
  - There is not a single reality but multiple realities.
  - These realities are based on perceptions that are different for each person and differ over time and place.
  - What a person knows has meaning only with a given situation or context.
  - The whole needs to be examined in order to understand social phenomena.
  - Each type of qualitative research is guided a by particular stance taken in relation of the research to each phenomenon.
- *Qualitative research.* Qualitative research is concerned with developing explanations of social phenomena, aiming to help with an understanding of the world in which man lives and why things are the way they are. It is concerned with the social aspects of the world and seeks to answer questions about why people behave the way they do, how opinions and attitudes are formed, how and why cultures have developed in the ways they have, and what changes can be implemented to change human mind patterns, and attitudes and behaviour?

---

<sup>17</sup> Leedy And Ormrod [Online] Available from: [Upetd.up.ac.za/thesis/available/etd-05162010-003943/.../02\\_Chapters3-4.pdf](http://upetd.up.ac.za/thesis/available/etd-05162010-003943/.../02_Chapters3-4.pdf) [Accessed: 4 March 2014]

<sup>18</sup> Straus And Corbin [Online] Available from: <http://wilderdom.com/OECourses/Proflit/Class6Qualitative1.htm> [Accessed: 4 March 2014]

<sup>19</sup> Burns And Grove [Online] Available from: <http://www.frprtunecity.com/greenfield/grizzly/432/rra3.htm> [Accessed: 4 March 2014]; O’Brien in [Online] Available from: <http://wilderdom.com/OECourses/Proflit/Class6Qualitative1.htm> [Accessed: 4 March 2014]

- *Historical Research.* Historical research is the process of systematically examining past events to give an account of what has happened in the past. It is important to mention here that a historical analysis is not merely an accumulation of facts, but rather a similar, dynamic account of past events. A comprehensive historical analysis involves an interpretation of these events in an attempt to recapture the nuances, social and cultural tendencies and thought patterns that influenced these events and people's behaviour during these historical periods. Important reasons for conducting historical research include the following:
  - to uncover the unknown and to answer key questions;
  - to identify the relationship that the past has to events of the present, though patterns and behaviour, both individually and on a collective basis (i.e. knowing about the past can frequently give a more insightful and comprehensive perspective of current events, ideas and behaviour);
  - to record and evaluate previous accomplishments of individuals, agencies or institutions; and
  - to impact our current understanding of spiritual, cultural and social realities in the world in which we live.
- *Hermeneutical Methodology.* Biblical Hermeneutics (or interpretations of exegetical truth) is part of the broader hermeneutical question, relating to the problem of how one is to understand Holy Scripture. By definition, this is a theological act (i.e. part of the discourse of a faith community). This does not mean that it is of no relevance to those who do not consider themselves to be part of that community, but rather that it is an issue that arises out of the particular needs of a community.
- *Methodology Approach.* In this thesis and for the proper translation and understanding of Scripture, Hebrew hermeneutics will be used. This, however, requires a willingness to revert to the original Hebrew text and research of key words and phrases. An understanding of the ancient Hebrew culture is necessary, as content without context is simply not enough. This hermeneutic approach will thus underpin the research process of this thesis.

## REFERENCING

The Harvard referencing method is used in the bibliography and footnotes are used at the end of each page to indicate the applicable source.

-----oOo-----



## *Chapter One*

### *1. The Anatomization of the Human Brain*

*I will praise thee; for I am fearfully and wonderfully made: marvellous are thy works; and  
that my soul knoweth right well.*

*Psalm 139:14 (KJV)*

*If the human brain were so simple that we could understand it, we would be so simple that we  
couldn't.*

*Emerson M Pugh, as quoted in The Biological Origin of Human Values*

#### **1.1. INTRODUCTION**

Consider for a moment the brain of a bee which is the size of a grain of salt. It can do many amazing things: detect the minutest changes in light, sound, smell and touch; delicately and accurately integrate the actions of many muscles; and regulate the functioning of its body's many organs so as to preserve the optimum conditions for life. Such brains learn from experience and find ways to relate information to others of its species. The bee's brain keeps a constant track of time and functions as an accurate guidance system; compensating for wind direction, it correlates the rapid beating of four tiny wings, and lands the little body delicately at the centre of a waving flower. The bee's brain contains a mere 900 neurons.

What, then, can be expected from a human brain, ten million times the size, and many billions times as complex?

Nestled inside the bony fortress of the cranium, the brain is the best-protected organ of the body, and it rightfully enjoys the highest priority when blood, oxygen and nutrients are distributed. The brain is sheathed in several layers of a tough membrane tissue, and it is suspended in a circulating fluid mechanism: it actually floats inside a shockproof vault. The intricate web of nerves that constitutes the human nervous system weighs only 1,589 kg (three and a half pounds), yet it is probably the most complex system in the universe.

The human brain has the ability to learn, reason, and control so many automatic functions of the body such as heart rate, blood pressure, and breathing, and to maintain balance to walk, run, stand, and sit, all while concentrating on something else. Computers can outdo the human brain in raw calculating power but are lacking when it comes to performing most reasoning tasks. The brain also has an amazing capacity to learn not only from its own experience but from that of others, and the ability to adapt the environment to its own needs.

The human body is the most complex and unique organism in existence, a complexity and uniqueness which speaks volumes about the mind of its Creator. Every aspect of the human body, down to the tiniest microscopic cell, reveals that it is fearfully and wonderfully made. Marvellous are the works of the Creator God: creation, providence, sustentation of all creatures, the government of the world, the redemption of mankind, the work of grace and conversion, the perseverance of the children of God, and their eternal salvation.

*<sup>24</sup> The God Who produced and formed the world and all things in it, being Lord of heaven and earth, does not dwell in handmade shrines. <sup>25</sup> Neither is He served by human hands, as though He lacked anything, for it is He Himself Who gives life and breath and all things to all [people]. <sup>26</sup> And He made from one [common origin, one source, one blood] all nations of men to settle on the face of the earth, having definitely determined [their] allotted periods of time and the fixed boundaries of their habitation (their settlements, lands, and abodes), <sup>27</sup> So that they should seek God, in the hope that they might feel after Him and find Him, although He is not far from each one of us. <sup>28</sup> For in Him we live and move and have our being; as even some of your [own] poets have said, For we are also His offspring.*

*Acts 17:24-28*

A proper understanding of the human body from the perspective of the Christian faith and living consistently with its God-given purpose leads to a full and meaningful life. A person expresses both his person and presence in and through the body. In the body, a person formulates thoughts and experience feelings, and expresses these through speech, facial expressions, gestures and actions. It can therefore clearly be seen that the human body has a very specific purpose.

One sees manifest in the design of the human body God's creative intent. The significance of being created bodily in God's image means that the fundamental calling of every human being is to be a reflection, an image, of God in their bodies. Man is made for God and for others, fashioned by God for communion with Him and with other fellow human beings. Mental illness is the result of such an image, such a communion with God and fellow human beings, being shattered and distorted.

Therefore, a closer look at the brain, the 'computer' of man, its internal structures, normal functions and the relationships of its components is necessary to comprehend where things can go wrong, under which circumstances malfunctioning can take place, and how it can be used for manipulation and control of the person, all with the potential to induce mental illness to some degree.

## **1.1 THE BRAIN**

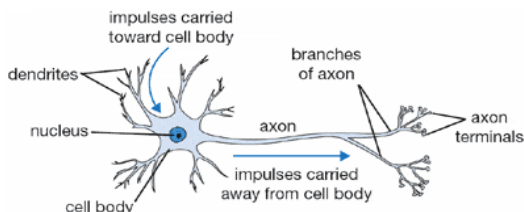
Biology states that the brain is an incredibly complex organ. Physiologically speaking, the brain makes up only 2% of man's body weight, but it consumes 20% of the oxygen man breathes and 20% of the energy man take in. It controls virtually everything a person experiences, including movement, sensing the environment, regulating the involuntary body processes such as breathing, and controlling emotions.

It is a well-known fact that the brain communicates through nerve pathways that go to the muscles, sensory and internal organs, and every other part of the body. Hundreds of thousands of chemical reactions occur every second in the brain; those reactions underlie the thoughts, actions and behaviours with which an individual responds to environmental stimuli. Activities going on in one's brain can affect every single cell in one's body, directly or indirectly, because of the extensive nerve network lacing through all body tissues. In short, the brain dictates the internal processes and behaviours that allow mankind to survive. So

how then does brain absorb all this information, process it and cause a response? The basic functional unit of the brain is the neuron.<sup>1</sup>

### 1.1.1 Neurons

A neuron has three basic parts: cell body, dendrites and axons.



*Figure 1.1: The neuron has processes called dendrites that receive signals and an axon that transmits signals to another neuron.<sup>2</sup>*

The cell body includes the nucleus, cytoplasm and cell organelles. The nucleus contains DNA and information that the cell needs for growth, metabolism and repair. Cytoplasm is the substance that fills a cell, including all the chemicals and parts needed for the cell to function properly including small structures called cell organelles. Dendrites branch off from the cell body and act as a neuron's point of contact for receiving chemical and electrical signals called impulses from neighbouring neurons.

Axons send impulses and extend from cell bodies to meet and deliver impulses to another nerve cell. Axons can range in length from a fraction of an inch to several feet. Each neuron is enclosed by a cell membrane which separates the inside contents of the cell from its surrounding environment and controls what enters and leaves the cell, as well as responding to signals from the environment; this all helps the cell maintain its balance with the environment.<sup>3</sup>

### 1.1.2 Neurotransmitters

The area where an axon terminal ends near a receiving dendrite is called the synapse. The cell that transmits information is called the presynaptic neuron, and the cell that receives the information is called the postsynaptic neuron. The synapse is not a physical connection

---

<sup>1</sup> National Institutes of Mental Health, Information about Mental Illness and the Brain [Online] Available from: <http://science.education.nih.gov/supplements/nih5/Mental/guide/info-mental-a.htm> [Accessed: 12 May 2014]

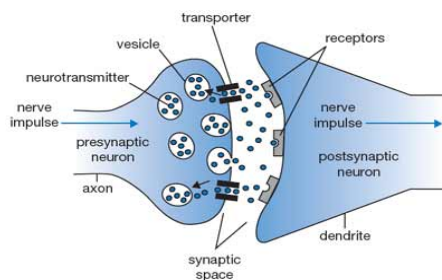
<sup>2</sup> Ibid.

<sup>3</sup> National Institutes of Mental Health, Brain Basics [Online] Available from: <http://science.education.nih.gov/supplements/nih5/Mental/guide/info-mental-a.htm> [Accessed: 12 May 2014]

between the two neurons; there is no cytoplasmic connection between the two neurons. The intercellular space between the presynaptic and postsynaptic neurons is called the synaptic space or synaptic cleft. An average neuron forms approximately 1,000 synapses with other neurons. It has been estimated that there are more synapses in the human brain than there are stars in the galaxy. Furthermore, synaptic connections are not static. Neurons form new synapses or strengthen synaptic connections in response to life experiences. This dynamic change in neuronal connections is the basis of learning and can be healed and changed by the Holy Spirit.

Neurons communicate using both electrical signals and chemical messages. Information in the form of an electrical impulse is carried away from the neuron's cell body along the axon of the presynaptic neuron toward the axon terminals. When the electrical signal reaches the presynaptic axon terminal, it cannot cross the synaptic space, or synaptic cleft. Instead, the electrical signal triggers chemical changes that can cross the synapse to affect the postsynaptic cell. When the electrical impulse reaches the presynaptic axon terminal, membranous sacs called vesicles move toward the membrane of the axon terminal. When the vesicles reach the membrane, they fuse with the membrane and release their contents into the synaptic space.

The molecules contained in the vesicles are chemical compounds called neurotransmitters. Each vesicle contains many molecules of a neurotransmitter. The released neurotransmitter molecules drift across the synaptic cleft and then bind to special proteins, called receptors, on the postsynaptic neuron. A neurotransmitter molecule will bind only to a specific kind of receptor.



*Figure 1.2: Neurons relay their information using both electrical signals and chemical messages in a process called neurotransmission.<sup>4</sup>*

The binding of neurotransmitters to their receptors causes such a neuron to generate an electrical impulse. The electrical impulse then moves away from the dendrite ending toward

---

<sup>4</sup> National Institutes of Mental Health, Information about Mental Illness and the Brain [Online] Available from: <http://science.education.nih.gov/supplements/nih5/Mental/guide/info-mental-a.htm> [Accessed: 12 May 2014]



the cell body. After the neurotransmitter stimulates an electrical impulse in the postsynaptic neuron, it releases from the receptor back into the synaptic space. Specific proteins called transporters or reuptake pumps carry the neurotransmitter back into the presynaptic neuron. When the neurotransmitter molecules are back in the presynaptic axon terminal, they can be repackaged into vesicles for release the next time an electrical impulse reaches the axon terminal. Enzymes present in the synaptic space degrade neurotransmitter molecules that are not taken back up into the presynaptic neuron.

The nervous system uses a variety of neurotransmitter molecules, but each neuron specialises in the synthesis and secretion of a single type of neurotransmitter. Scientists have identified over 50 neurotransmitters that are messengers communicating information from one part of the brain to another, and to all parts of the body. From this system, complicated brains are built. And this system seems affected in many mental illnesses.<sup>5</sup> Neurotransmitter malfunctions can occur because there is either not enough neurotransmitter, or there is too much neurotransmitter, or there has been a mal-absorption of the neurotransmitter. Examples of neurotransmitters are dopamine, norepinephrine, acetylcholine, serotonin and glutamate.<sup>6</sup>

If the neurotransmitters become scarce, that is, if they are not released from nerve cell to nerve cell, the brain malfunctions. When they fail, the part of the brain which controls moods, powers of concentration, energy, sleep, sexual drive, appetite and so forth are affected. A person may become gloomy and lose energy. Such a person will lose all joy for life, and lose normal desire for love, sex, food, beauty and humour. Such an individual typically either wants to sleep all the time or is unable to sleep at all. Similarly, such people may eat in wild excess, not enjoying what they eat but eating compulsively, or alternatively not eat at all because food has lost its appeal.<sup>7</sup>

Dopamine is mainly involved in controlling movement and aiding the flow of information to the front of the brain which is linked to thought and emotion. It is also linked to reward systems in the brain. Problems in producing dopamine can result in Parkinson's disease, a disorder that affects a person's ability to move as they want to, resulting in stiffness, tremors or shaking, and other symptoms. Some studies suggest that having too little dopamine or problems using dopamine in the thinking and feeling regions of the brain may play a role in disorders like schizophrenia or attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD).

---

<sup>5</sup> Ibid.

<sup>6</sup> Ibid.

<sup>7</sup> Murphy, E F (2003) *The Handbook for Spiritual Warfare*, Revised and Updated. Thomas Nelson Publishers, p. 492

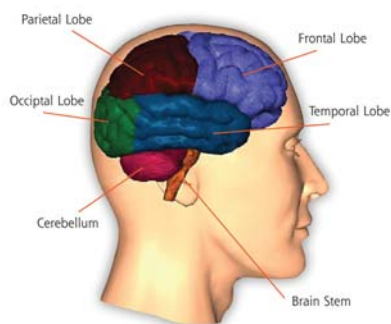
Norepinephrine plays a role in mood function and activation levels. Acetylcholine plays a role in mood function and the autonomic nervous system.

Serotonin helps control many functions, such as mood, appetite and sleep. Research shows that people with depression often have lower than normal levels of serotonin. The types of medications most commonly prescribed to treat depression act by blocking the recycling, or reuptake, of serotonin by the sending neuron. As a result, more serotonin stays in the synapse for the receiving neuron to bind onto, leading to more normal mood functioning.

Glutamate is the most common neurotransmitter and has many roles throughout the brain and nervous system. Glutamate is an excitatory transmitter: when it is released it increases the likelihood that the neuron will fire. This enhances the electrical flow among brain cells required for normal function and plays an important role during early brain development. It may also assist in learning and memory. Problems in making or using glutamate have been linked to many mental disorders, including autism, obsessive compulsive disorder (OCD), schizophrenia and depression.<sup>8</sup>

Malfunction in these neurotransmitters is found in many forms of mental illness. It is possible that, in biologically vulnerable individuals, high stress levels 'trigger' malfunctioning in neurotransmitters (e.g. production of neurotransmitters cannot keep up with the body's demands or the neurotransmitters are not effectively removed from the system).<sup>9</sup>

### 1.1.3 Brain Structures



*Figure 1.3: The Human Brain*<sup>10</sup>

---

<sup>8</sup> National Institutes of Mental Health, Brain Basics [Online] Available from: <http://www.nimh.nih.gov/health/educational-resources/brain-basics/brain-basics.shtml> [Accessed: 12 May 2014]

<sup>9</sup> Mental Illness Fellowship Victoria, Understanding the Brain and Mental Illness. [Online] Available from: <http://www.mifellowship.org/sites/default/files/styles/Fact%20Sheets/Understanding%20the%20brain%20and%20MI.pdf> [Accessed: 7 March 2014]

<sup>10</sup> Understanding the Brain and Mental Illness  
<http://www.mifellowship.org/sites/default/files/styles/Fact%20Sheets/Understanding%20the%20brain%20and%20MI.pdf>

The parietal lobe is involved in long-term memory, obtaining and retaining accurate knowledge of objects and sensory speech (responsible for perceiving the spoken word). When a person develops certain mental illnesses, the pathways described and speech may be affected. Hence, someone with schizophrenia, when psychotic, may develop a language of their own or words of their own, called neologisms. Often a person's ability to retain information is limited.

Roles of the temporal lobe includes (1) auditory (hearing) – the area that receives and interprets impulses from the inner ear; (2) olfactory (smell) – the area that receives and interprets impulses from the nose; and (3) taste – the area that interprets nerve impulses from the tongue. The cells in this area receive and interpret impulses from the various parts of the body (i.e. nose, taste buds and ear). Should someone be psychotic he may be hearing voices, but the parts of the ear usually involved in hearing (such as the anvil hammer) are not physically moving from sound waves. Instead, the impulses in the brain are working and sending messages, as if the person is hearing. This also occurs in relation to smell and taste, resulting in, for instance, people suspecting food to be poisoned because it tastes different.

The occipital lobe receives impulses from the eye and interprets them as visual impressions. The eyes do not actually do the seeing – it is the brain that receives the impulses from the eyes and interprets them. When someone experiences visual hallucinations, the occipital lobe is seen to be very active – impulses are interpreted and processed – and consequently the person sees objects that may not be present.

Basal ganglion is thought to influence muscle tone; if control is inadequate, movements are uncoordinated.

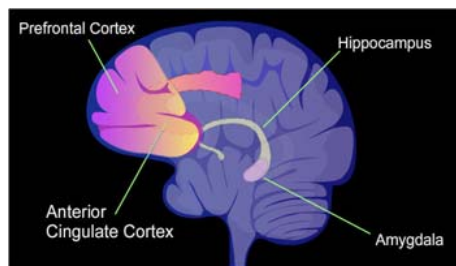
The thalamus receives impulses from the body's sensory nerves associated with pain, temperature, pressure and touch. Here crude, uncritical sensations reach consciousness (e.g. awareness of pain but not the ability to identify the body part involved). People with schizophrenia may wear lots of clothes on hot days because this part of their brain is affected by the illness.

The hypothalamus is involved in the pituitary gland orchestration of hormone release and in the autonomic nervous system (hunger, thirst, body temperature, heart and blood vessels, and defensive reactions such as fear and rage).

The cerebellum controls and coordinates the movements of various muscle groups to ensure smooth, even and precise actions. It also maintains balance and equilibrium of the body. Jerky, uncoordinated movements indicate the involvement of the cerebellum in mental illness.

The limbic system is more a functional than an anatomical entity. The limbic system involves parts of the brain essential for organising emotional responses and processing information. It is involved in schizophrenia, which affects the emotions of the person and ability to process information.

Just as many neurons working together form a circuit, many circuits working together form specialised brain systems. Mankind has many specialised brain systems that work across specific brain regions to assist with speech, to help make sense of what is seen, and to help solve problems.<sup>11</sup>



*Figure 1.4: Regions of the Brain<sup>12</sup>*

Some of the regions most commonly studied in mental health research are the amygdala, the prefrontal cortex, anterior cingulate cortex and hippocampus.

The amygdala is the brain's "fear hub", which activates the natural "fight-or-flight" response to confront or escape from a dangerous situation. The amygdala also appears to be involved in learning to fear an event, such as touching a hot stove, and learning not to fear, such as overcoming a fear of spiders.

The Prefrontal Cortex (PFC) is the seat of the brain's executive functions, such as judgment, decision making and problem solving. Different parts of the PFC are involved in using short-term or 'working' memory and in retrieving long-term memories. This area of the brain also

---

<sup>11</sup> Mental Illness Fellowship Victoria, Understanding the Brain and Mental Illness. [Online] Available from: <http://www.mifellowship.org/sites/default/files/styles/Fact%20Sheets/Understanding%20the%20brain%20and%20MI.pdf> [Accessed: 7 March 2014]

<sup>12</sup> National Institutes of Mental Health, Brain Basics [Online] Available from: <http://science.education.nih.gov/supplements/nih5/Mental/guide/info-mental-a.htm> [Accessed: 12 May 2014]

helps to control the amygdala during stressful events. Some research shows that people who have post-traumatic stress disorder or attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD) have reduced activity in this area.

The Anterior Cingulate Cortex (ACC) has many different roles, from controlling blood pressure and heart rate to responding when one senses some irregularity. It also assists with motivation, remaining focused on a task, and managing proper emotional reactions. Reduced ACC activity or damage to this brain area has been linked to disorders such as attention deficit hyperactivity disorder, schizophrenia, and depression.

The hippocampus helps create and file new memories. When the hippocampus is damaged, new memories can't be created, but past events and learned skills can still be remembered, and conversation can be carried, all of which rely on different parts of the brain. The hippocampus may be involved in mood disorders through its control of a major mood circuit called the hypothalamic-pituitary-adrenal axis.

There is evidence to strongly suggest that some brain structures are altered or damaged in mental illness. It is clear, however, that many parts of the brain are affected by mental illness. The main purpose of the frontal lobe is control of movement (co-ordination). It is also thought to be responsible for behaviour, character, emotional state, short-term memory and planning. Behaviours often displayed by a psychotic individual are poor concentration, emotionally extreme or generally abnormal behaviour. Movement can also be random and disjointed.<sup>13</sup>

#### 1.1.4 Brain Theories

Over half of what is known about the brain in relation to mental illness was learnt in the last 10 years.<sup>14</sup> Modern research into mental illness often involves a convergence of several kinds of brain science: psychiatry, cognitive psychology, neuropsychology and neuroscience. The results of this convergence is generally referred to as *cognitive neuroscience* and refers to all activities of the mind, including emotion, perception and the regulation of behaviour.

---

<sup>13</sup> Mental Illness Fellowship Victoria, Understanding the Brain and Mental Illness. [Online] Available from: <http://www.mifellowship.org/sites/default/files/styles/Fact%20Sheets/Understanding%20the%20brain%20and%20MI.pdf> [Accessed: 7 March 2014]

<sup>14</sup> Ibid.

The picture that is emerging from this convergence appears to confirm the premise that mental illness is a result of flaws, either in the processing of information or in the brain physiology itself. While neuroimaging technology does permit non-intrusive, visual images of working brains, cognitive neuroscientists are still unable to delve too deeply into the brain's intricate circuitry. For this reason, the physical and biochemical mechanisms for most mental illnesses are still not completely clear.<sup>15</sup>

As a result, the symptoms are also difficult to diagnose. Most mental illnesses lack specific biological identifiers, that is, they aren't associated with fevers, blood counts or pathogens. Often diagnosticians have to examine clusters of signs, symptoms and behavioural patterns.<sup>16</sup>

Current research indicates the following theories about what is happening in the brain in relation to the following mental disorders<sup>17</sup>:

#### **1.1.4.1 Schizophrenia**

There is an excess of the neurotransmitter called dopamine. Dopamine is involved in regulating thoughts and feelings, both of which are disturbed in schizophrenia. It is also thought that high dopamine levels make someone more sensitive to stress. Research indicates that some people with schizophrenia appear to have larger ventricles. Research also indicates that some people experiencing schizophrenia seem to have a loss of tissue in the anterior hippocampus, which may account for memory problems and irrationality.

Recent research carried out seems to indicate some people have this tissue reduction before the onset of psychosis. This in turn leads researchers to believe that there may be a possibility that results of Magnetic Resonance Imaging (MRI) can be used as a predictor of schizophrenia.

---

<sup>15</sup> All Psychology Careers. Brain, Mind and Mental Illness [Online] Available from: <http://www.allpsychologycareers.com/topics/brain-mind-mental-illness.html> [Accessed: 12 May 2014]

<sup>16</sup> Mental Illness Fellowship Victoria, Understanding the Brain and Mental Illness. [Online] Available from: <http://www.mifellowship.org/sites/default/files/styles/Fact%20Sheets/Understanding%20the%20brain%20and%20MI.pdf> [Accessed: 7 March 2014]

<sup>17</sup> Ibid.

#### **1.1.4.2 Depression**

In depression, it appears that not enough neurotransmitter is released into the gap between neurons, or too much of it is removed before it has completed its function. When antidepressants are used, there is more neurotransmitter available in the gap between neurons, thereby easing a depressed mood.

#### **1.1.4.3 Obsessive Compulsive Disorder**

Researchers think obsessive compulsive disorder may be linked to parts of the basal ganglia involved in fixed patterns of behaviour resulting in an imbalance among a variety of neurotransmitters. One hypothesis is that the brain signals for a contaminant (like dirty hands) which then causes the cortex to send signals to pre-programmed cells in an area of the basal ganglia that produces the neurotransmitter serotonin, with other neurotransmitters also involved.

### **1.2 THE ENDOCRINE SYSTEM**

For the body to function properly, its various parts and organs must communicate with each other to ensure that a constant internal environment (i.e. homeostasis) is maintained. For example, neither the body temperature nor the levels of salts and minerals (i.e. electrolytes) in the blood must fluctuate beyond pre-set limits. Communication among various regions of the body is also essential for enabling the organism to respond appropriately to any changes in the internal and external environments. Two systems help ensure communication: the nervous system and the hormonal (i.e. neuroendocrine) system.

The nervous system generally allows rapid transmission, within fractions of seconds, of information between different body regions. Conversely, hormonal communication, which relies on the production and release of hormones from various glands and on the transport of those hormones via the bloodstream, is better suited for situations that require more widespread and longer lasting regulatory actions. Thus, the two communication systems complement each other. In addition, both systems interact: stimuli from the nervous system can influence the release of certain hormones and vice versa. Generally speaking,

hormones control the growth, development and metabolism of the body, the electrolyte composition of bodily fluids and reproduction.<sup>18</sup>

### **1.2.1 Hormones**

Hormones are molecules that are produced by endocrine glands, including the hypothalamus, pituitary gland, adrenal glands, gonads (testes and ovaries), thyroid gland, parathyroid glands and pancreas. The term *endocrine* implies that in response to specific stimuli, the products of those glands are released into the bloodstream. The hormones are then carried via the blood to their target cells. Some hormones have only a few specific target cells, whereas other hormones affect numerous cell types throughout the body.<sup>19</sup>

### **1.2.2 Hormone Imbalances**

A hormone imbalance can have an effect on the brain. As a result, many women may feel different during their premenstrual week. Estrogen, like serotonin, is a hormone that affects the brain and can cause the body to feel normal or well. When estrogen levels are affected, the brain's neurotransmitters can change; as a result, women complain of feelings of depression, anxiety and frustration.

Hormone levels can affect mood and mental health. That's why many women are vulnerable during times of hormonal changes. When women are experiencing menstruation, pregnancy or a postpartum period, many mood changes can occur. Women are more likely to experience PMS due to changes in hormonal shifts.

Glands play a major role in hormone production. The endocrine gland is a gland that produces hormones and can have a major effect on the body. These glands can affect mood as well as reproduction. Many women may suffer from depression and mood swings and be unaware that the endocrine gland can be the cause thereof. In addition to the endocrine gland, the thyroid gland can be very instrumental and can also play a role in the production of hormones.

---

<sup>18</sup> Hiller-Sturmhöfel, S and Bartke, A (1998) An Overview of the Endocrine System. Unpublished, p. 153

<sup>19</sup> Ibid, p. 154



The gonads glands (the ovaries and testes) serve two major functions: first, they produce the germ cells (ova in the ovaries and spermatozoa in the testes) and second, the gonads synthesise steroid sex hormones that are necessary for the development and function of both female and male reproductive organs and secondary sex characteristics (e.g. the adult distribution of body hair, such as facial hair in men) as well as for pregnancy, childbirth and lactation. Three types of sex hormones exist, each with different functions: (1) estrogens (e.g. estradiol), which exert feminising effects; (2) progestogens (e.g. progesterone), which affect the uterus in preparation for and during pregnancy; and (3) androgens (e.g. testosterone), which exert masculinising effects. During menopause, estrogen production in the ovaries ceases. The resulting reduction in estrogen levels leads to symptoms such as hot flushes, sweating, heart palpitations, increased irritability, anxiety, depression and brittle bones (i.e. osteoporosis).<sup>20</sup>

The thyroid is another major gland of the endocrine system. The thyroid gland can affect many changes in the body as stated, such as hormonal changes as well as metabolism. When the thyroid produces too many hormones, the body uses more energy. The condition is known as an overactive thyroid and is called hyperthyroidism. There are a number of symptoms that can occur with an overactive thyroid. Several symptoms may include but are not limited to scant menstrual periods, irritability, sleep disturbance, visual problems, and eye irritation, as well as weight loss. However, sometimes the thyroid does not produce enough hormones, and the body uses energy more slowly. This condition is known as an underactive thyroid and is called hypothyroidism. These symptoms can include but are not limited to dry skin and hair, fatigue, forgetfulness, weight gain, hoarse voice, heavy menstrual periods and sensitivity to cold. As a result, many women suffer from symptoms that are similar to mental illness. Many even suffer from depression. A person's physician may order blood tests to determine levels of certain hormones in order to determine how best to treat the matter.

Research has confirmed that those changes in hormones can cause psychiatric conditions such as depression and anxiety. However, research is still searching for a definitive answer as to *why* this happens. Although the reason is unclear, research has shown a correlation between changes in hormonal conditions and psychiatric conditions. There are certain times when women are at risk of anxiety or depression and should be knowledgeable about the

---

<sup>20</sup> Ibid, p. 159

risk factors that can contribute to mental illness. Typically, hormonal changes take place during pregnancy, postpartum, menstruation and menopause.<sup>21</sup>

### 1.2.3 A Summary of the Endocrine glands

Following are a collaboration of the endocrine glands, their associated hormones and the functions thereof<sup>22</sup>:

Endocrine Gland	Hormone	Primary Hormone Function
Hypothalamus	Corticotropin-releasing hormone (CRH)	Stimulates the pituitary to release adrenocorticotrophic hormone (ACTH)
	Gonadotropin-releasing hormone (GnRH)	Stimulates the pituitary to release luteinizing hormone (LH) and follicle-stimulating hormone (FSH)
	Thyrotropin-releasing hormone (TRH)	Stimulates the pituitary to release thyroid-stimulating hormone (TSH)
	Growth hormone-releasing hormone (GHRH)	Stimulates the release of growth hormone (GH) from the pituitary
	Somatostatin	Inhibits the release of GH from the pituitary
	Dopamine	Inhibits the release of prolactin from the pituitary
Anterior pituitary gland	ACTH	Stimulates the release of hormones from the adrenal cortex
	LH	In women, stimulates the production of sex hormones (i.e. estrogens) in the ovaries as well as during ovulation; in men, stimulates testosterone production in the testes
	FSH	In women, stimulates follicle development; in men, stimulates sperm production
	TSH	Stimulates the release of thyroid hormone
	GH	Promotes the body's growth and development
Posterior pituitary gland	Prolactin Vasopressin	Controls milk production (i.e. lactation) Helps control the body's water and electrolyte levels
	Oxytocin	Promotes uterine contraction during labour and activates milk ejection in nursing women
Adrenal cortex	Cortisol	Helps control carbohydrate, protein, and lipid metabolism; protects against stress
	Aldosterone	Helps control the body's water and electrolyte regulation
Testes	Testosterone	Stimulates development of the male reproductive organs, sperm production, and protein anabolism
Ovaries	Estrogen (produced by the follicle)	Stimulates development of the female reproductive organs
	Progesterone (produced by the corpus luteum)	Prepares uterus for pregnancy and mammary glands for lactation
Thyroid gland	Thyroid hormone (i.e. thyroxine [T <sub>4</sub> ] and triiodothyronine [T <sub>3</sub> ])	Controls metabolic processes in all cells
	Calcitonin	Helps control calcium metabolism (i.e. lowers calcium levels in the blood)
Parathyroid gland	Parathyroid hormone (PTH)	Helps control calcium metabolism (i.e. increases calcium levels in the blood)

<sup>21</sup>Smith, H V (2013) 4 Step Process to Mental Illness. Unknown, pp. 45-46

<sup>22</sup>Hiller-Sturmhöfel, S and Bartke, A (1998) An Overview of the Endocrine System. Unpublished, p. 156

Pancreas	Insulin	Helps control carbohydrate metabolism (i.e. lowers blood sugar levels)
	Glucagon	Helps control carbohydrate metabolism (i.e. increases blood sugar levels)

### **1.3 EPIGENETICS**

There are many different types of cells in the body. The cells differentiate as the embryo develops, becoming increasingly specialised for specific functions. Skin cells protect, muscle cells contract, and neurons, the most highly specialised cells of all, conduct messages.

Every cell in the human body contains a complete set of DNA. DNA, the ‘recipe of life’, contains all the information inherited from one’s parents that helps to define the person, such as looks and certain abilities and a particular trait such as a good singing voice. A gene is a segment of DNA that contains codes to make proteins and other important body chemicals. DNA also includes information to control which genes are expressed and when, in all the cells of the body.

As an individual grows, new cells are created, each with a copy of the original set of DNA. Sometimes this copying process is imperfect, leading to a gene mutation that causes the gene to code for a slightly different protein. Some mutations are harmless, some can be helpful, and others give rise to disabilities or diseases.

Genes aren’t the only determinants of how one’s body functions. Throughout a person’s life, genes can be affected by the environment. In medicine, the term environment includes not only the physical surroundings but also factors that can affect human bodies, such as sleep, diet or stress. These factors may act in isolation or together in complex ways, to change the manner in which a gene is expressed or the way messages are conducted in the body.

Epigenetics is the study of how environmental factors can affect the operation of a given gene. But unlike gene mutations, epigenetic alterations do not modify the code of a gene. Rather, this affects when a gene turns on or off to produce a specific protein. Scientists believe epigenetics play a major role in mental disorders and the manner in which the human body reacts to particular types of medication. Some but not all mutations and epigenetic changes can be passed on to future generations. Further understanding of genes

and epigenetics may in future result in genetic testing for people at risk of mental disorders.<sup>23</sup> Symptoms of such could be the topic of further research.

### 1.3.1 Mental Illness and Genetics

There is no scientific proof that any mental illness is caused by genetic deficiencies in DNA. Chemical psychiatry only predicts two possible causes of mental illness: chemical imbalances and bad DNA, and therefore prescribes drugs as the cure of mental illness. The chemical psychiatry industry and many mental health officials imply that mental illnesses can be traced down to the DNA level. Chemical psychiatry represents 99.9% of all mental health theories. The reason for believing that mental illness is caused by genetics is because this science does not consider the spiritual dimension of mankind. In their view, mankind is nothing more than a mass of chemicals. This theory, however, is considered to be a myth by some.<sup>24</sup>

Dr David Kaiser, a psychologist, made the following observation<sup>25</sup>:

*I am constantly amazed by how many patients who come to see me believe or want to believe that their difficulties are biologic and can be relieved by a pill. This is despite the fact that modern psychiatry has yet to convincingly prove the genetic/biologic cause of any single mental illness. However, this does not stop psychiatry from making essentially unproven claims that depression, bipolar illness, anxiety disorders, alcoholism and a host of other disorders are in fact primarily biologic and probably genetic in origin, and that it is only a matter of time until all this is proven. This kind of faith in science and progress is staggering, not to mention naive and perhaps delusional.*

## 1.4 THE BRAIN AND THE MIND

Conversations about the relationship between the brain and the mind stretch back to Hippocrates, considered by many as the 'Father of Medicine'. About 450 B.C., Hippocrates

---

<sup>23</sup> National Institutes of Mental Health, Brain Basics [Online] Available from: <http://science.education.nih.gov/supplements/nih5/Mental/guide/info-mental-a.htm> [Accessed: 12 May 2014]

<sup>24</sup> Rudd, S, Mental illness and Genetics [Online] Available from: <http://www.bible.ca/psychiatry/psychiatry-mental-illness-genetics.htm> [Accessed: 5 May 2014]

<sup>25</sup> Kaiser, D (1996) Against Biologic Psychiatry, Psychiatric Times, December, Dec. 1996, Vol. XIII, Issue 12

hypothesised that the mind and the brain were one. Subsequent philosophers and scientists had differing opinions. Some thought the mind was located elsewhere in the body, such as the heart, or that it was part of the soul, while others felt the brain wasn't adequate in describing the full scope of the mind.

The mind is the expression of the brain. The Science Magazine article, *Linking Mind and Brain in the Study of Mental Illnesses: A Project for a Scientific Psychopathology*, states that the general consensus is that “*the mind is the expression of the activity of the brain and that these two are separable for purposes of analysis and discussion but inseparable in actuality*”.<sup>26</sup>

Author Dr Nancy C. Andreasen, Director of the Neuroimaging Research Center at The University of Iowa Carver College of Medicine, states her opinion that “*mental phenomena arise from the brain but that mental experience also affects the brain*”.<sup>27</sup> The content of the mind is changed by the physical changes to brain physiology through injury, trauma or drugs. These are mental experiences, and that is why scientists are of the opinion that the mind is a product – the cognitive output – of the brain.<sup>28</sup>

## 1.5 THE BRAIN AND THOUGHTS

In her book *Healing Begins with Sanctification of the Heart*, Dr Michelle Strydom<sup>29</sup> states that the latest medical research has discovered that 87% of all diseases are the result of what occurs in a person's thought-life. A massive body of research has shown that the mind-body connection is real and that what a person thinks affects him emotionally, intellectually and physically. Every thought that an individual meditates on causes a physical reaction in the body in the form of electrical current travelling along the nerves in the brain and the production of various hormones and chemicals that flow throughout the entire body in response to those thoughts. Clearly, what a person think affects the whole body. Man's endocrine system (hormones), nervous system, immune system, gastrointestinal system, heart and blood vessels, bones and muscles are all directly affected by the thoughts that he meditates on long term.

---

<sup>26</sup> All Psychology Careers. Brain, Mind and Mental Illness [Online] Available from: <http://www.allpsychologycareers.com/topics/brain-mind-mental-illness.html> [Accessed: 12 May 2014]

<sup>27</sup> Ibid.

<sup>28</sup> Ibid.

<sup>29</sup> Michelle Strydom is a Zimbabwean who trained and qualified as a medical doctor in South Africa. Her intention is to practice medicine for the glory of God and her passion is to see His people set free and healed of all their diseases.

Every time an individual meditates on a thought, it is actively changing the brain and body in either a positive or destructive way. If a believer is bringing every thought into captivity under the obedience of Christ<sup>30</sup> and is meditating on whatever is true, pure, lovely, of good report and praiseworthy<sup>31</sup>, the brain shall convert such thoughts into a reaction which is likely to produce health in the body.

*A happy heart is good medicine and a cheerful mind works healing, but a broken spirit dries up the bones.*

*Proverbs 17:22*

A thought may seem harmless, but if it becomes toxic, even just a thought can become spiritually, emotionally and physically dangerous. Should one entertain toxic thoughts of anxiety, fear, self-hatred, self-condemnation, self-rejection, anger, rage, bitterness, unforgiveness or jealousy, the body shall, in response to such spiritual attacks, secrete chemicals and hormones that will put one's health and peace at risk. The brain converts such thoughts into a physical reaction that is likely to lead to the development of disease in the body.<sup>32</sup>

The quality of a person's life and health is brought about by the quality of thinking. Man's life is an expression of thoughts. Satan knows that the mind-body connection is real. He knows that if he can manage to control man's thought-life, he can control his body chemistry and cause disease.<sup>33</sup>

Research conducted by Dr Caroline Leaf and other respected scientists has shown that the brain really can change, grow and heal.<sup>34</sup> The brain is the only organ in the body that doesn't age, but actually matures. With correct use, the human brain should become increasingly efficient with age. A person's intelligence develops according to how he or she determines it to develop. It is dynamic and goes hand in hand with learning how to use one's brain correctly. It is something that develops through a person's entire lifetime. The more the human brain is actively employed, the more intelligent such a person becomes. A person will improve the performance of his or her brain by 35 to 75% if thinking correctly.<sup>35</sup>

---

<sup>30</sup> 2 Corinthians 10:5

<sup>31</sup> Philippians 4:8

<sup>32</sup> Strydom, M K (2010) Healing Begins with Sanctification of the Heart. Eagle Wings Ministries, p. 7-8

<sup>33</sup> Ibid, p. 8

<sup>34</sup> Ibid, p. 9

<sup>35</sup> Ibid, pp. 9-23.

### 1.5.1 Memory

Mankind's brain is made up of nerves, each nerve looking like a tree: it has a trunk (called an axon) and branches (called dendrites). A person absorbs information from the environment around him all the time through his five senses. The brain processes and stores this information by building branches on the nerves in the brain. A new branch is made for every new piece of information. Proteins are made and used to grow new branches to hold the information produced by thoughts – this process is called *protein synthesis*.

Memory is the information stored on the branches of the nerves. As a person continues to meditate on a particular thought, more branches grow, the connections between those branches and the nerve gets stronger and the memory becomes permanent. Thus, the more one meditates on a thought, the more it is reinforced. The more branches one has on a particular nerve, the stronger or more intelligent that memory is. The average human brain has 100 billion nerves, and each nerve can grow between 15 000 and 200 000 branches. Neuroscientists have calculated that the total amount of storage space for information that the human brain can accommodate is the equivalent of life experiences of three million years.

Most people, however, don't use more than 6 to 8% of their brain in their entire lifetime. What is important is how a person builds information on a nerve cell, determining what type of memories are being retained. The quality of the information or memories stored in a person's brain depends on the quality of his thought life. If he or she meditates on thoughts of fear, anxiety, self-hatred, low self-esteem, rejection, guilt, condemnation, bitterness, unforgiveness, anger, rage, resentment and so forth, the brain fills with toxic memories that can cause illness.

The nerves that represent this are very dark and thick because they have a lot of branches, and create a very strong memory. The more densely organised the branches on the nerve are, the more connected and intelligent that memory is. A strong memory could be a good memory of information that one can use to enhance one's life or it can also be a bad toxic memory, which the Bible refers to as a negative stronghold in the mind<sup>36</sup>. Should one meditate on toxic thoughts, toxic memories are physically ensconced into the nerve networks in one's brain.<sup>37</sup>

---

<sup>36</sup> 2 Corinthians 10:5

<sup>37</sup> Strydom, M K (2010) Healing Begins with Sanctification of the Heart. Eagle Wings Ministries, pp. 7-23.

## 1.5.2 Areas in the Brain Connected to Thoughts

The following parts of the brain play an integral part in the formation of thoughts: The *cortex* of the brain is where the nerve trees are located; all the memories from birth to death are stored here on the branches of the nerves; the *corpus callosum* is the part of the brain used to think (this part is directly under the control of the person, the front part of which is where the free will is physically allocated); the *prefrontal cortex* is the part responsible for rational decision making; the *pituitary gland*; and the *hypothalamus* is the area of the brain that is crucial for learning.

The hypothalamus connects the mind to the body; it is the area of the brain that converts everything that is going on in a person's thought-life into a physical reaction. The hypothalamus is the chemical factory of the brain where the type and amount of chemicals released into the body in response to a person's thoughts and emotions is determined. This in turn determines the structure and quality of the memories that are built into the cortex. If thoughts are positive and godly, the hypothalamus will cause the production of chemicals that facilitate the feeling of peace, and the rest of the brain will respond by producing the correct formula of neurotransmitters (chemicals that transmit electrical impulses) for clear thinking and the building of healthy, intelligent memories. The corresponding physical reaction through the mind-body connection will produce health and prevent disease.

If the mind is dominated by toxic thoughts such as fear, anxiety, worry, unforgiveness, bitterness, anger, rage, resentment, self-hatred and so forth, the hypothalamus responds by producing either insufficient or excessive quantities of certain chemicals, such as Corticotropin Releasing Factor (CRF), which then become toxic and harmful. This alters the structure of the memories that are built in the cortex. These memories are toxic and the corresponding physical reaction through the mind-body connection leads to the advancement of disease.

Should an individual reject a thought by decision of free will, it will literally become hot air and it will not penetrate the brain any further. But if a person *chooses* to think about such information, it will shift onto the nerve branches and a memory is built. Good thoughts result in the building of a good memory. Negative thoughts result in the building of a bad, toxic memory. *Every single thought*, whether positive or toxic, goes through the same cycle when it forms. The only difference is that these thoughts release different quantities of chemicals, depending on which kind of thought it is (positive or toxic). Different thought structures are



caused by those chemicals. As a result, memories that are built from negative, toxic thoughts contrast strikingly to positive healthy memories.

While building memory, there are also emotions that are experienced. Learning is also an emotional experience. The chemicals in a person's brain that carry the information from his or her thoughts also carry the emotion associated with such thoughts. They are called information-emotion chemicals. They carry both emotion and the imprint or copy of the memory that was built in the brain. These chemicals of emotion are alive and dynamic; they are released in response to an individual's thoughts and flow through the entire body, connecting to receptors on the cells of the person's body, which is why a person physically experiences an emotional reaction.

A 'gut feeling' is genuine. The digestive system is connected to the brain by nerves and they communicate via these nerves. The small and large intestines are densely lined with these nerves as well as chemicals called neuropeptides and receptors that are busily exchanging information laden with emotional content, which is what gives a person a 'gut feeling'.

When meditating on a thought, a person is building memory and is simultaneously experiencing emotion. The information from that thought is stored in the cortex of the brain as branches on the trees of the mind. The emotion is also physically stored in the brain in the form of chemicals that are housed in an area of the brain called the amygdala and the deep limbic system.

Depending on what an individual is thinking about, either healthy trees are being built in the brain, which are good memories or toxic trees are being built, which are negative strongholds. Every time the individual thinks on that thought, the pre-existing memories in the brain are re-activated. When such a toxic tree is re-activated, the toxic chemicals are secreted that begin to make the individual sick, contributing to poor mental and physical health. Good things to think about for forging healthy trees are, for example, forgiveness and love, and meditating on God's Word. Bad things to think about are, for example, unforgiveness, bitterness and hatred.

A person may have spent an entire lifetime of 40, 50 or 60 years putting toxic thoughts into the brain and building toxic trees and negative strongholds. Such a person may have a

whole forest of toxic thorn trees in the brain but by correcting the thinking process such toxicity can be removed and new, healthy trees and memories be planted.<sup>38</sup>

An example is given by Dr M K Strydom, in her book *Healing Begins with Sanctification of the Heart*<sup>39</sup>:

*If you decide to reject those thoughts of unforgiveness, hatred, bitterness, anger etc. through genuine repentance, releasing and forgiveness, you can change that memory and the structure of those thorn trees. It has been scientifically proven that if you choose to reject those toxic thoughts and purposefully meditate on good thoughts such as the Word of God, the chemicals released from those good thoughts will flow through the thorn trees and literally remove the thorns. For example, when you repent for your bitterness and you forgive, the chemicals released from those thoughts will literally cut the thorns off that thorn tree of bitterness. The memory will always be there, for example you will always remember what your mother in law did to you. However, because you have forgiven that tree of bitterness will no longer affect you or make you sick because it no longer has the thorns that release those toxic chemicals... You can change and grow your brain at will through thinking.*

### 1.5.3 Brain Lateralization

Lateralization is the theory that the two halves of the brain's cerebral cortex, left and right, execute different functions, although working together. The lateralization theory, developed by Nobel-prize winners Roger Sperry and Robert Ornstein, helps to understand mankind's behaviour, personality, creativity, and the ability to use the proper mode of thinking when performing particular tasks<sup>40</sup>. The cerebral cortex is a part of the brain that exists only in humans and higher mammals, and its purpose is to manage the sophisticated intellect.

The two halves, or hemispheres, are joined by the corpus callosum. This is a bundle of more than 200 million nerve fibres which transmit data from one hemisphere to the other so that the two halves can communicate. Although this nerve connection would seem to be vital, it is

---

<sup>38</sup> Strydom, M K (2010) *Healing Begins with Sanctification of the Heart*. Eagle Wings Ministries, pp. 19-20

<sup>39</sup> Ibid, p. 20

<sup>40</sup> Stout, J H, Brain Lateralization [Online] Available from: <http://www.theorderoftime.com/politics/cemetery/stout/h/brain-la.htm> [Accessed: 2 June 2014]

severed in a surgical procedure for some people who suffer from epilepsy. The corpus callosum is up to 40% larger in women than it is in men.

The functions of the two hemispheres are as follows for right-handed people. For left-handed people, this information is reversed; for example, it is the right hemisphere which processes analytical thought.<sup>41</sup>

- *The left hemisphere specialises in analytical thought.* The left hemisphere deals with hard facts: abstractions, structure, discipline and rules, time sequences, mathematics, categorising, logic and rationality and deductive reasoning, knowledge, details, definitions, planning and goals, words (written, spoken and heard), productivity and efficiency, science and technology, stability, extraversion, physical activity, and the right side of the body.
- *The right hemisphere specialises in the softer aspects of life.* This includes intuition, feelings and sensitivity, emotions, daydreaming and visualising, creativity (including art and music), colour, spatial awareness, first impressions, rhythm, spontaneity and impulsiveness, the physical senses, risk-taking, flexibility and variety, learning by experience, relationships, mysticism, play and sports, introversion, humour, motor skills, the left side of the body, and a holistic way of perception that recognises patterns and similarities and then synthesises those elements into new forms.

When a person experiences a trauma, for example, the brain saves the memory in two versions – an analytical memory in the form of linear data in left-brain and an emotional memory in the right-brain.

The linear, or familiar data, is the detail of the event which is easily retrievable from the left-brain when remembering what happened. However, the detail of the event will fade away over time if not regularly visited.

The emotional memory linked to a physical reaction is stored in the right-brain and can be the *tears*, the *fright* or the *scream* for example. How this memory is indexed in the right-brain is where the problem lies. It seems to be saved randomly and scientists have been unsuccessful in fully understanding and documenting the saving process. Using trauma as an example, the trauma memory might be tagged October instead of September, when the

---

<sup>41</sup> Ibid.

actual event took place. So every year during October a person might go into depression without being able to explain why. It might be tagged as a blister on the right foot, and a year later, when fitting a shoe, an emotional experience is triggered.

The left-brain will tell the story with minimal emotion while the right-brain brings out the story emotion. Therefore, in order for a person to get complete healing from a trauma, he has to be able to recall the right-brain memory of the event. What usually happens is that the person teaches himself to block the right-brain, as the expression of emotions may be restricted by a third party or for some other reason such as to stay on task or not to be distracted.

Several techniques exist to trigger the right-brain memory. For example, one can use colouring crayons to colour a picture from a children's book. This therapy is necessary for only a few minutes and precision colouring is not necessary, as long as all the spaces are filled with colour. The geometry of spaces, the act of colouring and the motion will help release the right-brain memory. Once done with the colouring, allow a period of three to four minutes and then start telling the story of the incident or event out loud. It is very likely that different emotions will surface.

Another technique is to work with shapes. Working with building blocks can help release the memory after three or four minutes of building something. Shape-oriented work can also result in the release of the emotion. It is recommended that the story be told out loud, not necessarily to someone else. Listening to music is yet another technique. It is recommended that the person listens to some music for say ten minutes before telling the story.

To summarise, what is needed is the stimulation of the right brain before telling the story. This can be induced by actions as described above or essentially or anything stirring up the emotions, such as a good movie. Straight afterwards, the person should tell the story and see if different emotions surface, in an attempt to discover the root issue (a key emotion that is part of the indexing in the right-brain).<sup>42</sup>

The most common root is legitimacy, which is the fear that a person's essence is bad, unacceptable and flawed. Legitimacy is about a person's essence being acceptable, being good. Most, if not all cultures today, define legitimacy based on what a person does. God defines legitimacy based on who a person is: a person's essence and design comes from

---

<sup>42</sup> Burke, A, PTSD, CD 3, track 4

God. All people are a creation from Trinity God, made from dust of the earth. He personally designed every single person. God designed man's spirit out of His light; so in essence, the human spirit is made of the light of eternity. Man's body is designed by God in His image. God designed each person's destiny. He assigned man to do good works. When God was done with the design of man, there were no regrets from God. God loves man because of his essence.<sup>43</sup>

## 1.5.4 Unaccustomed Memories

### 1.5.4.1 Body Memory

Body memory is a proposition that the body itself is capable of storing memories, as opposed to only the brain. This is used to explain memories of events where the brain was not in a position to store memories, and is sometimes a catalyst for repressed memory recovery. These memories are often characterised with phantom pain in a part or parts of the body; therefore, the body is appearing to remember the past trauma. The idea of body memory is a belief commonly associated with the idea of repressed memories, in which memories of incest or sexual abuse can be retained and recovered through physical sensations.<sup>44</sup>

Trauma is physiological, not psychological; therefore, trauma literally lodges in the body. The sympathetic nervous system is responsible for most of the processes that occur under the conditions of danger, while the parasympathetic nervous system is responsible for a variety of processes that take place under conditions of safety and relaxation, as well as for the freeze response that takes place during extreme danger.

Neuroscientist Dr Stephen Porges, who developed the *polyvagal* theory, explains that when a person faces a threat to survival, he will assess whether social engagement or social disengagement will manage the challenge.<sup>45</sup> Under conditions of increased threat, the person will go into hyper-arousal and respond by fleeing or fighting. If either strategy does not work, the person will freeze and become immobile. Once the threat has passed, this biological response is 'shaken off' and the person's autonomic nervous system returns to

---

<sup>43</sup> Ibid., track 5

<sup>44</sup> Smith, S, Body Memories [Online] Available from: [http://www.ipt-forensics.com/journal/volume5/j5\\_4\\_2.htm](http://www.ipt-forensics.com/journal/volume5/j5_4_2.htm) [Accessed: 27 June 2014]

<sup>45</sup> Somatic Experiencing Trauma Institute, Distinguishing Between Trauma Activation and Healthy Discharge of Trauma [Online] Available from: <http://www.traumahealing.com/somatic-experiencing-trainings/trauma-awareness-for-massage-therapists.html> [Accessed: 13 June 2014]

normal. However, if this natural, biological discharge does not take place, the person becomes fixated in a state of hyper-arousal. In essence, the sympathetic nervous system is stuck in the *on* position and the parasympathetic nervous system is unable to fully return the body to rest. In this state, the person will quickly re-experience the traumatic event if any situation feels like the past trauma.

Post-Traumatic Stress Disorder (PTSD) can happen to anyone, even children. Sometimes an apparently minor incident can create a lasting effect on a person's nervous system. Medical procedures, accidents, natural disasters, abuse, or even simply witnessing an act of violence can cause trauma in an individual. Client traumas include physical abuse, mental or emotional abuse, sexual abuse, post-war traumas, environmental traumas, witnessing or being the victim of a violent crime and childhood traumas. Trauma Touch Therapy is a body work (like massaging) that helps trauma sufferers heal because it can stimulate a healthy, safe discharge of trauma, while staying present with the experience. Trauma discharge can manifest in sweating, laughing, sighing, yawning, crying, shaking, flushing and tingling.<sup>46</sup>

In order to identify and release body memory, the body needs someone's touch, although it does not necessarily have to be a masseuse. It does, however, have to be someone who is emotionally healthy themselves. There are two very familiar places that body memory is stored. The first is in the crease/curve of a person's shoulder blade, both sides. This is where trauma is generally stored beginning with birth trauma. The second is where a person's belt is. Lower back pain can be due to body memory. This is where 'futility' is stored, caused by people's expectations. Expectations are normative and expectations and pressure normally help a person excel. However, when someone creates an expectation for another person that this person is absolutely incapable of fulfilling or achieving, the result is 'futility', strongly associated with disappointment. And expectations not rooted in reality also generate this. An example is when a father expected his pregnant wife to provide him with a son and a girl is born instead. Therefore, expectations are required to be managed in such a manner as to ensure that whatever the outcome of the matter is, this is received in a positive spirit.

When being massaged in certain places the simple question needs to be put to God: God what is stored here? What do You want to show me? And then whatever memory is invoked, small or big, consider the associated pain and then ask: What is required to obtain closure of the matter? Is forgiveness needed? Does it need to be reframed, redefined? Are there

---

<sup>46</sup> Ibid.

connections to other memories? Does one have to speak hope over the memory? Does it need sharing with someone else? This process needs to be done over and over until God does not show anything anymore. It is likely to require many sessions (as average of a hundred) and can take a long time to fully resolve.

God can also reveal where the body memories are stored by a person simply asking Him to show them. God has designed man's body to be an enormous source of energy that supports his soul. If a person's body is a bundle of liability or contains large amounts of body memory, it will slow down any therapeutic work occurring, as the body was created to serve man by bringing the energy of the body to supplement the energy of the soul, brain and mind when a person is facing difficult challenges.<sup>47</sup>

Body memory can be triggered by every day events as well as time specific events. Body memory can be used for giving counselling session direction or as a starting point for a counselling session.

#### **1.5.4.2 Cell Memory**

Cellular memory is an additional suggestion that memories can be stored outside the brain. However, unlike body memory, the cellular memory hypothesis states that memories are stored in all the cells of human bodies, not in the bodies' organs. Cellular memory is the speculative notion that human body cells contain clues to a person's personality, taste, and history, independently of either genetic codes or brain cells. The idea that non-brain tissues can have memories is also believed by some individuals who have received organ transplants.<sup>48</sup>

Organ donors give a new life to organ transplant recipients. The most common organ transplants include the cornea, kidney, and heart, with heart transplants ranking the highest in five-year post-transplant survival rate of 74%. The heart ultimately stores memories through combinatorial coding by nerve cells which allows the sensory system to recognise smells, according to cellular memory theory. The heart carries the history of a person's life in great detail. The Chinese people are very familiar with this notion.<sup>49</sup>

---

<sup>47</sup> Burke, A, PTSD, CD 4, track 6

<sup>48</sup> Skeptic's Dictionary, Cellular Memory [Online] Available from: <http://skeptidic.com/cellular.html> [Accessed: 27 June 2014]

<sup>49</sup> Borrelli, L, Can An Organ Transplant Change A Recipient's Personality? [Online] Available from: <http://www.medicaldaily.com/can-organ-transplant-change-recipients-personality-cell-memory-theory-affirms-yes-247498> [Accessed: 13 June 2014]

The cell memory phenomenon, while still not considered scientifically, is supported by several scientists and physicians. The behaviours and emotions developed by the recipient from the original donor are due to the combinatorial memories stored in the neurons of the organ donated. Heart transplants are said to be the most susceptible to cell memory where organ transplant recipients received a new heart. In a study published in the journal of *Quality of Life Research*<sup>50</sup>, researchers interviewed 47 patients who received a heart transplant over a period of two years in Vienna, Austria. Researchers found that 79% of patients did not feel that their personality changed post-surgery, 15% experienced a change in personality due to the life-threatening event, and 6% did confirm a drastic change in their personality due to their new heart. While the percentage of personality changes as a result of an organ transplant appears to be insignificant, further research is being conducted to validate the this concept.

At the School of Nursing at the University of Hawaii in Honolulu, researchers sought to evaluate whether changes experienced by organ transplant recipients were parallel to the history of the donor. Researchers focused on 10 patients who received a heart transplant and found two to five parallels per patient post-surgery in relation to their donor's history. The parallels that were observed in the study were changes in food, music, art, sexual, recreational and career preferences in addition to name associations and sensory experiences. In the study, a patient received a heart transplant from a man who was killed by a gunshot to the face, and the organ recipient then reported to have dreams of seeing hot flashes of light directly on his face.

Aside from scientific studies, there have been several real-life cases that support the cell memory theory. Claire Sylvia, a heart transplant recipient who received the organ from an 18-year-old male who died in a motorcycle accident, reported having a craving for beer and chicken nuggets after the surgery. The heart transplant recipient also began having reoccurring dreams about a man named 'Tim L'. Upon searching the obituaries, Sylvia found out her donor's name was Tim and that he loved all of the food that she craved, as shared in her book, *A Change of Heart*.<sup>51</sup>

---

<sup>50</sup> Ibid.

<sup>51</sup> Ibid.



## 1.6 THE BRAIN AND SUBSTANCE ABUSE

Scientific studies have shown clearly that certain drugs can cause dramatic changes in the brain, but not all questions have been answered. Drugs can change the structure of the brain. Perhaps one of the most dramatic long-term effects of a drug is to kill neurons. Scientists, for many reasons, don't know all of the effects that a drug has. First, the brain is such a complicated organ that, despite great scientific advances, understanding all that it does will take many more years. Second, individuals may respond differently to drugs due to genetic and other differences among people. Third, many people who use drugs abuse more than one drug. Many individuals who take cocaine, for example, also drink alcohol. The combination of the drugs makes it difficult to determine what the particular effect of one drug alone may be. And finally, another complication is that people addicted to drugs may have other health problems in addition to their drug problem.

### 1.6.1.1 Hallucinogens

Hallucinogens, or psychedelic drugs, are a chemically diverse group of drugs that cause changes in a person's thought processes, perceptions of the physical world, and sense of time passing. Hallucinogens can be found naturally in some plants, and can be synthesised in the laboratory. Most hallucinogens are abused as recreational drugs.

Many cultures recorded eating certain plants specifically to induce visions or alter the perception of reality. Shamans in Siberia were known to eat the hallucinogenic mushroom *Amanita muscaria*. The ancient Greeks and the Vikings also used naturally occurring plant hallucinogens. Peyote, a spineless cactus native to the Southwestern United States and Mexico, was used by native peoples, including the Aztecs, to produce visions.

The best known hallucinogens are lysergic acid diethylamide (LSD), mescaline, psilocybin, and MDMA (ecstasy). Phencyclidine (PCP, angel dust) can produce hallucinations, as can amphetamines and marijuana, but these drugs are not considered classic hallucinogens. In addition, new designer drugs that are chemical variants of classic hallucinogens are apt to appear on the street at any time.

All hallucinogens appear to affect the brain in similar ways. When a hallucinogenic compound binds with serotonin receptors, serotonin is blocked from those receptor sites,

and nerve transmission is altered. There is an increase in free (unbound) serotonin in the brain. The result is a distortion of the senses of sight, sound, and touch, disorientation in time and space, and alterations of mood. In the case of hallucinogen intoxication, however, a person is not normally delirious, unconscious, or dissociated. He is aware that these changes in perception are caused by the hallucinogen.

Hallucinogens are attractive to recreational drug users for a number of reasons, including the fact that they are minimally addictive and there are no physical withdrawal symptoms upon stopping use; they produce few serious or debilitating physical side effects; they do not usually produce a delusional state, excessive stupor or excessive stimulation; they do not cause memory loss with occasional use; they are easily and cheaply available; they produce a high that gives the illusion of increasing creativity, empathy, or self-awareness; and deaths from overdoses are rare.

On the other hand, strong hallucinogens such as LSD can cause frightening and anxiety-evoking emotional experiences, known as bad trips. Flashbacks, where the sensations experienced while under the influence of a drug recur uncontrollably without drug use, can occur for months after a single drug use. During hallucinogen intoxication, reality may be so altered that a person may endanger himself by believing he is capable of feats such as flying off buildings. Hallucinogens also may induce or cause a worsening of latent psychiatric disorders such as anxiety, depression and psychosis. Hallucinogens can also cause paranoia, long-term memory loss, personality changes (especially if there is a latent psychiatric disorder) and psychological drug dependence.<sup>52</sup>

#### **1.6.1.2 Amphetamines**

Amphetamines are a group of powerful and highly addictive substances that dramatically affect the central nervous system. They induce a feeling of well-being and improve alertness, attention and performance on various cognitive and motor tasks. Closely related are the so called designer amphetamines, the most well-known of which is the 'club drug' MDMA, best known as 'ecstasy'. Finally, some over-the-counter drugs used as appetite suppressants also have amphetamine-like action. Amphetamine-related disorders refer to the effects of

---

<sup>52</sup> Encyclopedia of Mental Disorders, Hallucinogens and Related Disorders [Online] Available from: <http://www.minddisorders.com/Flu-Inv/Hallucinogens-and-related-disorders.html> [Accessed: 27 June 2014]

abuse, dependence and acute intoxication stemming from inappropriate amphetamine and amphetamine-related drug usage.

Symptoms of heavy, chronic, or episodic use of amphetamine, known as amphetamine dependence, can be very serious. Amphetamine dependence is characterised by compulsive drug-seeking and drug use leading to functional and molecular changes in the brain. Aggressive or violent behaviour may occur, especially when high doses are ingested. The individual may develop anxiety or paranoid ideas, also with the possibility of experiencing terrifying psychotic episodes that resemble schizophrenia, with visual or auditory hallucinations, delusions such as the sensation of insects creeping on the skin, known as 'formication'. Also hyper-activity, hyper-sexuality, confusion and incoherence may be experienced. Amphetamine-induced psychosis differs from true psychosis in that despite other symptoms, the disorganised thinking that is a hallmark of schizophrenia tends to be absent.<sup>53</sup>

#### **1.6.1.3 Cocaine**

Cocaine is extracted from the cocoa plant which grows in Central and South America. The substance is processed into many forms for use as an illegal drug of abuse. Cocaine is dangerously addictive, and users of the drug experience a 'high' – a feeling of euphoria or intense happiness, along with hyper vigilance, increased sensitivity, irritability or anger, impaired judgment and anxiety. Cocaine is known by such street names as 'coke', 'blow', 'C', 'flake' 'snow' and 'toot'. It is most commonly inhaled or snorted. Crack is a form of cocaine that can be smoked and that produces an immediate, more intense, and more short-lived high. It comes in off-white chunks or chips called rocks.

In addition to their stand-alone use, both cocaine and crack are often mixed with other substances. Cocaine may be mixed with methcathinone to create a 'wildcat'. Cigars may be hollowed out and filled with a mixture of crack and marijuana. Either cocaine or crack used in conjunction with heroin is called a 'speedball'. Cocaine used together with alcohol represents the most common fatal two-drug combination.

Cocaine-related disorders can be subdivided into two categories: cocaine use disorders and

---

<sup>53</sup> Encyclopedia of Mental Disorders, Amphetamines [Online] Available from: <http://www.minddisorders.com/A-Br/Amphetamines-and-related-disorders.html> [Accessed: 27 June 2014]

cocaine-induced disorders. Cocaine use disorders include cocaine dependence and cocaine abuse. Cocaine-induced disorders include cocaine intoxication, cocaine withdrawal, cocaine intoxication delirium, cocaine-induced psychotic disorder with delusions, cocaine-induced psychotic disorder with hallucinations, cocaine-induced mood disorder, cocaine-induced anxiety disorder, cocaine-induced sexual dysfunction, cocaine-induced sleep disorder, and cocaine-related disorders not otherwise specified.<sup>54</sup>

Cocaine has powerful negative effects on the heart, brain and emotions. Deep in the brain, cocaine interferes with the chemical messengers – neurotransmitters – that nerves use to communicate with each other. Cocaine blocks norepinephrine, serotonin, dopamine, and other neurotransmitters from being reabsorbed. The resulting chemical buildup between nerves causes euphoria or feeling 'high'. Cocaine can constrict blood vessels in the brain, causing strokes. This can happen even in young people without other risk factors for strokes. Cocaine causes seizures and can lead to bizarre or violent behaviour.

Cocaine is bad for the heart. Cocaine increases heart rate and blood pressure while constricting the arteries supplying blood to the heart. The result can be a heart attack, even in young people without heart disease. Cocaine can also trigger a deadly abnormal heart rhythm called arrhythmia. Snorting cocaine damages the nose and sinuses. Regular use can cause nasal perforation. Smoking crack cocaine irritates the lungs and, in some people, causes permanent lung damage. Cocaine can cause sudden, overwhelming kidney failure through a process called rhabdomyolysis. In people with high blood pressure, regular cocaine use can accelerate the long-term kidney damage caused by high blood pressure.<sup>55</sup>

## **1.7 BRAIN IMAGING TECHNIQUES**

Brain imaging techniques allow doctors and researchers to view activity or problems within the human brain, without invasive neurosurgery. There are a number of imaging techniques used in research facilities and hospitals throughout the world<sup>56</sup>, as discussed next.

---

<sup>54</sup> Encyclopedia of Mental Disorders, Cocaine [Online] Available from: <http://www.minddisorders.com/Br-Del/Cocaine-and-related-disorders.html> [Accessed: 27 June 2014]

<sup>55</sup> WebMD, Cocaine Use and its Effects [Online] Available from: <http://www.webmd.com/mental-health/addiction/cocaine-use-and-its-effects> [Accessed: 8 April 2014]

<sup>56</sup> Psychcentral, Types of Brain Imaging Techniques [Online] Available from: <http://psychcentral.com/lib/types-of-brain-imaging-techniques/0001057> [Accessed: 12 May 2014]

### **1.7.1 Functional Magnetic Resonance Imaging**

Functional magnetic resonance imaging, or fMRI, is a technique for measuring brain activity. It works by detecting the changes in blood oxygenation and flow that occur in response to neural activity. When a brain area is more active, it consumes more oxygen, and to meet this increased demand blood flow increases to the active area. fMRI can be used to produce activation maps showing which parts of the brain are involved in a particular mental process.

### **1.7.2 Computed Tomography Scanning**

Computed Tomography scanning (CT) builds up a picture of the brain based on the differential absorption of X-rays. Images made using x-rays depend on the absorption of the beam by the tissue it passes through. Bone and hard tissue absorb x-rays well, air and water absorb very little and soft tissue is somewhere in between. Thus, CT scans reveal the gross features of the brain but do not resolve its structure well.

### **1.7.3 Positron Emission Tomography**

Positron Emission Tomography (PET) uses trace amounts of short-lived radioactive material to map functional processes in the brain. When the material undergoes radioactive decay a positron is emitted which can be picked up by the detector. Areas of high radioactivity are associated with brain activity.

### **1.7.4 Electroencephalography**

Electroencephalography (EEG) is the measurement of the electrical activity of the brain by recording from electrodes placed on the scalp. The resulting traces are known as an electroencephalogram and represent an electrical signal from a large number of neurons. The EEG is capable of detecting changes in electrical activity in the brain on a millisecond-level.

### **1.7.5 Magnetoencephalography**

Magnetoencephalography (MEG) is an imaging technique used to measure the magnetic fields produced by electrical activity in the brain via extremely sensitive devices known as SQUIDS. These measurements are commonly used in both research and clinical settings.

### **1.7.6 Near Infrared Spectroscopy**

Near infrared spectroscopy is an optical technique for measuring blood oxygenation in the brain. It works by shining light in the near infrared part of the spectrum (700-900nm) through the skull and detecting how much the reemerging light is attenuated. This depends on blood oxygenation and thus NIRS can provide an indirect measure of brain activity.

### **1.7.7 High-resolution Imaging Technology**

Researchers are able, for the first time, to image a whole, intact brain in three dimensions and obtain a virtually transparent view of its inner structure. The new technology, called Clarity, involves an intricate process of replacing the brain's fatty molecules and their role of holding the brain together, with a clear transparent gel called a hydrogel. Once complete, after roughly nine days, researchers are then able to use 3-D imaging technology to see all the brain's important structures from single neurons to populations of neurons and how they project, to axons, dendrites and synapses.

This ground-breaking technique was developed by a multidisciplinary team led by Brain & Behavior Research Foundation Scientific Council Member and NARSAD Grantee Karl Deisseroth, M.D., Ph.D. The research was reported online on April 10<sup>th</sup> 2013 in the journal entitled *Nature*.<sup>57</sup>

---

<sup>57</sup> Breakthrough Technology-CLARITY-Offers 3-D View of Inner Structures of the Brain (<http://bbrfoundation.org/discoveries/breakthrough-technology-clarity-offers-3-d-view-of-inner-structures-of-the-brain>) and Brain Scans can display Mental Models of Other (http://psychcentral.com/news/2013/03/06/brain-scans-can-display-mental-models-of-others/52268.html)

Dr Deisseroth explains<sup>58</sup>:

*Studying intact systems with this sort of molecular resolution and global scope to be able to see the fine detail and the big picture at the same time have been a major unmet goal in biology, and a goal that Clarity begins to address. It enables researchers to study complex biological systems with high resolution without taking them apart.*

The new imaging technology can be used to make any organ transparent, but it was the challenges of imaging the brain that motivated Dr Deisseroth. He hopes the technology will lead to identification of brain malfunctions that cause mental disorders such as schizophrenia, depression and autism.

The research in this study was performed primarily on mouse brains, but the team also analysed post-mortem brain tissue from a patient with autism spectrum disorder (ASD). They were able to see dendrites of neurons in the cortex joining together in ladder-like patterns in the ASD patient, a pattern not seen in typical brains.

More fascinating new research discovered that it is possible to tell who a person is thinking about by analysing images of his brain. Neuroscientists from Cornell University discovered that advanced imaging techniques can display the unique patterns of brain activation that occur when we think of others.

Nathan Spreng, Ph.D., Assistant Professor of Human Development in Cornell's College of Human Ecology expressed<sup>59</sup> that,

*When we looked at our data, we were shocked that we could successfully decode who our participants were thinking about based on their brain activity.*

Experts say that while everyone agrees that understanding and predicting the behaviour of others is key to managing life circumstances, little is known about how the brain actually models the enduring personality traits that may drive others' behaviour.

---

<sup>58</sup> Ibid.

<sup>59</sup> Psychcentral, Brain Scans can display Mental Models of Other [Online] Available from: <http://psychcentral.com/news/2013/03/06/brain-scans-can-display-mental-models-of-others/52268.html> [Accessed: 12 May 2014]

The ability to predict behaviours helps to anticipate how someone will act in a situation that may not have happened before. In an effort to learn more about this innate ability, researchers asked 19 young adults to learn about the personalities of four people who differed on key personality traits. Participants were given different scenarios (e.g. sitting on a bus when an elderly person gets on and there are no seats) and asked to imagine how a specified person would respond. During the task, their brains were scanned using functional magnetic resonance imaging (fMRI) which measures brain activity by detecting changes in blood flow. Investigators found that different patterns of brain activity in the medial prefrontal cortex were associated with each of the four different personalities.

In other words, which person was being imagined could be accurately identified based solely on the brain activation pattern. The results suggest that the brain codes the personality traits of others in distinct brain regions and this information is integrated in the medial prefrontal cortex to produce an overall personality model used to plan social interactions, the researchers say.

Spreng goes on to explain that<sup>60</sup>

*Prior research has implicated the anterior mPFC in social cognition disorders such as autism and our results suggest people with such disorders may have an inability to build accurate personality models. If further research bears this out, we may ultimately be able to identify specific brain activation biomarkers not only for diagnosing such diseases, but for monitoring the effects of interventions.*

## 1.8 THE CHEMICAL DESIGN OF THE BRAIN

### 1.8.1 Chemical Addictions

The word *addiction* is derived from a Latin term for 'enslaved by' or 'bound to'. Addiction exerts a long and powerful influence on the brain that manifests in three distinct ways: (1) craving for the object of addiction; (2) loss of control over its use; and (3) continuing involvement with it despite adverse consequences.<sup>61</sup>

---

<sup>60</sup> Ibid.

<sup>61</sup> Harvard Medical School. How Addiction Hijacks the Brain. [Online] Available from: [http://www.health.harvard.edu/newsletters/Harvard\\_Mental\\_Health\\_Letter/2011/July/how-addiction-hijacks-the-brain](http://www.health.harvard.edu/newsletters/Harvard_Mental_Health_Letter/2011/July/how-addiction-hijacks-the-brain) [Accessed: 12 May 2014]



Substance dependence, commonly called drug addiction, is a compulsive need to use drugs in order to function normally. When such substances are unobtainable, the user suffers from withdrawal. Drugs known to cause addiction include both legal and illegal drugs as well as prescription and over-the-counter drugs. It also includes alcohol, caffeine and nicotine. The top three drugs causing addiction are marijuana, opioid (narcotic) pain relievers and cocaine.<sup>62</sup>

Behavioural or behavioural addiction (as opposed to chemical addiction), also referred to as soft addiction, process addiction<sup>63</sup>, or non-substance-related addiction, is a form of addiction not caused by the usage of drugs.<sup>64</sup> Behavioural addiction consists of a compulsion to repeatedly engage in an action until it causes negative consequences to the person's physical, mental, social, and financial well-being<sup>65</sup>. Behavioural addictions, sometimes referred to as impulse control disorders, are increasingly recognised as treatable forms of addictions. The type of behaviours which some people have identified as being addictive include gambling, food, sex, viewing pornography, use of computers, playing video games, use of the internet, work, exercise, spiritual obsession (as opposed to religious devotion), cutting and shopping.<sup>66</sup>

From the psychological and psychiatric viewpoint, behavioural addictions include a collection of disorders, such as anxiety, depression, obsessive thoughts, withdrawal and isolationism, affective disorders, disturbances in social relationships, school problems such as educational failure and lack of interest in doing homework, occupational or interpersonal difficulties, isolation and negligence of friends and family or personal responsibilities, and mental or physical restlessness. In instances when the individual reduces or stops a specific behaviour, excessive fatigue, lifestyle changes, significantly reduced physical activity, sleep deprivation, changes in sleep patterns, impatience, sexual deviations, violence, eating disorders and withdrawal symptoms could result.<sup>67</sup>

---

<sup>62</sup> PubMed Health, Drug Dependence, [Online] Available from: <http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmedhealth/PMH0002490/> [Accessed: 27 June 2014]

<sup>63</sup> Shaffer, Howard J (1996) Understanding the means and objects of addiction: Technology, the internet, and gambling. *Journal of Gambling Studies* 12 (4): 461–9

<sup>64</sup> Albrecht U, Kirschner N E, Grüsser SM (2007) Diagnostic instruments for behavioural addiction: an overview. *Psychosoc Med* 4: Doc11 and Potenza MN (September 2006). Should addictive disorders include non-substance-related conditions? *Addiction*. 101 Suppl 1: 142–51.

<sup>65</sup> Stein, D J and Hollander, E; Rothbaum, B O (2009). *Textbook of Anxiety Disorders*. American Psychiatric Pub. pp. 359 and Parashar A and Varma A (2007) Behavior and substance addictions: is the world ready for a new category in the DSM-V? *CNS Spectr* 12 (4): p. 257

<sup>66</sup> DSM Library, Substance Related and Addictive Disorders [Online] Available from: <http://dsm.psychiatryonline.org/content.aspx?bookid=556&sectionid=41101782> [Accessed: 27 June 2014]

<sup>67</sup> PMC. Behavioral Addiction versus Substance Addiction [Online] Available from: <http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC3354400/> [Accessed: 12 May 2014]

There are six criteria for any kind of addiction to be met, identified below<sup>68</sup>:

1. *Salience*: Domination of a person's life by the activity.
2. *Euphoria*: A 'buzz' or a 'high' is derived from the activity.
3. *Tolerance*: The activity has to be undertaken to a progressively greater extent to achieve the same 'buzz'.
4. *Withdrawal Symptoms*: Cessation of the activity leads to the occurrence of unpleasant emotions or physical effects.
5. *Conflict*: The activity leads to conflict with others or self-conflict.
6. *Relapse and Reinstatement*: Resumption of the activity with the same vigour subsequent to attempts to abstain; negative life consequences, and negligence of job, educational or career opportunities.

Today, addiction in all forms is recognised as a chronic disease that changes both brain structure and function. Just as cardiovascular disease damages the heart and diabetes impairs the pancreas, addiction hijacks the brain.

Neuroimaging technologies and more recent research have shown that certain pleasurable activities such as gambling, shopping, and sex, can also co-opt the brain. Genetic vulnerability contributes to the risk of developing an addiction. But behaviour plays a key role, especially when it comes to reinforcing a habit. The brain registers all pleasures in the same way, whether they originate with a psychoactive drug, a monetary reward, a sexual encounter or a satisfying meal. In the brain, pleasure has a distinct signature: the release of the neurotransmitter dopamine in the nucleus accumbens, a cluster of nerve cells lying underneath the cerebral cortex (see illustration). Dopamine release in the nucleus accumbens is so consistently tied with pleasure that neuroscientists refer to the region as the brain's pleasure centre.

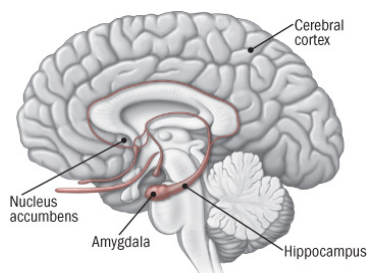


Figure 1.5: The Brain's Reward Centre<sup>69</sup>

---

<sup>68</sup> Ibid.

<sup>69</sup> Harvard Medical School. How Addiction Hijacks the Brain. [Online] Available from: [http://www.health.harvard.edu/newsletters/Harvard\\_Mental\\_Health\\_Letter/2011/July/how-addiction-hijacks-the-brain](http://www.health.harvard.edu/newsletters/Harvard_Mental_Health_Letter/2011/July/how-addiction-hijacks-the-brain) [Accessed: 12 May 2014]

Addictive drugs provide a shortcut to the brain's reward system by flooding the nucleus accumbens with dopamine. The hippocampus lays down memories of this rapid sense of satisfaction, and the amygdala creates a conditioned response to certain stimuli. All drugs of abuse, from nicotine to heroin, cause a particularly powerful surge of dopamine in the nucleus accumbens. The likelihood that the use of a drug or participation in a rewarding activity will lead to addiction is directly linked to the speed with which it promotes dopamine release, the intensity of that release, and the reliability of that release. Even taking the same drug through different methods of administration can influence how likely it is to lead to addiction. Smoking a drug or injecting it intravenously as opposed to swallowing it as a pill, for example, generally produces a faster, stronger dopamine signal and is more likely to lead to drug misuse.

Scientists once believed that the experience of pleasure alone was enough to prompt people to continue seeking an addictive substance or activity. But more recent research suggests that the situation is more complicated. Dopamine not only contributes to the experience of pleasure, but also plays a role in learning and memory; two key elements in the transition from liking something to becoming addicted to it.

According to the current theory about addiction, dopamine interacts with another neurotransmitter, glutamate, to take over the brain's system of reward-related learning. This system has an important role in sustaining life because it links activities needed for human survival (such as eating and sex) with pleasure and reward. The reward circuit in the brain includes areas involved with motivation and memory as well as with pleasure. Addictive substances and behaviours stimulate the same circuit and then overload it.

Repeated exposure to an addictive substance or behaviour causes nerve cells in the nucleus accumbens and the prefrontal cortex (the area of the brain involved in planning and executing tasks) to communicate in a way that couples LIKING something with WANTING it, in turn driving an individual to pursue it. That is, this process motivates the person to take action to seek out the source of pleasure. Over time, the brain adapts in a way that actually makes the sought-after substance or activity less pleasurable.

In nature, rewards usually come only with time and effort. Addictive drugs and behaviours provide a shortcut, flooding the brain with dopamine and other neurotransmitters. Addictive drugs, for example, can release two to ten times the amount of dopamine that natural rewards do, and they do it more quickly and more reliably. In a person who becomes

addicted, brain receptors become overwhelmed. The brain responds by producing less dopamine or eliminating dopamine receptors. As a result of these adaptations, dopamine has less impact on the brain's reward centre.

People who develop an addiction typically find that, in time, the desired substance no longer gives them as much pleasure. They have to take more of it to obtain the same dopamine 'high' because their brains have adapted: an effect known as tolerance. At this point, compulsion takes over. The pleasure associated with an addictive drug or behaviour subsides, and yet the memory of the desired effect and the need to recreate it (the WANTING) persists. It's as though the normal machinery of motivation is no longer functioning.

The learning process also comes into play. The hippocampus and the amygdala store information about environmental cues associated with the desired substance, so that it can be located again. These memories help create a conditioned response, an intense craving, whenever the person encounters those environmental cues. Cravings contribute not only to addiction but to relapse after a hard-won sobriety. A person addicted to heroin may be in danger of relapse when he sees a hypodermic needle, for example, while another person might start to drink again after seeing a bottle of whiskey. Conditioned learning helps explain why people who develop an addiction risk relapse even after years of abstinence.<sup>70</sup>

### 1.8.2 The Chemical Adam

In his book *Immersed in Him*, Emerson Ferrell explains the chemical Adam<sup>71</sup>: God formed Adam from the earth and simultaneously ignited his soul and spirit with His breath. Adam was spiritually connected on Heaven's respirator system through God's breath, thoughts, and blood. As long as he was joined with God, sin could not destroy the soul or body. Sin destroys the mind first, and eventually the body will develop physical diseases.

Ferrell defines thoughts and blood<sup>72</sup>:

*Thoughts are the source of sin and our blood if the medium for destruction...Sin has a destructive path, beginning first with the mind and finishing in the body.*

---

<sup>70</sup> Ibid.

<sup>71</sup> Ferrell, L E (2010) *Immersed in Him*. United States of America: Destiny Image Publisher Inc., pp. 91-104

<sup>72</sup> Ibid., p. 92

Physiologically, man's brain is made of tiny nerve cell called neurons. These neurons have tiny, hair-like fibres which connect with other neurons to form a network. Thoughts and memories are produced in each place the nerve endings attach. These connections form a 'mental library' of experiences and relationships which become the mind's resource centre. That means, over time, all of a person's ideas, desires, imaginations, thoughts and feelings construct an integrated network of sensations throughout the brain and central nervous system of the body. These highways of experiences construct elaborate associations with one's emotions. For example, if one thinks about a certain relationship, such as friendship, it might elicit a memory of pain linked to hurt, which may be connected to anger or revenge, which in turn evokes the image of a specific person or event, returning to that person's concept of friendships.

The wall of emotions is constructed from the neural network, and sophisticatedly joined throughout the central nervous system to thoughts associated with love or marriage. The pain from the relationship will be reinforced by these images and concepts each time a person identifies himself as a victim.

These 'movies' a person watches inside his mind happen instantaneously and are the perceived realities which activate his emotions. The brain is unable to distinguish between images outside the mind from those on the inside. All of the mind's pictures are first formed behind the cerebral cortex with light and sound from the eyes and ears. No one is capable of making objective observations in the present because of their past experiences and current emotional condition. Each time an individual experiences a new relationship or situation, he measures it with past memories. This prevents anyone from being objective; consequently, all of our observations are subjective.

All of a person's stored experiences from the past contaminate the present and add further emotional weight to the images he defines as "I". The phrase "living in the past" is true, and it is one of the hindrances to a believer's faith. In essence, a person's perceptions of reality are made from his 'mirror' of memories. It is this reflection which contributes to the personalities of who he believes himself to be. In most cases, the life an individual is living is almost entirely a reflection of past experiences.

The mind forms digital memories through the five senses, aided primarily by light and sound. That means even touching, tasting or smelling a physical object is compared with the past digital images stored in the mind's library. A person's pictures of reality produce emotions

from thoughts and images connected to his nerve network in the brain's frontal lobe. Man has determined his senses to be unreliable and therefore incapable of discerning reality. But that does not prevent a person from attaching emotional lives to these false images, which ultimately produces bad attitudes and behaviours.

For example, if a person is consistently angry, sad or depressed, the respective link, which is formed in the neural network, becomes more integrated and harder to change. He eventually forms a destructive long-term relationship with those emotions. The network expands and increases in more harmful behaviours the more he responds to the feelings. On the other hand, by laughing or singing, he can break connections formed in his neural networks. These activities can excite nerve cells that serve to interrupt thoughts and break patterns of destructive behaviour. Desire is the most addictive emotion in our bodies, and it is most often displayed with pictures and images. The images or imaginations are chemical sensations stored in the mind's frontal lobe.

One of the greatest tools the Lord has given the believer to change physiology and chemical connections is the ability to pray in tongues. There are many examples that demonstrate the power of this heavenly gift.

Ferrell uses the following example:

*I remember waking up one day with a tremendous pain in my back. Before I knew it my mind was racing toward the images of past experiences and the end result. In the middle of that mental journey the Holy Spirit interrupted me with the desire to pray in tongues. After praying for about 10 minutes in tongues the pain had totally disappeared and the power of faith resided with me all day.<sup>73</sup>*

If a person perceives the illusions of his thoughts to be reality, the body will shape its emotions around those beliefs. Those beliefs will create an imbalance in the body's emotional centre and activate a gland called the hypothalamus. One of the responsibilities of the hypothalamus gland is to assemble chemicals most closely associated with one's emotional cravings. These chemicals are called peptides, types of amino acids. The hypothalamus secretes chemical compounds that closely match the emotions. There are chemicals for sadness, anger, victimisation, lust, depression, and joy, for example. If the brain or body encounters any of those emotions, the hypothalamus will manufacture a peptide to offset

---

<sup>73</sup> Ibid., p. 95

those feelings. It then releases those peptides through the blood stream where it enters the cells.

Peptides are very strong amino acids whose main function is to balance the emotional centre of the organism. Neurologists have identified a peptide called enkephalin which is known to act as a bonding agent in opiates such as heroin and morphine. This naturally-occurring peptide is released in the blood stream during a response to self-destructive stress. The mind will manufacture and release these peptides in attempt to sedate the central nervous system and prevent death.

The body's cells are designed to regenerate most effectively when the chemicals or amino acids are alkaline. Thoughts of happiness, peace and joy create the proper sadness, anger, rage, jealousy and depression to produce acidic chemicals, which change cell DNA structure and character. In essence, the emotions trigger images which produce substances which can alter the cells. The cells form addictions to the chemicals and long-term relationships with the emotions. The body reflects the chemical it demands most often. Consuming pharmaceutical drugs weakens and eventually destroys the body's immune system. Over time, the body loses its ability to produce proper chemicals to protect its organs.

The body makes demands on the hypothalamus to supply chemicals to match the emotions of betrayal, paranoia, physical and sexual appetites, or the like. The mind does not judge the character of the person making the demand. It simply supplies the chemicals to satisfy the emotional trauma created from the first Adam's sin nature. Unless the character changes, the body and mind will be slaves to the emotions.

Man can become addicted to the chemicals his body creates even if the behaviours are destructive. For example, people who view themselves as victims will invent scenarios in their mind which eventually attract a real-life situation in order to produce the amino acid. The more convinced an individual is of the reality of his emotions, the more addicted he becomes to the feelings from his mind's pharmaceutical factory. Thus, man's body becomes the centre for decisions instead of his mind. The mind is the 'drug dealer' supplying the chemicals and memories to support the addictions. The body, at this point, controls the appetites physically and mentally.

A person who is habitually depressed deforms the cells over time and inhibits the body's immune system to resist the aging process. The body reflects this in various forms such as

skin wrinkles, dark circles under the eyes and even arthritic conditions. After a period of time, the cells can become agitated and transmit images of desperation to the brain. This is the first sign of addiction will resemble a cinema presentation complete with pictures and narration. The star of the movie is the individual and the plot is constructed from the emotions craving his attention. Images such as depression, anger or victimisation are played over and over inside the minds of those addicted to these feelings.

For example, persons with eating disorders will hear voices inside their heads screaming "Feed me", "I am starving" or "If I don't get food now, I'll die". These voices are complete with pictures displaying large plates of their favourite foods along with memories of when they felt completely satisfied. The pictures associated with the sound are very hard addictions to break.

Unfortunately, if the cells have been deformed from abuse of the amino acid, the body will not feel satisfied and will continue to eat. In addition, demonic activity will always be at the root of addiction; it is not just physiological. Eating refined sugar creates an imbalance in the pancreas because it raises the insulin levels, usually resulting in diabetes. The craving for this type of sugar is akin to drug addiction. The body forms an attachment to the insulin rush which temporarily makes one feel good. Those who abuse white sugar will develop diabetes and doctors will prescribe insulin, frequently resulting in side effects from blindness to limb loss. Consequently, eating sugar or craving anything harmful to one's body will lead to destructive diseases.

If a person feels helpless to control destructive desires, he most likely is under demonic influence and requires deliverance.

Ferrell continues to personalise his findings<sup>74</sup>:

*The Holy Spirit has used me to deliver people from addictions created from demonic influences. In my experience most addictive behaviours are the result of a person's decision to hear the wrong voices. Fear creates the loudest voices and in most cases drowns out the voice of the Holy Spirit. Most of the persons I have delivered were set free after they were truly converted to Christ. The real born-again experience delivers people every time.*

---

<sup>74</sup> Ibid., p. 99



A way to break behaviours is to change the images stored in the mind. One function of the mind is to protect the body with proper nutritional desires. However, if emotions control one's thoughts and images, the brain will produce peptides or amino acids to satisfy a crisis.

Oftentimes, people from unhappy relationships desire the sensations and feelings they once experienced before the separation or divorce. In most cases, people attempt to relive the sensations or feelings associated with love in future companions. In essence, they are addicted to the expectations or preconceived ideas of 'being in love'. Those connections were formed from the chemical reactions their emotions demanded in the past. The results of future companionships are usually predictable because of the instability of all addictions. People fall in and out of love because addictive personalities need stronger and stronger drugs to satisfy their cravings.

Most people become physically weak and exhausted from the emotional rollercoaster produced from chemical addictions the body demands for its emotional fix. That is why it is so hard to quiet the mind. After the body is unable to supply the chemicals needed, people will often turn to physicians to prescribe stronger synthetic medications. The synthetic drugs create a more serious imbalance also resulting in detrimental side effects.

Perceiving reality with the five senses is dangerous enough, but if the senses are emotionally damaged, the view of life is forever altered. One will be a slave to emotions and be chemically addicted.

In summary, the body is made of billions of cells whose primary purpose is to protect the body and reproduce healthy cells. The peptides or amino acids are designed to balance the system. The cell has been called the smallest conscious unit in the body.

Ferrell finally declares<sup>75</sup>:

*The cells are God's divine energy inside man's complex machine. The cells are indeed conscious, and if the believer's thoughts are connected to Christ, he can experience divine health. The Bible says the Kingdom of God is not eating and drinking, but righteousness, peace, and joy in the Holy Spirit<sup>76</sup>. That alone is a recipe for divine health in man's body and soul.*

---

<sup>75</sup> Ferrell, L E (2010) Immersed in Him. United States of America: Destiny Image Publisher Inc., p. 104

<sup>76</sup> Romans 14:17

### **1.8.3 Chemical Imbalances**

A chemical imbalance is a diagnosis made by physicians and psychiatrists that explains the reason that changes or occur in the neurological state. A number of things can trigger a chemical imbalance, such as lower levels of potassium, deficiencies of essential vitamins, a reduced ability of neurotransmitters such as serotonin, and an increased or high amount of cortisol stress hormone levels; these can be the leading factors of a chemical imbalance.

A chemical imbalance in the brain can occur when the body does not get an adequate supply of nutrients or when the body is not able to absorb nutrients properly. If either condition exists, the brain is not able to manufacture neurotransmitters that trigger the nervous system to communicate properly with other organs in the body. This type of chemical imbalance can lead to a number of other issues such as mood swings, a loss of appetite, thyroid problems or a sudden increase in heart rate.<sup>77</sup>

Millions of people are labelled 'biologically-impaired' for the rest of their lives because psychiatrists claim they have a chemical imbalance in their brain that cannot be fixed. Marriages have ended in divorce for fear of passing the mental illness on to children planned for the future. Thousands more are labelled 'biologically-impaired' because psychiatrists proclaim they have a genetic error in their DNA that cannot be fixed.

Enormous complications occur when people are told they have a chemical problem in their brain or a genetic disorder. This labelling in itself causes depression, anxiety, hopelessness and suicide. Neuroleptic and anti-psychotic drugs cannot fix this imagined chemical imbalance but merely tranquilise and stupefy. They are society's way of drugging a person into submission when he is unable to behave himself.<sup>78</sup>

In 1806 already, Philippe Pinel, Doctor at Bicetre Asylum in France, rejected that insanity was caused by brain diseases. He correctly noted that the doctors of his day viewed the insane as incurable because they incorrectly viewed the problem as physical. He noted that the insane were mistreated because the doctors of the day had the etiology wrong about the

---

<sup>77</sup> Ibid., p.47

<sup>78</sup> Rudd, S, Psychiatry Damages Society and Individuals [Online] Available from: <http://www.bible.ca/psychiatry/psychiatry-harms-damages-society-chemical-imbalance-biologically-impaired.htm> [Accessed: 12 May 2014]

causes of insanity. He noted that his kinder, gentler moral treatments worked much better. He concluded<sup>79</sup>:

*Derangement of the understanding is generally considered as an effect of an organic lesion of the brain, consequently as incurable; a supposition that is, in a great number of instances, contrary to anatomical fact. Public asylums for maniacs have been regarded as places of confinement for such of its members as are become dangerous to the peace of society. The managers of those institutions, who are frequently men of little knowledge and less humanity, have been permitted to exercise towards their innocent prisoners a most arbitrary system of cruelty and violence; while experience affords ample and daily proofs of the happier effects of a mild, conciliating treatment, rendered effective by steady and dispassionate firmness.*

Not much has changed since then: The *Star* newspaper published an article called *Mental illness: is 'chemical imbalance' theory a myth?* on 18 October 2013 after interviews with the following specialists: psychotherapist and author Gary Greenberg; Edward Shorter, a medical historian at the University of Toronto; Anthony Phillips, Director of Neuroscience and Mental Health at the Canadian Institute of Health Research; Dr James Kennedy, Director of Neuroscience at Toronto's Centre for Addiction and Mental Health; and Dr Sidney Kennedy, Head of Psychiatry at Toronto's University Health Network.

These specialists all concurred that chemical imbalances are indeed a myth and made the following statements.

The chemical imbalance theory has fallen in status from bedrock scientific principle to mere marketing device in the minds of many researchers.

Neuroscience would attribute such things as depression and psychosis to chemical imbalances, specifically to disruptions in the neurotransmitters that allow the brain's billions upon billions of grey matter cells to speak to one another. Mental illnesses thus became normalised and de-stigmatised, and their treatments, to a huge extent, came off of the couch, out of the asylums and onto pharmacy counters. A \$70-billion drug market grew to feed tens of millions worldwide with daily doses of pills that could bring their brain chemistry back into balance.

---

<sup>79</sup> Rudd, S, *A Treatise of Insanity* [Online] Available from: <http://www.bible.ca/psychiatry/a-treatise-on-insanity-philippe-pinel-1806ad.htm> [Accessed: 12 May 2014]

In the minds of many neuroscientists today, that chemical imbalance theory has turned out to be a myth, with no scientific or medicinal substance. The pills are now largely recognised by a multitude of experts, as well as some of the pharmaceutical companies that make them, as ‘concoctions of magical thinking’.

Some top neuroscientists argue that this is nonsense, that neurotransmitters are a critical and obvious aspect of psychiatric research and therapy. Neurotransmitters such as dopamine, serotonin and norepinephrine are the brain’s chemical ferrymen, allowing electrical impulses to cross from one synapse to another in the mesmerising cascades of neuronal connections that render thought, emotions, movement initiation and a host of other brain activities. Imbalances in these communicating chemicals, it was held, were in actual fact the key cause of the major psychiatric disorders. And targeting these imbalances with drugs became the obvious strategy to treat mental illnesses.

But to understand how the increasingly maligned concept of chemical imbalances came to hold such sway in neuroscience, an understanding of how the drugs were discovered is vital: after the Second World War, scientists rolled out a remarkable string of pharmaceutical successes that would revolutionise the treatment of major psychiatric disorders. Dating back to 1949, these included the discovery of drugs like Lithium to treat manic depression, Thorazine to combat schizophrenia, the antidepressant Tofranil and the sedatives Librium and Valium. But these discoveries resulted almost entirely from unanticipated accidents. And scientists only went searching for the neurological roots of the drugs’ workings after the fact. They hit on neurotransmitters, which were first identified in the 1950s and provided an appealing answer, one that allowed pharmaceutical companies to market the drugs with scientific authority.

Scientists have shown that Prozac and its lucrative antidepressant ilk do indeed act on serotonin. These drugs, known as SSRIs (selective serotonin reuptake inhibitors), block serotonin-producing cells from reabsorbing a good portion of the neurotransmitter they secrete (as they normally would) leaving more of the chemical available for neural communications. But nobody has ever demonstrated that a shortage of serotonin was the cause of depression or any other illness. Certainly there haven’t been any new drugs on the market in the last decades using these neurotransmitters as targets. While antipsychotics targeting dopamine pathways have been hugely successful in treating hallucinations and delusion, they do little, however, to relieve other symptoms, such as the social withdrawal, muddled thinking and lethargy that have been lumped in with the ailment.

Neuroplasticity, or the brain's ability to grow new connections, has become a focus of keen interest in mental illness research. The brain, long thought of as a static structure, is instead constantly losing and forming new synaptic connections. And when new connections fail to form, illnesses such as depression can follow. Unfortunately, current compounds that can encourage the sprouting of new brain connections can also cause cancer.

SSRIs work effectively for many people experiencing anxious, obsessive, sleepless forms of depression, though they do little for those suffering from melancholic varieties, a group that is especially at risk of suicide. Certainly the chemical imbalance theory helped to destigmatise mental illnesses, especially depression, and place them on a par in the public's eye with any other physical ailment. Depression has become just as common as the common cold.<sup>80</sup>

## **1.9 THE INJURED BRAIN**

### **1.9.1 Neurodegenerative Disorders**

*Neurodegeneration* is the umbrella term for the progressive loss of structure or function of neurons, including death of neurons. Many neurodegenerative diseases are caused by genetic mutations, most of which are located in completely unrelated genes. The process of neurodegeneration is not well-understood so the diseases that stem from it have, as yet, no cures.<sup>81</sup>

A neurodegenerative disorder results from the deterioration of cells in the brain. Common neurodegenerative disorders include Alzheimer's disease (AD), Parkinson's disease, multiple sclerosis, and Huntington's chorea. AD is characterised by multiple cognitive deficits that include memory loss, language disturbances, impaired movement, and problems with planning, organisation and abstracting. In addition, patients with AD may show behavioural disturbances such as restlessness and mood swings.

While presently there is no specific test for AD, it is thought to result from an accumulation of abnormal clumps (amyloid plaques) and tangled bundles of neural fibres (neurofibrillary tangles) composed of misplaced proteins in the brain. These neurological abnormalities

---

<sup>80</sup> The Star, Mental illness: is 'chemical imbalance' theory a myth? [Online] Available from: [http://www.thestar.com/news/insight/2013/10/18/mental\\_illness\\_is\\_chemical\\_imbalance\\_theory\\_a\\_myth.html](http://www.thestar.com/news/insight/2013/10/18/mental_illness_is_chemical_imbalance_theory_a_myth.html) [Accessed: 17 May 2014]

<sup>81</sup> Rubinsztein DC (2006). The roles of intracellular protein-degradation pathways in neurodegeneration, pp. 780 – 786 and Bredesen D E, Rao R V, Mehlen P (October 2006) Cell death in the nervous system.

appear to be a common by-product of normal aging and are present in the brains of all elderly people. In patients with AD, however, there is a significantly higher concentration of them, suggesting that they may be related to the cognitive decline seen in these individuals. Unfortunately, these plaques and tangles can only be identified post-mortem via an autopsy; so it is impossible to know with 100% certainty that the cognitive decline or dementia seen in an elderly person is caused by Alzheimer's disease until after death.

It is widely recognised that AD causes physical damage to the brain, which in turn results in changes to thoughts, feelings and actions. The same could be said about mental retardation, a head injury or a brain tumour. All result from physical damage to the brain, causing changes in behaviour. Argued from the example of neurodegenerative disease, it is obvious that brain function and behaviour are intimately associated.<sup>82</sup>

Alzheimer's and Parkinson disease are the result of damaged nerve cells not receiving glucose. The cells are dying because they cannot receive/uptake of glucose.

The potential use of medium chain triglycerides (MCT oil such as coconut oil, two to eight tablespoons per day), or ketone bodies (also called ketoacids), the end product of their metabolism, may not only treat, but also prevent Alzheimer's disease. Further, this is a potential treatment for Parkinson's disease, Huntington's disease, multiple sclerosis and amyotrophic lateral sclerosis (ALS or Lou Gehrig's disease), drug resistant epilepsy, brittle type I diabetes, and diabetes type II, where there is insulin resistance. Ketone bodies may help the brain recover after a loss of oxygen in newborns through adults, may help the heart recover after an acute attack and may shrink cancerous tumours. Children with drug resistant epilepsy sometimes respond to an extremely low carbohydrate ketogenic diet. MCT oil appears to be useful as an aid in weight loss, and body builders use it already to improve their lean body mass as MCT oil can be easily purchased on the internet. Athletes and soldiers can use MCT oil as a source of fuel when the body runs out of carbohydrates, which occurs rather quickly when food is not readily available.

Cells can use ketone bodies as an alternative fuel when glucose is not available. Brain cells, specifically neurons, are very limited, more limited than other cells in what kinds of fuel they can use to function and to stay alive. Normally they require glucose (sugar), but they can also use ketone bodies. Humans do not normally have ketone bodies circulating and

---

<sup>82</sup> Stanford, M S (2008) *Grace for the Afflicted - Viewing Mental Illness Through the Eyes of Faith*. Inter-Varsity Press: US, pp. 61-62

available to the brain unless they have been starving for a couple of days or longer, or are consuming a ketogenic (very low carbohydrate) diet.

In Alzheimer's disease, the neurons in certain areas of the brain are unable to take in glucose due to insulin resistance and slowly die off, a process that appears to happen one or more decades before the symptoms become apparent. If these cells had access to ketone bodies, they could potentially stay alive and continue to function. It appears that persons with Parkinson's disease, Huntington's disease and Lou Gehrig's disease have a similar defect in utilising glucose but in different areas of the brain or spinal cord.

MCT oil is digested differently by the body than other fats. Instead of storing all MCTs as fat, the liver converts them directly to ketone bodies, which are then available for use as energy. Oral and intravenous administration of MCT oil produces hyperketonemia<sup>10</sup> or circulating ketone bodies, which are then available to the brain for energy, in the absence of glucose<sup>19</sup> and even in the presence of glucose. In addition, hyperketonemia results in a substantial (39%) increase in cerebral blood flow, and appears to reduce cognitive dysfunction associated with systemic hypoglycaemia in normal humans.<sup>83</sup>

### **1.9.2 Traumatic Brain Injury**

Traumatic brain injury (TBI) is a serious public health problem, often referred to as a silent epidemic due to lack of public awareness. TBI is still the leading cause of mortality and morbidity in the world for individuals under the age of 45. Leading causes of traumatic brain injury are falls (28%), motor vehicle accidents (20%), being struck by or against objects (19%) and assault (11%).<sup>84</sup>

Traumatic brain injury results from an impact to the head that disrupts normal brain function. Traumatic brain injury may affect a person's cognitive abilities, including learning and thinking skills.

As identified, falls are the leading cause of traumatic brain injury for all ages in current years. Those aged 75 and older have the highest rates of traumatic brain injury-related hospitalisation and death due to falls. Doctors classify traumatic brain injury as mild,

---

<sup>83</sup> Newport, M, What if there was a cure for Alzheimer's? [Online] Available from: <http://www.coconutketones.com/whatifcure.pdf> [Accessed: 29 August 2014]

<sup>84</sup> Armstrong C L and Morrow L (2010) Handbook of Medical Neuropsychology. New York: Springer, p.17

moderate or severe, depending on whether the injury causes unconsciousness, how long unconsciousness lasts and the severity of symptoms. Although most traumatic brain injuries are classified as mild because they're not life-threatening, even a mild traumatic brain injury can have serious and long-lasting effects.

Traumatic brain injury is a threat to cognitive health in two ways: (1) a traumatic brain injury's direct effects, which may be long-lasting or even permanent, can include unconsciousness, inability to recall the traumatic event, confusion, difficulty learning and remembering new information, trouble speaking coherently, unsteadiness, lack of coordination and problems with vision or hearing; and (2) certain types of traumatic brain injury may increase the risk of developing Alzheimer's and other forms of dementia years after the injury takes place.

Symptoms of a brain injury include unconsciousness, inability to remember the cause of the injury or events that occurred immediately before or up to 24 hours after, confusion and disorientation, difficulty remembering new information, headache, dizziness, blurry vision, nausea and vomiting, ringing in the ears, trouble speaking coherently and changes in emotions or sleep patterns.

The severity of symptoms depends on whether the injury is mild, moderate or severe. With a mild traumatic brain injury, also known as a concussion, a person may lose consciousness (for 30 minutes or less) or not. Symptoms often appear at the time of the injury or soon after, but sometimes may not develop for days or weeks. Mild traumatic brain injury symptoms are usually temporary and clear up within hours, days or weeks, but they can last months or longer. Moderate traumatic brain injury causes unconsciousness lasting more than 30 minutes. Symptoms of moderate traumatic brain injury are similar to those of mild traumatic brain injury but more serious and longer-lasting. Severe traumatic brain injury knocks a person out for more than 24 hours. Symptoms of severe traumatic brain injury are also similar to those of mild traumatic brain injury but more serious and longer-lasting.

Mental disorders after traumatic brain injury (TBI) are frequent. TBI is a worldwide public health problem. It has already been named the 'silent epidemic' because of the limited popular knowledge about the issue and its symptoms, such as memory and cognitive problems, which may not be immediately evident.<sup>85</sup>

---

<sup>85</sup> Alzheimer Association, [Online] Available from: <http://www.alz.org/dementia/traumatic-brain-injury-head-trauma-symptoms.asp> [Accessed: 17 May 2014]



Major depression is considered a common sequel in TBI survivors. The diagnosis of obsessive-compulsive disorder (OCD) in TBI survivors requires special attention, since manifestations of other conditions frequently associated to TBI can complicate the identification of the disorder. For example, some patients may show repetitive behaviours due to memory problems, or perseveration as a consequence of executive deficits, becoming anxious when they become aware of their difficulties. In contrast, patients with impaired self-awareness may not realise obsessions and compulsions as excessive or unreasonable.

Several studies have discussed the influence of TBI severity and post-traumatic amnesia on the epidemiology of PTSD after TBI, taking into account that the formation of pathological memories is considered a precondition for the developing of PTSD symptoms. Psychosis after TBI seems to be rare.<sup>86</sup>

### **1.9.3 Head Injury**

Danish scientists have studied the link between head traumas such as concussions and skull fractures and the subsequent risks of developing mental disorders. They found that head injuries can increase the risk of developing certain mental disorders by up to 439%.

This is the largest study of its kind. It is a national register study based on all Danes born between 1977 and 2000 – totalling 1.4 million people – who were followed up to 2010. The results were published on the Internet in January 2013. In this period, 113,906 of these Danes had been admitted to hospital with a head injury. Four percent of these were subsequently diagnosed with a mental disorder.

The researchers looked at the following disorders: depression, schizophrenia, bipolar disorder and so-called organic mental disorders.

By comparing the injured people's risk of developing the disorders with the rest of the study population, they found that those with head injuries were 65% more likely to be diagnosed with schizophrenia; 59% more likely to develop a depression; 28% more likely to be diagnosed with bipolar disorder; and 439% more likely to suffer from organic mental

---

<sup>86</sup> PMC. Psychiatric Disorders and Traumatic Brain Injury [Online] Available from: <http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC2536546/> [Accessed: 12 May 2014]

disorders. The greatest risk of developing a mental disorder is in the first year after suffering head trauma, but even after 15 years there was a significantly increased risk.<sup>87</sup>

Head injury and traumatic brain injury (TBI) are both fairly common conditions that can result in a variety of problems and symptoms such as dementia and psychosis. To a psychiatrist, these mental impairments are known as neurobehavioural deficits and include impairment in emotions, memory, cognition and accompanying behaviour.<sup>88</sup>

#### **1.9.4 Prenatal Injury**

Scientists have new evidence that autism begins in the womb, according to an article by BBC News.<sup>89</sup> Patchy changes in the developing brain long before birth may cause symptoms of autism spectrum disorder (ASD), research suggests. Genetic markers have been used to look at how the outermost part of the brain, the cortex, wired up and formed layers. Abnormalities were found in 90% of the children with autism compared with only about 10% of children without. The changes were dotted about in brain regions involved in social and emotional communication, and language, long before birth. The finding that these defects occur in patches rather than across the entirety of cortex gives hope as well as insight about the nature of autism.

Synaesthesia is a condition where one sense automatically triggers another. Some people experience tastes when they read or hear words, some perceive numbers as shapes, and others see colours when they hear music. People with synaesthesia might say: "The letter q is dark brown" or: "The word 'hello' tastes like coffee" for example. Synaesthesia seems to involve unusual connections between brain areas not usually wired together, accounting for the jumbling up of the senses. People with the condition can find everyday life confusing or even frightening.

A new study found one in five adults with autism spectrum conditions – a range of related developmental disorders, including autism and Asperger's syndrome – had synaesthesia compared with about 7% of people with no signs of the disorders. One theory about autism

---

<sup>87</sup> Science Nordic, Head injury can cause mental illness [Online] Available from: <http://sciencenordic.com/head-injury-can-cause-mental-illness> [Accessed: 12 May 2014]

<sup>88</sup> Brain and Spinal Cord, Psychosis [Online] Available from: <http://www.brainandspinalcord.org/brain-injury/psychosis.html> [Accessed: 29 September 2014]

<sup>89</sup> BBC News, Autism begins long before birth [Online] Available from: <http://www.bbc.com/news/health-26750786> [Accessed: 7 July 2014]

is that it involves over-connectivity of neurons, so that a person focuses on small details but finds it difficult to see the bigger picture, particularly in terms of social cues.<sup>90</sup>

A study of the medical records of 56,741 California Medicaid patients revealed that women who had abortions were *160% more likely* than delivering women to be hospitalised for psychiatric treatment in the first 90 days following abortion or delivery. In a study of post-abortion patients only eight weeks after an abortion, researchers found that 44% complained of nervous disorders, 36% had experienced sleep disturbances, 31% had regrets about their decision, and 11% had been prescribed psychotropic medicine by their family doctor. A five year retrospective study in two Canadian provinces found significantly greater use of medical and psychiatric services among women with a history of abortion.

Most significant was the finding that 25% of women who had abortions made visits to psychiatrists as compared to 3% of the control group. Women who have had abortions are significantly more likely than others to subsequently require admission to a psychiatric hospital. At especially high risk are teenagers, separated or divorced women, and women with a history of more than one abortion. Since many post-abortive women use repression as a coping mechanism, there may be a long period of denial before a woman seeks psychiatric care. These repressed feelings may cause psychosomatic illnesses and psychiatric or behavioural issues in other areas of her life.<sup>91</sup>

### **1.9.5 Infections**

The brain is the body's most energy-intensive organ. It represents only 3% of the body weight but utilises 25% of the body's oxygen, nutrients and circulating glucose. Therefore any significant metabolic disruptions can impact brain function first. There are four categories of infections to consider that can result in mental illness:

- The first category of infection involves those infections already recognised to induce psychiatric symptoms. These include pneumonia, urinary tract infection, sepsis, malaria, Legionnaire's disease, syphilis, typhoid, diphtheria, HIV, rheumatic fever and herpes. While the psychiatric effects of these infections are known to the medical field, they are

---

<sup>90</sup> BBC News, Study links synaesthesia to Autism [Online] Available from: <http://www.bbc.com/news/health-24995232> [Accessed: 7 July 2014]

<sup>91</sup> After Abortion, Abortions Risks [Online] Available from: <http://afterabortion.org/2011/abortion-risks-a-list-of-major-psychological-complications-related-to-abortion/> [Accessed: 29 September 2014]

rarely screened for if the initial presentation is made to a mental health professional. Moreover, the significance of some of these infections may date back to prenatal development. Research conducted at the John Hopkins Children's Center and published in the Archives of General Psychiatry in 2001 found that mothers with evidence of Herpes Simplex Type 2 infection at the time of pregnancy had children almost six times more likely to later develop schizophrenia.

- The second category of infection is those parasitic infections such as neurocysticercosis where the brain is directly invaded by the infective agent through a well-established, image-able (visible on brain scan) mechanism (cysts, lesions or cerebral swelling). Signs of psychiatric disease (depression and psychosis) were found in over 65% of neurocysticercosis cases (caused by a tapeworm). There are also multiple documented reports in the literature of psychiatric symptoms associated with other parasites like giardiasis, ascaris (roundworm), trichinae (cause of trichinosis), and Lyme borrelia and viruses like borna virus. Documentation also exists of these psychiatric symptoms resolving when the underlying hidden infection is treated.
- The third category of infection is those parasitic, bacterial and viral infections like toxoplasmosis and strep where a strong statistical link to mental illness has been demonstrated but research is underway to establish a causal connection. In humans, acute infection with toxoplasmosis gondii can cause brain lesions, changes in personality and symptoms of psychosis including delusions and auditory hallucinations. Researchers at Rockefeller University and NIMH have suggested that after streptococcal infection some children may be at increased risk for Obsessive Compulsive Disorder.

Since 1953, eighteen out of nineteen studies of *T. gondii* antibodies in persons with schizophrenia and other severe psychiatric disorders reported a higher percentage of *T. gondii* antibodies in the affected persons. Two other studies found that exposure to cats (the primary carrier for toxoplasmosis transmission) in childhood is a risk factor for the development of schizophrenia. Furthermore, certain antipsychotic and mood-stabiliser drugs such as Halperidol and Valproic acid inhibited this parasite in vitro at a concentration below that found in the cerebrospinal fluid and blood of individuals being treated with this medication, suggesting that some medications used to treat schizophrenia and bipolar disorder may actually work by inhibiting the replication of toxoplasmosis gondii. It is also believed that toxoplasmosis is one of several infectious agents that cause most cases of schizophrenia and bipolar disorder.

- The fourth category of infection is where there are many other infective agents that may not target the brain specifically but can severely affect mental function through the cumulative downstream consequences of chronic infection. While the importance of this link in the etiopathogenesis of mental illness is rarely recognised, these focal and systemic infections are very common and their psychiatric effects often severe. Parasites are the most common causes of mortality and morbidity in the world. In this nonspecific category are scores of parasites, protozoa, helminths, bacteria, fungi and viruses which, if not directly invading and disabling brain tissue and neurotransmitter function, do so indirectly by depleting the host of essential nutrients, interfering with enzyme functions, and releasing a massive load of waste products, enteric poisons and toxins which disrupt brain metabolism. (A single mature adult tapeworm can lay a million eggs a day and roundworms, which infect about 25% of the world's population, lay 200,000 daily.)

Mental patients have much higher rates of parasitic infection than the general population. Between 1995 and 1996 researchers at the University of Ancona did stool tests on 238 residents of four Italian psychiatric institutions and found parasites in 53.8% of the residents, including all of those residents with behavioural aberrations. Parasites are often implicated in cognitive dysfunction and chronic emotional stress disorders and, to the untrained eye, classic symptoms like apathy, exhaustion, confusion, appetite and memory loss, 'nervous stomach', social withdrawal, lethargy and loss of sex drive and motivation are frequently assumed to signal a depressive disorder without an adequate differential diagnosis being made or even attempted. Adding to the confusion, classic indicators of acute infection such as fever or elevated antibodies often reverse themselves in chronic cases due to secondary hypothyroidism and immuno-depression.<sup>92</sup>

New research in the field continues, aided increasingly by impressive technologic advances in microbiology and virology. As recently as the past decade, reports documented the presence of influenza virus, rubella virus, bovine disease virus, and other infectious agents in patients with schizophrenia and bipolar disorder, as well as the presence of other infectious agents in childhood pediatric autoimmune neuropsychiatric disorder associated with streptococcal infections (PANDAS) and obsessive-compulsive disorder.<sup>93</sup>

---

<sup>92</sup> Strict, F, The Role of Infections in Mental Illness [Online] Available from: <http://www.alternativementalhealth.com/articles/infections.htm> [Accessed: 12 May 2014]

<sup>93</sup> Psychiatric Times, Infectious Agents in Schizophrenia and Bipolar Disorder [Online] Available from: <http://www.psychiatrictimes.com/articles/infectious-agents-schizophrenia-and-bipolar-disorder> [Accessed: 12 May 2014]

### **1.9.6 Anti-NMDA Receptor Encephalitis**

A person's blood can show the presence of an antibody called NMDA, which is a rogue antibody produced by the immune system that destroys the brain. The results can be increasingly frequent seizures and horrifying hallucinations. It causes Encephalitis and Postnatal Psychosis among other disorders. The antibody has also been found in patients with epilepsy and schizophrenia. In 2013, a German study of 121 patients with schizophrenia, published in the respected journal *JAMA Psychiatry*, found 10% of the patients had raised levels of the NMDA antibody. This disease is fully treatable.<sup>94</sup>

### **1.9.7 General Paresis**

Also known as general paralysis of the insane or paralytic, dementia is a neuropsychiatric disorder damaging many different nerves of the brain and central nervous system, caused by syphilis (a sexually transmitted) infection. It was originally considered a psychiatric disorder as the patient is usually presented with psychotic symptoms of sudden and often dramatic onset including hallucinations and false ideas. The diagnosis could be differentiated from other known psychoses by a characteristic abnormality in eye pupil reflexes (Argyll Robertson pupil), and eventually, the development of muscular reflex abnormalities, seizures, memory impairment (dementia) and other signs of relatively pervasive neurocerebral deterioration. General paresis usually begins about 15 to 20 years after the syphilis infection. Risks also include infection with other sexually transmitted diseases, such as gonorrhea (which may hide symptoms of syphilis infection). Although there were recorded cases of remission of the symptoms, especially if they had not passed beyond the stage of psychosis, these individuals almost invariably suffered relapse within a few months to a few years. Otherwise, the patient was seldom able to return home because of the complexity, severity and unmanageability of the evolving symptom picture. Eventually, the patient would become completely incapacitated, bed-ridden, and die, the process taking about three to five years on average.<sup>95</sup>

---

<sup>94</sup> Mail Online, Driven Insane by your own Immune System [Online] Available from: <http://www.dailymail.co.uk/health/article-2316825/Driven-insane-immune-One-womans-terrifying-story-reveals-rogue-particles-brain-trigger-mental-illness.html> [Accessed: 27 June 2014]

<sup>95</sup> Princeton, General Paresis of the Insane [Online] Available from: [https://www.princeton.edu/~achaney/tmve/wiki100k/docs/General\\_paresis\\_of\\_the\\_insane.html](https://www.princeton.edu/~achaney/tmve/wiki100k/docs/General_paresis_of_the_insane.html) [Accessed: 27 June 2014]

### **1.9.8 Primary Brain Tumours**

Primary brain tumours can be either malignant (containing cancer cells) or benign (not containing cancer cells). A primary brain tumour is a tumour which begins in the brain. If a cancerous tumour which starts elsewhere in the body sends cells which end up growing in the brain, such tumours are called secondary or metastatic brain tumours. Brain tumours are classified as grade I, grade II, or grade III or grade IV. Studies have found risk factors for brain tumours to include ionising radiation from high dose X-rays (for example, radiation therapy where the machine is aimed at the head) and family history.

The symptoms of brain tumours depend on their size, type and location. The most common symptoms of brain tumours include headaches, numbness or tingling in the arms or legs, seizures, memory problems, mood and personality changes, balance and walking problems, nausea and vomiting, and changes in speech, vision or hearing. Treatment of a brain tumour depends on the type, location, and size of the tumour, as well as the age and health of the patient.<sup>96</sup>

### **1.9.9 Cerebral Achromatopsia**

Cerebral achromatopsia is a complete or partial loss of colour vision. In virtually every known case, there is bilateral damage (most often a stroke) to a relatively small region of the cerebral cortex. Patients with dense achromatopsia see their world in monochrome – black, white and shades of grey – and can experience deep depressions as result of this as the world become dull, grey and colourless. This disease tends to bring deep depression and dreariness into people's lives.

There is no known treatment for this condition due to the sensory damage.<sup>97</sup> However, there is a device developed by Adam Montandon called the Eyeborg that incorporates the auditory and visual spectra. It makes it possible for people with colour-blindness to 'hear' colours.<sup>98</sup>

---

<sup>96</sup> MedicineMed, Brain Tumor [Online] Available from: [http://www.medicinenet.com/brain\\_tumor/article.htm](http://www.medicinenet.com/brain_tumor/article.htm) [Accessed: 27 June 2014]

<sup>97</sup> Medscape, Cerebral Achromatopsia [Online] Available from: [http://www.medscape.com/viewarticle/774934\\_4](http://www.medscape.com/viewarticle/774934_4) [Accessed: 27 June 2014]

<sup>98</sup> Montandon, A, Neil Harbisson, the Cuborg [Online] Available from: <http://www.adammontandon.com/neil-harbisson-the-cyborg/> [Accessed: 27 June 2014]

## **1.10 NUTRITION**

The role of nutrition is one of the most under-recognised factors in the development of major trends in mental health. The body of evidence that supports diet and mental health is increasing at a rapid pace. The evidence indicates that food plays a significant role in the development, management and prevention of specific mental health problems such as depression, schizophrenia, attention-deficit hyperactivity disorder and Alzheimer's disease.

There are a number of individuals who do not report daily mental health problems and eat fresh fruit or drink fruit juice every day compared to the less than half of those who do report daily mental health problems. The pattern is also similar for fresh vegetables and salad. Many who report some level of mental health problems also eat fewer healthy foods such as fresh fruit and vegetables, organic foods and wholesome meals made from scratch.

Even though there are still a number of research studies that address the role of nutrition in mental health, more research is still needed to determine how diet directly affects the state of an individual's mind. But there are some clear ways that diet can directly and indirectly affect the state of our mental health.

Eating a balanced diet can prevent a feeling of bloating that usually occurs after the consumption of lots of unhealthy foods such as pizza, burgers and chips. Sometimes seasons can affect mental illness. In winter, many people notice a decline in their mood and often want foods such as stews, casseroles and soups to get them through the colder months. However, some may suffer from Seasonal Affective Disorder (SAD). This disorder can cause more serious effects during winter that goes beyond having hot food. SAD sufferers experience depression and lethargy during the winter and find themselves lacking in both motivation and energy. Symptoms may include craving carbohydrates and sugary foods, which can cause weight gain and may interfere detrimentally with mood.

Amino acids are known as the building blocks of protein and are used for growth and repair around the body. Chemical messengers are mostly formed from amino acids and are used to transport information to other parts of the brain, including signals about mood. Some main sources of protein include milk, cheese, eggs, meat, fish, lentils and pulses. It is important that vegetarians or those on a vegan diet substitute dairy products, meat, and fish for alternatives containing protein. Another example is GABA (Gamma – Aminobutyric acid) which is an over-the-counter amino acid that takes the edge off extreme anxiety and



emotions.<sup>99</sup> A balanced mood and feelings of well-being can be protected by ensuring that diet provides adequate amounts of complex carbohydrates, essential fats, amino acids, vitamins, minerals and certainly water. While a healthy diet can help recovery, it should be used in conjunction with other treatments recommended by your doctor.

Eating regular meals throughout the day to maintain blood sugar levels is also important to the mood. It is important to make sure that you eat at least three meals each day. Missing meals, particularly breakfast, can lead to low blood sugar and can cause low mood, irritability and fatigue. If a person feels hungry between meals, he may need to include healthy snacks such as fruits, nuts and cereals. Eating fewer foods that are high in sugar and more wholegrain cereals, nuts, beans, lentils, fruits and vegetables can be essential to mood swings. It is better to eat fewer high-sugar foods and more wholegrain cereals, nuts, beans, lentils, fruits and vegetables. Foods that are high in sugar are absorbed quickly into the bloodstream and can cause an initial high or surge of energy that quickly wears off as the body increases its insulin production, leaving a tired and low feeling. Wholegrain cereals, pulses, fruits and vegetables are more filling, and the sugar in these foods is absorbed more slowly, which is the reason why they don't cause mood swings. A person should try to include protein in every meal to ensure a continuous supply of the amino acid tryptophan to the brain. People need to eat enough protein to maintain healthy skin, organ, muscle and immune function.

Diet is also important because both excessive weight loss and weight gain can contribute to mood swings. Weight loss and lack of good nutrition will deprive the brain of glucose and other nutrients that control mood. It is best to seek the advice of a dietician to help overcome this problem. Weight is important because putting on weight unintentionally or feeling out of control with eating can increase depression and can lead to up-and-down dieting. An overweight person should seek and follow advice on healthy eating but needs to be extremely careful with fat and sugar intakes.

Fluid intake is also important, as it is imperative to maintain adequate fluid intake. If a person does not drink adequate fluids, there can be significant implications on physical and mental health. Early effects of mild dehydration can affect feelings and behaviour. An adult loses water daily through the lungs as water vapour, through the skin as perspiration and through the kidneys as urine. Not drinking enough fluids to replace this water loss can cause symptoms of dehydration, including irritability and a loss of concentration. Coffees, colas,

---

<sup>99</sup> Burk, A, Deliverance on the Brain. 15 November 2014

some energy drinks, and teas all contain caffeine. Some people use caffeine to boost energy levels. However, in large quantities, caffeine can increase blood pressure, anxiety, depressive symptoms and sleep problems. In addition, caffeine also has a diuretic effect in the body as it encourages the production of urine and therefore leads to dehydration. For this reason a person should not rely solely on caffeine-based fluids.

Alcohol has a depressant effect on the brain and can cause a rapid worsening of your mood. It is a toxin that has to be deactivated by the liver. During this detoxification process, the body uses several vitamins and minerals such as thiamine, zinc, and other nutrients which can then deplete these reserves, especially if a diet is lacking in nutrients. Thiamine and other vitamin deficiencies are common in heavy drinkers and can cause low mood, irritability or aggressive behaviour. It can also cause more serious and long-term mental health problems. The body uses important nutrients to process alcohol, and as a result, people who experience depression should consider avoiding alcohol until they have recovered. If a person wants to drink alcohol, he should try not to exceed the recommended safe daily limits for men and women.

In addition, exercise is also important to accompany a diet. Exercising regularly leads to the release of endorphins, chemicals in the brain that make an individual feel good and help with relaxing and feeling happy. Exercise is also important for people with depression because it gives structure and purpose to the day. Outdoor exercise that exposes someone to sunlight is especially valuable as it affects the pineal gland and directly boosts mood. Walking is one of the easiest, cheapest and best forms of exercise, and it can be built up as the fitness level increases. Swimming is also a good exercise for people with joint problems. A person should start with twenty minutes of exercise at least three times a week and increase this as fitness improves.

Choosing healthy foods is important for mental and physical health. If you make a practice of eating healthy, the end result will be, in most cases, more energy and more activity. Because exercise induces serotonin levels, exercise is a natural mood enhancer. A great tool in managing one's wellness is to know how different foods affect a person's wellness.

A good night's sleep is a critical part of maintaining emotional health. So if a person is struggling to get rest, he needs to talk with a health care professional about his sleeping habits.<sup>100</sup>

Dr Richard Schulze, a foremost authority on natural healing and herbal medicines in the world, made the following conclusion:<sup>101</sup>

*From slight memory loss to Alzheimer's disease, from bad days to chronic depression, even insanity, ALL brain and emotional dysfunction has its roots in bad circulation, nutritional depletion and waste build up.*

## 1.11 THE BRAIN AND THE BIBLE

An entitled entitles *10 Unsolved Mysteries of the Brain* in the August 2007 issue of *DISCOVER* magazine<sup>102</sup> begins by saying<sup>103</sup>:

*Of all the objects in the universe, the human brain is the most complex. There are as many neurons in the brain as there are stars in the Milky Way galaxy.*

The Bible also shows that man's creation was God's supreme act of physical creation. In Zechariah 12:1 God uses three aspects of His physical creation as an example of His creative powers and thus His sovereign authority over His Creation:

*This is the word of the Lord concerning Israel. The Lord, who stretches out the heavens, who lays the foundations of the earth, and who forms the spirit of man within him.*

*Zechariah 12:1*

The spirit of man is unique. No animal has it. This spirit is what makes man unique from the animal kingdom. While mankind has similarities with the animal world (fleshly, physical existence) man also has within him a spirit that longs to know our Creator.

---

<sup>100</sup> Smith, H V (2013) 4 Step Process to Mental Illness. Unknown, pp. 48-50

<sup>101</sup> Schulze, R (1999) There are No Incurable Diseases. California: Natural Healing Publications, p. 14-15

<sup>102</sup> Discover magazine, August 2007 issue, 10 Unsolved Mysteries of the Brain, pp. 54-61

<sup>103</sup> Ibid.

*<sup>26</sup> And He made from one [common origin, one source, one blood] all nations of men to settle on the face of the earth, having definitely determined [their] allotted periods of time and the fixed boundaries of their habitation (their settlements, lands, and abodes), <sup>27</sup> So that they should seek God, in the hope that they might feel after Him and find Him, although He is not far from each one of us. <sup>28</sup> For in Him we live and move and have our being; as even some of your [own] poets have said, For we are also His offspring.*

*Acts 17:26-28a*

The first thing the Bible educates is that man is especially made to seek God and to be found of Him (animals don't do this). Furthermore, unlike any other creature, man was created in the image and likeness of the Creator.<sup>104</sup> This image of God originally made for perfect fellowship between the created and their Creator, until sin entered the picture and that relationship was shattered. Now that relationship is restored when a person becomes God's child through the waters of Holy Baptism:

*9 Do not lie to one another, for you have stripped off the old (unregenerate) self with its evil practices, 10 And have clothed yourselves with the new [spiritual self], which is [ever in the process of being] renewed and remoulded into [fuller and more perfect knowledge upon] knowledge after the image (the likeness) of Him Who created it. 11 [In this new creation all distinctions vanish.] There is no room for and there can be neither Greek nor Jew, circumcised nor uncircumcised, [nor difference between nations whether alien] barbarians or Scythians [who are the most savage of all], nor slave or free man; but Christ is all and in all [everything and everywhere, to all men, without distinction of person].*

*Colossians 3:9-11*

Science, by its very nature, deals with the physical. That's why modern day science refuses to acknowledge the supernatural. It will try to find a purely physical explanation to everything. All it knows is what can be tested and evaluated and analysed by instruments and experimentation. With this in mind, the following are "unsolved mysteries of the [human] brain" as presented in the same magazine article:

First is the mystery of how information is "coded". Scientists can see the human brain and can measure electrical pulses traveling within the brain, but how can this explain thoughts?

---

<sup>104</sup> Genesis 1:26-27

The article goes on to draw this comparison: the challenge is something like popping the cover off a computer, measuring a few transistors chattering between high and low voltage, and trying to guess the content of the Web page being surfed.<sup>105</sup> Science will never find this out because the origin of thoughts is not physical; thoughts are from the spirit of man within man. And spiritual things can't be put into a test tube.

Secondly, science has no idea how memories are stored and retrieved in the human brain: *Memory retrieval is even more mysterious than storage...there is no good theory to explain how memory retrieval can happen so quickly.*<sup>106</sup> Much of the article is written as if the human brain is a complex computer. However, this is merely an analogy. The human mind is much more complex than any man-made computer and operates on a different level – a spiritual level.

The brain has a "baseline" level of activity. That is, a brain at rest still has activity even without any outside stimulation. *Most things we care about – reminiscences, emotions, drives, plans and so on – can occur with no external stimulus and no overt output that can be measured.*<sup>107</sup> The article continues, mentioning that, *When your eyes are closed during dreaming, you still enjoy rich visual experience.*<sup>108</sup> The reasons for dreams are unknown to science. But the Bible explains that dreams can serve as an avenue for fellowship with the Creator<sup>109</sup>. There are various places in the Bible where God communicated with people in a dream<sup>110</sup>. This is a function of the human spirit in communication with God.

Thirdly, science is unable to explain how the brain can simulate the future. What gives a person the ability to plan out what he wants to do before doing it? Science admits that little is known about how the brain's future simulator works<sup>111</sup>

Yet the Bible explains that God has given this basic ability to man:

*He hath made everything beautiful in his time. Also He hath set the world in their heart, so that no man can find out the work that God maketh from the beginning to the end.*

*Ecclesiastes 3:11*

---

<sup>105</sup> Discover magazine, August 2007 issue, 10 Unsolved Mysteries of the Brain, p. 55

<sup>106</sup> Ibid.

<sup>107</sup> Ibid.

<sup>108</sup> Ibid.

<sup>109</sup> Joel 2:20 and Acts 2:16-21

<sup>110</sup> For examples see Genesis 28:12, Daniel 2:1 and Matthew 2:13 among other

<sup>111</sup> Discover magazine, August 2007 issue. 10 Unsolved Mysteries of the Brain, p. 57

This very helpful God-given ability in the human spirit to think ahead (and in the past as well) is essential to our existence as human beings.

Ultimately, emotions stem from the very nature of God Himself who describes Himself in the Bible as having emotions. His creation reflects these same characteristics and human emotions; most emotions, in fact, mirror God's emotions.

Intelligence can be described as *Intelligence comes in many forms, but it is not known what intelligence – in any of its guises – means biologically.*<sup>112</sup>

The article goes on to explain that not too long ago it was commonly believed that man could make smart robots, but today<sup>113</sup>

*our robots are little more intelligent than sea slugs... Whatever intelligence is, it lies at the heart of what is special about Homo sapiens. Other species are hard-wired to solve particular problems, while our ability to abstract allows us to solve an open-ended series of problems. This means that studies of intelligence in mice and monkeys may be barking up the wrong family tree.*

The Bible makes it clear from the first chapter that mankind is distinct from the animals in terms of the human spirit. Furthermore, even man's bodies were made directly from the dust of the earth, the same method God used for the animals<sup>114</sup>. Zechariah 12:1 specifically confirms that the human spirit is unique, providing undeniable evidence of humans being created by God. Man can't duplicate it. Artificial Intelligence isn't an easy task, as science is quickly learning.

How is time represented in the brain? In fact, what is time? Nobody really knows. It is measured, but scientists don't know what it is. Researchers have failed to find evidence for a single "time organ" in the brain. Time is something put within the heart or spirit of man by his Creator and thus, as with other brain elements, has a supernatural origin<sup>115</sup>.

---

<sup>112</sup> Discover magazine, August 2007 issue, 10 Unsolved Mysteries of the Brain, p. 58

<sup>113</sup> Ibid.

<sup>114</sup> Compare Genesis 2:7 and 2:19

<sup>115</sup> Zechariah 12:1 and Ecclesiastics. 3:11

Why do brains sleep and dream? While there are plenty of ideas, *there is no universally agreed-upon answer.*<sup>116</sup> Whatever it is, sleep isn't something that God needs<sup>117</sup>. The Bible uses sleep as a type of the death of the body. Daniel 12:2, speaking of Christ's Second Coming, says, *And many of those who sleep in the dust of the earth shall awake, some to everlasting life, and some to shame and everlasting contempt.* Sleep by its very nature is a necessary form of rest for the body. Without it, mankind dies. And, ultimately, man's body enters what is commonly called 'eternal rest', eternal in the sense of the time before Christ's return.<sup>118</sup>

How do the specialised systems of the brain integrate with one another? Much research has gone into the different activities of the brain. Neuroscientists have a good idea of how the brain is divided into seemingly different compartments for hundreds of different tasks, but *despite their disparate functions, these systems seem to work together seamlessly. There are almost no good ideas about how this occurs.*<sup>119</sup> The human spirit works in conjunction with the physical brain. The Bible reveals that the spirit can function separately from the human brain and body. Jesus said that man should not fear those able to kill the body but who are unable to kill the spirit<sup>120</sup>. At death, man's body returns to the dust and his soul and spirit return to God in Heaven<sup>121</sup>.

Finally, scientists are ignorant of how to explain consciousness<sup>122</sup>:

*An explanation of consciousness is one of the major unsolved problems of modern science. If I give you all the Tinkertoys in the world and tell you to hook them up so that they form a conscious machine, good luck. We don't have a theory yet of how to do this; we don't even know what the theory will look like.*

After God made Adam directly from the dust of the Earth (and before He created Eve out of Adam's rib), Adam not only had consciousness, but he was out naming the animals. Man, from the very beginning, because of the unique human spirit placed within him, had consciousness, intelligence, and all these 'mysteries' of modern science!

---

<sup>116</sup> Discover magazine, August 2007 issue, 10 Unsolved Mysteries of the Brain, p. 60

<sup>117</sup> Psalm 121:4

<sup>118</sup> Discover magazine, August 2007 issue, 10 Unsolved Mysteries of the Brain, p. 60

<sup>119</sup> Ibid.

<sup>120</sup> Matthew 10:28

<sup>121</sup> Ecclesiastes 12:7

<sup>122</sup> Discover magazine, August 2007 issue, 10 Unsolved Mysteries of the Brain, p. 61

The answer to all the above unexplainable items is plain. Science is too limited in scope. It can't see or measure the unseen spiritual world, be it the human spirit or the Spirit of God. Only when God reveals Himself to man, as He has in the Bible and in the life of Jesus Christ, can he even begin to understand those things which will forever be a mystery to the one who rejects God in his knowledge. Only God, as the Creator, knows how the brain works and when broken, damaged or destroyed, He is the only One who can fix it and put it back together.

## **1.12 CONCLUSION**

In terms of its complexity and versatility, the human brain far surpasses any computer on earth. Computers, it is true, may be very fast at mathematical calculations and step-by-step processes, but only in an inflexible, pre-programmed way, and these represent only a small part of the brain's capabilities. The whole of the world's telephone system is equivalent to only about one gram of your brain – a piece the size of a pea! Where the brain can recognise a face in less than a second, there is *no computing network in the world* that could do the same.

Neurons are the basic working unit of the brain and nervous system, cells which are highly specialised for the function of conducting messages. Everything we do relies on neurons communicating with one another. Electrical impulses and chemical signals carrying messages across different parts of the brain and between the brain and the rest of the nervous system.

Neurotransmitters send chemical messages between neurons. Mental illnesses like depression can occur when this process does not work correctly. Communication between neurons can also be electrical, such as in areas of the brain that control movement. When electrical signals are abnormal, they can cause tremors or symptoms found in Parkinson's disease.

The endocrine system plays a very important role in regulating mood, growth and development, tissue function, metabolism, sexual function and reproductive processes. In general, the endocrine system is in charge of body processes that happen slowly, such as cell growth. Faster processes like breathing and body movement are controlled by the nervous system. But even though the nervous system and endocrine system are separate



systems, they often work together to help the body function properly. The foundations of the endocrine system are the hormones and glands. When these hormones go out of balance, this has an effect on the brain that can result in mood changes and anxiety which can contribute towards insanity and psychosis.

Understanding the brain structures, their individual workings and internal structures, as well as the relation towards each other, make it easier to comprehend where things can go wrong, ultimately and oftentimes significantly, affecting a person's mental state.

It is the combination of thought, mood and behaviour that determines the mental well-being of a person. Modern research into mental illness often involves a conjunction of several kinds of brain science: psychiatry, cognitive psychology, neuropsychology and neuroscience. The results of this convergence is generally referred to as *cognitive neuroscience* and refers to all activities of mind, including emotion, perception and the regulation of behaviour. The picture that is emerging from this union appears to confirm the idea that mental illness is a result of flaws either in the processing of information or in the brain physiology itself.

While neuroimaging technology does permit non-intrusive, visual images of working brains, cognitive neuroscientists still are unable to delve too thoroughly into the brain's intricate circuitry. For this reason, the physical and biochemical mechanisms for most mental illnesses are still not completely clear. As a result, the symptoms are also difficult to diagnose. Most mental illnesses lack specific biological identifiers, that is, they aren't associated with fevers, blood counts or pathogens.

Building new neurological pathways is one of the most important steps to healing for someone suffering from insanity and psychosis. The basic idea is that neurological pathways strengthen with use and weaken with disuse. While certain events are likely to provoke a hardwired neural response in a person, new neurological paths can be created with no more than a thought. Instead of letting automatic triggers dictate responses to painful events, a person can use this characteristic of the nervous systems to short-circuit the responses that lead to painful thoughts and emotions. Breaking with old and toxic thought patterns might just be the most challenging part of the recovery from mental disorders.

An event in a person's life where emotions play a role builds stronger memories than in events where emotions play a lesser part. Memories can be built into the body muscles and

cells up and above the memories located in the brain, and are vital to consider on the path to complete healing of the spirit, soul and body.

For decades, brain injury has been a major public health problem concern. It is a reality of life today with millions of people going through traumatic injuries such as car crashes, gunshot wounds, falls and sports injuries, just to name but a few. These injuries, together with prenatal injuries, neurodegeneration, brain tumours and infections can be the cause of insanity and psychosis.

The brain might be the most studied organ of the body but its processes are still far from fully understood. New technologies and imaging techniques are powering that research, but the brain's complexity contests even the most innovative technologies. Until researchers can successfully model the complex circuitry of the brain, the puzzle of mental illness will remain unsolved from a scientific point of view.

-----oOo-----





## *Chapter Two*

### *2. The Delineation of Insanity and Psychosis*

*For God did not give us a spirit of timidity (of cowardice, of craven and cringing and fawning fear), but [He has given us a spirit] of power and of love and of calm and well-balanced mind and discipline and self-control.*

*2 Timothy 1:7*

*The criterion of mental health is not one of individual adjustment to a given social order, but a universal one, valid for all men, of giving a satisfactory answer to the problem of human existence.*

*Erich Fromm, The Sane Society (1955)*

#### **2.1. INTRODUCTION**

In today's society, people use psychological terms and phrases very casually. Self-esteem, hyperactive behaviour, and dysfunctional families are much talked about. When a person is sad, it is said that he is depressed; when he is stressed, it is suggested that he may have an anxiety disorder. Psychiatric medications are regularly prescribed by family physicians for what some contend are normal changes in mood, leading many to wonder what a mental illness really is.

In psychology, a mental illness is defined as a *disorder of the brain resulting in the interruption of a person's thoughts, feelings, moods, and ability to relate to others that is severe enough to require psychological or psychiatric intervention*. While many people will have significant changes in their thoughts, emotions, and relationships during the course of a normal lifetime, the changes generally are not severe enough to require treatment. A mental illness, on the other hand, is a devastating experience in which the person is simply unable to function normally over an extended period of time. Given the broad definition, it is necessary to understand how a person is diagnosed with a specific mental disorder such as schizophrenia.

The classification of mental disorders, also known as nosology or taxology, is a key aspect of psychiatry and other mental health professionals and an important issue for consumers and providers of mental health services. There are currently two widely established systems for classifying mental disorders: (1) Chapter V of the International Classification of Diseases (ICD-10) produced by the World Health Organization (WHO), and (2) the Diagnostic and Statistical Manual of Mental Disorder (DSM-IV) produced by the American Psychiatric Association (APA). Both list categories of disorders thought to be distinct types, and have deliberately converged their codes in recent revisions so that the manuals are often broadly comparable, although significant differences do still remain.

The DSM-IV-TR diagnostic categories are disorders usually recognised in infancy, childhood, or adolescence, substance-related disorders, schizophrenia and other psychotic disorders, mood disorders, anxiety disorders, somatoform disorders, factitious disorders, dissociative disorders, sexual and gender identity disorders, impulse-control disorders, adjustment disorders and personality disorders.

Within each category, the criteria are listed that must be present for a person to be diagnosed with a specific mental disorder (e.g. depression, schizophrenia, bulimia nervosa). The decision by a mental health professional to diagnose a person as suffering from a mental illness is not a subjective one, but rather is based on the presence of observable behavioural criteria described in the DSM-IV-TR.

Although the exact cause of insanity and psychosis is not known, it is becoming clear through research that many of these conditions are caused by a combination of biological, psychological and environmental factors. However, what is disturbing without a doubt is

learning about the effects of mental disorders not only on the individual but on his family, his relationships and his health.

## **2.2. THE PHILOSOPHY OF MENTAL ILLNESS**

*Psychiatry* involves theories of the mind, theories of the causes of mental disorders, classification schemes for those disorders, research about the disorders, proven treatments and research into new treatments, and a number of professions whose job it is to work with or on behalf of people with mental disorders. The philosophical study of psychiatry discusses conceptual, ethical, metaphysical, social and epistemological issues that arise in all these aspects of psychiatry. Central to this study is the nature of mental illness.

The central philosophical debate over mental illness is not about its existence, but rather over how to define it, and whether it can be given a scientific or objective definition, or whether normative and subjective elements are essential to a person's concept of mental illness.

While there is debate over how to define mental illness, it is generally accepted that mental illnesses are real and involve disturbances of thought, experience and emotion serious enough to cause functional impairment in people, rendering it difficult for them to sustain interpersonal relationships and carry on their jobs, sometimes leading to self-destructive behaviour and even suicide. The most serious mental illnesses, such as schizophrenia, bipolar disorder, major depression and schizoaffective disorder, are frequently chronic and can cause serious disability.

What we now call mental illness was not always treated as a medical problem. Descriptions of the behaviours now labelled as symptomatic of mental illness or disorder were sometimes framed in quite different terms, such as possession by supernatural forces. Anthropological work in non-Western cultures suggests that there are many cases of behaviour that Western psychiatry would classify as symptomatic of mental disorder, which are not regarded within their indigenous cultures as signifying mental illness. One may even raise the question of whether all other cultures even have a concept of mental illness that corresponds even approximately to the Western concept, although this question is closely tied to that of adequately translating from other languages, and in societies without equivalent medical

technology to the west, it will be hard to interpret and explain what counts as a concept of disease.

The mainstream view in the West is that the changes in man's description and treatment of mental illness are a result of increasing knowledge and greater conceptual sophistication. Evidence from anthropological studies makes it clear that some mental illnesses are expressed differently in different cultures and also that non-Western cultures often have a different way of thinking about mental illness. For example, some cultures may see trance-like states as a form of possession. This has led some to argue that Western psychiatry also needs to change its approach to mental illness. However, the anthropological research is not set in the same conceptual terms as philosophy, and so it is unclear to what extent it implies that mental illness is primarily a Western concept.

A more extreme view is that there is no such thing as mental illness because the very notion is based on a fundamental set of mistakes. Others compared psychiatry to alchemy or astrology, contending that the continued belief in mental illness by psychiatrists is the result of dogmatism and a pseudoscientific approach using ad hoc defences of their main claims. They also argued that the concept of mental illness is based on confusion between that which is real with that which is imitation.<sup>123</sup>

## 2.3. AN OVERVIEW ON MENTAL DISORDERS

Mental disorders<sup>124</sup> are illnesses that affect or are manifested in the brain. They may impact on the way a person thinks, behaves and interacts with other people. A mental disorder has a major impact on a person's well-being. It may interfere directly with daily functioning (at home, work and socially) and adversely affect quality of life. Mental disorders are caused by a complex and poorly understood interaction between genetics, learned behaviour, personality, past psychological influences, physical health, present circumstances and coping skills. Mental disorders can have a physiological basis and arise from changes in brain chemistry<sup>125</sup>.

---

<sup>123</sup> Encyclopedia of Philosophy, Mental Illness [Online] Available from: <http://plato.stanford.edu/entries/mental-illness/> [Accessed: 10 July 2014]

<sup>124</sup> Etymology: Disorder: late 15c., from *dis-* "not" (see *dis-*) + the verb *order* (v.). Replaced earlier *disordeine* (mid-14c.), from Old French *desordainer*; from Medieval Latin *disordinare* "throw into disorder," from Latin *ordinare* "to order, regulate" (see *ordain*). Related: *Disordered*; *disordering*. [www.etymonline.com](http://www.etymonline.com)

<sup>125</sup> Lundbeck Institute, Overview of Mental Disorders. [Online] Available from: [http://www.brainexplorer.org/factsheets/psychiatry\\_overview.pdf](http://www.brainexplorer.org/factsheets/psychiatry_overview.pdf) [Accessed: 7 March 2014]

All mental disorders are diagnosed within one of the following categories:

### 2.3.1 Mood Disorders

Mood disorders are clinical conditions characterised by a disturbance of mood or persistent emotional states that affect how a person acts, thinks and perceives his environment. People with mood disorders often suffer from overwhelming feelings of sadness (depression), while others suffer from alternating periods of mania and depression (bipolar disorder).

*Mood disorders result from a damaged body and mind;  
wounded people with damaged lives.*<sup>126</sup>

#### 2.3.1.1 Symptoms of Mood Disorders

No two people experience mood<sup>127</sup> disorders in exactly the same way. Some people experience a few symptoms; others experience many. Severity of the symptoms varies across individuals and over time. Potential symptoms of mood disorders include the following<sup>128</sup>:

- persistent sad, anxious, or 'empty' mood;
- feelings of hopelessness or pessimism;
- feelings of guilt, worthlessness or helplessness;
- loss of interest or pleasure in hobbies and activities previously enjoyed;
- decreased energy, feeling fatigued, or being "slowed down";
- difficulty concentrating, remembering or making decisions;
- insomnia, early morning awakening, or oversleeping;
- reduced appetite and weight loss, or overeating and weight gain;
- thoughts of death or suicide, suicide attempts;
- restlessness or irritability; and

---

<sup>126</sup> Stanford, M S (2008) *Grace for the Afflicted - Viewing Mental Illness Through the Eyes of Faith*. Inter-Varsity Press: US, p. 88

<sup>127</sup> Etymology: Mood: "emotional condition, frame of mind," Old English mod "heart, frame of mind, spirit; courage, arrogance, pride; power, violence," from Proto-Germanic \*motha- (cognates: Old Saxon mod "mind, courage," Old Frisian mod "intellect, mind, intention," Old Norse moðr "wrath, anger," Middle Dutch moet, Dutch moed, Old High German muot, German Mut "courage," Gothic moþs "courage, anger"), of unknown origin. A much more vigorous word in Anglo-Saxon than currently, and used widely in compounds (such as modcræftig "intelligent," modful "proud"). To be in the mood "willing (to do something)" is from 1580s. First record of mood swings is from 1942. [www.etymonline.com](http://www.etymonline.com)

<sup>128</sup> Stanford, M S (2008) *Grace for the Afflicted - Viewing Mental Illness Through the Eyes of Faith*. Inter-Varsity Press: US, pp. 75-76



- persistent physical symptoms that do not respond to treatment, such as headaches, digestive disorders or chronic pain.

A mood disorder is not the same as a brief period of sadness or a passing blue mood. A depressed mood that occurs in reaction to loss (e.g. death of a spouse) or trauma (e.g. rape) is often referred to as a *reactive depression*. While in some instances a reactive depression may be severe and require treatment, it is normally of short duration and is often self-correcting. In the mood disorders outlined before, the depressed mood arises spontaneously and is chronic (long-lasting), the symptoms are severe, and the individual is unable to function normally.

### 2.3.2 Personality Disorders

Personality<sup>129</sup> disorders are deeply ingrained, maladaptive patterns of behaviour. The initial signs of personality disorders can be recognised in adolescence or earlier and symptoms often continue throughout adult life. Personality disorders can have an adverse effect both on the individual and on society.

#### 2.3.2.1 Symptoms of Personality Disorders

Types of personality disorders are grouped into three clusters, based on similar characteristics and symptoms. Many people with one personality disorder also have signs and symptoms of at least one additional personality disorder<sup>130</sup> categorised in cluster A, B or C.

**Cluster A** personality disorders are characterised by odd, eccentric thinking or behaviour. They include paranoid personality disorder, schizoid personality disorder and schizotypal personality disorder. It's not necessary to exhibit all the signs and symptoms listed for a disorder to be diagnosed.

---

<sup>129</sup> Etymology: Personality: late 14c., "quality or fact of being a person," from Medieval Latin *personalitatem* (nominative *personalitas*), from Late Latin *personalis* (see *personal*). Sense of "a distinctive character" is first recorded 1795, from French *personnalité*. Personality is the supreme realization of the innate idiosyncrasy of a living being. It is an act of courage flung in the face of life, the absolute affirmation of all that constitutes the individual, the most successful adaptation to the universal conditions of existence, coupled with the greatest possible freedom of self-determination. [C.G. Jung, 1875-1961]. Meaning "person whose character stands out from that of others" is from 1889. *Personality cult* is attested from 1956. [www.etymonline.com](http://www.etymonline.com)

<sup>130</sup> Personality Disorders Symptoms (<http://www.mayoclinic.org/diseases-conditions/personality-disorders/basics/symptoms/con-20030111>)

**Cluster B** personality disorders are characterised by dramatic, overly emotional or unpredictable thinking or behaviour. They include antisocial personality disorder, borderline personality disorder, histrionic personality disorder and narcissistic personality disorder. It's not necessary to exhibit all the signs and symptoms listed for a disorder to be diagnosed.

**Cluster C** personality disorders are characterised by anxious, fearful thinking or behaviour. They include avoidant personality disorder, dependent personality disorder and obsessive-compulsive personality disorder. It's not necessary to exhibit all the signs and symptoms listed for a disorder to be diagnosed.

### 2.3.3 Anxiety Disorders

Anxiety<sup>131</sup> disorders include various combinations of mental and physical manifestations of anxiety not attributable to real danger and occurring either in attacks (panic disorder) or as a persisting state (generalised anxiety disorder). Anxiety symptoms include emotional (fear), cognitive (anxious thoughts) and bodily symptoms (increased heart rate), the latter being caused by stimulation of the autonomic nervous system. Anxiety disorders also include phobias, social phobia (social anxiety disorder), obsessive-compulsive disorder and post-traumatic stress disorder.

*The bodies of people suffering from anxiety disorders are wired to be anxious.*<sup>132</sup>

#### 2.3.3.1 Symptoms of Anxiety Disorders

The common symptoms of disorders fall into three broad categories: physiological, cognitive and behavioural. The physiological symptoms include pounding heart, dizziness, sweating, trembling, shortness of breath, chest pain and nausea. The cognitive symptoms include fear of losing control, fear of dying, feelings of unreality and feelings of depersonalisation. The behavioural symptoms include exaggerated startle response, irritability, avoidance behaviours and difficulty sleeping. In an anxiety disorder, the symptoms are chronic (or

---

<sup>131</sup> Etymology: Anxiety: 1520s, from Latin *anxietatem* (nominative *anxietas*) "anguish, anxiety, solicitude," noun of quality from *anxius* (see *anxious*). Psychiatric use dates to 1904. *Age of Anxiety* is from Auden's poem (1947). For "anxiety, distress," Old English had *angsumnes*, Middle English *anxumnesse*. [www.etymonline.com](http://www.etymonline.com)

<sup>132</sup> Stanford, M S (2008) *Grace for the Afflicted - Viewing Mental Illness Through the Eyes of Faith*. Inter-Varsity Press: US, p. 109

appear multiple times over a given period) and extreme, resulting in the individual being consumed by anxiety and unable to function normally.<sup>133</sup>

### **2.3.4 Eating Disorders**

Eating disorders involve disproportionate concern in matters of food and weight. Categories of disorder in this area include anorexia nervosa, bulimia nervosa, exercise bulimia or binge eating disorder.

#### **2.3.4.1 Symptoms of Eating Disorders**

While the eating disorders are distinct in their manifestation, they do share a set of common symptoms or warning signs which can include fear of gaining weight, self-esteem determined by weight or body shape, obsession with body image and weight, self-consciousness or embarrassment about eating, guilt or shame after eating, lying about eating habits, depression, restrictive eating, compulsive exercise, sneaking food, menstrual irregularities and gastrointestinal problems.

Binge eating and compensatory behaviours such as purging are often done in secret and hence may go unnoticed. Suicide attempts and self-mutilating behaviours, such as cutting or burning, are common in individuals with eating disorders. Disorders such as depression, substance abuse and anxiety disorders frequently co-occur with eating disorders. An eating disorder can be a life-threatening condition, so hospitalisation to restore weight and address electrolyte imbalances may be required. Approximately 10% of those diagnosed will die because of complications related to the disorder (e.g. cardiac arrest).<sup>134</sup>

*Eating disorders are rooted in deception.<sup>135</sup> Those afflicted with an eating disorder are dying physically and spiritually<sup>136</sup>*

---

<sup>133</sup> Ibid, p. 95

<sup>134</sup> Ibid, pp. 149-150

<sup>135</sup> Stanford, M S. Grace for the Afflicted - Viewing Mental Illness Through the Eyes of Faith. Inter-Varsity Press: US, p. 145

<sup>136</sup> Ibid.

### **2.3.5 Sleep Disorders**

Sleep disorders such as insomnia, sleep apnea and narcolepsy involve disruption to normal sleep patterns, or a feeling of tiredness despite sleep appearing normal. Sleep disorders such as sleepwalking and night terrors are far more common in young children. Sleepwalking, also known as somnambulism, is characterised by periods of getting out of bed while asleep<sup>137</sup>.

#### **2.3.5.1 Symptoms of Sleep Disorders**

Everyone experiences occasional sleep problems, but how can one tell whether a sleeping problem is just a minor, passing annoyance or a sign of a more serious sleep disorder or underlying medical condition? Start by scrutinising the symptoms, looking especially for the tell-tale daytime signs of sleep deprivation. If you are experiencing any of the following symptoms on a regular basis, you may be dealing with a sleep disorder:<sup>138</sup>

- feeling irritable or sleepy during the day;
- having difficulty staying awake when sitting still, watching television or reading;
- falling asleep or feeling very tired while driving;
- having difficulty concentrating;
- often getting told by others that you look tired;
- reacting slowly;
- having trouble controlling emotions;
- feeling like you need a nap almost every day; and
- requiring caffeinated beverages to keep going.

### **2.3.6 Sexual and Gender Identity Disorders**

Gender Identity Disorder (GID) or gender dysphoria or transsexualism is defined by strong, persistent feelings of identification with the opposite gender and discomfort with one's own assigned sex. People with GID desire to live as members of the opposite sex and often dress and use mannerisms associated with the other gender. For instance, a person identified as a boy

---

<sup>137</sup> Psychology, Sleep Disorders. [Online] Available from: [http://psychology.about.com/od/statesofconsciousness/p/sleep\\_disorders.htm](http://psychology.about.com/od/statesofconsciousness/p/sleep_disorders.htm) [Accessed: 8 April 2014]

<sup>138</sup> Help Guide, Sleep Disorder and Sleeping Problems. [Online] Available from: [http://www.helpguide.org/life/sleep\\_disorders.htm](http://www.helpguide.org/life/sleep_disorders.htm) [Accessed: 28 March 2014]

may feel and act like a girl. This is distinct from homosexuality in that homosexuals nearly always identify with their apparent sex or gender. Identity issues may manifest in a variety of different ways. For example, some people with normal genitals and secondary sex characteristics of one gender privately identify more with the other gender. Some may cross-dress, and some may actually seek sex-change surgery. Others are born with ambiguous genitalia, which can raise identity issues.<sup>139</sup>

### **2.3.6.1 Symptoms of Sexual and Gender Identity Disorders**

The exact cause of gender identity disorder is not known, but several theories exist. These theories suggest that the disorder may be caused by genetic (chromosomal) abnormalities, hormone imbalances during foetal and childhood development, defects in normal human bonding and child rearing, or a combination of these factors<sup>140</sup>.

Children with gender identity disorder often display the following symptoms:

- expressed desire to be the opposite sex (including passing oneself off as the opposite sex and calling oneself by an opposite sex name);
- disgust with their own genitals: boys may pretend not to have a penis; girls may fear growing breasts and menstruating, may refuse to sit when urinating, and may bind their breasts to make them less noticeable,
- belief that they will grow up to become the opposite sex;
- rejection by their peer groups;
- dressing and behaving in a manner typical of the opposite sex (for example, a female wearing boy's underwear);
- withdrawal from social interaction and activity; and
- feelings of isolation, depression and anxiety.

Adults with gender identity disorder often display the following symptoms:

- desire to live as a person of the opposite sex;
- desire to be rid of their own genitals;
- dressing and behaving in a manner typical of the opposite sex;
- withdrawal from social interaction and activity; and
- feelings of isolation, depression and anxiety.

---

<sup>139</sup> Psychology Today, Gender Identity Disorder [Online] Available from: <http://www.psychologytoday.com/conditions/gender-identity-disorder> [Accessed: 27 June 2014]

<sup>140</sup> WebMD, Gender Identity Disorder [Online] Available from: <http://www.webmd.com/sex/gender-identity-disorder> [Accessed: 8 April 2014]

### **2.3.7 Conduct Disorder**

Conduct disorder, if continuing into adulthood, may be diagnosed as antisocial personality disorder (dissocial personality disorder in the ICD). Popular labels include psychopath (or sociopath). Two subtypes of conduct disorder are provided based on the age at onset of the disorder (i.e. Childhood-Onset Type and Adolescent-Onset Type). The subtypes differ in regard to the characteristic nature of the presenting conduct problems, developmental course and prognosis, and gender ratio. Both subtypes can occur in a mild, moderate or severe form.

#### **2.3.7.1 Symptoms of Conduct Disorder**

The essential feature of conduct disorder is a repetitive and persistent pattern of behaviour by a child or teenager in which the basic rights of others or major age-appropriate societal norms or rules are violated. These behaviours fall into four main groupings: (1) aggressive conduct that causes or threatens physical harm to other people or animals; (2) nonaggressive conduct that causes property loss or damage; (3) deceitfulness or theft; and (4) serious violations of rules, time and time again<sup>141</sup>.

Conduct disorder is characterised by a repetitive and persistent pattern of behaviour in which the basic rights of others or major age-appropriate societal norms or rules are violated, as manifested by the presence of three (or more) of the following criteria in the past 12 months, with at least one criterion present in the past six months:

This disorder shows aggression to people and animals in the following ways:

- often bullies, threatens, or intimidates others;
- often initiates physical fights;
- has used a weapon that can cause serious physical harm to others (e.g. a bat, brick, broken bottle, knife, gun);
- has been physically cruel to people;
- has been physically cruel to animals;

---

<sup>141</sup> Psychcentral, Conduct Disorder Symptoms. [Online] Available from: <http://psychcentral.com/disorders/conduct-disorder-symptoms/> [Accessed: 8 April 2014]

- has stolen while confronting a victim (e.g. mugging, purse snatching, extortion, armed robbery); or
- has forced someone into sexual activity.

Destruction of property includes instances where a person has deliberately engaged in fire setting with the intention of causing serious damage, as well as where a person has deliberately destroyed the property of others (other than by fire setting).

Deceitfulness or theft includes instances where a person has broken into someone else's house, building or car; where he often lies to obtain goods or favours or to avoid obligations (i.e. he 'cons' others); and where a person has stolen items of nontrivial value without confronting a victim (e.g. shoplifting, but without breaking and entering, or forgery).

Serious violations of rules includes instances where a person often stays out at night despite parental prohibitions, beginning before age 13 years; where he has run away from home overnight at least twice while living in parental or parental surrogate home (or once without returning for a lengthy period); and where he is often truant from school, beginning before age 13 years.

### **2.3.8 Somatoform Disorders**

Somatoform disorders may be diagnosed when there are problems that appear to originate in the body that are thought to be manifestations of a mental disorder. This includes somatisation disorder and conversion disorder. There are also disorders of how a person perceives their body, such as body dysmorphic disorder. Neurasthenia is an old diagnosis involving somatic complaints as well as fatigue and low spirits or depression.

#### **2.3.8.1 Symptoms of Somatoform Disorders**

A person who has a history of physical or sexual abuse is more likely to have this disorder. However, not every person with a somatisation disorder has a history of abuse. As researchers study the connections between the brain and body, there is mounting evidence

that emotional well-being affects the way in which people perceive pain and other symptoms<sup>142</sup>.

A person with this disorder has many physical complaints that last for years. Most often, the complaints involve chronic pain and problems with the digestive system, nervous system and reproductive system. The symptoms often interfere with work and relationships, and lead to many visits to different health care providers. Stress often worsens the symptoms.

Some of the many symptoms that can occur with somatisation disorder include abdominal pain, amnesia, back pain, bloating, chest pain, diarrhoea, difficulty swallowing, dizziness, headaches, impotence, joint pain, nausea and sometimes vomiting, pain during intercourse, pain during urination, painful menstruation, pain in the legs or arms, palpitations, paralysis or muscle weakness, sexual activity, shortness of breath and vision changes.

### **2.3.9 Factitious Disorders**

Factitious disorders, such as Munchausen syndrome, are diagnosed where symptoms are thought to be experienced (deliberately produced) or are reported (feigned) for personal gain. A person with factitious disorders deliberately creates or exaggerates symptoms of an illness in several ways: he may lie about or fake symptoms, hurt himself to bring on symptoms, or alter tests (such as contaminating a urine sample) to make it appear that he (or a person in his care) is sick.

#### **2.3.9.1 Symptoms of Factitious Disorders**

The exact cause of factitious disorders is not known, but researchers are looking at the roles of biological and psychological factors in the development of these disorders. Some theories suggest that a history of abuse or neglect as a child, or a history of frequent illnesses that required hospitalisation might be factors in the development of the disorder.<sup>143</sup>

Possible warning signs of factitious disorders include the following:

- dramatic but inconsistent medical history;

---

<sup>142</sup> NLM, Somatization disorder. [Online] Available from: <http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/ency/article/000955.htm> [Accessed: 8 April 2014]

<sup>143</sup> MedicalMed, What are the symptoms of factitious disorders? [Online] Available from: [http://www.medicinenet.com/factitious\\_disorders/page2.htm#what\\_are\\_the\\_symptoms\\_of\\_factitious\\_disorders](http://www.medicinenet.com/factitious_disorders/page2.htm#what_are_the_symptoms_of_factitious_disorders) [Accessed: 8 April 2014]



- unclear symptoms that are not controllable and that become progressively severe or change once treatment has begun;
- predictable relapses following improvement in the condition;
- extensive knowledge of hospitals and medical terminology, as well as the textbook descriptions of illness;
- presence of many surgical scars;
- appearance of new or additional symptoms following negative test results;
- presence of symptoms only when the patient is with others or being observed;
- willingness or eagerness to have medical tests, operations or other procedures;
- history of seeking treatment at many hospitals, clinics, and doctors' offices, possibly even in different cities; and
- reluctance to allow health care professionals to meet with or talk to family members, friends and prior doctors.

### **2.3.10 Developmental Disorders**

A range of developmental disorders that initially occur in childhood may be diagnosed, for example autism spectrum disorders, oppositional defiant disorder and conduct disorder, and attention deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD), which may continue into adulthood.

#### **2.3.10.1 Symptoms of Developmental Disorders**

Childhood disorders, often labelled as developmental disorders or learning disorders, most often occur and are diagnosed when the child is of school age. Although some adults may also relate to some of the symptoms of these disorders, typically the disorder's symptoms need to have first appeared at some point in the person's childhood.

### **2.3.11 Dissociative Disorder**

People who suffer severe disturbances of their self-identity, memory and general awareness of themselves and their surroundings may be classed as having a dissociative identity disorder, such as depersonalisation disorder or Dissociative Identity Disorder itself (which

has also been called multiple personality disorder, or split personality). Other memory or cognitive disorders include amnesia or various kinds of old age dementia<sup>144</sup>.

#### 2.3.11.1 Symptoms of Dissociative Disorders

Dissociative disorders vary in their severity and suddenness of onset. Exposure to a traumatic or extremely stressful event appears to be a characteristic common to individuals who manifest a dissociative disorder. While the dissociative disorders differ in their specific diagnostic features, they do share a common set of core symptoms<sup>145</sup> which include memory loss, confusion about identity, distorted body perception (e.g. limbs may seem unreal, strange or detached), feelings of detachment from one's self (depersonalisation), and feelings that one's surroundings are unreal (de-realisation).

Suicide attempts are common in individuals diagnosed with dissociative disorders. Also common are self-mutilating behaviours like cutting or burning. Depression, post-traumatic stress disorder, and borderline personality disorder often occur in conjunction with dissociative disorders.

*Dissociative disorders have physical, psychological and spiritual components.*<sup>146</sup>

#### 2.3.12 Impulse Control Disorder

People who are abnormally unable to resist certain urges or impulses that could be harmful to themselves or others may be classed as having an impulse control disorder. Various behavioural addictions, such as a gambling addiction, may be classed as a disorder. Obsessive-compulsive disorder can sometimes involve an inability to resist certain acts but is classed separately as being primarily an anxiety disorder.

A mental impairment is defined as any mental or psychological disorder, such as mental retardation, organic brain syndrome, emotional or mental illness, and specific learning disabilities.<sup>147</sup>

---

<sup>144</sup> Etymology: Dementia: 1806, from Latin *dementia* "madness, insanity," literally "a being out of one's mind," from *dement-*, stem of *demens* "mad, raving" (see *dement*) + abstract noun suffix *-ia*. It existed earlier in an Anglicized form, *demency* (1520s), from French *démence*. *Dementia praecox* is a Modern Latin form recorded from 1899 in English, 1891 in German, from French *démence précoce* (1857). [www.etymonline.com](http://www.etymonline.com)

<sup>145</sup> Stanford, M S (2008) *Grace for the Afflicted - Viewing Mental Illness Through the Eyes of Faith*. Inter-Varsity Press: US, pp. 130-131

<sup>146</sup> Ibid. p. 142

The main types of impulse control disorder include kleptomania (stealing), intermittent explosive disorder, pyromania (fire-setting), trichotillomania and pathological gambling.

### **Symptoms of Impulse Control Disorder**

In the case of kleptomania, the child might steal items from family members, friends or stores. The stolen paraphernalia might have no use or value to the child. These thefts usually happen repeatedly until the acts are discovered and the child is treated.

Another symptom is sudden, explosive violence against others or the property of others. Fire-starting is symptomatic of an impulse control disorder. A child who starts fires may display a fascination with watching things burn. He might begin by setting small fires in leaves and escalating to homes and buildings.

Hair pulling is also indicative of a problem with impulse control. This usually involves the hair on the head or the eyelashes or eyebrows. The child may suffer significant hair loss. Accompanying symptoms include head banging, skin scratching and nail biting.

A pathological need to gamble might exist which can result in losing more than just money, but also belongings and even homes.<sup>148</sup>

### **2.3.13 Cognitive Disorders**

Cognitive disorders are a category of mental health disorders that primarily affect learning, memory, perception, attention, reasoning and problem solving, and include amnesia, dementia, delirium and mental retardation. Examples of these disorders are Down's Syndrome, Dilantin Toxicity, Progressive Multifocal Leukoencephalopathy (PML) and Korsakoff's.<sup>149</sup>

---

<sup>147</sup> Smith, H V (2013) 4 Step Process to Mental Illness. Unknown , p. 42

<sup>148</sup> Live Strong, Impulse Control Disorder in Children [Online] Available from: <http://www.livestrong.com/article/152870-impulse-control-disorder-child-symptoms/> [Accessed: 27 June 2014]

<sup>149</sup> Tufts University, Cognitive Disorder [Online] Available from: <http://ocw.tufts.edu/data/18/302956.pdf> [Accessed: 27 June 2014]

### **2.3.13.1 Symptoms of Cognitive Disorders**

The symptoms of cognitive disorders will vary depending on the specific type, but they generally include problems with the brain's ability to process information or recall it. Problems with short term memory, disorganised thinking as well as other physical and psychological problems are some of the symptoms of cognitive disorders. The mental problems that are caused by this disorder can have serious negative effects on other areas of a person's life if left untreated.

As mentioned, if left untreated, cognitive disorders can quickly worsen, with the likelihood of other mental problems appearing. In addition to this, there is the danger that someone who has a cognitive disorder will get lost and be unable to find his way home or even remember who he is. These types of disorders can deteriorate to the point that constant supervision is required.<sup>150</sup>

### **2.3.14 Adjustment Disorder**

Adjustment disorder is an abnormal and excessive reaction to an identifiable life stressor. The reaction is more severe than would normally be expected and can result in significant impairment in social, occupational or academic functioning. The response may be linked to a single event (a flood or fire, marriage, divorce, starting school, new job) or multiple events (marital problems or severe business difficulties). Stressors may be recurrent events (child witnessing parents constantly fighting, chemotherapy, financial difficulties) or continuous (living in a crime-ridden neighbourhood).

Adjustment disorder often occurs with one or more of the following: depressed mood, anxiety, disturbance of conduct (in which the patient violates rights of others or major age-appropriate societal norms or rules), and maladaptive reactions (problems related to job or school, physical complaints, social isolation).

Adjustment disorders are associated with high risk of suicide and suicidal behaviour, substance abuse, prolonging of other medical disorders, or interference with their treatment.

---

<sup>150</sup> GoMentor, Cognitive Disorders. [Online] Available from: <http://www.gomentor.com/articles/cognitive-disorders.aspx> [Accessed: 28 March 2014]

An adjustment disorder that persists may progress to become a more serious mental disorder (major depressive disorder).<sup>151</sup>

The type of stress that can trigger adjustment disorder varies depending on the person, but can include the following:

- ending of a relationship or marriage;
- losing or changing a job;
- death of a loved one;
- developing a serious illness (yourself or a loved one);
- being a victim of a crime;
- having an accident;
- undergoing a major life change (getting married, having a baby, or retiring); and
- living through a disaster, such as a fire, flood or hurricane.

#### **2.3.14.1 Symptoms of Adjustment Disorder**

Adjustment disorder is a short-term condition that occurs when a person is unable to cope with, or adjust to, a particular source of stress, such as a major life change, loss or event.

A person with an adjustment disorder develops emotional and behavioural symptoms as a reaction to a stressful event. These symptoms generally begin within three months of the event and rarely last for longer than six months after the event or situation. In an adjustment disorder, the reaction to the stressor is greater than what is typical or expected for the situation or event. In addition, the symptoms may cause problems with a person's ability to function; for example, the person may be unable to sleep, work or study. Adjustment disorder is not the same as post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD). PTSD generally occurs as a reaction to a life-threatening event and tends to last longer. Adjustment disorder, on the other hand, is short-term, rarely lasting longer than six months<sup>152</sup>.

An adjustment disorder can have a variety of symptoms, which may include the following:

- feeling of hopelessness;
- sadness;

---

<sup>151</sup> Psychology Today, Adjustment Disorder [Online] Available from: <http://www.psychologytoday.com/conditions/adjustment-disorder> [Accessed: 27 June 2014]

<sup>152</sup> WebMD, Mental Health and Adjustment Disorder [Online] Available from: <http://www.webmd.com/mental-health/mental-health-adjustment-disorder> [Accessed: 28 March 2014]

- frequent crying;
- anxiety (nervousness);
- worry;
- headaches or stomach-aches;
- palpitations (an unpleasant sensation of irregular or forceful beating of the heart);
- withdrawal or isolation from people and social activities;
- absence from work or school;
- dangerous or destructive behaviour like fighting, reckless driving and vandalism;
- changes in appetite, either loss of appetite or overeating;
- problems sleeping;
- feeling tired or without energy; and
- an increase in the use of alcohol or other drugs.

### **2.3.15 Substance Abuse Disorder**

*Also referred to as Psychoactive Substance Abuse Disorders.*

Since the beginning of human history, people have experimented with mind-altering substances. And from the beginning there has always been a subset of people who, unable to control their substance use, have become addicted. The term *addiction* is derived from the Latin word *addicere*, which means 'to sentence'. And in a sense, addicted individuals truly are prisoners, forced to serve the substance to which they have become addicted<sup>153</sup>.

The substance use disorders can be divided into two categories reflective of this progression: abuse and dependence.

Substance abuse is characterised by continued substance use despite frequent undesirable consequences related to that use, consequences which often include legal difficulties, loss of a job, health issues, neglect of a child and marital problems. Substance dependence is characterised by a repeated pattern of substance abuse that results in tolerance, withdrawal and compulsive drug-taking behaviours.

---

<sup>153</sup>Stanford, M S. Grace for the Afflicted - Viewing Mental Illness Through the Eyes of Faith. Inter-Varsity Press: US, pp. 179-181

There are ten classes of substances for which the diagnoses of substance abuse and dependence can be given: alcohol; amphetamines; cannabis (marijuana); cocaine; hallucinogens (e.g. LSD); inhalants (e.g. paint thinner); nicotine; opioids (e.g. heroin); phencyclidine (PCP); and sedative, hypnotic, and anxiolytic (antianxiety) substances (e.g. Valium, barbiturates, sleeping pills).<sup>154</sup>

### **2.3.15.1 Symptoms of Substance Use Disorders**

People with drug and alcohol problems are often secretive about their substance use or blind to the fact that they even have a problem. The following are common signs that someone may have a drug or alcohol problem<sup>155</sup>:

- uncharacteristic irritability and mood swings;
- short-term memory loss or blackouts;
- changes in peer-group associations and friendships;
- absences from and tardiness to work or school (especially on Mondays);
- decline in quality and timeliness of job performance or schoolwork;
- unexplained termination of deep relationships;
- alienation from close family members;
- increase in interactions with the legal system (arrests, OWIs);
- gradual deterioration in personal appearance and hygiene;
- loss of appetite;
- weight loss;
- drowsiness; and
- red or bloodshot eyes.

### **2.3.16 Organic Mental Syndromes and Disorders**

An organic mental disorder (OMD), also known as organic brain syndrome or chronic organic brain syndrome, is a general medical condition that designates psychopathological syndromes which are known to be symptomatic manifestations of a systemic medical or cerebral disorder. Disorders are included in this category if they meet the following criteria: (1) there is evidence from the history, physical examination or laboratory findings that the

---

<sup>154</sup> Ibid.

<sup>155</sup> Ibid.

disturbance is the direct physiological consequence of a general medical condition; (2) the disturbance is not better accounted for by another mental disorder; and (3) the disturbance does not occur exclusively during the course of a delirium.

Conditions associated with these syndromes and disorders are brain injury caused by trauma; breathing conditions; cardiovascular disorders; degenerative disorders (like Alzheimer's and Parkinson's disease); dementia due to metabolic causes; drug and alcohol-related conditions; infections; other medical disorders (like Cancer); lithium toxicity causing permanent organic brain damage; and accumulation of heavy metals in the brains.<sup>156</sup>

### 2.3.16.1 Symptoms of Organic Mental Syndromes and Disorders

Symptoms depend on the cause of the organic mental disorder. Confusion, memory impairment, delirium, dementia, judgment, logical function and agitation are some common symptoms of organic mental disorder.<sup>157</sup>

### 2.3.17 Schizophrenia

Schizophrenia<sup>158</sup> is the most chronic and disabling of the severe mental disorders, associated with abnormalities of brain structure and function, disorganised speech and behaviour, delusions and hallucinations. It interferes with a person's ability to perceive reality, think clearly, manage emotions, make decisions and relate to others. The word *schizophrenia* means 'split mind', and the illness is often confused with dissociative identity disorder (multiple personality disorder) by the general public.<sup>159</sup>

Schizophrenia is characterised by profound disruptions in cognition and emotion affecting a person's most fundamental attributes, including language, thought, perception, emotion and sense of self. To be diagnosed with the disorder, the symptoms must be present for a significant portion of time during a one-month period with further indication of the disorder having been present for at least six months.

---

<sup>156</sup> Ameen, S, Organic Mental Disorders [Online] Available from: <http://www.psyplexus.com/neuropsychiatry/introduction.htm> [Accessed: 27 June 2014]

<sup>157</sup> Ibid.

<sup>158</sup> Etymology: Schizophrenia: 1912, from Modern Latin, literally "a splitting of the mind," from German *Schizophrenie*, coined in 1910 by Swiss psychiatrist Eugen Bleuler (1857-1939), from Greek *skhizein* "to split" (see *schizo-*) + *phren* (genitive *phrenos*) "diaphragm, heart, mind," of unknown origin. [www.etymonline.com](http://www.etymonline.com)

<sup>159</sup> Stanford, M S (2008) Grace for the Afflicted - Viewing Mental Illness Through the Eyes of Faith. Inter-Varsity Press: US, pp. 114-116



The subtypes of schizophrenia are defined by the predominant symptoms presented at the time of evaluation: paranoid, disorganised, catatonic and undifferentiated. The essential feature of the *paranoid type* is paranoia or suspicion of others. These individuals often believe themselves to be persecuted or in danger. Persistent delusions or hallucinations are often present. The essential features of the *disorganized type* are disorganised behaviour, incoherent speech and emotions inappropriate to a situation. Hallucinations are not usually present. The essential feature of the *catatonic type* is a disturbance in movement, such as immobility, bizarre postures, or a parrot-like, senseless repetition of speech. The person is usually withdrawn and isolated. The essential feature of the *undifferentiated type* is the presence of schizophrenia symptoms, but the individual does not meet the additional criteria necessary for the paranoid, disorganised or catatonic type.

### 2.3.17.1 Symptoms of Schizophrenia

The symptoms of schizophrenia fall into three broad categories: positive, negative and cognitive. *Positive symptoms* are unusual perceptions or thoughts that include hallucinations and delusions. *Negative symptoms* are the loss or decrease of an ability that is normally present, such as speaking or expressing emotions. *Cognitive symptoms* are problems with attention memory, and with the ability to plan and organise.

Some of the more commonly reported symptoms of schizophrenia include the following<sup>160</sup>:

- auditory and visual hallucinations (sensing things that others do not sense);
- delusions (a false belief strongly held despite evidence to the contrary);
- grossly disorganised behaviour;
- lack of or decline in speech;
- altered emotions;
- lack of motivation;
- lack of pleasure in everyday life;
- disorganised thinking;
- difficulty staying focused and completing tasks; and
- poor memory.

---

<sup>160</sup> Ibid.

These symptoms are associated with serious social and occupational disturbances. Individuals who have had at least one episode of schizophrenia but who no longer manifest prominent positive symptoms (e.g. hallucinations or delusions) are given a diagnosis of a 'residual type' of schizophrenia. These individuals continue to show negative symptoms (e.g. altered emotions, lack of speech) related to the disorder.

### **2.3.18 Mental Disorders due to a General Medical Condition**

These mental disorders are diagnosed when there is evidence they are caused by the specified medical conditions. This includes catatonic disorder due to a general medical condition; general paresis of the insane; and personality change due to a general medical condition. Examples of medical disorders due to a general medical condition are Klüver–Bucy syndrome, Nocturnal enuresis and AIDS-related psychosis.<sup>161</sup>

#### **2.3.18.1 Other Conditions that may be a Focus of Clinical Attention**

Examples of other conditions that may be a focus of clinical attention include neurological disorders such as Tardive dyskinesia.

## **2.4. CLASS, RACE, FAMILY AND MENTAL HEALTH**

The prevalence of mental health disorders is inversely related to economic status: as levels of education and income go up, the prevalence of disorders goes down. This finding is generally true of most types of disorders, including affective disorders such as depression, as well as schizophrenia and personality disorders.

Studies found that a significant number of schizophrenic patients lived in poorer areas of a city. Social conditions are not simply risk factors but also fundamental causes of well-being because they affect many physical and mental health outcomes through many different mechanisms. The relationship between class and disorder is relevant when comparing the

---

<sup>161</sup> Behavenet, Mental Disorders Due to a General Medical Condition, [Online] Available from: <http://behavenet.com/mental-disorders-due-general-medical-condition> [Accessed: 11 April 2014]

prevalence of disorders among racial groups, because income is unevenly distributed across them.

Research shows that in America African Americans have higher rates of mental illness than whites or Latino Americans, though the relationship is complex. African Americans and other minorities may experience more distress than whites, in part because of the stresses associated with racism as well as the higher concentration of blacks in poverty; that is, race differences reflect class differences. Reported stressors are typically higher among African Americans compared to whites, even controlling for income and other factors. However, African Americans may deal more effectively with stressors than whites. Being emotionally flexible, learning resilience from earlier adversities or getting support from religious groups may deflect stressors for African Americans.

When discrimination is included in studies of stressors, bigger differences in levels of distress is seen between African Americans and whites, underscoring the importance of including this key form of strain in the study of racial differences. Moreover, researchers found that daily discrimination and major lifetime discrimination, such as in promotions, in housing and by police, each influenced distress. Racial stereotypes may also contribute to the disproportionate diagnoses of certain mental illnesses among African American patients. Other research shows that African Americans are less likely to be diagnosed with bipolar disorder and more likely to be diagnosed with schizophrenia than whites. However, the research found no racial differences in diagnoses of depression, the most common disorder.

Marital status is another characteristic associated with mental health and well-being. Married people are generally happier, healthier and financially more secure than single, divorced or and widowed people. Married people on average report higher levels of life satisfaction, lower levels of distress, and better physical health than their single counterparts. Married people report better sex lives, too. The positive effects of marriage on health and well-being may reflect access to social support or the committed nature of marital relationships.

For instance, cohabiting is associated with higher levels of well-being than being single, reflecting access to regular social support. However, being married continues to have a stronger effect on well-being than being single or cohabiting. Some evidence indicates that differences in well-being between those who are married and those who cohabit without being married lie in differences between these groups in coping resources. In other words, married persons have more resources in their relationships with their partners that aid them

in coping with stress than persons who cohabit; this helps to explain the differences in well-being between those who are married and those who cohabit.

Studies consistently show that women report higher levels of depression and other emotional disorders than men. However, men are more likely to exhibit behavioural problems such as alcoholism, drug addiction and aggression. Hence, overall levels of mental health are probably comparable between men and women, but the disorders are manifested in different ways. Women report higher levels of most emotions, including sadness, anxiety and anger, the latter an emotion traditionally associated with men. It has been argued that women's less powerful position in society produces more stressors, leading to more distress.<sup>162</sup>

## **2.5. SOME SECULAR TREATMENTS OF MENTAL ILLNESS**

### **2.5.1 Medication**

Psychiatric medication is widely used to treat mental disorders. These are licenced psychoactive drugs usually prescribed by a psychiatrist or family doctor. For years, mental illness has been treated with medication, a situation which has raised a few questions for many who do not believe that medication is the key or that it is effective. However, medications may play an important role in the treatment of a mental illness, particularly when the symptoms are severe.

There are several main groups of medication as discussed below:

#### **2.5.1.1 Antidepressants**

Antidepressants are the most prescribed therapy for depression. The exact mechanism of action of antidepressants is unknown. The prevailing theory is that antidepressants increase the concentration of one or more brain chemicals (neurotransmitters) that nerves in the brain use to communicate with one another. The neurotransmitters affected by antidepressants are norepinephrine, serotonin and dopamine.

---

<sup>162</sup> Rohall, D E & Milkie M A & Lucas J W (2014) Social Psychology. USA: Pearsons, pp. 233-235

The different classes of antidepressants differ in the neurotransmitters they affect. This determines some of their side effects and potential drug interactions, both of which are major factors influencing the selection of antidepressants and compliance with therapy.<sup>163</sup>

### **2.5.1.2 Anxiolytics**

Anxiolytics are used, generally shorter-term, for anxiety disorders and related problems such as physical symptoms and insomnia. There are a number of anxiolytic (anxiety-relieving) drugs available. For years the standard medication used to treat anxiety disorders has been a class of medications called benzodiazepines. Examples of this type of medication include Xanax, Klonopin, Valium and Ativan. The most common side effect of these drugs is daytime drowsiness, or what some have described as a 'hangover feeling'.

Benzodiazepines lower anxiety by increasing the activity of the neurotransmitter GABA. There is a serious risk of dependency and abuse with these medications, so they are generally prescribed for only short periods of time. Individuals who have had problems with drug or alcohol abuse are not good candidates for treatment with benzodiazepines because they are susceptible to becoming dependent on them.

Buspirone (BuSpar) is a unique anxiolytic agent that is in a class of drugs known as the azapirones. Clinical trials have found it to be effective in treating generalised anxiety disorder. While the exact mechanism of action for buspirone is unknown, it is thought that its anti-anxiety effects are the result of changes produced in the serotonin neurotransmitter system. Common side effects include dizziness, drowsiness and nausea. Unlike the benzodiazepines, buspirone is not addictive and must be taken for at least two weeks to achieve an anti-anxiety effect.<sup>164</sup>

### **2.5.1.3 Antipsychotics**

Antipsychotics are mainly used for psychotic disorders, notably in schizophrenia. However, they are also often used in smaller doses to treat anxiety. These drugs can be placed into two broad categories: typical antipsychotics and atypical antipsychotics. The typical

---

<sup>163</sup> MedicalMed, Antidepressants. [Online] Available from: <http://www.medicinenet.com/antidepressants/article.htm> [Accessed: 7 March 2014]

<sup>164</sup> Stanford, M S (2008) *Grace for the Afflicted - Viewing Mental Illness Through the Eyes of Faith*. Inter-Varsity Press: US, pp. 101-201

antipsychotics (e.g. Thorazine, Haldol, Prolixin) are older medications that work by blocking the function of the neurotransmitter dopamine in the brain, meaning they are dopamine antagonists.

Typical antipsychotics can have serious side effects that mimic the symptoms of Parkinson's disease including rigidity, persistent muscle spasms, tremors and restlessness. After long-term use, a condition known as tardive dyskinesia may appear in the patient, resulting in uncontrollable jerky movements of the arms, legs and facial muscles.

The newer atypical anti-psychotics (e.g. Risperdal, Zyprexa, Seroquel) do not seem to produce the same serious side effects as seen with the older drugs. Atypical anti-psychotics modify the functioning of both dopamine and serotonin in the brain. While these medications can greatly improve the patient's quality of life by managing the serious symptoms of schizophrenia (e.g. hallucinations, delusions), they are not a cure.<sup>165</sup>

#### **2.5.1.4 Mood Stabilisers**

The term *mood stabiliser* is well known today. Psychiatrically, they are used to treat mood disorders, a classification of behaviour characterised by intense and sustained mood shifts. Lithium, for example, is a classic mood stabiliser. A simple salt, lithium carbonate is the psychiatrist's treatment of choice for those suffering with bipolar disorder. This medication has a large number of serious side effects, however, and the range between an effective dose and a toxic one is quite small. Other mood-stabilising medications are available if the patient is unable to tolerate lithium, such as Tegretol and Depakote, both originally developed as anticonvulsant (antiepileptic) medications but were later found to effectively treat bipolar disorder.<sup>166</sup>

#### **2.5.2 Psychotherapy**

In psychotherapy, or what some call counselling or 'talking therapy', a patient receives assistance from another individual in understanding and resolving problems that may be contributing to his or her depression. The therapy sessions may focus on a number of issues, including helping the patient unlearn behavioural patterns that contribute to or result

---

<sup>165</sup> Ibid., pp. 120-121

<sup>166</sup> Stanford, M S (2008) *Grace for the Afflicted - Viewing Mental Illness Through the Eyes of Faith*. Inter-Varsity Press: US, p. 84

from his or her depression, deal with past sinful behaviour and guilt, mend disrupted personal relationships, change negative thinking styles, or resolve conflicted feelings and emotions. Individuals with severe depressive disorders normally require medication along with or preceding psychotherapy for the best outcome.<sup>167</sup>

### **2.5.3 Electroconvulsive Therapy**

Electroconvulsive therapy, also known as shock treatment or electroshock, is sometimes used in severe cases when other interventions for intractable depression have failed. Prior to the procedure, the patient is given a muscle relaxant, and the procedure itself is performed under mild anaesthesia. Electrodes are placed at precise locations on the head to deliver a low-level electrical current. The electrical stimulation causes a brief seizure in the brain, lasting about thirty seconds.<sup>168</sup>

### **2.5.4 Psychosurgery**

Psychosurgery in later times has been referred to as neurosurgery for mental disorders. Two technologies are now available that produce small lesions in the brain: stereotactic micro ablation and gamma knife radiation (no burr holes necessary). Concomitant functional imaging allows for precision targeting that makes these procedures state of the art, but it is possible that deep brain stimulation, which has shown early promise in clinical trials and is an exciting research tool, may replace ablative procedures that destroy brain cells. Both new stereotactic neurosurgery and old psychosurgery were the focus of recent mass media reports. This procedure is mostly offered to a patient with schizophrenia or a major depression disorder.<sup>169</sup>

Psychosurgery is considered experimental but is advocated by certain neurologists in certain rare cases.<sup>170</sup>

---

<sup>167</sup> Ibid. p. 83

<sup>168</sup> Ibid.

<sup>169</sup> Psychiatric Times, Psychosurgery — Old and New. [Online] Available from: <http://www.psychiatrictimes.com/articles/psychosurgery%E2%80%94old-and-new> [Accessed: 11 April 2014]

<sup>170</sup> Marin, N (Unknown) The Causes, Treatments, Classifications of Mental Illness, as Well as the Portrayal of Mental Illness in Fiction. Webster's Digital Services, p.8

### **2.5.5 Deep Brain Stimulation**

Deep brain stimulation involves implanting electrodes within certain areas of the brain. These electrodes produce electrical impulses that regulate abnormal impulses. Or the electrical impulses can affect certain cells and chemicals within the brain. The amount of stimulation in deep brain stimulation is controlled by a pacemaker-like device placed under the skin of the upper chest. A wire that travels under the skin connects this device to the electrodes in the brain. Deep brain stimulation is used to treat a number of neurological conditions such as Essential tremor, Parkinson's disease and Dystonia. Deep brain stimulation is also being studied as a treatment for epilepsy, cluster headaches, Tourette syndrome, chronic pain and major depression. Many candidates for deep brain stimulation are participants in clinical trials.<sup>171</sup>

### **2.5.6 Hypnosis**

Hypnotherapy is frequently used in the treatment of dissociative disorders. Hypnosis is not a therapy in and of itself but is used as an adjunct to other therapies. A hypnotic state is similar to a dissociative state and has been found helpful in recovering lost memories. Therapists treating individuals with dissociative identity disorder use hypnosis in the process of 'merging' the patient's multiple identities.<sup>172</sup>

## **2.6. SOME EFFECTS OF MENTAL DISORDERS**

No two persons show identical effects of mental disorders, but there are several commonly seen symptoms. Following are some of the chief effects of mental disorders.

### **2.6.1 Cognitive Dysfunction**

Cognition refers to thinking skills, the intellectual skills that allow us to perceive, acquire, understand and respond to information. This includes the abilities to pay attention, remember, process information, solve problems, organise and reorganise information,

---

<sup>171</sup> Mayo Clinic, Deep Brain Stimulation [Online] Available from: <http://www.mayoclinic.org/tests-procedures/deep-brain-stimulation/basics/definition/prc-20019122> [Accessed: 4 July 2014]

<sup>172</sup> Ibid. pp. 136-137



communicate and act upon information. All these abilities work in a close, interdependent fashion to allow us to function in various environments.

Mental illness affects many people, but what most do not realise is that it does not just cause emotional problems – it causes cognitive problems too. The person with mental illness may find it difficult to think clearly, pay attention and remember. For some, the cognitive problems are only evident during the episodes of illness. For others, the cognitive problems are more persistent. If mental illness is managed well, the person can lead a more productive life and have longer periods of stability. To better manage an illness, it is important to understand the many ways it affects functioning. When people know the cognitive symptoms of mental illnesses, they can better manage the illness and function better.

Families often ask what causes the cognitive problems. Research has shown that it is the illnesses themselves that cause much of the cognitive dysfunction. For many years people thought that the cognitive problems were secondary to other symptoms, like psychosis, lack of motivation or unstable mood, but now it has been determined that is not the case. Cognitive dysfunction is a primary symptom of schizophrenia and some affective disorders. That is why the cognitive problems are evident even when other symptoms are controlled – even when people are not psychotic or in an affective episode. Furthermore, research has shown that those parts of the brain that are used for specific cognitive skills often do not function normally in people with schizophrenia and certain affective disorders. This indicates that mental illness affects the manner in which the brain functions which is what causes the cognitive problems.

Most people with schizophrenia – at least 85% -- will experience problems with cognition. These problems may be evident even before psychotic symptoms start, and they may lead to a decline in academic or work performance. One of the earliest cognitive symptoms of schizophrenia is poor attention, but difficulty with memory and visual motor speed may also be evident before the onset of psychotic symptoms.

When people have trouble paying attention, remembering and thinking clearly, it impacts on their ability to function in the community, at school, at work and in relationships.

Families are often concerned that it is the medications that are causing the cognitive problems. For many years, psychosis and affective disorders were being treated with medications that could cause side effects, like movement disorders, attention and memory

problems. More recently, however, newer drugs have come onto the market, medications which appear to cause fewer side effects. Some drug companies even claim that the newer medications enhance cognitive functioning.<sup>173</sup>

### **2.6.2 The Irregular Nature of Mental Illness**

The irregular nature of mental illness may create problems in establishing or maintaining consistent work or school patterns. Some individuals may need time off for medical appointments or to recuperate. The irregular nature of mental illness might also impair an individual's performance.<sup>174</sup>

### **2.6.3 Co-morbidity**

The National Institute of Mental Health (NIMH) reports that 30% of adults with a mental illness also have had a diagnosable alcohol or drug abuse disorder during their lives. In addition, 53% of adults who have had substance abuse disorders have had one or more mental illnesses during their lifetimes. Treatment and accommodation in these cases address both the effects of substance abuse as well as the effects of the person's mental illness.<sup>175</sup>

### **2.6.4 Side Effects of Medications**

Despite their effectiveness for many people, medications can also have side effects that create difficulties at work or in school. Each person has an adjustment period after starting, changing the dose of, or stopping medication. Some of the most common side effects include drowsiness, dizziness, dry mouth, nervousness, headaches, shakiness, confusion, weight gain, and interrupted education or training.

---

<sup>173</sup> Office of Mental Health, Dealing with Cognitive Dysfunction Associated with psychiatric disabilities [Online] Available from: [https://www.omh.ny.gov/omhweb/cogdys\\_manual/CogDysHndbk.htm](https://www.omh.ny.gov/omhweb/cogdys_manual/CogDysHndbk.htm) [Accessed: 28 March 2014]

<sup>174</sup> Centre of Psychiatric Rehabilitation, What is Psychiatric Disability and Mental Illness? [Online] Available from: <http://cpr.bu.edu/resources/reasonable-accommodations/what-is-psychiatric-disability-and-mental-illness> [Accessed: 28 March 2014]

<sup>175</sup> Ibid.

Many people first develop symptoms of mental illnesses between the ages of 15 and 25 and traditional educational or vocational training may be delayed. This may affect their credentials for jobs or educational programs.<sup>176</sup>

### 2.6.5 Addiction

Just because pills are prescribed by a doctor and administered by a pharmacy, that doesn't mean they are safe for everyone. As prescription numbers continue to rise, the chance for prescription drug abuse rises as well. Anti-anxiety drug abuse is the most common type, especially among teens and people under the age of 30.

Anxiolytics are a type of prescription medication used to treat symptoms of acute anxiety. These medications tend to work rather quickly. However, they can be habit-forming and are usually prescribed for short-term use. People who take them for an extended period can develop a tolerance. This then requires dosage increases to achieve the same effectiveness. Anxiolytics are also called anti-anxiety medications.

The most widely abused pharmaceuticals fall into three categories<sup>177</sup>: (1) *Opioids*: these produce a sought-after euphoric effect due to their pain killing abilities for short-term or chronic pain; (2) *Central nervous system depressants*: also called tranquilizers and depressants, these include barbiturates and benzodiazepines, some of the most abused drugs. They have a calming, relaxing effect, like a warm blanket on the brain; and (3) *Stimulants*: this class increases brain activity, thereby increasing alertness and energy.

The three most addictive prescription drugs on the market (2011) are discussed below.<sup>178</sup>

Xanax (alprazolam) is a benzodiazepine prescribed to treat panic disorder and serious anxiety. It calms a person by depressing the abnormal central nervous system. Much like Xanax, Klonopin and Valium are often misused for their sedative effects. These 'highs' can feel similar to the effects of alcohol, including feelings of drunkenness, talkativeness and

---

<sup>176</sup> Centre of Psychiatric Rehabilitation, What is Psychiatric Disability and Mental Illness? [Online] Available from: <http://cpr.bu.edu/resources/reasonable-accommodations/what-is-psychiatric-disability-and-mental-illness> [Accessed: 28 March 2014]

<sup>177</sup> Health Line, The Most Addictive Prescription Drugs on the Market. [Online] Available from: <http://www.healthline.com/health-slideshow/prescription-drug-addictions#1m> [Accessed: 10 April 2014]

<sup>178</sup> Fox News, The most Addictive Prescription Drugs on the Market [Online] Available from <http://www.foxnews.com/health/2014/03/22/most-addictive-prescription-drugs-on-market/> [Accessed: 2 July 2014]

relaxation. Due to these favourable traits, Klonopin, Valium and other benzodiazepines can be extremely habit-forming, cause blackouts and even death by overdose.

*Oxycodone*, sold commonly as *OxyContin* and *Percocet*, is an opioid that changes the way the brain and central nervous system respond to pain. It creates a euphoric, sedative effect. Like *Oxycodone*, *Demerol* and *Darvocet* are commonly abused painkillers. The danger in these, besides the immediate side effects, is that users often develop a tolerance to the drugs' effects and will increase their dosage. Often this leads to painful and possibly even violent withdrawal symptoms. In 2010, *Darvocet* was pulled off the market in the United States because it was found to lead to heart complications in patients.

*Amphetamines*, simply known as 'speed', are prescribed for conditions such as attention-deficit hyperactivity disorder (ADHD) and narcolepsy where focus and wakefulness are needed to combat symptoms. However, they have been historically misused for their energising capabilities. It is most commonly misused today under the brand name *Adderall* by those who need to skip on sleep, such as truck drivers, college students working on deadlines and shift workers. Similar to *Adderall*, *Ritalin* is a stimulant that affects the central nervous system by increasing levels of dopamine – a hormone that heightens attention – in the brain. As with other stimulants, it can be habit forming. One reason *Ritalin* and other ADHD drugs are so commonly abused is their availability. In 2005, doctors prescribed *Ritalin* and similar drugs more than 29 million times, and that number continues to rise drastically.

A psychoactive drug, psychopharmaceutic, or psychotropic, is a chemical substance that crosses the blood-brain barrier and acts primarily upon the central nervous system where it affects brain function, resulting in changes in perception, mood, consciousness, cognition and behaviour. These substances may be used recreationally, to purposefully alter one's consciousness, as entheogens, for ritual, spiritual, and/or shamanic purposes, as a tool for studying or augmenting the mind, or therapeutically as medication.

Because psychoactive substances bring about subjective changes in consciousness and mood that the user may find pleasant (e.g. euphoria) or advantageous (e.g. increased alertness), many psychoactive substances are abused, used excessively despite the health risks and negative consequences. With sustained use of some substances, psychological

and physical dependence (addiction) may develop, making the cycle of abuse even more difficult to interrupt.<sup>179</sup>

### **2.6.6 Tardive dyskinesia**

Tardive dyskinesia is a neurological disorder consisting of abnormal, involuntary body movements caused by certain medicines. Symptoms can also include trunk movements, such as rocking, twisting, or squirming and grunting or trouble speaking because of involuntary movements of the diaphragm. It is usually associated with long-term use of medicines for treating schizophrenia and other psychotic disorders.

Tardive means 'late' and dyskinesia means 'abnormal movements'. It refers to abnormal body movements that occur after a person has been taking a certain medicine for a prolonged period of time. It sometimes starts after the medicine has been discontinued. In the early stages, the movements may be so subtle that neither the person nor the people around notice them. For instance, the person may blink rapidly or lick his lips often. In later stages, the movements become noticeable and may affect the person's physical abilities.

Other types of tardive dyskinesia can occur. In tardive dystonia, there are abnormal contractions of the neck and shoulder muscles. In tardive akathisia, the person feels restless all the time.<sup>180</sup>

The medicines most commonly associated with tardive dyskinesia include the following<sup>181</sup>:

- Antipsychotic medicines used to treat schizophrenia and other psychoses. These are also known as neuroleptic medicines.
- Levodopa or L-dopa, which is used to treat Parkinson's disease (although high doses of L-dopa may actually help control tardive dyskinesia).
- Antiemetic medicines used to control nausea and vomiting.
- Tricyclic antidepressants used to treat depression and other mood disorders.
- Other medicines that block dopamine.

---

<sup>179</sup> Encyclopedia of Mental Disorders, Psychoactive Drug [Online] Available from: [http://www.minddisorders.com/knowledge/Psychoactive\\_drug.html](http://www.minddisorders.com/knowledge/Psychoactive_drug.html) [Accessed: 27 June 2014]

<sup>180</sup> Encyclopedia of Mental Disorders, Tardive Dyskinesia [Online] Available from: <http://www.minddisorders.com/Py-Z/Tardive-dyskinesia.html> [Accessed: 27 June 2014]

<sup>181</sup> Ibid.

### 2.6.7 Death

Researchers have found higher-than-expected death rates from physical health problems for people with mental illness. Dr Alex Mitchell of Leicester University in the UK and colleagues in Australia examined findings from 22 studies including 825,754 patients, on outcomes after “acute coronary events” such as heart attacks. All the studies were based in the USA. In a 2010 journal article, Dr Mitchell reports that, among people with a severe mental illness there is a higher than average overall mortality rate and a lower life expectancy: “*The presence of this medical co-morbidity adversely affects quality of life and recovery from the underlying psychiatric disorder*”, he states.<sup>182</sup>

In a publication on the 19<sup>th</sup> of February, 2013, the following was stated:

*The mortality rate is three times as high among mental health service users than in general population. Mortality among mental health service users aged 19 and over in England was 3.6 times the rate of the general population in 2010/11, new Health and Social Care Information Centre (HSCIC) figures show.*<sup>183</sup>

People in contact with specialist mental health services had a higher death rate for most causes of death, especially mental and behavioural disorders and diseases of the nervous system such as Alzheimer's disease, according to new analysis about causes of death.

Key findings from the new mortality analysis show that in 2010/11<sup>184</sup>:

- The mortality rate was 4,008 per 100,000 (83,390 deaths in total) for mental health services users, compared to the general population rate of 1,122 per 100,000.
- By age, the difference in mortality rates was largest among people aged 30 to 39, at almost five times that of the general population; 300 per 100,000 service users (520 in total) compared to 63 per 100,000 in the general population.
- By underlying cause of death, the proportionate difference in mortality rates was greatest for mental and behavioural disorders (where the main cause of death was unspecified dementia) at just over twelve times that of the general population at 556 per 100,000 service users (11,570 in total) compared to 46 per 100,000 in the general population.

---

<sup>182</sup> Psychcentral, Higher Death Rates for the Mentally Ill. [Online] Available from: <http://psychcentral.com/lib/higher-death-rates-for-the-mentally-ill/0008645> [Accessed: 10 April 2014]

<sup>183</sup> Ibid.

<sup>184</sup> Health and Social Care, Mortality rate three times as high among mental health service users than in general population. [Online] Available from: <http://www.hscic.gov.uk/article/2543/Mortality-rate-three-times-as-high-among-mental-health-service-users-than-in-general-population> [Accessed: 10 April 2014]

*Suicide* is defined as the intentional taking of one's own life. In some European languages, the word for *suicide* translates into English as self-murder. Males are three to five times more likely to succeed in their suicide attempts than females, but females are more likely to attempt suicide.

REPORT CARD					
Mortality Due to Mental Disorders					
	1960s	1970s	1980s	1990s	2000s
Australia	A	C	B	B	B
Austria	A	A	A	A	A
Belgium	B	D	A	B	C
Canada	A	B	B	B	B
Denmark	A	A	B	B	D
Finland	B	C	D	D	D
France	D	D	D	B	C
Germany	A	B	B	B	A
Ireland	A	A	A	A	B
Italy	A	A	A	A	A
Japan	B	A	A	A	A
Netherlands	B	B	A	B	D
Norway	A	B	B	B	C
Sweden	A	B	C	C	C
Switzerland	B	A	A	B	C
U.K.	A	A	C	B	C
U.S.	A	B	B	B	B

Source: The Conference Board of Canada.

Figure 2.1:

*Mortality Due to Mental Disorders*<sup>185</sup>

Grading: A – Low; B – Medium; C – High; D – Alarming

Over 90% of Americans who commit suicide have a mental illness. Major depression accounts for 60% of suicides, followed by schizophrenia, alcoholism, substance abuse, borderline personality disorder, Huntington's disease and epilepsy. The lifetime mortality due to suicide in psychiatric patients is 15% for major depression; 20% for bipolar disorder; 18% for alcoholism; 10% for schizophrenia; and 5-10% for borderline and certain other personality disorders. Suicide has become a major social and medical problem around the world.<sup>186</sup> The suicide rate among children and adolescents in the U.S. has risen faster than that of the world population as a whole.

Researchers estimate that 8-25 people attempt suicide for every person who completes the act. A person who has attempted suicide and who is considered a serious danger to himself or to others can be hospitalised against his will. The doctor will base the decision on the

<sup>185</sup> Conference Board, Mortality Due to Mental Disorders. [Online] Available from: <http://www.conferenceboard.ca/hcp/details/health/mortality-mental-disorders.aspx> [Accessed: 10 April 2014]

<sup>186</sup> Encyclopedia of Mental Disorders, Suicide [Online] Available from: <http://www.minddisorders.com/Py-Z/Suicide.html> [Accessed: 27 June 2014]

severity of the patient's depression or agitation; availability of friends, relatives, or other social support; and the presence of other suicide risk factors, including a history of previous suicide attempts, substance abuse, recent stressful events and symptoms of psychosis.<sup>187</sup>

### **2.6.8 Self-Harm**

Self-harm describes a wide range of things that people do to themselves in a deliberate and usually hidden way. In the vast majority of cases, self-harm remains a secretive behaviour that can carry on for a long time without being discovered. Self-harm can involve cutting, burning, scalding, hitting, scratching, breaking bones, hair pulling, or swallowing toxic substances or objects.

Although some very young children and some adults are known to self-harm and this behaviour often continues from childhood into adulthood, the majority of people who self-harm are aged between 11 and 25 years. Self-harm is a symptom of underlying mental or emotional distress. Young people who self-harm mainly do so because they find it helps relieve distressing feelings and helps them cope with problems in their lives. Self-harm is rarely about trying to end their life.

The UK has one of the highest rates of self-harm in Europe, at 400 per 100,000 populations. People with current mental health problems are 20 times more likely than others to report having harmed themselves in the past.<sup>188</sup>

### **2.6.9 Family Life**

Family life can be disrupted by the illness of a member. The stigma attached to mental illness often makes it difficult for the family and affected person to cope. As with any other serious illness, emotional, social and financial problems can develop in a family that has a member affected by mental illness.

Many forms of mental illness first appear when a person is in late teens or early twenties. Whether it is depression, an anxiety disorder, or a less common condition such as bipolar

---

<sup>187</sup> Ibid.

<sup>188</sup> Mental Health, Self-Harm [Online] Available from: <http://www.mentalhealth.org.uk/help-information/mental-health-statistics/self-harm/> [Accessed: 12 May 2014]



disorder or schizophrenia, the first episode is likely to occur when the person is still living with his family. Even if he has moved out of home or are older, the mental illness may not only be distressing for the person, it almost always affect others too.

Mental illness often has a 'ripple effect' on families, creating tension, uncertainty, troubled emotions and big changes in how people live their lives. Different family members are likely to be affected in different ways, though these effects on the family are sometimes not acknowledged by health professionals. Families may also take on the role of day-to-day care. This often happens with little training or support, or acknowledgment of their own needs and mental health. When family members are accepted as partners in care and do receive proper training and support, there is strong evidence that this leads to better outcomes for everyone involved.

Sometimes families are not listened to by health professionals. 'Patient confidentiality' may be given inappropriately as a reason for this. Yet families are often the main support for people affected by mental illness, and have a right to be treated as 'partners in care'. They need information about the illness and treatment provided, and about training and support to help themselves as well as the person who is ill.<sup>189</sup>

Emotions which the family may experience on diagnosis of a mental illness may include:

- *Denial*: "This can't be true. This hasn't happened in our family before".
- *Fear and anxiety*: "What did we do to cause it?"
- *Anger*: "Does the doctor know what he's talking about? How could fate allow this to happen?"
- *Feelings of loss*: "Our dreams and ambitions for our child/spouse are gone".
- *Helplessness*: "There is nothing we can do".

In a 2011 study to estimate predictive associations of mental disorders with marriage and divorce (in a cross-national sample), the results found fourteen of eighteen premarital mental disorders are associated with lower likelihood of ever marrying (odds ratios ranging from 0.6 to 0.9), but these associations vary across ages of marriage. Associations between premarital mental disorders and marriage are generally null for early marriage (age 17 or younger), but negative associations come to predominate at later ages. All eighteen mental disorders are positively associated with divorce (odds ratios ranging from 1.2 to 1.8). Three

---

<sup>189</sup> Health24, Effects of mental illness on the family. [Online] Available from: <http://www.health24.com/Medical/Depression/Caring-for-someone-depressed/Effects-of-mental-illness-on-the-family-20120721> [Accessed: 28 March 2014]

disorders – specific phobia, major depression and alcohol abuse – are associated with the largest population attributable risk proportions for both marriage and divorce.<sup>190</sup>

Should suicide occur as a result of mental illness, this is a devastating loss for families. The pain and suffering that causes someone to end their own life is unfathomable to almost everyone. For the loved ones left behind, part of the agony is having to think about the suffering that preceded that final act. Suicide is indeed a violent act; someone does commit a murder, even if the victim is oneself. Suicide also generates a great deal of confusion, guilt and shame for survivors and can result in anger to a large degree.<sup>191</sup>

### **2.6.10 Reactive Attachment Disorder**

If an infant or a young child is not cared for consistently, it will not learn to trust. This includes emotional neglect, where the caregivers may keep the baby clean and fed, but do not allow time for play and bonding. Very often this occurs when the parent or caregiver has a problem that prevents him or her from giving adequate, consistent attention to the infant. Resultant problems include major depression, psychosis, drug or alcohol abuse, mental retardation, physical illness and poverty. The parent may also have been a neglected child or may be very young themselves and simply not know how to parent adequately. All of these can be a cause of reactive attachment disorder.

In reactive attachment disorder, the normal bond between infant and parent is not established or is broken. Infants normally ‘bond’ or form an emotional attachment to a parent or other caregiver by the eighth month of life. From about the second through the eighth month, most infants will respond to attention from a variety of caregivers, if the caregivers are familiar. By the eighth month, however, normal infants have established a strong emotional preference for one or two primary caregivers. Infants display distress if separated from these caregivers for even a few hours, even if another familiar person is present. If this bonding process is interfered with, however, it can have severe emotional and physical consequences for the child. Reactive attachment disorder is in fact sometimes referred to as a post-traumatic disorder.

---

<sup>190</sup> PubMed, A multinational study of mental disorders, marriage, and divorce. [Online] Available from: <http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21534936> [Accessed: 8 April 2014]

<sup>191</sup> Goldstein, R L, Effects of Suicide on Family Members. [Online] Available from: <http://robingoldstein.net/suicide-the-mourning-after/> [Accessed: 8 April 2014]

In reactive attachment disorder, an infant or young child has not formed an emotional bond with a parent or other caregiver, affecting the child's ability to interact normally with others. The child may have severe emotional and social problems that extend into adulthood. There may be learning problems and physical problems such as slow growth and failure to develop as expected.<sup>192</sup>

### **2.6.11 Society**

The burden of mental illness on health and productivity in the United States and throughout the world has long been underestimated. Data developed in 2001 by the massive *Global Burden of Disease* study conducted by the World Health Organization, the World Bank and Harvard University reveal that mental illness, including suicide, accounts for over 15% of the burden of disease in established market economies such as the United States. This is more than the disease burden caused by all cancers.

This *Global Burden of Disease* study developed a single measure to allow comparison of the burden of disease across many different disease conditions by including both death and disability. This measure was called Disability Adjusted Life Years (DALYs). DALYs measure lost years of healthy life regardless of whether the years were lost to premature death or disability. The disability component of this measure is weighted for severity of the disability.

For example, disability caused by major depression was found to be equivalent to blindness or paraplegia, whereas active psychosis seen in schizophrenia produces disability equal to quadriplegia. Using the DALYs measure, major depression ranked second only to ischemic heart disease in magnitude of disease burden in established market economies. Schizophrenia, bipolar disorder, obsessive-compulsive disorder, panic disorder and post-traumatic stress disorder also contributed significantly to the total burden of illness attributable to mental disorders.

The projections show that with the aging of the world population and the conquest of infectious diseases, psychiatric and neurological conditions could increase their share of the

---

<sup>192</sup> Encyclopedia of Mental Disorders, Reactive Attachment Disorder [Online] Available from: <http://www.minddisorders.com/Py-Z/Reactive-attachment-disorder-of-infancy-or-early-childhood.html> [Accessed: 27 June 2014]

total global disease burden by almost half, from 10.5% of the total burden to almost 15% in 2020.<sup>193</sup>

## **2.7. SOME STATISTICS ON MENTAL DISORDERS**

Worldwide, mental illnesses will rise to be the number one cause of disability within the next 15 years, according to the World Health Organization. The World Health Organization also estimates that 400 million people around the world currently suffer from mental or neurological disorders or from psychosocial problems such as those related to alcohol and drug abuse.<sup>194</sup>

### **2.7.1 Canada**

Approximately 8% of adults will experience major depression at some time in their lives. About 1% of all Canadians will experience bipolar disorder (or 'manic depression'). Schizophrenia affects 1% of the Canadian population.

Anxiety disorders affect 5% of the household population, causing mild to severe impairment. Suicide accounts for 24% of all deaths among 15-24 year olds and 16% among 25-44 year olds. Suicide is one of the leading causes of death in both men and women from adolescence to middle age. The mortality rate due to suicide among men is four times the rate as among women. It is estimated that 10 to 20% of Canadian youth are affected by a mental illness or disorder – the single most disabling group of disorders worldwide. Today, approximately 5% of male youth and 12% of female youth, age 12 to 19, have experienced a major depressive episode. The total number of 12-19 year olds in Canada at risk for developing depression is a staggering 3.2 million.

Once depression is recognised, intervention can make a difference for 80% of people who are affected, allowing them to return to their regular activities. Mental illness is increasingly threatening the lives of our children, shown by Canada's youth suicide rate being the third highest in the industrialised world. Suicide is among the leading causes of death in 15-24 year old Canadians, second only to accidents; 4,000 people die prematurely each year by

---

<sup>193</sup> COEDU, The Impact of Mental Illness on Society [Online] Available from: <http://www.coedu.usf.edu/zalaquett/gua/TheImpactofMentalIllnessonSociety.htm> [Accessed: 28 March 2014]

<sup>194</sup> Health Systems Trust, Mental illnesses on the rise in SA <http://www.hst.org.za/news/mental-illnesses-rise-sa> [Accessed: 10 April 2014]

suicide. Schizophrenia is youth's greatest disabler as it strikes most often in the 16 to 30 year age group, affecting an estimated one person in 100. Surpassed only by injuries, mental disorders in youth are ranked as the second highest hospital care expenditure in Canada. In Canada, only one out of five children who need mental health services receives them.<sup>195</sup>

### **2.7.2 UK**

Mixed anxiety and depression is the most common mental disorder in Britain. Women are more likely to have been treated for a mental health problem than men. Approximately 10% of children have a mental health problem at any one time. Depression affects one in five older people. Suicides rates show that British men are three times more likely to die by suicide than British women. Only one in ten prisoners has no mental disorder.<sup>196</sup>

### **2.7.3 Australia**

Mental disorders are the third leading cause of disability burden in Australia, accounting for an estimated 27% of the total years lost due to disability. Major depression accounts for more days lost to illness than almost any other physical or mental disorder. Roughly 14% of Australians will be affected by anxiety disorders in a 12-month period. Nearly 4% of people will experience depression in a 12-month period, and 20% will be affected in their lifetime. Postnatal depression affects between 10 to 20% of all new mothers to some degree. Three percent of Australians are affected by psychotic illness such as schizophrenia and bipolar mood disorder at some point in their lives. About one in 100 Australians will experience schizophrenia. Approximately 2% of Australians will experience some type of eating disorder at some stage in their lives. Most of those affected (90%) are women. Between 2% and 5% of the population are affected by Borderline Personality Disorder at some stage of their lives, with women three times more likely to be diagnosed with this disorder than men.

Women are more likely than men to report anxiety disorders (18% compared with 11.1%) and affective disorders (7.1% compared with 5%). Men are more than twice as likely as women to have substance use disorders (7% compared with 3.3%), with alcohol disorders

---

<sup>195</sup> Canadian Mental Health Association, Fast Facts About Mental Illness, [Online] Available from: (<http://www.cmha.ca/media/fast-facts-about-mental-illness/>) [Accessed: 10 April 2014]

<sup>196</sup> Mental Health Foundation, Mental Health Statistics. [Online] Available from: <http://www.mentalhealth.org.uk/help-information/mental-health-statistics/> [Accessed: 10 April 2014]

being three times more common than drug use disorders. Although men are affected by schizophrenia in slightly greater numbers, women tend to experience later onset, fewer periods of illness and better recovery.

The largest numbers of people with a mental illness are in the 18-24 year age group. 14% of Australian children and adolescents aged 12-17 years have mental health problems. This rate of mental health problems is found in all age and gender groups, although boys are slightly more likely to experience mental health problems than girls. Onset of bipolar disorder and schizophrenia usually occurs in the mid to late teen years. Depression is one of the most common mental health problems in young people. Adolescents with mental health problems report a high rate of suicidal thoughts and other health-risk behaviour, including smoking and drug use.<sup>197</sup>

#### **2.7.4 America**

An estimated 26.2% of Americans ages 18 and older – about one in four adults – suffer from a diagnosable mental disorder in a given year. Many people suffer from more than one mental disorder at a given time. Nearly half (45%) of those with any mental disorder meet criteria for two or more disorders, with severity strongly related to comorbidity. Approximately 20.9 million American adults, or about 9.5% of the U.S. population age 18 and older in a given year, have a mood disorder. Roughly 2.4 million American adults, or about 1.1% of the population age 18 and older in a given year, have schizophrenia. Almost 40 million American adults ages 18 and older, or about 18.1% of people in this age group in a given year, have an anxiety disorder.

Dysthymic disorder affects approximately 1.5% of the U.S. population age 18 and older in a given year. This figure translates to about 3.3 million American adults. Bipolar disorder affects approximately 5.7 million American adults, or about 2.6% of the U.S. population age 18 and older in a given year. Approximately 6 million American adults ages 18 and older, or about 2.7% of people in this age group in a given year, have panic disorder. Almost 2.2 million American adults age 18 and older, or about 1.0% of people in this age group in a given year, have obsessive-compulsive disorder.

---

<sup>197</sup> Mind Frame, Mental Illness Facts and Statistics. [Online] Available from: <http://www.mindframe-media.info/for-media/reporting-suicide/Downloads/?a=6009> [Accessed: 10 April 2014]

Approximately 7.7 million American adults age 18 and older, or about 3.5% of people in this age group in a given year, have post-traumatic stress disorder. In their lifetime, an estimated 0.6% of the adult population in the U.S. will suffer from anorexia, 1.0% from bulimia, and 2.8% from a binge eating disorder. Around 1% of people aged 18 or over have antisocial personality disorder. An estimated 5.2% of people age 18 or older have an avoidant personality disorder. Just about 1.6% of Americans age 18 or older have borderline personality disorder.<sup>198</sup>

### **2.7.5 South Africa**

The South African Stress and Health (SASH) study, conducted between 2002 and 2004, was the first nationally-representative study of common mental disorders in South Africa. It was conducted in collaboration with the World Health Organisation's World Mental Health (WMH) Survey Initiative. Of the 4351 adults interviewed 16.55% had experienced a mental disorder in the last 12 months and 30.3% in their lifetime. Anxiety, substance and mood disorders were the most common.<sup>199</sup>

According to the Department of Health, one out of four South Africans has or is affected by mental illness but only 10-15% get help for their mental illness.<sup>200</sup> Between 1-3% of the South African population are likely to suffer from a mental health problem severe enough to require hospitalisation. And the lives of one in five South Africans are significantly affected by a mental disorder. Nearly 20% of high school students a year think about fatally harming themselves.<sup>201</sup>

One in six South Africans present with depression, anxiety or substance use disorders. Five of the ten leading causes of disability and premature death worldwide are psychiatric conditions. 17% of children and adolescents in the Western Cape have a mental disorder. One in three Khayelitsha women present with postnatal depression, while 41% of pregnant women in KZN presented with depression; 43% of people with HIV across provinces presented with a mental disorder; 41.9% of women, compared to 24.3% of men, are affected

---

<sup>198</sup> National Institute of Health, The Numbers Count: Mental Disorders in America. [Online] Available from: <http://www.nimh.nih.gov/health/publications/the-numbers-count-mental-disorders-in-america/index.shtml> [Accessed: 10 April 2014]

<sup>199</sup> Health24, Millions in SA have mental illness [Online] Available from: <http://www.health24.com/Mental-Health/Mental-health-in-SA/Millions-in-SA-have-mental-illness-20120721> [Accessed: 24 July 2014]

<sup>200</sup> Health24, Mental Health Its time to Talk [Online] Available from: <http://www.health24.com/Mental-Health/Mental-health-in-SA/Mental-health-Its-time-to-talk-20120721> [Accessed: 24 July 2014]

<sup>201</sup> Health24, Mental Illness Common [Online] Available from: <http://www.health24.com/Mental-Health/Mental-health-in-SA/Mental-illness-common-20120721> [Accessed: 24 July 2014]

by depression. In South Africa, 150 000 people commit suicide every year, with the rate among children aged between 10 and 14 having more than doubled in the past 15 years.<sup>202</sup>

203

## 2.8. INSANITY

### 2.8.1 Definition

*Insanity*<sup>204</sup> is defined as unsoundness of mind; madness<sup>205</sup>; mental alienation or derangement; a morbid psychic condition resulting from disorder of the brain, whether arising from malformation or defective organisation or morbid processes affecting the brain primarily or diseased states of the general system implicating it secondarily, which involves the intellect, the emotions, the will, and the moral sense, or some of these faculties, and which is characterised especially by their non-development, derangement, or perversion, and is manifested, in most forms, by delusions, incapacity to reason or to judge, or by uncontrollable impulses.

In law, such a want of reason, memory, and intelligence as prevents a man from comprehending the nature and consequences of his acts or from distinguishing between right and wrong conduct.

From both the pathologic and the legal definitions are to be excluded temporary mental aberrations caused by or accompanying alcoholic or other intoxication and the delirium of fever.

*Lunacy*, at the common law, was a term used to describe the state of one who, by sickness, grief, or other accident, has wholly lost his memory and understanding. It is distinguished from idiocy, an idiot being one who from his birth has had no memory or understanding, while lunacy implies the possession and subsequent loss of mental powers. Moreover, lunacy is a total deprivation or suspension of the ordinary powers of the mind, and is to be distinguished from imbecility, where there is a more or less advanced decay and feebleness of the intellectual faculties.

---

<sup>202</sup> Health, Achieving the Millennium Development Goals: Addressing mental health. [Online] Available from: <http://www.health.uct.ac.za/usr/health/research/groupings/mhapp/resources/SAHRC2.pdf> [Accessed: 10 April 2014]

<sup>203</sup> Health Systems Trust, Mental illnesses on the rise in SA <http://www.hst.org.za/news/mental-illnesses-rise-sa> [Accessed: 10 April 2014]

<sup>204</sup> Etymology: Insanity: 1580s, "state of being insane," from Latin *insanitatem* (nominative *insanitas*) "unhealthfulness," noun of quality from *insanus* (see *insane*). Meaning "extreme folly" is from 1844. [www.etymonline.com](http://www.etymonline.com)

<sup>205</sup> Etymology: Madness: late 14c., "insanity, dementia; rash or irrational conduct," from *mad* (adj.) + *-ness*. Sense of "foolishness" is from early 15c. [www.etymonline.com](http://www.etymonline.com)



*Idiocy* is a congenital amentia, that is, a want of reason and intelligence existing from birth and due to structural defect or malformation of the brain. It is a congenital obliteration of the chief mental powers, and is defined in law as that condition in which the patient has never had, from his birth, even the least glimmering of reason; for a man is not legally an idiot if he can tell his parents, his age or other like common matters. This is not the condition of a deranged mind, but that of a total absence of mind, so that, while idiocy is generally classed under the general designation of insanity, it is rather to be regarded as a natural defect than as a disease or as the result of a disease. It differs from lunacy, because there are no lucid intervals or periods of ordinary intelligence.

*Imbecility* is a more or less advanced decay and feebleness of the intellectual faculties; that weakness of mind which, without depriving the person entirely of the use of his reason, leaves only the faculty of conceiving the most common and ordinary ideas and such relate almost always to physical wants and habits. It varies in shades and degrees from merely excessive folly and eccentricity to an almost total vacuity of mind or amentia, and the test of legal capacity, in this condition, is the stage to which the weakness of mind has advanced, as measured by the degree of reason, judgment and memory remaining. It may proceed from paresis or general paralysis, from senile decay, or from the advanced stages of any of the ordinary forms of insanity; and the term is rather descriptive of the consequences of insanity than of any particular type of the disease.

*Non compos mentis* is used to describe someone who is not of a sound mind. A generic term applicable to all insane persons, whatsoever specific type the insanity may be and from whatever cause arising, provided there be an entire loss of reason, as distinguished from mere weakness of mind.

*Derangement* is the term that includes all forms of mental unsoundness, except of the natural born idiot.

*Delusion* is sometimes loosely used as a synonymous with insanity. But this is incorrect. Delusion is not the substance but the evidence of insanity. The presence of an insane delusion is a recognised test of insanity in all cases except amentia and imbecility, and where there is no frenzy or raving madness; and in this sense an insane delusion is a fixed belief in the mind of the patient of the existence of a fact which has no objective existence but is purely the figment of his imagination, and which is so extravagant that no sane person

would believe it under the circumstances of the case, the belief, nevertheless, being so unchangeable that the patient is incapable of being permanently disabused by argument or proof. The characteristic which distinguishes an insane delusion from other mistaken beliefs is that it is not a product of the reason but of the imagination, that is, not a mistake of fact induced by deception, fraud, insufficient evidence, or erroneous reasoning, but the spontaneous conception of a perverted imagination, having no basis whatever in reason or evidence.

### **2.8.2 Forms and Varieties of Insanity**

Without attempting a scientific classification of the numerous types and forms of insanity (as to which it may be said that there is as yet no final agreement among psychologists and alienists either as to analysis or nomenclature) definitions and explanations will here be dependent of the compound and descriptive terms most commonly met with in medical jurisprudence.<sup>206</sup>

*Traumatic insanity* is such as results from a wound or injury, particularly to the head or brain, such as fracture of the skull or concussion of the brain.

*Idiopathic insanity* is such as results from a disease of the brain itself, lesions of the cortex, cerebral anaemia.

*Congenital insanity* is that which exists from the birth of the patient, and is (in law) properly called idiocy.

*Cretinism* is a form of imperfect or arrested mental development, which may amount to idiocy, with physical degeneracy or deformity or lack of development.

*Pellagrous insanity* is caused by or deprived from pellagra, which is an endemic disease of southern Europe (though not confined to that region), characterised by erythema, digestive derangement and nervous affections.

---

<sup>206</sup> Black, H C (1995) Law Dictionary – Definitions of the Terms and Phrases of American and English Jurisprudence, Ancient and Modern. New Jersey: The Lawbook Exchange, Ltd., pp. 632-635

*Polyneuritic insanity* is insanity arising from an inflammation of the nerves, of the kind called polyneuritis or multiple neuritis because it involves several nerves at the same time. This is often preceded by tuberculosis and almost always by alcoholism, and is characterised specially by delusions and falsification of the memory. It is otherwise called Korsakoff's disease.

*Choreic insanity* is insanity arising from chorea, the latter being a nervous disease, more commonly attacking children than adults, characterised by irregular and involuntary twitching of the muscles of the limbs and face, popularly called St Vitus dance.

*Puerperal insanity* is a mental derangement occurring in women at the time of child-birth or immediately after; it is also called *Eclampsia parturientium*.

*Folie brightique* is a French term sometimes used to designate an access of insanity resulting from nephritis or Bright's disease.

*Delirium tremens* is a disease of the nervous system, induced by the excessive and protracted use of intoxicating liquors, and affecting the brain so as to produce incoherence and lack of continuity in the intellectual processes, a suspension or perversion of the power of volition, and delusions, particularly of a terrifying nature, but not generally prompting to violence except in the effort to escape from imaginary dangers. It is recognised in law as a form of insanity, and may be of such a nature or intensity as to render the patient legally incapable of committing a crime.

*Syphilitic insanity* is paresis or progressive imbecility resulting from the infection of syphilis. It is sometimes called (as being a sequence or result of that disease) *metasyphilis* or *parasyphilis*.

*Tabetic dementia* is a form of mental derangement or insanity complicated with *tabes dorsalis* or locomotor ataxia, which generally precedes, though sometimes follows, the mental attack.

*Affective insanity* is a comprehensive term descriptive of all those forms of insanity which affect or relate to the feelings and emotions and hence to the ethical and social relations of the individual.

*Involutorial insanity* is that which sometimes accompanies the involution of the physical structure and physiology of the individual, the reverse of their evolution, hence practically equivalent to the imbecility of old age or senile dementia.

*Maniacal-depressive insanity* is a form of insanity characterised by alternating periods of high maniacal excitement and of depressed and stuporous conditions in the nature of or resembling melancholia, often occurring as a series or cycle of isolated attacks, with more or less complete restoration to health in the intervals. This is otherwise called circular insanity or circular stupor.

*Partial insanity*, as a legal term, may mean either monomania or an intermediate stage in the development of mental derangement. In the former sense, it does not relieve the patient from responsibility for his acts, except where instigated directly by his particular delusion or obsession. In the latter sense, it denotes a clouding or weakening of the mind, not inconsistent with some measure of memory, reason, and judgment.

*Recurrent insanity* is insanity which returns from time to time, hence equivalent to lunacy in its common-law sense, as a mental disorder broken by lucid intervals. There is no presumption that fitful and exceptional attacks of insanity are continuous.

*Moral insanity* is a morbid perversion of the feelings, affections, or propensities, but without any illusions or derangement of the intellectual faculties; irresistible impulse or incapacity to resist the prompting of the passions, though accompanied by the power of discerning the moral or immoral character of the act. Moral insanity is not admitted as a bar to civil or criminal responsibility for the patient's acts, unless there is also shown to be intellectual disturbance, as manifested by insane delusions or the other recognised criteria of legal insanity. The term *emotional insanity*, or *mania transitoria* applies to the case of one in the possession of his ordinary reasoning faculties who allows his passions to convert him into a temporary maniac.

*Psychoneurosis* is a mental disease without recognisable anatomical lesion, and without evidence and history of preceding chronic mental degeneration. Under this head come *melancholia*, *mania*, *primary acute dementia*, and *mania hallucinatoria*.

*Neurosis*, in its broadest sense, may include any disease or disorder of the mind, and hence all the forms of insanity proper. Neurosis is the milder form of abnormal reaction to trauma. It

is an inability to deal with traumatic experiences in a mature way and almost always has roots in childhood. Neurosis is evident when a function of the personality escapes conscious control: groundless fears, uncontrollable ideas, disturbing behaviour patterns, loss of control of body parts and disability of involuntary organs where no medical or physical reason can be found.<sup>207</sup>

The term *psychoneurosis* describes that class of exaggerated individual peculiarities of thought towards special objects or topics which are absent from the perfectly normal mind and which yet have so little influence upon the patient's conduct or his general modes of thought that they cannot properly be described as insanity or as any form of mania, especially because ordinarily unaccompanied by any kind of delusions. At most, they lie on the debatable border-land between sanity and insanity. These obsessions may arise from superstition, from a real incident in the patient's past history upon which he has brooded until it has assumed an unreal importance or significance, or from general neurasthenic conditions.

*Katatonía* is a form of insanity distinguished by periods of acute mania and melancholia and especially by cataleptic states or conditions; the insanity of rigidity. A type of insanity characterised particularly by stereotypism, an instinctive inclination to purposeless repetition of the same expressions of the will, and negativism, a senseless resistance against every outward influence.

*Necrophilism* is a form of affective insanity manifesting itself in an unnatural and revolting fondness for corpses, the patient desiring to be in their presence, to caress them, to exhume them, or sometimes to mutilate them, and even (in a form of sexual perversion) to violate them.

*Melancholia* is a form of insanity with characteristics including extreme mental depression, associated with delusions and hallucinations, the latter relating especially to the financial or social position of the patient or to impending or threatened dangers to his person, property, or reputation, or issuing in distorted conceptions of his relations to society or his family or of his rights and duties in general. *Hypochondria* or *hypochondriasis* is a form of melancholia in which the patient has exaggerated or causeless fears concerning his health or suffers from imaginary disease.

---

<sup>207</sup> Demon Buster, The Neurotic Personality [Online] Available from: <http://www.demonbuster.com/tnpp.html> [Accessed: 26 September 2014]

*Toxiphobia* is a morbid dread of being poisoned; a form of insanity manifesting itself by an excessive and unfounded apprehension of death by poison.

### **2.8.3 The Classification of Insanity**

The classification of insanity into three types or forms, though once common, has of late given way to a more scientific nomenclature, based chiefly on the origin or cause of the disease in the particular patient and its clinical history. These terms, however, are still occasionally encountered in medical jurisprudence, and the names of some of their subdivisions are in constant use.<sup>208</sup>

1. *Amentia*. A total lack of intelligence, reason or mental capacity. Sometimes so used as to cover imbecility or dotage, or even as applicable to all forms of insanity; but properly restricted to a lack of mental capacity due to original defective organisation of the brain (idiocy) or arrested cerebral development, as distinguished from the degeneration of intellectual faculties which once were normal.
2. *Dementia*. A form of insanity resulting from degeneration or disorder of the brain (idiopathic or traumatic, but not congenital) and characterised by general mental weakness and decrepitude, forgetfulness, loss of coherence, and total inability to reason, but not accompanied by delusions or uncontrollable impulses.
3. *Mania*. That form of insanity in which the patient is subject to hallucinations and illusions, accompanied by a high state of general mental excitement, sometimes amounting to fury. The mania may be general and affect all or most of the operations of the mind; or it may be partial and be confined to particular subjects.

---

<sup>208</sup> Black, H C (1995) Law Dictionary – Definitions of the Terms and Phrases of American and English Jurisprudence, Ancient and Modern. New Jersey: The Lawbook Exchange, Ltd., pp. 632-635

## **2.8.4 Insanity Associated Diseases**

### **2.8.4.1 Epilepsy**

Epilepsy is disease of the brain which occurs in paroxysms with uncertain intervals between them. The disease is generally organic, though it may be functional and symptomatic of irritation in other parts of the body. The attack is characterised by loss of consciousness, sudden falling down, distortion of eyes and face grinding or gnashing of teeth, and more or less severe muscular spasms or convulsions. Epilepsy, though a disease of the brain, is not to be regarded as a form of insanity in the sense that a person thus afflicted can be said to be permanently insane, for there may be little or no mental aberration in the intervals between the attacks. But the paroxysm is frequently followed by a temporary insanity, varying in particular instances from slight alienation to the most violent mania. In the latter form, the affection is known as epileptic fury. But this generally passes off within a few days. But the course of the principal disease is generally one of deterioration, the brain being gradually more and more deranged in its functions in the intervals of attack, and the memory and intellectual powers in general becoming enfeebled, leading to a greatly impaired state of mental efficiency, or to dementia, or a condition bordering on imbecility.<sup>209</sup>

### **2.8.4.2 Hystero-epilepsy**

Hystero-epilepsy is a condition initiated by an apparently mild attack of convulsive hysteria, followed by an epileptiform convulsion, and succeeded by a period of 'clownism' in which the patient assumes a remarkable series of droll contortions or cataleptic poses, sometimes simulating attitudes expressive of various passions, as, fear, joy or eroticism. The final stage is one of delirium with unusual hallucinations. The attack differs from true epilepsy in that the convulsions may continue without serious result for several successive days, while true epilepsy, if persistent, is always serious, associated with fever and frequently fatal.<sup>210</sup>

---

<sup>209</sup> Ibid.

<sup>210</sup> Ibid.

## 2.9. AN OVERVIEW ON PSYCHOTIC DISORDERS

### 2.9.1 Introduction

The percentage of people who suffer from any psychotic<sup>211</sup> symptoms at any one time (prevalence) varies greatly from country to country: as little as 0.66% in Vietnam to 45.84% in Nepal. While the figure of one out of 100 people who qualify for the diagnosis of schizophrenia may sound low, that translates into about three million people in the United States alone who have schizophrenia. The first time a person has psychotic symptoms is usually between the ages of 18 and 24 years; related, less severe (prodromal) symptoms often start during the teenage years. Postpartum psychosis occurs in one or two out of 1,000 births but increases greatly, up to one in seven mothers, in women who had postpartum psychosis in the past. Men are thought to develop psychotic disorders more often and at younger ages than women.<sup>212</sup>

Behaviour changes might include the following: social withdrawal, agitation or anxiety, depersonalisation (intense anxiety and a feeling of being unreal), mood, sleep and appetite changes, worsened hygiene, disorganised speech and behaviours, and catatonic behaviour in which the affected person's body may be rigid and the person may be unresponsive.

Changes or problems with thinking that may occur in a psychotic disorder include delusions (beliefs with no basis in reality), hallucinations (for example, hearing, seeing, or perceiving things not actually present), the sense of being controlled by outside forces and disorganised thoughts.

People with psychosis can experience symptoms that may be grouped under the following categories<sup>213</sup>: positive, negative, cognitive or affective symptoms.

*Positive symptoms* include hearing voices or otherwise hallucinating, suspiciousness, feeling under constant surveillance, delusions, or making up words without a meaning (neologisms). *Negative (or deficit) symptoms* include social withdrawal, difficulty in expressing emotions (in extreme cases called blunted affect), difficulty in taking care of themselves and inability to

---

<sup>211</sup> Etymology: Psychotic: 1889, coined from *psychosis*, on the model of *neurotic/neurosis*, from Greek *psykhe*- "mind, soul". [www.etymonline.com](http://www.etymonline.com)

<sup>212</sup> MedicalMed, Psychotic Disorders. [Online] Available from: [http://www.medicinenet.com/psychotic\\_disorders/page2.htm](http://www.medicinenet.com/psychotic_disorders/page2.htm) [Accessed: 7 March 2014]

<sup>213</sup> MedicalMed, Psychotic Disorders. [Online] Available from: [http://www.medicinenet.com/psychotic\\_disorders/page3.htm](http://www.medicinenet.com/psychotic_disorders/page3.htm) [Accessed: 7 March 2014]



feel pleasure (these symptoms cause impairment). *Cognitive symptoms* include difficulties attending to and processing of information, in understanding the environment, and in remembering simple tasks. *Affective (or mood) symptoms* are often manifested by depression, accounting for a very high rate of attempted suicides in people suffering from schizophrenia and other psychotic disorders.

The following are diagnosed as psychotic disorders.

### 2.9.2 Psychotic Depression

Psychotic depression, also known as depressive psychosis, refers to a major depressive episode that is accompanied by psychotic symptoms. It can occur in the context of bipolar disorder or major depressive disorder. It can be difficult to distinguish from schizoaffective disorder; that disorder requires the presence of psychotic symptoms for at least two weeks without any mood symptoms present.

Psychotic depression<sup>214</sup> is a subtype of major depression and occurs when a severe depressive illness includes some form of psychosis. The psychosis could be hallucinations (such as hearing a voice telling you that you are no good or worthless), delusions (such as intense feelings of worthlessness, failure, or having committed a sin) or some other break with reality. Psychotic depression affects roughly one out of every four people who are admitted to the hospital for depression.

People with psychotic depression may get angry for no apparent reason. Or they may spend a lot of time by themselves or in bed, sleeping during the day and staying awake at night. A person with psychotic depression may neglect appearance by not bathing or changing clothes. Or that person may be hard to talk to. Perhaps he or she barely talks or else says things that make no sense. Those with psychotic depression usually have delusions or hallucinations that are consistent with themes about depression (such as worthlessness or failure), whereas psychotic symptoms in schizophrenia are more often bizarre or implausible and have no obvious connection to a mood state (for example, thinking strangers are

---

<sup>214</sup> Etymology: Depression: late 14c. as a term in astronomy, from Old French *depression* (14c.) or directly from Latin *depressionem* (nominative *depressio*), noun of action from past participle stem of *deprimere* "to press down, depress". Attested from 1650s in the literal sense; meaning "dejection, depression of spirits" is from early 15c. (as a clinical term in psychology, from 1905); meteorological sense is from 1881 (in reference to barometric pressure); meaning "a lowering or reduction in economic activity" was in use by 1826; given a specific application (with capital *D*-) by 1934 to the one that began worldwide in 1929. For "melancholy, depression" an Old English word was *grevoushede*. [www.etymonline.com](http://www.etymonline.com)

following them for no reason other than to harass them). People with psychotic depression also may be humiliated or ashamed of the thoughts and try to hide them. Doing so makes this type of depression very difficult to diagnose.<sup>215</sup>

### 2.9.3 Schizophrenia

As seen earlier in 1.3.17 *Schizophrenia*, it is a chronic, severe, debilitating mental illness that affects about 1% of the population. Other statistics about schizophrenia include that it affects men about one and a half times more commonly than women. It is one of the psychotic mental disorders and is characterised by symptoms of thought, behaviour and social problems.

There is no known single cause of schizophrenia. Rather, schizophrenia is considered to be the result of a complex grouping of genetic, psychological and environmental factors. Health-care practitioners diagnose schizophrenia by gathering comprehensive medical, family, mental-health and social/cultural information. The practitioner will also either perform a physical examination or request that the individual's primary-care doctor perform one. The medical examination will usually include lab tests.<sup>216</sup>

The UK mental health charity, *Rethink Mental Illness*, has listed examples of negative symptoms of schizophrenia<sup>217</sup> as lack of motivation, slow movement, change in sleep patterns, poor grooming or hygiene, difficulty in planning and setting goals, not saying much, changes in body language, lack of eye contact, reduced range of emotions, tendency not to interact with other people, little interest in having hobbies and little interest in sex.

### 2.9.4 Schizophreniform Disorder

Schizophreniform disorder (SFD) is a time-limited illness wherein the sufferer has experienced at least two of the major symptoms of psychosis for longer than one month but fewer than six months. Hallucinations, delusions, and strange bodily movements or lack of movements (catatonic behaviour) are all observable symptoms. Additionally, minimal or

---

<sup>215</sup> WebMD, Psychotic Depression [Online] Available from: <http://www.webmd.com/depression/guide/psychotic-depression> [Accessed: 4 July 2014]

<sup>216</sup> MedicalMed, Schizophrenia [Online] Available from: <http://www.medicinenet.com/schizophrenia/article.htm> [Accessed: 19 March 2014]

<sup>217</sup> Medical News Today, What Cause Psychotic Symptoms? [Online] Available from: <http://www.medicalnewstoday.com/articles/248159.php> [Accessed: 7 April 2014]

peculiar speech, lack of drive to act on one's own behalf, bizarre behaviour, a wooden quality to one's emotions or near-absent emotionality are all typical psychotic symptoms that may occur in SFD.

Part of defining SFD involves examining possible biological influences on the development of the individual's psychotic symptoms. When the psychotic features result from a physical disease, a reaction to medication, or intoxication with drugs or alcohol, then these symptoms are not considered SFD. Also, if hallucinations, delusions or other psychotic symptoms are experienced solely during episodes of clinical depression or mania, then SFD is not diagnosed. Instead, a mood disorder diagnosis is given.<sup>218</sup>

### **2.9.5 Schizoaffective Disorder**

Schizoaffective disorder is an illness with persistent psychotic symptoms, like hallucinations or delusions, occurring together with mood problems of depressive, manic, or mixed episodes. Schizoaffective disorder is thought to occur at least as commonly as schizophrenia as and less often than bipolar disorder. There are two types of schizoaffective disorder: bipolar type and depressive type. The bipolar type of schizoaffective disorder is characterised by the illness including at least one manic episode. The depressive type of this illness involves only major depressive episodes as the mood disorder part of the illness.

Two-thirds of people who develop the illness are women. An immediate family history of schizoaffective disorder, bipolar disorder or schizophrenia is a risk factor for developing schizoaffective disorder. Developing schizoaffective disorder or another psychotic illness is more than twice as likely in children who suffer significant adversity like bullying, abuse, neglect, or parental death during that time of their lives.

Obesity, diabetes and physical inactivity are examples of medical problems that disproportionately affect people with this and other severe mental illnesses. It is estimated that between 46% and 50% of people with a psychotic disorder like schizoaffective disorder have a substance-abuse disorder at some time in their life, most commonly nicotine, followed by alcohol and marijuana abuse.

---

<sup>218</sup> Encyclopedia of Mental Disorders, Schizophreniform Disorder [Online] Available from: <http://www.minddisorders.com/Py-Z/Schizophreniform-disorder.html> [Accessed: 27 June 2014]

There is research indicating that 34% of people who suffer from either schizoaffective disorder or schizophrenia have attempted suicide. Suicide attempts seem to occur about four years after the first-time psychosis occurs and about seven years after the onset of the first major depressive episode for those who had a history of major depression. Even in the absence of depression, people with a psychotic disorder like schizoaffective disorder or schizophrenia are at higher risk for having suicidal thoughts or attempts.<sup>219</sup>

### **2.9.6 Schizotypal Personality Disorder**

Schizotypal personality disorder is characterised by an ongoing pattern in which the affected person distances himself from social and interpersonal relationships. Affected people typically have an acute discomfort when put in circumstances where they must relate to others. These individuals are also prone to cognitive and perceptual distortions and a display a variety of eccentric behaviours that others often find confusing.

People with schizotypal personality disorder are more comfortable turning inward, away from others, than learning to have meaningful interpersonal relationships. This preferred isolation contributes to distorted perceptions about how interpersonal relationships are supposed to happen. These individuals remain on the periphery of life and often drift from one aimless activity to other with few, if any, meaningful relationships.

A person with schizotypal personality disorder has odd behaviours and thoughts that would typically be viewed by others as eccentric, erratic and bizarre. They are known on occasion to have brief periods of psychotic episodes. Their speech, while coherent, is marked by a focus on trivial detail. Thought processes of schizotypals include magical thinking, suspiciousness and illusions. These thought patterns are believed to be the schizotypal's unconscious way of coping with social anxiety. To some extent, these behaviours stem from being socially isolated and having a distorted view of appropriate interpersonal relations.<sup>220</sup>

---

<sup>219</sup> MedicalMed, Schizoaffective Disorder. [Online] Available from: [http://www.medicinenet.com/schizoaffective\\_disorder/article.htm](http://www.medicinenet.com/schizoaffective_disorder/article.htm) [Accessed: 7 March 2014]

<sup>220</sup> Encyclopedia of Mental Disorders, Schizotypal Personality Disorder [Online] Available from: <http://www.minddisorders.com/Py-Z/Schizotypal-personality-disorder.html> [Accessed: 27 June 2014]

Dr Robert Sapolsky<sup>221</sup> has theorised that shamanism is practiced by schizotypal individuals. Any individual with schizotypal personality disorder may exhibit either one of the following somewhat different subtypes: insipid schizotypal and timorous schizotypal.

*Insipid schizotypal* is a structural exaggeration of the passive-detached pattern. It includes schizoid, depressive and dependent features. Personality Traits: sense of strangeness and nonbeing; overtly drab, sluggish, inexpressive; internally bland, barren, indifferent, and insensitive; obscured, vague, and tangential thoughts.

*Timorous schizotypal* is a structural exaggeration of the active-detached pattern. It includes avoidant, negativistic (passive-aggressive) features. Personality Traits: warily apprehensive, watchful, suspicious, guarded, shrinking, deadens excess sensitivity; alienated from self and others; intentionally blocks, reverses, or disqualifies own thoughts.<sup>222</sup>

### 2.9.7 Delusional Disorder

Delusional disorder refers to a condition associated with one or more non-bizarre delusions of thinking, expressing beliefs that occur in real life such as being poisoned, being stalked, being loved or deceived, or having an illness, provided no other symptoms of schizophrenia are exhibited.

Delusions may seem believable at face value, and patients may appear normal as long as an outsider does not touch upon their delusional themes. Mood episodes are relatively brief compared with the total duration of the delusional periods. Also, these delusions are not due to a medical condition or substance abuse.

Themes of delusions may fall into the following types: *erotomanic type* (patient believes that a person, usually of higher social standing, is in love with the individual); *grandiose type* (patient believes that he has some great but unrecognised talent or insight, a special identity, knowledge, power, self-worth, or special relationship with someone famous or with God); *jealous type* (patient believes his partner has been unfaithful); *persecutory type* (patient believes he is being cheated, spied on, drugged, followed, slandered, or somehow

---

<sup>221</sup> Robert Maurice Sapolsky (born 1957) is an American neuroendocrinologist, professor of biology, neuroscience, and neurosurgery at Stanford University, researcher and author. He is currently a Professor of Biological Sciences, and Professor of Neurology and Neurological Sciences and, by courtesy, Neurosurgery, at Stanford University.

<sup>222</sup> Ibid.

mistreated); *somatic type* (patient believes he is experiencing physical sensations or bodily dysfunctions, such as foul doors or insects crawling on or under the skin or is suffering from a general medical condition or defect); *mixed type* (characteristics of more than one of the above types, but no one theme dominates); or *unspecified type* (patient's delusions do not fall in described categories).<sup>223</sup>

### 2.9.8 Depressive Disorder

Everyone experiences feelings of unhappiness and sadness occasionally. When these depressed feelings start to dominate everyday life and cause physical and mental deterioration, the feelings become known as depressive disorders. Depressive disorders can be categorised as major depressive disorder or dysthymic disorder.

*Dysthymic disorder* is a type of major depressive disorder. Dysthymic disorder is defined as a mood disorder with chronic depressive symptoms that are present most of the day, more days than not, for a period of at least two years. Individuals who suffer from dysthymic disorder have had their depressive symptoms for years; they often cannot pinpoint exactly when they started to feel depressed. People suffering from dysthymic disorder may describe to their doctor feelings of hopelessness, lowered self-esteem, poor concentration, indecisiveness, decreased motivation, sleeping too much or too little or eating too much or too little. Symptoms are present often and for the whole day, and are typically present for at least two years.<sup>224</sup>

*Major depressive disorder* (MDD) is a condition characterised by a long-lasting depressed mood or marked loss of interest or pleasure (anhedonia) in all or nearly all activities. Children and adolescents with major depressive disorder may be irritable instead of sad. These symptoms, along with others described below, must be sufficiently severe to interfere significantly with the patient's daily functioning in order for a person to be diagnosed with major depressive disorder.

A person suffering major depression finds job-related responsibilities and such other tasks as parenting burdensome and carried out only with great effort. Mental efficiency and

---

<sup>223</sup> Psychology Today, Delusional-Disorder [Online] Available from: <http://www.psychologytoday.com/conditions/delusional-disorder> [Accessed: 4 July 2014]

<sup>224</sup> Encyclopedia of Mental Disorders, Dysthymic Disorder [Online] Available from: <http://www.minddisorders.com/Del-Fi/Dysthymic-disorder.html> [Accessed: 27 June 2014]

memory are affected, causing even simple tasks to be tiring and irritating. Sexual interest dwindles; many people with major depressive disorder become withdrawn and avoid any type of social activity. For some, the pain and suffering accompanying major depressive disorder becomes so unendurable that suicide is viewed as the only option; major depressive disorder has the highest mortality rate of any mental disorder.<sup>225</sup>

### 2.9.9 Bipolar Disorder

Bipolar<sup>226</sup>, or manic-depressive, disorder is a mood disorder that causes radical emotional changes and mood swings, from manic highs to depressive lows. The majority of bipolar individuals experience alternating episodes of mania (an elevated or euphoric mood or irritable state) and depression. The average age of onset of bipolar disorder is from adolescence through the early 20s. Symptoms of bipolar depressive episodes include low energy levels, feelings of despair, difficulty concentrating, extreme fatigue and psychomotor retardation (slowed mental and physical capabilities). Manic episodes are characterised by feelings of euphoria, lack of inhibitions, racing thoughts, and diminished need for sleep, talkativeness, risk taking and irritability. In extreme cases, mania can induce hallucinations and other psychotic symptoms such as grandiose delusions (ideas that the person affected is extremely important or has some unrecognised talent or insight).<sup>227</sup>

Bipolar disorder is the fifth leading cause of disability worldwide. The suicide rate for people with bipolar disorder is 60 times higher than in the general public. As with most other mental disorders, bipolar disorder is not directly passed from one generation to another genetically but is thought to be the result of a complex group of genetic, psychological and environmental factors.

Bipolar disorder has a number of types, including bipolar type I and bipolar type II disorder based on the severity of symptoms, and may be described as mixed or rapid cycling based on the duration and frequency of episodes. The adolescent with bipolar disorder is more likely to exhibit depression and mixed episodes, with rapid changes in mood. Symptoms of bipolar disorder in women tend to include more depression and anxiety as well as a rapid-

---

<sup>225</sup> Encyclopedia of Mental Disorders, Major Depressive Disorder [Online] Available from: <http://www.minddisorders.com/Kau-Nu/Major-depressive-disorder.html> [Accessed: 27 June 2014]

<sup>226</sup> Etymology: Bipolar: "having two poles," from *bi-* + *polar*; 1810 with figurative sense of "of double aspect;" 1859 with reference to physiology. Psychiatric use in reference to what had been called *manic-depressive psychosis* is said to have begun 1957 with German psychiatrist Karl Leonhard. The term became popular early 1990s. *Bipolar disorder* was in DSM III (1980). [www.etymonline.com](http://www.etymonline.com)

<sup>227</sup> Encyclopedia of Mental Disorders, Bipolar Disorder [Online] Available from: <http://www.minddisorders.com/A-Br/Bipolar-disorder.html> [Accessed: 27 June 2014]

cycling pattern compared to symptoms in men. Bipolar type I shows suicide in 10-15% of individuals.

When a person is in the grip of this disease, chaos can occur. Bipolar disorder can cause major disruption of family and finances, loss of job and marital problems. Severe depression can be life-threatening. It may be associated with thoughts of suicide, actual acts of suicide and even acts of homicide in some cases. Extreme mania can lead to aggressive behaviour, potentially dangerous risk-taking behaviours and homicidal acts.

Since there is no one test that definitively indicates that someone has bipolar disorder, health care professionals diagnose this disease by gathering comprehensive medical, family and mental health information in addition to performing physical and mental health evaluations.<sup>228</sup>

There can be confusion between bipolar disorder and cyclothymic disorder. Cyclothymic disorder is a chronic, low-level disturbance of mood, punctuated by periods of depressive symptoms and periods of hypomanic symptoms. Cyclothymia often begins early in life, and people with the disorder may not know they have it; they may simply think of themselves as sadder as and less energetic than other people, with occasional bursts of energy.<sup>229</sup>

#### **2.9.10 Post-Traumatic Stress Disorder (PTSD)**

Post-traumatic stress disorder, (PTSD), is a complex anxiety disorder in which the affected person's memory, emotional responses, intellectual processes and nervous system have all been disrupted by one or more traumatic experiences. It is sometimes summarised as "a normal reaction to abnormal events".

Post-traumatic stress disorder (along with acute stress disorder) depends on a factor outside the individual, namely, a traumatic stressor. A patient cannot be given a diagnosis of post-traumatic stress disorder unless he or she has been exposed to an event that is considered traumatic. These events include such obvious traumas as rape, military combat, torture, genocide, natural disasters, and transportation or workplace disasters. In addition, repeated

---

<sup>228</sup> MedicalMed, Bipolar Disorder. [Online] Available from: [http://www.medicinenet.com/bipolar\\_disorder/article.htm](http://www.medicinenet.com/bipolar_disorder/article.htm) [Accessed: 7 March 2014]

<sup>229</sup> Encyclopedia of Mental Disorders, Bipolar Disorder [Online] Available from: <http://www.minddisorders.com/A-Br/Bipolar-disorder.html> [Accessed: 27 June 2014]



traumas or such traumas of long duration as child abuse, domestic violence, stalking, cult membership, and hostage situations may also produce the symptoms of post-traumatic stress disorder in survivors.

A person suffering from post-traumatic stress disorder experiences flashbacks, nightmares, or daydreams in which the traumatic event is experienced again. The person may also experience abnormally intense startle responses, insomnia, and may have difficulty concentrating.<sup>230</sup>

### **2.9.11 Complex Post-Traumatic Stress Disorder (PTSD)**

Complex PTSD is also known as Disorders of Extreme Stress (DES) or Disorders of Extreme Stress Not Otherwise Specified (DESNOS). People who have experienced multiple, severe, prolonged, and inescapable aversive events while under the totalitarian control of one or more victimisers develop more symptoms, more complex symptoms, and more stable symptoms than do people exposed to other traumatic events.

This disorder entails systematic and pathological changes in the victim's affect regulation, consciousness, self-perception, identity, perception of the perpetrator, relations to others and system of meaning. People with Complex PTSD perceive themselves as mentally defeated, alienated and permanently changed. During and subsequent to the experience of totalitarian control, they appear to have lost their ability to plan, develop, and apply constructive coping strategies and to process complex trauma-related information. Each of these changes affects the outcome of exposure to totalitarian control.<sup>231</sup>

### **2.9.12 Intensive Care Unit Psychosis**

ICU psychosis is a disorder in which patients in an intensive care unit (ICU) or a similar setting experience a cluster of serious psychiatric symptoms. Another term that may be used interchangeably for ICU psychosis is ICU syndrome. ICU psychosis is also a form of

---

<sup>230</sup> Encyclopedia of Mental Disorders, Post-traumatic Stress Disorder [Online] Available from: <http://www.minddisorders.com/Ob-Ps/Post-traumatic-stress-disorder.html> [Accessed: 27 June 2014]

<sup>231</sup> Ebert, A & Dyck M J (2004) *The Experience of Mental Death: The Core Feature of Complex PTSD*. Australia: Curtin University of Technology, pp. 6, 21-22

delirium, or acute brain failure. ICU psychosis is a temporary and treatable condition, lasting from 24 hours up to two weeks with various symptoms occurring at different times.<sup>232</sup>

### **2.9.13 Brief Psychotic Disorder**

Brief psychotic disorder is a short-term, time-limited disorder. An individual with brief psychotic disorder has experienced at least one of the major symptoms of psychosis for less than one month. Hallucinations, delusions, strange bodily movements or lack of movements (catatonic behaviour), peculiar speech and bizarre or markedly inappropriate behaviour are all classic psychotic symptoms that may occur in brief psychotic disorder.

The cause of the symptoms helps to determine whether or not the sufferer is described as having brief psychotic disorder. If the psychotic symptoms appear as a result of a physical disease, a reaction to medication or intoxication with drugs or alcohol, then the unusual behaviours are not classified as brief psychotic disorder. If hallucinations, delusions, or other psychotic symptoms occur at the same time that an individual is experiencing major clinical depression or bipolar (manic-depressive) disorder, then the brief psychotic disorder diagnosis is not given.<sup>233</sup>

### **2.9.14 Torture Syndrome**

The set of symptoms known as torture syndrome are not specific to the experience of torture. Rather, they are common among persons exposed to any more or less extreme form of totalitarian control. It is marked by existential dilemma, guilt, shame, distrust, attachment problems, and damage to beliefs about safety and justice and somatisation.

Torture trauma research offers insights into specific processes that cause long-term personality change, changes in core beliefs and assumptions and the ability to relate to others. At a general level, torture shares characteristics with other multiple, severe, prolonged interpersonal traumas. These characteristics include: (1) the victim is entrapped in an aversive situation as a result of human action rather than as a result of natural causes;

---

<sup>232</sup> MedicalMed, ICU Psychosis. [Online] Available from: [http://www.medicinenet.com/icu\\_psychosis/article.htm](http://www.medicinenet.com/icu_psychosis/article.htm) [Accessed: 7 March 2014]

<sup>233</sup> Encyclopedia of Mental Disorders, Brief Psychotic Disorder [Online] Available from: <http://www.minddisorders.com/Br-Del/Brief-psychotic-disorder.html> [Accessed: 27 June 2014]

(2) the harm done to the victim is intentional rather than accidental; and (3) dehumanising procedures are used to deconstruct the victim's identity.

Specific torture techniques purposefully employed to attack the victim's identity such as the good guy/bad guy and impossible choice techniques exemplify intentionality and dehumanisation. In the good guy/bad guy technique, one of two perpetrators initially adopts the role of a person who is supportive, helpful and understanding while the other perpetrator maltreats the victim. The initial aim is to cause the victim to form an attachment to the 'good' perpetrator, and when this aim is achieved, the two perpetrators swap roles. The effect of this procedure is not only to impair the ability to form attachments, but to induce debility, dependency and dread in the victim, a method described as undermining a person's core beliefs and behaviours. The impossible choice method places the victim in a situation where, regardless of the victim's action, something aversive will happen to the victim and/or another person. This procedure actively undermines the victim's beliefs regarding personal agency and autonomy, resulting in mental defeat.

The term mental defeat describes the perception that one has lost autonomy as a human being, lost the will to exert control and maintain identity, and lost the belief that one has a free will. Mental defeat is most likely to occur when a victim is unable to escape continuous threats and violent treatment by other humans, such that the victim experiences helplessness, powerlessness and uncontrollability.<sup>234</sup>

Torture entails the deliberate infliction of severe physical and mental pain and suffering through cruel, inhumane or degrading treatment and punishment. The techniques used in modern torture are far more extensive than the traditional forms of physical cruelty that are often associated with the word torture. In addition to physical methods, modern torture uses sophisticated psychological and psycho-pharmacological maltreatment to cause psychological change in individuals, especially by damaging a person's sense of self. Torture methods can be selected to maximise changes to personality, core beliefs, and the ability to trust others while minimising physical scars and other obvious evidence of maltreatment.

Other torture methods are applied with the aim of achieving psychological fragmentation and the deconstruction of the person's identity. The maltreatment of Soviet dissidents in mental

---

<sup>234</sup> Ebert, A & Dyck M J (2004) *The Experience of Mental Death: The Core Feature of Complex PTSD*. Australia: Curtin University of Technology, pp. 6-7

institutions with psychological and psycho-pharmacological methods illustrates the purposely induced fragmentation of cognitive and identity structures. Likewise, methods such as brainwashing, self-accusations, solitary confinement and sensory deprivation have been used in re-education camps with the aim of creating a weakening of psychological structures and a path to 're-form' the dissidents' ways of thinking and acting. In summary, inescapable captivity with long-term abusive and dehumanising maltreatment as in torture is likely to cause changes in identity, damage the ability to relate to others, and is associated with complex and diffuse symptom manifestations.

Torture and other forms of totalitarian control undermine identity by causing change in four identity domains. First, totalitarian control causes a person to act and live in ways that are inconsistent with the person's core beliefs, assumptions and values, which leads to a discontinuity of identity and can cause the person to feel shame and guilt during, and subsequent to, the traumatic events. Second, totalitarian control causes a person to perceive others differently from how they were previously perceived, especially in terms of diminishing a person's capacity to trust and become attached to other people. Third, totalitarian control causes major change to a person's view of the world, including beliefs related to social order, justice and safety. Finally, as a result of these changes to identity, totalitarian control causes a change in a person's behaviour such that continuity is lost between pre-trauma and post-trauma patterns of behaviour and consequently perceptions of self.

Traumatic events modify core cognitive schemas and cause personality change. Constructs related to identity, safety, trust, attachments, justice and existential issues are affected by torture, and that changes to these constructs are responsible for the behavioural changes evident in persons with torture syndrome. Changes to these personal constructs would mean that a person is unable to interact with the world in a predictable fashion, and to be confident that interactions with the world are based on tested and validated appraisals of previous experience.<sup>235</sup>

### **2.9.15 Psychotic Disorder Due to a General Medical Condition**

The essential features of psychotic disorders due to a general medical condition are prominent hallucinations or delusions that are judged to be due to the direct physiological effects of a general medical condition (Criterion A). There must be evidence from the history,

---

<sup>235</sup> Ibid, pp. 11-12, 20

physical examination, or laboratory findings that the delusions or hallucinations are the direct physiological consequence of a general medical condition (Criterion B). The psychotic disturbance is not better accounted for by another mental disorder (e.g. the symptoms are not a psychologically mediated response to a severe general medical condition, in which case a diagnosis of Brief Psychotic Disorder With Marked Stressor, would be appropriate) (Criterion C). The diagnosis is not made if the disturbance occurs only during the course of a delirium (Criterion D).

Because of ICD-9-CM coding requirements, a separate diagnosis of psychotic disorders due to a general medical condition is not given if delusions occur only during the course of vascular dementia; a diagnosis of vascular dementia with the subtype with delusions is given instead.<sup>236</sup>

## **2.10. PSYCHOSIS**

### **2.10.1 Introduction**

Psychosis<sup>237</sup> is a symptom of mental illness characterised by a radical change in personality and a distorted or diminished sense of objective reality. Psychosis appears as a symptom of a number of mental disorders, including mood and personality disorders, schizophrenia, delusional disorder and substance abuse. It is also the defining feature of the psychotic disorders. Patients suffering from psychosis are unable to distinguish the real from the unreal. They experience hallucinations and delusions that they believe are real, and they typically behave in an inappropriate and confused manner.<sup>238</sup>

Psychosis by some is seen as a severe mental disorder in which a person has extreme impairment of the ability to think clearly, respond with appropriate emotion, communicate effectively, understand reality and behave appropriately. Psychosis in depression is usually part of the spectrum of bipolar disorder. It can also occur in a number of neurological conditions and with drugs not associated with abuse. Psychosis interferes with the ability to function and can be very debilitating.<sup>239</sup>

---

<sup>236</sup> Psychotic Disorder Due to a General Medical Condition (<http://www.health.am/psy/psychotic-disorder-due-to-condition/>)

<sup>237</sup> Etymology: Psychosis: 1847, "mental derangement," Modern Latin, from Greek *psykhe*- "mind" (see *psyche*) + *-osis* "abnormal condition." Greek *psykhis* meant "a giving of life; animation; principle of life." [www.etymonline.com](http://www.etymonline.com)

<sup>238</sup> Encyclopedia of Mental Disorders, Psychosis [Online] Available from: <http://www.minddisorders.com/Ob-Ps/Psychosis.html> [Accessed: 27 June 2014]

<sup>239</sup> Patient, Psychosis Diagnosis and Management. [Online] Available from: <http://www.patient.co.uk/doctor/psychosis-diagnosis-and-management> [Accessed: 7 March 2014]

A mental illness can be exhibited through various forms of psychosis<sup>240</sup>:

- *Delusions*<sup>241</sup>. An unshakable and irrational belief in something untrue. Delusions defy normal reasoning and remain firm even when overwhelming proof is presented to disprove them.
- *Hallucinations*<sup>242</sup>. Psychosis causes false or distorted sensory experiences that appear to be real. Psychotic patients often see, hear, smell, taste, or feel things that aren't there.
- *Disorganised speech*. Psychotic patients often speak incoherently, using noises instead of words and 'talking' in unintelligible speech patterns.
- *Disorganised or catatonic behaviour*. Behaviour that is completely inappropriate to the situation or environment. Catatonic patients have either a complete lack of or inappropriate excess of motor activity. They can be completely rigid and unable to move (vegetative), or in constant motion. Disorganised behaviour is unpredictable and inappropriate for a situation (such as screaming obscenities in the middle of class).

People experiencing psychosis may reveal some personality changes and thought disorder. Depending on its severity, this may be accompanied by unusual or bizarre behaviour, as well as difficulty with social interaction and impairment in carrying out daily life activities. Psychosis is caused by changes in the chemical environment in the brain<sup>243</sup>. Psychosis can lead to disastrous consequences. Suicide can occur in any form of mental illness, although its incidence in psychotic disorders is not as high as was once thought.

The following people may be affected<sup>244</sup>:

- Young people (men aged 15-30 and women 18-35) are at particularly high risk.

---

<sup>240</sup> Encyclopedia of Mental Disorders, Psychosis [Online] Available from: <http://www.minddisorders.com/Ob-Ps/Psychosis.html> [Accessed: 27 June 2014]

<sup>241</sup> Etymology: Delusion: "act of misleading someone," early 15c.; as a form of mental derangement, 1550s, from Latin *delusionem* (nominative *delusio*) "a deceiving," noun of action from past participle stem of *deludere*. Technically, *delusion* is a belief that, though false, has been surrendered to and accepted by the whole mind as a truth; *illusion* is an impression that, though false, is entertained provisionally on the recommendation of the senses or the imagination, but awaits full acceptance and may not influence action. *Delusions of grandeur*, the exact phrase, is recorded from 1840, though the two words were in close association for some time before that. [www.etymonline.com](http://www.etymonline.com)

<sup>242</sup> Etymology: Hallucinate: c.1600, "deceive," from Latin *alucinatus*, later *hallucinatus*, past participle of *alucinari* "wander (in the mind), dream; talk unreasonably, ramble in thought," probably from Greek *alyein*, Attic *halyein* "be distraught," probably related to *alaomai* "wander about" [Barnhart, Klein]. The Latin ending probably was influenced by *vaticinari* "to prophecy," also "to rave." Sense of "to have illusions" is from 1650s. Occasionally used 19c. in transitive senses, "to cause hallucination." Related: *Hallucinated*; *hallucinating*. [www.etymonline.com](http://www.etymonline.com)

<sup>243</sup> Mental Illness Fellowship Victoria, Understanding Mental Illness. [Online] Available from: <http://www.mifellowship.org/content/factsheets> [Accessed: 7 March 2014]

<sup>244</sup> Douglas Mental Health. Psychosis: Causes, Symptoms and Treatments [Online] Available from: <http://www.douglas.qc.ca/info/psychosis-causes-treatments> [Accessed: 7 March 2014]

- Around four to five out of every 100 young people will experience a psychotic episode at some point in their lifetime. Most will fully recover.
- Psychosis associated with schizophrenia tends to strike men more often than women.
- Psychosis can happen to anyone. An episode of psychosis is treatable, and it is possible to recover.

Having said this, there is fortunately always hope for complete healing and restoration in Jesus Christ of Nazareth.

### **2.10.2 Brief Reactive Psychosis**

Brief reactive psychosis is a sudden, short-term display of psychotic behaviour, such as hallucinations or delusions that occur with a stressful event. Brief reactive psychosis is triggered by extreme stress (such as a traumatic accident or loss of a loved one) and is followed by a return to the previous level of function. The person may or may not be aware of the strange behaviour. This condition most often affects people in their 20s, 30s, and 40s. People who have personality disorders are at greater risk for having a brief reactive psychosis.<sup>245</sup>

### **2.10.3 Korsakoff Psychosis**

Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome is a severe memory disorder usually associated with chronic excessive alcohol consumption, although the direct cause is a deficiency in the B vitamin thiamin. Korsakoff syndrome is alcohol-induced persisting amnestic disorder and is included under the category of substance-induced persisting amnestic disorders. It can, however, also occur in people who are malnourished for other reasons due to vitamin B thiamin deficiency. Thiamin deficiency damages regions of the brain, particularly the thalamus and the mammillary bodies.

Mental confusion, eye movement disturbances, and ataxia are the primary symptoms of Wernicke's encephalopathy – the first, acute stage of Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome. At first

---

<sup>245</sup> NLM, Brief Reactive Psychosis disorder. [Online] Available from: <http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/ency/article/001529.htm> [Accessed: 4 July 2014]

glance, confusion and ataxia may resemble the effects of severe alcohol intoxication, but they persist after intoxication wears off. Some patients with Wernicke's encephalopathy will recover completely without residual memory deficits, particularly if they are treated quickly with thiamin.

The chronic stage of Wernicke-Korsakoff syndrome, sometimes called Korsakoff psychosis, is distinguished by anterograde amnesia, and most untreated patients with Wernicke's encephalopathy (the first phase of the condition) will develop this severe memory disorder, which prevents them from forming lasting memories of events or information encountered after the onset of the initial symptoms. Symptoms of Korsakoff syndrome may also develop spontaneously in many patients who never show signs of Wernicke's encephalopathy. Once patients develop Korsakoff's amnesia, recovery is unlikely.<sup>246</sup>

#### **2.10.4 Postpartum Psychosis**

Experts estimate that 25-75% of all new mothers experience the 'baby blues', a short-term period of mild depression following the birth of a child. Ten percent develop postpartum depression, a more serious condition that can include mood swings, uncontrollable crying, fatigue or exhaustion, feelings of guilt, inadequacy or worthlessness, lack of interest in the baby and other common signs of depression. One or two in a thousand women will develop postpartum psychosis – a very serious illness that needs quick intervention, usually including hospitalisation.

Symptoms of postpartum psychosis are consistent with those of a bipolar I psychotic episode but have some special twists specifically related to motherhood. If a person is classified with bipolar disorder, she has a better-than-average chance of having postpartum depression or psychosis herself.

It is estimated that in the US there are 4,100 to 8,200 women who experience postpartum psychosis per year. Given the rates of suicide and infanticide related to postpartum psychosis, this estimates risk over 300 infants killed and more than 400 mothers committing

---

<sup>246</sup> Encyclopedia of Mental Disorders, Wernicke-Korsakoff-syndrome [Online] Available from: <http://www.minddisorders.com/Py-Z/Wernicke-Korsakoff-syndrome.html> [Accessed: 27 June 2014]



suicide because of this illness. Infanticide after childbirth is usually due to profound postpartum depression (melancholic filicide) when it is often accompanied by suicide.<sup>247</sup>

Symptoms may include auditory or visual hallucinations, delusions or rapid mood swings. The hallucinations may have themes of violence toward the mother or her baby. This condition may be associated with significant problems in thinking, ranging from mental confusion and indecision to intrusive and bizarre thoughts. Some women have typical manic symptoms, such as euphoria, over-activity, decreased sleep requirement, loquaciousness, flight of ideas, increased sociability, disinhibition, irritability, violence and delusions, which are usually grandiose or religious in content; on the whole these symptoms are more severe than in mania occurring at other times, with highly disorganised speech and extreme excitement. Others have severe depression with delusions, auditory hallucinations, mutism, stupor or transient swings into hypomania. Some switch from mania to depression (or vice versa) within the same episode. It is suggested that there might be a link to menstruation, and especially menstrual psychosis.<sup>248</sup>

### 2.10.5 Secondary Psychosis

Psychotic disorders due to a known medical illness or substance use are collectively termed secondary psychoses and are diagnosed via psychiatric processes.

Examples of secondary psychosis include the following<sup>249</sup>:

- *disorders causing delirium* (toxic psychosis), in which consciousness is disturbed;
- *neurodevelopmental disorders* and chromosomal abnormalities, including velocardiofacial syndrome;
- *neurodegenerative disorders*, such as Alzheimer's disease (the most common form of dementia that causes a decline of mental abilities, such as memory and reasoning), dementia with Lewy bodies, and Parkinson's disease (a chronic condition that affects the way the brain coordinates body movements, including walking, talking and writing);
- *focal neurological disease*, such as stroke, brain tumours, multiple sclerosis, and some forms of epilepsy;

---

<sup>247</sup> About Bipolar Disorder, Postpartum Psychosis [Online] Available from: <http://bipolar.about.com/od/relateddisorders/a/postpartumpsych.htm> [Accessed: 4 July 2014]

<sup>248</sup> MedicalMed, Psychotic Disorders. [Online] Available from: [http://www.medicinenet.com/psychotic\\_disorders/page3.htm](http://www.medicinenet.com/psychotic_disorders/page3.htm) [Accessed: 7 March 2014]

<sup>249</sup> Cardinal, R N & Bullmore E T (2011) The Diagnosis of Psychosis. Cambridge University Press, pp. 1-56

- *malignancy* (typically via masses in the brain, paraneoplastic syndromes or drugs used to treat cancer);
- *endocrine disease*, such as hypothyroidism, hyperthyroidism, adrenal failure, Cushing's syndrome, hypoparathyroidism and hyperparathyroidism; sex hormones also affect psychotic symptoms and sometimes childbirth can provoke psychosis, termed puerperal psychosis;
- *inborn errors of metabolism*, such as Succinic semialdehyde dehydrogenase deficiency, porphyria and metachromatic leukodystrophy;
- *nutritional deficiency*, such as vitamin B<sub>12</sub> deficiency;
- *other acquired metabolic disorders*, including electrolyte disturbances such as hypocalcemia, hypernatremia hyponatremia, hypokalemia, hypomagnesemia, hypermagnesemia, hypercalcemia, and hypophosphatemia, but also hypoglycemia, hypoxia, and failure of the liver or kidneys;
- *autoimmune and related disorders*, such as systemic lupus erythematosus (lupus, SLE), sarcoidosis, Hashimoto's encephalopathy, and anti-NMDA-receptor encephalitis;
- *poisoning*, by therapeutic drugs, recreational drugs, and a range of plants, fungi, metals, organic compounds, and a few animal toxins;
- *some sleep disorders*, including hallucinations in narcolepsy (in which REM sleep intrudes into wakefulness);
- *brain tumours*, a growth of cells in the brain that multiply in an abnormal and uncontrollable way;
- *protozoal infection*, such as Malaria (spread by infected mosquitoes), Toxoplasmosis, Trypanosomiasis;
- *viral infections*, such as Herpesvirus encephalitis, HIV encephalitis and AIDS dementia, Influenza A, Enteroviruses, Adenovirus, Rabies, Subacute sclerosing panencephalitis (SSPE), Progressive multifocal leukoencephalopathy (PML);
- *bacterial infections*, such as Lyme disease (spread to humans by infected ticks), Bartonella infection, Leptospirosis, Tuberculosis, Pyogenic bacterial infection, Brucellosis, Whipple's disease, Typhus, Typhoid, Rocky Mountain spotted fever, Mycoplasma pneumonia, Legionella pneumophila (Legionnaire's disease), Coxiella burnetii (Q fever), Chlamydophila (formerly Chlamydia) pneumonia, Chlamydophila psittaci, syphilis (passed through sexual contact)<sup>250</sup>; and

---

<sup>250</sup> NHS, Psychosis Causes. [Online] Available from: <http://www.nhs.uk/Conditions/Psychosis/Pages/Causes.aspx> [Accessed: 7 April 2014]

- *fungal infections* (mychosis), systemic fungal infections are rare except in the immunocompromised.

### **2.10.6 Menstrual Psychosis**

Menstrual psychosis is a form of psychosis with a brief, sudden onset related to the menstrual cycle. The symptoms can be dramatic and can include delirium, mania or mutism. They generally resolve fully. Most psychiatrists do not recognise the condition. It is rare, with about 80 cases with substantial evidence, and about 200 other possible cases reported by 2011. It is thought to be linked with postpartum psychosis. Menstrual psychosis is also seen as a bipolar disorder with a link to the hypothalamus.<sup>251</sup>

This is a rare form of severe mental illness, with the following characteristics<sup>252</sup>:

- sudden onset in a previously asymptomatic person;
- brief duration, with full recovery;
- psychotic symptoms that can include confusion or hallucinations, mutism and stupor, delusions or manic state. These are distinct from premenstrual tension, premenstrual syndrome, premenstrual (late luteal phase) depression or dysphoric disorder or menstrual mood disorder; and
- occurrence in rhythm with the menstrual cycle.

### **2.10.7 Myxedematous Psychosis**

Myxedema psychosis, more colloquially known as myxedema madness, is a relatively uncommon consequence of hypothyroidism, such as in Hashimoto's thyroiditis or in patients who have had the thyroids surgically removed and are not taking thyroxine. A chronically under-active thyroid can lead to slowly progressive dementia, delirium, and in extreme cases to hallucinations, coma, or psychosis, particularly in the elderly.<sup>253</sup>

---

<sup>251</sup>PMC. Menstrual psychosis: a bipolar disorder with a link to the hypothalamus [Online] Available from: <http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21424263> [Accessed: 14 July 2014]

<sup>252</sup> Ibid.

<sup>253</sup> Psychiatrist, Encyclopedia of Philosophy [Online] Available from: <http://plato.stanford.edu> [Accessed: 10 July 2014] [Online] Available from: <http://www.psychiatrist.com/pcc/pccpdf/v05n06/v05n0603.pdf> [Accessed: 14 July 2014]

### **2.10.8 Stimulant Psychosis**

Stimulant psychosis is a psychotic disorder that occurs in some people who use stimulant drugs. Stimulant psychosis commonly occurs in people who abuse stimulants, but it also occurs in some patients taking therapeutic doses of stimulant drugs under medical supervision. The most common causative agents are amphetamines and cocaine although newer designer drugs such as MDPV, Ethylphenidate and a-PVP can produce severe psychotic episodes that occur more rapidly and are more intense and longer lasting. Other more powerful Norepinephrine-dopamine reuptake inhibitor-type drugs, such as 2-DPMP, can produce multi-day psychotic episodes from acute overdose.

The symptoms of stimulant psychosis may vary slightly depending on the drug ingested but generally include the symptoms of organic psychosis including hallucinations, delusions, thought disorder, and, in extreme cases, catatonia. In cases of stimulant psychosis (but not organic psychosis) patients tend to also present with the physical symptoms of prolonged stimulant abuse or acute overdose. These additional symptoms may include aggression, arrhythmia, dilated pupils, diarrhea, hypertension, hyperthermia, nausea, rapid breathing, restlessness, seizures, sleep deprivation, tremor and vomiting.

Stimulants (less common than stimulant psychosis) such as cocaine and amphetamines, as well as the dissociative drug phencyclidine (PCP, 'angel dust') can also cause a severe and life-threatening condition known as excited delirium. This condition manifests as a combination of delirium, psychomotor agitation, anxiety, delusions, hallucinations, speech disturbances, disorientation, violent and bizarre behaviour, insensitivity to pain, elevated body temperature, and superhuman strength. Despite some superficial similarities in presentation excited delirium is a distinct (and more serious) condition than stimulant psychosis.<sup>254</sup>

### **2.10.9 Shared Psychotic Disorder**

Shared psychotic disorder, a rare and atypical psychotic disorder, occurs when an otherwise healthy person (secondary partner) begins believing the delusions of someone with whom

---

<sup>254</sup> World Heritage Encyclopedia, Stimulant Psychosis [Online] Available from: [http://cdn.worldheritage.org/articles/Stimulant\\_psychosis](http://cdn.worldheritage.org/articles/Stimulant_psychosis) [Accessed: 14 July 2014]

they have a close relationship (primary partner) who is already suffering from a psychotic disorder with prominent delusions. This disorder is also referred to as 'folie à deux'.

In cases of shared psychotic disorder, the primary partner is most often in a position of strong influence over the other person. This allows them, over time, to erode the defences of the secondary partner, forcing their strange belief upon them. In the beginning, the secondary partner is probably healthy, but has such a passive or dependent relationship with the primary partner that imposition of the delusional system is but a matter of time. There is the primary, most often the dominant person, and the secondary or submissive person. This becomes fertile ground for the primary (dominant) partner to press for understanding and belief by others in the family.

Shared psychotic disorder has also been referred to by other names such as psychosis of association, contagious insanity, infectious insanity, double insanity and communicated insanity.<sup>255</sup>

### **2.10.10 Cycloid Psychosis**

Cycloid psychosis is psychosis that progresses from normal to full-blown usually within a few hours, not related to drug intake or brain injury. In addition, diagnostic criteria include at least four of the following symptoms: confusion, mood-incongruent delusions, hallucinations, pan-anxiety (a severe anxiety not bound to particular situations or circumstances), happiness or ecstasy of high degree, motility disturbances of akinetic or hyperkinetic type, concern with death, and mood swings to some degree, but less than what is needed for diagnosis of an affective disorders.

Cycloid psychosis occurs in people of generally 15 to 50 years of age. It is subdivided into three sub forms: anxiety-happiness psychosis, excited-inhibited-confusion psychosis and hyperkinetic-akinetic motility psychosis.<sup>256</sup>

### **2.10.11 Substance-induced Psychosis**

---

<sup>255</sup> Encyclopedia of Mental Disorders, Shared Psychotic Disorder [Online] Available from: <http://www.minddisorders.com/Py-Z/Shared-psychotic-disorder.html> [Accessed: 27 June 2014]

<sup>256</sup> Pimidi, Psychosis - Subtypes - Cycloid Psychosis [Online] Available from: [http://www.pimidi.com/psychosis/subtypes/cycloid\\_psychosis](http://www.pimidi.com/psychosis/subtypes/cycloid_psychosis) [Accessed: 14 July 2014]

Prominent anxiety symptoms (i.e. generalised anxiety, panic attacks, obsessive-compulsive symptoms or phobia symptoms) determined to be caused by the effects of a psychoactive substance is the primary feature of a substance-induced psychotic disorder. A substance may induce psychotic symptoms during intoxication (i.e. while the individual is under the influence of the drug) or during withdrawal (i.e. after an individual stops using the drug).

Prominent psychotic symptoms (i.e. hallucinations and delusions) determined to be caused by the effects of a psychoactive substance is the primary feature of a substance-induced psychotic disorder. A substance may induce psychotic symptoms during intoxication (while the individual is under the influence of the drug) or during withdrawal (after an individual stops using the drug).

A substance-induced psychotic disorder is sub-typed or categorised based on whether the prominent feature is delusions or hallucinations. In addition, the disorder is sub-typed based on whether it began during intoxication on a substance or during withdrawal from a substance. A substance-induced psychotic disorder that begins during substance use can last as long as the drug is used. A substance-induced psychotic disorder that begins during withdrawal may first manifest up to four weeks after an individual stops using the substance.<sup>257</sup>

### **2.10.12 Psychosis in the Elderly**

Alzheimer's disease, or AD, is a progressive, incurable disease of the brain caused by the degeneration and eventual death of neurons (nerve cells) in several areas of the brain. Patients with AD first lose such mental functions as short-term memory and the ability to learn new things. In the later stages of AD, they gradually lose control over their sense of orientation, their emotions, and other aspects of behaviour. End-stage AD is characterised by loss of control of body functions, an increased likelihood of seizures, loss of the ability to eat or swallow, and eventual death from infection or malnutrition. Alzheimer's disease is the most common cause of dementia (loss of cognitive abilities) in the elderly.<sup>258</sup>

---

<sup>257</sup> Encyclopedia of Mental Disorders, Substance-induced Psychotic Disorder [Online] Available from: <http://www.minddisorders.com/Py-Z/Substance-induced-psychotic-disorder.html> [Accessed: 27 June 2014]

<sup>258</sup> Encyclopedia of Mental Disorders, Alzheimer's Disease [Online] Available from: <http://www.minddisorders.com/A-Br/Alzheimer-s-disease.html> [Accessed: 27 June 2014]

Psychosis of Alzheimer's disease is characterised by delusions or hallucinations and may be associated with agitation, negative symptoms or depression. Psychosis is common in Alzheimer's disease and affects between about 40% and 50% of people over the course of the disease. It causes significant distress to the patient and to families and caregivers. In a neurodegenerative disease such as Alzheimer's disease where confusion is also a central symptom, it can be difficult for caregivers to understand the difference between confusion and psychosis as both states can sometimes result in the same types of behaviours.

Confusion is defined as impaired orientation with respect to time, place or person. It is not difficult to imagine how a person's behaviour would change if he became confused. He could easily become fearful if he did not recognise his surroundings or family members or nursing staff. He might become uncooperative or shout out if he were frightened. Although someone with Alzheimer's experiencing confusion may show these symptoms, the patient would not be considered to be suffering from psychosis.

In psychosis, there are a number of specific symptoms that include hallucinations, delusions and paranoia. The hallucinations can affect any of the five senses but most commonly affect auditory and visual senses. A person with psychosis would not be considered to be deluded if they were confused. Delusions are defined as a fixed and false belief that, even in the face of evidence to the contrary, will not change.

Paranoia is one symptom that can be very similar in both confusion and psychosis. What differs is the depth of belief. So if one would consider paranoia as an unfounded or exaggerated distrust of others, or someone who constantly suspects the motives of those around them, or that some or all people are "out to get them" it may be seen as a symptom of either. What differs is whether the belief is fixed and unshakable.

The occurrence of psychotic symptoms in people with Alzheimer's has been found in some studies to be familial. It has an estimated heritability of 61%. One of the most consistent findings in studies has been that Alzheimer's and psychosis is in those with greater cognitive impairment. Cognition is perceiving, recognising, conceiving, judging, reasoning and imagining.<sup>259</sup>

---

<sup>259</sup> Health Central, Alzheimer's Disease [Online] Available from: <http://www.healthcentral.com/alzheimers/c/57548/161124/psychosis-alzheimer/#sthash.C9EsbHMM.dpuf> [Accessed: 2 July 2014]

For the treatment of psychosis in Alzheimer's disease, some studies have shown an association between antipsychotic drug use and increased risk of mortality without establishing causality. Recent studies show that when antipsychotic drug use was adjusted for severity of illness and psychiatric symptoms, the latter was found to be more of an independent risk factor for mortality. For patients with mild to moderate behavioural symptoms without psychosis and for patients with behaviours with specific triggers, psychiatrists allegedly recommend non-pharmacological interventions, including psychosocial, environmental, and caregiver interventions; and for patients with moderate to severe symptoms and psychosis and for those in whom non-pharmacological interventions have failed, pharmacological interventions are recommended; atypical antipsychotics are the preferred initial choice.<sup>260</sup>

## **2.11. THE CAUSES OF PSYCHOSIS IN GENERAL**

Each case of psychosis is different, and the exact cause is not always entirely clear. Although two people can be diagnosed with the same psychosis (e.g. schizophrenia) they may not have the same set of symptoms. This is called heterogeneity. One explanation for this heterogeneity is that these two people may have different genetic and environmental vulnerability factors causing the illness.<sup>261</sup>

The majority of researchers now agree that most cases of psychosis, like many other common disorders, such as heart disease, diabetes and asthma, are caused by a combination of inherited genetic factors and external environmental factors.<sup>262</sup>

The causes of psychosis have these main classifications<sup>263</sup>:

- psychosis caused by psychological (mental) conditions;
- psychosis caused by general medical conditions;
- psychosis caused by substances, such as alcohol or drugs; and
- psychosis caused by environmental factors.

---

<sup>260</sup> Psychiatric Times, Managing Psychosis in Patients With Alzheimer Disease [Online] Available from: <http://www.psychiatrictimes.com/geriatric-psychiatry/managing-psychosis-patients-alzheimer-disease/page/0/5> [Accessed: 11 April 2014]

<sup>261</sup> Ask.Healthline.com. Causes of Psychosis. [Online] Available from: <http://ask.healthline.com/health/psychosis#Causes> [Accessed: 7 April 2014]

<sup>262</sup> Psychosis Sucks, What Causes Psychosis? [Online] Available from: <http://www.psychosissucks.ca/whatcausespsychosis.cfm> [Accessed: 7 April 2014]

<sup>263</sup> NHS, Psychosis Causes. [Online] Available from: <http://www.nhs.uk/Conditions/Psychosis/Pages/Causes.aspx> [Accessed: 7 April 2014]



### **2.11.1 Psychological Causes of Psychosis**

The following psychological conditions have been known to trigger psychotic episodes in some people:

- *Schizophrenia*. A chronic (long-term) mental health condition that causes hallucinations and delusions.
- *Bipolar disorder*. Previously called manic depression, bipolar disorder affects your moods, which can swing from one extreme to another.
- *Severe stress or anxiety*.
- *Severe depression*. Feelings of extreme sadness that last a long time (including postnatal depression, which some women experience after having a baby).
- *Lack of sleep*.

Coping with past or current traumatic experiences such as abuse, bereavement or divorce will strongly influence an individual's mental and emotional state which can in turn have an influence on mental health. The underlying psychological cause will often influence the type of psychotic episode someone experiences. For example, a person with bipolar disorder is more likely to have delusions of grandeur, whereas someone with depression or schizophrenia is more likely to develop paranoid delusions.<sup>264</sup>

### **2.11.2 The role of Substances in Psychosis**

Alcohol and drug misuse can trigger a psychotic episode. A psychotic episode can also be triggered if someone suddenly stops taking a drug or drinking alcohol after long-term use. This is known as withdrawal. A person can also experience psychosis after drinking large amounts of alcohol or if also are high on drugs.

Drugs known to trigger psychotic episodes include cocaine, amphetamine (speed), methamphetamine (crystal meth), mephedrone (MCAT or miaow), MDMA (ecstasy), cannabis, LSD (acid), psilocybins (magic mushrooms) and ketamine.

In rare situations, psychosis can also occur as a side effect of some types of medication, or as a result of an overdose of that medication. One example is levodopa, a medication used

---

<sup>264</sup> Ibid.

to treat Parkinson's disease, but any medicine that acts on the brain can cause psychosis with an overdose.<sup>265</sup>

### **2.11.3 Environmental Causes of Psychosis**

There are many different environmental factors that have each been shown to lead to a small increase in the likelihood of someone developing psychosis. Where someone lives and their living conditions along with family and community support networks can play a part, along with employment status and work stresses. Living in poverty or social isolation, being unemployed or highly stressed at work can all put pressure on an individual's mental health. For example, research has shown that it is two times more common for individuals with schizophrenia to have had a difficult delivery at birth. Other environmental vulnerability factors include being born in the winter months, being brought up in a big city, immigration, childhood head injury, stressful life events and drugs.<sup>266</sup>

People who do not get enough sleep for long periods of time can also experience symptoms of psychosis.

### **2.11.4 Genetics and Psychosis**

A person's DNA contains genes which instruct the body how to make proteins. Proteins are the building blocks of all the different cells in our bodies, including neurotransmitters, receptors and transporters in the brain. When there is a mistake in a gene, it is called a mutation. Mutations are common and everyone has some. Because genes contain the instructions on how to make these proteins, the ones with mistakes can produce proteins that may not perform their functions as well as they should. When a mutation occurs in a gene that contains the instructions for a brain protein, like a neurotransmitter, it may contribute to a chemical imbalance in the brain, which is one of the factors in the development of psychosis.<sup>267</sup>

Psychosis is classically associated with schizophrenia disorders. The major psychotic illnesses of schizophrenia and bipolar disorder show patterns of family history, as they are

---

<sup>265</sup> Ibid.

<sup>266</sup> Psychosis Sucks, What Causes Psychosis? [Online] Available from: <http://www.psychosissucks.ca/whatcausespsychosis.cfm> [Accessed: 7 April 2014]

<sup>267</sup> Ibid.

among the most heritable common disorders. Research has found that these two disorders may share a common genetic cause. Molecular genetic research also suggests that schizophrenia may overlap with developmental disorders such as autism.

### **2.11.5 Brain Changes and Psychosis**

There are structural and chemical changes in the brains of people with a psychotic disorder. Alterations in brain structure and changes in dopamine neurotransmission (a chemical important for communication between brain cells) are found in people who have psychosis. The dopamine changes are directly related to hallucinations and delusions. Dopamine levels are thought to be too high during psychosis and to affect the memory, emotions, the social behaviour and the self-awareness.

*See Chapter 1 – The Anatomization of the Human Brain*

### **2.11.6 Signs and Symptoms of Psychosis**

Psychosis is a symptom rather than a medical condition. It is not itself a psychiatric diagnosis, but a sign of a mental disorder. Psychotic symptoms may be separated out and given specific descriptions.

The classic hallmarks of psychosis are hallucinations and delusions.

*Hallucinations* are from hearing, seeing or feeling things that do not exist; perceptions without external stimuli. Hallucinations can affect any of the senses (sight, sound, smell, taste and touch) in the person with psychosis, but in about two-thirds of patients with schizophrenia, hallucinations are auditory – hearing things and believing them to be real when they do not exist, as there is no actual external noise to produce the stimulus. The following auditory hallucinations are common in schizophrenia: hearing several voices talking, often negatively, about the patient; a voice giving a commentary on what the patient is doing; or a voice repeating what the patient is thinking.

*Delusions* are false beliefs, especially based on fear or suspicion of things that are not real. Delusions are defined as beliefs that are not supported by the cultural or religious context,

with clear evidence that they are false; nevertheless, they are strong convictions that the patient believes whole-heartedly. The type of delusion differentiates the psychosis of schizophrenia from that of other delusional disorders. Two types of delusions are defined: (1) non-bizarre delusions include false but feasible beliefs, and (2) bizarre delusions which include the impossible, such as contrary to the laws of physics.

Bizarre delusions are experienced during psychosis. Examples of psychotic delusions include the paranoid type, more likely to be associated with schizophrenia, and delusions of grandeur. Paranoid delusions may cause the person with psychosis to be unduly suspicious of individuals or organisations, believing them to be plotting to cause them harm. Such delusions can be very frightening and may result in unusual behaviour to avoid things (for example, staying out of a room with certain devices in it, believing them to be controlling thoughts, or locking up the front door with an excessive number of padlocks). Delusions of grandeur are clearly false but strongly held beliefs in having a special power or authority (the person with psychosis may, as examples, believe that they are a world leader, very rich, that they are able to bring dead people back to life, or that they can control the weather).

While the classic hallmarks of psychosis are hallucinations and delusions, other symptoms persist in disorders such as schizophrenia, known as negative symptoms; that is, cognitive and motivational impairments, which can be disabling and do not respond to drug treatment. Psychotic symptoms in disorders such as schizophrenia may also include disorganised thought, speech or behaviour, disordered thinking (jumping between unrelated topics, making strange connections between thoughts), and catatonia (unresponsiveness).

Depending on the cause, psychosis can come on quickly or slowly. The same is the case in schizophrenia, although symptoms are more likely to have a slow onset and begin with milder psychosis, which in some cases does not convert to the full disorder. In those people who do go on to display clear-cut psychosis, the slow onset, or prodromal phase of schizophrenia, is often found later to have been unrecognised by the patient or their families and friends. Prodromal (an early symptom indicating the onset of an attack or a disease) psychosis goes on untreated for an average of two years, and even fully psychotic symptoms can be untreated for a number of years, too. The milder initial symptoms of psychosis might include feelings of suspicion, distorted perceptions, depression and suicidal feelings, obsessive thinking and sleep problems.

To increase the chances of early detection, guidance for healthcare systems drawn up by psychiatrists recommend that the possibility of a psychotic disorder should be carefully considered in a young person who is becoming more socially withdrawn, performing worse for a sustained period at school or work, or becoming more distressed or agitated and yet is unable to explain why.

Whatever the phase of psychosis presented to doctors, the diagnosis of a psychotic illness such as schizophrenia or bipolar disorder cannot be made with any specific single test. There is no biological test for psychosis itself, and when laboratory tests are run, it is because they may rule out other medical problems that provide an alternative explanation.<sup>268</sup>

### 2.11.7 Changes for People to Develop Psychosis

Psychosis is common. Schizophrenia affects about 1% of the general population, bipolar disorder affects about 1-2% of the general population, and major depression affects about 5-10% of the general population. However, studies show that the chances for developing many types of psychosis are higher for family members of people with a psychosis.

The following statistics show the chances of a person who has a brother, sister or parent with one of the following disorders, developing these disorders themselves.<sup>269</sup>

	Chances to develop	Chances to not develop
Major Depression	15 to 30%	70 to 85%
Panic Disorder	17%	83%
Schizophrenia	10 to 15%	90%

## 2.12. THE TREATMENT OF PSYCHOSIS IN GENERAL

Pharmacological treatment with a class of drugs known as antipsychotics is the mainstay of therapy for people with a psychotic illness. Antipsychotics are effective at reducing psychosis

---

<sup>268</sup> Medical News Today. What Cause Psychotic Symptoms? [Online] Available from: <http://www.medicalnewstoday.com/articles/248159.php> [Accessed: 7 April 2014]

<sup>269</sup> Psychosis Sucks, What Causes Psychosis? [Online] Available from: <http://www.psychosissucks.ca/whatcausespsychosis.cfm> [Accessed: 7 April 2014]

symptoms in psychiatric disorders such as schizophrenia, but they do not themselves treat or cure underlying psychotic illnesses.<sup>270</sup> Neuroleptic malignant syndrome (NMS), a dangerous condition with high fever, muscular rigidity, rapid pulse, sweating, and altered mental states may occur with antipsychotic medication.<sup>271</sup>

Phenothiazines antipsychotic drugs work by inhibiting the actions of the brain chemicals, dopamine and norepinephrine, which apparently are overproduced in individuals with psychosis. Phenothiazines may cause many side effects. The following more common side effects are grouped by the body system affected<sup>272</sup>:

- *Cardiovascular*: decreases of blood pressure, especially on arising, which may cause dizziness or fainting, rapid heart rate, changes in heart rhythm and electrocardiogram.
- *Nervous system*: sedation, muscle spasms of the head and neck, muscle rigidity, restlessness, tremors, slowed movement, shuffling gait and increased seizure tendency.
- *Digestive system*: dry mouth, nausea, constipation and abnormal liver tests.
- *Autonomic*: blurred vision, nasal congestion, reduced sweating, difficulty urinating, problems with ejaculation and impotence.
- *Hormonal*: lactation and breast enlargement.
- *Skin*: rashes and sensitivity to sunlight.
- *Body as a whole*: weight gain.

Examples of antipsychotics drugs for the treatment of Psychosis in psychiatrics are as follows:

**Chlorpromazine:** It is a member of the phenothiazine family of compounds and is used to alleviate the symptoms and signs of psychosis. It is principally used to reduce the signs and symptoms of psychosis. For this purpose, the drug is used in schizophrenia and the manic phase of bipolar (formerly manic-depressive) disorder. The drug is also used in the management of severe behavioural disorders with aggression, combativeness or excessive excitability. Chlorpromazine may sometimes be used as a sedative in non-psychotic patients with excessive anxiety and agitation. In addition, the drug has been used to relieve nausea, vomiting and persistent hiccups. Elderly patients (those over age 65), especially women, and

---

<sup>270</sup> Medical News Today. What Cause Psychotic Symptoms? [Online] Available from: <http://www.medicalnewstoday.com/articles/248159.php> [Accessed: 7 April 2014]

<sup>271</sup> Encyclopedia of Mental Disorders, Chlorpromazine [Online] Available from: <http://www.minddisorders.com/Br-Del/Chlorpromazine.html> [Accessed: 27 June 2014]

<sup>272</sup> Ibid.

patients receiving long-term antipsychotic treatment are prone to develop tardive dyskinesia.<sup>273</sup>

**Fluphenazine:** A phenothiazine antipsychotic sold under the brand names Permitil and Prolixin among other. Fluphenazine is a drug used to treat psychotic disorders, agitation, and dementia.<sup>274</sup>

**Thioridazine:** A potent anti-anxiety and phenothiazine antipsychotic agent. It is sold under the brand name of Mellaril and is also available under its generic name. It reduces excitement, abnormal levels of energy, excessive movements (hypermotility) and agitation. The drug is also useful in the short-term treatment of depression that accompanies anxiety, sleep disturbances, agitation and tension. Thioridazine is used in short-term treatment of children who display seriously inappropriate responses to exciting stimuli. Thioridazine is used in treating anxiety and psychosis. When used for the treatment of schizophrenia, thioridazine reduces symptoms of emotional withdrawal, anxiety, tension, hallucinations, and suspiciousness. It is often used to treat children who have impulsive conduct, difficulty in maintaining attention, or show high levels of aggression or have poor tolerance for frustration when other drugs have failed.<sup>275</sup>

**Perphenazine:** It is a phenothiazine antipsychotic used to treat serious mental and psychotic disorders. It has also been used to treat severe nausea and vomiting. It is sold under the brand name Trilafon and is also available under its generic name. Persons who take perphenazine should not stop taking the drug abruptly. Instead, the dose should be decreased gradually prior to stopping.<sup>276</sup>

## **2.13. DISQUALIFYING CONDITIONS FOR PSYCHOSIS**

The following are medicine, drugs, diseases, disorders or illnesses that display psychotic symptoms but are not considered to fall within the psychosis family. Many times these are incorrectly diagnosed as psychotic disorders.

---

<sup>273</sup> Ibid.

<sup>274</sup> Encyclopedia of Mental Disorders, Fluphenazine [Online] Available from: <http://www.minddisorders.com/Flu-Inv/Fluphenazine.html> [Accessed: 27 June 2014]

<sup>275</sup> Encyclopedia of Mental Disorders, Thioridazine [Online] Available from: <http://www.minddisorders.com/Flu-Inv/Thioridazine.html> [Accessed: 27 June 2014]

<sup>276</sup> Encyclopedia of Mental Disorders, Perphenazine [Online] Available from: <http://www.minddisorders.com/Ob-Ps/Perphenazine.html> [Accessed: 27 June 2014]

### **2.13.1 Manic and Mixed Episode**

A discrete period lasting a week or more during which a person experiences mania, an abnormally elevated, cheerful or euphoric mood is called a manic episode. A person experiencing a manic episode shows persistent and often inappropriate enthusiasm which may involve taking on new projects for which he is ill-suited. It might also involve engaging strangers in detailed conversations, acting without concern for consequences of one's actions or increased sexual activities. On average, the episodes begin before age 25. This means that some individuals experience their first episode while in their teens and others during middle age.

Many of these symptoms are also present in a hypomanic episode. A hypomanic episode is similar to a manic episode, but the symptoms may be experienced to a lesser extent. The main differences between a manic and hypomanic episode are the following:

- A hypomanic episode may only last four days, whereas a manic episode, by definition, lasts one week.
- In a manic episode, psychotic features (hallucinations and delusions) may be present, but in a hypomanic episode, they cannot be.
- A manic episode significantly impairs the affected person's functions, but a hypomanic episode does not.

Both of these kinds of episodes may be seen in patients with bipolar disorder.<sup>277</sup>

A mixed episode is a discrete period during which a person experiences nearly daily fluctuations in mood that qualify for diagnoses of manic episode and major depressive episode. Over the course of at least one week, the mood of a person experiencing a mixed episode will rapidly change between abnormal happiness or euphoria to sadness or irritability. To qualify for a diagnosis of mixed episode, symptoms must be severe enough to interfere with an individual's ability to carry out daily routines at work or home, or to require hospitalisation. Males may be more susceptible to this condition than females. Young people and those over 60 years of age with bipolar disorder may be more prone to mixed episodes than others.

---

<sup>277</sup> Encyclopedia of Mental Disorders, Manic Episode [Online] Available from: <http://www.minddisorders.com/Kau-Nu/Manic-episode.html> [Accessed: 27 June 2014]



If any episode (manic, hypomanic and mixed) can be attributed to side effects related to any medical treatment, medical condition, medication, or drugs of abuse, it is not classified as an episode.<sup>278</sup>

### **2.13.2 Spiritual Crisis**

Spiritual crisis or spiritual emergency is recognised as a distinct psychological disorder that involves a person's relationship with a transcendent being or force; it might be accompanied by assumptions related to meaning or purpose in life. The disorder may be accompanied by any combination of the following symptoms, including feelings of depression, despair, loneliness; loss of energy or chronic exhaustion not linked to a physical disorder; loss of control over one's personal or professional life; unusual sensitivity to light, sound and other environmental factors; anger, frustration, lack of patience; loss of identity, purpose and meaning; withdrawal from life's everyday routines; feelings of madness and insanity; a sense of abandonment by God; feelings of inadequacy; estrangement from family and friends; loss of attention span, self-confidence and self-esteem; and frequent bouts of spontaneous crying and weeping.

As fundamental beliefs are brutally strained and the rules that previously guided a person's life are nullified, distress builds, until he is challenged to deal with the crisis. In this effort some individuals will rely on long-held religious beliefs for guidance; some will embark on a spiritual quest in search of newer ways of finding meaning in life; some will reject religion and become bitter; and some will turn to philanthropic and other care-giving activities in the struggle to find solace and a renewed sense of purpose.<sup>279</sup>

### **2.13.3 Ganer Syndrome**

Ganser syndrome is a rare disorder (approximately 100 documented cases worldwide) that has been variously categorised as a factitious disorder or a dissociative disorder. It is named for a German psychiatrist, Sigbert Ganser, who first described it in 1898 from an examination

---

<sup>278</sup> Encyclopedia of Mental Disorders, Mixed Episode [Online] Available from: <http://www.minddisorders.com/Kau-Nu/Mixed-episode.html> [Accessed: 27 June 2014]

<sup>279</sup> Encyclopedia of Dying and Death, Spiritual Crisis [Online] Available from: <http://www.deathreference.com/Sh-Sy/Spiritual-Crisis.html> [Accessed: 7 July 2014]

of male prisoners who were thought to be psychotic. Ganser syndrome is used to describe dissociative symptoms and the pretending of psychosis that occur in forensic settings.<sup>280</sup>

There are four symptoms regarded as diagnostic of Ganser syndrome<sup>281</sup>:

- *Vorbeireden*: A German word that means talking beside the point', it refers to a type of approximate answer to an examiner's questions that may appear silly but usually indicates that the patient understands the question. If examiner asks how many legs a dog has, the patient may answer, for example, "Five".
- *Clouding of consciousness*: The patient is drowsy or inattentive.
- *Conversion symptoms*: These are physical symptoms produced by unconscious psychological issues rather than diagnosable medical causes. A common conversion symptom is temporary paralysis of an arm or leg.
- *Hallucinations*.

#### **2.13.4 Energy Therapies**

Energy therapy is a collective term to refer to a variety of alternative and complementary treatments based on the use, modification or manipulation of energy fields. Most energy therapies presuppose or accept the theory that matter and energy are not exclusive opposites, but that matter is simply a denser form of energy that is more easily perceived by the senses. Some energy therapies are associated with systems of traditional Indian or Chinese medicine; others draw upon contemporary scientific theories. Energy therapies can be into two groups: (1) those that utilise energy fields located in, affecting, or emanating from the human body (bio-field therapies); and (2) those that use electromagnetic fields in unconventional ways. In addition, there are energy therapies that combine bio-field therapy with some aspects of bodywork – Breema, polarity therapy, and qigong are examples of this combined approach.

Energy therapies are all associated with New Age belief systems. Some forms of energy therapy may produce unexpected or startling psychological reactions. For example, Kundalini in Indian yoga sometimes produces experiences of spiritual crisis that may be interpreted by mainstream psychiatrists as symptoms of schizophrenia or another psychotic

---

<sup>280</sup> Encyclopedia of Mental Disorders, Factitious Disorder [Online] Available from: <http://www.minddisorders.com/Del-Fi/Factitious-disorder.html> [Accessed: 27 June 2014]

<sup>281</sup> Ibid.

disorder. Instances of patients feeling tingling sensations, spaciness, an out of body sensation and sudden warmth have also been reported in other energy therapies.<sup>282</sup>

### **2.13.5 Pervasive Developmental Disorders**

Pervasive developmental disorders are a group of conditions originating in childhood that involve serious impairment in several areas, including physical, behavioural, cognitive, social and language development. Pervasive developmental disorders (PDDs) are thought to be genetically based, with no evidence linking them to environmental factors; their incidence in the general population is estimated at 1%. The most serious PDD is autism, a condition characterised by severely impaired social interaction, communication, and abstract thought, and often manifested by stereotyped and repetitive behaviour patterns. Many children who are diagnosed with PDDs today would have been labelled psychotic or schizophrenic in the past. In general, the prognosis in each of these conditions is tied to the severity of the illness.<sup>283</sup>

Besides autism, there are several other conditions as PDDs<sup>284</sup>:

**Rett's disorder:** Characterised by physical, mental and social impairment, this syndrome appears between the ages of five months and four years in children whose development has been normal up to that point. Occurring only in girls, it involves impairment of coordination, repetitive movements, a slowing of head growth, and severe or profound mental retardation, as well as impaired social and communication skills.

**Childhood disintegrative disorder:** This disorder is marked by the deterioration of previously acquired physical, social and communication skills after at least two years of normal development. More common in males than females, it first appears between the ages of two and 10 (usually at three or four years of age) and many of its symptoms resemble those of autism. Other names for this disorder are Heller's syndrome, dementia infantilis and disintegrative psychosis. It sometimes appears in conjunction with a medical condition such as Schilder's disease, but usually no organic cause can be found.

---

<sup>282</sup> Encyclopedia of Mental Disorders, Energy Therapies [Online] Available from: <http://www.minddisorders.com/DeI-Fi/Energy-therapies.html> [Accessed: 27 June 2014]

<sup>283</sup> Encyclopedia of Mental Disorders, Pervasive Developmental Disorder [Online] Available from: <http://www.minddisorders.com/Ob-Ps/Pervasive-developmental-disorders.html> [Accessed: 27 June 2014]

<sup>284</sup> Ibid.

**Asperger's disorder:** Children with this disorder have many of the same social and behavioural impairments as autism, except for difficulties with language. They lack normal tools of social interaction, such as the ability to meet someone else's gaze, use appropriate body language and gestures, or react to another person's thoughts and feelings. Behavioural impairments include the repetitive, stereotyped motions and rigid adherence to routines that are characteristic of autism. Like childhood disintegrative disorder, Asperger's disorder is more common in males than females.

## **2.14. FREQUENTLY ASKED QUESTIONS**

### **2.14.1 If I develop psychotic symptoms, do I have a mental illness?**

Psychosis is when a person loses touch with reality and has confused thoughts, perceptions, emotions and behaviour, with symptoms that include disturbing delusions and hallucinations. Psychotic symptoms can occur in an isolated episode or as part of an ongoing diagnosed illness such as schizophrenia, bipolar disorder, depression, psychosis or schizoaffective disorder. Three in every 100 people will experience a psychotic episode. Many recover fully. Like any other illness, psychosis can happen to anyone. Some experiences of psychosis are isolated episodes, especially substance-induced psychosis and brief reactive psychosis.

Sometimes a first episode can be triggered by the use of drugs (substance-induced psychosis) including heroin, cocaine, alcohol, marijuana, amphetamines (speed) and benzodiazepines. Drug-induced psychosis will subside once the drugs or alcohol is out of the person's system.

### **2.14.2 What are the more common mental illnesses?**

*Schizophrenia.* A cognitive disorder with symptoms including delusions, hallucinations, disorganised thought, speech or behaviour, and a flattening of emotions.

*Bipolar mood disorder.* People with bipolar mood disorder experience recurrent episodes of depressed and elated moods. Both can be mild to severe. The term 'mania' is used to describe the most severe state of extreme elation and over-activity.

**Schizoaffective disorder.** This is an illness that displays some of the psychotic symptoms of schizophrenia along with the mood extremes associated with bipolar disorder.

## 2.15. THE BIBLE AND MADNESS

### 2.15.1 Introduction

What is called mental illness today has not historically always been treated as a medical problem. In the not-too-distant past, the abnormal thoughts, feelings and behaviours often associated with these disorders were thought to be signs of personal weakness, something of which to be ashamed. Unfortunately this is still a far-too-common perception in the church<sup>285</sup> today, resulting in the alienation of thousands who desperately need the spiritual support that only the body of Christ can provide<sup>286</sup>.

Originally madness simply meant a person who has *sudden, unpredictable, wild outbursts of uncontrollable anger for no apparent reason accompanied with delusion and paranoia*.<sup>287</sup>

### 2.15.2 Old Testament

Hebrew words referring to insanity/madness in the Old Testament are:

- *shaga*, 7696 “to be mad”
- *shiggaon*, 7697 “madness”
- *timmahown*, 8541 “confusion, mental illness”
- *mehumah*, 4103 “confusion, panic”
- *taam*, 2940 “discretion, discernment and good judgment [lack of]”
- *halal*, 1984 “shining, boastful, madness”
- *hamam*, 2000 “confuse, discomfort, vex, trouble, destroy, discomfort”

---

<sup>285</sup> Etymology: Church: Christians collectively,” from Proto-Germanic *\*kirika* (cognates: Old Saxon *kirika*, Old Norse *kirkja*, Old Frisian *zerke*, Middle Dutch *kerke*, Dutch *kerk*, Old High German *kirihha*, German *Kirche*): [www.etymology.com](http://www.etymology.com)

<sup>286</sup> Stanford, M S (2008) Grace for the Afflicted - Viewing Mental Illness Through the Eyes of Faith. Inter-Varsity Press: US, p. 46

<sup>287</sup> Rudd, S, Mental Illness in the Bible [Online] Available from: <http://www.bible.ca/psychiatry/psychiatry-mental-illness-bible-hebrew-greek-word-study-insanity-madness.htm> [Accessed: 7 April 2014]

Parallel passages: that use mad [shiggaon, 7697] and bewilderment [timmahown, 8541] interchangeably:

Deuteronomy 28:27-29	The Lord will smite you with	Madness (men)	bewilderment (men)
Zechariah 12:4	will strike you with	Madness (horses)	bewilderment (men)

### Hebrew shaga, 7696 “to be mad”

The Hebrew word *shaga* can be defined as “*be mad, like a maniac, i.e., to think irrationally and not be in a right state of mind ... carries on like a madman*”.<sup>288</sup> Etymologically, the root has been connected with Arabic “*the (ceaseless) cooing of pigeons*”, or Assyrian “*to howl, rage*”.<sup>289</sup>

Deuteronomy 28:34	You shall be <b>driven mad</b> [shaga, 7696] by the sight of what you see.
1 Samuel 21:12-15	<i>David took these words to heart and greatly feared Achish king of Gath. So he disguised his <b>sanity</b> [taam, 2940] before them, and acted <b>insanely</b> [halal, 1984] in their hands, and scribbled on the doors of the gate, and let his saliva run down into his beard. Then Achish said to his servants, Behold, you see the man behaving as a madman [shaga, 7696]. Why do you bring him to me? Do I lack madmen [shaga, 7696], that you have brought this one to act the <b>madman</b> [shaga, 7696] in my presence? Shall this one come into my house?</i>
Jeremiah 29:26	<i>The Lord has made you priest instead of Jehoiada the priest, to be the overseer in the house of the Lord over every <b>madman</b> [shaga, 7696] who prophesies, to put him in the stocks and in the iron collar,</i>
2 Kings 9:11	<i>Now Jehu came out to the servants of his master, and one said to him, Is all well? Why did this <b>mad</b> [shaga, 7696] fellow come to you?” And he said to them, You know very well the man and his talk.</i>
Hosea 9:7	<i>The days of punishment have come, The days of retribution have come; Let Israel know this! The prophet is a fool, The inspired man is <b>mad</b> [shaga, 7696], Because of the grossness of your iniquity, And because your hostility is so great.</i>

### Hebrew shiggaon, 7697 “madness”

The Hebrew word *shiggaon* can be defined as “*madness, i.e., an irrational state of not having a right mind, and so capable of erratic behaviour similar to panic*”<sup>290</sup>.

<sup>288</sup> Swanson, J (1997) Dictionary of Biblical Languages with Semantic Domain Hebrew, 7696

<sup>289</sup> Harris, L H and WALTKE, B K (2003) Theological Wordbook of the Old Testament. Moody Press, p. 905

<sup>290</sup> Swanson, J (1997) Dictionary of Biblical Languages with Semantic Domain Hebrew, 7697

Etymologically the root has been connected with Arabic “the (ceaseless) cooing of pigeons,” or Assyrian “to howl, rage”.<sup>291</sup>

Deuteronomy 28:27-29	<i>"The Lord will smite you with the boils of Egypt and with tumors and with the scab and with the itch, from which you cannot be healed. "The Lord will smite you with <b>madness</b> [shiggaon, 7697] and with blindness and with <b>bewilderment</b> ["timmahown", 8541] of heart; and you will grope at noon, as the blind man gropes in darkness, and you will not prosper in your ways; but you shall only be oppressed and robbed continually, with none to save you.</i>
Zechariah 12:4	<i>In that day, declares the Lord, I will strike every horse with <b>bewilderment</b> ["timmahown", 8541] and his rider with <b>madness</b> [shiggaon, 2328]. But I will watch over the house of Judah, while I strike every horse of the peoples with blindness</i>
2 Kings 9:20	<i>The watchman reported, "He came even to them, and he did not return; and the driving is like the driving of Jehu the son of Nimshi, for he drives like a <b>mad</b> man. [shiggaon, 2328].</i>

### Hebrew Timmahown, 8541 “confusion, mental illness”

The Hebrew word *timmahown* can be defined as “(timahown lebab) mental illness, formally, confusion of the heart, i.e., a physical condition of weakness of the mind, and so a person is in a confused condition and unable to respond normally and naturally to his daily condition”.<sup>292</sup> Etymologically the root meaning is “be astounded, dumbfounded, bewildered” with an element of fear, whether because of an amazing or fearful sight.<sup>293</sup>

Deuteronomy 28:27-29	<i>The Lord will smite you with the boils of Egypt and with tumors and with the scab and with the itch, from which you cannot be healed. "The Lord will smite you with <b>madness</b> [shiggaon, 7697] and with blindness and with <b>bewilderment</b> ["timmahown", 8541] of heart; and you will grope at noon, as the blind man gropes in darkness, and you will not prosper in your ways; but you shall only be oppressed and robbed continually, with none to save you.</i>
Zechariah 12:4	<i>In that day," declares the Lord, "I will strike every horse with <b>bewilderment</b> ["timmahown", 8541] and his rider with <b>madness</b> [shiggaon, 2328]. But I will watch over the house of Judah, while I strike every horse of the peoples with blindness.</i>

### Hebrew mehumah, 4103 “confusion, panic”

The Hebrew word *mehumah* can be defined as “confusion, i.e., a state of discomfort (uncomfortableness) and consternation because one is not understanding a situation,

<sup>291</sup> Harris, L H and WALTKE, B K (2003) Theological Wordbook of the Old Testament. Moody Press, p. 905

<sup>292</sup> Swanson, J (1997) Dictionary of Biblical Languages with Semantic Domain Hebrew, 8541

<sup>293</sup> Harris, L H and WALTKE, B K (2003) Theological Wordbook of the Old Testament. Moody Press, p. 905

and so implying turmoil and panic.”<sup>294</sup> Etymologically the root meaning is “destruction, discomfiture, trouble, tumult, vexed, vexation”.<sup>295</sup>

Deuteronomy 7:23	<i>But the Lord your God will deliver them before you, and will throw them into great <b>confusion</b> [mehumah, 4103] until they are destroyed.</i>
Deuteronomy 28:20	<i>The Lord will send upon you curses, <b>confusion</b> [mehumah, 4103], and rebuke, in all you undertake to do, until you are destroyed and until you perish quickly, on account of the evil of your deeds, because you have forsaken Me.</i>
1 Samuel 5:9	<i>After they had brought it around, the hand of the Lord was against the city with very great <b>confusion</b> [mehumah, 4103]; and He smote the men of the city, both young and old, so that tumors broke out on them.</i>
1 Samuel 5:11	<i>They sent therefore and gathered all the lords of the Philistines and said, “Send away the ark of the God of Israel, and let it return to its own place, so that it will not kill us and our people.” For there was a deadly <b>confusion</b> [mehumah, 4103] throughout the city; the hand of God was very heavy there.</i>
1 Samuel 14:20	<i>Then Saul and all the people who were with him rallied and came to the battle; and behold, every man’s sword was against his fellow, and there was very great <b>confusion</b> [mehumah, 4103].</i>
Isaiah 22:5	<i>For the Lord God of hosts has a day of panic, subjugation and <b>confusion</b> [mehumah, 4103] In the valley of vision, A breaking down of walls And a crying to the mountain.</i>
Ezekiel 7:7	<i>Your doom has come to you, O inhabitant of the land. The time has come, the day is near—<b>tumult</b> [mehumah, 4103] rather than joyful shouting on the mountains.</i>
Zechariah 14:13	<i>It will come about in that day that a great <b>panic</b> [mehumah, 4103] from the Lord will fall on them; and they will seize one another’s hand, and the hand of one will be lifted against the hand of another.</i>

### Hebrew taam, 2940 “discretion, discernment and good judgment [lack of]”

The Hebrew word *taam* can be defined as “taste, discretion, discernment, i.e., good judgment as a facet of wisdom and capacity for understanding”.<sup>296</sup>

1 Samuel 21:12	<i>So David disguised his <b>sanity</b> [taam, 2940] and acted insanely [shaga, 7696]</i>
Job 12:20	<i>the <b>discernment</b> [taam, 2940] of the elders.</i>
Proverbs 26:16	<i>seven men who can give a <b>discreet</b> [taam, 2940] answer.</i>

### Hebrew halal, 1984 “shining, boastful, madness”

<sup>294</sup> Swanson, J (1997) Dictionary of Biblical Languages with Semantic Domain Hebrew, 4103

<sup>295</sup> Harris, L H and WALTKE, B K (2003) Theological Wordbook of the Old Testament. Moody Press, p. 905

<sup>296</sup> Swanson, J (1997) Dictionary of Biblical Languages with Semantic Domain Hebrew, 2940



The Hebrew word *halal* is a common primitive root meaning shining or praise, but when used in a special “Hebrew intensive” (i.e. voice, tense, mood) is called, “Hithpoel”, it means madness. Amazingly the word “halal” (common form, not the Hebrew intensive “Hithpoel”) is used to describe the king of Babylon, who thought of himself as God in Isaiah 14:12 (morning star/Lucifer KJV).<sup>297</sup> Etymologically the root meaning is “to be boastful, to praise”;<sup>298</sup> (hithpoel) “*mad, insane, i.e. to think in an irrational manner and so behave in kind*”.<sup>299</sup>

1 Samuel 21:12-15	<i>David took these words to heart and greatly feared Achish king of Gath. So he disguised his <b>sanity</b> [taam, 2940] before them, and acted <b>insanely</b> [halal, 1984, Hithpoel] in their hands, and scribbled on the doors of the gate, and let his saliva run down into his beard. Then Achish said to his servants, Behold, you see the man behaving as a <b>madman</b> [shaga, 7696]. Why do you bring him to me? Do I lack <b>madmen</b> [shaga, 7696], that you have brought this one to act the <b>madman</b> [shaga, 7696] in my presence? Shall this one come into my house?</i>
Ecclesiastes 7:7	<i>For oppression makes a wise man <b>mad</b> [halal, 1984, Hithpoel], And a bribe corrupts the heart.</i>
Ecclesiastes 2:2	<i>I said of laughter, It is <b>madness</b> [halal, 1984, Hithpoel], and of pleasure, What does it accomplish?</i>
Jeremiah 25:16	<i>“They will drink and stagger and go <b>mad</b> [halal, 1984, Hithpoel] because of the sword that I will send among them.</i>
Jeremiah 46:9	<i>Go up, you horses, and drive <b>madly</b> [halal, 1984, Hithpoel], you chariots, That the mighty men may march forward: Ethiopia and Put, that handle the shield, And the Lydians, that handle and bend the bow.</i>
Jeremiah 50:38	<i>A drought on her waters, and they will be dried up! For it is a land of idols, And they are <b>mad</b> [halal, 1984, Hithpoel] over fearsome idols.</i>
Jeremiah 51:7	<i>Babylon has been a golden cup in the hand of the Lord, Intoxicating all the earth. The nations have drunk of her wine; Therefore the nations are going <b>mad</b> [halal, 1984, Hithpoel].</i>
Nahum 2:4	<i>The chariots race <b>madly</b> [halal, 1984, Hithpoel] in the streets, They rush wildly in the squares, Their appearance is like torches, They dash to and fro like lightning flashes.</i>
Isaiah 14:12	<i>How you have fallen from heaven, O star [halal, 1984, Lucifer] of the morning, son of the dawn! You have been cut down to the earth, You who have weakened the nations!</i>

<sup>297</sup> Rudd, S, Mental Illness in the Bible [Online] Available from: <http://www.bible.ca/psychiatry/psychiatry-mental-illness-bible-hebrew-greek-word-study-insanity-madness.htm> [Accessed: 7 April 2014]

<sup>298</sup> Ibid.

<sup>299</sup> Swanson, J (1997) Dictionary of Biblical Languages with Semantic Domain Hebrew, 1984

### Hebrew hamam, 2000 “confuse, discomfort, vex, trouble, destroy, discomfort”

Exodus 14:24–25	<i>At the morning watch, the Lord looked down on the army of the Egyptians through the pillar of fire and cloud and brought the army of the Egyptians into <b>confusion</b> [hamam, 2000]. He caused their chariot wheels to swerve, and He made them drive with difficulty; so the Egyptians said, Let us flee from Israel, for the Lord is fighting for them against the Egyptians.</i>
Exodus 23:27-28	<i>I will send My terror ahead of you, and throw into <b>confusion</b> [hamam, 2000] all the people among whom you come, and I will make all your enemies turn their backs to you. “I will send hornets ahead of you so that they will drive out the Hivites, the Canaanites, and the Hittites before you.</i>
Deuteronomy 2:15	<i>Moreover the hand of the Lord was against them, to destroy [hamam, 2000] them from within the camp until they all perished.</i>
Joshua 10:10	<i>And the Lord <b>confounded</b> [hamam, 2000] them before Israel, and He slew them with a great slaughter at Gibeon, and pursued them by the way of the ascent of Beth-horon and struck them as far as Azekah and Makkedah.</i>
2 Samuel 22:15	<i>And He sent out arrows, and scattered them, Lightning, and <b>routed</b> [hamam, 2000] them.</i>
Psalms 144:6	<i>Flash forth lightning and scatter them; Send out Your arrows and <b>confuse</b> [hamam, 2000] them.</i>

### Interchangeability of words for madness used within a single text<sup>300</sup>:

	shaga, 7696 “to be mad” shiggaon, 7697 “madness”	Timmahown, 8541 “confusion, mental illness”	taam, 2940 “lack of discretion, discernment and good judgment”	halal, 1984 “shining, boastful, madness”	mehumah, 4103
Deuteronomy 28:20,27-28,34	X	X			X
Zechariah 12:4	X	X			
1 Samuel 21:12-15	X		X	X	

### Old Testament Notes

Taking the above mentioned Scriptures into consideration, the Bible is clear that God will strike disobedience with madness as a curse. However, exactly how God accomplishes this

<sup>300</sup> Rudd, S, Mental Illness in the Bible [Online] Available from: <http://www.bible.ca/psychiatry/psychiatry-mental-illness-bible-hebrew-greek-word-study-insanity-madness.htm> [Accessed: 7 April 2014]

is unknown. Paranoia, panic and horror were key factors as to why armies would turn on themselves. Whereas Nebuchadnezzar was directly and miraculously stricken by God with insanity, Saul on the other hand, gradually became more psychotic with paranoia and delusion out of jealousy, anger towards David and rebellion to God. When God defeated the armies who attacked Israel, He did so by striking them with madness so that they began to kill each other in a psychotic panic of confusion and delusion.

### 1.12.1 New Testament

Greek words referring to insanity/madness in the New Testament are:

- *existemi*, 1839 “he lost his senses”
- *mainomai*, 3105 “maniac, manic”
- *planē*, 4106 + *energeia*, 1753 “delusion influence/behaviour”
- *paraphronia*, 3913, “madness (from *para*, contrary to, and *phrēn*, the mind)”

All Greek words indicate behaviour that is on the edge of the bell curve of human behaviour.

#### Greek: “existemi”, 1839 “he lost his senses”

*Existemi* literally means, “out of mind” or crazy, “To remove out of a place or state. In the NT applied only to the mind, meaning to be out of one’s mind, beside oneself ... to be transported beyond oneself with astonishment, to be amazed, astounded”.<sup>301</sup> It is a psychological term in the New Testament that applies exclusively to a state of mind. It is clear that ‘existemi’ is the primary word that people used to describe mental illness directly corresponding to the English word ‘crazy’ or ‘nuts’. Most of the time in the New Testament, the word ‘existemi’ is used in a metaphoric sense for astonishment or amazement. The commonly used term ‘crazy’ is therefore used in a metaphoric way: “When I saw that my dad bought me a brand new Ford Mustang for my 16th birthday, I went crazy!”<sup>302</sup>

Mark 6:51	Then Jesus got into the boat with them, and the wind stopped; and they were utterly <i>astonished</i> [ <i>existemi</i> , 1839]
-----------	---------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

<sup>301</sup> Zodhiates, S (1992) The Complete Word Study Dictionary: New Testament. AMG Publishers, 1839

<sup>302</sup> Rudd, S, Mental Illness in the Bible [Online] Available from: <http://www.bible.ca/psychiatry/psychiatry-mental-illness-bible-hebrew-greek-word-study-insanity-madness.htm> [Accessed: 7 April 2014]

[Existemi, 1839] with reference to the mind: “of that alteration of the normal condition by which the person is thrown into a state of surprise or fear, or both; or again, in which a person is so transported out of his natural state that he falls into a trance.”<sup>303</sup> The Enhanced Strong’s Lexicon defines “extreme” as “to throw out of position, displace. 1a to amaze, to astonish, throw into wonderment. 1b to be amazed, astounded. 1c to be out of one’s mind, besides one’s self, insane.”<sup>304</sup>

Mark 3:21-22	When His (Jesus’) own people heard of this, they went out to take custody of Him; for they were saying, “He has <b>lost His senses</b> [existemi, 1839] The scribes who came down from Jerusalem were saying, “He is possessed by Beelzebul,” and “He casts out the demons by the ruler of the demons.
2 Corinthians 5:13	For if we are <b>mad</b> [existemi, 1839], it is for God; if we are of sound mind, it is for you.
Mark 5:42	Immediately the girl got up and began to walk, for she was twelve years old. And immediately they were completely <b>astounded</b> [existemi, 1839].
Acts 2:7	They were <b>amazed</b> [existemi, 1839] and astonished, saying, “Why, are not all these who are speaking Galileans?

### Greek mainomai, 3105 “maniac, manic”

Origin of English word, *maniac*, “*Manic - depression*”. Mania is defined as: “An excessively intense enthusiasm, interest, or desire”.<sup>305</sup> Example: continually warning every fellow guest at a party that aliens are coming will get one labelled insane just the same as if you would warn that Jesus Christ is coming.

Acts 26:24-25	While Paul was saying this in his defense, Festus said in a loud voice, Paul, you are <b>out of your mind</b> [mainomai, 3105]! Your great learning is driving you <b>mad</b> [mainomai, 3105]. But Paul said, I am not <b>out of my mind</b> [mainomai, 3105], most excellent Festus, but I utter words of sober truth.
Acts 12:15	They said to Rhonda, “You are <b>out of your mind</b> [mainomai, 3105]!” But Rhonda kept insisting that it was so. They kept saying, “It is Peter’s angel.
Acts 12:16	They said to Rhonda, “You are <b>out of your mind</b> [mainomai, 3105]!” But Rhonda kept insisting that it was so. They kept saying, It is Peter’s angel. Acts 12:15 (Note: “But Peter continued knocking; and when they had opened the door, they saw him and went <b>crazy</b> [existemi, 1839].
John 10:20	Many of them were saying, “He (Jesus) has a demon and is <b>insane</b> [mainomai,

---

<sup>303</sup> Ibid.

<sup>304</sup> Ibid.

<sup>305</sup> Ibid.

	3105]. Why do you listen to Him?
1 Corinthians 14:23	Therefore if the whole church assembles together and all speak in tongues, and ungifted men or unbelievers enter, will they not say that you are <b>mad</b> [mainomai, 3105]?

**Greek plane, 4106 + energeia, 1753 "delusion influence/behaviour"**

Matthew 27:64	Therefore, give orders for the grave to be made secure until the third day, otherwise His disciples may come and steal Him away and say to the people, 'He has risen from the dead,' and the last <b>deception</b> [planē, 4106] will be worse than the first.
Romans 1:27	and in the same way also the men abandoned the natural function of the woman and burned in their desire toward one another, men with men committing indecent acts and receiving in their own persons the due penalty of their <b>error</b> [planē, 4106].
Ephesians 4:14	As a result, we are no longer to be children, tossed here and there by waves and carried about by every wind of doctrine, by the trickery of men, by craftiness in <b>deceitful</b> [planē, 4106] scheming
1 Thessalonians 2:3	For our exhortation does not come from error or impurity or by way of deceit
2 Thessalonians 2:11	For this reason God will send upon them a <b>deluding</b> [planē, 4106] <b>influence</b> [energeia, 1753] so that they will believe what is false
James 5:20	let him know that he who turns a sinner from the <b>error</b> [planē, 4106] of his way will save his soul from death and will cover a multitude of sins.
2 Peter 2:18	For speaking out arrogant words of vanity they entice by fleshly desires, by sensuality, those who barely escape from the ones who live in <b>error</b> [planē, 4106]
2 Peter 3:17	You therefore, beloved, knowing this beforehand, be on your guard so that you are not carried away by the <b>error</b> [planē, 4106] of unprincipled men and fall from your own steadfastness
1 John 4:6	We are from God; he who knows God listens to us; he who is not from God does not listen to us. By this we know the spirit of truth and the spirit of <b>error</b> [planē, 4106].
Jude 11	Woe to them! For they have gone the way of Cain, and for pay they have rushed headlong into the <b>error</b> [planē, 4106] of Balaam, and perished in the rebellion of Korah.

## Greek paraphronia, 3913, "madness (from para, contrary to, and phrēn, the mind)"

2 Peter 2:15-16	<i>forsaking the right way, they have gone astray, having followed the way of Balaam, the son of Beor, who loved the wages of unrighteousness; but he received a rebuke for his own transgression, for a mute donkey, speaking with a voice of a man, restrained the <b>madness</b> [paraphronia, 3913] of the prophet.</i>
-----------------	-----------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------------

### Interchangeability of words for madness used within a single text<sup>306</sup>:

	existemi, 1839 "lost senses"	mainomai, 3105 "maniac, manic"
Acts 12:16	X	X

Individuals displaying abnormal thoughts and behaviours, the mentally ill, were clearly known throughout biblical history. Today those same abnormal thoughts and behaviours have been categorised into a set of specific mental disorders for which many effective interventions and treatments have been developed. Mental health research and practice have made significant strides in relieving the mental and physical suffering of those afflicted with mental illness. Yet there continues to be a high level of suspicion, distrust and even fear in the church when it comes to psychology and psychiatry. The simple fact is that Christians develop mental illness at the same rate as seen in the general population; admonitions such as "You need to pray more" or "This is just the result of a lack of faith" are ineffective in dealing with this very real problem<sup>307</sup>.

### 2.15.3 Summary

#### Insanity [NAVE]<sup>308</sup>:

David pretended to be insane in 1 Samuel 21:13-15.

God sent insanity as a judgment in Deuteronomy 28:28 and Zechariah 12:4.

Nebuchadnezzar's insanity in Daniel 4:32-34.

Jesus is accused of being insane in Mark 3:21 and John 10:20.

Paul is accused of insanity by over study in Acts 26:24, 25.

Insanity is cured by Jesus in Matthews 4:24; 17:15.

Demoniacal insanity found in Saul according to 1 Samuel 16:14; 18:10.

#### Madness [EBD]<sup>309</sup>

<sup>306</sup> Ibid.

<sup>307</sup> Stanford, M S (2008) Grace for the Afflicted - Viewing Mental Illness Through the Eyes of Faith. Inter-Varsity Press: US, p. 47

<sup>308</sup> NetBible, Insanity [Online] Available from: <http://classic.net.bible.org/dictionary.php?word=Insanity> [Accessed: 17 May 2014]

This word is used in its proper sense in Deuteronomy 28:34, John 10:20 and 1 Corinthians 14:23. It also denotes a reckless state of mind arising from various causes, as over-study (Ecclesiastics 1:17; 2:12), blind rage (Luke 6:11), or a depraved temper (Ecclesiastics 7:25; 9:3; 2 Peter 2:16).

### **Madness [SMITH]<sup>310</sup>**

In Scripture, madness is recognised as a derangement proceeding either from weakness and misdirection of intellect or from ungovernable violence of passion. In John 10:20 madness is expressly connected with demoniacal possession by the Jews in their cavil against our Lord; in none is it referred to any physical causes.

### **MAD; MADNESS [ISBE]<sup>311</sup> (halal, shagha`; mania)**

#### **Old Testament**

These words and derivatives from the same roots are used to express various conditions of mental derangement. Though usually translated 'mad' or 'madness' they are often used for temporary conditions to which one would scarcely apply them today except as common colloquial inaccuracies.

#### **New Testament**

In the New Testament the word 'lunatic' (seleniazomenoi) (Matthew 4:24; 17:15 KJV) is correctly rendered in the Revised Version (British and American) as 'epileptic'. Undoubtedly many of the demoniacs were persons suffering from insanity. The words 'mad' or 'madness' occur eight times, but usually in the sense of paroxysms of passion, excitement and foolishness. It is still the belief among the fellahin (a peasant in Arabic-speaking countries) that lunatics are people inspired by spirits, good or evil, and it is probable that all persons showing mental derangement would naturally be described as 'possessed', so that, without entering into the vexed question of demoniacal possession, any cases of insanity cured by our Lord or the apostles would naturally be classed in the same category.

---

<sup>309</sup> NetBible, Madness [Online] Available from: <http://classic.net.bible.org/dictionary.php?word=Madness> [Accessed: 17 May 2014]

<sup>310</sup> Ibid.

<sup>311</sup> Ibid.

## 2.16. SYMBOLISM ASSOCIATED WITH INSANITY

SYMBOLISM is the practice of giving special meaning to objects, things, relationships or events. It is a universal language that through the meaning of the symbol speaks to all mankind irrespective of race and language. The following are all symbols associated with insanity or madness.

### 2.16.1 Star of Insanity

The symbol of insanity consists of a candle (whose flame sucks light from its surroundings rather than giving off light, effectively giving off darkness) within a five-pointed star within an incomplete circle (reminiscent of a pentagram); also called the light of darkness and the star of insanity. It is thought that the flame stands for apparent truth that turns out to be wrong for it breeds spiritual darkness which is the heart of insanity.<sup>312</sup>



Figure 2.2: The symbol of insanity,  
"the light of darkness"<sup>313</sup>



### 2.16.2 Full Moon

Full moons are traditionally associated with temporal insomnia, insanity (hence the terms lunacy and lunatic) and various magical phenomena such as lycanthropy. Psychologists,

---

<sup>312</sup> Gupta Twins, Symbol of Insanity [Online] Available from: <http://twins.guptara.net/old/downloads.htm> [Accessed: 14 August 2014]

<sup>313</sup> Ibid.



however, have found that there is no strong evidence for effects on human behaviour around the time of a full moon.<sup>314</sup>



Figure 2.3: Full Moon<sup>315</sup>

### 2.16.3 Inverted Funnel

The inverted funnel is a symbol of madness. It appears in many medieval depictions of the mad. In the below composition, a surgeon is performing trepanation (making a burr hole: hole is drilled or scraped into the human skull) on a restrained subject, while two onlookers watch. But looking closely, one can see that all is not right in Bosch's peculiar countryside: the surgeon is wearing a funnel as a hat.<sup>316</sup>



Figure 2.4: *The Cure of Folly*, Museo del Prado, Madrid<sup>317</sup>

---

<sup>314</sup> National Geographic News, Full Moon Effect On Behavior Minimal  
[http://news.nationalgeographic.com/news/2002/12/1218\\_021218\\_moon.html](http://news.nationalgeographic.com/news/2002/12/1218_021218_moon.html) [Accessed: 14 August 2014]

<sup>315</sup> Iskip, Full Moon [Online] Available from: [http://iskip.com/blog/2011/11/marvelous-night-for-a-moon-skip/full\\_moon2\\_1-10-09\\_b\\_lr/](http://iskip.com/blog/2011/11/marvelous-night-for-a-moon-skip/full_moon2_1-10-09_b_lr/) [Accessed: 14 August 2014]

<sup>316</sup> Palmer, J, The Stone of Madness [Online] Available from: <http://scienceblogs.com/bioephemera/2008/08/25/the-stone-of-madness/> [Accessed: 14 August 2014]

<sup>317</sup> Ibid.

#### 2.16.4 Stone of Madness

Archaeological evidence indicates that trepanning was practiced across Europe (indeed, worldwide) in prehistoric times; in medieval Europe, various medical experts recommended it for a variety of illnesses ranging from skull fracture to epilepsy, insanity and melancholia.

The calligraphic inscription around the painting is one clue: *Meester snijt die keye ras/Myne nam is Lubbert das* (Master, cut the stone out quickly, my name is Lubbert das). “Lubbert” was a typical Dutch nickname for a simple or foolish character (according to C. Gross (1999), it means ‘castrated dachshund’). Bosch’s fool is appealing to a surgeon to extract a stone from his head. The stone in question is the “stone of folly” or “stone of madness” which, according to popular superstition, was a cause of mental illness, depression or stupidity. Such stones could be located anywhere in the body, such as the bowels or back, but were most commonly assigned to the head, where a surgeon would have to cut into the skull to remove them. Medical historians and art historians have disputed whether the sham operations depicted in the “stone of madness” paintings reflect real events, or are allegorical.

318



Figure 2.5: Surgeon.

Museo del Prado, Madrid.<sup>319</sup>

---

<sup>318</sup> Palmer, J, The Stone of Madness [Online] Available from: <http://scienceblogs.com/bioephemera/2008/08/25/the-stone-of-madness/> [Accessed: 14 August 2014]

<sup>319</sup> Ibid.

## 2.16.5 Chinese Symbols of Insanity

The following list is the corresponding Chinese symbols for madness.<sup>320</sup>

Chinese symbols for crazed, daffy, bugs, batty, raving, mad, wild, madness, insanity, insaneness, zaniness, folie.	疯狂
Chinese symbols for mad, loco, insane, wild, daft, cracked, crazed, demented, out of mind, deranged, raving, distracted, bugs, batty, off one's dot, go bughouse, go round the bend, go off the hooks, go ape, hysterics, crazy, madness, insanity, craziness, dementia, crackers, go mad, craze, dement, go out of one's senses, take leave of one's senses, lose one's reason, be possessed, run mad, become insane, go off one's head, go out of one's mind.	发疯
Chinese symbols for insanity, desperation, madness, distraction.	精神错乱

## 2.16.6 Japanese Symbols of Insanity

The following list is the corresponding Japanese symbols.<sup>321</sup>

Madness	気違い
Madness	狂気
Insanity	狂気

<sup>320</sup> Chinese Words, Madness [Online] Available from: [http://www.words-chinese.com/symbols/\\_madness.htm](http://www.words-chinese.com/symbols/_madness.htm) [Accessed: 14 August 2014]

<sup>321</sup> Japanese Symbols, Madness [Online] Available from: <http://www.japanese-symbols.org/japanese-word-for-madness> [Accessed: 14 August 2014]

## **2.17. CONCLUSION**

Mental disorders are classified as a psychological condition marked primarily by sufficient disorganisation of personality, mind and emotions to seriously impair the normal psychological and often social functioning of the individual. Mental disorders occasionally consist of a combination of affective, behavioural, cognitive and perceptual components. The acknowledgement and understanding of mental health conditions has changed over time and across cultures, and there are still variations in the definition, classification and treatment of mental disorders.

There is no single cause for mental illness, and no one is to blame when someone is experiencing a mental illness. Often, it's a complex interplay of many factors that contribute to a person becoming mentally ill.

The history of treatment of mental disorders developed over years, mainly in both psychotherapy and psychopharmacology (drugs used in mental disorders). However, because there are many different factors contributing to the development of each illness, it can sometimes be difficult to predict how, when, or to what degree someone is going to heal and improve.

Psychopharmacology certainly brought a therapeutic boost to the psychiatric profession, promising as it did a cost-effective method of alleviating suffering without recourse to lengthy hospital stays, psychoanalysis or irreversible surgery. It would also promote psychiatry's wishful identity as a branch of general medicine. The new drugs enjoyed phenomenal success. The tranquillizer Valium (diazepam) became the world's most widely prescribed medication in the 1960s; by 1970 one American woman in five was using minor tranquillizers; and by 1980 American physicians were writing ten million prescriptions a year for antidepressants alone, mostly 'tricyclics' like Imipramine.<sup>322</sup>

Introduced in 1987, Prozac, which raises serotonin levels and so enhances a 'feel good' sense of security and assertiveness, was being prescribed almost ad lib for depression; within five years, eight million people had taken that 'designer' anti-depressant, said to make people feel 'better than well'. Central nervous system drugs are currently the leading class of medicines sold in the USA, accounting for a quarter of all sales. With the immense success

---

<sup>322</sup> Porter, R (2002) *Madness, a brief history*. Oxford University Press, pp. 206-207

of the anti-psychotic, anti-manic, and anti-depressant drugs introduced in the last half of the twentieth century, organic psychiatry is arguably in danger of becoming drug-driven, a case of the tail wagging the dog.

By permitting treatment of the mentally disturbed on an outpatient basis, psychoactive drugs have substantially reduced the numbers of those institutionalised. But problems of side-effects and dependency are perennial, and their long-term effects are necessarily unknown. Major ethical and political questions hang over recourse to pharmaceutical products to reshape personalities, especially when the development, manufacture and marketing of such drugs lie in the hands of monopolistic multinationals.

Psychosis manifests itself in a variety of ways and affects an individual's thoughts, feelings and behaviours. In addition, the symptoms of psychosis are regularly separated into thoughts and feelings that contribute to how a person typically thinks and feels that are negatively being influenced, such as motivation. Thoughts become confused and appear to either speed up or slow down. The individual experiencing psychosis may have difficulties concentrating, following instructions or conversations, and remembering things.

Individuals with psychosis may feel weird and cut-off from the rest of the world. They may experience mood swings and feel strangely excited or depressed. Their emotions often appear dampened and it is difficult for other others to tell if they are feeling – or simply showing – less emotion. The person may experience delusions or hallucinations which involve seeing, hearing, feeling, smelling or tasting something that is not actually there. Auditory hallucinations are the most common, usually experienced as voices that are perceived as distinct from the individual's own thoughts. The behaviour of individuals with psychosis also may be disorganised.

Individuals diagnosed with mental disorders, more so those diagnosed with insanity and psychosis, are typically deemed unable to function in society, having lost touch with reality. The effects on the person, his family, his relationships and health speaks of the devastating effects insanity and psychosis have, occasionally even unto death. Therefore, insanity and psychosis can be seen as nothing less than an assassin, killing victims slowly and relentlessly, focussing on deteriorating minds and health.

-----oOo-----



## Chapter Three

### 3. Discovering the Mind

*Let this same attitude and purpose and [humble] mind be in you which was in Christ Jesus:*

*[Let Him be your example in humility:]*

*Philippians 2:5*

*It is the mind that makes the man, and our vigour is in our immortal soul.*

*Ovid.*

#### 3.1. INTRODUCTION

Psychology, the study of the mind and how it works, is at times considered a new science, but this is quite mistaken. It is possibly the oldest science and in its most essential features, even a forgotten science. Perhaps this misconception arises because, except in modern times, psychology was incorporated into philosophic or religious systems.

When modern psychology emerged as a discipline at the end of the nineteenth century, it was based on an analytic, biological view: interest was in the component parts, particularly in

the biological realities of brain, memory and so on that could be empirically studied. When psychoanalysis was developed during the early part of the twentieth century, as an application of psychology to treat mental conditions, it produced the notion of personality, about the reality of someone's individual and subjective presence in the world.

Christian anthropology, on the other hand, is in the context of Christian theology; theological anthropology refers to the study of the human as we relate to God, the author and creator of the mind. One aspect studies the innate nature or constitution of the human, known as the nature of humankind. It looks into the relationship between notions such as body, soul (which the mind forms part off) and spirit which together form a person, based on their descriptions in the Bible. It is from this significant platform that one is to understand and delineate the mind and to revise the different parts constituting the mind in order to set guidelines as to what is a normal or healthy mind (to work towards) and what is an abnormal and unhealthy mind.

The Bible refers to the mind several times: over 90 times it talks about the thoughts and the mind; 19 times it refers to controlling one's thoughts; and 35 times it educates about the battle that rages in the mind. In this chapter, special focus will be put on what this means in context to the mental health of an individual, forming a fundamental foundation from which to bring healing and restoration to the mentally ill.

### **3.2. MAN'S IMAGE AND LIKENESS**

Adam's original image and likeness were replaced with sin which perpetually corrupts human spiritual DNA. Moreover, sin creates the void in man's identity he attempts to fill from the world of illusion. Science has made astonishing discoveries which demonstrate the vacuum man is born into and the preoccupation of each generation to discover the real self.

Man uses sentences everyday describing himself as "I". According to science, there is not a physical place inside man's body where "I" actually exists. Man is made of atoms, which are made from particles and waves spinning at light speed in space. Atoms are the basic building blocks of matter, which makes up objects. A table, chair, air, even a person is made up of atoms. Atoms, though, are invisible to the naked eye.

Scientists believe the universe, also made of atoms, is empty, and what has always been thought of as solid is actually an illusion. If there were proper microscopes to see the world of things identified as solid, one will notice that they are actually vibrating at speeds equal to their molecular makeup. Wood, glass, metal and brick all vibrate at different frequencies because of their physical composition or atoms. Thus, atoms can be described as energy vibrating at different frequencies. They form various shapes and densities of matter relative to their speeds. Everything is moving faster than the eye can see, creating the illusion of solidity.<sup>323</sup>

Man's five senses have pictured the body to be solid, even though scientifically it is made up of mostly empty space. The most important principle to understand is that everything is moving or vibrating at different speeds, even the person one identifies as himself. Moreover, science describes electromagnetic fields in relation to each person's atomic structures. In other words, thoughts create an electromagnetic field which attracts energy and matter relative to their speed. Therefore, those who want to attract Heaven must vibrate at its speed, according to Emerson Ferrell in his book *Immersed in Him*. He goes further in explaining<sup>324</sup>:

*People who are fearful and afraid attract circumstances and people with a similar frequency or vibration. The power of thought is magnified with spoken words. Our thoughts attract energy and words draw matter. The same principals are at work in the spiritual dimensions. The thoughts of Christ vibrate at frequencies outside the realm of time and space and attract Heaven's glory. Heaven's power to affect our life is limited by our consciousness of Christ. The origin of our thoughts is the subject of many books and discussions, but I believe thoughts are formed from spiritual influences which result in our consciousness. We are spiritual beings with invisible antennas attracting the energy we are unconsciously transmitting. The Holy Spirit never stops sending us His transmissions of love and acceptance from the Father.*

*One reason we do not receive His communication is because of the noise we produce. The mind's unrest in attempting to find an image or likeness to portray generates racket or feedback. The never-ending search to find a physical purpose or identity prevents us from hearing the voice of Jesus singing our names and describing our destiny. The sound of His voice has been described as "many waters," making it easy to resonate within our bodies,*

---

<sup>323</sup> Ferrell, L E (2010) *Immersed in Him*. United States of America: Destiny Image Publisher Inc., pp. 83-85

<sup>324</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 86



*which are primarily composed of water (see Rev. 1:15). Those whose minds are fixed on Christ will be led by the Holy Spirit, while those who are captivated by this world will be influenced by the prince of the power of the air.*

The world in reality is the way it was in the beginning, described in Genesis: void. Jesus has given the believer the authority to create Heaven on earth in the same manner as He did in the beginning. Every day man is presented with the opportunity to eat from the tree of life or from the knowledge of good and evil, the same as the first Adam. The choice to live inside Christ and His Kingdom or to live in the world of the knowledge of good and evil, right or wrong, true or false, is every person's to make. Religion, philosophy and science are not the solution for humankind; in fact, they are the problem. Jesus illustrated the model and provided the resource through the Holy Spirit.

Emerson concluded with<sup>325</sup>:

*The mind of man is designed to transform the physical realm by using the spiritual. Adam lost that ability through sin, but Jesus with the Holy Spirit has opened the portals of Heaven again for man's access. The way is easy to understand, but submission is difficult. The nature of sin has not only corrupted the mind of humans, but has infected the body as well. A human is a triune being, which simply means that he is a spirit with a soul and he resides in a temporal body. Satan's plan is to destroy humanity's mind and eventually kill the body. The devil combines fear and illusion to produce unhealthy cravings and preoccupy our thoughts, resulting in sickness and disease.*

### 3.3. MENTAL MODELS

A mental model is a representation of some domain or situation that supports understanding, reasoning and prediction. There are two main approaches to the study of mental models: (1) one approach seeks to characterise the knowledge and processes that support understanding and reasoning in knowledge-rich domains; and (2) the other approach focuses on mental models as working-memory constructs that support logical reasoning. For the purpose of this paper the focus here is on working-memory constructs.<sup>326</sup>

---

<sup>325</sup> Ibid., p. 90

<sup>326</sup> Olson, R, Mental Models [Online] Available from: <http://peakeffectiveness.com/Positive%20Psychology/Mental%20Models.pdf> [Accessed: 12 May 2014]

In his book *The Fifth Discipline: The Art and Practice of the Learning Organization*, Doubleday Currency, Peter Senge defines mental models as follows<sup>327</sup>:

*Mental models are deeply held internal images of how the world works, images that limit us to familiar ways of thinking and acting. Very often, we are not consciously aware of our mental models or the effects they have on our behaviour.*

John Arango, on his website, makes the following observation on mental models<sup>328</sup>:

*Mental models are subtle but powerful. Subtle, because we usually are unaware of their effect. Powerful, because they determine what we pay attention to, and therefore what we do. Mental models are strongly conservative: left unchallenged, they will cause us to see what we have always seen: the same needs, the same opportunities, the same results. And because we see what our mental models permit us to see, we do what our mental models permit us to do. Mental models limit us to familiar ways of thinking and acting.*

Mental models are powerful because they create the lens through which an individual sees the world. The lens itself shapes how the person interprets the world. Mental models actively govern the way a man sees: the way he sees determines his attitudes and governs how he behaves, and the way he behaves determines his results, including his relationships with others. Mental models are inseparable from character. Being is seeing, because what a man sees is highly interrelated to what he is. To be most effective in achieving the results a person wants, he must therefore examine his mental models, the lens through which he sees the world, as well as at the world he sees.

Mental models are attitudes, beliefs, opinions, 'truths', theories (either simple generalisations such as 'people are untrustworthy' or very complex theories), perceptions, assumptions, understandings, ways of interpreting data, mental maps of 'the ways things are', mental maps of 'the way things should be' (values), and points of view or frames of reference. A person sees the world, not as it is, but as he is - or, as he is conditioned to see it, like looking through a window, conditioned by his beliefs, attitudes, 'truths' and experience. A person's beliefs, attitudes and opinions affect his actions and results. He acts and performs not in accordance with the truth, but only the 'truth' as he sees it.

---

<sup>327</sup> Senge, P M (1990) *The Fifth Discipline: The Art and Practice of the Learning Organization*. Doubleday Currency, p. 8

<sup>328</sup> Arango, J B, Mental Models [Online] Available from: <http://www.algodonesassociates.com/planning/Mental%20models.pdf> [Accessed: 12 May 2014]

No person can carry all the complex details of his world in his mind. What he keeps in his head are images, assumptions and stories. Mental models can be simple generalisations, such as "people are untrustworthy", or they can be complex theories. But what is most important is that mental models shape how a person acts. If a person believes people are untrustworthy, he acts differently from the way he would if he believed they were trustworthy.

The problems with mental models lie not in whether they are right or wrong. By definition, all models are simplifications. The problems with mental models arise when the models are tacit, when they exist below the level of awareness. Because mental models are unexamined, the models remained unchanged.<sup>329</sup>

### 3.4. THE SOUL

Man<sup>330</sup> is a spirit, has a soul and lives in a body. The soul is what gives man personality and it's through the soul that a person lives out his relationship with God, with other people and with one self. The soul likely has three major components: mind, will and emotions. The mind has a conscious part and a subconscious part. The conscious mind is where a person does his thinking and reasoning. The subconscious mind is where a person holds his deep beliefs and attitudes. It's also where feelings and emotions reside, and it is here where man retains memories. Man's will is what gives him the ability to make choices. The mind, the will and the emotions are connected to the body through a complex system of endocrines, nervous and immune systems.

Man's emotion is the part of your soul that expresses love, hatred, joy, grief and desire. 1 Samuel 30:6 reads, "*the soul of all the people was bitter...*" and Song of Songs 1:7 says, "*you whom my soul loves*". Since bitterness and love are both emotions, this proves that emotions are part of the soul. God gave us emotions so that we can love Him and rejoice in Him, and hate sin, Satan and all that issues from the satanic source.<sup>331</sup>

---

<sup>329</sup> Olson, R, Mental Models [Online] Available from: <http://peakeffectiveness.com/Positive%20Psychology/Mental%20Models.pdf> [Accessed: 12 May 2014]

<sup>330</sup> Etymology: Man: Old English man, mann "human being, person (male or female). [www.etymonline.com](http://www.etymonline.com)

<sup>331</sup> Faith and Health Connection, Spirit Soul and Body [Online] Available from: [http://www.faithandhealthconnection.org/the\\_connection/spirit-soul-and-body/](http://www.faithandhealthconnection.org/the_connection/spirit-soul-and-body/) [Accessed: 28 March 2014]



Figure 3.1: The Soul, Body and Spirit<sup>332</sup>

Man needs his soul to be purified by the Word of God. 1 Peter 1:22 says “*Since you have purified your souls by your obedience to the truth...*” This purifying is like the cleansing by the washing of the water in the Word in Ephesians 5:26. If one wants the natural soul to be purified, one needs to spend more time in God’s Word to be washed.

Man also needs to cooperate with the Lord so that He can transform the soul. Not only does a person need to read the Bible, but he also needs to spend adequate time in the Lord’s presence, beholding Him and having fellowship with Him in prayer, so that He can renew the mind and transform the soul into His image.

*And all of us, as with unveiled face, [because we] continued to behold [in the Word of God] as in a mirror the glory of the Lord, are constantly being transfigured into His very own image in ever increasing splendour and from one degree of glory to another; [for this comes] from the Lord [Who is] the Spirit.*

2 Corinthians 3:18

### 3.4.1 The Will

Man’s will<sup>333</sup> is the part of the soul that makes decisions, chooses, refuses and seeks. Job 7:15 says “*So that my soul would choose...*” and in Job 6:7, “*My soul refuses...*” Since choosing and refusing are functions of the will, it’s clear that the will is also a part of the soul. In His wisdom, God created man with a free will. Man is a creature of choice, able within certain bounds to determine his own success or failure in life. A person coming into a relationship with God is an issue of choice; it is man’s choice, and act of his free will, to open the door of his heart and invite Christ in.

<sup>332</sup> Ibid.

<sup>333</sup> Etymology: Will: Old English will, willa "mind, determination, purpose; desire, wish, request; joy, delight," from Proto-Germanic \*wiljon- (cognates: Old Saxon willio, Old Norse vili, Old Frisian willa, Dutch wil, Old High German willio, German Wille, Gothic wilja "will"), related to \*willan "to wish". [www.etymonline.com](http://www.etymonline.com)

*Behold, I stand at the door and knock; if anyone hears and listens to and heeds My voice and opens the door, I will come in to him and will eat with him, and he [will eat] with Me.*

*Revelation 3:20*

In a person's ongoing Christian life, he is confronted with issues of choice on a daily basis. In these situations, he can choose to approach God and ask Him for whatever is needed. This ability to exercise free will and choice extends into the area of thought and mind control. You choose what to think about and, therefore, choices affect the type of person you will ultimately become.

It is important to understand that on the part of the believer, the action of the will is governed by the understanding of the mind (i.e. the mind sees what to do, the will chooses to do it, and then from the spirit comes the power to fulfil the choice of the will and the perception of the mind). But the believer thus cooperating with God in the use of his will must understand that the choice of the will is not sufficient alone, as seen by Paul's words in Romans 7:18: *To will is present with me, but to do ... is not*. Through the spirit, and by the strengthening of the Holy Spirit in the 'inward man' (the regenerate human spirit, Ephesians 3:16) is the liberated will – desiring and determined to do God's will – empowered to carry out its choice. *It is God which worketh in you ... to will* (i.e. to enable the believer to decide or to choose). Then it is *God which worketh in you ... to do His good pleasure* (Philippians 2:13, KJV). He energises the believer with power to carry out his choices.

In short, God gives the power to do, acting from the spirit where He dwells. But the believer needs to understand the use of his spirit as clearly as he understands the use (1) of his will, (2) of his mind, or (3) of his body. He must know how to discern the sense of his spirit so as to understand the will of God before he can do it.<sup>334</sup>

### **3.4.2 The Mind**

The mind is the part of the soul that knows, considers and remembers. Psalm 139:14 says, *Your works are wonderful, and my soul knows it well*. Also, Lamentations 3:20 says, *My soul remembers them well*, indicating that the mind is part of the soul because knowing and

---

<sup>334</sup> Penn-Lewis, J (2004) War on the Saints. Pennsylvania: CLC Publication, pp. 162-163

remembering are both functions of the mind. God gave man a mind to know Him, consider His works, and to understand and remember His Word.<sup>335</sup>

*Do not be conformed to this world (this age), [fashioned after and adapted to its external, superficial customs], but be transformed (changed) by the [entire] renewal of your mind [by its new ideals and its new attitude], so that you may prove [for yourselves] what is the good and acceptable and perfect will of God, even the thing which is good and acceptable and perfect [in His sight for you].*

Romans 12:2

*Mind* is also the term most commonly used to describe the higher functions of the human brain, particularly those that are subjectively conscious, such as personality, thought, reason, memory, intelligence and emotion. Modern Greek theories see the mind as a phenomenon of psychology, and the term is often used synonymously with consciousness. The Greek concept of *mind* comes from the word *phroneo*, meaning “to set one’s mind on a thing”.<sup>336</sup>

When a person is going through a hard time, his mind wants to give up. Satan knows that if he can defeat man in his mind, he can defeat him in his experience. That's why it is so important that one should not lose heart, or grow weary and faint.

*And let us not lose heart and grow weary and faint in acting nobly and doing right, for in due time and at the appointed season we shall reap, if we do not loosen and relax our courage and faint.*

Galatians 6:9

Losing heart and fainting refer to giving up in the mind. The Holy Spirit encourages the children of God *not* to give up in their minds, because if they hold on, they will eventually reap healing, deliverance and breakthrough.

---

<sup>335</sup> Smith, T, What is the Soul and How Does God Heal Soul Sickness? [Online] Available from: <http://holdingtotruth.com/2013/12/08/whats-human-soul-bible-heal-soul-sickness/> [Accessed: 28 March 2014]

<sup>336</sup> Jones, N and Land, G (2012) Battle for the Mind. USA: Destiny Image Publishers, p. 36

### 3.4.2.1 How the Mind Works

The mind works on two different levels: the conscious and the subconscious. The subconscious level of the mind is also divided into what we will call the subconscious and the creative subconscious.

The conscious part of the mind perceives the world, or a person's reality, through the sensory input of the five senses, maintaining adequate contact with 'reality'. It is the rational function of one's mind that investigates and interprets reality. The conscious mind is the part that thinks and knows, referred to as the voice in one's head.

The conscious has four functions<sup>337</sup>: (1) *Perception*: A person perceives the world through his senses and he gathers input and data based on his personal interpretation of this reality; (2) *Association*: What a person perceives is then associated with his past experience 'data bank' stored in his subconscious. All new information received is immediately associated, "Have I seen anything like this before?" with his accumulated storehouse of perceptual impressions; (3) *Evaluation*: After a person associates what he perceives, he evaluates it with reference to its associations for him. He wants to know: "How does this new information compare with what I already know?"; and (4) *Decision*: A person 'decides' on a course of action, reaction or inaction based on immediate needs and goals.

The subconscious works in the background and leaves feelings, instincts and impressions in the conscious mind. It is also very gullible, completely incapable of recognising a lie: it believes everything. So, it'll make an individual cry when he is watching a sad movie, or make him angry again if he remembers the argument he had yesterday. As far as the subconscious mind is concerned, it takes everything as real.

The subconscious is also trainable to do tasks for an individual, and soon gains control of repetitive actions so that a person can do them without thinking, such as typing, walking and communicating. The incredibly powerful subconscious also does a massive amount of background processing in support of the conscious mind. While most people would have difficulty with physical formulae as applied to objects in flight in an environment with gravity, the subconscious can do that same math so fast that by the time the ball has reached a person, his hand is right there to catch it.

---

<sup>337</sup> Olson, R, Mental Models [Online] Available from: <http://peakeffectiveness.com/Positive%20Psychology/Mental%20Models.pdf> [Accessed: 12 May 2014]

Because the subconscious is a dominating factor in all aspects of life, and also gets trained by a person's actions, it becomes important to create the subconscious 'programmes' that help one succeed, rather than programmes that lead to failure. It's also a matter of learning to trust the programme your subconscious makes. And the more a person does a task – walking, typing, catching a ball – the more refined the programme becomes. Every time he gets it wrong, the subconscious will adjust things slightly and try again. However, after the programme has been working for a long time, it becomes entrenched and hard to change.

The subconscious mind records and stores one's interpretation of reality. A second function of the subconscious is to handle automatic functions (heartbeat, breathing, circulation, digestion and assimilation) and learned automatic functions (behaviour like tying one's shoe, walking, driving a car, golfing, playing a guitar and multiplication tables). All of these activities begin on the conscious level, then through repetition, repetition, and more repetition are eventually turned over to the subconscious level and become habits.

The creative subconscious has three functions<sup>338</sup>: (1) the creative subconscious maintains a person's sanity by making him act like the person he sees himself to be. This reality or picture is based upon a person's currently dominant image of the truth and reality as he recorded it from his subjective interpretation of the world. In order to keep his sanity, he must act like his subconscious picture of the real him. (2) The creative subconscious is to creatively solve problems. (3) The creative subconscious is to provide psychological drive and energy to resolve conflicts or to accomplish goals. When it senses a problem or obstacle in the way of goals, it provides great drive and energy to find answers and solutions.

The creative subconscious is tremendously powerful. It can work for either destructive or constructive goals for it does not pay attention to whether or not the person is acting in his own best interests; it works impersonally to bring into reality the subconscious picture, regardless of the person's true potential. The creative subconscious is the entire psychological basis of every professional sports training regime in the world. It's used by every successful person whether realised or not. It's the principle behind brainwashing and voodoo and is easily powerful enough to kill a man – or, indeed, to save his life. It is said that healing is 30% mental: the creative subconscious is why.<sup>339</sup>

---

<sup>338</sup> Ibid.

<sup>339</sup> Mental Models (<http://peakeffectiveness.com/Positive%20Psychology/Mental%20Models.pdf>)



An example of the power of the creative subconscious<sup>340</sup>:

*For example, a man once died of hypothermia after being shut in a refrigerator truck. Sounds reasonable however the refrigeration wasn't even turned on and the temperature inside, while cool, wasn't cold enough to kill. He died of hypothermia simply because he believed he was going to die of hypothermia. He was shivering, he went numb and he died, all in a room temperature environment.*

### 3.4.2.2 The Conditions of the Mind

The mind can be in many different states at different times in a person's life. It can venture from being calm and peaceful to being anxious and worried depending on what life throw's at a person. A person's mind is considered 'normal' when it aligns with the Word of God and Christ's mind-set. The Word of God teaches that a child of God has the mind of Christ<sup>341</sup>. So what was Jesus' mind like when He lived on the earth, not only as the Son of God but also as the Son of Man?

A child of God is spiritual and natural. However, since the natural does not always understand the spiritual, it is vitally necessary for one's mind to be enlightened concerning what is going on in the spirit being. The Holy Spirit desires to bring a person this enlightenment, but the mind often misses what the Holy Spirit, through the human spirit, is attempting to reveal because it is too busy.

A mind that is too busy is abnormal. The mind is normal when it is at rest (not blank). The mind should not be filled with reasoning, worry, anxiety, fear and the like. It should be calm, quiet and serene. The Holy Spirit gives information from God to the person's spirit, and if his spirit and mind are aiding one another, then he can walk in divine wisdom and revelation. But if his mind is too busy, it will miss what the Lord is attempting to reveal to him through his spirit.<sup>342</sup>

---

<sup>340</sup> Ibid.

<sup>341</sup> 1 Corinthians 2:16

<sup>342</sup> Meyer, J (2002) Battle Field of the Mind. New York: Warner Faith, page 61

Joyce Meyer, in her book *Battle Field of the Mind*, defines the following types of minds a person can have<sup>343</sup>.

### ***A Wandering and Wondering Mind***

*Wherefore gird up the loins of your mind*

*1 Peter 1:13*

Many people have spent years allowing their minds to wander because they have never applied principles of discipline to their thought life. Quite often, people who cannot seem to concentrate think they are mentally deficient. However, an inability to concentrate can result from years of letting the mind do whatever it wants to do, whenever it wants to do it. A lack of concentration can also be a symptom of vitamin deficiency, as certain B-vitamins are necessary to enhance concentration. Extreme fatigue can also affect concentration. Often a lack of comprehension is the result of a lack of concentration; the real problem behind a lack of comprehension is a lack of attention caused by a wandering mind.

Webster's dictionary defines the word wander as<sup>344</sup>:

*1. to move about aimlessly: ROAM. 2. To go by an indirect route or at no set pace: AMBLE. 3. To proceed in an irregular course or action: MEANDER...5. To think or express oneself unclearly or incoherently.*

Remember, in spiritual warfare the mind is the battlefield. That is where the enemy makes his attack. The devil knows that a person cannot discipline himself to complete a project if he cannot discipline his mind and keep it focussed on what he is doing. This mind-wandering phenomenon also occurs during conversation. Satan wants people to think that they are mentally deficient, that something is wrong with them. But the truth is, they just need to begin disciplining their mind. Don't let it run all over the place, doing whatever it pleases.

Wondering, on the other hand, leaves a person in indecision, and indecision causes confusion. Wondering, indecision and confusion prevent an individual from receiving from God, by faith, the answer to a prayer or need.

---

<sup>343</sup>Ibid, pp. 61-132.

<sup>344</sup> Merriam-Webster Dictionary, Wander. <http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/wander> [Accessed: 28 March 2014]

## A Confusion Mind

Wondering and confusion are related. Wondering, rather than being definite in thought, can and does engender doubt and confusion.

*<sup>5</sup>If any of you is deficient in wisdom, let him ask of the giving God [Who gives] to everyone liberally and ungrudgingly, without reproaching or fault finding, and it will be given him. <sup>6</sup>Only it must be in faith that he asks with no wavering (no hesitating, no doubting). For the one who wavers (hesitates, doubts) is like the billowing surge out at sea that is blown hither and thither and tossed by the wind. <sup>7</sup>For truly, let not such a person imagine that he will receive anything [he asks for] from the Lord, <sup>8</sup>[For being as he is] a man of two minds (hesitating, dubious, irresolute), [he is] unstable and unreliable and uncertain about everything [he thinks, feels, decides].*

James 1:5-8

In the preceding Scripture, the double-minded man is the picture of confusion as he constantly goes back and forth, back and forth, never deciding on anything. As soon as he thinks he has made a decision, here comes wondering, doubt and confusion to get him operating once again in two minds. He is uncertain, confused about everything.

A large percentage of God's people are admittedly confused. Why? One reason is wondering. Another is reasoning<sup>345</sup>. The dictionary partially defines the word *reason* in the noun form as an "*underlying fact or motive that provides logical sense for a premise or occurrence*" and in the verb form as "*to use the faculty of reason: think logically*".<sup>346</sup> Reasoning occurs when a person tries to figure out the 'why' behind something. Reasoning causes the mind to revolve around and around a situation, issue or event attempting to understand all its intricate component parts.

Satan frequently steals the will of God from a person due to reasoning. The Lord may direct a person to do a certain thing, but if it does not make sense – if it is not logical – he may be tempted to disregard it. What God leads a person to do does not always make logical sense to his mind. His spirit may affirm it and his mind reject it, especially if it would be out of the

---

<sup>345</sup> Matthew 16:8

<sup>346</sup> Merriam-Webster Dictionary, Reason. <http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/reason> [Accessed: 28 March 2014]

ordinary, unpleasant, or requires personal sacrifice or discomfort. The human mind favours logic and order and reason.

### ***A Doubtful and Unbelieving Mind***

Vine's *Expository Dictionary of New Testament Words* partially defines *doubt* in the verb form as<sup>347</sup>:

*to stand in two ways...implying uncertainty which way to take,...said of believers whose faith is small....being anxious, through a distracted state of mind, of wavering between hope and fear*

The same dictionary notes that one of the two Greek words translated as unbelief "*is always rendered 'disobedience' in the RV*" (Revised Version of the King James translation).<sup>348</sup>

Doubt causes a person to waver between two opinions, whereas unbelief leads to disobedience; it is vital to distinguish between the two concepts. Doubt is not something God puts in a person. The Bible says that God gives every man a measure of faith<sup>349</sup>. God has placed faith in a person's heart, but the devil tries to negate this implanted faith by attacking him with doubt. Doubt comes in the form of thoughts that are in opposition to the Word of God. This is why it is so important for a child of God to know the Word of God. If one knows the Word, then he can recognise when the devil is lying to him. Be assured that Satan lies to us to steal what Jesus purchased for his children through His death and resurrection.

Faith is a product of the spirit; it is a spiritual force. The enemy doesn't want a person to align his mind in agreement with his spirit. He knows that if God places faith in a person to do a thing and he is positive and starts believing consistently that he *can* actually do it, then he will do considerable damage to his kingdom. Faith is the gift of God, so everybody has faith. But doubt is a choice. It is the devil's warfare tactic against man's minds. Since man can choose his own thoughts, when doubt seeps in, he should learn to recognise it for what it is, say "No, thank you" and continue steadfast in his belief.

---

<sup>347</sup> Vine, W. E (1940) *An Expository Dictionary of New Testament Words*. Old Tappan: Fleming H. Revell Company, p. 335

<sup>348</sup> Ibid, p. 165

<sup>349</sup> Romans 12:3

Unbelief leads to disobedience. Unbelief, like doubt, will keep a man from doing what God has called and anointed him to accomplish in life. It will also keep him from experiencing the sense of peace that He wants him to enjoy as he find rest for his soul in Him.<sup>350</sup>

### ***An Anxious and Worried Mind***

Anxiety and worry are both attacks on the mind intended to distract man from serving the Lord. The enemy uses both of these torments to press man's faith down, so it cannot rise up and help him live in victory. Some people have such a problem with worry that it might even be said that they are 'addicted' to worrying. If they do not have something of their own to worry about, they will worry over someone else's situation. It is absolutely impossible to worry and live in peace at the same time. Peace is not something that can be put on a person; it is a fruit of the Spirit<sup>351</sup>, and fruit is the result of abiding in the vine<sup>352</sup>. Abiding relates to entering the 'rest of God'.

There are several words in the Bible that refer to worry, depending on what translation are being used. The *King James Version* does not use the word "worry". In addition to "*fret not*"<sup>353</sup>, other sample phrases used to warn against worry are "take no thought"<sup>354</sup>, "*be careful for nothing*"<sup>355</sup> and "*casting...all your care*"<sup>356</sup>. Webster defines the word worry as follows:<sup>357</sup> "*—vi. 1. To feel uneasy or troubled....—vt. 1. To cause to feel anxious, distressed, or troubled....—n... 2. A source of nagging concern*".

Worry is an attack from Satan upon the mind. There are certain things the believer is instructed to do with his mind, and the enemy wants to make sure that these are never done. So the devil attempts to keep the mental arena busy enough with the wrong kinds of thinking so that the mind never gets around to being used for the purpose for which God designed it.

Matthew 6:25 teaches that there is nothing in life that a person should be worried about. The quality of life that God has provided for man is great enough to include all those other things, but if man worries about the things, he then loses them as well as the life He intended him to have.

---

<sup>350</sup> Matthew 11:28,29

<sup>351</sup> Galatians 5:22

<sup>352</sup> John 15:4

<sup>353</sup> Psalm 37:8

<sup>354</sup> Matthew 6:25

<sup>355</sup> Philippians 4:6

<sup>356</sup> 1 Peter 5:7

<sup>357</sup> Worry (<http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/worry>)

*Therefore do not worry and be anxious, saying, What are we going to have to eat? or, What are we going to have to drink? or, What are we going to have to wear?*

*Matthew 6:31*

The devil is constantly waging war on the battlefield of the mind, hoping to engage the Christian in long, drawn-out costly combat. Notice that part of verse 31 in which the Lord instructs the believer not to worry or be anxious. Remember that out of the abundance of the heart the mouth speaks<sup>358</sup>. The enemy knows that if he can stir up enough of the wrong things going on in a person's mind, these wrong things will eventually begin to spill out of his mouth. Words are very important because they confirm a person's faith – or in some instance, the lack thereof.

### ***A Judgmental, Critical and Suspicious Mind***

Much torment comes to people's lives because of judgmental attitudes, criticism and suspicion. Multitudes of relationships are destroyed by these enemies. Once again, the mind is the battlefield. Being judgmental, opinionated and critical are three sure ways to see relationships dissolve. Satan, of course, wants a person to be lonely and rejected, so he attacks his mind in these areas.

In Vine's *An Expository Dictionary of New Testament Words*, one of the Greek words translated *judgment* is partially defined as "*a decision passed on the faults of others*" and is cross-referenced to the word "*condemnation*".<sup>359</sup> Also according to Vine's, one of the Greek words translated *judge* is partially defined as "*to form an opinion*" and is cross-referenced to the word "*sentence*".<sup>360</sup> God is the only One Who has the right to condemn or sentence. Criticism, opinions and judgment all seem to be relatives.

Judgment and criticism are fruit of a deeper problem — pride. When the "I" in us is bigger than it should be, various problems will abound. The Bible repeatedly warns about being high-minded.<sup>361</sup> Whenever a person excels in an area, it is only because God has given him a gift of grace for it. If he is high-minded or has an exaggerated opinion of himself, he often

---

<sup>358</sup> Matthew 12:34

<sup>359</sup> Vine, W. E (1940) *An Expository Dictionary of New Testament Words*. Old Tappan: Fleming H. Revell Company, p. 281

<sup>360</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 280

<sup>361</sup> Romans 12:3

looks down on others and values them as 'less than' he is. This type of attitude or thinking is extremely detestable to the Lord, so it opens many doors for the enemy in one's life. The Bible says that mankind is not to have a hard-hearted, critical spirit toward each other, but instead to forgive one another and to show mercy to one another just as God for Christ's sake has done for man.<sup>362</sup>

### **A Passive Mind**

Passivity is the opposite of activity, a dangerous problem because the Word of God clearly teaches that the Believer must be alert, cautious and active<sup>363</sup> — that he is to fan the flame and stir up the gift within him.<sup>364</sup> So many believers are emotionally ruled that an absence of feeling is all that is needed to stop them from doing what they have been taught to do. They praise if they feel like it, give if they feel like it, keep their word if they feel like it — and if they don't feel like it, they don't. An empty, passive mind can be easily filled with multitudes of wrong thoughts.

A believer who has a passive mind and who does not resist these wrong thoughts often captures and retains them as his own thoughts, without realising that the evil spirit has injected them into his mind because there was empty space there to fill. When a believer is inactive in any area in which he has capability or talent, that particular area begins to atrophy or become immobilised. The longer he does nothing, the less he wants to do anything. The condition of passivity can be overcome, but the first step to overcoming passivity in actions is to overcome passivity in the mind.

The passive mind does not completely accept the Word of God as Truth; therefore, it is always questioning and wondering, which weakens the will, causing the person to be sluggish in obedience to obey God. This is the cause of most of the instability seen in believers today, as it causes an individual to be unsettled in his mind. God's purpose within is to establish and settle us (1 Peter 5:6-11). If we refuse to stand against the Devil, God cannot strengthen us. *Mental passivity* includes other descriptive words: unreasoning, inactive, unenthusiastic, unresponsive, unqualified obedience to the commands of another,

---

<sup>362</sup> Ephesians 4:32

<sup>363</sup> 1 Peter 5:8

<sup>364</sup> 2 Timothy 1:6

lawful or unlawful.<sup>365</sup> A person who does not successfully complete earthly duties shows mental passivity.

A quiet mind is at peace and resting in the Lord with full confidence in God, even in times of trial. A passive mind is always active, 'spinning wheels' with thoughts running rampart through it, jumping from one thing to another, almost never at rest or at peace. The active mind studies and tests God's Word, sees it work, believes it, accepts it, trusts it, and relies on it. It is continually learning more of God's will and obeying his precepts. How do you recognise a believer? By watching him do what God has instructed in the Bible for him to do.

<sup>366</sup>

*If then you have been raised with Christ [to a new life, thus sharing His resurrection from the dead], aim at and seek the [rich, eternal treasures] that are above, where Christ is, seated at the right hand of God.*

*Colossians 3:1,2*

Right action begins with right thinking.

### 3.4.3 The Conscience

The Merriam-Webster dictionary defines conscience<sup>367</sup> as "*the part of the mind that makes you aware of your actions as being either morally right or wrong; a feeling that something you have done is morally wrong*"<sup>368</sup>.

In psychological terms, conscience is often described as leading to feelings of remorse when a human commits actions that go against his moral values and alternatively, leading to feelings of rectitude or integrity when actions conform to such norms. Commonly used metaphors for *conscience* include the 'voice within' and the 'inner light'.<sup>369</sup>

---

<sup>365</sup> Mark 4:24 - futile mind; Ephesians 4:17-19 - seducing pastors or teachers who patronize a person to get him on their side, many times opposing God's Word; Romans 6:16 - a person will become the slave of whomever you yield your mind to obey

<sup>366</sup> Demon Buster, Passive Mind [Online] Available from: <http://www.demonbuster.com/pmtdw.html> [Accessed: 26 September 2014]

<sup>367</sup> Etymology: Conscience: early 13c., from Old French *conscience* "conscience, innermost thoughts, desires, intentions; feelings" (12c.), from Latin *conscientia* "knowledge within oneself, sense of right, a moral sense," from *conscientem* (nominative *consciens*), present participle of *conscire* "be (mutually) aware," from *com-* "with," or "thoroughly" + *scire* "to know". Probably a loan-translation of Greek *syneidesis*, literally "with-knowledge." Sometimes nativized in Old English/Middle English as *inwit*. Russian also uses a loan-translation, *so-vest*, "conscience," literally "with-knowledge." [www.etymonline.com](http://www.etymonline.com)

<sup>368</sup> Merriam-Webster Dictionary, Conscience. <http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/conscience> [Accessed: 28 March 2014]

<sup>369</sup> May, L (1983). On Conscience. American Philosophical Quarterly 20, pp. 57-67



*For our rejoicing is this, the testimony of our conscience, that in simplicity and godly sincerity, not with fleshly wisdom, but by the grace of God, we have had our conversation in the world, and more abundantly to you-ward.*

*2 Corinthians 1:12*

A conscience is a mechanism created by God. The conscience must be taught right from wrong. This explains why very young children feel no remorse for things adults view as wrong. However, a parents reward good behaviour and discipline bad behaviour, they are forming the conscience of a child.<sup>370</sup>

Apostle Paul persecuted Christians but thought he was offering service to God. He said he lived with a clear conscience, but only because he never violated his conscience, even though he was sinning against God. However, once he learned the truth about Jesus, he felt enormously guilty and refused to eat for three days.<sup>371</sup>

### **3.4.3.1 The Defiled Conscience**

*Unto the pure all things are pure: but unto them that are defiled and unbelieving is nothing pure; but even their mind and conscience is defiled.*

*Titus 1:15*

A defiled conscience is a conscience that has been mis-taught what is right and wrong. The defiled conscience is one that has been taught wrong is right and right is wrong. Whenever a person goes against his or her own conscience, it becomes defiled.

### **3.4.3.2 The Seared Conscience**

*having their conscience seared with a hot iron*

*1 Timothy 4:2b*

Conscience is not the mere knowledge of right and wrong. Conscience may be regarded either as a power or as an act of the mind. In the former case, it is that power of the mind

---

<sup>370</sup> Rudd, S, Insanity and Conscience [Online] Available from: <http://www.bible.ca/psychiatry/psychiatry-mental-illness-bible-conscience.htm> [Accessed: 12 May 2014]

<sup>371</sup> Acts 22:16; 23:1; 26:9-11

that affirms and enforces moral obligation, and that pronounces upon the desert of obedience or of disobedience. Conscience is not a legislator that makes law, but a judge that convicts of guilt, passes sentence in respect to the past, and decrees and enforces moral obligation to obey law in regard to the future. Conscience, as a judge, smiles upon obedience and frowns upon disobedience.<sup>372</sup>

A seared<sup>373</sup> conscience is (1) the refusal or neglect of the reason, or that power of the mind, which makes the affirmation of that which was just spoken, to enter into judgment, and make these emphatic representations of moral obligation or of guilt; (2) when a man may know his duty, without feeling impelled by an emphatic affirmation of moral obligation to do it; (3) when a man may know that he is or has been wrong, without the consciousness of being arraigned, convicted of guilt, and condemned; (4) a state of insensibility to moral obligation, and tendency towards moral wrongdoing.

A seared conscience may be general or particular; that is, the mind may become generally insensible to moral obligation and the tendency towards sin; or this insensibility may be confined to particular sins. The conscience becomes seared by being disobedient to the Word and Voice of God, and by indulging in known sin.

When a person has a general apathy on moral subjects, it is conclusive evidence of a generally seared conscience and is a most guilty and alarming state of mind. Further evidence of a seared conscience is, for example, when an individual can neglect to make confession of sins to those who have been injured by them, and thus persist in injustice and wickedness, without remorse. In the end, this results in the loss of fear of God and the wisdom of God.

### 3.4.3.3 The Bad Conscience

A bad conscience is a bad feeling arising when a person does that which he has been taught is wrong. Cognitive dissonance is the psychological term for a bad conscience and is an apparent primary cause of mental illness.

---

<sup>372</sup> The Gospel Truth, A Seared Conscience [Online] Available from: [http://www.gospeltruth.net/1841OE/410428\\_seared\\_consci\\_pt1.htm](http://www.gospeltruth.net/1841OE/410428_seared_consci_pt1.htm) [Accessed: 17 May 2014]

<sup>373</sup> Etymology: Sear: Old English *searian* (intransitive) "dry up, to wither," from Proto-Germanic *\*saurajan* (cognates: Middle Dutch *soor* "dry," Old High German *soren* "become dry"), from root of *sear* "dried up, withered". Meaning "cause to wither" is from early 15c. Meaning "to brand, to burn by hot iron" is recorded from c.1400, originally especially of cauterizing wounds; figurative use is from 1580s. Related: *Seared*, *searing*. [www.etymonline.com](http://www.etymonline.com)

Terry Muck, in his book *Sins of the Body*, explains cognitive dissonance as follows<sup>374</sup>:

*Psychologists use the term 'cognitive dissonance' to describe the battle inside a person who believes one way and acts another. For example, a woman will normally feel intense cognitive dissonance if she secretly carries on an affair with another man while pretending to be happily married to her husband. Even if her husband suspects nothing, her own mind will constantly remind her that she is living with contradictions. Because the mind cannot sustain too much cognitive dissonance, it will seek ways to resolve the contradictions. Perhaps the wife will unconsciously let slip certain clues about her affair, or maybe she will accidentally call her husband by her lover's name. In such unexpected ways the mind will attempt to bring together her two lives. ... Guilt and fear finally forced me to deal with the cognitive dissonance. Guilt made it feel dissonant in the first place; it constantly reminded me that my actions did not coincide with my beliefs. And fear, especially the fear I experienced after I learned how sex had utterly destroyed my Southern pastor friend, forced me to face my own sin. It led me, kicking and protesting all the way, toward repentance. I mention this because guilt and fear do not often get good press in our liberated society. Had I sought help from a professional counsellor, that counsellor may well have dealt with the symptoms of guilt and fear rather than with the root problem. I have come to believe that the guilt and fear were wholly appropriate; they were, in fact, the prods that led me to resolve the cognitive dissonance in my life.*

Chemical psychiatry appropriates drugs to eliminate the bad feeling that result from violating a person's conscience. It is like the engine warning light coming on in his car and the psychiatrist disconnecting the light bulb. Certainly the bad feeling disappears for the few hours that the drug is working, but the actual problem has not been fixed.

---

<sup>374</sup> Muck, T (1989), *Sins of the Body: Ministry in a Sexual Society*. CTi, p. 51

### 3.4.3.4 The Guilty Conscience

The online dictionary reference defines *guilt* as<sup>375</sup>:

*the fact or state of having committed an offense, crime, violation, or wrong, esp. against moral or penal law; a feeling of responsibility or remorse for some offense, crime, wrong, etc., whether real or imagined*

In other words, guilt has two components: the actual offense and the feelings that accompany the offense.

Once a person feels remorseful about his wrongdoing, he often fails to respond to his guilt in a healthy manner. Guilt is a God-given emotion. It has at least three functions: (1) to prompt man to ask for forgiveness from those he hurt; (2) to motivate man to make restitution whenever he can; and (3) to draw man back to the Lord. One can only escape the negative patterns of guilt when the mind is trained to believe God's truth found in His Word instead of floundering toward the associated feelings.

A guilty conscience can lead to mental illness. However since non-believers have defiled consciences (mis-taught), they are much less likely to become mentally ill from of a guilty conscience. They sin rampantly and yet sin doesn't bother them. However, believers who continue in sin are prime candidates for mental illness because the resulting guilt (cognitive dissonance) will tear their mind in two.<sup>376</sup>

And then behaviours like delusion, paranoia and schizophrenia can become common. In fact, the incidence of mental illness among religious people is much higher per capita as compared to non-believers. The sins non-believers commit rarely lead to cognitive dissonance because they do not get any bad feelings when they commit those sins, as they have been taught that such behaviours are not sin but are acceptable.<sup>377</sup>

---

<sup>375</sup> Dictionary, Guilt [Online] Available from: <http://dictionary.reference.com/browse/guilt> [Accessed: 17 May 2014]

<sup>376</sup> Stanley, C, Escape the Guilt Trap [Online] Available from: [http://www.intouch.org/you/bible-studies/content/topic/escape\\_the\\_guilt\\_trap\\_study](http://www.intouch.org/you/bible-studies/content/topic/escape_the_guilt_trap_study) [Accessed: 17 May 2014]

<sup>377</sup> Rudd, S, The Bible, the Conscience and Mental Illness [Online] Available from: <http://www.bible.ca/psychiatry/psychiatry-mental-illness-bible-conscience.htm> [Accessed: 20 March 2014]

### 3.4.4 The Spirit and the Mind

*For what person perceives (knows and understands) what passes through a man's thoughts except the man's own spirit within him? Just so no one discerns (comes to know and comprehend) the thoughts of God except the Spirit of God.*

*1 Corinthians 2:11*

When a person receives Christ as His personal Saviour, the Holy Spirit comes to dwell in him. The Bible teaches that the Holy Spirit knows the mind of God. Just as a person's own spirit within him is the only one who knows his thoughts, so the Spirit of God is the only One Who knows the mind of God. Since the Holy Spirit dwells in the believer, and since He knows the mind of God, one of His purposes is to reveal to the believer God's wisdom and revelation. Once that wisdom and revelation is imparted to the person's spirit, and the spirit then enlightens the eyes of the heart, which is the mind. The Holy Spirit does this so that the person can understand, on a practical level, that which is being ministered to the individual spiritually.

Man is spiritual, and also natural. The natural does not always understand the spiritual; therefore, it is vital for the mind to be enlightened concerning what is occurring in the man's spirit. The Holy Spirit desires to bring this enlightenment, but the mind often misses what the spirit is attempting to reveal because it is too busy. A mind that is too busy is abnormal. The mind is normal when is at rest, certainly not be blank, but at rest.

The mind should not be filled with reasoning, worry, anxiety, fear and the like. It should be calm, quiet and serene. It is important to understand that the mind needs to be maintained in the 'normal' condition. The Holy Spirit attempts to enlighten the mind of the believer, pouring information from God into the person's spirit, and if his spirit and mind are aiding one another, then he can walk in divine wisdom and revelation. But again, if his mind is too busy, it will not 'hear' what the Lord is attempting to reveal to him through his spirit.<sup>378</sup>

---

<sup>378</sup> Meyer, J (2002) *Battle Field of the Mind*. New York: Warner Faith, pp. 65-69

### **3.4.5 Emotions**

Emotions<sup>379</sup> have been described as discrete and consistent responses to internal or external events which have a particular significance for the organism. Emotions are brief in duration and consist of a coordinated set of responses, which may include verbal, physiological, behavioural and neural mechanisms. Emotions have also been described as biologically- given as a result of evolution because they provided good solutions to ancient and recurring problems that faced our ancestors.

In psychology and philosophy, emotion is a subjective, conscious experience characterised primarily by psychophysiological expressions, biological reactions and mental states. Emotion is often associated and considered reciprocally influential with mood, temperament, personality, disposition and motivation. It also is influenced by hormones and neurotransmitters such as dopamine, noradrenaline, serotonin, oxytocin, cortisol and GABA.

Emotion is often the driving force behind motivation, both positive and negative. Thus, an alternative definition of emotion is a positive or negative experience that is associated with a particular pattern of physiological activity. Affect is an encompassing term used to describe the topics of emotion, feelings, and moods together, even though it is commonly used interchangeably with emotion.

Feelings are best understood as a subjective representation of emotions, private to the individual experiencing them. Moods are diffuse affective states that generally last for much longer durations than emotions and are also usually less intense than emotions.<sup>380</sup>

Emotions are vital to the survival of man, necessary, for example, for reacting quickly to dangerous stimuli. Man develops an emotional system to induce quick responses to danger. However, in terms of mental illness, this is often the result of excess emotion. The overflow of emotion doesn't just drive mood disorders but fuels most psychological problems: phobias, anxiety, trauma, hoarding, obsessiveness, borderline personality disorder, and drug and alcohol abuse.<sup>381</sup>

---

379

<sup>380</sup> Diaz, R M, Emotion [Online] Available from: <http://prezi.com/s-4hlcjqxcrz/emotion/> [Accessed: 14 July 2014]

<sup>381</sup> Smiths, I, Why do we have emotions? [Online] Available from: <http://www.psychologytoday.com/blog/the-literary-mind/200911/why-do-we-have-emotions> [Accessed: 16 April 2014]

The basic emotions – fear, sadness, anger, disgust, interest (excitement), joy (attentiveness), love and surprise – underlie the following psychological disorder clusters: internal, external, motivational and cognitive.<sup>382</sup>

*The internalising disorders cluster* (internal emotion-laden problems) includes fear, the anxiety cluster as seen in phobias and panic disorders, and distress, the depression cluster as seen in major depression (MDD), generalised anxiety (GAD) and PTSD.

*The externalising disorders cluster* (exhibited in outward behaviours) includes anger (the impulsive non-conformity cluster as seen in conduct disorders, anti-social disorders and oppositional defiant disorder) and disgust (the dependence/addiction cluster as seen in ADHD, substance abuse and addictions)

*The motivational disorder clusters* in which the motivation system is severely damaged includes interest (the obsessive/compulsive as seen in obsessive compulsive disorder and pathological gambling) and joy (the mania cluster as seen in bipolar disorder and dark triads: psychopathic, narcissistic and Machiavellian).

Lastly, *the cognitive disorder clusters*, where thinking and memory (cognitive processes) are severely damaged includes love (the delusions - magical thinking/suggestibility clusters as seen in psychosis, schizophrenia and hypnotic trance) and surprise (the dissociation/paranoia as seen in dissociative identity disorder, depersonalisation, derealisation, amnesia and autism).

### 3.4.6 Self-Esteem

Self-esteem is a term used in psychology to reflect a person's overall emotional evaluation of a person's own worth. It is a judgment of oneself as well as an attitude toward the self. Self-esteem encompasses beliefs (for example, "I am competent" or "I am worthy") and emotions such as triumph, despair, pride and shame<sup>383</sup>. Self-esteem is also known as the evaluative dimension of the self that includes feelings of worthiness, prides and discouragement<sup>384</sup>.

---

<sup>382</sup> Basic Emotions and Basic Psychological Disorders (<http://www.psychologytoday.com/blog/the-fundamental-four/201307/basic-emotions-and-basic-psychological-disorders>)

<sup>383</sup> Hewitt, J P (2009) Oxford Handbook of Positive Psychology. Oxford University Press. pp. 217–224

<sup>384</sup> Newman, B M and Newman, P R (1975) Development Through Life: A Psychosocial Approach. Homewood, IL: Dorsey

Self-esteem is a disposition that a person has which represents personal judgments of their own worthiness.<sup>385</sup>

Self-esteem is how an individual values himself; it is how he perceives his value to the world and how valuable he thinks he is to others. Self-esteem affects an individual's trust in others, his relationships and his work – nearly every part of his life. Positive self-esteem gives him the strength and flexibility to take charge of his life and grow from his mistakes without the fear of rejection.

Signs of a positive self-esteem are confidence, self-direction, non-blaming behaviour, an awareness of personal strengths, an ability to make mistakes and learn from them, an ability to accept mistakes from others, optimism, an ability to solve problems, an independent and cooperative attitude, feeling comfortable with a wide range of emotions, an ability to trust others, a good sense of personal limitations, good self-care and the ability to say no.

Low self-esteem, the opposite, is a debilitating condition that keeps individuals from realising their full potential. A person with low self-esteem feels unworthy, incapable and incompetent. In fact, because the person with low self-esteem feels so poorly about himself, these feelings may actually, in a circular manner, then cause the person to continue having feelings related to low self-esteem. Signs of a low self-esteem are a negative view of life, perfectionist attitude, mistrusting others – even those who show signs of affection – blaming behaviour, fear of taking risks, feelings of being unloved and unlovable, dependence, letting others make decisions and fear of being ridiculed.

As a social psychological construct, self-esteem is attractive because researchers have conceptualised it as an influential predictor of relevant outcomes like academic achievement or exercise behaviour. In addition, self-esteem has also been treated as an important outcome due to its close relation with psychological well-being. Self-esteem can apply specifically to a particular dimension or a global extent. Psychologists usually regard self-esteem as an enduring personality characteristic (trait self-esteem), though normal, short-term variations (state self-esteem) also exist. Synonyms or near-synonyms of self-esteem include self-worth, self-regard, self-respect, and self-integrity.<sup>386</sup>

---

<sup>385</sup> Olsen, J M and Breckler, S J and Wiggins, E C (2008) *Social Psychology Alive*. Toronto: Thomson Nelson.

<sup>386</sup> UCDMC, Self-esteem [Online] Available from: [http://www.ucdmc.ucdavis.edu/hr/depts/asap/Documents/Self\\_esteem.pdf](http://www.ucdmc.ucdavis.edu/hr/depts/asap/Documents/Self_esteem.pdf) [Accessed: 5 May 2014]



Individuals with unstable self-esteem are more vulnerable to feelings of depression than individuals with stable self-esteem. Individuals with unstable but typically high self-esteem are especially likely to react angrily to negative information about themselves. A person's belief about himself is dependent on the information about himself that he has acquired and stored away earlier in his life. The more negative information a person stores in his long-term memory, the more vulnerable he will be to experiencing negative thoughts and ideas about himself.<sup>387</sup>

### 3.5. THE MIND AND THOUGHTS

Whatever affects the way man thinks has an effect on the way he lives his life. Thoughts affect, for instance, attitudes, hopes and fears, the way a person speak, his personal philosophy of life, how he reacts to others, how he does his job and how he fulfils his family responsibilities. Out of his God-given wisdom, Solomon encapsulated this principle in a single phrase: "*As [a man] thinks within himself, so he is...*"<sup>388</sup> Every act of man, however good or bad, begins with a single thought.

*[Inasmuch as we] refute arguments and theories and reasoning and every proud and lofty thing that sets itself up against the [true] knowledge of God; and we lead every thought and purpose away captive into the obedience of Christ (the Messiah, the Anointed One)*

*2 Corinthians 10:5*

<sup>22</sup> *Strip yourselves of your former nature [put off and discard your old un-renewed self] which characterised your previous manner of life and becomes corrupt through lusts and desires that spring from delusion;*<sup>23</sup> *And be constantly renewed in the spirit of your mind [having a fresh mental and spiritual attitude],*<sup>24</sup> *And put on the new nature (the regenerate self) created in God's image, [Godlike] in true righteousness and holiness.*

*Ephesians 4:22-24*

*And set your minds and keep them set on what is above (the higher things), not on the things that are on the earth.*

*Colossians 3:2*

---

<sup>387</sup> Bentall, R P (2003) *Madness Explained: Psychosis and Human Nature*. London: Penguin Books

<sup>388</sup> Proverbs 23:7f

*For the rest, brethren, whatever is true, whatever is worthy of reverence and is honourable and seemly, whatever is just, whatever is pure, whatever is lovely and lovable, whatever is kind and winsome and gracious, if there is any virtue and excellence, if there is anything worthy of praise, think on and weigh and take account of these things [fix your minds on them].*

*Philippians 4:8*

It is the child of God's responsibility is to 'take captive', 'put off' and 'put on', 'think about' – in other words, let his mind dwell *only* on wholesome thoughts. One must literally sift one's thoughts and entertain only those that will work for good in his life. Man has the ability to entertain and ultimately produce the fruit of that thought from the enemy or to reject it and live free from its effect.

Satan, as an enemy of God, wants to fill a person's mind with lies that will weaken his personality and torment his thoughts; he wants to take advantage of every opportunity to influence man's thoughts. Satan's primary method of harassment is by inserting thoughts into one's mind that will influence feelings and actions. Satan loves depression and mood disorders because these conditions make a person more vulnerable to his insertions. When someone has a mood disorder, he can't shut his mind off or control his thoughts. In depression, a person can't shut off worry or thoughts that are down, sad or negative. It will be very difficult for him to distinguish his personal depressive thoughts from those inserted thoughts from Satan as he tries to magnify the depression or anxiety. Satan will oppose and interfere with treatment as much as possible to bind a person bound in depression so he can be more easily harassed.<sup>389</sup>

One of Satan's greatest tools to keep Christians bound in mental disorders is to convince them that seeking assistance is a lack of faith or a sign of spiritual weakness. In this way, he uses a spiritual argument to keep Christians bound by disorders and resistant to treatment. Another tool Satan uses to harass Christians is the unhealed emotional baggage they carry. As long as a person is carrying painful memories not addressed, then he is carrying imbedded lies waiting to be activated. At strategic times, he will remind the person of a painful memory or a lie from his past. He does this to regularly upset the person and to influence his behaviour. The key to stopping this attack is to get rid of emotional baggage,

---

<sup>389</sup> Mullen G, Are you winning the Battle for your Mind? [Online] Available from: <http://drgrantmullen.com/> [Accessed: 28 March 2014]

deal with painful memories and lies ensconced in the mind. A Christian does not have to tolerate Satan's attack.<sup>390</sup>

### 3.5.1 The Origin of Thoughts

There are three sources from which thoughts originate.<sup>391</sup>

*Firstly, thoughts can come from man's five senses.* Everything a person has learned since birth, everything his mind has learned, has entered through his five senses. Therefore, thoughts come through the five senses, either from the present environment or what has been stored in the subconscious mind.

*Secondly, thoughts can come from the devil.* Satan can bombard an individual's mind with thoughts. John 13:2 supports this: "*Satan having already put the thought of betraying Jesus in the heart of Judas Iscariot*". Judas conjured up the plan that He was going to betray Jesus. Maybe Judas thought he was doing right; however, he received that thought into his mind. The Bible says the devil put the thought of betrayal into his mind. Therefore, a man's thinking upon a particular line of reasoning can be initiated by the devil manipulatively placing a thought in the mind.

*Thirdly, God can also put thoughts into a man's heart and mind by His Holy Spirit.* The main difference between thoughts that come from the five senses and the thoughts that come from God is this: God deals with your spirit and the other deals with your mind. Romans 8:7 says that the natural mind alone or the sensual part of man cannot know God. God speaks to us through our spirit and our spirit speaks to our mind. Whether or not man's mind can use the thoughts is based on whether or not his mind is renewed by the Word of God.

How can one tell what thoughts are good or bad? A person must programme his 'computer' or mind. This is what Romans 12:2 is instructing, getting our mind renewed to the Word of God. A person's mind is like a computer or machine, and knows nothing except what it has been fed. A person's heart or spirit is the real person from where the issues of life flow. What should one do with a brand new 'empty' computer? The things that a person wants the machine to know is what he feeds into it. A person decides what he wants a computer to

---

<sup>390</sup> Ibid.

<sup>391</sup> Martin, F P (1979) Hung by the Tongue. Louisiana: Bible Teaching Series, pp. 9-31

remember and that is the data he feeds into it. That is what has been happening to an individual since his birth. He has been 'programmed' by his particular circumstances, the world that he has been living in. In actual fact, in order to put this right he needs to re-programme his mind instead of just programming it.

Trying to re-programme one's mind is like un-pickling pickles. That is the job on hand, to get these old worldly minds renewed by the Word of God. A person needs to get his mind thinking scripturally. His mind will accept or reject thoughts according to what it knows about the Word of God. Learn to use the Word of God.

*Casting down imaginations, and every high thing that exalteth itself against the knowledge of God, and bringing into captivity every thought to the obedience of Christ;*

*2 Corinthians 10:5 (KJ)*

How can something come against the knowledge of God? This is the battleground – right in man's mind. The believer has the Word of God coming into his heart and the devil putting thoughts into his mind contrary to the knowledge of God. The Bible teaches that man must cast down every imagination or reasoning that exalts itself against the knowledge of God. As the mind is programmed with the Word of God, then anything that comes against the Word of God will be cast down. Every time a person gets into a conversation with anyone, if he is not talking about the Word of God, then he will inevitably face this. He must train himself in this area and God's Holy Spirit will check him. The Holy Spirit will keep him straight. The Bible admonishes that we must bring every thought captive unto the obedience of Christ. The believer must take those thoughts mentioned, those thoughts produced by his surroundings, his five senses, by Satan, or by God; he takes all of them and brings them captive unto the obedience of Christ, according to Scripture.

Colossians 3:15 teaches that man should "*let the peace of God rule in your hearts*". Don't let frustration, fear or anger rule the heart, but allow the peace of God to reign. Let all thoughts become subject to the peace that God has put into your heart. Whenever a thought comes and a person cannot follow that line of thinking in the peace of God, then he should dismiss it. Direction for man that is produced by God will not disturb the peace of God within his spirit. Thoughts are the seeds planted in the garden of the mind. Weed out the bad thoughts and only allow good thoughts to be planted in the garden of the mind, because everything that is left there will grow.

*Finally, brethren, whatsoever things are true, whatsoever things are honest, whatsoever things are just, whatsoever things are pure, whatsoever things are lovely, whatsoever things are of good report; if there be any virtue, and if there be any praise, think on these things.*

*Philippians 4:8*

The believer needs to fix his thoughts on those things that are true, that are honest, and that are just and pure, lovely, of good report, virtuous and praiseworthy. He needs to control the thoughts that come into his mind.

### **3.6. THE BATTLE FOR THE MIND**

*For we are not wrestling with flesh and blood [contending only with physical opponents], but against the despotisms, against the powers, against [the master spirits who are] the world rulers of this present darkness, against the spirit forces of wickedness in the heavenly (supernatural) sphere.*

*Ephesians 6:12*

This Scripture confirms that the child of God is in a war. A careful study of this verse warns that this warfare is not with other human beings, but with Satan and his demons. Satan attempts to defeat man with strategy and deceit, through well-laid plans and deliberate deception. The devil is a liar. Jesus called him the father of lies and of all that is false<sup>392</sup>. He lies to everyone. He tells a person things about himself, about other people and about circumstances that are just not true. He does not, however, tell the entire lie all at one time. He begins by bombarding the mind with a cleverly devised pattern of little nagging thoughts, suspicions, doubts, fears, wonderings, reasoning and theories. He moves slowly and cautiously (after all, well-laid plans take time). He knows what a person likes and what a person don't like. He knows his insecurities, his weaknesses and his fears. He knows what bothers a person most. He is willing to invest any amount of time it takes to defeat a person. One of the devil's strong points is patience.<sup>393</sup>

The mind is the seat of all spiritual and carnal conflict. Becoming a Christian has introduced many internal conflicts into a person's life. Conversely, one doesn't really come to know God

---

<sup>392</sup> John 8:44

<sup>393</sup> Meyer, J (2002) Battle Field of the Mind. New York: Warner Faith, p. 13

until he experiences personal conflict. Whenever people respond to the internal motivation of the Word and come to God, while at the same time cease to react to the external stimulus of the world, they will encounter resistance and turmoil. In fact, the process of moving from the external (depending on a lot of outside sources) to the internal (depending on God and self) can be chaotic at best.<sup>394</sup>

Paul, in Romans, addresses this conflict as he endeavours to define and clarify the opposing forces that operate to gain influence on the mind. In Romans 7, one finds that Paul laments his own condition:

*<sup>17</sup> However, it is no longer I who do the deed, but the sin [principle] which is at home in me and has possession of me. <sup>18</sup> For I know that nothing good dwells within me, that is, in my flesh. I can will what is right, but I cannot perform it. [I have the intention and urge to do what is right, but no power to carry it out.] <sup>19</sup> For I fail to practice the good deeds I desire to do, but the evil deeds that I do not desire to do are what I am [ever] doing. <sup>20</sup> Now if I do what I do not desire to do, it is no longer I doing it [it is not myself that acts], but the sin [principle] which dwells within me [fixed and operating in my soul]. <sup>21</sup> So I find it to be a law (rule of action of my being) that when I want to do what is right and good, evil is ever present with me and I am subject to its insistent demands. <sup>22</sup> For I endorse and delight in the Law of God in my inmost self [with my new nature] <sup>23</sup> But I discern in my bodily members [in the sensitive appetites and wills of the flesh] a different law (rule of action) at war against the law of my mind (my reason) and making me a prisoner to the law of sin that dwells in my bodily organs [in the sensitive appetites and wills of the flesh]. <sup>24</sup> O unhappy and pitiable and wretched man that I am! Who will release and deliver me from [the shackles of] this body of death? <sup>25</sup> O thank God! [He will!] through Jesus Christ (the Anointed One) our Lord! So then indeed I, of myself with the mind and heart, serve the Law of God, but with the flesh the law of sin.*

Romans 7:17-25

It is in the mind that man wrestles with the spiritual and carnal nature. Because man has the power to choose, there is a daily battle of deciding between life and death.

---

<sup>394</sup> Jones, N and Land, G (2012) Battle for the Mind. USA: Destiny Image Publishers, p. 22

*Now the mind of the flesh [which is sense and reason without the Holy Spirit] is death [death that comprises all the miseries arising from sin, both here and hereafter]. But the mind of the [Holy] Spirit is life and [soul] peace [both now and forever].*

*Romans 8:6*

Many give their lives to Christ believing that all they have to do is attend church on Sunday, turn over all their problems to God, and subsequently, God will restrict conflict and they then can simply go home to live free from their problems. On the contrary, it doesn't work like that. One can't just take one's sin and one's circumstances to the Lord and leave them in some mythical place, thinking this will resolve the conflict. It is natural that when a person gives his life to Christ he wants to be free of all his issues. A person comes to Him seeking peace and refuge from the troubling storms of life that daily permeate his existence.

A person wrestles in the mind with the desires of the flesh that are engaged in serious war against the will of the spirit. This conflict is between good and evil, between right and wrong. Often God's people find themselves asking, "Why does it seem that this conflict has intensified, rather than diminished, since I met Christ?" It is vital to understand that when Jesus becomes a part of a person's life, the light that Christ shines on the mind illuminates and accentuates two opposing forces – the mind of the flesh (soul) and the mind of the spirit. At this time, a person's eyes automatically open to seeing the light shining into his soul, and he now sees himself in the light of Jesus as never before. He begins to see his faults and human frailties juxtaposed between weak human nature and His powerful life that is at work within the person.

The Book of Romans is the most comprehensive presentation of the redeeming grace of God that has ever been written.<sup>395</sup> Paul states clearly that walking with God is not conflict-free. And it is significant to know that the apostle identifies two opposing forces within man: (1) the force of the flesh, the law of sin and death; and (2) the force of the Spirit, the law of the Spirit of life. These two forces are continuously in opposition to one another.

---

<sup>395</sup> Ibid., p. 24

*<sup>23</sup> But I discern in my bodily members [in the sensitive appetites and wills of the flesh] a different law (rule of action) at war against the law of my mind (my reason) and making me a prisoner to the law of sin that dwells in my bodily organs [in the sensitive appetites and wills of the flesh]. <sup>24</sup> O unhappy and pitiable and wretched man that I am! Who will release and deliver me from [the shackles of] this body of death?<sup>25</sup> O thank God! [He will!] through Jesus Christ (the Anointed One) our Lord! So then indeed I, of myself with the mind and heart, serve the Law of God, but with the flesh the law of sin.*

*Romans 7:23-25*

It is vital to recognise that the flesh and the Spirit are in constant conflict because the mind of sinful flesh sets its desires against the mind of the Spirit. Thus, the mind becomes the battleground of grace against law, God against Satan, revelation against situation, spirit against flesh, and Word against the world.<sup>396</sup>

When opposing forces battle within the mind, whoever or whatever controls the mind controls the person. When a Christian believer begins to battle between the desires of the flesh and the will of the Spirit, satanic forces are trying to control his thinking through his flesh, which in turn is connected to the five senses. At the same time, the person's faith in the Word of God is fighting the sensual perception of person's situation. This is the battle that stalks his mind.

So then "*walk not after the flesh, but after the Spirit [Greek: *peripateo me kata, sarx kata pneuma*]*"<sup>397</sup>, is an adjectival clause describing all who are in Christ Jesus. Note that this battle being fought in the mind has nothing to do with the level of maturity as a Christian believer. A person may be a baby in Christ or he may be spiritually mature in Christ, but the key is his position in Christ and not his level of maturity. So, everyone who is in Christ is to be walking according to the Spirit.

The Lord says in Colossians 3:2, *set your minds and keep them set on what is above (the higher things), not on the things that are on the earth.* A child of God must set his mind on things above because the mind is seeking to operate in the realm of its natural environment and not be controlled by the limitations of sinful flesh. Thus, the intent of the Spirit in its war against the flesh is to free the mind from being suffocated by the flesh.

---

<sup>396</sup> Ibid., p. 34

<sup>397</sup> Romans 8:4 (KJV)



*<sup>4</sup> For the weapons of our warfare are not physical [weapons of flesh and blood], but they are mighty before God for the overthrow and destruction of strongholds,<sup>5</sup> [Inasmuch as we] refute arguments and theories and reasoning and every proud and lofty thing that sets itself up against the [true] knowledge of God; and we lead every thought and purpose away captive into the obedience of Christ (the Messiah, the Anointed One).*

*2 Corinthians 10:4-5*

Through careful strategy and cunning deceit, Satan attempts to set up 'strongholds' in a person's mind. A stronghold is an area in which a person's mind is held in bondage (imprisoned) due to a particular way of thinking. In this passage, the Apostle Paul tells that Christians have the weapons needed to overcome Satan's strongholds. Verse 5 shows clearly the location of the battlefield on which this warfare is waged. The Amplified Bible translation of this verse says that one is to take these weapons and refute arguments. The devil argues with a person; he offers theories and reasoning. All of this activity goes on in the mind in the form of a battle.<sup>398</sup>

In order to win this battle for the mind, one needs to be careful what it is fed with. What are you watching, reading or listening to? Don't give Satan a foothold by polluting the mind.<sup>399</sup> Christians need to be continually reminded that as a result of Jesus' victory on the Cross, he has authority over Satan's attack.

### **3.7. MINDSETS**

#### **3.7.1 Introduction**

A mind-set is a set of assumptions, methods or notations held by one or more people or groups of people that is so sound that it creates a powerful motivation within these people to continue to adopt or accept prior behaviours, choices or tools. In short, it is a person's way of thinking and their opinions. What a person thinks, particularly what he thinks about himself, influences how he perceives the world around him and how he experiences that world. Thoughts, perceptions and emotions, then, shape a person's reality.

---

<sup>398</sup> Meyer, J (2002) *Battle Field of the Mind*. New York: Warner Faith, pp. 13-14

<sup>399</sup> Mullen G, Are you winning the Battle for your Mind? [Online] Available from: <http://drgrantmullen.com/> [Accessed: 28 March 2014]

A mind-set is therefore an awareness of an individual's existing mental models, beliefs and assumptions, many of which are the result of past learning experiences and which may not have been re-examined or updated in the interim. Such awareness allows a person to see how these concepts influence his actions and, if he chooses, to update them to reflect his current circumstances and subsequent learning. In turn, this process allows him to make different choices based on more recent information better suited to current circumstances.<sup>400</sup>

An example is the impact of a self-image as a public speaker<sup>401</sup>:

*I had trapped myself in my own mental model: believing I was a poor speaker led me to avoid speaking opportunities, which prevented me from ever improving. Today I still get nervous before a speech or presentation, but I view that response simply as a manifestation of my desire to do well, not as damning evidence of my ineffectiveness.*

Mind-sets fall within two categories, namely fixed mind-sets and growth mind-sets.<sup>402</sup>

- **A fixed mind-set:** People who hold these beliefs think that “they are the way they are”, but that doesn’t mean that they have less of a desire for a positive self-image than anyone else. By definition, a challenge is hard and success is not assured, so rather than risk failing and negatively impacting their self-image, they will often avoid challenges and stick to what they are confident they can do well. The fixed mindset logically leads an individual to believe that any criticism of his capabilities is criticism of him personally. This usually discourages the people around and after a while they stop giving any negative feedback, further isolating the person from external influences that could generate some change. The success of others is seen as a benchmark against which the person looks bad. Usually when others succeed, people with a fixed mindset will try to convince themselves and the people around them that the success was due to either luck (after all, almost everything is due to luck in the fixed mindset world) or objectionable actions. In some cases, they will even try to tarnish the success of others by bringing up things that are completely unrelated (“Yes, but did you know about his...”). As a result, they fail to reach their full potential and their beliefs feed on themselves: they don’t change or improve much with time, if at all, and so to them this confirms that “they are as they are”.

---

<sup>400</sup> Edbatista, The Meaning of Mindset [Online] Available from: <http://www.edbatista.com/2012/01/the-meaning-of-mindset.html> [Accessed: 5 May 2014]

<sup>401</sup> Ibid.

<sup>402</sup> Richard, M G, Fixed Mindset vs. Growth Mindset: Which One Are You? [Online] Available from: <http://michaelgr.com/2007/04/15/fixed-mindset-vs-growth-mindset-which-one-are-you/> [Accessed: 16 April 2014]

- **The growth mind-set:** People who hold the growth mind-set believe that intelligence can be developed, that the brain is like a muscle that can be trained. This leads to the desire to improve. Improvement is reached by embracing challenges, because the person knows that he will come out stronger on the other side. Similarly, obstacles – external setbacks – do not discourage the person. His self-image is not tied to his success and how he will look to others; failure is an opportunity to learn, and so in whatever happens, he wins. Effort is seen not as something useless to be avoided but as necessary to grow and master useful skills. Criticism and negative feedback are sources of information. That doesn't mean that all criticism is worth integrating or that nothing is ever taken personally, but at least the growth mind-set individual knows that he can change and improve, so negative feedback is not perceived as being directly about him as a person, but rather about his current abilities. The success of others is seen as a source of inspiration and information. Growth mind-set individuals will improve, creating a positive feedback loops that encourages continuous learning and improvement.

Having a fixed or growth mind-set worldview is certain for every person. However, what is refreshing to know is that one can evolve from the one to the other.

Dr Carol Dweck, a professor from Stanford University, has been studying fixed versus growth mind sets for several decades, and has summarised the research and conclusions in her book *Mindset: The New Psychology of Success* (2006). She states that man's mind-set will determine much of what he thinks of as his personality.

In her research with children, she found that those who didn't do well and thought that their abilities were fixed, essentially gave up. Those who were consistently praised as high achievers tended to think that this characteristic was innate, and therefore reduced their effort to learn. They were even much more likely to cheat on tests to ensure that their label was kept intact, feeling constant pressure to win. The dynamic of being seen as naturally talented encouraged anxiety and stress and undermined the joy of learning. Those who were praised for the efforts they put into learning fared much better in terms of their general well-being and longer-term success. Adults show similar characteristics. Those who believe that abilities are fixed (even high achievers) tend to be anxious about trying new things, shun learning from others and are terrified of failure. Growth mind-set adults don't like failure but

they realise they will learn from it. They enjoy growing and learning as a process, as much as the end goal outcome.<sup>403</sup>

### 3.7.2 The Wilderness Mentality

In her book *Battle Field of the Mind*, God gave Joyce Meyer<sup>404</sup> a powerful revelation that has helped not only her personally but also thousands of others.<sup>405</sup> The Lord said to her that<sup>406</sup>

*the Children of Israel spent forty years in the wilderness making an eleven-day trip because they had a 'wilderness mentality' ... They kept going around and around the same mountains instead of making progress. The result is, it takes years to experience victory over something that could have and should have been dealt with quickly.*

God showed Meyer ten 'wilderness mentalities' that the Israelites had, that kept them in the wilderness. A wilderness mentality is a wrong mind-set. A person either has a right or wrong mind-set. The right ones benefit a person, and the wrong ones hurt a person and hinder progress.

Meyer also makes the statement, "*Some people live in a wilderness, while others are a wilderness*"<sup>407</sup>, and explains it by sharing her own experience:

*There was a time when my circumstances were not really bad, but I could not enjoy anything in my life because I was a "wilderness" inside. Dave and I had a nice home, three lovely children, good jobs and enough money to live comfortably. I could not enjoy our blessings because I had several wilderness mentalities. My life appeared to me to be a wilderness because that is the way I saw everything.*

---

<sup>403</sup> Norriss, H, How our mind sets can affect our mental health. [Online] Available from: <http://www.lawsociety.org.nz/lawtalk/lawtalk-archives/issue-818/how-our-mind-sets-can-affect-our-mental-health> [Accessed: 16 April 2014]

<sup>404</sup> Joyce Meyer is one of the world's leading practical Bible teachers. A New York Times bestselling author, her books have helped millions of people find hope and restoration through Jesus Christ. Through Joyce Meyer Ministries, she teaches on a number of topics with a particular focus on the mind, mouth, moods and attitudes.

<sup>405</sup> Meyer, J (2002) *Battle Field of the Mind*. New York: Warner Faith, pp. 155-233

<sup>406</sup> Ibid., p. 155

<sup>407</sup> Ibid., p. 155

The ten wrong mind-sets are:

1. *"My future is determined by my past and my present".*

People need to learn to see with their eyes of faith; they need to take a positive look at the possibilities of the future and begin to "*calleth those things that be not as though they were*"<sup>408</sup>; they need to think and speak about their future in a positive way, according to what God has placed in their heart, and not according to what they have seen in the past or are seeing even now in the present. Paul, therefore, warns "*Where there is no vision [no redemptive revelation of God], the people perish*".<sup>409</sup>

2. *"Someone do it for me; I don't want to take the responsibility".*

People need to learn that to be responsible is to respond to the opportunities that God has placed in front of them. The lazy mind-set that the Israelites had in the wilderness was one of the things that kept them in the wilderness forty years rather than making an eleven-day trip. People must learn to be motivated from within and to live their lives before God, knowing that He sees all. Their reward will come from Him if they persist in doing what He has asked them to do.

3. *"Please make everything easy; I can't take it if things are too hard!"*

People need to learn to set their minds to do what is in front of them and not to run from anything just because it appears challenging. People need to stop believing: "*it's just too hard*". The Lord's commands are not too difficult<sup>410</sup> for His Children because He gives them His Spirit to work in them powerfully and to help them do all He has asked of them.

4. *"I can't help it; I'm just addicted to grumbling, fault-finding and complaining".*

People need to learn to glorify God by their attitude during hard times, because without it they won't get delivered. It is not suffering that glorifies God, but a Godly attitude in suffering that pleases Him and brings glory to Him. Complaining will prevent people from crossing over into the Promised Land<sup>411</sup>.

---

<sup>408</sup> Romans 4:17

<sup>409</sup> Proverbs 29:18(a)

<sup>410</sup> Deuteronomy 30:11

<sup>411</sup> 1 Corinthians 10:9-11

5. *"Don't make me wait for anything; I deserve everything immediately".*

Impatience is the fruit of pride, not a fruit of the Spirit. A proud person cannot seem to wait for anything with the proper attitude. Patience is not the ability to wait; it is the ability to keep a good attitude while waiting. It is impossible to enjoy waiting if one doesn't know how to wait patiently. Satan uses the mind to lead man into impatient behaviour, through thinking that is idealistic rather than realistic.

6. *"My behaviour may be wrong, but it's not my fault".*

An unwillingness to take responsibility for one's own actions, blaming everything that is wrong or goes wrong on someone else is a major cause for not getting the breakthrough needed. "If" and "but" are two of the most deceptive words that Satan has ever planted in man's mind. People need to learn to admit when they have done something wrong. Satan wants to keep things hidden in darkness, but the Holy Spirit wants to bring them into the light and deal with them, so that a person can be truly and genuinely free.

7. *"My life is so miserable; I feel sorry for myself because my life is so wretched!"*

People need to learn that one cannot entertain demons of self-pity while walking in the power of God. Self-pity is idolatry: turning in on oneself, concentrating on the person and on his feelings, it makes one only aware of his own needs and concerns. It is certainly a narrow-minded way to live. God will not deliver a man by his own hand, but by His.

8. *"I don't deserve God's blessings because I am not worthy".*

Grace is the power of God coming to man, as a free gift from Him, to help him do with ease what a person cannot do himself. God wants to give man grace, but Satan wants to give man disgrace. Disgrace tells people that they are no good; not worthy of God's love or help; resulting in shame to poison the inner man. People need to accept that they can never deserve God's blessing; they can never be worthy of them. A man can only humbly accept and appreciate the blessings, and be in awe of how good God is and how much He loves man. Self-hatred, self-rejection, refusal to accept God's forgiveness (by forgiving oneself), not understanding righteousness through the blood of Jesus and all related problems will definitely keep a person wandering in the wilderness. A person's mind must be renewed concerning right standing with God through Jesus and not through his own works.

9. *"Why shouldn't I be jealous and envious when everybody else is better off than I am?"*

Minding other people's business will keep a person in the wilderness. Jealousy and envy are torments from hell. Jealousy, envy and mentally comparing oneself and one's circumstances with others is a wilderness mentality. Envy will cause a person to behave in a way that is callous and crude -- even animalistic at times. Jesus taught them things like, *"Many who are first will be last, and the last will be first"*<sup>412</sup>, *"Rejoice with those who are blessed"*<sup>413</sup>, *"Pray for your enemies, and bless those who mistreat you"*<sup>414</sup>. The world would say that this is foolishness but Jesus says it is true power.

10. *"I'm going to do it my way, or not at all".*

Stubbornness and rebellion will cause a person to die in the wilderness. The Lord demands that His child learn to give up his own way and be pliable and mouldable in His hands. As long as a man is stubborn and rebellious, God can't use him. A person must be obedient in all things, not holding back anything or keeping any doors in his life closed to the Lord. The whole purpose of man's creation is that he will have reverence for and worship God by obeying Him. All Godly character must be rooted in obedience; it is the foundation of all happiness. No one can ever be truly happy without being obedient to God. Anything in a person's life that is out of order will be brought into adjustment by obedience. Obedience is the whole duty of man.

### 3.7.3 The Greek Mind-set

Greek religion encompasses the collection of beliefs and rituals practiced in ancient Greece in the form of both popular public religion and cult practices. Many Greek people recognised the major Olympian gods and goddesses arranged in six pairs:

- Zeus and Poseidon;
- Hera and Athena;
- Hermes and Apollo;
- the Charites and Dionysus;
- Artemis and the river Alpheios; and
- Kronos and Rhea.

---

<sup>412</sup> Mark 10:31

<sup>413</sup> Luke 15:6,9

<sup>414</sup> Matthew 5:44

Ancient Greek theology was based on polytheism, the assumption that there were many gods and goddesses. There was a hierarchy of deities, with Zeus, the king of the gods, having a level of control over all the others, although he was not omnipotent. Some deities had dominion over certain aspects of nature. For instance, Zeus was the sky-god, sending thunder and lightning; Poseidon ruled over the sea and earthquakes; Hades projected his remarkable power throughout the realms of death and the Underworld; and Helios controlled the sun. Other deities ruled over an abstract concept; for instance Aphrodite controlled love. While being immortal, the gods were not all-powerful. They had to obey fate, which overrode all.<sup>415</sup>

Some gods can undergo metamorphosis into animals and humans, which is a dimension of their power. Examples are Athena that can transform into a bird; Thetis may emerge from the water like mist, and can transform herself into a panther or snake as well as mitigating a human shape; Dionysus' form is mobile, fluid and unbounded; and Zeus can change into many forms from a shower of gold to a swan or eagle, and even vegetables.<sup>416</sup>

The Greeks believed in an underworld where the spirits of the dead went after death. It was commonly thought that unless the proper funeral rituals were performed, the deceased person's spirit would never reach the underworld and so would haunt the upper world as a ghost forever. There were various views of the underworld, and the idea changed over time. One of the most widespread areas of the underworld was known as Hades. This was ruled over by a god, a brother of Zeus, who was called Hades (his realm was originally called 'the place of Hades'). Another realm, called Tartarus, was the place where the damned were thought to go, a place of torment. A third realm, Elysium, was a pleasant place where the virtuous dead and initiates in the mystery cults were said to dwell. In the early Mycenaean religion all the dead went to Hades, just as in early Judaism all the dead went to Sheol.

A few, like Achilles, Alcmene, Amphiaraus Ganymede, Ino, Melicertes, Menelaus, Peleus, and a great number of those who fought in the Trojan and Theban wars, were considered to have been physically immortalised and brought to live forever in either Elysium, the Islands of the Blessed, heaven, the ocean, or literally right under the ground. This belief held strong even into the Christian era. For most people at the moment of death there was, however, no hope of anything but continued existence as a disembodied soul.<sup>417</sup>

---

<sup>415</sup> Edinburgh Leventis Studies 5 (2010) The god of Ancient Greece. Edinburg University Press, pp. 47

<sup>416</sup> Ibid. pp. 81-88

<sup>417</sup> Rohde, E (2006) *Psyche: The Cult of Souls and Belief in Immortality among the Greeks*. New York: Harper & Row



Greek religion had an extensive mythology. It consisted largely of stories of the gods and of how they affected humans on earth. Myths often revolved around heroes and their actions. Many different species existed in Greek mythology. Chief among these were gods and humans, though the Titans also heavily appeared in Greek myths. They predated the Olympian gods, and were hated by them. Lesser species included half-man, half-horse centaurs, the nature based nymphs and the half-man, half-goat satyrs.<sup>418</sup>

One of the most important moral concepts to the Greeks was a fear of committing hubris, which constituted many things, from rape to desecration of a corpse. Although pride and vanity were not considered sins themselves, the Greeks emphasised moderation. Pride only became hubris when it went to extremes, like any other vice. The same was thought of eating and drinking. Anything done to excess was not considered proper. Pride was not evil until it became all-consuming or hurtful to others.<sup>419</sup>

It is a commonplace to say that sacrifice constitutes the central act of the worship of Greek gods and heroes in the Greek cities. One of the likely reasons for this central position is the fact that many other actions, such as processions, dances, prayers, athletic contests and, more generally, festivals and the deposition of votive offerings, were associated with sacrifices or performed in contexts which in some way or other included aspects of sacrificial practice. Greek ceremonies and rituals were mainly performed at altars. These were typically devoted to one or a few gods, and supported a statue of the particular deity.

Ritual deposits would be left at the altar, such as food, drinks, as well as precious objects. Sometimes animal sacrifices would be performed here, with most of the flesh eaten, and the offal burnt as an offering to the gods. Libations, often of wine, would be offered to the gods as well, not only at shrines, but also in everyday life. One ceremony was *pharmakos*, a ritual involving expelling a symbolic scapegoat such as a slave or an animal, from a city or village in a time of hardship. It was hoped that by casting out the ritual scapegoat, the hardship would go with it.<sup>420</sup>

Those who were not satisfied by the public cult of the gods could turn to various mystery religions which operated as cults into which members had to be initiated in order to learn their secrets. Here, they could find religious consolations that traditional religion could not

---

<sup>418</sup> Cheytan, H () Greek Mythology. PediaPress, p. 110

<sup>419</sup> Cheytan, H () Greek Mythology. PediaPress, p. 112

<sup>420</sup> Ibid., pp. 92-105

provide: a chance at mystical awakening, a systematic religious doctrine, a map to the afterlife, a communal worship and a band of spiritual fellowship.<sup>421</sup>

### **3.7.4 The Humanistic Mind-set**

The Merriam Webster dictionary defines humanism as<sup>422</sup>

*a system of values and beliefs that is based on the idea that people are basically good and that problems can be solved using reason instead of religion*

Humanism believes in a naturalistic metaphysics or attitude toward the universe that considers all forms of the supernatural as myth, and that regards nature as the totality of being and as a constantly changing system of matter and energy which exists independently of any mind or consciousness.

Humanism, drawing especially upon the laws and facts of science, believes that human beings are an evolutionary product of the nature of which man is a part; that the mind is indivisibly conjoined with the functioning of the brain; and that as an inseparable unity of body and personality man can have no conscious survival after death.

Humanism, having its ultimate faith in humankind, believes that human beings possess the power or potentiality of solving their own problems, through reliance primarily upon reason and scientific method applied with courage and vision.

Humanism, in opposition to all theories of universal determinism, fatalism, or predestination, believes that human beings, while conditioned by the past, possess genuine freedom of creative choice and action, and are, within certain objective limits, the shapers of their own destiny.

Humanism believes in an ethics or morality that grounds all human values in this earthly experiences and relationships, and holds as its highest goal worldly happiness, freedom, and progress (economic, cultural, and ethical) of all humankind, irrespective of nation, race or religion.

---

<sup>421</sup> Edinburgh Leventis Studies 5 (2010) The god of Ancient Greece. Edinburg University Press, pp. 47

<sup>422</sup> Merriam-Webster Dictionary, Humanism. <http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/humanism> [Accessed: 28 March 2014]

Humanism believes that the individual attains the good life by harmoniously combining personal satisfactions and continuous self-development with significant work and other activities that contribute to the welfare of the community.

Humanism, in accordance with scientific method, believes in the unending questioning of basic assumptions and convictions, including its own. Humanism is not a new dogma, but is a developing philosophy ever open to experimental testing, newly discovered facts and more rigorous reasoning.

The Humanist conclusion is that the final goal of human striving is unity, satisfaction and equilibrium in activity. The path to happiness for the personality lies in harmony in worthwhile action, a dynamic harmony that is achieved under the guidance of wisdom. In this way, the mind, which is in essence a problem-solving instrument, keeps on meeting the challenges of the environment and stays alert to the end instead of sinking into semi-somnolent serenity. These days people may find 'peace of mind' or 'peace of soul' in calmly and successfully coping with problems as they arise, but not in imagining that they can eradicate all personal discontents. It is the Humanist view that if the individual pursues activities that are healthy, socially useful, and in accordance with reason, pleasure will generally accompany them; and happiness, the supreme good, will then be the eventual result.

The Humanist conception of happiness is grounded in a psychology that allows for the natural differences between individuals and for the manifold possibilities in each person. Since no person can possibly fulfil the numberless potentialities of their being, particularly in the many-sided culture of today, he must select a consistent combination of activities upon which he centres his life.<sup>423</sup>

Religious humanists regard the universe as self-existing and not created. Humanism believes that man is a part of nature and that he has emerged as the result of a continuous process. Holding an organic view of life, humanists find that the traditional dualism of mind and body must be rejected.

Humanism recognises that man's religious culture and civilization, as clearly depicted by anthropology and history, is the product of a gradual development due to his interaction with

---

<sup>423</sup> Lamont, C (1997) *The Philosophy of Humanism*. New York: Humanist Press, pp. 13-15.

his natural environment and with his social heritage. The individual born into a particular culture is largely moulded by that culture.

Religion consists of those actions, purposes, and experiences which are humanly significant. Nothing human is alien to the religious. It includes labour, art, science, philosophy, love, friendship and recreation, all that is in its degree expressive of intelligently satisfying human living. The distinction between the sacred and the secular can no longer be maintained.

Religious Humanism considers the complete realisation of human personality to be the end of man's life and seeks its development and fulfilment in the here and now. This is the explanation of the humanist's social passion. It follows that there will be no uniquely religious emotions and attitudes of the kind hitherto associated with belief in the supernatural.

Man will learn to face the crises of life in terms of his knowledge of their naturalness and probability. Reasonable and manly attitudes will be fostered by education and supported by custom. Humanists assume that humanism will take the path of social and mental hygiene and discourage sentimental and unreal hopes and wishful thinking.<sup>424</sup>

### **3.7.5 The Babylonian Mind-set**

Babylonian religion is the religious practice of Babylonia. Babylonian mythology is a set of stories depicting the activities of Babylonian deities, heroes and mythological creatures. These stories served many social, political, ceremonial purposes, and at times tried to explain natural phenomena. Chaldean religion was largely centred around civilization.

Babylonian mythology was greatly influenced by their Sumerian counterparts, and was written on clay tablets inscribed with the cuneiform script derived from Sumerian cuneiform. Many Babylonian deities, myths and religious writings are singular to that culture; for example, the uniquely Babylonian deity, Marduk (patron god of Babylon) replaced Enlil as the head of the mythological pantheon. In Babylonian religion, the ritual care and worship of the statues of deities was considered sacred; the gods resided simultaneously in their statues in temples and in the natural forces they embodied.<sup>425</sup>

---

<sup>424</sup> Ibid. page 313-314

<sup>425</sup> McIntosh, J R (2005) *Ancient Mesopotamia: New Perspectives*. Santa Barbara: ABC-CLIO Inc, pp. 90, 199

Probably the most important of the Middle Eastern religions was that which was developed by the peoples of Mesopotamia (i.e. the Sumerians, the Babylonians, and the Assyrians). These peoples, besides spreading their influence, absorbed contributions of the Hittites, the Phrygians, the Ugarites and the Phoenicians. It was in Mesopotamia that the Sumerians implanted reverence for the sky and for high places. Later, when they came into contact with the Semites, new gods were absorbed into the pantheon. The result was a blend of religious thought, Sumerian and Semitic, in which everything (a tree, a stone, a fish, a bird, a person, or even an abstract idea) had a particular significance in the universe.

Of the thousands of recognised gods, only about twenty were important in actual practice. The highest authority was the triad of gods: the sky god Anu, the storm god Enlil, and the water god Ea, or Enki. Later a second triad arose (Astral deities): the moon god Sin, the sun god Shamash, and the goddess Ishtar (sometimes replaced by the weather god Hadad). As Babylon rose to supremacy in the 2d millennium B.C., the local god Marduk became important; a thousand years later Ashur of Assyria took his place. Thus many deities were determined by political conquest as well as by interchange.

There was a gradual development among the Middle Eastern cultures toward belief in a supreme god. One of the most widespread cults was that of the mother goddess (Inanna, Ishtar, Astarte, Cybele; see *Great Mother Goddess*). She was considered as more kindly disposed toward humans than the other deities but was also capable of cruelty and vengeance.

People were, according to Middle Eastern beliefs, created for the benefit of the gods: they were to serve and obey, provide the gods with food, clothing, and shelter, and offer them reverence. There were personal gods who were protective of the individual and linked humans with the great deities, but essentially the ancient Mesopotamian peoples were at the mercy of gods whose behaviour was arbitrary and often abusive.

While originally the functions of priesthood were borne by the city rulers, in later times priests became a separate group and were assigned special and significant duties: some pacified the gods with hymns and liturgy; others were trained in divination and astrology (special functions in Middle Eastern religion that indirectly contributed to the growth of science); others, perhaps the most important, were concerned with protecting people from demons, who were considered actual creatures with distinct shapes and names and were to be repelled by magic, daily recitations, and exorcism.

The epic of creation, the Enuma elish (2d millennium B.C.), describes the battle between the young gods (forces of order), led by Marduk, and the old gods (forces of chaos), led by Tiamat (sea goddess) and her consort Kingu. According to this myth, Marduk created heaven and earth from the corpse of the goddess Tiamat. From the blood of another slain god, Ea created mankind. Finally, Marduk was exalted.

Another well-known myth, symbolising the death and rebirth of vegetation, is that of Ishtar's descent to the underworld in search of her lover Tammuz and her triumphant return to earth. Here is the resurrection theme common to later religions. Perhaps the most famous of all Babylonian myths is the story of Gilgamesh – a flood story. Although the people of the ancient Middle East conceived of a sort of after-existence, they generally believed that a person's fate was decay and dust. Their beliefs foreshadowed the change from polytheism to monotheism, faith in some sort of divine benevolence, and even the idea of salvation so important in the religious mysteries and later in Christianity.<sup>426</sup>

The gods were thought of as residing in cosmic localities, but also as present in their image, or idol, and living in the temple as a king in his palace. The gilded wooden images were in human form, clothed in a variety of ritual garments, and given three meals a day. On occasion the images were carried in ceremonial processions or to visit one another in different sanctuaries. It is very difficult to know what meaning the images and temples of the various gods had for the average person, and even more difficult to ascertain what comfort or help he might expect through worship of them. It seems clear, however, that beyond the expectations of health and success in his earthly life, he was without eternal hope.<sup>427</sup>

### **3.7.6 The Spartan Mind-set**

The Spartans form one of the enduring coordinates of Western culture. No one was more devoted to courage and to duty; no one trained with greater commitment and enthusiasm to achieve his ends. And no one was committed more thoroughly and relentlessly to the annihilation of self and of self-regard in service of the greater communal good. The Spartans

---

<sup>426</sup> Bible History, Ancient Babylonia - Religion of the Ancient Near East [Online] Available from: [http://www.bible-history.com/babylonia/BabyloniaReligion\\_of\\_the\\_Ancient\\_Near\\_Eas.htm](http://www.bible-history.com/babylonia/BabyloniaReligion_of_the_Ancient_Near_Eas.htm) [Accessed: 5 May 2014]

<sup>427</sup> Browning, D, History and Religion of Babylon [Online] Available from: <http://www.studylight.org/dic/hbd/view.cgi?number=T636> [Accessed: 5 May 2014]

were oppressive to the local helots in particular. The Spartans were narrow-minded, and narrow-minded by design.<sup>428</sup>

Sparta or Lacedaemon was an important city-state in ancient Greece. Around 650 BC, it rose to become the foremost military land-power in ancient Greece. Given its military pre-eminence, Sparta was recognised as the overall leader of the combined Greek forces during the Greco-Persian Wars<sup>429</sup>. Sparta was unique in ancient Greece for its social system and constitution, which completely focused on military training and excellence. The Spartans were a minority of the Lakonian population and consisted of poets, magistrates, ambassadors, and governors as well as soldiers.

Lacedaemon was a mythical king of Laconia. The son of Zeus by the nymph Taygete, he married Sparta, the daughter of Eurotas, by whom he became the father of Amyclas, Eurydice, and Asine. He named the country after himself and the city after his wife<sup>430</sup>.

Sparta was above all a militarist state, and emphasis on military fitness began virtually at birth. Shortly after birth, a mother would bathe her child in wine to see whether the child was strong. If the child survived, it was brought before the Gerousia (28 elders over the age of 60, elected for life and usually part of the royal households) by the child's father. The Gerousia then decided whether it was to be reared or not. It is commonly stated that if they considered it "puny and deformed", the baby was thrown into a chasm on Mount Taygetos known euphemistically as the Apothetae. This was, in effect, a primitive form of eugenics. Sparta is often portrayed as being unique in this matter; however there is considerable evidence that the killing of unwanted children was practiced in other Greek regions, including Athens.

Boys were taught to endure hunger and hardship, heat and cold, inclement weather and darkness, pain and humiliation. They were taught to defer to their elders, to speak briefly and to the point, and were encouraged at all times, under the closest supervision, to vie with one another and with other groups for honour. They were taught as well to read and write, though that was not a priority, and they devoted a great deal of time and energy, perhaps surprisingly, to choral singing and communal dance, both arts that were highly developed in Sparta and both arts the Spartans believed had direct relevance to hoplite warfare, which put a premium on morale and on effective, rhythmic communal action.

---

<sup>428</sup> Shutt, T B (2009) *A History of Ancient Sparta*. Recorded Books LLC, p. 5

<sup>429</sup> Cartledge, P (2002) *Sparta and Lakonia: A Regional History 1300 to 362 BC*. Oxford: Routledge, pp.91, 174

<sup>430</sup> Pausanias (1918) *Description of Greece*. Cambridge, MA: London.

The Spartans ate bread, vegetables, and cheese like other Greeks, but their signature dish, in which they appear to have taken pride, was the legendary Spartan “black broth”, a concoction of vinegar, pork, and pig’s blood that the Spartans themselves purportedly relished, and which outsiders seem generally to have found more or less inedible.<sup>431</sup>

Sparta is thought to be the first city to practice athletic nudity, and some scholars claim that it was also the first to formalise pederasty. The Spartans believed that the love of an older, accomplished aristocrat for an adolescent was essential to his formation as a free citizen. The agoge, the education of the ruling class, was, they claim, founded on pederastic relationships required of each citizen, with the lover responsible for the boy's training.

However, other scholars question this interpretation. Some scholars explicitly deny it. Aristotle, in his critique of the Spartan constitution claims that the lack of homosexuality among Spartan men explained the, in his opinion, deplorable power of Spartan women. Aristotle's assessment conforms intriguingly with the argument of modern psychologists that pederasty produces misogyny.

Spartans took the will of the gods very seriously, to the extent that unfavourable omens were entirely capable of stopping a Spartan army in its tracks, whatever the apparent odds in its favour, or of keeping an army immobile, even under heavy attack. It was hard enough to fight against human rivals. The Spartans wanted no part of displeasing the gods. The official tutelary deities of Sparta were Zeus and Athena<sup>432</sup>. The Spartans sacrificed to Eros before every battle, but Eros had many roles and meanings in Ancient Greece, not least of which was as the God of procreation – not something appropriate for homosexual love. Thus the practice neither proves nor disproves the role of pederasty in Spartan society.

One of the most persistent myths about Sparta that has no basis in fact is the notion that Spartan mothers were without feelings toward their off-spring and helped enforce a militaristic lifestyle on their sons and husbands. One source put forth sayings that paraphrase or elaborate on the theme that Spartan mothers rejected their own offspring if they showed any kind of cowardice. In some of these sayings, mothers revile their sons in insulting language merely for surviving a battle. These sayings purporting to be from Spartan women were far more likely to be of Athenian origin and designed to portray Spartan women as unnatural and so undeserving of pity.

---

<sup>431</sup> Shutt, T B (2009) *A History of Ancient Sparta*. Recorded Books LLC, pp. 18-19

<sup>432</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 22



Spartan men remained in the active reserve until age 60. Men were encouraged to marry at age 20 but could not live with their families until they left their active military service at age 30. Then it came to the marriage rituals: the custom was to capture women for marriage. The bridesmaid took charge of the captured girl. She first shaved her head to the scalp, then dressed her in a man's cloak and sandals, and laid her down alone on a mattress in the dark. The bridegroom, who was not drunk and thus not impotent, but was sober as always, first had dinner in the messes, then would slip in, undo her belt, lift her and carry her to the bed. The husband continued to visit his wife in secret for some time after the marriage.

The women of Sparta were the most formidable in the world: the fittest, the most beautiful, the most self-confident, the most outspoken, the richest and the most powerful. Spartan women could rule men because they and they alone, gave birth to men and were trained from birth to do so and to keep them to their task.

Women of the citizen class, unlike their counterparts elsewhere in Greece, were neither confined to the home nor confined by housework, or even by the daily tasks of child-rearing. Helot household workers took care of such duties, and indeed, Laconian nurses were highly valued elsewhere in Greece for their no-nonsense skill in raising fearless, well-behaved children.

Spartan law forbade the marriage of a girl until she was in her late teens or early 20s. The reasons for delaying marriage were to ensure the birth of healthy children, but the effect was to spare Spartan women the hazards and lasting health damage associated with pregnancy among adolescents. Spartan women, better fed from childhood and fit from exercise, stood a far better chance of reaching old age than their sisters in other Greek cities.

Spartan sexual customs seem to have been relatively relaxed in other ways. We are told that an older man who was so inclined might lend out his younger wife to another promising young man in the hope of their producing excellent children and that the women involved were generally pleased with such arrangements, not least because of the power that ensued to them in two households rather than a single one.<sup>433</sup>

---

<sup>433</sup> Ibid. pp.31-32

## **Warrior Philosophers**

The legacy of the Spartans is rooted not only in their martial ability but in their ability to unite body and mind. Their strength of heart, body/mind and spirit eclipsed all other Greeks. It is this heartfelt spirit and the power of their body/mind that deemed them Warrior Philosophers. Their philosophy was one of the heart and nature. The heart of each Spartan fused into a unity of culture and society where equality and community reigned supreme. Socrates stated that the Spartans were the best educated in philosophy and speaking.

There is a commonly accepted truth that in Sparta there was a statue of the Ares, the Greek War God. Ares represented violence, war-like frenzy, slaughter and bloodlust. This statue was wrapped in chains and supposedly symbolised that the spirit of Ares was never to leave the environs of the Spartan lands. It was a well-established fact that Ares (blind violence) symbolised bloodlust. But this was not an attribute of the Spartans. In fact, bloodlust was the antithesis of the Spartan mind and heart. Sparta was not a society obsessed exclusively with war, but a society which placed as high a value on training the intellect as the body. Sparta valued thought and science.

The Spartans recognised the totality of human emotion always striving to achieve harmony within oneself and within the Spartan community even to the extent that there were religious cults based on such things as fear (Ares) and desire (Aphrodite). The importance to the Spartan mind of understanding fear and the detachment to it and the pressing down of it is revealed by the evidence of a temple in Sparta devoted solely to phobos or fear and the chained statue of Ares.

Therefore the aforementioned chains did not symbolise that the spirit of war should never exit the city of Sparta as believed before, but they symbolised the detachment and pressing down of fear and the resultant bloodlust, which was not acceptable in their philosophical culture of perfected minds and hearts.

The statue of Ares was not the only statue that was wrapped in chains. A statue of Aphrodite, the wife of Ares, was similarly fettered. In Greek mythology, there is a concept called Harmonia, meaning any union in which the parts form a seamless whole while retaining their distinct identities. Harmonia is the daughter of sea-born Aphrodite and fiery Ares, identified with Love and Strife, the two primary cosmic forces, which bring about all change in the universe. Harmonia is born of the union of Love and Strife. She reconciles all

oppositions. In other words, the chains on both statues symbolised the concept of control or pressing down the energy of both the blind violence and bloodlust of Ares and the desire of Aphrodite.<sup>434</sup>

### 3.7.7 The Sodomite Mind-set

Sodomy usually includes anal sex, oral sex or sexual activity between a person and a non-human animal (bestiality), but may also include any non-procreative sexual activity. The term *sodomy* originally was commonly restricted to anal sex and is derived from the story of Sodom and Gomorrah<sup>435</sup>. In the various criminal codes, the term *sodomy* has generally been replaced by the term deviant sexual intercourse, which is described as any form of penetrative intercourse or cunnilingus between unmarried persons. The legal use of the term sodomy is restricted to rape cases where anal penetration has taken place.<sup>436 437 438</sup>

In Ezekiel 16, a long comparison is made between Sodom and the Kingdom of Israel.

*Yet you have not merely walked in their ways or done according to their abominations; but, as if that were too little, you acted more corruptly in all your conduct than they.*

*Ezekiel 16:47 NASB*

*Behold, this was the guilt of your sister Sodom: she and her daughters had arrogance, abundant food and careless ease, but she did not help the poor and needy. Thus they were haughty and committed abominations before Me.*

*Ezekiel 16.49–50 NASB*

There is no explicit mention of any sexual sin in Ezekiel's summation, and 'abomination' is used to describe many sins. The Authorized King James Version translates Deuteronomy 23:17 as "*There shall be no whore of the daughters of Israel, nor a sodomite of the sons of Israel*", but the word corresponding to 'sodomite' in the Hebrew original, Qadesh, does not refer to Sodom, and has been translated in the New International Version as 'shrine prostitute'; male shrine prostitutes may have served barren women in fertility rites rather than

---

<sup>434</sup> Warrior Philosophers, Spartans [Online] Available from: <http://www.spartanwarriorphilosophers.com/warrior-philosophers> [Accessed: 5 May 2014]

<sup>435</sup> Genesis 18 and 19

<sup>436</sup> Shirelle Phelps (2001). *World of Criminal Justice*: N-Z. Gale Group, p. 686.

<sup>437</sup> Scheb, J and Scheb J II (2013). *Criminal Law and Procedure*. Cengage Learning, p. 185.

<sup>438</sup> Newton, D (2009). *Gay and Lesbian Rights: A Reference Handbook*. ABC-CLIO, p. 85.

engaging in homosexual acts; this also applies to other instances of the word sodomite in the King James Version.

*<sup>5</sup> I will therefore put you in remembrance, though ye once knew this, how that the Lord, having saved the people out of the land of Egypt, afterward destroyed them that believed not. <sup>6</sup> And the angels which kept not their first estate, but left their own habitation, he hath reserved in everlasting chains under darkness unto the judgment of the great day. <sup>7</sup> Even as Sodom and Gomorrah, and the cities about them in like manner, giving themselves over to fornication, and going after strange flesh, are set forth for an example, suffering the vengeance of eternal fire.*

*Jude 1:5-7*

The Greek word in the New Testament from which the phrase is translated 'giving themselves over to fornication', is *ekporneuō* ("ek" and "porneuō"). As one word it is not used elsewhere in the New Testament, but occurs in the Septuagint to denote whoredom<sup>439</sup>. Some modern translations as the NIV render it as "sexual immorality". The Greek words for "strange flesh" are *heteros*, which almost always basically denotes "another/other", and *sarx*, a common word for "flesh", usually referring to the physical body or the nature of man or of an ordinance.

The Epistle of Jude in the New Testament echoes the Genesis narrative and potentially adds the sexually immoral aspects of Sodom's sins: '*...just as Sodom and Gomorrah and the surrounding cities, which likewise indulged in sexual immorality and pursued unnatural desire, serve as an example by undergoing a punishment of eternal fire*'.<sup>440</sup> The phrase rendered "sexual immorality and unnatural desire" is translated "strange flesh" or "false flesh", but it is not entirely clear to what it refers.

One theory is that it is just a reference to the 'strange flesh' of the intended rape victims, who were angels, not men. Countering this is traditional interpretation which notes that the angels were sent to investigate an ongoing regional problem<sup>441</sup> of fornication, and extraordinarily so, that of a homosexual nature, "out of the order of nature". *Strange* is understood to mean

---

<sup>439</sup> Genesis 38:24 and Exodus 34:15

<sup>440</sup> Jude verse 7 (English Standard Version)

<sup>441</sup> Genesis 18

"outside the moral law",<sup>442</sup> while it is doubted that either Lot or the men of Sodom understood that the strangers were angels at the time.

The Hellenistic Jewish philosopher Philo (20 BC-50 AD) described the inhabitants of Sodom in an extra biblical account<sup>443</sup>:

*As men, being unable to bear discreetly a satiety of these things, get restive like cattle, and become stiff-necked, and discard the laws of nature, pursuing a great and intemperate indulgence of gluttony, and drinking, and unlawful connections; for not only did they go mad after other women, and defile the marriage bed of others, but also those who were men lusted after one another, doing unseemly things, and not regarding or respecting their common nature, and though eager for children, they were convicted by having only an abortive offspring; but the conviction produced no advantage, since they were overcome by violent desire; and so by degrees, the men became accustomed to be treated like women, and in this way engendered among themselves the disease of females, and intolerable evil; for they not only, as to effeminacy and delicacy, became like women in their persons, but they also made their souls most ignoble, corrupting in this way the whole race of men, as far as depended on them.*

The Jewish historian, Josephus, used the term *Sodomites* in summarising the Genesis narrative<sup>444</sup>:

*About this time the Sodomites grew proud, on account of their riches and great wealth; they became unjust towards men, and impious towards God, in so much that they did not call to mind the advantages they received from him: they hated strangers, and abused themselves with Sodomitical practices. Now when the Sodomites saw the young men to be of beautiful countenances, and this to an extraordinary degree, and that they took up their lodgings with Lot, they resolved themselves to enjoy these beautiful boys by force and violence; and when Lot exhorted them to sobriety, and not to offer any thing immodest to the strangers, but to have regard to their lodging in his house; and promised that if their inclinations could not be governed, he would expose his daughters to their lust, instead of these strangers; neither thus were they made ashamed.*

---

<sup>442</sup> Romans 7:3; Galatians 1:6

<sup>443</sup> Joe, The Works of Philo [Online] Available from: <http://www.scribd.com/doc/8326130/The-Works-of-Philo> [Accessed: 29 July 2014]

<sup>444</sup> Ibid.

His assessment goes beyond the Biblical data, though it is seen by conservatives as defining what manner of fornication<sup>445</sup> Sodom was given to.

The primarily sexual meaning of the word *sodomia* for Christians did not evolve before the 6th century AD. Roman Emperor Justinian I declared that Sodom's sin had been specifically same-sex activities and desire for them.

St. John Chrysostom in the 4th century regarded such as worse than murder, while Paul the Apostle in the Epistle to the Romans referred to same sex relations as "shameful lust" and which acts were contrary to nature, with men suffering a "due penalty" in their bodies. Benedictus Levita ('Benedict the Levite') demanded burning at the stake for carnal sins (850 AD). Burning had been part of the standard penalty for homosexual behaviour particularly common in Germanic protohistory (as according to Germanic folklore, sexual deviance and especially same-sex desire were caused by a form of malevolence or spiritual evil called *nith*, rendering those people characterised by it as non-human fiends, as *nithings*).

Benedict broadened the meaning for *sodomy* to all sexual acts not related to procreation that were therefore deemed counter to nature (so for instance, even solitary masturbation and anal intercourse between a male and a female were covered), while among these he still emphasised all interpersonal acts not taking place between human men and women, especially homosexuality. Benedict's rationale was that the punishment of such acts was in order to protect all Christianity from divine punishments such as natural disasters for carnal sins committed by individuals, but also for heresy, superstition and heathenry.

In 1184, the sects of Cathars and Waldensians were a common target, and these heretics were not only persecuted for alleged Satanism but were increasingly accused of fornication and sodomy. In 1307, accusations of sodomy and homosexuality were major charges leveled during the Trial of the Knights Templar. Some of these charges were specifically directed at the Grand Master of the order, Jacques de Molay. It is this event, which led into the medieval and early-modern witch hunts that were also largely connoted with sodomy.

### **Sodom and Gomorrah**

Sodom and Gomorrah are cities mentioned in the book of Genesis that suffered intense fire from heaven because of their constant disobedience and unrestrained acceptance of sin.

---

<sup>445</sup> Jude 1:7

These cities were destroyed by God because of the evil of their inhabitants. The story of the Sodom's destruction by fire from heaven and of Abraham's multiple failed attempts to intercede with God for the prevention of that destruction appears in Genesis 18-19. God did not find even ten righteous people in Sodom.

*<sup>24</sup> Then the Lord rained on Sodom and on Gomorrah brimstone and fire from the Lord out of the heavens. <sup>25</sup> He overthrew, destroyed, and ended those cities, and all the valley and all the inhabitants of the cities, and what grew on the ground.*

*Genesis 19:24-25*

That place was so given over to its vile corruptions that no hope remained. God's wrath was poured out upon the people of the cities because of their sins. Where Sodom once stood there is now the Dead Sea – nothing grows there.<sup>446</sup>

The New Testament definition for *sodomy* is:

*<sup>24</sup> Therefore God gave them up in the lusts of their [own] hearts to sexual impurity, to the dishonouring of their bodies among themselves [abandoning them to the degrading power of sin], <sup>25</sup> Because they exchanged the truth of God for a lie and worshiped and served the creature rather than the Creator, Who is blessed forever! Amen (so be it). <sup>26</sup> For this reason God gave them over and abandoned them to vile affections and degrading passions. For their women exchanged their natural function for an unnatural and abnormal one, <sup>27</sup> And the men also turned from natural relations with women and were set ablaze (burning out, consumed) with lust for one another—men committing shameful acts with men and suffering in their own bodies and personalities the inevitable consequences and penalty of their wrong-doing and going astray, which was [their] fitting retribution.*

*Romans 1:24-27*

The sodomite mind-set is one of constant acceptance and practice of unacceptable sin. It is a habitual lifestyle. Today, the majority freely accepts the unacceptable things of this world, such as same sex marriage, abortion and marital unfaithfulness. Sex is a selfish act, a conquest of personal fulfilment. That's the mind-set of most people regarding sex, even if it's

---

<sup>446</sup> Fathers Sword, A Sodomite Mindset [Online] Available from: <http://fatherssword.wordpress.com/tag/sword/> [Accessed: 5 May 2014]

only subconscious. For the most part, today's society celebrates the process of 'hook up, shack up, and break up'<sup>447</sup>.

The sodomite mind-set has taken on the form of a worldly mind-set with the following characteristics.<sup>448</sup>

The worldly mind-set has a different standard of authority. The age today is one of relativism. Relativism asserts that every man is a law to himself. What is right for one person may not be right for another. The world mind-set has different priorities. The pursuit of pleasure, hedonism, has become life's chief goal. That pleasure may be sexual licentiousness, the accumulation of things or some other personally defined goal. The worldly mind-set has different morals. Today the morally acceptable behaviour includes such things as easy divorce and remarriage, immodest dress, fornication, adultery and abortion. Even as first century pagans accepted infanticide, polygamy, fornication, and other forms of immorality as acceptable behaviour, so does this age have a different set of moral values".<sup>449</sup>

*Note the spiritual impact of sodomy as described in Chapter 5 - 1.4.11.5 Sodomy*

### **3.7.8 The Victim Mind-set**

A victim mind-set opens the door for the victim spirit. There are three separate mental pitfalls that the habitual victim falls into. The most flagrant indicator of a victim mind-set (with or without demonic attachment) is that the victim can explain why it is right for things to be wrong, and more specifically, why it is right for them to stay in a situation where they are consistently victimised. This is readily seen in many battered wives. Most can easily explain away being hit. In some cases, this is simply denial. A woman pretends the violence was a one-time incident. In other cases, they admit there is a problem but they stay because of their love for him or his love for them. At times, they will point to all manner of external causes for the beating such as their husband having a bad day at the office or getting a ticket on the way home. In a worst case scenario, they will put the blame on themselves, saying with conviction that it was understandable that they got hit, because, after all, they failed to get dinner on the table at the appointed time.

---

<sup>447</sup> Fox News, What the Bible really says about sex [Online] Available from: <http://www.foxnews.com/opinion/2012/01/03/what-bible-really-says-about-sex/> [Accessed: 17 May 2014]

<sup>448</sup> Truth Magazine, The Worldly Mindset [Online] Available from: <http://www.truthmagazine.com/the-worldly-mindset> [Accessed: 17 May 2014]

<sup>449</sup> Blanton, R, Sodomites [Online] Available from: <http://www.biblebelievers.com/Sodomites.html> [Accessed: 5 May 2014]



All of these are a victim's rationalisations to justify staying in a wounding and dangerous situation. The truth is, most of the time a woman is trapped. She can't afford to leave, she is afraid of what he would do if she left, she is ashamed to let people know that her marriage is in trouble or she is emotionally dependent on the man. But victims avoid facing the truth about hard situations and instead they deceive themselves with some explanation about why it is right for things to be wrong.

Many victims will stay in an exploitive job situation, even to the point where the boss is not fulfilling the minimum requirements of the law. Scripture clearly teaches that the labourer should be paid a fair wage, on time. The victim will say that he is staying in the abuse in order to show his non-Christian boss the love of Christ and hopefully to witness to him some day. While that may be the call of God in some situations, most of the time, the truth is that the employee does not think he can find another job, or he can't afford to be without a job, but he can't face those truths about himself. So, as a professional victim, he devises an explanation as to why it is right for things to be wrong.

There are predators in religious circles too. Victims will stay under an abusive spiritual leader because they have been taught that submission to abuse is Godly and that God is building character in them through what they suffer in church. While it is certainly true that God calls the believer to a broad variety of suffering, for his good, in many cases the individual staying in an abusive church is a victim who has devised a theological reason for why it is right for things to be wrong.

The saddest illustration of this truth is the victims of molestation who have been taught that the intrusive visitations are actually good because it makes them more loved and appreciated by their tormentor. They are pampered and made to feel special during the daylight hours to compensate up for what happens in the darkness. No matter how much they believe that it is right for things to be wrong, it is still utterly wrong. This is why the fundamental victim mind-set needs to be changed.

There are times God puts the believer in a painful situation and expects him to stay there. Those times need to be wisely distinguished from those situations where there is a proper, albeit painful, way out. Someone who walks in dominion looks at the hard choices with honesty. Someone with a victim mind-set is their own spin doctor and can explain to their own satisfaction why it is right for things to be wrong.

A second common pattern in the thoughts of habitual victims is to assume the worst. After being repeatedly traumatised in the past, they gather up those experiences and project them on the future. For example a person who had the bad medical experiences, eventually began to proclaim loudly and widely that all doctors were incompetent and that he was sure this next surgery would be ineffective as well. While it is true that he had genuinely had a series of bad experiences with the medical profession (compliments of his victim spirit) it is not true that all doctors are incompetent, negligent or evil.

When he began to proclaim untruth, he brought his will into alignment with the father of lies. In ways we don't fully understand, this empowered the enemy to some degree, and the demons in turn caused the next doctor he saw to operate well below his normal level of expertise. The habitual victim, with or without a demon, needs to speak the truth. An unbroken string of problems in the past does not mean the future must be the same. The truth is, patterns can change, but they must begin to change within the victim, before one will see great changes in the world around the victim. Resigned, hopeless endurance is not one of the fruits of the Holy Spirit. It is the fruit of a great deal of pain and it is an indicator of a victim spirit mind-set.

Once a person has been repeatedly victimised and he has decided it is always going to be this way, the logical extension is that he is not worth much. Hence a habitual victim will frequently develop a lifestyle of never asking for anything they have a right to have.

For example, the victim will endure all manner of inconvenience in their apartment, rather than ask the landlord to make the repairs. Even though they have faithfully paid the rent for years and repairs are part of the rental agreement, the victim knows it will cost time and money for the landlord to make the repairs and cannot bring himself to impose this legal, righteous liability on the landlord. Therefore, he evolves some elaborate reason why it is right for things to be wrong, and he refuses to alert the landlord to a chronic problem. Victims will also refuse to ask a company to honour a warranty on a purchased item or the repair of vehicle.

The demons certainly encourage poor thinking and they benefit from it. Demons of victimisation can accomplish a lot of mischief, even before these three mind-sets are

established by repeated victimisation. However, for a person to remain free from victim demons, they must recognise and change their victim mind-sets.<sup>450</sup>

### 3.8. THE SPIRIT

It's in man's spirit that he has meaning and purpose in life. At the deepest level, the spirit of a person gives meaning and purpose, and the spirit of man enables him to love one another, love self and love God. It's through the spirit that man has communion and fellowship with God. The spirit of a person gives intuition between right and wrong. Man's spiritual health will have a significant impact on his emotional health which will have a major influence on his physical health. The inter-connection between the spirit, the soul and the body is certainly a complex connection; nevertheless, the connection is very real.<sup>451</sup>

#### 3.8.1 The Mind of the Spirit

Dr Ana Mendez-Ferrell<sup>452</sup> explains in her book *Iniquity* that the spirit of a man consists of the following different parts<sup>453</sup>.

##### 3.8.1.1 Communion

This part of man's spirit is united with God through the seed of His Son implanted within him. This is the organ that determines if a spirit is alive or dead in relation to God. This is one of the components in which God's voice is clearly heard and where He manifests His glorious intimacy which allows an individual to feel he is one with the Holy Spirit. It is in this area that the lordship of Jesus Christ is established, directing and reigning in a believer's life.

This is also the place where the visions and revelations from the Spirit of God come to man, and where the Lord manifests in visible form to the ones who love Him and who have developed a life in the Spirit. Communion is the central part of the spiritual body and is the

---

<sup>450</sup> Burk, A (2001) *Overcoming the Victim Spirit*. USA: Plumline Ministries, pp. 20-26

<sup>451</sup> Faith and Health Connection, Spirit Soul and Body [Online] Available from: [http://www.faithandhealthconnection.org/the\\_connection/spirit-soul-and-body/](http://www.faithandhealthconnection.org/the_connection/spirit-soul-and-body/) [Accessed: 28 March 2014]

<sup>452</sup> Dr Ana Méndez Ferrell was saved in 1985 while confined in a mental hospital, after having been a voodoo priestess. The miraculous power of God completely delivered her and transformed her into one of His healing generals, destroying the works of the devil. Today, she ministers in more than 50 nations, training the army of God to tear down the strongholds of evil and usher in the glory of God. She is a bestselling author and prolific writer with books translated into more than a dozen languages.

<sup>453</sup> Mendez-Ferrell, A (2011) *Iniquity*. Florida: Voice of the Light Ministries, pp. 24-34.

'Holy of Holies' of man's temple. This place is possessed by the prince of darkness whenever someone has not come to Christ.

The life of God is conceived in this region, beginning with the new birth and eventually a new creature. Regeneration starts here, making us alive by the Spirit of resurrection. Communion is connected to all other parts of our spirit, and functions as the governing place of our spiritual being, just like the heart is the very marrow of the inner man. Communion is also the part that communicates man's spirit with his soul, specifically with his heart, the storehouse of his emotions and character.

### **3.8.1.2 Intuition**

Intuition represents the antennae connecting the natural world to the spiritual world. It makes an individual aware of a demonic presence, an angelic presence or a human spirit. Through intuition, a person receives revelation from God. Many prophetic words emanate from the ability of this part of man's spirit to receive information about people. Gifts of the Holy Spirit such as words of knowledge and prophecy are manifested from this part of man's spirit.

### **3.8.1.3 Conscience**

This is the part of man's spirit where the fear of God and the wisdom of God reside, the place where an individual's being knows the difference between right and wrong without ever having read the Bible. Conscience, just as communion and other parts of the spirit, is intimately tied to the heart of man. This is why, on several occasions, the reasoning of the heart differs from that of the mind when it has not been renewed and is conformed to this world. This part of the spirit awakened when man ate the fruit of the tree of knowledge of good and evil. When man continually sins, that part of God connected to his conscience, called the 'fear of God', departs away from him. This causes the conscience to harden, becoming insensitive to the will of God and ultimately producing thick veils that make a conscience to be seared.

### 3.8.1.4 The Mind of the Spirit

The mind of the spirit<sup>454</sup> consists of various parts: understanding, spiritual intelligence and wisdom of God. The mind of the spirit is where the knowledge of God rests, where an individual supernaturally receives from Him knowledge that has never been taught by anyone. This is the part of man's spirit that receives the mind of Christ and illuminates a person to understand something he could not understand before. This is the place where God reveals the great mysteries of science either to the righteous or the unjust.

It is here where Paul prays for the eyes of their spiritual understanding to be opened for the believer to understand the riches of His glory.

*<sup>17</sup> [For I always pray to] the God of our Lord Jesus Christ, the Father of glory, that He may grant you a spirit of wisdom and revelation [of insight into mysteries and secrets] in the [deep and intimate] knowledge of Him,<sup>18</sup> By having the eyes of your heart flooded with light, so that you can know and understand the hope to which He has called you, and how rich is His glorious inheritance in the saints (His set-apart ones), <sup>19</sup> And [so that you can know and understand] what is the immeasurable and unlimited and surpassing greatness of His power in and for us who believe, as demonstrated in the working of His mighty strength, <sup>20</sup> Which He exerted in Christ when He raised Him from the dead and seated Him at His [own] right hand in the heavenly [places]*

*Ephesians 1:17-20*

In this Scripture one can see the different parts of man's spirit. Paul is praying for them to be awakened and activated in the believer. One can see the knowledge of God penetrating intuition, a person's understanding bringing light to the mind of his spirit and the area of his spiritual inheritance, which is the location of his spiritual genetics.

Another part of the spirit is the area of 'The power of God' which receives the power of resurrection. It is in this part of the understanding where the light of God is established and where we may continue to grow in the light.

---

<sup>454</sup> Etymology: Spirit: mid-13c., "animating or vital principle in man and animals," from Anglo-French *spirit*, Old French *esprit* "spirit, soul" (12c., Modern French *esprit*) and directly from Latin *spiritus* "a breathing (respiration, and of the wind), breath; breath of a god," hence "inspiration; breath of life," hence "life;" also "disposition, character; high spirit, vigor, courage; pride, arrogance," related to *spirare* "to breathe," from PIE *\*(s)peis-* "to blow" (cognates: Old Church Slavonic *pisto* "to play on the flute"). <http://www.etymonline.com>

### **3.8.1.5 Spiritual Senses**

Man's spirit has different senses to perceive the invisible world. These senses help the believer to detect the origin of the things he perceives, whether from God or the darkness. This is what is known as spiritual discernment.

Every human spirit has got eyes, ears, taste, touch and smell. Visions and ecstasies are observed through the spiritual eyes. The voice of God, angels and demons are heard through the spiritual ears. A person can also experience taste. Spiritual touch is perhaps the most developed sense, the sensations of the Holy Spirit or the feeling of God embracing a believer. Many times during spiritual warfare, one can feel the spirit of death as coldness throughout the body even though the temperature may be warm. Sometimes a developed spirit will perceive spiritual fragrances, aromas coming from the presence of God, or the stench of unclean spirits. The senses of the spirit are connected to the senses of the soul and complement one another.

### **3.8.1.6 Seat of Power**

Man's spirit possesses an area where the power of God resides. It is through this part of his spirit that the gifts of miracles, healing and wonders of God are manifested. It is like the engine of the spirit. The Holy Spirit, therefore, can fill different areas of the spirit, activating them one by one, until arriving at spiritual fullness. That is why one observes believers in whom one part of their spirit is much more developed than others. Certain believers have developed a great intuition, or they move in the prophetic without any problems, but they are ineffective in the areas of power. The truth is that the gifts of the Spirit come through different parts of the believer's being and develop in corresponding areas.

### **3.8.1.7 Inheritance**

The spiritual body has a spiritual intangible DNA where all the information proceeding from generation to generation is recorded with the name of iniquity. God provided man with a redeemed inheritance, founded in the Spirit of Christ, which must replace a person's cursed inheritance.

### **3.9. MENTAL DEATH**

Exposure to extreme interpersonal stress, exemplified by the experience of torture, represents a threat to the psychological integrity of the victim. The experience is likely to result in mental death, in the loss of the victim's pre-trauma identity. Mental death is characterised by a loss of core beliefs and values, distrust and alienation from others, shame and guilt, and a sense of being permanently damaged.

Mental death can occur in the context of totalitarian control, characterised by entrapment and wanton harm-doing by people to people. While there are many different forms of totalitarian control and each form is associated with mental death, totalitarian control is most fully and most horrifically exemplified by the experience of torture.

People who have experienced mental death as a result of torture are very likely to meet diagnostic criteria for PTSD, but they are also likely to experience additional symptoms. The fact that these symptoms are reliably associated with the experience of torture, but are not reliably associated with post-traumatic stress syndromes not involving totalitarian control, suggests that these symptoms are directly linked to at least some of the conditions that are intrinsic to torture.

Therefore, the essence of mental death is the loss of identity, defined as the perception of sameness and continuity of the self, and the self in relation to others, based on the relative constancy of one's assumptions, beliefs, values, attitudes and behaviour. In addition, it must be understood that the extent of loss mentioned may vary across individuals and within individuals over time; it is never absolute as in physical death. The processes that lead to mental death are those that impact adversely on those things that define identity, namely, the relative constancy of one's assumptions, beliefs, values, attitudes and behaviour.

Changes in core beliefs are a feature of post-trauma reactions, and traumatic experiences can shatter an individual's core assumptions. People form core assumptions about the self and the world through early life experiences, and these assumptions are embedded in a personal theory referred to as an 'assumptive world'. The assumptive world is defined as a cognitive structure which determines a person's behaviour. When a traumatic event occurs, a person's assumptive world may be shattered, entailing a shift from one pole of a dimension (e.g. "the world is a safe place") to the opposite pole of that dimension (e.g. "the world is a

dangerous place”). Shattering events are outside the range of normal and predictable life experiences, especially events that threaten a person’s mortality.

There are three core assumptions about the self and the relationship to the world that are shattered by traumatic events: (1) the self is invulnerable; (2) the world is meaningful (i.e. orderly and comprehensible); and (3) the self is autonomous and positive.

These assumptions contribute to a view of the world as controllable (an autonomous agent can act effectively on an understandable world). Hence, when these assumptions are shattered through traumatic experiences, the foundations for the person’s perceptions of control are damaged and the individual loses faith in his ability to understand and predict events.

The experience of totalitarian control damages an individual’s perception of self as an autonomous being, and perceptions of lost autonomy predict the development of PTSD. Victims’ perceptions of mental defeat, alienation and permanent change were related to more severe presentations of PTSD. The perception of lost autonomy during victimisation corresponded with the ending of efforts to maintain identity, and a loss of the belief that one could exercise free will and choice. However, not all survivors who experience a loss of autonomy experience mental defeat, which suggests that mental defeat represents a more severe form of damage to the self, perhaps an intermediate step on the way to mental death or complete loss of identity.<sup>455</sup>

The infiltration of subliminal mind control will lead to mental oblivion, and in the ultimate stage, to mental death.

### **3.10. THE MAD MIND**

The human mind can be mad without any prominent sign of a visible ailment. Many whose minds or hearts are mad look like perfect gentlemen in the public. The greatest form of insanity is that which can be found in the mind. It is easy to detect or identify a crazy person on the street, but it is very difficult to detect secret madness of the heart. The truth is that the

---

<sup>455</sup> Ebert, A & Dyck M J (2004) *The Experience of Mental Death: The Core Feature of Complex PTSD*. Australia: Curtin University of Technology, pp. 2-28



secret madness of the mind is as serious as the insanity which makes the patient loses touch with reality.<sup>456</sup>

The Bible has identified what is regarded as the madness of the mind. This shocking revelation is found in the book of Ecclesiastes:

*This evil is in all that is done under the sun: one fate comes to all. Also the hearts of men are full of evil, and madness is in their hearts while they live, and after that they go to the dead.*

*Ecclesiastes 9:3*

There is a strong link between the mind and the conscience. The conscience is a reflection of what is on the human mind. A good heart will always produce a wholesome conscience. That is why the Bible warns: "*Keep thy heart with all diligence; for out of it are the issues of life*"<sup>457</sup>. Here, the Bible warns every believer to protect the mind from all evil influences.

The mind is the only link which man has with God. Man is made alive unto God through his mind. He perceives the truth of the Scriptures with his heart and he makes all his efforts towards worshipping God through the human mind. That is why the Bible commands,

*And you shall love the Lord your God out of and with your whole heart and out of and with all your soul (your life) and out of and with all your mind (with your faculty of thought and your moral understanding) and out of and with all your strength.*

*Mark 12:30*

It is important to keep the mind in good condition. If anything goes wrong with the mind, the whole of your life will be turned upside down. The Bible makes it very clear that the heart of man is full of evil and that madness resides in the hearts of men and women. Many people cannot control the words they speak because of the madness of the mind. There are various levels of madness: there is hyper-madness and there is mild-madness, there is partial madness and there is complete madness.

---

<sup>456</sup> Olukoya, D (2003) The Madness of the Heart. Nigeria. MFM Ministries, pp. 25-52

<sup>457</sup> Proverbs 4:23

Dr D K Olukoya<sup>458</sup> defines the symptoms of a mad mind in his book, *The Madness of the Heart*, as follows<sup>459</sup>:

It is spiritual madness for anyone to sit down and sing about God's sufficient grace one moment and to lament his problems of life next moment. The contradiction which is expressed shows that such a person is suffering from the madness of the mind. Worry and anxiety are among the children of God greatest problems today.

Feeling that one is completely useless is another symptom of a mad mind. Some people write themselves off completely by concluding, that they are good for nothing or useless. Such people go about complaining: "What kind of life is this? Everything is upside down. Maybe, I should end it all".

Depression is one of the most terrible problems that can plague the human heart. The Bible calls it the spirit of heaviness. There is a heavy load on the minds of those who are going through moments of depression. Some people become so depressed that they do not want to talk to anybody. There are others who become so depressed that they lock themselves up in a room for several days.

Many people are so high-minded that they live in the world of fantasy. They mind high things and esteem themselves above measure. High-mindedness will lead to unreasonable actions, converting a person into a victim of the madness of the mind. It will corrupt the conscience.

There is a kind of sadness that is not ordinary. Some people become sad for no just reason. They are sad before they go to bed at night and they wake up early in the morning feeling terribly sad. This is evidence that the mind is mad. Many people feel that their situation is completely hopeless.

Many people feel guilty for what does not really exist. The guilt, which many people are going through today, does not emanate from the devil, the accuser of the brethren. It is self-made. This guilt, which an individual has allowed to hang on his mind like a dark cloud, emanates from his own heart, not from the devil.

---

<sup>458</sup> Dr D K Olukoya is the General Overseer of the Mountain of Fire and Miracles Ministries and the Battle Cry Christian Ministries. The Mountain of Fire and Miracles Ministries' headquarters in Lagos, Nigeria, is the largest single Christian congregation in Africa with attendance of over 100,000 in single meetings. Anointed by God, he is a prophet, evangelist, teacher and preacher of the Word of God.

<sup>459</sup> Olukoya, D (2003) *The Madness of the Heart*. Nigeria. MFM Ministries, pp. 25-52

Constant dwelling in the past is yet another symptom of the mad mind: those who dwell in the past experience madness of the mind. Some people spend their lives living in the distant past. A person must not worry about previous situations and problems since he cannot go back to them.

An inability to concentrate, a lack of confidence and a lack of motivation are symptoms of a mad mind. A lot of people cannot control their minds. They cannot focus their hearts on a single subject or matter. They vacillate over several matters and situations without being able to lay hold on any one thing. People who simmer in a lack of self-confidence feel timid and are not able to face anything without feeling inferior. This category of people faces life situations without any bit of interest or excitement.

More symptoms of a mad mind include anger, fear of death, addiction to weeping and feeling isolated. Many people erupt into violent anger when there is no reason to do so. Many people spend all their lives thinking of death. There are people who are easily moved to tears whenever there is a little problem, living as if they are addicted to crying. Some people give the impression that everyone on earth is against them. But even if everyone on earth was against a person, the fact that God is on his side makes him an overcomer.

The human mind is the greatest vagabond in the universe. An individual might be in a particular place while his mind has travelled thousands of miles away. If a person refuses to put that kind of vagabond condition of the mind under control, it will eventually lead him into serious problems.

The last symptom of a mad mind is a mind that is also an abode of evil cobwebs. Such people are fond of running away from God when God is trying to reach out to them. The only thing that can bring progress into people's lives is change. Unfortunately, many hate change. They desire for things to continue the same way. Many people who claim that they have open minds are only deceiving themselves. Their minds are closed. Anyone who constantly thinks of himself will end up becoming discouraged. If a person centres all his thoughts on himself, he will easily tire of himself.

A testimony from a lady called Martha<sup>460</sup>:

*I grew up in a loving home – fun, happy & busy. At the age of 16, my dad died in an accident. It opened the door to a lot of loneliness and abandonment and rejection in my heart. I grew up in the church and I kept studying the bible intensely, praying, going to Christian counselors, etc. No one could help me with the growing torment in my mind. I couldn't get what I knew was available from God – love, peace, joy. And I didn't understand what was wrong! And that only compounded the insanity.*

### 3.11. THE BATTLE FOR THE MIND

#### 3.11.1 The Realm of Darkness

For most people, the term 'spiritual warfare' introduces a new, but not necessarily welcome dimension in their Christian experience. The thought of facing evil spirits in battle is an unsettling concept, especially since an individual comes to Jesus as lost sheep, not as a warrior. Ultimately, some of the believers may never actually initiate spiritual warfare, but all of God's children must face the fact that the devil has initiated warfare against them. Therefore, it is essential to a believer's basic well-being that he discerns the areas of his nature which are unguarded and open to satanic assault.<sup>461</sup>

*And angels who did not keep (care for, guard, and hold to) their own first place of power but abandoned their proper dwelling place—these He has reserved in custody in eternal chains (bonds) under the thick gloom of utter darkness until the judgment and doom of the great day.*

*Jude 6*

When Satan rebelled against God, he was placed under eternal judgment in what the Bible calls pits or bonds of darkness. The devil, and the fallen angels with him, has been relegated to live in darkness. This darkness does not simply mean 'lightless regions' or areas void of visible light. The eternal darkness to which this Scripture refers is essentially a moral darkness, which does ultimately degenerate to literal darkness. However, its cause is not simply the absence of light; it is the absence of God, Who is light.

---

<sup>460</sup> Wright, H, Overcoming Abandonment [Online] Available from: [http://www.beinhealth.com/public/content/overcoming-abandonment?theme=bi\\_h\\_r1](http://www.beinhealth.com/public/content/overcoming-abandonment?theme=bi_h_r1) [Accessed: 30 September 2014]

<sup>461</sup> Frangipane, F (1987) The Three Battlegrounds. New Wine Press: England, pp. 15-21

It is vital to recognise that this darkness to which Satan has been banished is not limited to areas outside of humanity. Unlike those who do not know Jesus, however, the believer has been delivered out of the domain or 'authority' of darkness<sup>462</sup>. He is not trapped in darkness if he has been born of Light. But if he tolerates darkness through tolerance of sin, he leaves himself vulnerable for satanic assault. For wherever there is wilful disobedience to the Word of God, there is spiritual darkness and the potential for demonic activity. Thus Jesus warned, "Take heed that the light which is in you be not in darkness"<sup>463</sup>. There is a light in the believer.

*The spirit of man [that factor in human personality which proceeds immediately from God] is the lamp of the Lord.*

*Proverbs 20:27*

Man's spirit, illuminated by the Spirit of Christ, becomes the 'lamp of the Lord' through which He searches the person's heart. There is indeed a holy radiance surrounding a true Spirit-filled Christian. But when he harbours sin, the light which is in him is 'in darkness'. Satan has a legal access, given to him by God, to dwell in the domain of darkness. The devil can traffic in any area of darkness, even the darkness that still exists in a believer's heart. It is these areas he hides in darkness that are the very areas of his future defeat. Often the battle one faces will not cease until the darkness that is within is discovered and repented. If a person will be effective in spiritual warfare, he must be discerning of his own heart; he must walk humbly with God. His first course of action must be 'Submit ... to God'. Then, as he 'resists the devil', he will flee<sup>464</sup>.

The good news is that Satan will never be given permission to destroy the saints. Rather, he is limited to sifting them 'like wheat'.<sup>465</sup> There is wheat inside each of every person. The outcome of this type of satanic assault, which is permitted through the permissive will of God, is to cleanse the soul of pride and produce greater meekness and transparency in one's life. It may feel terrible, but God causes it to work for good. The husk-like outer nature must die to facilitate the breaking forth of the wheat-like nature of the new creation man. Both the chaff and the husk are necessary; they provide protection for man from the harsh elements of this life. But before God can truly use a person, in one way or another, he will pass through a time of threshing.

---

<sup>462</sup> Colossians 1:13

<sup>463</sup> Luke 11:35 KJ

<sup>464</sup> James 4:7

<sup>465</sup> Luke 22:31-32

God can never entrust His Kingdom to anyone who has not been broken of pride, for pride is the armour of darkness itself. A person's ignorance of the areas of darkness within him leave him open to attack. But the Lord will ask: 'Do you know the areas where you are vulnerable to satanic assault?' Jesus reveals the sin in a person's heart because He wants to destroy the works of the devil. Man's greatest defence against the devil is to maintain an honest heart before God.

When the Holy Spirit shows an area that needs repentance, the person must overcome the instinct to defend himself. He must silence the little lawyer who steps out from a dark closet in his mind, pleading, 'My client is not so bad'. Your 'defence attorney' (Jesus) will defend him until the day he dies and if he listens to him, he will never see what is wrong in him, nor face what needs to change. For a person to succeed in warfare, his self-preservation instincts must be submitted to the Lord Jesus, for Christ alone is his true advocate:

*But He gives us more and more (grace power of the Holy Spirit, to meet this evil tendency and all others fully). That is why He says, God sets Himself against the proud and haughty, but gives grace [continually] to the lowly (those who are humble enough to receive it)*

*James 4:6*

If God is opposed to the proud, and if a person is too proud to humble himself and admit he was wrong, then God is opposed to him.

*So be subject to God. Resist the devil [stand firm against him], and he will flee from you.*

*James 4:7*

This verse is usually all by itself as a monument to spiritual warfare. However, it is in the context of repentance, humility and possessing a clean heart that man finds Satan fleeing from him. Man must go beyond a vague submission to God; man must submit the exact area of his personal battle to Him. When he comes against the power of the devil, it must be from a heart in submission to Jesus.

Francis Frangipane summarises this in a spiritual rule or principal<sup>466</sup>:

*Victory begins with the name of Jesus on your lips; but it will not be consummated until the nature of Jesus is in your heart.*

This rule applies to every facet of spiritual warfare. Indeed, Satan will be allowed to come against the area of the believer's weakness until he realises God's only answer is to become Christ-like. As the believer begins to appropriate not just the name of Jesus, but His nature as well, the adversary will withdraw. Satan will not continue to assault an individual if the circumstances the devil designed to destroy man are now working to perfect him.

In this pilgrimage of the soul to find itself, man must surrender what he was to God, for unless he loses his life to Jesus, he cannot find it. When a person comes to Christ, all that he is in nature and character is destined to change. The Bible confirms that God has provided for him a new heart, a new mind, a new spirit, a new nature and, ultimately, even a new name.<sup>467</sup>

When a person was born again, he received the very Spirit of God, and through His Spirit he was birthed into another realm: the Kingdom of Heaven. Though his feet are still on earth, through the vehicle of the Holy Spirit, he is united to the actual Person of Jesus Christ, Who is seated at the throne of God. Even as his limbs are attached to his torso, so his heart is attached to the power of God. He is never alone; Christ is always with him. What he was as a person prior to salvation, he will never be again. The real battleground of demonic attack is the mind (the imagination, the fantasy realm). The Scriptures are clear that immorality is first committed in the mind before it is committed with the body<sup>468</sup>.

Dr Merrill Unger summarises the concept of the battle for the mind as follows<sup>469</sup>:

*Demons attack the mind to gain a foothold in the lives of people. Satan blinds the minds of the unsaved taking them away from the light of the Gospel (2 Cor. 4:3-4). To resist demon influence [one] must guard against what he reads and what sort of television he permits himself to view .... If he is not wary, demon influence may merge into demon obsession. If not curbed, demon invasion may ultimately eventuate.*

---

<sup>466</sup> Frangipane, F (1987) *The Three Battlegrounds*. New Wine Press: England, p. 20

<sup>467</sup> Hebrews 8:10; 1 Corinthians 2:16; 2 Corinthians 5:16-17; Revelation 2:17

<sup>468</sup> Murphy, E F (2003) *The Handbook for Spiritual Warfare*, Revised and Updated. Thomas Nelson Publishers, p. 121

<sup>469</sup> Unger, F U (1977) *What Demons can do to Saints*. Chicago: Moody, p. 90

### 3.11.2 Spiritual Death

Spiritual<sup>470</sup> death is in general defined as the separation of the soul from God. Humans are separated from God because of sin, which entered the world through the Fall of Man, and are reconciled to God through the atoning sacrifice of Jesus Christ.<sup>471</sup>

One would assume that spiritual death is only applicable to someone who has not accepted Jesus as their Saviour; however, upon closer examination, one finds a warning to the righteous in Genesis 2:16-17:

*And the LORD God commanded the man, "You are free to eat from any tree in the garden; but you must not eat from the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, for when you eat of it you will surely die."*

Adam was righteous and resided in the Garden of Eden, a paradise garden only for the righteous, but lived with the ever-present danger of spiritual death. He was expelled from Eden after he sinned and died spiritually, as warned. To be more exact, Adam died spiritually the same day he sinned, yet lived physically many years afterwards to be 930 years old<sup>472</sup>. As God's first statement about sin was issued to a righteous man concerning his own spiritual death through sin, the devil's first lie was devised to make Eve dismiss that eternal truth, leading to disobedience and spiritual death.<sup>473</sup>

This same consequence of spiritual death through disobedience for the righteous is repeated later by the prophet Ezekiel:

*Again, when a righteous man turns from his righteousness and does evil, and I put a stumbling block before him, he will die. Since you did not warn him, he will die for his sin. The righteous things he did will not be remembered and I will hold you accountable for his blood.*

*Ezekiel 3:20*

---

<sup>470</sup> Etymology: Spiritual: c.1300, "of or concerning the spirit" (especially in religious aspects), from Old French *spirituel*, *esperituel* (12c.) or directly from a Medieval Latin ecclesiastical use of Latin *spiritualis* "of or pertaining to breath, breathing, wind, or air; pertaining to spirit," from *spiritus* "of breathing, of the spirit". Meaning "of or concerning the church" is attested from mid-14c. Related: *Spiritually*. [www.etymonline.com](http://www.etymonline.com)

<sup>471</sup> Grudem, W (1994) Systematic Theology, An Introduction to Bible Doctrine. Great Britain: Zondervan Publishing House, p. 810

<sup>472</sup> Genesis 5:5

<sup>473</sup> Corner, D, Spiritual Death: The Righteous can Die Spiritually. [Online] Available from: <http://www.evangelicaloutreach.org/spiritual-death.htm> [Accessed: 28 March 2014]



*But if a righteous man turns from his righteousness and commits sin and does the same detestable things the wicked man does, will he live? None of the righteous things he has done will be remembered. Because of the unfaithfulness he is guilty of and because of the sins he has committed, he will die.*

*Ezekiel 18:24*

*If a righteous man turns from his righteousness and commits sin, he will die for it; because of the sin he has committed he will die.*

*Ezekiel 18:26*

*If I tell the righteous man that he will surely live, but then he trusts in his righteousness and does evil, none of the righteous things he has done will be remembered; he will die for the evil he has done.*

*Ezekiel 33:13*

*If a righteous man turns from his righteousness and does evil, he will die for it.*

*Ezekiel 33:18*

Undoubtedly, a righteous person will experience spiritual death because of sin, which again is the antithesis of the teaching of eternal security. New Testament warnings to the righteous about spiritual death through sin are repeated, especially by Paul and James:

*For if you live according to the sinful nature, you will die; but if by the Spirit you put to death the misdeeds of the body, you will live.*

*Romans 8:13*

*Don't you know that when you offer yourselves to someone to obey him as slaves, you are slaves to the one whom you obey - whether you are slaves to sin, which leads to death, or to obedience, which leads to righteousness?*

*Romans 6:16*

*But each one is tempted when, by his own evil desire, he is dragged away and enticed. Then, after desire has conceived, it gives birth to sin; and sin, when it is full-grown, gives birth to death. Don't be deceived, my dear brothers.*

*James 1:14-16*

It is evident that this sinning process to spiritual death dates back to the Garden of Eden, then to Ezekiel, then to Paul the grace teacher. James elaborated upon spiritual death again at the very end of his own epistle:

*My brethren, if any among you strays from the truth, and one turns him back, let him know that he who turns a sinner from the error of his way will save his soul from death, and will cover over a multitude of sins.*

*James 5:19,20 NASB*

Notice how straying from the truth (from Jesus)<sup>474</sup> is to jeopardise the soul of the righteous person to death. But if that same person is brought back where he was before he strayed, his soul will once again be safe (or saved) in the truth. Jesus refers to it using different words, namely the necessity for a man to be 'born again',<sup>475</sup> as also did Paul<sup>476</sup>.

When God created Adam, he was in totality alive: physically and spiritually. But because of Adam's sin and subsequent spiritual death, every person who comes into the world is born physically alive but spiritually dead. Being separated from God, man lacked the presence and wisdom of God in his life, so he learned to live independent of God, centring his interests on himself. This learned independence from God is referred to in Scripture as 'the flesh'.<sup>477</sup>

Therefore, a man without Christ is spiritually dead. Paul describes it as "being alienated from the life of God" in Ephesians 4:18 (to be separated from life is the same as being dead). The natural man, like Adam hiding in the garden, is isolated from God. When man is born again, the spiritual death is reversed. Before salvation, man is dead (spiritually), but Jesus gives life.<sup>478</sup>

*When you were dead in your sins and in the uncircumcision of your sinful nature, God made you alive with Christ. He forgave us all our sins*

*Colossians 2:13*

---

<sup>474</sup> John 14:6

<sup>475</sup> John 3:3-7

<sup>476</sup> Titus 3:5

<sup>477</sup> Anderson (1990), page 43

<sup>478</sup> GotQuestions, Spiritual Death [Online] Available from: <http://www.gotquestions.org/spiritual-death.html> [Accessed: 28 March 2014]

*And you He made alive, who were dead in trespasses and sins*

*Ephesians 2:1 NKJV*

When a person is born again, his soul and spirit is united with God and he comes alive spiritually, as alive as Adam was in the garden before he sinned. As the epistle of Ephesians repeatedly declares, the believer is now in Christ, and Christ is in him. Since Christ who is in the believer is eternal, the spiritual life he has received from Him is eternal. Eternal life is thus possessed instantaneously. And contrary to what Satan would like man to believe, he can't ever take eternal life away from anyone because he can't take Jesus away from an individual. Jesus promised never to leave or forsake the ones belonging to Him.<sup>479</sup>

### 3.11.3 Escapism

Escapism is mental diversion by means of entertainment or recreation as an escape from the perceived unpleasant or predictable aspects of daily life. It can also be used as a term to define the actions people take to help relieve persistent feelings of depression or general sadness. Entire industries have sprung up to foster a growing tendency of people to remove themselves from the rigors of daily life. Many activities that are normal parts of a healthy existence (e.g. eating, sleeping, exercise, sexual activity) can also become avenues of escapism when taken to extremes or out of proper context. In the context of being taken to an extreme, the word *escapism* generally carries a negative connotation, suggesting that escapists are unhappy, with an inability or unwillingness to connect meaningfully with the world. Drugs cause some forms of escapism which can occur when certain mind-altering drugs are taken, allowing the participant to forget the reality of where they are or what they are meant to be doing.<sup>480</sup>

The Norwegian psychologist Frode Stenseng has presented a dualistic model of escapism in relation to different types of activity engagements. He discusses the inconsistency that the flow state resembles psychological states obtainable through actions such as drug abuse, sexual masochism and suicide ideation. Accordingly, he reasons that the state of escape can have both positive and negative meanings and outcomes. Stenseng argues that there are two forms of escapism with different affective outcomes dependent on the motivational focus that lays behind the immersion in the activity. Escapism in the form of self-suppression

---

<sup>479</sup> Hebrews 13:5

<sup>480</sup> Ask Define, Escapism [Online] Available from: Escapism <http://escapism.askdefinebeta.com/> [Accessed: 14 July 2014]

stems from motives to run away from unpleasant thoughts, and self-perceptions and emotions, whereas self-expansion stems from motives to gain positive experiences through the activity and to discover new aspects of self.<sup>481</sup>

People with mental disorders are legendary for their escapism: self-medicating through alcohol, drugs and pornography which can become addictive, excessive and injurious. Escapism is only a temporary solution but one that becomes viciously circular for those who struggle to face the reality due to pain, guilt and memories. When returning from the escape one is still faced with the same pain, guilt and memories, rendering the desire to escape even stronger and more intense. This is a vicious circle with the escape becoming longer and more extreme, to the point where the person is living in a fantasy world, a semi-permanent state of escape, with an inability to discern reality. It could even turn to the worst-case scenario where the pressures of this age are contributing to a generation that feels lost mental disorders could in themselves become a form of escapism.<sup>482</sup>

DID in its purest sense is to a certain extent linked to escapism, as many psychologists would admit, as escape from extreme trauma or escape from physical or mental incapability.<sup>483</sup>

*See Chapter 4 - 4.6.7.3 Dissociative Identity Disorder (DID)*

Rejection is always a root cause of escapism, an escapism that takes the form of addiction. Fear is the trigger. Smoking and alcohol addiction is a form of escapism, for example. Bulimia and anorexia are other forms of escapism. Being a prostitute is even a form of escapism: no satisfaction through sex, a subliminal that must be reconciled and reconfirmed that she is a woman, growing escapism roots with the way she dresses and escaping into taking jobs for men. Escapism can come through the fear of failure. Escapism always has self-blaming and self-destructing spirits.<sup>484</sup>

*See Chapter 5 - 5.2.4 Rejection and 5.4.12 Fear*

However, there is a place for healthy escapism and it is a powerful tool on the road to recovery – one should master the art of it. Taking care of one's soul is a spiritual exercise.

---

<sup>481</sup> Stenseng, F., Rise J., & Kraft, P. (2010). Two dimensions of escapism: Self-suppression and self-expansion. Department of Psychology, Faculty of Social Sciences, University of Oslo

<sup>482</sup> Burke, A, PTSD, CD 5, Track 7

<sup>483</sup> Kordis, A (2013) Multiple Personality Disorder. The International Academic Forum. Unpublished, p. 2

<sup>484</sup> Personal Interview with Professor Dr Connie Brand, 4 November 2014.

Dealing with one's energy level of the soul and maintaining the soul are as significant as connecting with God in regular devotions. If the soul gets emptied out, a person is likely to self-medicate in an inappropriate way, which in turn can encourage sinning. A person should have a list of things that helps him put fuel in the soul: comfort foods (sometimes the benefit to the soul is greater than the damage to the soul), music, books, work, places to go, comforting smells. This can be something big or small on an ongoing basis to ensure that one does not spiral down but give the soul a recess. Conversely note that the quality of escapism needs to be productive and up-building, beneficial along the road to full recovery.

No one can fight the battle against mental disorders: full-stop. There has to be a recess; there has to be an escape. The escape needs to be controlled so that it is intentional rather than 'crash-and-burn', and is productive rather than being toxic. Only then will it contribute towards the healing.<sup>485</sup>

### **3.11.3.1 A spirit of Escapism**

Creating mental and emotional escape is something most people have resorted to at some time in a lifetime. In young people, it can have a more serious impact because it is a matter of survival for them. Some youth are exposed to Sexual Ritual Abuse (SRA).

*See Capture 4 - 1.6.5.2 Satanic Ritual Abuse (SRA)*

Little does a young person realise that later in life these horrible fear-driven escapisms or mind flights may cause an inability to concentrate and focus on tasks, trains of thought and on the Word of God. One of the undermining results of escapisms is creating a world of total solo or self-entertainment where nobody else is needed anymore. Never having been confirmed, or growing up with broken promises, adds greatly to the instability of their personality in the areas of decision-making and spiritual authority in their lives. It may even be the cause of double-mindedness, of which the apostle James speaks (James 1:8; 4:8).

To truly function in freedom and faith, one must be free from a mind-set eager to escape from confrontations or problems, free from shirking responsibilities when you are called upon to address issues or to solve problems. Believers need to be able to walk through life with a sound mind (2 Timothy 1:7) through faith in Christ.

---

<sup>485</sup> Burke, A, PTSD, CD 5, Track 7

The spirit of escapism is the initial spirit who may present itself as an inviting friend, suggesting a way out of all the threats, fears and pressures with the spirit of fear and the spirit of rejection and shame; there is always a spirit of death associated. One of the major handicaps in the lives of believers with this spirit is lack of concentration, comprehension, courage and confidence and being easily intimidated; an inability to stay focused and centred on God's truth and promises; a lack of capacity to make proper decisions and evaluations. It will fester a fear to stand for righteousness if there is pain or suffering involved, resulting in not entering into a spiritual walk. Co-dependency, control and strife at the same time will result in demonic activity and torment. The person will avoid problems or minimise problems and will be easily intimidated by people, situations or circumstances.<sup>486</sup>

#### **3.11.4 Death to Self**

Adam was the first mortal to entertain the notion that he could "be like God"<sup>487</sup>, which is the essence of the self-centred secularist worldview that Satan promotes. Countless others since Adam have been seduced by Satan into believing that they are their own gods, and today the New Age movement is promoting this lie on a grand and international scale. However, the biblical account of creation clearly establishes that only God the Creator is truly God. Adam and his ancestors are not gods; we are created beings which cannot exist apart from God. Adam became a living being when God breathed into him the breath of life. Adam was physically and spiritually alive, but he was not a god.

God told him that if he ate of the tree of the knowledge of good and evil, he would surely die. But Satan told him that God didn't know what He was talking about, that eating the forbidden fruit would unlock his godlike potential. Adam ate and died – not physically at first, but spiritually. His sin separated him from God, as dramatically illustrated when God threw him out of the Garden of Eden.

Since Adam, every person coming into the world is born physically alive but spiritually dead<sup>488</sup>. Being separated from God, man can only attempt to find meaning and purpose in life through his physical existence. He becomes his own little god, and his life is characterised by pride, self-exaltation, and independence from the God who made him. "I

---

<sup>486</sup> Nehemiah Ministries, Escapism [Online] Available from: <http://www.nehemiahministries.ca/2009/escapism-ps-55/> [Accessed: 24 October 2014]

<sup>487</sup> Genesis 3:5

<sup>488</sup> Ephesians 2:1

will determine my own purpose, establish my own identity, and live as I choose", he asserts confidently. The diabolical idea that man is his own god is the heartbeat of the Satan-inspired secularist worldview and the primary link in the chain of spiritual bondage to the kingdom of darkness.

The problem with man's attempt at being his own god is that he was never designed to occupy that role. He lacks the necessary attributes to determine his own destiny. Even sinless, spiritually alive Adam in the Garden of Eden wasn't equipped to be his own god, much less those born since then, who come into the world spiritually dead. Contrary to what the New Agers promotes, the potential to be a god never was in man, isn't in man now, and never will be in man.<sup>489</sup>

Being God is God's capacity alone. If you desire to live in freedom from the bondage of the world, the flesh and the devil, this primary link in the chain must be smashed. The secularist, self-centred worldview which Satan and his emissaries are promoting all around must be replaced by the perspective that Jesus introduced to His disciples in the wake of Peter's self-preserving rebuke:

*<sup>24</sup>Then Jesus said to His disciples, If anyone desires to be My disciple, let him deny himself [disregard, lose sight of, and forget himself and his own interests] and take up his cross and follow Me {cleave steadfastly to Me, conform wholly to My example in living and, if need be, in dying, also}. <sup>25</sup>For whoever is bent on saving his [temporal] life [his comfort and security here] shall lose it [eternal life]; and whoever loses his life [his comfort and security here] for My sake shall find it [life everlasting]. <sup>26</sup>For what will it profit a man if he gains the whole world and forfeits his life [his blessed life in the kingdom of God]? Or what would a man give as an exchange for his [blessed] life [in the kingdom of God]? <sup>27</sup> For the Son of Man is going to come in the glory (majesty, splendour) of His Father with His angels, and then He will render account and reward every man in accordance with what he has done.*

*Matthew 16:24-27*

According to Neil Anderson in his book *The Bondage Breaker*, the following guidelines from Jesus' statement constitute the view from the cross. They are the foundational guidelines for

---

<sup>489</sup> Anderson, N T (1990) *The Bondage Breaker*. Crowborough: Monarch, pp. 34-39

those who would be free from the bondage of the world system and the devil that inspires it.<sup>490</sup>

1. *Denying oneself.* Denying oneself is not the same as self-denial. Every student, athlete and cult member practices self-denial, restricting himself from substances and activities which keep him from reaching his goals. But the ultimate purpose of self-denial is self-promotion: to receive a good grade, to break a record, to achieve status and recognition. Jesus was talking about denying oneself in the essential battle of life: the scramble for the throne, the struggle over who is going to be God. Jesus doesn't enter into that battle; He's already won it. He occupies the throne and graciously offers to share it with the believer. But man wants to be king in his life by himself. Until the believer denies himself that which was never meant to be his (the role of being god in his life) he will never be at peace with himself or God, and he will never be free. Man was not designed to function independent of God, nor was his soul designed to function as a master. Man will either serve God and His kingdom or Satan and his kingdom. When a person denies himself, he invites God to take the throne of his life, to occupy what is rightfully His, so that he may function as a person who is spiritually alive in Christ. Denying oneself is essential to spiritual freedom.
2. *Picking up your cross daily.* The cross a believer is to pick up on a daily basis is not his own cross but Christ's cross; he is closely identified with Jesus' cross; however, because he has been crucified with Christ and no longer lives, Christ lives in him<sup>491</sup>. His cross provided forgiveness from what he has done and rescued from what he was. The believer is forgiven because He died in his place. He is both justified and sanctified as a result of the cross. To pick up the cross daily means to acknowledge every day that the believer belongs to God. He has been purchased by the blood of the Lord Jesus Christ.<sup>492</sup> When a person picks up the cross he affirms that his identity is not based in his physical existence but in his relationship with God. He is identified as a child of God<sup>493</sup> and his life is in Christ, who is his life<sup>494</sup>. As a result of this acknowledgment, man stops trying to do his own thing in order to live daily to please his heavenly Father. He stops trying to become something he isn't and he rests in the finished work of Christ, who made him something very special.

---

<sup>490</sup> Ibid., pp. 34-39

<sup>491</sup> Galatians 2:20

<sup>492</sup> 1 Peter 1:18,19

<sup>493</sup> 1 John 3:1-3

<sup>494</sup> Colossians 3:3,4



3. *Following Christ.* Seeking to overcome self by self-effort is a hopeless struggle. Self will never cast out self, because an independent person self-motivated by the flesh still wants to be God. The believer must follow Christ by being led by the Holy Spirit down the path of death to self. As Paul wrote: *For we who live are constantly [experiencing] being handed over to death for Jesus' sake, that the [[a]resurrection] life of Jesus also may be evidenced through our flesh which is liable to death.*<sup>495</sup> It is a tremendous experience to be known by the Lord and to follow Him as an obedient, dependent sheep<sup>496</sup>. The fact that the believer is led by the Spirit of God, even when it results in the painful experience of death to self, is the assurance of sonship<sup>497</sup>. Man was not designed to function independently of God. Only when a person is dependent on Him and intent on following Christ then he will be complete and free to prove that the will of God is good, acceptable, and perfect<sup>498</sup>.
4. *Sacrificing the lower life to gain the higher life.* If a person wants to save his natural life (i.e. find his identity and sense of self-worth in positions, titles, accomplishments, and possessions, and seek only worldly well-being) he will lose it. At best he can only possess these temporal values for a lifetime, only to lose everything for eternity. Furthermore, in all his efforts to possess these earthly treasures, he will fail to gain all that can be his in Christ. Paul made a similar statement: *For physical training is of some value (useful for a little), but godliness (spiritual training) is useful and of value in everything and in every way, for it holds promise for the present life and also for the life which is to come.*<sup>499</sup>
5. *Sacrificing the pleasure of things to gain the pleasure of life.* What material possession, what amount of money, what position or title can be exchange for the love, joy, peace and patience that is in Christ? How does a believer's day-to-day practice answer this question? Where is the majority of his time, energy and money being invested: in temporal or in eternal endeavours? All too often the chief end of fallen humanity is to be happy as animals rather than to be blessed as children of God. Jesus discussed this very conflict with two of His closest friends: Mary and Martha<sup>500</sup>. During Jesus' visit, Martha was caught up in material things, focusing on meal preparation and service, while Mary centred her attention on Jesus and His words. Martha's tendency was to love

---

<sup>495</sup> 2 Corinthians 4:11

<sup>496</sup> John 10:27

<sup>497</sup> Romans 8:14

<sup>498</sup> Romans 12:2

<sup>499</sup> 1 Timothy 4:8

<sup>500</sup> Luke 10:38-42

things and use people, but Jesus indicated that Mary had chosen "the good part"<sup>501</sup> by loving people and using things. Victory over self comes as a believer learns to love people and use things, and not get those two activities mixed up.

6. *Sacrificing the temporal to gain the eternal.* Possibly the greatest sign of spiritual maturity is the ability to postpone rewards. Hebrews 11:24-26 says:

*<sup>24</sup> [Aroused] by faith Moses, when he had grown to maturity and become great, refused to be called the son of Pharaoh's daughter, <sup>25</sup> Because he preferred to share the oppression [suffer the hardships] and bear the shame of the people of God rather than to have the fleeting enjoyment of a sinful life. <sup>26</sup> He considered the contempt and abuse and shame [borne for] the Christ (the Messiah Who was to come) to be greater wealth than all the treasures of Egypt, for he looked forward and away to the reward (recompense).*

*Hebrews 11:24-26*

It is far better to know that a believer is the child of God than to gain anything that the world calls valuable. Even if following Christ results in hardships in this life, He will make it right in eternity. Satan's ultimate lie is that man is capable of being the god of your own life, and his ultimate bondage is getting him to live as though his lie is truth. Satan is out to usurp God's place in your life. And whenever man lives independently of God, focusing on himself instead of on the cross, preferring material and temporal values to spiritual and eternal values, he has succeeded. The world's solution to this conflict of identity is to inflate the ego while denying God the opportunity to take His rightful place as Lord. Satan couldn't be more pleased – that was his plan from the beginning.

---

<sup>501</sup> Luke 10:42

### 3.11.5 Strongholds

*<sup>3</sup> For though we walk (live) in the flesh, we are not carrying on our warfare according to the flesh and using mere human weapons.<sup>4</sup> For the weapons of our warfare are not physical [weapons of flesh and blood], but they are mighty before God for the overthrow and destruction of strongholds, <sup>5</sup> [Inasmuch as we] refute arguments and theories and reasonings and every proud and lofty thing that sets itself up against the [true] knowledge of God; and we lead every thought and purpose away captive into the obedience of Christ (the Messiah, the Anointed One).*

*2 Corinthians 10:3-5*

In speaking of spiritual warfare, the Apostle Paul enlists the word *stronghold*<sup>502</sup> to define the spiritual fortresses wherein Satan and his legions hide and are protected. These fortresses exist in the thought-patterns and ideas that govern individuals and churches, as well as communities and nations. Before victory can be claimed, these strongholds must be pulled down and Satan's armour removed. Then the mighty weapons of the Word and the Spirit can effectively plunder Satan's house.

But what is the biblical meaning of this word *stronghold*? In the Old Testament, a stronghold was a fortified dwelling used as a means of protection from an enemy. David hid from King Saul in wilderness strongholds at Horesh<sup>503</sup>. These were physical structures, usually caves, high on a mountainside, and were very difficult to assault. It was with this imagery in mind that the inspired writers of the Bible adapted the word *stronghold* to define powerful, vigorously protected spiritual realities.

A stronghold can be a source of protection for the believer from the devil, as is the case when the Lord becomes one's stronghold<sup>504</sup>. Or conversely, a stronghold can be a source of defence for the devil, where demonic or sinful activity is actually defended within a person by his sympathetic thoughts toward evil. The strongholds a believer will expose first are those wrong attitudes that protect and defend the old self-life, which very often become the 'fortified dwellings' of demonic oppression in a person's life.

---

<sup>502</sup> Etymology: Stronghold: early 14c., from *strong* (adj.) + *hold* (n.) "fortified place, refuge." [www.etymonline.com](http://www.etymonline.com)

<sup>503</sup> 1 Samuel 23:14, 19

<sup>504</sup> Psalm 18:2

The Apostle Paul defines a *stronghold* as speculations, lofty thing raised up against the knowledge of God.<sup>505</sup> A demonic stronghold is any type of thinking that exalts itself above the knowledge of God, thereby giving the devil a secure place of influence in an individual's thought-life. Any area of a person's heart or mind that is not surrendered to Jesus Christ is an area vulnerable to satanic attack. And it is here, uniquely in the un-crucified thought-life of the believer's mind that the pulling down of strongholds is of vital importance. For this reason, the believer must attain what the Scriptures call 'humility of mind' before real deliverance is possible. When an individual discovers rebellion toward God within him for example, he must not defend or excuse himself. Rather, he must humble his heart and repent, exercising his faith in God to change him.

Satan feeds upon sin. Wherever there is a habit of sin in a believer's life, expect to find demonic activity in that area. The sin-habit often becomes the dwelling place for a spirit that is robbing a believer of power and joy, and that habitation (or habit) is a stronghold. Evil spirits can frequent and occupy attitudes in a believer's life. Every person has a carnal mind which is a source of vain imaginations and thoughts that exalt themselves above God. A person deals with the devil by dealing with the carnal thought systems, the strongholds that protect the enemy.

There were no strongholds, no wrong attitudes, and no faulty thinking processes in Christ's mind. Just before Jesus went to His death, He remarked ... *the ruler of this world cometh, but he has nothing in Me.*<sup>506</sup> Satan had nothing in Jesus. The believer needs to strive towards this goal of no secret area inside him that gives Satan an open door into his soul towards evil. When the strongholds of a person's mind are toppled, though he may still occasionally fall into sin, he will walk in great victory. And he will be instrumental in helping others in their deliverance as well.

It is important to recognise that referring to strongholds does not mean random thoughts or occasional sins. Rather, the strongholds that affect the believer most are those which are so hidden, so embedded in his thinking patterns, that he does not recognise them or identify them as evil.

There are satanic strongholds over countries and communities; there are strongholds which influence churches and individuals. Wherever a stronghold exists, it is a demonically-induced

---

<sup>505</sup> 2 Corinthians 3:5

<sup>506</sup> John 14:30

pattern of thinking. Specifically, it is a 'house made of thoughts' which has become a dwelling place for satanic activity. If a believer is going to be successful in spiritual battle, his warfare must be waged according to the Scriptures. For if he is ignorant of the necessity of bringing Christ into the delivered soul, there is the danger that the last state of 'that man' might become worse than the first<sup>507</sup>. Christ must enter and be allowed to build His house of righteousness in the very area where Satan once dwelt. Except in cases of physical affliction, deliverance should not be attempted for anyone unwilling to submit their thought-life to Jesus Christ.

If a person wants to identify the hidden strongholds in his life, he need only survey the attitudes in his heart. Every area in his thinking that glistens with hope in God is an area which is being liberated by Christ. But any system of thinking that does not have hope, which feels hopeless, is a stronghold which must be pulled down.

In summary, thoughts are the original or initial ideas, imaginations are the image of the thought when pondering on it, and strongholds are a result of thoughts that come to reality. The stronghold is what controls man, if it is allowed to. An imagination is intent to do something about what was just thought about; a stronghold is when the choice is not yours anymore, but you have submitted your will to the thought. Thoughts become imagining; imagining becomes imagination; imagination becomes strongholds.<sup>508</sup>

Generally speaking, strongholds originate from any one of three sources.<sup>509</sup>

*The first source is the world.* The steady stream of information and experience that continually shaped a person's childhood perceptions is the greatest source of strongholds within him. The amount of love (or lack of love) in his home, his cultural environment, peer values and pressures, as well as fears of rejection and exposure, even his physical appearance and intelligence, all combine to form his sense of identity and view of life. Man's soul, wrought with insecurities, is highly sensitive to the criticisms and compliments of others. In the search to find oneself, such words are poured into young hearts like molten steel which, as they cool, are fused into an individual's nature. How many adults believe they are mentally slow simply because, as children, they absorbed into their self-concept the negative, thoughtless scolding of a teacher or parent? These concepts and limitations are structured into the person from childhood, built into thinking patterns through the words and

---

<sup>507</sup> Matthew 12:45; 2 Peter 2:20

<sup>508</sup> Martin, F P (1979) *Hung by the Tongue*. Louisiana: Bible Teaching Series, p. 18

<sup>509</sup> Frangipane (1994), page 27-53

ideas of others. Many people's opinions about life are only because they know of no other way to think.

*The second source is experiences.* Another manner through which strongholds are built into man is through life experiences and the conclusions drawn from them. These experiences, for better or worse, are what is called reality. Life, as a person perceives it, is based upon whatever network of thoughts and opinions he is currently allowing to govern his soul. On the other hand, God defines reality as the 'Truth' found in His Word. For an individual to travel from his world into the reality of God, he must view Jesus' words as doors through which he enters God's eternal Kingdom. In the combined meaning of all Jesus taught, he finds the reality of the Kingdom of God. Victory comes when he lines himself up to the reality of God's life. Man must determine to allow nothing and no one to shape him, not even his personal experiences, unless they are consistent with the promises of God.

*The third source is wrong doctrines.* These come from false church doctrines and teachings. Jesus warned, *See to it no one misleads you.*<sup>510</sup> A person can be led by another person, but he must take responsibility that he is not misled by that individual. He must study and know the Bible himself. If he does not, how can he discern error in the teaching he hears? No teacher is so true, no prophet so pure that an individual can blindly let be led. They may lead a person, but his eyes must be open and his ears sensitive to the confirming voice of Jesus.

Psychosomatics are people who have developed sicknesses from thoughts, people who think they are sick. These people really do develop physical sickness, if they think on it long enough. Professional doctors will support this. Many beds are filled with people who have become physically sick because they started thinking they were sick. It goes as far as this: there are some in the hospital that doctors are trying to send home but they will not go home. Doctors are trying to get them off of medicine, but they refuse. They have to have medication or sugar pills, because that thought has become a stronghold. They believe: "I am sick; I have got to be sick."

It does not matter what situation a person is in, or what his capabilities are. If man can put a correct thought in his mind, get that thought to become an imagination and then become a stronghold, according to God's Word, then that Word will burn in his mind. It will come out of

---

<sup>510</sup> Matthew 24:4

his mouth and he will direct his path according to the Word of God. This is the positive side of the thoughts, imaginations and strongholds.<sup>511</sup>

### 3.11.6 Stronghold of Christ-likeness

Most Christians only engage in spiritual warfare with a hope of either relieving present distresses or attaining a 'normal' existence. However, the purpose of all aspects of spirituality, warfare included, is to bring man into the image of Christ. Nothing, not worship nor warfare, neither love nor deliverance, is truly attainable if he misses the singular objective of his faith: Christ-likeness.

Man is delivered out of sin, not that he might live for himself, but that he might come into Christ-likeness. A person's goals must align with God's, for if his nature does not change, he will invariably find himself entangled in the same problems that caused his difficulties in the first place. Many of a person's spiritual conflicts are simply not going to cease until the character of the Lord Jesus is formed in his heart. The Father's goal in deliverance is much more than simply seeing believers' burdens or the devil removed from their backs. Indeed, the specific purpose toward which God steers the working of all things in the believer's life is conformity to the image of His Son. The Father's purpose in salvation is that Jesus would become '... the first-born among many brethren'<sup>512</sup>. In other words, the way to realise God's ultimate victory is to reach toward His ultimate goal: complete transformation into the likeness of Christ.

There is a penetration of spirit between God and the believer where his spirit is fully saturated with the Living Presence of the Lord Jesus, where His glory so floods his life that there is '... no dark part' left within him.<sup>513</sup> This immediacy of the Lord's presence produces an indestructible defence, a fortress within which man is hidden from evil. Through Him, he enters the excellence of His ways in his relationships, both with the Father and one another; thereby walking in immunity from countless satanic attacks. Indeed, as His fullness within the believer increases, then that which is written is fulfilled:

*As He is, so also are we in this world.*

*1 John 4:17*

---

<sup>511</sup> Frangipane, F (1987) *The Three Battlegrounds*. New Wine Press: England, pp. 27-53

<sup>512</sup> Romans 8:28-29

<sup>513</sup> Luke 11:36

*He Who is born of God keeps [us] and the evil one does not touch [us].*

*1 John 5:18 KJ*

It is not Satan who defeats the believer; it is openness to Satan that does. To perfectly subdue the devil, the believer must walk in the *shelter of the Most High*<sup>514</sup>. Satan is tolerated for one purpose: the warfare between the devil and God's saints thrusts man into Christ-likeness, where the nature of Christ becomes his only place of rest and security. God allows warfare to facilitate His eternal plan, which is to make man in His image.<sup>515</sup> The Father's goal is to transform a believer's life with Christ's life; he will continually find that God has one answer to spiritual warfare: appropriate the nature of His Son.

### 3.12. THE RENEWAL OF THE MIND

In summary, the renewing the mind entails the following three steps<sup>516</sup>:

1. *Saturating the mind with God's Word.* The Word of God has been imbued with the power of renewal. If a person reads all the newspapers in the world, his mind cannot be renewed. It takes the Word of the Living God to completely renew an individual's mind. The Word of God is the greatest mind changer. That is why the Bible says, "*Let the word [spoken by] Christ (the Messiah) have its home [in your hearts and minds] and dwell in you in*".<sup>517</sup> When the Word of God fills a person's heart, his thoughts will be wholesome. The believer should soak himself in the Word of God and meditate upon it day and night.
2. *Sanitising the mind with sanitising prayers.* Some prayers have a purging effect on the mind. When praying such prayers, every virus that has found its way into the thoughts will be killed. Prayer has a way of removing every form of infection from the brain. If these infections are not dealt with they will develop into negative thoughts. The believer needs sanitising prayers to keep his mind pure, productive and positive.
3. *Banishing vain thought when it comes.* Vain thoughts will try to invade the mind; however, it is the believer's responsibility to stop them from occupying his mind. The truth is that a person cannot stop a bird from flying above his head, but he can stop or

---

<sup>514</sup> Psalm 91:1

<sup>515</sup> Genesis 1:26

<sup>516</sup> Olukoya, D (2009) Deliverance for the Brain. Nigeria. MFM Ministries, p. 82

<sup>517</sup> Colossians 3:16



prevent it from building a nest in his hair. Vain thoughts will always come but the believer does have the power to resist them. The person may not be able to stop them from flying across his mind but he can stand his ground and say no to them.

### 3.13. THE MIND OF CHRIST

One of the instructions given to all believers in the Bible is to have the mind of Christ.

*Let this same attitude and purpose and [humble] mind be in you which was in Christ Jesus:  
[Let Him be your example in humility:]*

*Philippians 2:5*

*For who has known or understood the mind (the counsels and purposes) of the Lord so as to guide and instruct Him and give Him knowledge? But we have the mind of Christ (the Messiah) and do hold the thoughts (feelings and purposes) of His heart.*

*1 Corinthians 2:16*

It should be the believer's ambitions in life to become like Christ, thereby thinking the way Christ thinks. This involves a deliberate act of one's will on two counts. First, one needs to decide not to conform any longer to the patterns of this world<sup>518</sup>. This is the mental choice, the introduction of a new way of thinking. And then follows a decision to act in accordance with this new way of thinking. A deliberate decision not to do the things which characterised the life once lived in the world before a person came to Christ, followed by a proclamation: 'I won't conform to the pattern of this world, I'm going to think God's thoughts and consequently live God's way. A good example of such is found in Colossians 3:2-3, 5-20:

*<sup>2</sup>And set your minds and keep them set on what is above (the higher things), not on the things that are on the earth. <sup>3</sup>For [as far as this world is concerned] you have died, and your [new, real] life is hidden with Christ in God.<sup>5</sup> So kill (deadens, <sup>[a]</sup>deprive of power) the evil desire lurking in your members [those animal impulses and all that is earthly in you that is employed in sin]: sexual vice, impurity, sensual appetites, unholy desires, and all greed and covetousness, for that is idolatry (the deifying of self and other created things instead of God). <sup>6</sup>It is on account of these [very sins] that the [holy] anger of God*

---

<sup>518</sup> Romans 12:2

is ever coming upon the sons of disobedience (those who are obstinately opposed to the divine will), <sup>7</sup> Among whom you also once walked, when you were living in and addicted to [such practices]. <sup>8</sup> But now put away and rid yourselves [completely] of all these things: anger, rage, bad feeling toward others, curses and slander, and foulmouthed abuse and shameful utterances from your lips! <sup>9</sup> Do not lie to one another, for you have stripped off the old (unregenerate) self with its evil practices, <sup>10</sup> And have clothed yourselves with the new [spiritual self], which is [ever in the process of being] renewed and remoulded into [fuller and more perfect knowledge upon] knowledge after the image (the likeness) of Him Who created it. <sup>11</sup> [In this new creation all distinctions vanish.] There is no room for and there can be neither Greek nor Jew, circumcised nor uncircumcised, [nor difference between nations whether alien] barbarians or Scythians [who are the most savage of all], nor slave or free man; but Christ is all and in all [everything and everywhere, to all men, without distinction of person]. <sup>12</sup> Clothe yourselves therefore, as God's own chosen ones (His own picked representatives), [who are] purified and holy and well-beloved [by God Himself, by putting on behaviour marked by] tender-hearted pity and mercy, kind feeling, a lowly opinion of yourselves, gentle ways, [and] patience [which is tireless and long-suffering, and has the power to endure whatever comes, with good temper]. <sup>13</sup> Be gentle and forbearing with one another and, if one has a difference (a grievance or complaint) against another, readily pardoning each other; even as the Lord has [freely] forgiven you, so must you also [forgive]. <sup>14</sup> And above all these [put on] love and enfold yourselves with the bond of perfectness [which binds everything together completely in ideal harmony]. <sup>15</sup> And let the peace (soul harmony which comes) from Christ rule (act as umpire continually) in your hearts [deciding and settling with finality all questions that arise in your minds, in that peaceful state] to which as [members of Christ's] one body you were also called [to live]. And be thankful (appreciative), [giving praise to God always]. <sup>16</sup> Let the word [spoken by] Christ (the Messiah) have its home [in your hearts and minds] and dwell in you in [all its] richness, as you teach and admonish and train one another in all insight and intelligence and wisdom [in spiritual things, and as you sing] psalms and hymns and spiritual songs, making melody to God with [His] grace in your hearts. <sup>17</sup> And whatever you do [no matter what it is] in word or deed, do everything in the name of the Lord Jesus and in [dependence upon] His Person, giving praise to God the Father through Him. <sup>18</sup> Wives, be subject to your husbands [subordinate and adapt yourselves to them], as is right and fitting and your proper duty in the Lord. <sup>19</sup> Husbands, love your wives [be

*affectionate and sympathetic with them] and do not be harsh or bitter or resentful toward them.* <sup>20</sup> *Children, obey your parents in everything, for this is pleasing to the Lord.*

As a person sets his mind to think God's way, he will also be able live in a manner that reflects Christ.

<sup>11</sup> *Even so consider yourselves also dead to sin and your relation to it broken, but alive to God [living in unbroken fellowship with Him] in Christ Jesus.* <sup>12</sup> *Let not sin therefore rule as king in your mortal (short-lived, perishable) bodies, to make you yield to its cravings and be subject to its lusts and evil passions.* <sup>13</sup> *Do not continue offering or yielding your bodily members [and faculties] to sin as instruments (tools) of wickedness. But offer and yield yourselves to God as though you have been raised from the dead to [perpetual] life, and your bodily members [and faculties] to God, presenting them as implements of righteousness.*

*Romans 6:11-13*

Counting or reckoning one dead to sin is an issue to do with the mind. Consider, think, ponder and meditate upon the fact that in Christ, the believer is dead to sin and its power. Thinking this way equips the believer to resist temptation so that he does not let sin reign in his mortal body. Neither will he have a desire to offer parts of his body to sin. Think God's thoughts and man will live God's way more effectively. Think like Christ; and with faith, become like Christ.

God's mind and will are revealed in His Word, the Bible. His Word speaks to the important issues of life. As a person fills his mind with the Word, in each situation encountered, he will see the situation through God's eyes and react to it as He would. Knowing God's Word will change a person's life, not in the sense of a learning exercise, but by knowing it in his mind and heart and then putting it into practice.

*But be doers of the Word [obey the message], and not merely listeners to it, betraying yourselves [into deception by reasoning contrary to the Truth].*

*James 1:22*

One function of the Holy Spirit is to remind man of God's Word and His ways as we find ourselves in the many and varied situations of life:

*But the Comforter (Counsellor, Helper, Intercessor, Advocate, Strengtheners, Standby), the Holy Spirit, Whom the Father will send in My name [in My place, to represent Me and act on My behalf], He will teach you all things. And He will cause you to recall (will remind you of, bring to your remembrance) everything I have told you.*

John 14:26

*For who has known or understood the mind (the counsels and purposes) of the Lord so as to guide and instruct Him and give Him knowledge? But we have the mind of Christ (the Messiah) and do hold the thoughts (feelings and purposes) of His heart.*

1 Corinthians 2:16

*So, since Christ suffered in the flesh for us, for you, arm yourselves with the same thought and purpose [patiently to suffer rather than fail to please God]. For whoever has suffered in the flesh [having the mind of Christ] is done with [intentional] sin [has stopped pleasing himself and the world, and pleases God]*

1 Peter 4:1

This passage teaches a secret concerning how to make it through difficult things and times. Here is Joyce Meyer's rendition of these two Scriptures<sup>519</sup>:

*Think about everything Jesus went through and how He endured suffering in His flesh, and it will help you make it through your difficulties. Arm yourselves for battle; prepare yourselves to win by thinking as Jesus did...'I will patiently suffer rather than fail to please God...' For if I suffer, having the mind of Christ toward it, I will no longer be living just to please myself, doing whatever is easy and running from all that is hard. But I will be able to live for what God wills and not by my feelings and carnal thoughts.*

---

<sup>519</sup> Meyer, J (2002) Battle Field of the Mind. New York: Warner Faith, p. 176

One of the most important ways to exercise the mind of Christ is to think on the things that are listed in Philippians 4:8:

*For the rest, brethren, whatever is true, whatever is worthy of reverence and is honourable and seemly, whatever is just, whatever is pure, whatever is lovely and lovable, whatever is kind and winsome and gracious, if there is any virtue and excellence, if there is anything worthy of praise, think on and weigh and take account of these things [fix your minds on them].*

God is a God of truth. In fact, the Bible says it is impossible for Him to lie<sup>520</sup>. He gives man His truth in every situation to apply to his thoughts.

*And you shall know the truth, and the truth shall make you free.*

*John 8:32, NKJV*

Dr Julie Roe is a clinical Christian psychologist who has ministered to hurting and wounded women around the world. Experience has taught her that if a person is not free, the vital question is: 'What is the lie that the person believes?' A person lives life according to perception of what is true, according to perception of what is real. But if perceptions are false, if we do not think on the truths of God, we will easily be led astray by Satan's deceptions and counterfeits.<sup>521</sup>

She attests with the following:

*As a counsellor, I listen to clients share the hurts and struggles that develop within them on their life journeys. The Holy Spirit reveals the lies of the enemy that they hear and receive as truth. My goal is to help them uncover the lies so that they can live in the freedom of God's truths.*<sup>522</sup>

Dr Roe goes on to explain how one discerns between the truth and a lie. One way is to determine the difference between what one *thinks* (a mind issue) and what one *feels* (a heart issue). One method to separate thoughts from emotions is validation. When a person validates himself, he is acknowledging his feelings. He can say, "I feel" and then complete

---

<sup>520</sup> Hebrews 6:18

<sup>521</sup> Roe, J, How to have the Mind of Christ [Online] Available from: <http://www.charismamag.com/spirit/spiritual-growth/7041-living-the-truth-have-the-mind-of-christ> [Accessed: 28 March 2014]

<sup>522</sup> Ibid.

the statement with a word that expresses feeling, such as “lonely” “angry” or “sad”. Feelings are necessary. They are given by God in order for man to experience emotions. The Bible acknowledges that Jesus experienced joy, wept and had righteous anger. But He distinguished His emotions from reason, and so must the believer.

Even though feelings are important, an individual should not allow them to direct his behaviour. In the Believer’s Bible Commentary, William MacDonald defines having *the mind of Christ* as “*To see things as He would see them, and to respond as He would respond.*”<sup>523</sup> Many Christians, however, respond as the world responds. Generally, the world’s approach to living is, “If it feels good, do it”. Their thought process looks like this: priority is my thoughts, my feelings, my actions. But the approach of a Christian who has the mind of Christ is, “I know what I think and how I feel, but I will do what God says to do”. That process looks like this: my thoughts, my feelings, God’s thoughts, and my actions. The second set of thoughts is based on God’s Word,<sup>524</sup> aligning a person’s thoughts with His thoughts before he acts.

Here’s an example provided by Dr Roe:

*Let me give you an example of how this works in real life. A husband and wife exchange cross words. The wife says, “I feel you don’t love me.” In actuality, the idea that her husband doesn’t love her is a thought, not a feeling. The feeling is probably hurt or rejection. The wife needs to examine her belief from a rational perspective. Is the thought that her husband doesn’t love her the truth or a lie? Usually it is a lie of the enemy to put spouses at odds with one another. The truth is that her husband does love her but needs to learn ways to show his wife his love in order to minimize her feelings of hurt and rejection. If the wife can see this truth, she is able to cast down an argument that goes ‘against the knowledge of God, bringing every thought into captivity to the obedience of Christ’ (2 Cor. 10:5, NKJV). What could have escalated into a battle can become fertile ground for unity, growth and change.*

Learning to replace the lies of Satan with God’s truth is the key to having the mind of Christ and living a life that is pleasing to God. God will honour the person who seeks to align his thoughts with His.

---

<sup>523</sup> Ibid.

<sup>524</sup> See Hebrew 4:12

*I the Lord search the heart and examine the mind, to reward a man according to his conduct, according to what his deeds deserve*

*Jeremiah 17:10 (NIV)*

All it takes is asking the Lord to show the lies. Then replace those lies with God's truths and relationship with God, self and others will be restored – and healing, deliverance and breakthrough will follow.

### **3.14. CONCLUSION**

*The LORD God formed man of the dust of the ground, and breathed into his nostrils the breath<sup>[neshemah]</sup> of life; and man became a living<sup>[chay]</sup> soul.<sup>[nephesh]</sup>*

*Genesis 2:7 with notes added*

God formed man's body from the dust, then, by breathing divine breath into it, He made the body of dust live (i.e. the dust did not embody a soul, but it became a soul, a living being). The soul is divided into mind, emotions, intellect, reasoning, imaginations and the will. The mind and the brain are two different faculties. The brain is located in the body and the mind in the soul.

The mind is the part of the soul that knows, considers, and remembers. Mind is also the general term used to describe the higher functions of the human brain, particularly those that are subjectively conscious, such as personality, thought, reason, memory, intelligence, and emotion.

Thoughts determine a man. As he thinks, so he will be. Every act of man, however good or bad, begins with a single thought. The origin of thoughts is either from man's five senses, Satan, the spirit man or thoughts put into a man's heart and mind by the Holy Spirit. Those who control the thoughts, control the body – the ultimate reason for the fierce battle over who controls this very important faculty.

*Beloved, I urge you as aliens and strangers to abstain from fleshly lusts which wage war against the soul.*

*1 Peter 2:11 (NAS)*

Satan's most common tool used to gain control of the mind is through passivity. If the believer does not want to take active control of the mind, he surrenders the mind through the passivity to all forms of evil influences. These evil influences will fetch their big brothers of manipulation, control and deception, who in turn will open the door to sin. Insanity will then, in just a matter of time, be located in the mind.

Satan wants to control in order to destroy. The devil is supremely interested in winning possession of the believer's mind and heart. The only way the believer can prevent his mind from being owned by the devil is by allowing God to renew his mind; by evaluating what type of mind he has and what mind-sets are being entertained that are against the Word of God; being used by Satan to bring him into slavery and control. The believer needs to take every thought captive and bring it into obedience to the Word of God. It is an action, an offensive fight, one being fought alongside Jesus.

*<sup>10</sup>In conclusion, be strong in the Lord [be empowered through your union with Him]; draw your strength from Him [that strength which His boundless might provide]. <sup>11</sup>Put on God's whole armour [the armour of a heavy-armed soldier which God supplies], that you may be able successfully to stand up against [all] the strategies and the deceits of the devil.*

*Ephesians 6:10-11*

The armour given by the Lord in Ephesians 6:12-18 is to help the believer in his fight against the enemy. Be assured that although the children of God are in a war, they need not fear. God's Word confirms how the battle will end and who will be the final victor. The One who fashioned the armour guarantees its effectiveness and promises that the gates of hell shall not prevail against it.

-----o0o-----







## *Chapter Four*

### *4. Satan's Strategy of Manipulation, Domination and Control*

*The thief comes only in order to steal and kill and destroy. I came that they may have and enjoy life, and have it in abundance (to the full, till it overflows).*

*John 10:10*

*He who controls the mind, controls the body.*

*Laura B. Brown*

#### **4.1. INTRODUCTION**

A new age has dawned for mankind; an age of remarkable technology. Man has the ability to scan the heavens and put humans in space. He can divide cells at the sub-atomic level and unravel DNA. Mankind knows intimately many of the ways the brain functions; how to shape it, recondition it, influence it, reinforce response mechanisms for a desirable outcome. This knowledge is immediately recognised and utilised in advertising. The study of human response, which includes how wide the eyes open in the reception of colours and design, facial expressions when introduced to new concepts in packaging, words that denote

positive or negative reaction, is utilised to introduce new products or to stimulate interest in old ones. It is used by medical and psychiatric hospitals to put patients at ease and by hotels and restaurants to give a pleasurable atmosphere to their customers. This knowledge is used by the media for publicising public figures. They choose the camera angles, edit the script, and package the figure they wish to promote or attack.

It is of extreme importance to comprehend the existence and the extent of control, manipulation and domination and the mental and psychological effect these can have on a victim, even to the extent of having the victim appear insane and/or having the victim certified as psychotic. Even more important is understanding who is behind this control, manipulation and domination: Satan and his new religion of Luciferianism. The final aim in the end time plan of Satan is to get people to a state where they are incapable of living a life of abundance, even losing touch with reality to the point of manipulating them to receive the Anti-Christ and the mark of the Beast which the Book of Revelation warns mankind against.

One cannot properly understand what's going on in the world today unless one begins with the Word of God. The Bible teaches in 2<sup>nd</sup> Corinthians 4:4 that Satan is the god of this sinful world. As such, Satan needs a way to control this world and the people within it. Satan uses occult methods and organisations to accomplish this. The word '*occult*' literally means secret. Satan operates in secrecy because his works are evil, and must be hidden from the eyes of the public, lest the children of God expose Satan's works of darkness.

*Take no part in and have no fellowship with the fruitless deeds and enterprises of darkness, but instead [let your lives be so in contrast as to] expose and reprove and convict them.*

*Ephesians 5:11*

The Devil works through members of occult societies to infiltrate and influence every area of society: religion, the music industry, public schools, Hollywood, corporations, government etc. This is all necessary in order to prepare the masses of this world to be tolerant towards the plans and ultimate goals of the enemy. Very specifically, Satan is targeting the Church, the Body of Christ, in order to confuse, deceive, kill and destroy the believer.

*Some Satanists have invaded the church as it is the perfect cover for them. They masquerade as angels of light and gravitate towards positions of leadership in order to have more influence. Because much of what they say is sound doctrinally, they are rarely detected. Most survivors whom I have worked with had Satanist parents who were in high positions in churches; many were pastors.*<sup>525</sup>

The very pulpits of the Church have already been invaded. People don't grasp that just because a preacher can sincerely preach what seems a perfect sermon, doesn't mean that he can't also be part of the satanic hierarchy. What is happening with the Illuminati's ability to create programmed multiples is that perfect preachers who are secret hierarchy members are being created and are part of the so called leadership in the Church today.

The human body, much like a computer, contains innumerable data processors. They include, but are not limited to, the chemical-electrical activity of the brain, heart, and peripheral nervous system, the signals sent from the cortex region of the brain to other parts of our body, the minuscule hair cells in the inner ear that process auditory signals, and the light-sensitive retina and cornea of the eye that process visual movement. Mankind has entered an era in which these data processors of the human body can be manipulated or debilitated. Examples of unintended effects on the body's data-processing capability are well-documented. Strobe lights have been known to cause epileptic seizures. Recently, in Japan, children watching television cartoons were subjected to pulsating lights which caused seizures in some and made others very sick.<sup>526</sup>

The body is capable not only of being deceived, manipulated, or misinformed but also of being shut down or even destroyed. The data or signals the body receives from external sources, such as electromagnetic, vortex, or acoustic energy waves or the signals it creates through its own electrical or chemical stimuli can be manipulated or changed; these can cause confusion and manipulation even to the point of losing touch with reality, even causing temporarily or permanent insanity or psychosis.

In Revelation the Lord warns the believer about the use of sorcery in the last days. 'Sorcery' comes from the word *pharmakeia*, from which we get the modern word 'pharmacy'. But sorcery implies far more than drugs: it encompasses the full range of mind control which deceives nations and individuals.

---

<sup>525</sup> Fox, L. The Spiritual and Clinical Dimensions of Multiple Personality Disorder. Salida , CO: Books of Sangre de Cristo, p. 196

<sup>526</sup> Thomas, T L. The Mind has no Firewall [Online] Available from: <http://dprogram.net/2009/07/01/the-mind-has-no-firewall-army-article-on-psychoelectric-weapons/> [Accessed: 24 June 2014]

*And they did not repent of their murders or their practice of magic (sorceries) or their sexual vice or their thefts.*

*Revelation 9:21*

*And never again shall the light of a lamp shine in you, and the voice of bridegroom and bride shall never be heard in you again; for your businessmen were the great and prominent men of the earth, and by your magic spells and poisonous charm all nations were led astray (seduced and deluded).*

*Revelation 18:23*

Most people do not realise it, but the science of mind-control has grown as exponentially as computer or biotechnology. The military around the world now uses “psy-ops” or psychological warfare as one of the most powerful weapons to control, programme or defeat people. An exclusively new arsenal of weapons, based on devices designed to introduce subliminal messages or to alter the body’s psychological and data-processing capabilities, is used to incapacitate individuals. It is already happening and will intensify with the days coming. These weapons aim to control or alter the psyche of a person, or to attack the various sensory and data-processing systems of the human organism in order to take control of the body on all levels. This control of the body can manifest in numerous ways, even to the point of imitating the symptoms of insanity and psychosis.

A March 06, 2006 report in Natural News states that<sup>527</sup>,

*Today, the medical experiments continue on the U.S. population and its children. From the mass drugging of children diagnosed with fictitious behavioural disorders invented by psychiatry to the FDA’s approval of mass-marketed drugs that have undergone no legitimate clinical trials, our population is right now being subjected to medical experiments on a staggering scale. Today, nearly 50% of Americans are on at least one prescription drug, and nearly 20% of schoolchildren are on mind-altering amphetamines like Ritalin or antidepressants like Prozac. This mass medication of our nation is, in every way, a grand medical experiment taking place right now.*

This chapter is an exploration on the methods already in place that are used by Satan to manipulate, control and dominate people, resulting in insanity and psychosis.

---

<sup>527</sup> Fetrow, K, Government Mind Control Experiments [Online] Available from: <http://programmingthenation.com/WordPress/?tag=government-mind-control-experiments> [Accessed: 25 July 2014]

## 4.2. MANIPULATION AND DOMINATION

### 4.2.1 Manipulation

To manipulate<sup>528</sup>, according to Webster's, *is to control or play upon by artful, unfair, or insidious means, especially to one's own advantage; to change by artful or unfair means to serve one's purposes.*<sup>529</sup> Manipulation reinforces dependency, helplessness, and victimisation. In turn, these rigid roles constrict the relationship's capacity to function or grow normally in a healthy and balanced way. As long as the manipulation persists, the manipulator grows seemingly stronger and bolder in his tactics, although insecurity and fears may lie within the manipulator. And the victim grows weaker and ever more compliant, even as hostility grows within them.

Healthy, appropriate influence is generally shaped by a process of reward. It is guided by open, honest, and direct communication. Strategies of threats and coercion are not used. The agenda or purpose of the influence is defined and made public to the participants. In contrast, manipulation thrives in an atmosphere of indirect, devious, and even deceptive communication. Agendas are frequently hidden and purposes disguised. Threats, intimidation, and coercion are preferred tactics. Manipulators seek the opportunity to ensnare and entrap their victims. They often proceed in subtle, devious, or covert ways so that the manipulative character of the relationship is well established long before its true nature becomes apparent to the victim. Some manipulators are fully conscious and intentional about their actions. They are skilled at coercion and control and take pride in their ability to bend others' wills to suit their purposes.

Who is vulnerable to manipulation? The short answer is: everybody. The longer answer is that some people are more vulnerable than others. These easy marks or soft targets are like catnip to manipulators. Susceptible marks broadcast—albeit inadvertently—their vulnerability in the habits and mind-sets they display to others. Picking up the cues, manipulators are drawn to these soft areas or 'buttons' in their target's personality and then proceed to push with impunity.<sup>530</sup>

---

<sup>528</sup> Etymology: Manipulate: 1827, "to handle skillfully by hand," a back-formation from manipulation. Of mental influence, from 1864. Financial sense is from 1870. In mid-20c., it served as a euphemism for "masturbation." Related: Manipulated; manipulating. [www.etymonline.com](http://www.etymonline.com)

<sup>529</sup> Merriam-Webster Dictionary, Manipulation [Online] Available from: <http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/manipulate> [Accessed: 28 March 2014]

<sup>530</sup> Braiker, H B (2004) *Who's pulling your strings?* USA: McGraw-Hill, pp. 1-6

Anyone and everyone is potentially vulnerable to the control of a skilled manipulator—especially one who keeps his or her motives, intentions, and methods carefully disguised or concealed. However, while virtually anyone can be manipulated, depending on the particular circumstances, some people are walking targets: they seem to be marked for manipulation. Such people display certain personality traits, behaviours, and ways of thinking that render them extremely vulnerable to manipulative control.<sup>531</sup>

#### **4.2.2 Seven Areas of Vulnerability**

In her book *Who's pulling the strings* Harriet Braiker (Ph.D.) identifies seven areas of vulnerability in the personalities who are marked for manipulation. These characteristic ways of thinking, feeling, and behaving make them vulnerable and receptive to the tactics of manipulators<sup>532</sup>:

1. *The Disease to Please*: Those who have the disease to please have people-pleasing habits and mind-sets. People-pleasing is a sweet-sounding name for a pattern of thinking, feeling, and acting that can become a serious and far-reaching psychological problem. The disease to please, or the people-pleasing syndrome, is a compulsive and even addictive pattern. As a people-pleaser, a person feels controlled by his need to please others and virtually addicted to their approval. At the same time, he feels out of control over the pressures and demands on his life that these needs have created.
2. *Addicted to Earning the Approval and Acceptance of Others*: When a person is addicted to earning the approval and acceptance of others he feels that he must earn the approval and acceptance of others, all others. Moreover, he needs to avoid criticism, rejection, and abandonment at almost any price. At the core of his niceness is a dreadful fear of rejection and abandonment.
3. *Fear of Negative Emotions*: the term 'emotophobia' refers to an excessive or irrational fear of negative feelings. Specifically, these fears encompass anger, aggression, or hostility and the conflict and confrontation that arouse them. Therefore this person will go to almost any lengths to avoid anger, conflict, and confrontation.

---

<sup>531</sup> Ibid., p.27

<sup>532</sup> Ibid., pp.33-50

4. *Lack of Assertiveness and an Inability to Say No:* This person has difficulty saying no to just about any request, expressed need, desire, invitation, or demand (implicit or explicit) from nearly anyone. Saying no probably makes the person feel guilty or selfish because he equates it with disappointing and letting others down.
5. *The Vanishing Self:* People with vanishing selves have only a blurry sense of their own identity, where they begin and end, whose needs they feel and fill, and what values are central to their core.
6. *Low Self-Reliance:* Low self-reliance means that a person distrusts his own judgment and reactions, resulting in an impairment of his self-direction. If a person cannot depend on himself and his own judgment and values to guide him in his decision making, especially when it pertains to relationships in which others seek to manipulate him, he will necessarily be more prone to rely on the judgments and direction of others.
7. *External Locus of Control:* Locus of control (LOC) is a psychological phrase that refers to how and where you attribute the cause of the things that happen, or fail to happen, to you. People that have an external LOC have the general view that the things that happen to them in life are more under the control of others, and of factors outside of themselves, than under their own control. In contrast, those who have an internal LOC believe that the primary source of control over what happens to them in life lies within.

#### **4.2.3 Methods of Manipulation**

The following are methods that can be utilised to accomplish manipulation on individuals<sup>533</sup>:

- *Obfuscation:* the basic confusion of one thing for another – ‘Smoke and mirrors’.
- *Worldview poisoning:* the conditioning of the way people view human nature and their own self-value.
- *Primal fears:* the exploitation of primal fears.

---

<sup>533</sup> Outlaw, Mind Control [Online] Available from: <http://outlawjimmy.com/tag/mind-control/> [Accessed: 11 August 2014]



- *'Divide and conquer'*: the strategy of highlighting any perceived differences between people and then exploiting those differences to create infighting so that they are easier to control and conquer.
- *Indoctrination*: a left brain form of control, perfected by the Nazi's, called Mastery Learning.
- *Controlled Opposition* (Basic dialectics – dialectical mechanics or Hegelianism): Creating a conflict that already has an outcome management strategy or system in place. Creating a conflict, waiting for the reaction to that conflict, (usually demanding an immediate resolution) then stepping in to resolve it (Artificial conflict resolution).
- *Financial System*: Debt-based fiat currency fractional reserve banking. A system of illusion called money that many people worship like it's a religion or a God. People seem to be at their most powerless to resist this one. Yet it exists purely in the mind.
- *Control of mass media*: If one can somehow control the information that people get to see, hear and read, one also control their perception of reality. If you can also limit the scope of what they can take into their minds and awareness, you equally limit their belief in a possible solution. Human perception management.
- *Food and Medicine*: An attack on the physical aspects of the body relating to how the brain develops. One affects thoughts and consciousness: "You are what you eat" etc., using techniques that are damaging to conscious thought, which is the method taught throughout modern medical systems. The complete absence of nourishing food and reliance on pharmaceuticals (especially anti-depressants) keeps a nation compliant.
- *Illusion of time*: This strategy relies on people's seeming inability to live in true present moment awareness, effectively getting people to live in regret over the past, or in anxiety over their future. It's a fear-based technique. It takes a person outside of true present awareness. Being fully aware of the present is vitally important if someone is to understand what is really happening now. If your consciousness can be manipulated into always looking into what has happened, you lose the effectiveness of dealing with the current situation. The victim is always looking back.

- *The DHR Factor:* Denial, Hassle, Ridicule. This includes how other people view someone. "Things are fine the way they are. I don't want to rock the boat because I may have to deal with the hassle of other people." The hassle free zone is: "I don't want all the difficulties that come with standing up for truth." These are all fear-based. Heightening these three forms of mental instability, is a strategy designed to make you fall into a trap of inactivity and prevent you attempting to make things better.
- *Religion:* Religion is a form of binding. 'Re-Ligare, Tying Back'. All forms of modern religion are mind control based on astro-theology. They give people an exoteric version of something that was once esoteric or internal. Government is the binding of the left brain; Religion is the binding of the right brain.
- *Subversive Symbolism:* Based on ancient sacred symbolism. Symbols that have been with Man from time immemorial. Solar symbolism, life force symbols, energy, blood, or anything we need for existence and life. These are used in modern institutions, banks, police, law, public service, media, and shops. One is continually drenched in it. These basic symbols have a powerful psychic influence. They can speak to anyone subliminally, without words. A wordless form of communication. Twisted Telepathy. They have a strong connection to occultism.
- *Chaos Sorcery:* A mass demonstration or a public display of the dark aspects of the Hegelian dialectic. The Hegelian dialectic can be used in a positive or negative sense. False Flag Terrorism. This is ritual magic being used openly in the full light of day and in plain view. A chaotic situation is created in full view as it is known it will create an extreme reaction of fear and chaos, and a demand that order be restored as soon as possible. The limbic system is being manipulated to an extent where the majority of people are not in a state that they can think in a reasoned manner. They therefore demand instant solutions based purely on their fears and emotions. They are in a reactive mode of consciousness. They want the outcome of the game known before the game is played. Interjecting chaos is a well-known method used historically to cause a required reaction. Only a dramatic shift in consciousness will subvert this technique.

#### 4.2.4 Domination

Power is the ability, quality or state of being such that one is able to get someone else to do something one wants done, or the ability to make things happen or get things done the way you want through the exercise of physical, legal or mental skills. Power is a structured part of today's economies and systems of political and social organisation; it forms part of the core of religion, family, forms of play, and intellectual life. Power and privilege are not distributed evenly across race, ethnicity, gender, age, class, or sexual orientation. Many strategies are used consciously and unconsciously to maintain power and privileges; one strategy is the use of domination<sup>534</sup> techniques.

The use of domination techniques is nothing new, and it is one of many means which the dominant employ to maintain power. This does not mean that, for example men are the exclusive users of these techniques. Both men and women make use of them. The strong use them to exert influence over the weak.<sup>535</sup>

There are many domination techniques, of which the following are some examples:

- *Making invisible:* The use of this technique can sometimes be difficult to discern because it often happens 'without words'. It is expressed through body language, for instance gestures or the lack of them. It creates a feeling of insignificance.
- *Ridiculing:* Ridiculing occurs when a person's efforts are scorned, made fun of, or likened to animals (e.g. chickens), when the person is presented as being especially emotional or sexual, or when a person is rejected as cold or manipulative. Ridicule is an effective technique of domination. Anyone using the technique has laughter on his side, while the person on the receiving end usually feels embarrassed and ashamed, or else deadly dull and without the slightest sense of humour. These feelings create in their turn a feeling of insecurity, which makes the individual flat and passive.
- *Withholding of information:* Withholding information occurs when some people automatically take up matters only with a selected group. This way, they deny access to information about important issues at work or in politics. Particularly in political

---

<sup>534</sup> Etymology: Dominate: 1610s, from Latin dominatus, past participle of dominari "to rule, dominate, to govern," from dominus. Related: Dominated; dominating. Or perhaps a back-formation from domination. [www.etymonline.com](http://www.etymonline.com)

<sup>535</sup> Fithian, L. Domination Techniques [Online] Available from: <http://organizingforpower.org/wp-content/uploads/2009/03/forms-of-domination.pdf> [Accessed: 11 August 2014]

spheres, information is exchanged, opinions formed and decisions taken in restricted circles. Withholding information is a common technique of domination. People who are kept in ignorance feel lonely, insecure and stupid, making it easier for the selected group to retain the initiative and to retain a dominant position.

- *Double punishment:* Whatever a person does, it's wrong. Double punishment occurs when it's wrong if a person does something – and wrong if he doesn't. This domination technique is used against the victims of prejudices and stereotypes. It is not difficult to make someone feel guilty or disgraced: bad conscience and feelings of inadequacy are the faithful companions of most people. Being subjected to this technique is extremely unpleasant as a result of the constant guilty conscience and feelings of inadequacy it often brings.
- *Heaping blame and putting to shame:* Blame and shame are inflicted through ridicule and double punishment. This occurs when someone is told that he is not good enough - even if the reason for not being good enough may be: (1) that he thinks he behaves differently from the dominator and in novel ways, or (2) that he hasn't had access to the information that the dominator has controlled. Heaping blame and putting to shame is more diffuse and harder to identify.

### 4.3. POWERS OF DARKNESS

Satan, a created being and once a marvellous messenger of light (Ezekiel 28), was once called Lucifer, meaning *light bearer*. He occupied a remarkable position of responsibility in the kingdom of heaven until he, and a large segment of his followers, rebelled against the throne of God. He sought not only to be God but to be *like* God, to share the characteristics and the power of God. The gospel of Luke recounts Ezekiel's declaration that he was hurled from heaven, driven out by Michael the archangel (the first of the angelic hosts).

Lucifer, renamed Satan, or adversary, by God, conquered Earth by penetrating the paradise of Eden and causing Adam and Eve to sin. He corrupted the Earth, and caused evil to penetrate the human race and the entire cosmic structure. A simple study of the history of mankind reveals that Satan is alive and well; thriving and powerful on planet Earth. Satanic activity is not corporate evil but takes place *on a personal level*: violent, subtle, deceitful, and malignant. Satan is not an illusion or a projection of human evil. He is an entity, with an ego.

The Bible reveals that Satan has the power to work miracles. According to Exodus 7:10-12, he is even able to transform matter. There is no doubt that the power of Satan extends to the realm of the material. It is possible for Satan to reveal, in a moment of time, things that exist at great distances and to reveal them in complete detail. Satan has the power to affect the lives of men. He goes before God and accuses people (Job 1:6-9; 2:1-4).

His power can affect finances (Job 1:14-17); he can harass with illness, inflict pain and suffering, and even cause death (Job 1:18-19, 2:7; 1 Corinthians 5:5). He has the power to influence world events (Daniel 10:13); political events (Exodus 1; Matthew 2; Rev. 12); and personal relationships, such as friendships and marriage (Job 1-2; John 7). People can certainly make choices in life, but they are vulnerable to outside influences manipulated by the great deceiver, and so these choices may not always be the best, leaving the door wide open for even more satanic attacks.

Satan and his demons are ancient creatures, quite familiar with the nature of Adam and Eve. They have the experience of millions of years behind them: experience in fighting God, His angels, and His most beloved creation: human beings. It is only to be expected that such ancient, fierce fighters would craft a strategy against the enemy based on detailed knowledge. This world is under the dominion of the prince of darkness. The apostle John reminds the believer that the whole world languishes in the lap of the evil one.<sup>536</sup>

It is of vital importance to comprehend that Satan is himself a creature of rare brilliance and inimitable genius. The Latin translation of his name, Lucifer (from the Hebrew "*Heleb*") comes from a root meaning brilliance or magnificence.<sup>537</sup>

According to Professor C. S. Dickerson<sup>538</sup>:

*The source of their knowledge is found in their superior created nature and in their vast experience, as they lived through many thousands of years observing and collecting information.*

---

<sup>536</sup> Martin, W (2008) *The Kingdom of the Occult*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Inc., pp.519-521

<sup>537</sup> Thomas, I D E (2008) *The Omega Conspiracy*. Crane: Anomalos Publishing House, p. 16

<sup>538</sup> Dickerson, C S (1975) *Angels Elect and Evil*. Chichago: Moody Press, p. 165

### 4.3.1 Current and Future Powers of Darkness

Dr Ed Murphy, in his book *The Handbook for Spiritual Warfare*, describes four different groups of evil<sup>539</sup>:

First, there are those who are free to carry out Satan's evil purposes. They inhabit the heavenlies (Ephesians 3:10; 6:12) but also are free to operate on Earth. These demon spirits afflict and even indwell the bodies of men (Matthew 12:43-45).

Second, there are rebellious angels who seem at present to be bound in the abyss or pit. They will evidently be released at a future date and will wreak havoc on the Earth (Revelation 9:2-12).

Third, there seems to be another group of fallen angels which evidently became so wicked or were guilty of evil so horrendous they were not permitted to exist in the heavenlies or on Earth. They are bound forever, not in the abyss, but in Hell. Murphy goes on to explain that the Greek word is "Tartarus", incorrectly translated "Hell." Tartarus is neither Sheol nor Hades nor Hell, but the place where those angels whose special sin is referred to in that passage (2 Peter 2:4) are confined "to be reserved unto judgment." The region is described as "pits of darkness". These spirits evidently will never be released. They seem to be held in darkness until the day of their judgment (2 Pet. 2:4; Jude 6).

Finally, there is a fourth group of evil angels who seem somehow to be bound within the Earth, if the words are taken literally. Four of them are mentioned as being "bound at the river Euphrates." When they are released in the last days they will lead a demonic army of destruction against mankind (Revelation 9:13-21).

### 4.3.2 Satan and His Seed

In her Philosophiae Doctorate, *Exoteric and Esoteric Evidence Pertaining to the Structures and Strategies to destruct Christianity – involving the Theodicy of Darkness*, Prof Dr Connie

---

<sup>539</sup> Murphy E F (2003) *The Handbook for Spiritual Warfare*, Revised and Updated. Thomas Nelson Publishers, p. 22

Brand exposes Satan and the hierarchy of Satan as the expositors to the destruction of Christianity<sup>540</sup>:

When God address the serpent in Genesis 3:15 the word *seed* is mentioned. If the woman was to have *seed*, then the serpent (Satan) must of necessity also have *seed*. When tracing the seed line of Satan, the first manifested seed upon this Earth was Cain, since Cain is missing from Adam's line of descent. This is the case not because Cain sinned, but because he was not of Adam's *seed*. Satan fathered Cain.

Genesis 4 is dedicated to Cain, his birth, his offering, his transgression, his sin and finally his punishment: Cain is cursed from the Earth (Genesis 4:11-12). The ground will not henceforth yield unto him and he is to be a fugitive and a vagabond in the Earth. Cain was also given a mark, a physical condition that would forever mark him and his *seed* after him. All of the judgement inflicted upon Cain became a genetic inheritance of the seed line of Cain; all of Cain's offspring where to carry these traits in their genes (DNA). They will never earn their living from the soil, they would always dwell in the cities, they would always be fugitives and vagabonds, and they would all possess certain physical and mental characteristics that they would forever brand them as the seed line of Satan.

According to Brand, this seed line of Satan is identified as the Jews, sometimes called the Pharisees, serpents, vipers, race of serpents, children of Hell and other such names given by Jesus Christ and the New Testament writers (see Matthews 23 and John 8). The International Jews of today, like their ancestors of old, are in possession of a certain number of physical and mental qualities that make them different from all other races upon this Earth. The Jews control the Black races, the foreign policies, Protestant Christianity, the Catholic Church, the Masonic lodges and political parties.

Cain was a merchant and a trafficker. The word *Canaanite* means "peddler, merchant, trafficker". Cain was marked with a swarthy (dark) skin. He was marked with a nose that always is his trademark. The children of Cain would always be involved in the money racket (Banking Cartel) and the dishonourable things in life. They would always live in the cities and feed on the sweat of other people's labour. They would be the vampire race, the leech of this world. Cain would exist on this Earth as the accursed seed, as the

---

<sup>540</sup> Brand, C M J (2006) Exoteric and Esoteric Evidence Pertaining to the Structures and Strategies to destruct Christianity – involving the Theodicy of Darkness, Philosophiae Doctor, Calvary University, pp. 636-672

bastard race, whose ultimate goal would be the crucifixion of Jesus Christ and the destruction of Christianity (seed-line of the women).

Genesis 10:15-20 reveals the satanic seed line of Canaan being Canaan, Sidon, Heth, the Jebusite, Amorite, Girgashite, Hivite, Arkite, Sinite, Arvadite, Zemarite, and the Hamathite – all classified as the family of the Canaanites and multiplied into the seven nations of Canaan according to Deuteronomy 7:1: The Hittites, Girgashites, Amorites, Canaanites, Perizzites, the Hivites and the Jebusites. This satanic seed practiced every evil and wicked abomination imaginable. When Esau married into the satanic seed by taking Hittite wives, the resultant children formed the satanic seed lines Edomites and Amalekites. The Edomite branch of the serpent's seed in time became and continues to this day to be the most satanic and vile portion of this evil seed.

Brand continues to reveal that the serpent seed line is rapidly, by this time, becoming a fusion of the most baneful of the genetic seed lines of this Earth and continues to be so today. For to this very hour, the descendants of this same satanic seed sit in the high places in every government in the Western world. They own and control the power of money and the printing presses, radio, television, and publishing houses in the Western world.

Any nation that permits this satanic seed line to flourish will soon find them in total control of the financial institutions, news media, university chairs, leading governmental positions and in total power over the very life and direction that a nation takes.

This vampire race of satanic seed, also called by Brand the Anti-Christian seed line, caused rivers of Christian blood to flow throughout Europe and the rest of the world. This satanic seed line of merchants, media masters and mafia criminals have initiated every major war in the recent centuries and have kept the Christian Nations in constant war with each other, while the satanic seed line sit in their counting houses counting the billions made through wars etc.

All of the occult powers of darkness were rampant among this satanic seed. The beginning of Cabalism and black magic can be traced back to Cain. The original secret societies and subversive movements all were part of the satanic seed line that began with Cain. All of the secret occult movements in history had their origin with the secret oaths and initiation doctrines promulgated by the seed line of Cain.



### 4.3.3 The Third Eye

*<sup>4</sup>But the serpent said to the woman, You shall not surely die,<sup>5</sup>for God knows that in the day you eat of it your eyes will be opened, and you will be like God, knowing the difference between good and evil and blessing and calamity. <sup>6</sup>And when the woman saw that the tree was good (suitable, pleasant) for food and that it was delightful to look at, and a tree to be desired in order to make one wise, she took of its fruit and ate; and she gave some also to her husband, and he ate. <sup>7</sup>Then the eyes of them both were opened, and they knew that they were naked; and they sewed fig leaves together and made themselves apron like girdles.*

Genesis 3:4-7

In the Garden of Eden, Satan already tempted Adam and Eve with the knowledge of the third eye. The scripture above does not refer to physical eyes, as their physical eyes were already open. It refers to spiritual eyes. It refers to entering into the world of illumination, a state of enlightenment. The Enlightenment has been developed as an alternative to Judaism and Christianity. The Enlightenment replaces Judaism and Christianity with a religion of the reason of the mind and is made up of a mixture of the worship of sun, moon, stars and planets with conflict between good and evil overcome by a process of the enlightenment of the mind. Examples of these are Buddhist, Hindu and New Age religions.<sup>541</sup>

The first written record of the pineal gland comes from the Greek physician Herophilus in the third century B.C.E. The name comes from the Latin *pineus*, meaning that it is shaped like a pinecone. This organ, the size of a grain of rice, lies deep within the human brain, at its geometrical centre. It is the only part of the brain that isn't divided into two hemispheres.<sup>542</sup>

Awareness of the pineal gland grew when Rene Descartes, in the seventeenth century, proposed that the only single organ in the brain was responsible for generating thoughts. He also postulated a direct connection between the pineal gland and our eyes, claiming that the pineal gland was the chief interpreter of vision. Descartes proposed that the pineal was the seat of the soul and was the meeting place of the physical and spiritual. The body and spirit

---

<sup>541</sup> Buys, A, The ABC of DID. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished, p. 33

<sup>542</sup> Kelch, B. The Pineal Gland, Third Eye Chakra and DMT [Online] Available from: <http://www.circusofmind.com/words/BrianKelch5.pdf> [Accessed: 1 August 2014]

not only meet there, but each affects the other and the relationship extends in both directions<sup>543</sup>

The pineal gland is involved in higher dimensional transmissions and is also called the Third Eye. Opening up the pineal gland always invokes the presence of an enlightened being. It allows the reviewer to become a receiver for all of Satan's transmissions. That is the sole reason for their encounters. Anyone who willingly opens themselves up to an altered state of consciousness risks having their body, mind, and soul taken over or possessed by demons, fallen angels, and/or Satan himself.<sup>544</sup>

This is the same gland connected to the Crown Chakra (the third eye chakra has been regarded as the source of spiritual insight, intuition, imagination, concentration, clairvoyance, and insight<sup>545</sup>) of the human body and its seven Kundalini sites. These seven sites match the earthly pilgrimage route of the Templar to the Oracles on which the Gothic Cathedrals were placed, and, in turn, mirror the seven planets, moon and sun, which will be in perfect alignment to them on July 28 2019. The Crown Chakra is where esoteric religions believe enlightenment is transmitted and stored. Wilfully opening the pineal gland (Third Eye) allows enlightenment from the serpent at the base of the spine to travel upward and to come forth. It is through this Kundalini ritual that the serpent speaks to those who seek his illumination by willingly receiving his Dragon energy. One has the choice in life whether to allow one's body and soul to receive the serpent in exchange for his power of enlightenment.<sup>546</sup>

The Throne (Crown Chakra), or seat of the serpent Satan, is in the head or brain of the person. The doorway to the throne room, the holy of holies and false glory and vision, requires the opening of the third eye or the occultic eyes. Man's fallen nature opens his third eye: he can inherit occultic vision and then become illuminated and perceive himself as god, or as one of those who have access to secret knowledge. Self-realisation, illumination and consciousness occur at the top of the tree of knowledge – the false tree of Kundalini. The expression that "the light goes on" originated from this process.

The eyes and vision of the false prophet are opened and Man becomes one with the Kundalini serpent, the false prophet of all false prophets. In tantric yoga (sex magic) the

---

<sup>543</sup> Strassman, R. (2001) DMT: The Spirit Molecule: A Doctor's Revolutionary Research into the Biology of Near-Death and Mystical Experiences. Rochester, VT: Park Street Press, pp. 59-60

<sup>544</sup> Pugh, J J (2006) Eden. United States of America: Tate Publishing, p. 331

<sup>545</sup> Kelch, B. The Pineal Gland, Third Eye Chakra and DMT [Online] Available from: <http://www.circusofmind.com/words/BrianKelch5.pdf> [Accessed: 1 August 2014]

<sup>546</sup> Pugh, J J (2006) Eden. United States of America: Tate Publishing, p. 331

female releases her secretions on a leaf and the male seed is placed on the third eye. The ceremony is called 'the five parts' or 'five-fold Eucharist' and is carried out in a circle (the ouroboros, the tail-eating serpent). The head is the place of authority. Jesus bruised the head of the serpent. The head of the serpent is his place of so-called perfect illuminated wisdom, but the tree of knowledge in fact opens the eye to the worst knowledge of the occult.

This level of wisdom and knowledge of Lucifer is the knowledge of the magi and magicians. It brings the unleashing of the latent power of the soul. Tantric yoga entails the harnessing of sexual energy. It releases Kundalini serpent power into the paranormal or supernatural realm that is evil and false. Tantrism, sexual energy and yoga are part of the pagan religious system and part of the sex cult. This is the true origin of goddess worship: Lucifer in the guise of the beautiful goddess of love, who for centuries has activated the fires of creativity, the fires of inspiration, the fires of worship, the fire of love but also the fires of destruction, hate, anger, death and war, mayhem and destruction. Her dark side is the killer of men and children through abortion, rape, war and poverty – the goddess who demands blood sacrifice. Venus is her name; she is the female form of Lucifer. She is called Diana Lucifera or Mary Lucifer.<sup>547</sup>

Theosophy involves a transmutation of thought in which the intent is to perfect Man and nature by worshipping Mother Earth as a goddess. Theosophy was the religion of the Ancients. Their secret teachings required one to go through stages of initiation to open up their Third Eye of illumination, a process which they called the Awakening. This was considered a spiritual process, which would lead the person to see an invisible universe that exists in the voids of space. The teachings claim that between the visible planets, all space is filled with sentient beings. When the god within is tapped by opening up the initiate's reptilian Third Eye, these space-dwelling sentient beings can then have a relationship with that particular human. This process of inner awakening promotes the love of self and nature over the worship of the Creator.<sup>548</sup>

DMT, or N,N-dimethyltryptamine, is a relatively small molecule that exists in all human bodies and occurs naturally throughout the plant and animal kingdoms. It is produced in the human pineal gland and is believed to be the molecule that plays a role in such experiences

---

<sup>547</sup> Buys, A, *The Tree of Knowledge and Serpent*. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished, pp. 51-55

<sup>548</sup> Pugh, J J (2006) *Eden*. United States of America: Tate Publishing, p. 313

as mystical/spiritual states of consciousness, near-death experiences, birth/death, dreams, alien contact experiences etc.<sup>549</sup>

In witchcraft the opening of The Third Eye is done in order to gain "Sight". This was achieved by using drugs. This meant the development of some sort of psychic powers, usually telepathy or clairvoyance, ultimately involving the opening this Third Eye.<sup>550</sup>

#### **4.3.4 Demonization**

It is important to understand the relationship between people surrendering inner and external territory to evil spirits, and the boundaries of that association, which involves the difference between those who are deceived into unwittingly giving place to the devil and thus become demonised, and those who knowingly form alliances with evil supernaturalism. The contrast between these types of persons may be defined in the most frequent New Testament expressions used to refer to demonic possession: 1) "daimonizomai", meaning "to be demonised"; and 2) "echon daimonion", which means "having a demon," and can actually denote a person who possesses the demon<sup>551</sup>, not the other way around.

In the Bible, this might describe persons like Saul, who sought out a woman possessed by a "familiar spirit" to summon the deceased Samuel, even though he knew God's commandment not to allow such practices in Israel (1 Samuel 28); and possibly Judas Iscariot, into whom Satan entered (Luke 22:3) as a result of his decision to do what his heart may have told him was a betrayal of God.

In echon daimonion, it is therefore one of the premises that territory can be surrendered to evil spirits by persons actually reaching out to and taking hold of the demon through willingly choosing to do what they otherwise know is satanic. That some people are not only aware of this marriage with evil, but energetically nurture it, is a growing reality.

---

<sup>549</sup> Strassman, R. (2001) DMT: The Spirit Molecule: A Doctor's Revolutionary Research into the Biology of Near-Death and Mystical Experiences. Rochester, VT: Park Street Press, p. 55

<sup>550</sup> Schnoebelen, W (1990) WICCA. USA: Chick Publications, p. 103

<sup>551</sup> Etymology: Demon: c.1200, from Latin daemon "spirit," from Greek daimon "deity, divine power; lesser god; guiding spirit, tutelary deity" (sometimes including souls of the dead); "one's genius, lot, or fortune;" from PIE \*dai-mon- "divider, provider" (of fortunes or destinies), from root \*da- "to divide". Used (with daimonion) in Christian Greek translations and Vulgate for "god of the heathen" and "unclean spirit." Jewish authors earlier had employed the Greek word in this sense, using it to render shedim "lords, idols" in the Septuagint, and Matt. viii:31 has daimones, translated as deofol in Old English, feend or deuil in Middle English. Another Old English word for this was hellcniht, literally "hell-knight." The original mythological sense is sometimes written daemon for purposes of distinction. The Demon of Socrates was a daimonion, a "divine principle or inward oracle." His accusers, and later the Church Fathers, however, represented this otherwise. [www.etymonline.com](http://www.etymonline.com)

## CASE STUDY

There was a young woman who was released from a mental institution to spend a week under the care of her family, and her family, who sought help from the church because they believed her condition was the result of diabolical possession. Having been approached by a relative of the girl, the counsellor was told how, over time, she had become withdrawn and eventually delusional. She began hearing voices and held lengthy conversations with what appeared to be empty rooms. Finally, her condition became so detached from physical reality that she had to be placed in a psychiatric facility. As time went on and her condition worsened, prayer for her by her family was met with hostility and then outright violence and her parents were desperate for help. An agreement was reached to have the young woman brought in for evaluation. The counsellor requested privacy and asked that a limited number of family members be present. Her caregiver agreed, and the story of the girl and what happened that week remains private. What can be said is that this person was truly possessed, but deliverance was not an option. The simple reason was that she actually wanted the demons. They had a right to be there. This is a glaring illustration of one aspect of *echon daimonion*, in which a person seeks out and possesses the demon.<sup>552</sup>

Literal possession is different from demonization, and ample evidence exists in the New Testament to conclude that, whereas believers may never be possessed, they most certainly can be tempted, influenced, oppressed, and even demonised by evil supernaturalism. To this end, the apostle Paul warned the Christians at Ephesus (Ephesians 4:25-31) not to give place (Greek: *topos*) to the devil, meaning a foothold, opportunity, power, occasion for acting, or doorway into one's personal space through which demonic strongholds can be established. Paul even listed particular behaviours that could lead to this fiendish union: lying, anger, wrath, stealing, bitterness, clamour, evil speaking (Greek *blasphemia*: to blaspheme, gossip, slander others), and malice.

Elsewhere in the Bible, it is shown that doorways for agents of Satan to enter a believer's life can also include encumbrances like fear, such as the fear that led Peter to deny Christ in Luke Chapter 22, which Jesus made clear was an effort by Satan to cause Peter to stumble (v, 31). Another example is greed - as illustrated in the story of Ananias and Sapphira in Acts chapter 5, where Satan (v, 3) filled the couple's hearts to lie and to hold back a portion of money. Demonization of a Christian through these and similar weaknesses is usually gradual, where small decisions are made over an extended period of time during which the individual gives in to temptation, followed by ongoing and progressive surrender of territory within the mind and finally the flesh.<sup>553</sup>

---

<sup>552</sup> Horn, T and Horn N (2010) *Forbidden Gates*. Missouri: Crane pp. 83-85

<sup>553</sup> Horn, T and Horn N (2010) *Forbidden Gates*. Missouri: Crane, pp. 109

There are five steps to demonization that can be summarised as follows.<sup>554</sup>

Step 1: *Temptation*: The enemy discovers a weakness and appeals to it.

Step 2: *Influence*: The individual entertains the idea and finally gives in to temptation. A foothold is established in the person's life, making it harder to resist the same or related activity in the future.

Step 3: *Obsession*: The activity eventually becomes an unhealthy preoccupation and irresistible impulse leading to critical degrees of control over the individual. The power to resist is practically gone. This is a form of insanity.

Step 4: *Demonization*: Control over the individual by external power becomes substantial. What at one time was considered sinful and to be avoided is now an addiction. The person may no longer even recognise the tendency as immoral and has little or no capacity to cease participating in the activity remains.

Step 5: *Possession*: This can occur if the individual turns his or her back on God so as to fully embrace carnality, surrendering the body and mind to Satan's control. The desire to resist invasion by discarnate supernaturalism is nil.

What immediately stands out in these steps and doorways to demonization is how central the mind of Man is to the functioning battleground where spiritual warfare takes place. Whether it is lying, anger, wrath, stealing, bitterness, clamour, evil speaking, malice, fear, greed, or another human frailty, the battle begins in the believer's thoughts, where he is tempted to give in to sin. That's where Satan can manipulate people toward his ends, discreetly and invisibly. If he can distort Man's thoughts, his emotions, and his knowledge, then his behaviours and relationships will fall the way Satan wants them to. And even if he doesn't manage to turn the person over to overt evil, a little bit of distorted thinking can neutralise him and render him practically ineffective.

In other words, if Satan cannot possess or demonise an individual, he will settle for what he can get, influencing the mind and spirit to whatever extent he can, keeping people ineffective or causing them to become a problem for their families, their communities, or their churches. The emphasis on the human mind as the primary battle ground upon which the forces of

---

<sup>554</sup> Ibid., pp. 109-110

good and evil struggle to dominate the will of men not only fills the pages of Scripture but was recognised by many ancient cultures, including the Greeks, who were so intrigued by the concept that they literally built a large part of the fables of their thirteenth god, Dionysus, around it.<sup>555</sup>

#### 4.3.5 Satan's Strategy

Man's mind is his greatest asset. It is his ticket to greatness and his passport to living God's dream for him. Satan knows that Man's mind is the foundation of a successful destiny. He knows that when the mind is captured, Man's destiny is changed. If the believer prays until his mind is changed, he will be able to achieve his goals in life. To maximise the potential of an individual's mind is to maximise his destiny. The moment Man's mind is put to optimum use, he will be exceptional in life. Satan knows that in order to change a person's destiny he must change his life; to change his life he must change his mind; to downgrade his status in life he must downgrade his mind. All of this is to ultimately manipulate, dominate and control Man's mind.

The Bible clearly voices the mission of the devil against humanity<sup>556</sup>:

*The thief comes only in order to steal and kill and destroy. I (Jesus) came that they may have and enjoy life, and have it in abundance (to the full, till it overflows).*

*John 10:10*

One cannot determine the presence of satanic methods of waging war on the brain and mind until there is a spiritual confrontation, which will lead to unseating the powers that are located in a person's brain and mind. The moment an evil tree is uprooted from the brain and mind; there will be an instance of the reversal of the functioning of the brain and mind. Those whose brain and mind has been working in an anticlockwise manner will suddenly discover a restoration to normalcy. Several people, for example, have failed academic examinations simply because in the process to go and read, a great sleep will fall upon them. This takes place when an evil programme works against the brain and mind.

---

<sup>555</sup> Horn, T and Horn N (2010) Forbidden Gates. Missouri: Crane, pp. 111-114

<sup>556</sup> Olukoya (2009), page 52-58

Satan's main strategy of temptation is deception. Satan almost always begins with deception. However, once Satan has established a strong foothold in a person's life (Eph. 4:27), deception may no longer be so important. He will often unmask himself to torment and enslave his victims further. The main purpose for his deception is to dishonour God (by bringing shame and even judgment upon His children).<sup>557</sup>

Following are some of Satan's tactics and methods used to wage war against the human race, their brains and their minds.

#### **4.3.5.1 Luciferianism**

The ultimate goal of Satan is to bring every living and spiritual thing to worship him; as he wants to be like God.

Luciferianism is the worship or reverence of Lucifer as a deity. Such religion is related to Satanism, though it attempts to emphasise the more 'positive' aspects of Lucifer. Luciferian beliefs are extremely varied from group to group. Although Luciferianism and Satanism are often incorrectly referred to interchangeably, they are very dissimilar. Theistic Luciferians may sometimes demonstrate characteristics or practices that cross over with theistic Satanism, but Lucifer is regarded as an angel or god of light, a more positive ideal than the animalistic and materialistic deity recognised by theistic Satanists. The wide variety of beliefs among Luciferian adherents has contributed to the generally held belief that Luciferianism is simply a subset of Satanism, a mini-denomination of sorts.<sup>558</sup>

In Luciferianism the Mind is trained to "think" as a god or goddess, thus liberating the self from restrictive spirituality. Luciferianism encourages a strict adherence towards the self-determined goals of the initiate as well as the discipline of magical practice. Luciferians do not believe in an "afterlife". Luciferians consider magick to be a process of continual self-improvement, strengthening consciousness and obtaining knowledge via a self-chosen path of initiation.

Luciferianism is believed to be the ultimate spirituality, as it focuses on the growth and expansion of the individual in a rational sense here and now, with the broad range of spiritual

---

<sup>557</sup> Murphy, E F (2003) *The Handbook for Spiritual Warfare*, Revised and Updated. Thomas Nelson Publishers, pp. 19-20

<sup>558</sup> GotQuestions [Online] Available from: <http://www.gotquestions.org/Luciferianism.html> [Accessed: 15 August 2014]



exploration as well. Luciferians find the symbolism of demonic gods, or 'deific masks' as representations of either a power or phenomenon in nature and within the mind. It is the bridge between both, the initiation, which unlocks the wisdom of darkness. Luciferians create and destroy. Harming others is only an option in self-defence or when reasonable. Luciferians do not accept the notion of sin, and submission to a perceived 'higher power' is degrading.

Luciferians consider the *Black Flame*, or "Melammu", the power of gods and demons, to be the essence of divine consciousness. This is visualised within via meditations and in 'dream' workings or astral projection. The Black Flame is the inner fire of the mind given to humanity by the Watchers or fallen angels. In ancient Mesopotamia, Melammu is the divine gift first held by Tiamat, the Goddess of Darkness.

The Hellenic Ruler Cult is one great-grandfather of the ideological Luciferian foundation; albeit taken to an individual level, where each individual cultivates a Daemon or Genius which is the esteemed possibility of self-excellence. This Daemon is believed to be the true will, higher-self or holy guardian angel, and not some complicated external deity. The Daemon is the continual spiritual possibility of what a person wishes to be; the Daemon is made strong by seeking to perform the person's will and continually evolving (called Ascension) in the manner in which the person has determined.<sup>559</sup>

In modern Luciferianism, Lilith is considered a consort and/or an aspect of Lucifer and is identified with the civilisation of Babylon. She is said to come from the mud and dust, and is known as the Queen of the Succubae. When she and Lucifer mate, they form an androgynous being called Baphomet or the Goat of Mendes, also known in Luciferianism as the God of Witches. Lilith forms the Luciferian Trinity, composed of her, Samael and Cain. Likewise, she is said to have been Cain's actual mother, as opposed to Eve, but acting through her. Lilith here is seen as a goddess of witches, the dark feminine principle, and is also known as the goddess Hecate.<sup>560</sup>

---

<sup>559</sup> Luciferian Apotheca, Luciferianism an Introduction [Online] Available from: <http://luciferianapotheca.myshopify.com/pages/luciferianism-an-introduction> [Accessed: 14 August 2014]

<sup>560</sup> Johnson, S, The Bohemian Grove Exposed [Online] Available from: <http://www.contendingfortruth.com/wp-content/uploads/Bohemian-Grove-Exposed-Edited-Version.pdf> [Accessed: 14 August 2014]

## CASE STUDY

The following is a confession by a former South African Devil Worshiper, made April 2014.<sup>561</sup>

I belonged to a very powerful marine kingdom here in South Africa and each girl in our kingdom had the power to disappear from a scene, transform our body into any animal, or even change the brains of our victim with a dead brain. This is why some men who came to South Africa with an aim when they sleep with us, they abandon their original plans and only desire to have more sex adventures with any of our beautiful agents. We were all given spiritual HIV to spread to every man and each girl had a mission of sleeping with 100 men in a week. A type of HIV that no machine in the world can detect it but it will gradually kill the man. In my case, I had powers that made me sleep with multiple men at various locations at the same place. So one man will be sleeping with me in Johannesburg by 8:00PM and another man in Cape Town will also be sleeping with me at the same time. I don't get into any serious relationship with the men so that they won't find out my true identity. I don't sleep with one particular man more than twice. So if you are reading this and you have ever slept with any girl just once or twice and then you lost contact with her or she refused coming to sleep with you again, then you might have been a victim of my former kingdom. We also used to target tourists who come into South Africa and desires an one night stand with South African ladies. We also targeted institutions of learning and killed the destinies of most young men by sleeping with them. After sleeping with a man, he will have the spiritual HIV and die faster.

HERE IS MY SECRET DIARY BEFORE I WAS DELIVERED:

- 1) Cast the spell of lust into Johannesburg which is the entry point of South Africa so that whoever enters this country through here will be possessed with a strong desire for sex.
- 2) Launch my arrow of hard luck on 50 beautiful girls so that they will become financially frustrated and then will become vulnerable for our kingdom.
- 3) Cause loose men to have careless money so that they won't know what to do with such unplanned money than to spend it in clubs where we had already placed our agents for pick-ups.
- 4) Attack every evangelist, pastor or church in South Africa and make them develop pity and emotional attachment to our beautiful agents which we attach to their lives and ministries.
- 5) Attend the level 999 meeting in the caves of ancient Babylon where I will receive my promotion into the second to the highest order of the kingdom and then I planned to invite more agents from the British Virgin Islands and India.

### 4.3.5.2 Demon Worship

All demons already worship Satan. They stand under his control, guidance and instruction. As a deception tool, Satan brings in the disguise of getting people to worship demons, but indirectly they are worshipping Satan.

---

<sup>561</sup> Africa This Day, Confession of a Former South African Devil Worshiper [Online] Available from: <http://africathisday.com/2014/04/16/shocking-confession-of-a-former-south-african-devil-worshiper-and-her-secret-notes/> [Accessed: 14 August 2014]

Demons, the lower agents of evil, have many guises and operate under many names and with many purposes. In the pagan view, they are a part of the natural order, entities of moral ambivalence that mostly deceive and interfere. In the Christian view, they are evil - fallen angels who, as Lucifer did, chose pride over obedience to God and were cast out of heaven. They are doomed to eternal Hell and serve the Devil, making unending assaults on human beings in an attempt to subvert souls to the Devil's domain.

Outside monotheism, demons have a long history of interfering in the affairs of the physical world and the lives of people, though not always with the goal of subverting souls. They act as tricksters and create annoying disturbances. More seriously, they cause illnesses, insanity, disasters, and bad luck. Whatever the guises, names and agendas, demonic forces are constantly at play in the world. Evil is insidious, a Trojan horse that destroys from within, degrading people's thoughts, intentions, and will. Evil often operates through people, in the murder, mayhem, oppression, and violence people wreak on one another.

Some people adamantly insist that demons do not exist. They readily believe in angels and other representatives of the forces of light and good, but they deny the existence of malevolent beings. They would rather not know anything about the demonic than dignify demonic forces by studying them. Some of them naively think that if they do not believe in demons, they will not be bothered by them. "See no evil" means, to them, avoiding all evil. Ignorance is their protection. Ignorance, however, is no protection. Ignorance breeds fear, and fear is evil's greatest weapon.

Demons are the front lines of evil. Denying their existence only makes human beings easier targets. Outside religion, demons play roles in occultism and magic. They are one of numerous types of entities with whom adepts can traffic. They are conjured, controlled, and assigned tasks. In magical lore, some demons have good dispositions and some do not. They offer humans gifts of wealth, knowledge, power, and pleasure when worshiped, but always at a price. The greatest price is one's soul. The three pillars of demon worship are divination (fortune-telling), sorcery and witchcraft.<sup>562</sup>

---

<sup>562</sup> Guiley, R E (2009) *The Encyclopedia of Demons and Demonology*. New York: Infobase Publishing, pp. xiii-xv

## CASE STUDY

Robin Williams, world known actor and comedian (the most successful crude stand-up comic who ever lived) died August 2014, shocking the world by taking his own life, after a long struggle with Depression.<sup>563</sup>

Robin Williams acknowledged that he had opened himself up to transformative demonic powers that aided him on stage. Without the aid of such demonic powers, it is likely that you would never have heard of Robin Williams and many other famous celebrities. Williams also recognised that these powers had manifested a very evil influence on stage and that there could be a hefty price to pay for their assistance. Williams told James Kaplan of US Weekly<sup>564</sup>:

*Yeah! Literally, it's like possession - all of a sudden you're in, and because it's in front of a live audience, you just get this energy that just starts going...But there's also that thing - it is possession. In the old days you'd be burned for it... But there is something empowering about it. I mean, it is a place where you are totally - it is Dr. Jekyll and Mr. Hyde, where you really can become this other force. Maybe that's why I don't need to play evil characters [in movies], 'cause sometimes onstage you can cross that line and come back. Clubs are a weird kind of petri dish environment. I mean, that's where people can get as dark as they can in comedy - in the name of comedy, be talking about outrageous stuff and somehow come out the other side. I mean, that's one place where you really want to push it.*

Williams' last statement quoted above provides the reason why the demonic powers use entertainers. Their goal is to promote evil and darkness and increase Mankind's rebellion against God. Comedians, like many famous musicians, pay the price for their fame by becoming enslaved to the demonic forces that possess and torment them. Sadly, Robin Williams must have felt like he was in a no-win situation. When he sought sobriety, the demonic voices which he admits he had opened himself up to likely tormented him to no end. When he sought to drown out the clamouring voices with a deluge of alcohol, he ended up poisoning himself and teetered on the throes of death. He had tried professional help a number of times, but the arm of the flesh, no matter how noble the intentions, cannot overcome the demonic world.

### 4.3.5.3 Demonic Enmeshment

The ultimate sexual union is seen to be between women of Earth and demons of Hell. This happened in ancient times, in the days of Noah, but what is of frightening importance to the current generation is that the New Testament predicts that some of the distinctive features of the days of Noah will be repeated at the end-time. (Luke 17:26).

---

<sup>563</sup> The Good Fight, Robin Williams [Online] Available from: [http://www.goodfight.org/a\\_v\\_williams\\_robin.html#U-qPm-kVBOc.facebook](http://www.goodfight.org/a_v_williams_robin.html#U-qPm-kVBOc.facebook) [Accessed: 14 August 2014]

<sup>564</sup> Robin Williams, "Robin Williams," by James Kaplan, US Weekly, January, 1999, p. 53

But why should Satan be interested in sex? In what way can he advance his cause by the intermingling of demons and humans in sexual relations? One reason may be found in his desire to downgrade women. He remembers that Christ came as the seed of a woman. Another reason is his desire to "get back" at God. Since he cannot hurt God Himself, he attacks men who God loves. Thus he indirectly attacks God, and one of the devil's most powerful weapons against humanity is to twist and pervert man sexually. Knowing that his time is short, he accelerates his activity (Revelation 12:12).

But there is another reason: the devil uses sex and orgasm to implant his ideas into his victim's mind. He is aware that one of the human experiences that come closest to the ecstasy of communication with God is that of sexual orgasm between lovers. If ever a human being acts as if he were possessed without actually being possessed, it is when he is overwhelmed by the irresistible tide of desire. Here he trembles, groans, writhes, cries out in a bittersweet experience that defies description. Satan used and manipulated sex to give man a simulated spiritual ecstasy. But rather than the ecstasy being divine, his version has been demonic. In this way, Satan has succeeded in introducing his thoughts and ideas into Man's being, under cover of an erotic ravishment. And by the same method, he has been able to confirm and consolidate his work.

In most cases, Satan has been satisfied by using eroticism between humans as a vehicle for his devices. However, there are many instances where he has engaged demons more actively in the sexual process. Such demonic enslavement to lustful sex is known as incubacy and succubacy. No aspect of demon possession is more revolting.<sup>565</sup>

Demonic enmeshment is one of the greatest tools used by Satan to gain access to the human soul and spirit, to manipulate, dominate and control to the point of destruction.

The Merriam-Webster dictionary defines "enmeshes" as to "catch or entangle in". Synonyms for the word *enmesh* are: catch up, entangle, ensnare, ensnarl, entoil, entrap, mesh, net, snare, tangle and trap.<sup>566</sup>

Arthur Burk<sup>567</sup> in his ministry has been exposed to demonic enmeshment and describes the process as follows.<sup>568</sup>

---

<sup>565</sup> Thomas, I D E (2008) *The Omega Conspiracy*. Crane: Anomalos Publishing House, pp. 172-174

<sup>566</sup> Merriam-Webster Dictionary, Emesh [Online] Available from: <http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/enmesh> [Accessed: 15 August 2014]

*Enmeshment is different from curses or demonization. It is a database transfer where demons can transfer emotions and knowledge over to a human database; a human emotional database. The demonic entity transfers his experience to the person's emotional database via a jump drive. The demons can transfer in good or bad experiences and in the process can copy and/or delete human experiences over to the same jump drive. Demons then download these stolen experiences into themselves as they want to enjoy forgiveness, peace, etc. as they will never be able to have it. The jump drive is the sexual act. Merging files happen via sexual intimacy. Enmeshment is the transfer during sexual climax. This happens on the soul level but a different experience happens on a human spirit level. All of this is done to ultimately affect the human spirit. This enmeshment is like a fibre optic line to the human spirit to implant the demonic realm. When this person who had sexual relations with the demon now has sexual intimacy with another person, enmeshment is also possible via the deception and violation, voluntary or involuntary.*

There are real spirit beings that have minds, wills and emotions of their own. They desire to cause a person to feel with their emotions, think their thoughts and will to do what is their will. They will be so clever as to make it almost impossible to separate the person's own mind, will and emotions from theirs. This is the most intense form of demonic infliction a believer can suffer.<sup>569</sup>

Many women, and many times men, experience sexual relationships in their sleep. This is called having spirit husbands or spirit wives. There are three types of people affected by this phenomenon: (1) those that knowingly have this relationship on a constant, ongoing basis; (2) those that knowingly have this relationship on and off, and (3) those that have this relationship but don't know they do because, immediately after, it is wiped off their memory by demonic manipulation. The third group is the worst and most concerning group to which a victim can belong. Since these people cannot remember the dream, they will not be able to do something about it.

---

<sup>567</sup> Arthur Burk is the founder of Plumblin Ministries and international speaker. He is considered an expert on the subjects of counseling, deliverance, healing and the redemptive gifts; specifically with the working with the human spirit a person. He walks in the office of the Prophet and has strong teaching anointing.

<sup>568</sup> Burk, A, Ministering to SRA/DID Clients. 13 August 2014

<sup>569</sup> Bubeck, M I (1975) The Adversary. USA: The Moody Bible Institute of Chicago, p. 89

These spirits have so mastered the art of deception that they will use the faces of familiar people when visiting at night: father, pastor, brother, boss, even the person's real spouse. These night-time (sometimes day-time) experiences are called encounters with spirit husbands and spirit wives. In West Africa they call these dream visitors; night husbands and night wives. The Latin people of ancient days called it the encounter with incubi (demonic sexual attacks on females may be caused by sexual sins, witchcraft spells, curses of lust, inherited curses, can attack children) and succubae (demonic sexual attacks on males may be caused by the same behaviours which cause incubi to molest women).

Sexual experiences with demonic spirits are very real, even in this day and age. Men and women who have experienced this become bound by the spirits of the incubus and succubus. A witch or warlock, through the use of astral travel, can seduce men and women, having sexual relations with them as they sleep, while the victim regards the experience as only a dream. This is done through the utilisation of familiar spirits. Incubi and succubae can also enter in through masturbation and fantasy lust. People can be unknowingly violated (raped) by spirits - all they know is that they had experienced something painful and undesirable.

The incubus is a lewd demon which seeks sexual intercourse with women. It is also termed follet (French), alp (German), duende (Spanish) and folletto (Italian). The corresponding demon who appears to men is the succubus. When associated with one particular witch or sorcerer, both incubus and succubus are known as magistellus, or "familiar". Inasmuch as the nightmare dream is sexual in latent content, the term "incubus" is often used interchangeably with The Mare Demon; in fact, the Latin word for nightmare is "incubo" (to lie upon). The incubus can assume either a male or a female shape. Sometimes he appears as a full-grown man, sometimes as a satyr or in the form of a demon, and if it is a woman who has been received as a witch, the incubus generally assumes the form of an animal.

The succubus is a demon in female form, specialised in seducing men. Although feminine in meaning, in form this Medieval Latin word, succubus, is masculine (because demons were supposedly sexless). The feminine form succuba (strumpet) is occasionally found. These dreams or nightmares of a sexual nature are as real as life, dreams where one cannot exactly distinguish the real from the unreal.

The presence of spirit husbands or wives affects a person on three levels: (1) difficulty getting married, (2) difficulty staying married, and (3) difficulty having children.<sup>570</sup>

NIGHTMARE or MARE: The demon or mare alleged to cause bad dreams. The dream itself is called a nightmare.

MARE: The supposed demon which, during the night, sits on the chest and causes feelings of suffocation and choking, causing the sensation of paralysis or a heavy weight inducing suffocation.

#### **4.3.5.4 Satanic Imprisonment of the Brain and Mind**

If an individual allows the devil to imprison his brain and mind, he gives him a license for truncating his destiny. If God has created him to be exceptional by giving him a world-class brain and mind and he ends up not being known beyond his immediate community, his brain is under bondage. Someone with the brain and mind of a world-class believer who ends up with the status of a local champion is a classic example of someone with an imprisoned brain and mind. It is vital to understand that there is a department in the demonic arena that is charged with the responsibility of keeping human brains and minds in fortified prisons. Their job is to specifically attack the head, the brain and mind. The devil has given them the responsibility of subjecting the brain and mind to captivity, slavery and oppression. Once these demonic assignments are achieved, the victims will be miles away from the level which God wants them to attain.<sup>571</sup>

#### **4.3.5.5 The Demonised Brain and Mind**

A demonised brain and mind simply means that an evil spirit has decided to plunder the brain and mind. A lot of people have resident evil personalities living in their brain and minds. The goal of these spirits is to lead the person into confusion. The presence of evil spirits and their activities in the brain and mind will make the victims do evil things.<sup>572</sup>

---

<sup>570</sup> The Deliverance Place, Spirit Wife and Spirit Husband [Online] Available from: <http://www.deliveranceplace.com/stronghold.html> [Accessed: 29 August 2014]

<sup>571</sup> Olukoya, D (2009) Deliverance for the Brain. Nigeria. MFM Ministries.

<sup>572</sup> Ibid.



#### **4.3.5.6 The Cursed Brain and Mind**

The situation is worse when the brain and mind are cursed. Wicked satanic agents attack brains and minds by placing terrible curses on them. No matter where a person goes with a cursed brain and mind, he will continue to achieve nothing, in spite of his exceptional brilliance. If a cursed hand cannot achieve anything, how will a cursed brain and mind create achievements? Many people are going about with cursed brains and minds.<sup>573</sup>

#### **4.3.5.7 The Bewitched Brain and Mind**

Another problem is the problem of bewitched brain and minds. If a brain and mind have been taken to a witchcraft coven, they will begin to function abnormally. One of the favourite pastimes of witches and wizards is to cook human brains spiritually in a cauldron. Once the brain and mind is cooked in that manner, it will never function normally. Students, who are very brilliant, for example, can suddenly develop cases of idiocy. Such problems often occur when the brain and mind is bewitched.<sup>574</sup>

#### **4.3.5.8 Brain and Mind under Evil Yokes**

When the enemy wants to attack, he places evil yokes on the brain and mind. As some people sleep, the devil takes their brain and mind and uses them throughout the night. Such victims will wake up with a serious headache. If someone has gone through this kind of situation, he will need deliverance.<sup>575</sup>

#### **4.3.5.9 Brain and Mind Surrounded by a Band of Wickedness.**

Whenever the devil wants to attack his victim, he dispatches a band of wicked agents and they subject the brain and mind to multiple attacks. If the band of wickedness is not broken, the owner of the brain and mind cannot do any good thing with it.<sup>576</sup>

---

<sup>573</sup> Ibid.

<sup>574</sup> Ibid.

<sup>575</sup> Ibid.

<sup>576</sup> Ibid.

#### **4.3.5.10 Brain and Mind Under an Evil Covenant**

Unknown to most people, their brains and minds have been covenanted to the kingdom of darkness. When the brain is involved with an evil covenant, the victim may exhibit uncommon brilliance once in a while, but at other times will slump into an embarrassingly low level of performance. When the devil is involved in an alliance involving someone's brain and mind, he cannot make use of it meaningfully.<sup>577</sup>

#### **4.3.5.11 Brain and Mind that Harbour Evil Seeds**

The moment the devil succeeds in planting an evil seed in an individual's brain, there will be an evil plant which will bring forth evil fruits.<sup>578</sup>

#### **4.3.5.12 Brains Averse to the Scriptures**

There are people whose brain and minds are porous when it comes to the issue of memorising the Scriptures. Such people can retain any form of information, but they often forget the Scriptures. Some people discover that something is always pushing out the Scriptures from their brain and minds. This is evidence of satanic attacks on the brain and mind.<sup>579</sup>

#### **4.3.5.13 Satanic Embargo**

Satanic embargo subjects the brain and mind to a serious go-slow. There is a lack of progress and moving forward becomes impossible. The brain and mind will not be able to achieve certain feats because an embargo has been placed on it. A spiritual embargo, when placed on the brain and mind, will make it experience certain limitations. Brains and minds that are limited will not be stretched to their highest limit.<sup>580</sup>

---

<sup>577</sup> Ibid.

<sup>578</sup> Ibid.

<sup>579</sup> Ibid.

<sup>580</sup> Ibid.

#### 4.3.5.14 Satanic Exchange

Satanic exchange means that an exchange of some sort can take place. The Bible says

<sup>16</sup> *Let his nature and understanding be changed from a man's and let a beast's nature and understanding be given him, and let seven times [or years] pass over him.*

*Daniel 4: 16*

This means that a person's heart can be exchanged. The organs of a person's body can be changed. There can be an evil exchange. Cases of victims exist, where people beat their domestic servants and the stripes from the beating appeared on the person who was performing the beating instead of the victim. There was an exchange. All the things needed to make a person's life meaningful exist as entities in the spiritual world. They can be stolen; they can be transferred and exchanged.

To exchange means to take out something completely and replace it with something else. This is a strategy which the enemy has continued to use successfully. There is evil exchange or satanic transfer. It is possible for the virtues to be stolen and replaced with vices.

Examples of some major exchanges that the enemy carries out:

- *Spirit Exchange:* A terrible spirit may enter into a person and take over the person's personality. There will be constant misfortune. It is possible for someone to be alive while the real essence of the person is gone. The human essence has been withdrawn.
- *Body Exchange:* There are people who look older than their age. Once some people enter into a place their presence invites irritation.
- *Brain Exchange:* The enemy knows that without the brain, a person cannot succeed in his academic pursuits. There are many cases in which witches were compelled to remove the intelligence of brilliant people, to be replaced with the brain of a goat or a cow.
- *Child Exchange:* A pregnant woman was attacked, and her baby was taken out of the womb and replaced with an evil foetus through satanic surgery.
- *Wealth Exchange:* This occurs when the money a person ought to make is transferred and exchanged with counterfeit money. The hair of the individuals are often taken away in order to manipulate their wealth.

- **Virtues Exchange:** The virtues of a person are transferred and exchanged. The owner of the virtues will continue to experience disfavour while the individual who receives the exchanged virtue will continue to enjoy favour.
- **Talent Exchange:** This happens when the talent of a person is stolen or transferred to another person.
- **Partner Exchange:** This is when the husband or the wife whom the person ought to marry has been taken away.
- **Promotion Exchange:** The promotion due to some person is exchanged and given to those who do not merit it.
- **Age Exchange:** Those who are old can decide to grow younger through satanic manipulation.
- **Health Exchange:** Good health can be exchanged.
- **Organ Exchange:** Organs can also be exchanged.

The following might be symptoms of satanic exchange: first born demotion, serious failure at the edge of serious breakthroughs, unexplainable health failure, brain failure, memory loss, having children who become one's enemy, androgynous features, entering into the wrong marriage, stagnancy, disfavour, living a vagabond life, insanity, a sad countenance, contrasting personality, making unexplainable and unpardonable errors, blackout, horrible nightmares, , desiring good things but being unable to achieve them, getting married in a dream, a cycle of poverty, having constant failure and disappointment, a life of trouble and hardship, and/or seeing dead or mad people in a dream.

Satan cannot create but he can transfer. When the devil realises that his children are in need of anything, he will locate those who have what the children of the devil want. He will steal those things and transfer them to his children.<sup>581</sup>

#### **4.3.5.15 Secret Organisations/Societies**

Secret Organisations/Societies serve and worship Satan and ultimately live out his vision and purpose for domination, manipulation and control. Many variations of secret organisations have developed, gone underground, and continue to exist, and have their roots in the occult, have a vision of replacing Christianity and have a vision of a One World

---

<sup>581</sup> Olukoya, D K (2005) Dealing with Satanic Exchange. Iwaya: The Battle Cry Christian Ministries, pp. 12-24

Order. Many of these organisations have strong links with religions (in terms of principles) and often carry/use the same symbols.

Gary Kah, in his book *En Route to Global Occupation*, maps the origin and influence of secret societies as follows<sup>582</sup>.

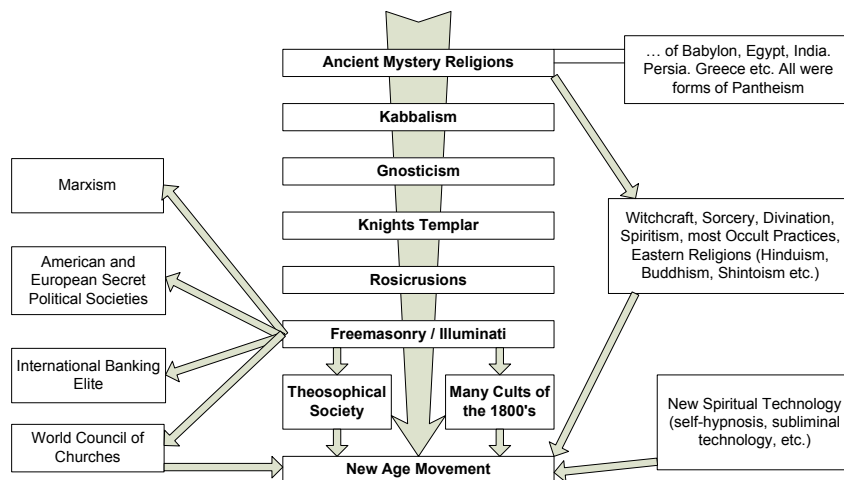


Figure 4.1: Layout of Secret Societies.<sup>583</sup>

It is through symbolism that the occult speaks to the initiate. The initiate has always had a code of communication through certain phrases, words, handshakes and symbols. Secret Organisations have been used as places of applying satanic ritual abuse to make slaves for the New World Order. For these men to run the World, they need to control the minds of men and women and to make slaves of them to work for them in this New World Order.

They attempt control via a process of enlightenment or illumination by a mixture of Godly principles, images and pagan beliefs. The process of mind control is a lengthy one of indoctrination into a belief system. Some of the steps are (1) redefinition of the conflict between good and evil, (2) Man's soul escapes his body through wisdom/Karma/chakras and (3) wisdom is obtained through initiations. There are two paths to achieve this objective.

The first path is through yoga, transcendental meditation, opening of the third eye, clairvoyance, spiritual masters or gurus and sun worship. All of these have roots in New Age, Hinduism and Buddhism. This process is very slow. If the intention is to achieve the goal of mass mind control, an alternative is needed.

<sup>582</sup> Kah, G H, (1991) *En Route to Global Occupation*. Huntington Galleries, p. 20

<sup>583</sup> Ibid.

The second path is through black magic, the occult, mind-expanding drugs, trance channelling and extra sensory perception. This is a much faster path with greater results, and one in which satanic covenants play an extremely important role.

Both paths lead to exposure to the spiritual hierarchies of darkness, as well as to the concept of “we are god” and therefore teaching “we are godlike” and “we are the master race from Atlantis”, with the ultimate purpose of establishing a New World Order for Satan...<sup>584</sup>

#### **4.3.6 Strategic Influence due to Music**

##### **4.3.6.1 A Short History of Music Types**

The history of rock music can be traced way back to the mysteries of the temple rituals of ancient, pagan Babylon. Its origins are purely religious, being an integral part of orgies and devil worship. This entire system of pagan worship, including the music, eventually filtered down into Egypt. Egypt is the source, according to modern historians, of the origins of rock music. In Egypt, music was used to alter the emotions; it was used to create mass hypnosis and especially to incite immorality.

From ancient Egypt, it spread to West Africa, including Dahomey (currently Benin) and the Congo. A significant dance tradition derived from the Egyptians is found in the western Congo. In fact this dance, called the *Danse du ventre*, could be mistaken for modern dance in that the shoulders, buttocks, stomach and breasts are all separately or simultaneously rotated, wagged or otherwise set in motion. In fact a similar dance is the Voodoo, which is also a religion, whose origin can itself be traced to Dahomey. Music in these African cultures is intricately involved in devil worship, altering the conscious state and inciting sexual orgies. This music subsequently found its way across the Atlantic to America aboard slave ships.

En route to the United States, many slaves were taken first to the West Indies, especially Hispaniola; then after a time many were sold in New Orleans. They brought with them their religious and musical heritage. Those from Santo Domingo had retained their ancient Voodoo<sup>585</sup> worship practices and continued them in New Orleans. One of the most exotic sights in old New Orleans was the slave dancing that took place in the ‘*Place Congo*’. The slaves’ custom of assembling on Sundays and church holy days to dance in public squares

---

<sup>584</sup> Buys, A, The ABC of DID. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished, pp. 37, 43-44

<sup>585</sup> See 1.7.4.1 Voodoo for definition later on in this Chapter

must have begun before 1786, for in that year it was forbidden until after the close of religious services.

The exposure of this African music and dance tradition to the public provided an opportunity for it to influence, and be influenced by, European musical tradition. The unique rhythmical emphasis of these dances, plus many other ingredients and entertainment practices, combined to form a musical genre called Jazz. Authorities agree that work songs from cotton fields, rural and urban blues, banjo styles from minstrel shows, syncopated brass bands and ragtime, all played an important part. Even Voodoo had its influence on jazz. The syncopation as a primary ingredient of jazz developed as a rhythmic accommodation of the Africans. Syncopation was the nearest and best substitute for the complicated poly-rhythms that were an integral part of their musical heritage. It is this syncopation that causes music to swing.

Jazz is the precursor of modern rock and roll. The name Jazz comes from the now defunct word 'jass', which means the sexual act. Jazz, to the pagan, is a symbol of a glorious release from the bonds of moral restraint. It came from the slums of music; it corrupted taste and manners. In fact, jazz music was mainly developed for use in brothels, where each brothel would try to outclass the others by having the best jazz band. Eventually, jazz evolved into what is known today as rock and roll, however it lost none of its heritage in its long journey from Babylon to Egypt to America and then to the world at large; it has simply been repackaged in a different form with the same rhythms and qualities which originated with devil worship, rebellion, and immorality.<sup>586</sup>

The progression of metal music can be defined as follows: Rock (1865-1949), Proto Metal (1950-1969), Heavy Metal (1970-1981), Speed Metal (1982-1987), Death Metal (1988-1993), Black Metal (1991-1996) and currently Retro-cumulative (from 1996).

Heavy metal (originally Rock) music is one of many methods that can be used to influence people to become involved in the occult or could even contain occult practices. Death Metal has proven to be more violent than any previous forms of rock, but only in intensity. Black Metal is simply pushing the envelope of wickedness and blasphemy, which have always been present in rock music. The pounding beat of rock and the rock lyrics have an influence on a person on many levels. Those who saturate themselves with rock are deeply affected

---

<sup>586</sup> Gonzalez, R, History of Rock Music. [Online] Available at <http://www.sundaylaw.net/studies/truelife/music/rockmusc.htm> [Accessed on 10 January 2014]

by it. Rock in all its forms corrupts, injures, maims, kills and can be the cause of many traumatic events.<sup>587</sup>

#### **4.3.6.2 The Power of Music**

Very few people understand the tremendous power that music exercises over the conscious and the subconscious nature of those who listen to it. It has long been known that martial music, band music, and religious music could produce predictable emotional responses. Moods of listeners have been programmed by certain kinds of music. Vast segments of people have reacted in almost uniform togetherness to the same controlled music. They have been tranquillised into nostalgia or lethargy by soothing melodies, or they have been agitated to actual violence by appropriately wild syncopated rhythms.

It has now been established scientifically that moods have a biological basis. Moods are produced by a combination of brain activity, blood circulation, and body chemistry. All these functions are affected to an extraordinary degree by music. Medical research has revealed that nerves of the ear have more extensive connections than any other nerves of the body. In fact, there is hardly a function of the human system which cannot be affected by musical tones. Actual tests have proven that music has a direct influence on pulse rate, blood pressure, the nervous system, digestion, muscles, and glands of the body.<sup>588</sup>

In his book *The Psychology of Music*, Dr Schoen says, *Music is made of the stuff which is in and of itself the most powerful stimulant known among the perceptual processes.... Music operates on our emotional faculty with greater intensiveness and rapidity than the product of any other act.*<sup>589</sup>

The most amazing fact of all is how the physical organs react to music. Since the body only functions when the brain commands it to, music therefore in some way, has to reach the brain first of all. One of the most important discoveries ever made in this area has established that music is heard in that portion of the brain which receives the stimuli of emotions, sensations, and feelings. In fact, music completely bypasses the brain centres involving reason and intelligence. It does not depend upon the master brain to gain entrance

---

<sup>587</sup> Fouche, A C M (2005) Exposing the Hidden Secrets of the Bloodlines, South Africa a Case Study. Master's degree, p. 39

<sup>588</sup> TM Ministry, Music and Moods [Online] Available from: <http://www.tmministry.co.za/resources/MUSIC%20AND%20MOODS.pdf> [Accessed: 8 August 2014]

<sup>589</sup> Schoen, M (1940) *The Psychology of Music*. Michigan: The Ronald press company, p. 39



into the body. It enters by way of the thalamus, which is a relay station of all emotions, sensations, and feelings.

Schullian and Schoen describe it thus: *"Once a stimulus has been able to reach the thalamus, the master brain is automatically invaded, and if the stimulus is continued for some time, a closer contact between the master brain and the world of reality can be thus established."*<sup>590</sup> Notice that the music has to be continued for some time to produce physical reactions through the conscious, master brain.

The repetitive, percussive amplification of sound through the electric instruments of rock-and-roll produces a phenomenon which is better described than understood. *Time* magazine describes it in these words: *The hypnotic beat works a strange kind of magic. Many dancers become oblivious to those around them. They drift away from their partners. Inhibitions flake away, eyes glaze over, until suddenly they are seemingly swimming along in a sea of sound.*

Since the attack is made through the thalamus, the individual who listens will be affected by the music without even making any conscious decision in the matter. This is why doctors have grasped music as a new way to reach the minds of the retarded and the mentally ill. It has opened the door for music to be used therapeutically to communicate with emotionally disturbed patients. Even autistic children are being remarkably stimulated to respond because they do not have to make any kind of voluntary decision - the music reaches the brain centre just by being perceived as sound, through the thalamus. Words may mean nothing to the children, but the sensory level is pried open by the music, providing access to the conscious brain.<sup>591</sup>

This fascinating fact about music, though beneficial in reaching the mentally disturbed, has also provided a way for Satan to make a sneak attack upon almost anyone who will listen to the wrong kind of music. Without his even realising it, the listener's mind will be bent to whatever emotional attitude the devil wants to incorporate into the musical beat.

---

<sup>590</sup> Schullian, D M and Schoen M (1948) Music and Medicine. Henry Schuman, p. 270-271

<sup>591</sup> TM Ministry, Music and Moods [Online] Available from: <http://www.tmministry.co.za/resources/MUSIC%20AND%20MOODS.pdf> [Accessed: 8 August 2014]

William van der Wall describes in his book *Music in Hospitals*, how the nerves transmit the music's message to the various parts of the body<sup>592</sup>:

*Sound vibrations acting upon and through the nervous system give shocks in rhythmical sequence to the muscles, which cause them to contract and set our arms and hands, legs and feet in motion. On account of their automatic muscular reaction, many people make some movement when hearing music; for them to remain motionless would require conscious muscular restraint.*

With this subtle psychological effect of music on the brain and the body, a better understanding is reached on how the rhythm and beat of modern music has created so much moral havoc among the young. The incessant themes of illicit sex, drugs, and rebellion have been drilled into the brain, creating an emotional attitude of acceptance toward these aberrations of conduct. By operating through the thalamus, Satan bypasses the mental and spiritual barricades of intelligent reason, and enters the citadel of the mind, the great control centre of all human decisions and action. There, in the mind, Satan has the equipment to translate sensual musical impressions into physical action. Through the telegraphic network of nerves reaching every part of the body, he can communicate the appropriate commands to act in accordance with the emotional stimuli of the music.<sup>593</sup>

#### **4.3.6.3 Cathedrals**

In her book, *Eden*, Dr Joye Pugh explains how the Sacred Harmonic Geometry works. The Order of Knights Templar's Cathedrals were deceitfully filled with esoteric forms of Christianity. Early Christians should have known that the Templar did not build these structures for the worship of Jehovah (Trinity God). Unfortunately, many churches have been built using similar architecture, artwork, signs, and symbols of Gnostic Christianity, where people supposedly go to worship Jehovah.

Cathedrals were designed to resonate, like an instrument, so that their vibration was felt upon the human body when tuned to the right pitch. That is why chanting in these Cathedrals was so important to the monks. Repetitious sounds, just like the meditative use of 'OM' in yoga, are required to start this vibratory effect. Therefore, the use of the 'OM'

---

<sup>592</sup> Van der Wall, W (1946) *Music in Hospitals*. Russell Sage foundation, p. 106

<sup>593</sup> TM Ministry, Music and Moods [Online] Available from: <http://www.tmministry.co.za/resources/MUSIC%20AND%20MOODS.pdf> [Accessed: 8 August 2014]

sound or repetitious chanting is in no way worshipping God Almighty; instead it is being used for one's own self-illumination by opening up the Third Eye and letting Satan in. That is the sole reason these architectural monuments were built based on the science of Sacred Harmonic Geometry.

All megalithic structures have this uncanny capability of producing an illuminated effect on anyone who is willing to place themselves in such a vulnerable state. The strategically designed building's hypnotic power produces a state of luminous exchange between Satan and the willing candidate. All the willing person is required to do is open up their mind, and then let Satan tune them into his station through a brain-altering vibrational frequency. Satan comes deceptively imitating the light of God (2 Corinthians 2:13-14).

The science of Sacred Harmonic Geometry was used in the building of the great pyramids. Archaeologists are not sure what tools were used in pyramid construction, because no tools have been found on site. All pyramids are positioned on ley lines that connect their placements with the knowledge of the Templars, who also built their Cathedrals on earth currents/ley lines.

The great pyramids act like a resonator when vibrations come up from within the Earth or are made to occur internally. The sacred note of Mother Earth is F Sharp, according to the Native American Indians. The great Pyramids are tuned to a perfect F Sharp. Even texts of the ancient Egyptians record that planet Earth is made up of the musical notes that compose the F Sharp Chord. The King's Chamber inside the great Pyramids resonates at a range of one-half to 16 Hertz. The Sarcophagus, which is strategically placed within the King's Chamber, resonates at 440 Hertz when struck. The King's Chamber maximises sound like the Gothic Cathedrals do. Sound seems to come from everywhere, as it is somehow reflected from one wall to another.

The sound that resonates within megalithic structures affects the brain. Some people report feeling sick, while others get energised and feel electric charges. The most unusual feature of the Pyramid is that anything left within it will become dehydrated and mummified. There is also some evidence of the natural preservation of food taking place, as well as tools such as knives getting sharper when left for days inside these unusual structures. The energy in the

Pyramid seems almost electro-magnetic in nature and radiates from the structure. It is a form of energy that the common man does not understand.<sup>594</sup>

#### **4.3.7 Television and Movies**

The entire television industry is cutthroat and evil. Hollywood movies are saturated with demonic hints of paedophilia, jokes about incest, total nudity, and sexual immorality of every sort. It's all deliberate, intended to plant demonic seeds. It is not a mere coincidence that Hollywood is homosexual to the core and a thousand times worse than Sodom and Gomorrah.<sup>595</sup>

One of the greatest deceptions of all times is Disney. Behind Disney's good front lie pornography, snuff films, white slavery, Illuminati mind-control and the seduction of several generations into witchcraft. Many Disney films promote magic, sorcery, and many other pagan religions. Disney promotes a sinful life of rebellion against God.<sup>596</sup> Disney productions, over the years, are filled with Masonic symbolism, witchcraft, mind control and indoctrination through subliminal messages. Disney is preparing the younger generations for the New World Order, as well as introducing them to magic and witchcraft. Sexual perversion and occult seduction are at the top of Disney's agenda. Disney promotes witches and witchcraft in almost all their animated films.<sup>597</sup>

The adult entertainment (porn) industry is bigger than music and professional sports combined. More porn movies are ordered in hotels than mainstream Hollywood features. In 1972, the total retail value of all the hard-core porno sold in America was estimated at \$5 million to \$10 million. By the late '90s Americans spent \$10 billion per year on media depicting sex.

Man's modern obsession with pornography began with photos of nude women in men's magazines. Today's ostensibly adult movies depict every sex act imaginable. The downward spiral continues, now including sexual perversions and violence too horrendous to describe here. Such empty pursuits leave no time for developing the spiritual dimension in a person's

---

<sup>594</sup> Pugh, J J (2006) Eden. United States of America: Tate Publishing, pp. 182-183

<sup>595</sup> Stuart, D J, Jesus is Savior [Online] Available from: [http://www.jesus-is-savior.com/Evils%20in%20America/Hellivision/dirty\\_minds.htm](http://www.jesus-is-savior.com/Evils%20in%20America/Hellivision/dirty_minds.htm) [Accessed: 7 August 2014]

<sup>596</sup> Stuart, D J, Jesus is Savior [Online] Available from: [http://www.jesus-is-savior.com/Evils%20in%20America/Hellivision/walt\\_disney-communist.htm](http://www.jesus-is-savior.com/Evils%20in%20America/Hellivision/walt_disney-communist.htm) [Accessed: 7 August 2014]

<sup>597</sup> Swanepoel J, Disney. Radah Academy. Unpublished, pp. 3,6,13

life. There is no time for God when spare time is devoted to porn or to the sex-saturated music, movies and television programmes that pass for entertainment.<sup>598</sup>

#### **4.3.7.1 History of Television and Movies**

What follows is the timeline for television and movies<sup>599</sup>:

1910-1920: Silent films - Mainly characterised by humour and romance. Charlie Chaplin was a favourite of this era. Charlie Chaplin was barred from the USA because of his sympathies for Communism and dislike for America.

1920-1940: Classics - Walt Disney began producing cartoon films.

1940-1950: Westerns and crime films - Advocated violence and murder.

1950-1960: Sex and scandals - Hollywood turned more and more to sex and scandal to lure people back to movie houses, as the popularity of the art form had decreased.

1970-1990: Shock and splatter - Films about Satanism and witchcraft (example the Exorcist, Poltergeist, etc.) the supernatural (example Star Wars), extra-terrestrials (example Close Encounters of the Third Kind) blasphemous films (example Jesus Christ Superstar) and hard-core pornography were the prime movies.

1990's to present date - Science fiction and horror, often with strong occult and New Age themes, are prevalent. These are often coupled with nudity and other forms of immorality.

#### **4.3.7.2 The Power of Television and Movies**

Television, radio, movies, and magazines present demonic messages every day. Violence, murder, perversion, and rebellion are standard fare. One Hollywood writer claims that three ingredients must be present in any successful movie: violence, rebellion, and sex. Children's cartoons constantly depict violence and make demons appear as friends or cute harmless

---

<sup>598</sup> Vertical Thought, Pornography [Online] Available from: <http://www.ucg.org/christian-living/pornography-adult-entertainment-definitely-not-adults-or-youth/> [Accessed: 14 August 2014]

<sup>599</sup> Stuart, D J, Jesus is Savior [Online] Available from: [http://www.jesus-is-savior.com/Evils%20in%20America/Hellivision/movies\\_and\\_tv.htm](http://www.jesus-is-savior.com/Evils%20in%20America/Hellivision/movies_and_tv.htm) [Accessed: 7 August 2014]

things. Movies such as Star Wars and E. T. remain among the most popular, and their ideas are derived from Buddhism and the demonic realm.<sup>600</sup>

Satan sits behind every device used in entertainment, using it for his wiles and intentions (2 Corinthians 2:11). Following are some of the objectives established by Satan to bring destruction to man through television and movies<sup>601</sup>:

- *A distortion of reality.* This is an inherent danger to children and teenagers.
- *A dispensing of a sinful and worldly philosophy,* promoting materialism, immorality, violence, profanity, atheism, humanism and the occult.
- *A domination of personal life.* Television dominates many homes, and schedules are built around programmes.
- *A destroyer of time.* People's lives are being absorbed by being addicted to television and movies.
- *A distraction from corporate worship.* It is not uncommon for believers to forsake the worship services of the church to stay home for television.
- *A disturbance of family life.* It becomes the family worship centre; it detracts from communication and developing relationships, and is all too often the centre of attention at meal time, rather than family devotions and discussion.
- *A developer of juvenile aggression.* What younger children see on television is real to them. The effects of television violence are that (1) it reduces viewer inhibitions against violent, aggressive behaviour; (2) it teaches viewers forms of aggression (giving them information about how to attack someone else when the occasion arises); and (3) the ethical ending, in which the villain gets his desserts, does not serve as an antidote to the violence which occurred before. It 'may keep viewers from reproducing villainy' right away, but it does not make them forget how to do it. The ethical ending is just a suppresser of violence, it does not erase.
- *A disruption of the learning process.* Entertainment replaces learning, as watching replaces reading and thinking and thus diminishes mind power.
- *A degrading of morality, as it glorifies sex and violence.*
- *A deadening of activity.* People, especially teens and children, should be productive. Instead of hours of inactivity in a mentally neutral mode, people should be exercising

---

<sup>600</sup> Ing, R (1966) *Spiritual Warfare*. Whitaker House: United States of America, p. 238

<sup>601</sup> Stuart, D J, Jesus is Savior [Online] Available from: [http://www.jesus-is-savior.com/Evils%20in%20America/Hellivision/movies\\_and\\_tv.htm](http://www.jesus-is-savior.com/Evils%20in%20America/Hellivision/movies_and_tv.htm) [Accessed: 7 August 2014]

and disciplining their bodies and minds. They should be learning and developing talents such as playing a musical instrument with which to glorify and serve the Lord.

#### **4.3.8 Fantasy Role-Playing Games (RPG)**

Following the popularity of Tolkien's *The Hobbit* (1937) and *Lord of the Rings* (1954-1955), a genre named fantasy came into being. The genre has *avant la lettre* authors like William Morris and Lord Dunsany and has a close relationship to mythology and fairy tales. From the 1960s onwards, fantasy became a transmedial phenomenon, which can be found in various media such as books, movies, television series, music and games. A fantasy subculture emerged in which a convergence is taking place between popular fantasy media, clothing, re-enactment and (pagan) spirituality.

Role-playing has a long history in Western culture, from children's games through the theatre and as a training method. However, fantasy role-playing as a commercial product was developed in the 1970s as *Dungeons and Dragons* (D&D, 1974) by Gary Gygax and Dave Anderson. The game was based on a combination of their interests in table-top war-gaming and literary fantasy. Table-top or pen and paper role-play does not involve any form of physical acting. Nevertheless, in the United States and England, influenced by re-enactment, players started to enact their characters, thus beginning what came to be known as Live Action Role-Play (LARP). In the 1970s many fantasy fans and D&D players had jobs as computer specialists. Many of the computer games developed had a fantasy theme or were based on D&D, like the game *Adventure*. In 1978, the first Multi User Dungeon (MUD), a text-based virtual reality or role-playing game, was designed by Roy Trubshaw and Richard Bartle. It took almost twenty years before the first three-dimensional Massive Multiplayer Online Role-Playing Game (MMORPG), *Meridian 59* (1996), was developed.

Live action role-playing groups like *Vortex Adventures*, *Cauldron* and *Lands in Exile* are highly visible at the Renaissance Fair. While enacting their characters, they provide entertainment, for instance by demonstrating sword fighting and playing the Bloodball tournament. This is the fantasy version of American football where not only physical but also magical skills are allowed.<sup>602</sup>

---

<sup>602</sup> Copier, M, Connecting Worlds. Fantasy Role-Playing Games, Ritual Acts and the Magic Circle [Online] Available from: <http://www.digra.org/wp-content/uploads/digital-library/06278.50594.pdf> [Accessed: 29 August 2014]

In her Philosophiae Doctorate, *An Exegetical Interpretation of the Esoteric Powers Working Through Fantasy Role-playing Games as a Catechism of the Occult*, Dr Anke Brand made the conclusion that<sup>603</sup>:

*Role playing games constitute a unique environment in which fantasy, imagination and reality intersect. Concurring with scripture Leviticus 19:26 says not to practice any kind of magic... Fantasy role playing consists of collections and performances resembling magic ritual acts. Here one will encounter magic, sorcery, witchery and demon summoning additionally the gamer will be educated on occultism, mysticism, demonology and the spirit world... People under the power of role playing games, are influenced by the games, to the extent that it has the capacity of having a negative impact on their entire lives, a significant impact on the minds of the players.*

The following is written by a women game player explaining the experience from the player's viewpoint<sup>604</sup>:

*One of the many fun things about role playing is using it as a tool to explore different identities and realities. Sometimes, we play characters who perceive the world much as we do in our own day-to-day lives — such as when our PCs are modern-day humans of similar backgrounds to ours who live in a realistic setting. Sometimes, the differences between the player and the character's perceptions are huge — such as a modern-day human playing a five thousand year-old elf who lives in a world of magic, or a hyper-intelligent shade of the colour blue, or an alien from beyond the stars who perceives the world as having five dimensions, and so on. Many players wish to explore identities that are different from their own in less fantastic ways. They may play a character who has a strongly different personality from their own. They may play a character who has a different gender, ethnic or cultural background, social class, sexual orientation, and so on. Mental illness (played to various levels of realism) is a popular theme for exploration in RPGs. The subject shows up across a variety of different genres, but it is presented quite differently across games. For example, the insanity spell in Dungeons and Dragons requires that players roll dice to randomly determine how their character acts round by round. Some players may see this spell as bearing so little resemblance to the struggles of*

---

<sup>603</sup> Brand, A (2012) *An Exegetical Interpretation of the Esoteric Powers Working Through Fantasy Role-playing Games as a Catechism of the Occult*, Philosophiae Doctor, St Clements Private Swiss University, pp. 389, 403

<sup>604</sup> Gaming as Women, Madness, Insanity and Derangement [Online] Available from: <http://www.gamingaswomen.com/posts/2012/08/madness-insanity-derangement-mental-illness-in-rpgs/> [Accessed: 29 August 2014]



*actual mental illness that they may not feel offended; other players may see it as a gross mischaracterization of a commonly misunderstood and marginalized group of people.*

#### **4.3.8.1 Dungeons and Dragons**

Many Dungeons and Dragon players have played characters that would be termed insane, whether or not they set out to do so. Examples of characters with mental illnesses include the serial-killer cleric of Erythnul, the quirky wizard, and the paladin with depression. Mental illness can be a big feature of the character, or just a minor problem. It can strike characters of all races, genders, and alignments, though obviously the race or alignment changes which mental illness the character is most vulnerable to. Because Dungeons and Dragon campaigns are set in a magical world, insanity can have more causes and cures than there are available in the mundane world. *Some spells directly cause insanity* (in the form of a continuous Confusion effect). Some spells cause hallucinations or delusions, or involve mind-control. Some spells affect mental ability scores.

The magic and monsters in Dungeons and Dragon can cause insanity indirectly as well. In the life of the adventurer, there are many traumatic experiences available to cause the nightmares and flashbacks of post-traumatic stress disorder; there are many losses which can cause depression. Being turned to stone for a thousand years, spending time under a mind-flayer's control, being affected by a magical spell which forces one to kill a comrade, being affected by a dragon's fear effect - all these will affect a character's mind, and may (if the character is under enough strain) cause a mental illness. Basically, it's a matter of what the character can handle and what goes over that level and what happens when it does.<sup>605</sup>

### **4.4. ALTERED STATES OF CONSCIOUSNESS**

#### **4.4.1.1 Introduction**

An altered state of consciousness occurs when there is a shift in the quality or pattern of a person's mental activity. Thoughts may become fuzzy and disorganised and he may feel less alert, or his thoughts may take bizarre turns, as they so often do in dreams. Sometimes being in an altered state may mean being in a state of increased alertness, as when under

---

<sup>605</sup> Wizards Community, Role Playing Insanity [Online] Available from: <http://community.wizards.com/forum/whats-player-do/threads/1122846> [Accessed: 29 August 2014]

the influence of a stimulant. An individual may also divide his conscious awareness, as when he drives to work or school and then wonders how he got there - one level of conscious awareness was driving, while the other was thinking about the day ahead, perhaps.

This altered state of divided consciousness can be a dangerous thing, as many people who try to drive and talk on a cell phone at the same time have discovered. Driving and carrying on a phone conversation are both processes that should demand focused attention, and it is simply not possible to do both at once in a safe and efficient manner. Studies have shown that driving while talking on a cell phone, even a hands-free phone, puts a person at the same degree of risk as driving under the influence of alcohol. Texting while driving is more than risky, it can be murderous.

There are many forms of altered states of consciousness. For example, daydreaming, being hypnotised, or achieving a meditative state are usually considered to be altered states. Being under the influence of certain drugs such as caffeine, tobacco, or alcohol are definitely examples of altered states. In recent years, there has been a definite rise in the use of stimulants and memory-enhancing drugs to boost cognitive performance in adults - drugs that would ordinarily be prescribed for children and adolescents with Attention-Deficit/Hyperactivity Disorder, but are now used by college students and older adults who do not have a disorder, but who feel that the drugs give them an “edge”. But the most common altered state people experience is the one they spend about a third of their lives in on a nightly basis, namely sleep.<sup>606</sup>

#### **4.4.2 Dangers of Altered States of Consciousness**

There are clearly risks to cultivating altered states. First, altered states of consciousness may induce mental illness in unstable individuals, or they may naturally progress into mental illness, even among the sound of mind. Because no one can know if this will occur, the risk is similar to that of taking powerful, experimental drugs, or like rushing down to the beach to watch a tidal wave. You may or may not be engulfed, but if you are it will be too late to change your mind.

---

<sup>606</sup> Ciccarelli S K and White J N (2012) Psychology. USA: Prenticehall, p. 131

For example, in one of her altered states, modern shaman and bestselling author Lynn Andres could not access reality and believed she was going insane<sup>607</sup>, proclaiming:

*I was terrified. I began to inhale great breaths of air, gasping. I sobbed uncontrollably. I had finally done it – I had lost my mind.*

More and more psychologists who personally explore states of consciousness are now blurring the distinction between sanity and insanity and reinterpreting psychopathological conditions as a form of higher consciousness. Some actually view insanity as a spiritual blessing. Regrettably, they rarely seem to ask the right questions concerning the personal, social, and spiritual implications of their interpretations or experiences.

Secondly, altered states can open a person to the supernatural realm and contact with spirits who are really demons. No one can logically deny that a legitimate connection exists between altered states of consciousness and spirit influence or spirit possession. Psychologist Kenneth Ring is correct when he observes that Western materialism has done society a disservice by not interpreting this consequence properly<sup>608</sup>:

*Another common occurrence when functioning at this [particular] level of consciousness is encountering entities. Though sometimes benevolent, they are more often threatening and are intent on gaining control over the individual's body or consciousness. There are many cases of such instances of attempted or successful possession to be found in the literature on spiritualism, magic, witchcraft and madness, but in the West we have typically dismissed these symptoms of possession as hallucinations. Such visitations are by no means restricted to those who have ingested a psychedelic agent – they are potentially available to anyone who has entered this region of consciousness by whatever means. In my own view, many of the claims made by mental patients that they are possessed by alien entities are best understood as representing a perfectly accurate assessment of what has happened to them. It is time that we began taking the concept of possession seriously instead of dismissing it as a superstition or a hallucination.*

A third problem with altered states is their ability to profoundly affect one's perception. For example, the ultimate goal of most altered states of consciousness programmes is the destruction of the limited personal self to uncover the alleged true self, which is said to be

---

<sup>607</sup> Andrews, L (1986) Jaguar Woman and the Wisdom of the Butterfly Tree. San Francisco: Harper & Row. p. 183.

<sup>608</sup> Ring, K (1974) A Transpersonal View of Consciousness: A Mapping of Farther Regions of Inner Space, Journal of Transpersonal Psychology, no. 2, pp. 142-43,150.

divine and one in essence with God. Unfortunately, this internal experience of oneself as god usually seems to be accomplished through possession by a spirit entity who manipulates the states of consciousness toward such false perceptions. Of course, it should be emphasised that not all altered states are the result of spiritualistic influence, and one must be careful not to label certain mental states as demonic when they result only from normal or abnormal brain physiology. In other words, many altered states of consciousness have no spiritistic influence at all. Physiological psychology professor Dr Elizabeth Hillstrom points out<sup>609</sup>:

*Many are due to mundane causes. Many of the unusual visual events in altered states are undoubtedly illusions or hallucinations caused by disruptions in the normal cognitive and perceptual operations of the brain. Others may be due to an abnormal activation of brain mechanisms that are responsible for dreaming. Sensory deprivation and Eastern meditation can also affect the operation of neurons to a certain extent, because both states can apparently alter the electrical patterns (EEGs) that emanate from the brain. There are several phenomena that might be created through interference with the neuronal operations that underlie perception.*

In addition, the fact that everyone can dream indicates that everyone has the capacity to normally experience complex fantasies and vivid imagery in their own consciousness, Hillstrom continues<sup>610</sup>:

*Another mind-brain mechanism that may be artificially activated during altered states is the system that creates our dreams. Although human beings vary in their ability to produce fantasy and mental imagery while they are awake, research indicates that virtually everyone experiences complex fantasies while dreaming. This plus other observable characteristics of the dream state suggests that we must have some type of built-in brain mechanism that can create new images, or pull up and modify old ones from memory, and then shape these into incidents or stories without our conscious instruction. Since this mechanism can operate in one altered state (while we are asleep), perhaps it can also operate in others, particularly at deeper levels of those states, when conscious awareness is greatly diminished. This is supported by studies of hypnogogic hallucinations - brief episodes of dreaming (usually less than 5 minutes) that some people experience when they are fully conscious.*

---

<sup>609</sup> Hillstrom, E L (1995) Testing the Spirits. Downers Grove: InterVarsity Press, pp. 71-72.

<sup>610</sup> Ibid. p. 75

Nevertheless, this same author also warns about the development of altered states. She points out that biblical accounts of trances and visions that were used to communicate God's will have particular attributes that distinguish them from New Age varieties. For example, in Acts 10:9-16 where Peter fell into a trance, the Holy Spirit waited until after the vision and trance had passed in order to help the apostle comprehend the vision and then instruct him in what to do. In other words, in contrast with New Age visions and trances, where the spirits work within these parameters to give revelations, God works outside of them to give His messages. In a few biblical cases, contact with spiritual beings (here, godly angels) had such a profound impact that it apparently induced an altered state. In one of Daniel's visions (Daniel 10:9) he saw an angel, and the experience was so powerful that he fell into a deep sleep, with his face to the ground. Interestingly, the angel did not try to communicate with Daniel when he was in that state. He awakened him and told him to stand up and listen carefully to the message so he could record it accurately.

Dr Hillstrom concludes that there are no indications in Scripture that people should enter altered states or trances in order to draw closer to God, a common theme in New Age circles. She points out that, according to 1 Peter 4:7 (and other Scriptures), believers are to be clear-minded and self-controlled so that they may pray and study Scripture. Thus, the biblical means of spiritual growth and sanctification, e.g. meditation on Scripture, prayer, fasting, is surely not meant to put a person into altered states of consciousness.

Further, these states are clearly opening doors to the intrusion of demonic spirits<sup>611</sup>:

*However, it is obvious that such states could certainly magnify any influence that these (demonic) spirits might exert on the human mind. In fact, Satan and his forces could hardly find a more opportune situation in which to deceive or mislead people. If this seems like too strong a statement, stop and review the various characteristics of altered states. In altered states, people are subject to vivid imagery, unconstrained imaginative processes that resist conscious control, and intense emotions. Having largely set aside their ability to think rationally and critically or to exercise their will, they have become hyper-suggestible, which means that they are likely to accept any spiritual truth that enters their minds. Even more remarkably, they seem to be primed for mystical experiences and may attach great spiritual significance to virtually any event or thought, no matter how mundane or outlandish. Seeking mystical experiences through altered states, as defined here, looks like an open invitation for deception.*

---

<sup>611</sup> Ibid. p. 69

Finally, Hillstrom points out some of the further problems with altered states of consciousness besides that of assisting demonic intrusion or deception. Of concern is the fact that the key characteristics of altered states are generally similar<sup>612</sup>:

*Altered states also have important commonalities. They can all impair one's ability to test reality, to think critically and logically or to remember. They create a passive state in which mental events seem to develop on their own and are simply experienced rather than being controlled. Many also weaken emotional restraints, allowing moods to swing from wild jubilation to deep fear and depression. In addition, they can all create perceptual distortions and hallucinations and precipitate unusual bodily sensations like numbness, dizziness, tingling or rushes of energy. They can make people hyper suggestible, so they are open to many strange beliefs and are easily influenced by the suggestions of other people. Altered states have the singular ability to make all kinds of improbable events seem exceptionally real and significant. One final effect of altered states is their apparent ability to facilitate or enhance mystical experience.*

In conclusion, to develop altered states of consciousness is not to participate in a form of higher consciousness or true spirituality. Rather, it often involves abnormal regressive states of consciousness — ones particularly conducive to demonic contact and manipulation. The radical change in worldview is characteristically toward the occult, encouraging both occult practices and occult philosophy. The growing acceptance of altered states by millions of people, their use in psychotherapy, medicine, education, and many other fields is a reflection of the growing influence of paganism in society today.<sup>613</sup>

#### **4.4.3 Examples of What Can Cause Altered States of Consciousness**

##### **4.4.3.1 Spiritism**

The strong historical linkage between pagan cultures and consciousness manipulation for occult purposes, e.g. spirit possession in shamanism (channelling), indicates that the spirit world has always had a vested interest in encouraging the explorations of altered states of consciousness along specific lines, especially those devoted to spirit contact and possession.

---

<sup>612</sup> Ibid. pp. 69-70

<sup>613</sup> Ackerberg J and Weldon J (1996) Encyclopaedia of New Age Beliefs. US: Harvest House Publishers, pp. 23- 25

The research of sociologist Erika Bourguignon indicated that of 488 contemporary societies observed, over 90% had made trance and spirit-possession states socially acceptable.<sup>614</sup> In the West today, trance and possession states are becoming acceptable. If there is one topic consistently associated with altered states of consciousness, it is the spirit world.

In traditional societies, and, to a considerable extent in modern societies as well, altered states tend to be spoken of in connection with supernatural entities such as spirits. The vast majority of societies have socially institutionalised the phenomenon of altered states that are typically those associated with spirit contact and spirit possession. Indeed, numerous texts about consciousness exploration reveal that the modern exploration of altered states is frequently a euphemism for psychic development, occult exploration, and/or spirit contact in general. More than one text exploring altered or mystical states has stated that the mystical state of consciousness and the state of spirit possession can be one and the same. Spirit possession is the core of mystical experience.

In essence, the history of Eastern religion, Western occultism, and modern parapsychology persistently reveals the importance of developing altered states of consciousness for contacting occult dimensions, and the importance of realising that these dimensions are linked to the spirit world.<sup>615</sup>

Nobel scientist Sir John Eccles is known for his comment that the human brain is a machine that a ghost can operate. His statement illustrates the truth that, given the proper conditions, the human mind can become an open door permitting the influence of spirits. If the mind can be so affected that spirits gain some measure of control over it, how do they do so? It would appear that altered states of consciousness are the principal method for offering the proper conditions. And there are an almost unlimited number of methods of inducing altered states of consciousness.

Revelations from the spirits themselves often stress the importance of altered states of consciousness as essential for contacting them.

---

<sup>614</sup> Ibid., p. 20

<sup>615</sup> Ibid., pp. 20-21

The spirit guides Orin and DaBen, who channel through Sanaya Roman and Dr Duane Packer respectively, affirm that a<sup>616</sup>

*trance state is a state of consciousness that allows you to connect with a guide... Achieving a channelling state is easier... than (most people) thought it would be... The trance state creates very subtle changes in your perception of reality.*

Altered states are associated with a large variety of subjects, everything from hypnosis and other trance states, to possession states (as in channelling or mediumism and shamanism), to altered states that are pathological, as in Kundalini arousal, to directed visualisation and imagery, lucid dreaming, drug-induced states of consciousness, meditation, and biofeedback-induced consciousness, as well as many others.

Why do all these different practices have the potential to induce spirit contact? Because nearly all altered states share some degree of common ground, and it is this common ground which is apparently conducive to spirit influence. In essence, almost any continually cultivated altered state is at least potentially capable of producing spirit encounters.

The needed spirit contact and/or manifestation of power (e.g. the development of psychic abilities) typically does not occur other than in the altered state. Thus, again, nearly all methods that attempt to induce altered states of consciousness have the potential to lead to spirit contact and spirit possession. The technique is virtually irrelevant; it is the altered state itself that is instrumental in permitting spiritistic influence.

The reason New Age literature often fails to make any final distinction between occult altered states of consciousness and spirit possession is because they are so difficult to separate. Spirit possession is, finally, just the manifestation of another altered state.<sup>617</sup>

#### 4.4.3.2 Hypnotism

The word *hypnosis* is derived from the Greek word *hypnos*, meaning sleep. In laymen's language, it could be said that hypnotism is a means of bringing on an artificial state of sleep. It might be more accurate to speak of a state of reduced consciousness. Opinions on

---

<sup>616</sup> Ackerberg J and Weldon J (1996) Encyclopaedia of New Age Beliefs. US: Harvest House Publishers, p. 21

<sup>617</sup> Ibid., pp. 21-22



hypnosis differ widely, even among experts. Dr Paul Tournier is opposed to hypnotism, because he sees it as an attack on the human psyche.<sup>618</sup>

It has been proven that hypnosis can create amnesia for whatever happens during the hypnotic session, at least for a brief time; it can relieve pain by allowing a person to remove conscious attention from the pain and it can alter sensory perceptions, including smell, hearing, vision, time sense, and can confer the ability to see visual illusions.<sup>619</sup>

Richard Ing comments that<sup>620</sup>,

*in the end times, Satan will mass hypnotize entire nations and populations and convince them to kill all Christians.*

Hypnosis has long been linked to ancient religious practices and Eastern mystical experiences involving similar trance states or altered states of consciousness. Such altered states are essential to such practices as out-of-body experiences, astral projection, and yoga.<sup>621</sup> William Kroger, M.D. and William Fezler, Ph.D. maintain that<sup>622</sup>,

*hypnosis has been practiced in one form or another in the civilized and uncivilized world under many different labels since the dawn of history.*

They further note that historically elements of hypnosis have been an integral part of pagan religious practices and world religions, including Assyro-Babylonian exorcism, Egyptian soothsaying, Jewish mysticism, Byzantine Catholicism, Chinese Taoism, Sufism, Hinduism, Shintoism, forms of Buddhism (Tibetan and Zen), and yoga.

The modern practice of hypnosis in Europe and America can be traced to the controversial practice of German physician Fanz Anton Mesmer (1734-1815), who developed a technique known as Mesmerism. His practice was based on a theory called Animal Magnetism, which held that the human body contains an invisible fluid that is affected by the planets and stars or by magnets. Blockage of the fluid was thought to be the cause of much disease and Mesmer believed that he could release the blockage through a crisis event that consisted of a trance state utilising iron rods and magnetic fluid. As part of his treatment, Mesmer walked

---

<sup>618</sup> Kock, K E (1986) Occult ABC. Grand Rapids: Kregel Publications, pp. 95-99

<sup>619</sup> Ciccarelli S K and White J N (2012) Psychology. USA: Prenticehall, p.147

<sup>620</sup> Ing, R (1966) Spiritual Warfare. Whitaker House: United States of America, p. 233

<sup>621</sup> Watchman, Hypnosis [Online] Available from: <http://www.watchman.org/profiles/pdf/hypnosisprofile.pdf> [Accessed: 22 July 2014]

<sup>622</sup> Kroger, W S and Fezler, W D (1976) Hypnosis and Behavior Modification: Imagery Conditioning. Philadelphia: Lippincott, pp.6-8

around and touched the patients, whereupon they fell into convulsions, sweated, vomited, cried and some were even healed.

The medical establishment largely rejected Mesmer's theories, attributing the alleged healings to vivid imaginations. Others rejected the animal magnetism explanation but focused on the accompanying trance, noting that mesmerised patients appeared to be "subject to the least suggestion, whether by word, look, gesture or thought." Eventually, occult practitioners such as clairvoyants and spiritualists incorporated variations of Mesmer's techniques, further alienating Mesmerism from traditional medicine.

In Britain, efforts to harmonise Mesmerism were made by divorcing the induced trance from Mesmer's theories of Animal Magnetism. The Scottish physician, James Braid (1795-1860) coined the word *hypnosis* after discovering that all of the effects of mesmeric trances — including hallucination — could be achieved without the presence of magnets.<sup>623</sup>

There are several key steps in inducing hypnosis, of which the following four steps are always present: (1) the hypnotist tells the person to focus on what is being said; (2) the person is told to relax and feel tired; (3) the hypnotist tells the person to "let go" and accept suggestions easily; and (4) the person is told to use vivid imagination. The real key to hypnosis seems to be a heightened state of suggestibility. People can be hypnotised when active and alert, but only if they are willing to be hypnotised.<sup>624</sup>

Gadgets of one kind or another are sometimes used in inductions, although they are quite unnecessary. Induction techniques can involve combinations of the following: guided imagery, visualisation, counting backwards, eye fixation, breath control and slightly swaying the subject's upper body in a slight clockwise circle. Many styles of induction exist, all incorporating a gradual shift in attention with a reduction in external awareness.

Frequently the induction encourages the subject to focus his attention, either through focusing his eyes on something external (eye fixation technique) or through focusing internally on breathing or any other sensation (e.g. muscle tension). Further suggestions of comfort, relaxation, or rest are then clearly and calmly given, along with compatible visual, auditory, or physical images such as a beach, stairs, or floating on clouds.<sup>625</sup>

---

<sup>623</sup> Shepard, L A (1978) Mesmerism, *Encyclopaedia of Occultism and Parapsychology*, Volume 2, Detroit: Gale Research Co., p.598

<sup>624</sup> Ciccarelli S K and White J N (2012) *Psychology*. USA: Prenticehall, p.147

<sup>625</sup> Watchman, Hypnosis [Online] Available from: <http://www.watchman.org/profiles/pdf/hypnosisprofile.pdf> [Accessed: 22 July 2014]

A common misconception concerning induction is that one can never be hypnotised against the will. The *Baker Encyclopedia of Psychology* notes that this is only a half-truth<sup>626</sup>:

*A hypnotic induction does require the cooperation of the individual, and a trance can be resisted. Nevertheless, the individual's participation may not be a conscious response, and people can enter into hypnosis without knowing that they do so. Erickson is famous in this regard, due to his skill... to induce a trance without preparation or awareness by the subject. The ethics of this may be debated.*

Hypnotic induction can take place without the subject's knowledge or permission. In theory, once induced, suggestions and commands given can have long-lasting effects through a phenomenon known as post hypnotic suggestion.<sup>627</sup>

#### 4.4.3.3 Gnostic State

Gnosis is the key to magical abilities; the achievement of an intense state of consciousness known in various traditions as No-Mind, One-Pointedness, or Sartori. The Gnostic state is a concept introduced by Peter Carroll. It is also referred to as gnosis. A Gnostic State is defined as an altered state of consciousness that, in his magick theory, is necessary for working most forms of magick. This is a moving away from older concepts, which described energies, spirits or symbolic acts as the source of magickal powers. The concept has a predecessor in the Buddhist concept of Samadhi, made popular in western occultism by Aleister Crowley and further explored by Austin Osman Spare.<sup>628</sup>

The gnostic state is achieved when a person's mind is focused on only a single point, thought, or goal and all other thoughts are thrust out. Practitioners of *chaos magick* each develop their own ways of attainment of this state. All such methods centre on the belief that a simple thought or direction experienced during the gnostic state and then forgotten quickly afterwards bypasses the "psychic censor" (faculties averse to the magickal manipulation of reality) and is sent to the subconscious, rather than the conscious mind, where it can be enacted through means unknown to the conscious mind.<sup>629</sup>

---

<sup>626</sup> Benner D, (1985) *Encyclopaedia of Psychology, Hypnotism*, Grand Rapids: Baker Book House, pp. 546

<sup>627</sup> *Ibid*, p. 544

<sup>628</sup> Carroll, P J. (1987) *Liber Null & Psychonaut*. Maine: Weiser Books, pp. 31-35

<sup>629</sup> Vitimus, A (2009). *Hands-on Chaos Magic: Reality Manipulation Through the Ovaryki Current*. Llewellyn Worldwide.

Three main types of gnosis are described: (1) Inhibitory gnosis is a form of deep meditation into a trance state of mind. This type of gnosis uses slow and regular breathing techniques, absent thought processes, progressive muscular relaxation, self-induction and self-hypnosis techniques. Means employed may also include fasting, sleeplessness, sensory deprivation and hypnotic or trance-inducing drugs. (2) Excitatory gnosis describes a mindlessness reached through intense arousal. This state can be reached through sexual excitation, intense emotions, flagellation, dance, drumming, chanting, sensory overload, hyperventilation and the use of disinhibitory or hallucinogenic drugs. (3) Indifferent vacuity is where an intended spell is cast parenthetically, so it does not raise much thought to suppress.<sup>630</sup>

#### **4.4.3.4 The Alien Agenda**

Author and UFO researcher Whitley Strieber, according to Pugh in her book *Eden*<sup>631</sup>, established a direct link between the similarities of fallen angels and what is termed alien abductions. He states, among other things, that the aliens or fallen angels have the ability to enter the mind and affect thought. They taught him that he has a soul separate from his body. Strieber, in his own observations while detached from his body, suggests that the soul is some form of conscious energy, possibly electromagnetic in nature. Aliens or fallen angels can affect the soul; even draw it out of the body with technology that may possibly involve the use of high-intensity magnetic fields.

It appears from various studies being generated by UFO researchers that aliens cannot proceed with their genetic breeding programmes unless they have the involvement of human subjects. The fallen angels and Satan are persisting in their lusts for Humanity, just as they did following the fall of mankind from the Garden of Eden. These evil angels and their leader Satan have corrupted mankind from the beginning and will continue in their relentless pursuit until the end of time. The alien agenda is identical in philosophy to that of Satan's agenda. They are, merely, one and the same. Satan and his fallen angels have power over the elements. Satan caused calamities, increased the wind, brought fire down from heaven, and displayed power over the air, as seen in the book of Job. He and his army of angels are capable of producing signs and wonders to capture mankind's attention.

---

<sup>630</sup> Fries, J (1992). *Visual Magick: A Handbook of Freestyle Shamanism*. Mandrake of Oxford.

<sup>631</sup> Pugh, J J (2006) *Eden*. United States of America: Tate Publishing, pp. 301-302

The ambition to physiologically control the laws of nature is part of the New Age strategy that is being promoted by aliens during human abductions. Under hypnosis, humans taken aboard UFO's claim their captor's mandate that they follow a religion involving nature worship. The entities tell how it is the responsibility of humans to protect and love Mother Earth. This encouragement to love nature is identical to loving the created more than the Creator. It is the age-old worship of nature, known as Theosophy, which has always been promoted by the fallen angels and their father, Satan.

Just as the fallen angels and Satan possess great power to move between the physical and spiritual worlds, reports of aliens contend that they seemingly move in and out of the physical dimension. The aliens, like the angels, do not come from another planet. They come from another dimension that can manifest itself in and out of the everyday world. When humans are exposed to alien abductions, they report experiencing strange physiological phenomena. These events include air blowing, becoming partially paralysed, blinded, going through walls, traveling in a beam of light, receiving painful probing with strange looking apparatuses, medical procedures, healings, sickness, and strange symbols placed on their skin. Hundreds of sightings occur monthly, on a worldwide basis.

Aliens are not God, just playing God. It seems very logical that the ancient gods, goddesses, giants, fairies, etc., are what is now termed as aliens. These strange entities and their offspring are not human. According to ancient history, highly intellectual beings were said to be actively involved in the affairs of mankind. Satan and his fallen angels had a direct hand in producing the lineage of Cain, which advanced mankind in the knowledge of physics, music, metallurgy, architecture, geometry, astronomy, numerology, the sciences, and astrology, as well as seeking the god within to promote selfishness.

There are physical similarities between fairies from the ancient Celtic/Druid era and aliens. They are both documented to be grey in skin colour, not quite four feet tall, and wearing seamless clothing like a frog suit. The Fairy Folk were reported to have abducted humans in a manner similar to that reported by alien abductees today. There is a strong correlation between hybrid babies of women who claim to have been alien abducted and Fairy babies, which are called changelings. In ancient times, the Watchers (fallen angels) and human women produced hybrids that the Bible recorded as Giants. Alien hybrids, Fairy changelings, and the Giants have always been alluded to as existing. They are mentioned in the Bible, as well as in literary works of mythology and folklore as being offspring from the sexual relations

between demons, gods, and humans. Such relationships, occurring between the physical and spiritually demonic world, still occur today.

Upon the use of the drug Dimethyltryptamine (DMT), there are documented cases of contact with aliens, elves, and spiritual beings. The hallucinogen DMT allows users to enter into another dimension with beings that seem to be highly intelligent. This psychedelic drug not only alters human consciousness, but enlightens the user, which is similar to what the brain neurotransmitter serotonin does. Serotonin stimulation is why so many drugs causing the brain to uptake more of the substance are now on the market as treatments for depression, such as Paxil and Zoloft. Serotonin, along with melatonin, is produced by the notorious pineal gland. DMT molecules target the very neurons of the brain, causing it to function differently. The areas of the brain that are stimulated take over, even if those areas might not have been used before. In other words, precise manipulation of the central nervous system allows brainwave transmissions to take place, just like they do over ancient oracle sites or during intense meditation practices.

Satan and his followers cannot afford exposure of their game plan, which is to force mankind into accepting that Satan, as god of light, and his angels are really here to assist humanity in creating a paradise on Earth. The human race is being kept from knowing that it is Satan and his demons who are daily tempting Man, manipulating him, using him in his service in his rebellion against God, putting stumbling blocks in his way, making him feel failure, filling his body with sickness and pain, and taking his soul if he chooses to follow an evil lifestyle. As long as Satan stays somewhat hidden or veiled, he can entice more souls into his kingdom through his deceitful craft of enlightenment. Satan knows he will need a big army on his side when he and his fallen angels finally come face to face with Jesus at the battle of Armageddon.

The UFO phenomenon has an element of the covert, and is largely full of deception. The techniques used by the aliens against mankind are manipulative and deceiving. The aliens promise not to hurt those they abduct, but in most all reported cases a degree of pain is involved. The aliens say one thing and do the opposite. After alien abduction, some form of psychological trauma occurs in a vast majority of abductees. The abduction experience itself appears to resemble a type of spiritual encounter. Abducted humans tend to return with information about a new religion. This religion is identical to an ancient philosophy that promotes nature worship, called Theosophy.

Demonic encounters and alien abductions seem, according to researchers, to be occurring within an altered state of consciousness, which propels one into another dimension. Demonic creatures, like the aliens, could take on various forms through shape-shifting capabilities. Aliens and demonic beings appear most of the time to be invulnerable to mundane weapons. They tend to divide and re-join if attacked, due to their nature as half flesh and half spiritual being. Although most have the supernatural ability to avoid being injured by manipulating control over the elements, some have died.<sup>632</sup>

#### **4.4.3.5 Crop Circles**

Since the 1687 formation, crop circles (also known as fairy rings) have occurred around the world in fields of wheat, grass, rice paddies, potatoes, vegetable gardens, sugar cane, sunflowers, on ice, in sand, and in the snow. These geometrically placed circles all have neatly formed edges, while inside the formations the particular crop or earth is twisted in a flat style upon the ground. The circles seem to be demonstrating some sacred form of energy and intelligence. Gerald Hawkins, well known scientist and author, linked crop circles with the ratios of the diatonic musical scale in a 1992 article published in Science News.

The real crop circle seems to be formed from the sky, directly above the formation. Their formation utilises a type of electrical energy that produces microwaves, wilting the base of the plants and causing them to fall over without breaking.

Crop Circle locations, like those of oracles and Templar cathedrals; also appear to be strategically placed at known sites where telluric energy sources and underground water are intersecting. Those involved in the formation of true circles equally seek out earth energy lines. This choice in location may be based on the fact that earth ley lines move in harmony with the Earth's tectonic plates and produce electromagnetic fields. All real crop circles are geometrically placed, perfectly, on these lines. Ley lines were termed "dragon lines" by the Chinese centuries ago. When these dragon lines cross each other, their energy spirals into a vortex. If several lines cross at a given point, called a node, it produces a massive vortex of energy.

Within crop circle formations, a trained person can detect a force upon their body if standing in areas where the earth currents cross. From the sacred harmonic tune of the King's

---

<sup>632</sup> Pugh, J J (2006) Eden. United States of America: Tate Publishing, pp.300-322

Chamber within the Great Pyramid, to the electrical sensations felt at megalithic structures with their alignments to oracle sites, crop circles and Gothic cathedrals equally possess the direct ability to affect the human body and enhance one's reception of Satan. Like the megalithic structures, crop circles produce strange sensations upon the human body. Some people report experiencing weakness, dizziness, nausea, electric static with their hair standing on end, racing heart beats, fainting, general body aches, hallucinations, time standing still, missing time, astral flight and the feeling of an unseen spiritual presence.

It is a scientific fact that the human body emits electrical energy. This energy appears to be interacting with the force inside the crop circle, just as the body does when one enters and stands at precise locations within megalithic structures. Certain geometrical designs of particular crop formations have been known to cause sickness in all who enter within them.

At other times, formations of a different design seem to have a healing effect on everyone who enters. Other strange phenomena that have been documented as occurring inside circles includes batteries going dead, strange glowing objects appearing in photos, and compasses spinning out of control.<sup>633</sup>

According to Dr Joye Pugh, in her book *Eden, knowledge of good and evil*, she found that the crop circles have a profound effect on the pineal gland.<sup>634</sup> Melatonin is the hormone produced by the pineal gland. The strange feelings and sensations reported by numerous visitors to crop circles could have come from similar changes in their body's hormonal levels. The pineal gland produces more melatonin if a person stays in darkness. The gland stops producing melatonin by shrinking when exposed to light. It appears, from the above research, that although it was daylight, the crop circle affected the human body as if it had been in a state of darkness.

There are some people who carry high levels of melatonin and they tend to have more psychic insight and knowledge than normal subjects. If melatonin is given at increased levels to the normal population, many people experience hallucinations, horrific nightmares, vivid dreams, and feelings of possession. These hormonal effects are the key reason secret societies and cults hold their rituals in darkness. They believe that from this darkness comes light (wisdom).

---

<sup>633</sup> Pugh, J J (2006) *Eden*. United States of America: Tate Publishing, pp. 329-330

<sup>634</sup> *Ibid.*, pp. 331



As a Christian, it is imperative to protect the pineal gland from forms of possible stimulation. That means never voluntarily participating in meditation, which promotes a vibratory harmonic hum. Stay away from transcendental meditation and astral flight, as well as any occult therapies that promote relaxation by encouragement to open up to the light.

Do not participate in repetitious chanting or singing of verses over and over, even though they may appear religious by nature. Do not attempt channelling spirits from the dead or use Tarot cards. Avoid yoga or any activity that coils the body into a cobra position. The cobra position allows the pineal gland to be easily stimulated. Do not play with white and black Magic or any 'craft' of the occult world.

Crop circle formations tend to resemble what some call a “mandala”. Mandalas are symbols used to induce meditative states. These particular crop circles are said to emit harmonic vibrations, which stimulate the brain into a relaxed and altered state of consciousness. The brain's reaction to these formations might be due to Extremely Low Frequency (ELF) waves being emitted from the circle as a result of what appears to resemble microwave radiation. These identical electromagnetic Extremely Low Frequency (ELF) waves are being developed in the HAARP project, as possible psychological warfare tactics. Tesla was the first to publicly reveal that these ELF waves have the capacity to control the human brain.<sup>635</sup>

#### **4.4.3.6 Mind-Altering Drugs**

Since ancient times, people have taken drugs to alter their perception of reality. There is archaeological evidence of the uninterrupted use of *sophora seeds* (mescal bean) for over 10,000 years in the south-western United States and Mexico. The ancient Aztecs fermented mescal beans into a beer. From ancient times, individuals in North and South America's *Isos* ingested *teonanacatl*, the psilocybin mushroom also known as “the flesh of the gods”, as part of rituals. Small doses of these mushrooms produce vivid hallucinations.<sup>636</sup>

Whereas some people seek altered states of consciousness in sleep, daydreaming, meditation, or even hypnosis, others try to take a shortcut. They use psychoactive drugs that alter thinking, perception, memory, or some combination of those abilities. When taken for pleasure, to get “high” or to dull psychological pain, or when taken without the supervision of

---

<sup>635</sup> Ibid., pp. 331-349

<sup>636</sup> Gericc, R J and Zimbardo, P G (2005) Psychology and Life. USA: Pearson, p. 157

a qualified medical professional, these drugs can pose serious risks to one's health and may even cause death. One danger of such drugs is their potential to create either a physical or psychological dependence, both of which can lead to a lifelong pattern of abuse, as well as the risk of taking increasingly larger doses, leading to one of the clearest dangers of dependence: a drug overdose. Drug overdoses do not happen exclusively with illegal drugs; even certain additives in so called *natural supplements can have a deadly effect*.<sup>637</sup>

Examples of psychoactive drugs falls into four categories: stimulants, depressants, narcotics and hallucinogens.

- Stimulants include cocaine, amphetamines, nicotine, and caffeine.
- Depressants include (1) major tranquilisers (drugs that have a strong depressant effect) or sleeping pills, barbiturates are drugs that have a sedative (sleep-inducing) effect; (2) minor tranquilisers (drugs having a relatively mild depressant effect) are called benzodiazepines - these drugs are used to lower anxiety and reduce stress; and (3) alcohol.
- Narcotics are a class of drugs that suppress the sensation of pain by binding to and stimulating the nervous system's natural receptor sites for endorphins, the neurotransmitters that naturally deaden pain sensations. Because they also slow down the action of the nervous system, drug interactions with alcohol and other depressants are possible and can be deadly. All narcotics are a derivative of a particular plant-based substance called opium. Morphine was created by dissolving opium in an acid and then neutralising the acid with ammonia. Heroin is a derivative of morphine that did not have many of the disagreeable side effects of morphine. Both morphine and heroin are highly addictive.<sup>638</sup>
- Hallucinogens (as seen in previous chapters) actually cause the brain to alter its interpretation of sensations and can produce sensory distortions very similar to synaesthesia in which sensations cross over each other: colours have sound; sounds have smells, and so on. False sensory perceptions, called hallucinations, are often experienced, especially with the more powerful hallucinogens. There are two basic types - those that are created in a laboratory and those that are from natural sources.

---

<sup>637</sup> Ciccarelli S K and White J N (2012) Psychology. USA: Prenticehall, p.150

<sup>638</sup> Ibid., pp. 151-157

There are two types of dependence when considering psychoactive drugs, namely physical and psychological dependence.

Drugs that people can become physically dependent on cause the user's body to crave the drug. After using the drug for some period of time, the body becomes unable to function normally without the drug and the person is said to be dependent or addicted, a condition commonly called physical dependence. One sign of physical dependence is the development of a *drug tolerance*. As the person continues to use the drug, larger and larger doses of the drug are needed to achieve the same initial effects of the drug. Another sign of a physical dependence is that the user experiences symptoms of withdrawal when deprived of the drug. Depending on the drug, these symptoms can range from headaches, nausea, and irritability to severe pain, cramping, shaking, and dangerously elevated blood pressure. These physical sensations occur because the body is trying to adjust to the absence of the drug.<sup>639</sup>

Not all drugs cause physical dependence; some cause psychological dependence, or the belief that the drug is needed to induce a feeling of emotional or psychological wellbeing, which is a very powerful factor in continued drug use. The body may not need or crave the drug, and people may not experience the symptoms of physical withdrawal or tolerance, but they will continue to use the drug because they think they need it. In this case, it is the rewarding properties of using the drug that cause a dependency to develop. This is an example of positive reinforcement, or the tendency of behaviour to strengthen when followed by pleasurable consequences. Although not all drugs produce physical dependence, any drug can become a focus of psychological dependence. Indeed, because there is no withdrawal to go through or to recover from, psychological dependencies can last forever.<sup>640</sup>

No argument can convince those who had experienced the "altered state" that reality was limited to the physical world. The sights, tastes, smells, sounds, and feelings in this strange new land of the mind often seemed even more vivid and real than those in the so-called "real world," which, to many of these adventuresome explorers, now seems drab and tasteless by comparison. It has been described as the magical door to what Carlos Castaneda called the "sorcerer's world,"<sup>641</sup> a realm surpassing even Alice's Wonderland.

---

<sup>639</sup> Ibid., p. 150

<sup>640</sup> Ibid., p. 151

<sup>641</sup> Castaneda, C (1987) *The Power of Silence*. Simon and Schuster, Front Fly of Jacket

Most dictionaries still categorise sorcery as an "evil" form of occultism in contrast to so-called "white magic". However, many of today's anthropologists, including best-selling authors such as Michael Harner and Carlos Castaneda, see sorcery (like all categories of occultism) as a neutral technique for manipulating reality for either good or evil. There are others, however, who warn that it is as dangerous to become involved in white magic as it is in any other form of sorcery. Drugs are only the first step into the world of mystical experiences.<sup>642</sup>

#### **4.4.3.7 New Age: Some Interpretations of the Movement**

The New Age movement is generally a collection of Eastern-influenced metaphysical thought systems, a conglomeration of theologies, hopes, and expectations held together with an eclectic teaching of salvation, of "correct thinking, and correct knowledge". It is a theology of "feel-goodism," universal tolerance, and moral relativism. Man is central. He is viewed as divine, as co-creator, as the hope for future peace and harmony. There is no hierarchy, dogma, doctrine, collection plate, or membership. It is a collection, an assortment of different theologies with the common threads of toleration and divergence weaving through its tapestry of "universal truth". The New Age movement is a religious system with two basic beliefs: Evolutionary Godhood and Global Unity.<sup>643</sup>

An amazing component of the New Age movement is its capacity to adapt to a variety of religious, even Christian, ideas. Consequently, many of the popular Christian doctrines advocated today are nothing more than the cultic propositions of Eastern mysticism and ancient paganism. These include concepts of psychic healing, self-realisation, emotional experiences, rules of success, breathing techniques, positive confession, name it and claim it, environmental theology, the ecumenical movement, visualisation, hypnosis by clergy, mind manipulation, and so on. Some believers have been drawn to mystical experiences rather than concentrating on God and His Word. Even sermons preached by well-meaning ministers have tempted believers to pursue supernatural encounters with God, rather than *instructing them to live by faith*. The danger of such undisciplined sincerity is that human nature rarely limits its opportunity for experience.<sup>644</sup>

In the New Age movement one can also reach an altered state of consciousness. However, the real power is to be experienced through Eastern mysticism. Aware that the eager pursuit

---

<sup>642</sup> Hunt, D (2011) *America, The Sorcerer's New Apprentice*. Oregon: The Berean Call, p. 31

<sup>643</sup> Christian Apologetics and Research Ministry, What is the New Age Movement? [Online] Available from: <http://carm.org/new-age-what> [Accessed: 12 September 2014]

<sup>644</sup> Horn, T R (1999) *The gods who walk among us*. Louisiana: Huntington House Publishers, pp. 136-144

of altered states of consciousness while tripped out on psychedelics drugs had rendered a generation vulnerable, the Eastern gurus lost no time invading the West with their cosmic gospel of reincarnation and Nirvana. Disciples flocked to them by the millions to learn techniques for achieving the same altered states through meditation which they had previously reached on drugs.

In his book *From Shaman to Psychotherapist*, Walter Bromberg writes<sup>645</sup>:

*Whereas in previous generations "altered consciousness" was considered a mark of bohemian depravity if sought voluntarily or one of madness if involuntary, nowadays a "high" is the essence of psychologic sophistication.*

Dave Hunt<sup>646</sup> calls it the *Age of Aquarius* that has dawned, and with it came a new vocabulary that is all too familiar today. Instead of "freaking out," the new term was "enlightenment." And in place of "tripping out on drugs", one was now experiencing "higher states of consciousness." Only the labels had changed: The new "astral travel" brought the same experiences as the old "drug trip"; "enlightenment" simply reinforced in a more profound way the same Hindu pantheistic worldview that the drug movement had fostered. The weird and often frightening spirit entities (also called gods, masters, teachers, or guides) which Eastern meditators claimed to meet in Yogic trance were unmistakably similar to those encountered on drugs. There is now a classic guide for drug-users and some of those users even reported being initiated into transcendental meditation by spirit entities while on a drug trip. The connection could no longer be denied. Eventually the transition from drugs to Eastern mysticism became almost routine.

Since the early days, when drugs and mysticism were a novelty, the influence of Eastern mysticism has spread to every area of Western culture. Organisational psychologists acknowledge that even the pragmatic corporate world will be transformed by a new breed of "actualised" employees and executives who practice yoga to relieve stress, have mystical experiences, follow an inner guidance, and place first priority upon personal spiritual growth. This remarkable transformation is in fact already well underway. The growing acceptance of New Age beliefs and practices by both hard-headed business executives and ivory-tower academicians is further proof of the surprising breadth of this exploding movement.

---

<sup>645</sup> Bromberg, W (1975) *From Shaman to Psychotherapist*. Henry Regnery Co., p. 336

<sup>646</sup> Hunt, D (2011) *America, The Sorcerer's New Apprentice*. Oregon: The Berean Call, p. 41

Many who were involved in the hippie movement became New Agers as part of a natural progression from drugs to Eastern mysticism; there is a close connection. Yet countless millions who never tuned in, turned on, and dropped out are now caught up in what can only be described as *a sweeping spiritual metamorphosis of modern culture*.<sup>647</sup>

While no one has accused the New Age movement of being a cult, there are some disturbing similarities. New Age groups tell participants "they're the master of their own destiny", but they don't know they are being subjected to mind control. Psychologists who have studied the process say that while participants are in this "altered state," leaders of the groups are able to implant new ideas and alter their thinking processes. These mind control groups are using hypnotic procedures and people are not being told about it. There are additional dangers inherent in the mind-control techniques at the heart of the New Age training programmes: techniques are deliberately being introduced into employee training programmes which induce a trance-like state. There is behaviour modification similar to brainwashing and many reports received from participants who are convinced that they have come under harmful influence from spirit entities as a result of these trance states.

The very term *New Age* is misleading. Its only claim to being new lies in the astonishing respectability, acceptability, and credibility now being granted in the space age to stone-age superstitious practices. Everything now known as *New Age* (herbal or traditional medicine, holistic health and vegetarian diets, self-hypnosis, reincarnation, spirit guides, pyramid power, colour therapy, yoga and other forms of Eastern meditation) is simply a revival of ancient religious practices now being passed off as new advancements in science, medicine, and psychology. There is little doubt that the promoters of this movement are aware of the irony of relabeling ancient occultism as something new.

Most self-improvement techniques being adopted throughout society by public educators, psychologists, psychiatrists, medical doctors, and success/motivation seminar leaders employ varying forms of Eastern meditation and self-hypnosis similar to transcendental meditation's variation on yoga. There are many documented cases of persons involved not only in transcendental meditation but in other forms of yoga and autosuggestion having extremely frightening and uncontrollable spiritual experiences. *As a result, some have been driven to insanity and even suicide*, but these facts are deliberately suppressed. The same problems often plague participants in assorted mind-dynamics and self-improvement courses, especially where the techniques involve contact with visualised "inner guides." It is

---

<sup>647</sup> Ibid.

not uncommon for the practitioners of Eastern mysticism, even in its various Westernised self-help forms, to suddenly find themselves "out of body" or thrown across the room by some unknown force, or else encountering what seem to be very real alien entities who attempt possession.<sup>648</sup>

#### **4.4.3.8 Altered Mind States in the Church Today**

Today, adherents of mysticism boldly ask, "If God is our Father, then who is our Mother?" Then they happily answer, "Earth!" Not surprisingly, the worship of the Earth's spirit as a goddess mother has been revived as a central feature of contemporary religious phenomena. In 2010, Earth Day was celebrated by coordinating millions of people worldwide into a universal effort aimed at saving the endangered Mother Earth.

Christian leaders signed green pledges and Wiccan witches performed arcane rituals in honour of the hoary spirit Gaia. Interest in such contraptions as the sweat lodge (a device used by several ancient religions as an apparatus whereby one re-enters the womb of the Earth Mother) was emphasised as a primitive yet effective method for furrowing a womblike gateway into the surface of the Earth to make contact with the underworld spirit. This method of communing with Gaia, as practiced by various religions and New Age devotees, includes sitting in a semicircle around heated stones inside the lodge and entering into a mystical state of consciousness.

As with the DMT churches (churches that centre on the ritual intake of psychoactive drugs used for ritual purposes in order to have contact with spirit intelligences) who use psychoactive drugs to open gateways into the mind, the altered mental condition in the sweat lodge is accomplished through hypnotic repetitive chanting, drumming, and breathing the fumes of stimulants such as peyote. Spirit animals, called power animals, are invited to guide the soul through the underworld journey or vision quest, and participants are encouraged to dance their animal for revelations and healing of the body and mind. Such animal dancing is accomplished by allowing the spirit of the creature to enter and take control of the participant. Dr Leslie Gray, a noted university instructor and female shaman, employs such uses of animal dancing in the psychiatric (shamanic) treatment of her patients.<sup>649</sup>

---

<sup>648</sup> Ibid., pp. 42-49

<sup>649</sup> Horn, T and Horn N (2010) *Forbidden Gates*. Missouri: Crane, pp. 65-66

She described the positive results of animal dancing in the case of one insecure young woman, saying<sup>650</sup>,

*I [laid] down on the ground next to her and put us both into an altered state of consciousness via a tape of drumming. I came back from my 'journey' and blew the spirit of a mountain lion into [her]. I then instructed her to go out into nature and dance her animal ... [and when she did] she no longer felt afraid of people.*

Natural Earth-centred resources such as animals, crystals, and even colours are thus the products of choice for the students of Earth-centred spirituality. Light blue is the colour of Mother Earth's sky, so candles of light blue are burned to acquire her magic tranquillity or understanding. Red candles are burned for strength or sexual love, and green candles for financial assistance. Instruments like magic wands are also made from Mother Earth's natural supply, usually of willow, oak, or fruit tree branches. Magic potions employed during esbats (Earth celebrations held during the new and full moons) also contain the Earth's natural by-products, including clover, olive oil, grape juice, garlic cloves, and rosebuds. Special ceremonies using the earth samples are conducted at the crossing of three earth paths (the triple-path haunt of Hecate) and dedicated to the Mother Earth goddesses-Gaia, Demeter, Persephone, Isis, Aphrodite, Hathor, Hera, Diana, Athene and Hecate.

In their book, *Forbidden Gates*, Nina and Tom Horn describe how they personally witnessed officially sponsored Assemblies of God youth camps in Oregon where children were taken into the woods and taught to use tree branches, pebbles, and other natural products to outline magic prayer trails, with participants moving through the labyrinths to specific mystical areas where they would then stop and meditate to "connect with the spirit." The occult significance of this symbolism in youth camps is dangerously meaningful, as navigating such labyrinths began in mythology with the story of *Queen Pasiphae* and her amorous affair with a sacrificial bull. The union resulted in the birth of the transgenic Minotaur, a creature that lived in a labyrinth where every year boys and girls were sent to be sacrificed. While in ancient times such rituals were gender-inclusive, they were designed specifically to elevate the goddess or female divinity, which consequently also defined the "oracles" or mouthpieces and gatekeepers of even the most powerful male gods in antiquity, including Apollo, the ancient spirit the Scriptures say will rise to inhabit the Antichrist in the end times.

---

<sup>650</sup> Staffer, C R (1987) Dr. Leslie Gray, Bridge between two Realities. Shaman's Drum, p. 25



Under the influence of these forces, the Pythia prophesied in an unfamiliar voice, thought to be that of Apollo himself. During the trance, the medium's personality often changed, becoming melancholic, defiant, or even animal-like, a psychosis that may have been the source of the werewolf myth, or lycanthropy, as the Pythia became possessed by Apollo/Lykeios, the wolf god. Delphic women of Pythia prophesied in this way for nearly a thousand years and were considered to be a vital part of the pagan order and local economy of every Hellenistic community. This adds to the mystery of adoption of the Pythians and sibyls by certain quarters of Christianity as vessels of truth.<sup>651</sup>

#### **4.4.3.9 Religious Ecstasy**

Meditation, prayer, fasting and spiritual communication all contribute to intense religious experiences. For William James (1902), religious experiences constituted unique psychological experiences characterised by a sense of oneness and relatedness of events; of realness and vividness of experiences, and an inability to communicate, in ordinary language, the nature of the whole experience. For many people, religious experiences are clearly not part of their ordinary consciousness.

There are few religious experiences more intense than those of the Holy Ghost people of Appalachia. Their beliefs and practices create a unique form of consciousness that enables them to do some remarkable things. At church services, they handle deadly poisonous snakes, drink strychnine poison and handle fire. To prepare for these experiences they listen to long sermons and participate in loud, insistent singing and wild spinning and dancing. Their enthusiasm may verge on violence; they shake and wail and lapse into unintelligent, ecstatic new tongues with no linguistic content. This corresponds with research into trance states in other religious cultures. Reported vagueness of memory, almost a sensory amnesia, is reported.<sup>652</sup>

---

<sup>651</sup> Horn, T and Horn N (2010) *Forbidden Gates*. Missouri: Crane, pp. 67-68

<sup>652</sup> Gerric, R J and Zimbardo, P G (2005) *Psychology and Life*. USA: Pearson, p. 161

## 4.5. CURSES

### 4.5.1 Curses in General

The Merriam-Webster's Collegiate Online Dictionary defines a curse<sup>653</sup>:

*(n) a prayer or invocation for harm or injury to come upon one; evil or misfortune that comes as if in response to imprecation or as retribution; a cause of great harm or misfortune*

*(v) to use profane insolent language against, blaspheme; to call upon divine or supernatural power to send injury upon; to execrate in fervent and often profane terms; to bring great evil upon, afflict*

Curses<sup>654 655</sup> are defined, according to the Encyclopaedia of Witches and Witchcraft, as<sup>656</sup>:

*magic spells which are placed upon people with the intention of harming them. The misfortune intended by curses can range from illness, and harm, to even death. Curses are declared to be the most dreaded form of magic, often called black magic, and are believed to be universally used. The principle purposes for them to be "laid" or "thrown" are for revenge, and also for protection of homes, treasures and grave sites. Curses can become effective immediately or may be dormant for years. Curses laid on families have been known to have plagued them for generations. The word hex is sometimes used synonymously with curse. In neo-Pagan Witchcraft, some Witches use the term hex to designate a binding spell, which is different from a curse. A curse is the expression of desire of harm to come to a particular person. Anyone can lay a curse on another person, but it is believed that the authority of the person who lays the curse on increases its potency and makes it more dangerous. Such persons are believed to be priests, priestesses or royalty; persons possessing magical skill, such as Witches, sorcerers and magicians; and persons who have no other recourse to justice, such as women in many*

---

<sup>653</sup> Merriam-Webster Dictionary, Curse [Online] Available from: <http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/curse> [Accessed: 23 July 2014]

<sup>654</sup> Etymology: Curse (n): Et late Old English *cur* "a prayer that evil or harm befall one," of uncertain origin, perhaps from Old French *curuz* "anger," or Latin *cursus* "course." Connection with *cross* is unlikely. No similar word exists in Germanic, Romance, or Celtic. *Curses* as a histrionic exclamation is from 1885. *The curse* "menstruation" is from 1930. *Curse of Scotland*, the 9 of diamonds in cards, is attested from 1791, but the origin is obscure. [www.etymonline.com](http://www.etymonline.com)

<sup>655</sup> Etymology: Curse (v): Old English *cursian*, from the source of curse (n.). Meaning "to swear profanely" is from early 13c. [www.etymonline.com](http://www.etymonline.com).

<sup>656</sup> Guiley, R E (1989) *The Encyclopedia of Witches and Witchcraft*. New York: Facts On File, pp. 81-82

*societies, the poor, the destitute and the dying. Deathbed curses are the most potent, since all the curser's vital energy goes into the curse.*

Marilyn Hickey, an American Christian minister and Christian television televangelist and personality who teaches Bible studies, defines a generational curse as<sup>657</sup>:

*An unclean iniquity that increases in strength from one generation to the next, affecting the members of that family and all who come into relationship with that family.*

When a curse is placed on someone, the purpose is to cause injury and destruction, sometimes to the point of death.

There are three types of curses: (1) curses from God, (2) curses from Satan and/or his servants with the legal right to curse and (3) curses from Satan and/or his servants without the legal right to curse.

Curses sent by Satan and/or his servants are always for the purpose of causing injury, loss, destruction and often death. These curses always involve demon spirits. When a curse is placed, demon spirits are sent to the specific person or family for a specific purpose. The demon spirits bring about the fulfilment of the curse.

Curses sent by God are for the purposes of gaining the person's attention and causing him to turn from his evil ways, turn towards God and purify his life. If the person does not respond to this, he will be destroyed and eventually put to death. Sometimes a curse from God is direct injury and destruction through such things as catastrophic weather, disease, lack of fertility and economic collapse. Occasionally, God gives Satan legal right to send demons into people to injure or destroy them.

Several sources of curses exist, of which some are mentioned next<sup>658</sup>:

- *Sin*: Personal sins as well as inheritance through sins of the fathers, broken dedications to Satan, ancestors' acceptance of curses on the lives of descendants and/or continuing in the sins of the forefathers. An example is sexual immorality - unacceptable sexual practices including homosexuality, incest and bestiality. Any form of unnatural sex brings a curse. *See Chapter 5 on Sin.*

---

<sup>657</sup> Hickey, M (1987) *Breaking Generational Curses*. Oklahoma: Harrison House, p. 24

<sup>658</sup> Brown, R (1987) *Unbroken Curses*. New Kensington: Whitaker House, pp. 9-19

- *Things*: Involvement with unclean and unholy things, including bringing cursed objects into the home/office, handling unholy things, giving honour to demon gods and/or following demonic fads. Examples include jewellery, ornaments, paintings, masks, clothing, and beauty products, basically anything imaginable.
- *Land*: Territorial rights violations, for example through touching Satan's ground, going into battle against Satan without being specifically commanded to by God, living on unclean or cursed land and/or living in unclean or cursed housing.
- *Drawings*: Performance of demonic rituals through occult drawings, through the spirit realm directly, by the use of personal items, by attaching to animals and pets and/or through cursed gifts.
- *Ridiculing Satan*, partaking of food sacrificed to idols, hatred, jealousy and the misspoken word.
- *Idolatry*.
- *Anti-Semitism*.
- *Circumstances beyond human control*.
- *Breaking vows to God*, stealing, perjury and robbing God.
- *Covenants*.

Example: Destruction is the action or process of destroying something. Curses open the door for the spirit of destruction (Osmodeus) to work with other spirits to destroy certain areas of an individual's life: (1) destruction of the mind (spirits of mental illness, schizophrenia, insanity, madness, confusion); (2) destruction of the finances (spirits of poverty, lack, debt, financial failure); (3) destruction of the body (spirits of sickness, infirmity, disease, plagues); (4) destruction of the marriage (spirits of Ahab, Jezebel, arguing, fighting, separation, divorce); and (5) destruction of the family (spirits of death, accidents, rebellion, alcohol, strife, Ahab, Jezebel).<sup>659</sup>

There are many indications that a curse is working on a victim. The following are examples of such indications.<sup>660</sup>

- Mental breakdown as a result of a curse can include disturbances in the mind, including mental torment, procrastination, indecision, compromise, confusion, doubt, rationalisation, loss of memory, madness, an anxious mind, constant suspense, dread and terror. These people *no longer have control over their thoughts*.

---

<sup>659</sup> Eckhard, J (2004) Deliverance and Spiritual Warfare Manual. Chicago: Crusaders Ministries, p. 25

<sup>660</sup> Prince, D (2003) Blessings and Curses. Michigan: Chosen Books, pp. 23-34

- Emotional breakdown as a result of a curse can be caused by disturbances in the emotions, including resentment, hatred, anger, fear, rejection, self-pity, jealousy, depression, worry, inferiority and insecurity. These people *no longer have control over their emotions*.
- Physical infirmities caused by curses are often incurable, extraordinary, dreaded, prolonged and lingering; characterised by *a lack of clear medical diagnoses*, especially when these conditions run in families.
- Barrenness, repeated miscarriages and related female problems, including failure to menstruate, irregular menstruation, debilitating menstrual cramps, frigidity, cysts, tumours or other growths or structural defects affecting the reproductive organs, can be due to curses.
- Marriage breakdown and alienation in families can be the result of curses. *Alienation is the force that comes between husband and wife*, parents and children, brothers and sisters and all others who should be united by the bonds of family.
- More evidence of the working of curses can include continuing financial or material insufficiency; being accident prone; having a family history of suicides or unnatural deaths; speech problems, including uncontrolled use of the tongue, lying, cursing, blasphemy, criticism, mockery, railing and gossip; sexual immorality, including fornication, homosexuality, fantasy, masturbation, lust, perversion, adultery, incest, provocativeness and harlotry; religious error, including false religions, cults, occult, spiritism and false doctrine, and addiction.

#### **4.5.2 Curses over Cities**

Every city takes its character from the people who live in it, and is composed of their vision, their traditions, their stewardship, their culture, their sociology, their spirituality. Every city is shaped by these components that continue to be shaped by incoming people, who build upon others' foundations. A city has personality and character. The land a person lives on and looks after takes on characteristics based on what the people do, whether good and bad.

The following sins cause land to be defiled and cursed: idolatry, immorality and fornication (including sexual immorality), bloodshed i.e. murder, sacrifice, slaughter of others (caused by criticism, anger, jealousy, bitterness, rage and whatever is retained in one's heart for another that is unhealthy), and broken covenants.

*See Chapter 5 on Sin*

It is clear from the study of Ezekiel 14:13-20 that there are four judgements of God which can affect a particular land: (1) famine (physically and spiritually); (2) ecological devastation (man and his environment); (3) war (caused by anger, jealousy, resentment, competitiveness, division, strife); and (4) disease (sorrow, illness – mental, emotional or spiritual).<sup>661</sup>

Curses placed over cities can affect a person, as well as curses placed on regions, institutions, countries and continents.

#### **4.5.3 Curses on Time**

Also known as the Medianite Curse. Time is cyclical. Time can be affected positively or negatively. Many people can quickly identify one day, week or month of the year when things go wrong for them year after year. For some, it is financial devastation at the same time every year. For others it is recurring illness at a given time. Some people can only hold a job for so long or stay in a neighbourhood for a limited period of time before they feel compelled to move. Curses can attach to time in the same way they attach to material things. Such curse can apply to institutions as well as to individuals. Normally the time that is cursed is the time intended by God to be blessed. Curses need to be dealt with, time sanctified and then the blessings will be restored.

Curses on particular times can be caused by a person or institution choosing *comfort over calling*. Examples are sex (adultery, pornography, etc.) and freemasonry. This could have its origin in the individual's life or from the generational line<sup>662</sup>.

---

<sup>661</sup> Buys, A, Breaking Generational Curses over Cities and their People. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished, pp. 7-8, 11-14, 18-19

<sup>662</sup> Burk, A, Trauma Bonds to Time, CD 1, Track 3

#### 4.5.4 Curses on Things

Curses can be attached to things such as jewellery, ornaments, paintings, masks, clothing, and beauty products, basically anything imaginable. These curses are effective during the time that the object is in the possession of a person. The demons attached to the object can attach themselves to the owner and others in the surroundings to bring on sickness of any kind, sexual perversion, tragedy, emotional disturbances, mental instabilities etc. Some things can be sanctified when curses are suspected, while things that are specifically made to be dedicated to idols need to be physically destroyed with fire.

An example of a cursed object is a talisman: an inanimate object which is supposed to possess a supernatural capacity for conferring benefits or powers, in contradistinction to the amulet, the purpose of which is to ward off evil. Talismans were common in ancient Egypt and Babylon, and have been popular in magical communities in the present day. Originally, talismans were usually a disc of metal or stone engraved with astrological or magical figures. In recent centuries, among practitioners of ceremonial magic, talismans inscribed in parchment have been favoured.<sup>663</sup> Two known talismans believed to protect against death by drowning, by epilepsy, by dropsy, by apoplexy, and madness: *The Talisman of the Moon* and *The Talisman of Mercury*, but these can actually contribute towards the events they are purported to protect the wearer against.

#### 4.6. TRAUMA AND THE DEVASTATING EFFECTS THEREOF

Trauma<sup>664</sup> is derived from a Greek term meaning "wound". When a person undergoes a traumatic experience, he/she becomes a wounded individual. Psychic trauma is defined as *an emotional state of discomfort and stress resulting from memories of an extraordinary, catastrophic experience which shattered the survivor's sense of invulnerability to harm*.<sup>665</sup> Trauma, therefore, is defined as a bodily and/or mental injury caused by an external agent. Because traumatic events overwhelm the ordinary human adaptations to life and involve threats to life or bodily integrity, or a close personal encounter with death and/or violence, they are defined as extraordinary.<sup>666</sup>

---

<sup>663</sup> Melton J G (2001) Encyclopedia of Occultism and Parapsychology, Fifth Edition, Volume M-Z, USA:Gale Group, pp. 1526-1527

<sup>664</sup> Etymology: Trauma: 1690s, "physical wound," medical Latin, from Greek trauma "a wound, a hurt; a defeat," from PIE \*trau-, extended form of root \*tere- (1) "to rub, turn," with derivatives referring to twisting, piercing, etc. Sense of "psychic wound, unpleasant experience which causes abnormal stress" is from 1894. [www.etymonline.com](http://www.etymonline.com)

<sup>665</sup> Erasmus C (2001) Traumatology, Study Guide. Commonwealth Training Consultants, p. 70

<sup>666</sup> Ibid.

Some symptoms of trauma could be one or more of the following.<sup>667</sup>

- *Stress*: is the way a person responds to what happens. Due to trauma, feelings of intense fear, helplessness, loss of control and threat of annihilation can be experienced.
- *Post-traumatic Stress Disorder (PTSD)*: symptoms are re-experiencing the traumatic events, numbing or responsiveness to, or reduced involvement with, the external world, as well as a variety of autonomic, dysphoric or cognitive symptoms.
- *Other*: sleep disturbances, nightmares of the incident, recurring dreams of the incident, increased alcohol intake, marital conflict with spouse, dissociative-like states, loss of interest in previously enjoyable pursuits, becoming detached or estranged from other people, excessive arousal (such as hyper-alertness, exaggerated startle responses), guilt about surviving when others have not, trouble with concentration etc.
- *Fugue states* can be described as conditions of *total memory loss* after witnessing an overwhelmingly horrible accident or atrocity. These states of memory loss can last from minutes to years.

Psychological traumas refer to events that are outside the experience of everyday life, although the exact definition of a traumatic experience may vary from person to person, country to country, and century to century. Traumas in early life, such as sexual or physical abuse, can lead to mood disorders and contribute to the development of personality disorders. Horrendous early traumas involving torture of a child, other people, or animals, may result in dissociative identity disorder, formerly called multiple personality disorder. Dissociation is a self-protective mechanism for separating conscious awareness from repeated traumas. It has sometimes been described as self-hypnosis, but most clinicians believe that it is not under the patient's control, at least initially.

In later life, such severe traumas as war, rape, natural disasters, or any similar event, can lead to psychiatric difficulties. Post-traumatic stress disorder (PTSD) is a well-known disorder that affects war veterans. Extreme trauma causes the brain to record impressions in a way that is different from ordinary formation of memories. These disjointed impressions may re-emerge as flashbacks months or years after the traumatic experience. Chronic and repetitive trauma, exemplified by intermittent abuse or hostage situations, can lead to a chronic form of PTSD as well.<sup>668</sup>

---

<sup>667</sup> Ibid.

<sup>668</sup> Encyclopaedia of Mental Disorders [Online] Available from: <http://www.minddisorders.com/Ob-Ps/Origin-of-mental-illnesses.html> [Accessed: 27 June 2014]



Deaf and dumb spirits can attach to spirits of trauma. Trauma can be a catalyst for the deaf and dumb spirit, because of the freezing up due to fear which can lead to programming the victim's body to be conditioned that way. This in turn attracts a spirit of fear.<sup>669</sup> Trauma can also open the door to deception, rejection, rebellion, bitterness, unforgiving attitudes, hatred, anger, and a host of other spirits.

#### 4.6.1 Types of Trauma

Reverent Jim Wilder (PhD) created a Life Model in response to the observation of many people in recovery from traumas, addictions, cults and sexual abuse who became bogged down in recovery.

Two types of trauma are described in the Life Model<sup>670</sup>:

1. Type A trauma is often referred to as neglect, but the absence of the basic necessities in someone's life produces traumatic effects of its own. Type A traumas include malnutrition, abandonment, insecure bonds and a lack of joy in the home. Type A trauma during childhood builds a weakened control centre in the brain. Without proper stimulation, the structures and capacities needed for a stable personality do not develop. The resulting weak mind is far more vulnerable to being traumatised by events that would not crush a normal or robust mind. This *lack of capacity* greatly reduces the focus, stability, productivity and capacity to learn for that individual. Instead, the person is susceptible to fearful or aggressive reactions instead of goal-directed responses. Type A trauma always produces damage. Bad things that happen sometimes produce trauma and other times they do not. This has made it very hard to produce a list of bad things that will always lead to conditions like Post Traumatic Stress Disorder or dissociation. We will look at what it takes for intense events to produce trauma in a moment, but we first need to observe that when *someone does not receive the things they need it always produces weakness and damage*. If you grow up without enough calcium or enough joy, as two examples, your body will not develop properly and this damage will produce vulnerabilities, deficits and malfunctions.
2. Type B trauma is the kind a person usually thinks about and involves the bad things that happen, like war, rape, assault, child molesting and emotional abuse. Type B trauma is

---

<sup>669</sup> His Kingdom Prophecy, Overcoming the Deaf and Dumb Spirits [Online] Available from: <http://www.hiskingdomprophecy.com/overcoming-deaf-dumb-spirits/> [Accessed: 1 November 2014]

<sup>670</sup> Wilder, J, Trauma and Recovery [Online] Available from: <http://www.lifemodel.org/topic.php?rn=7> [Accessed: 29 August 2014]

what happens *any time the brain's control centre gets overloaded*. Man has a limit to his capacity to endure overwhelming events and the emotions they produce. When the intensity of an emotion becomes stronger than this capacity and there is no one to help the person bear it, the brain shuts off the higher cortical regions of the control centre and goes first into terror and then to parasympathetic shutdown as the back of the brain tries desperately to survive. Bad things that happen to an individual do not always produce trauma if a person has the strength to experience the pain they suffer without being traumatised. What traumatises a poorly grown brain is often handled by a well-developed control centre in another person's mind. The stronger mind will be able to quiet itself, stay in relationships and act like himself in the face of high levels of pain.

#### 4.6.2 Problems with Parent and Child Association

Parents play an irreplaceable role in the lives of their children. This vital relationship positively impacts a child's physical, mental, and emotional well-being. The right of parents to maintain a strong involvement in their children's lives has been continually upheld by Supreme Court doctrine. The role of parents in a child's life is an irreplaceable one. Even when young children spend most of their waking hours in childcare, parents remain the most influential adults in their lives. A child may not care who cuts his hair or takes his money at the toy store, but he cares a great deal about who is holding him when he is unsure, comforts him when he is hurt, and shares special moments in his life. The relationship that parents share with their children is one that impacts a child throughout his lifetime. Studies show that the benefits of parental involvement are diverse, affecting numerous areas of a child's life, including health and development, academic progress and life choices.<sup>671</sup>

Professor Connie Brand concludes<sup>672</sup>:

*If there is not unconditional acceptance and love by the father and the mother of a person; if there is lack in the person identifying with his father or mother; for example when the mom just leaves or the just dad leaves then the doors are thrown wide open to mental malfunction.*

---

<sup>671</sup> Parental Rights, The Vital Child-Parent Relationship [Online] Available from: <http://www.parentalrights.org/index.asp?SEC=%7B780255DE-D387-4493-BFDB-1C371844036A%7D> [Accessed: 11 November 2014]

<sup>672</sup> Personal Interview with Professor Dr Connie Brand, 4 November 2014.

Children often become double-minded when a mother or father deals with them by manipulation instead of by being forthright. For instance, a parent sets a reasonable and fair rule. The child wants to break it. Sometimes the parent will try to coax or manipulate the child into obeying rather than dealing directly with the child, by, for example, spanking if it is needed (Amos 3:3; Matthew 6:24).<sup>673</sup>

#### 4.6.3 Developmental Trauma Disorder

Childhood trauma, including abuse and neglect, is probably the single most important public health challenge. Each year millions of children are remanded to the authorities for abuse and/or neglect all over the world. Many thousands more undergo traumatic medical and surgical procedures, and are victims of accidents and of their community. However, most trauma begins at home: the vast majority of people (about 80%) responsible for child maltreatment are the child's own parents. Research has shown that traumatic childhood experiences are not only extremely common; they also have a profound impact on many different areas of functioning. For example, children exposed to alcoholic parents or domestic violence rarely have secure childhoods; their symptomatology tends to be pervasive and multifaceted, and is likely to include depression and various medical illnesses, as well as a variety of impulsive and self-destructive behaviours.

The traumatic stress field of study has adopted the term "Complex Trauma" to describe the experience of multiple and/or chronic and prolonged, developmentally adverse traumatic events, most often of an interpersonal nature (e.g. sexual or physical abuse, war, community violence) and characterised by an onset early in life. These exposures often occur within the child's caregiving system and include physical, emotional, and educational neglect and child maltreatment beginning in early childhood.

The most important information for *successful development of the human brain is conveyed by the social* rather than the physical environment. The infant brain must begin participating effectively in the process of social information transmission that offers entry into the culture. Early patterns of attachment inform the quality of information processing throughout life. Secure infants learn to trust both what they feel and how they understand the world. This allows them to rely both on their emotions and thoughts to react to any given situation. Their experience of feeling understood provides them with the confidence that they are capable of

---

<sup>673</sup> Moody, G B, The Deliverance Manual. Deliverance Ministries. Unpublished, p. 69

making good things happen, and that if they do not know how to deal with difficult situations they can find people who can help them find a solution.

Secure children learn a complex vocabulary to describe their emotions (such as love, hate, pleasure, disgust and anger). This allows them to communicate how they feel and to formulate efficient response strategies. They spend more time describing physiological states such as hunger and thirst, as well as emotional states, than maltreated children. Under most conditions parents are able to help their distressed children restore a sense of safety and control: the security of the attachment bond mitigates against trauma-induced terror.

When trauma occurs in the presence of a supportive, if helpless, caregiver, the child's response is likely to mimic that of the parent – the more disorganised the parent, the more disorganised the child. However, if the distress is overwhelming, or when the caregivers themselves are the source of the distress, children are unable to control their arousal. This causes a breakdown in their capacity to process, integrate and categorise what is happening: at the core of traumatic stress is a breakdown in the capacity to regulate internal states. If the distress does not let up, children dissociate: the relevant sensations, affects and cognitions cannot be associated (they are dissociated into sensory fragments) and, as a result, these children cannot comprehend what is happening or devise and execute suitable plans of action.

When caregivers are emotionally absent, inconsistent, frustrating, violent, intrusive, or neglectful, children are liable to become intolerably distressed and unlikely to develop a sense that the external environment is able to provide relief. Thus, children with insecure attachment patterns have trouble relying on others to help them, while being unable to regulate their emotional states by themselves. As a result, they experience excessive anxiety, anger and longings to be taken care of. These feelings may become so extreme as to precipitate dissociative states or self-defeating aggression. Spaced out and hyper-aroused children learn to ignore either what they feel (their emotions), or what they perceive (their cognitions).

When children are unable to achieve a sense of control and stability, they become helpless. If they are unable to grasp what is going on and unable do anything to change it, they go immediately from fearful stimulus to fight/flight/freeze response without being able to learn from the experience. Subsequently, when exposed to reminders of a trauma (sensations,

physiological states, images, sounds and situations) they tend to behave as if they were traumatised all over again. Many problems of traumatised children can be understood as efforts to minimise objective threats and to regulate their emotional distress. Unless caregivers understand the nature of such re-enactments they are liable to label the child as “oppositional”, “rebellious”, “unmotivated”, and “antisocial”.

If children are exposed to unmanageable stress, and if the caregiver does not take over the function of controlling the child's arousal, as occurs when children are exposed to family dysfunction or violence, the child will be unable to organise and categorise its experiences in a coherent fashion. Unlike adults, children do not have the option to report, move away or otherwise protect themselves - they depend on their caregivers for their very survival. When trauma emanates from within the family, children experience a crisis of loyalty and organise their behaviour to survive within their families. Being prevented from articulating what they observe and experience, traumatised children will organise their behaviour around keeping the secret, deal with their helplessness with compliance or defiance, and accommodate in any way they can to entrapment in abusive or neglectful situations.

Chronically traumatised children tend to suffer from distinct alterations in states of consciousness, with amnesia, hyper-amnesia, dissociation, depersonalisation and de-realisation, flashbacks and nightmares of specific events, school problems, difficulties in attention regulation, with orientation in time and space. They also characteristically suffer from sensorimotor developmental disorders. They often are literally are “out of touch” with their feelings, and often have no language to describe internal states. Because multiply abused infants and children often experience developmental delays across a broad spectrum, including cognitive, language, motor, and socialisation skills, they tend to display very complex disturbances, with a variety of different, often fluctuating, presentations<sup>674</sup> and this can be the enabler for insanity and psychosis in later stages of life.

---

<sup>674</sup> Bessel A. van der Kolk, MD, Developmental trauma disorder [Online] Available from: [http://www.traumacenter.org/products/pdf\\_files/preprint\\_dev\\_trauma\\_disorder.pdf](http://www.traumacenter.org/products/pdf_files/preprint_dev_trauma_disorder.pdf) [Accessed: 11 November 2014]

#### 4.6.4 Effects of Trauma

Reverend Jim Wilder (PhD) makes the following observation on the effects of trauma<sup>675</sup>:

*Trauma is the result of overloading the emotional circuits in the brain's control centre. Chronic traumatic effects follow overloads that damage the brain, development, wiring, chemistry and structure. Some of this damage is immediate, but most of it happens in the 48 hours following the traumatic event, when the injured person is not able to return to joy and quiet, either because they have not developed the capacity (immature or underdeveloped nervous system) or because no one will share their pain with them.*

Wilder goes on to explain the effect trauma has on the brain<sup>676</sup>:

- *Left and right brain:* After trauma the brain favours the right brain instead of the normal left side. This is because the mind struggles to control the intensity of feelings. This takes up way too much mental energy and keeps the control centre on the right busy. People have difficulty concentrating, learning and being productive. They tend to be moody, reactive, thin-skinned and self-preoccupied. They may be very smart and still not live or react in ways that make sense, tending to make foolish choices when feelings are present or when feelings are being avoided.
- *Front and back brain:* The front half of the brain is driven by desire and goals, while the back half is dominated by fear. The front half of the brain contains some of its more complex thinking and activity, while the back of the brain is more involved in processing basic data and solving simple problems. During trauma, the higher parts of the brain (levels 3, 4 and 4+) are shut down. One of the enduring effects of unresolved trauma is a dominance of the fear-driven back of the brain. Fear-driven people are anxious, hyper-vigilant and avoidant. They do what it takes to get out of problems (real or imagined) and avoid whatever makes them unhappy or uncomfortable. Since they are not goal-directed, they are rarely far from the very feelings or events they fear, and often participate greatly in producing the very thing they fear.

---

<sup>675</sup> Ibid.

<sup>676</sup> Wilder, J, Trauma and Recovery [Online] Available from: <http://www.lifemodel.org/topic.php?rn=7&page=1> [Accessed: 29 August 2014]

#### **4.6.5 Abuse**

Violence and abuse, especially in the home, appear to be on the increase. Media attention and public outcries have riveted attention on child neglect and abuse, sexual violence, psychological maltreatment of children, rape, mate beating, and mistreatment of the elderly. Various observers have confirmed that these problems of abuse not only are getting more attention, they are getting worse.

Abuse is difficult to define, perhaps because the term covers so many types of physical and psychological maltreatment. Child abuse involves the physical or mental injury, sexual abuse or exploitation, negligent treatment, or maltreatment of a child under the age of eighteen, by a person who is responsible for the child's welfare and under circumstances which indicate the child's health or welfare is harmed or threatened thereby. Mate abuse most often has the wife as the victim and includes deliberate physical assault, threats of violence, emotional abuse (including ridicule, demeaning behaviour, and neglect), and forced involvement in sexual acts. Elder abuse is the maltreatment of older people and includes rough handling, beating, negligence, verbal condemnation, withholding of food or medication, financial exploitation, sexual mistreatment, and ignoring the person's needs for comfort and human contact.

Some children seldom hear a kind or encouraging word. They are berated, ridiculed, cursed and teased; living through verbal abuse. All that some children can remember their parents saying is, "I wish you had never been born. You can't do anything right. You'll never amount to anything. You are stupid. I wish you were dead". Some children struggle even when given the best of encouragement. Children that are continually abused with cruel words will feel rejected and will be unable to get into a close relationship with the parent. They will also develop a severe fear of any close relationship, even with God the Father.

On no grounds can any physical abuse to a child be defended. The emotional repercussions of physical abuse can be so severe that the child can end up in a psychiatric facility for treatment. It is impossible for such a child to get into a close relationship with the abusive parent and the rejection experienced is incomprehensible. Fear to be touched and hugged and physically communicate love is almost unendurable.

Sexual abuse may overlap with any of the above and includes exhibitionism, forced intercourse or other sexual behaviour which the victim resists, or fondling the sex organs of a

minor or other person who is naive or powerless to resist. The use of children in the production of pornography is an increasingly common example of sexual abuse. To all of the above one could add rape, criminal violence, physical assault of students by teachers, sexual exploitation of counselees by their counsellors, harassment of neighbours by juveniles, the physical and emotional exploitation of employees by their employers, and most other behaviour where one human being deliberately inflicts physical and emotional pain in an effort to harm a helpless and unwilling victim.

Just as abuse is difficult to define, so is its incidence difficult to measure. Many victims are reluctant to report abuse, especially when the abuser is a family member. Children and the elderly often are unable to report abuse, and some people aren't even aware that the pain they experience is abuse. Many rape victims are embarrassed to report their experiences, and some say nothing because they fear reprisals if the rapist is identified or apprehended.<sup>677</sup>

Dr Ed Murphy, in his book *The Handbook of Spiritual Warfare*, encapsulates the type of abuse with its reactions as follows<sup>678</sup>:

Type of Abuse	Four Common Negative Reactions
Sexual Abuse	Extreme shame and sexual problems. Fear and anger also occur.
Physical Abuse	Extreme rage and interpersonal relationship problems.
Psychological Abuse	Extreme negative self-image and a spirit of rejection. Always produces anger.
Religious Abuse	Extreme confusion about God and the Christian faith. Inability to trust God or the Son of God.

The negative reactions listed are not exhaustive. Anger, bitterness, rage, and interpersonal relationship problems will almost always accompany each of the four types of abuse.

---

<sup>677</sup> Collin, G R (1988) *Christian Counselling*. Vancouver: Word Publishing, pp.294-295

<sup>678</sup> Murphy, E F (2003) *The Handbook for Spiritual Warfare*, Revised and Updated. Thomas Nelson Publishers, p. 439



#### **4.6.5.1 The Effects of Abuse**

Depending on the age, personality, sex, type of abuse, and past experiences of the victim, the effects of abuse can influence people in a variety of ways. When compared with non-victims, for example, incest victims are more inclined to show inability to trust others, low self-esteem, conflicts over sexual identity, feelings of guilt or shame, and isolation from others. Post-sexual-abuse syndrome is characterised by anxiety, sleep disturbances, anger, sexual dysfunction, substance addiction, and self-destructive tendencies.

Studies found that adult victims of child abuse tended to be overweight, depressed, and chronically anxious. Many had nightmares; almost all had problems with sex, and most had difficulties forming stable relationships. Some appeared to be intent on making themselves appear unattractive to others. Another report found that teenagers who had been abused or neglected as children are more likely than the non-abused to be involved in delinquent behaviour and to commit violent crimes. Abused wives feel afraid, angry, depressed, lacking in self-esteem, and often helpless. Rape victims are more likely than other women to suffer from anxiety, depression, sexual difficulties, family tensions, impaired work and social adjustment, withdrawal from others, self-condemnation, apathy, and inertia.

Victims of elder abuse often feel confused and helpless, but most don't complain or report the abuse, even if they are able to do so. The fear of being abandoned, placed in an institution, socially isolated, or punished leads many to suffer in silence and sometimes even to find reasons to excuse the abusive actions of their adult children.

These diverse effects of abuse could be grouped into three general categories. Abuse influences the victim's feelings, thinking, and actions.<sup>679</sup>

1. **Feelings.** Victims often feel angry, afraid, ashamed, guilty, embarrassed, confused, and worthless. Many victims report feeling violated, dirty, vulnerable, and afraid to trust others. Depression is common and sometimes there is self-pity and self-blame.
2. **Thinking.** People who have been abused often have low self-concepts and think of themselves as being unattractive, incompetent, inadequate, dependent, and unwanted by others. Often victims have low morale and impaired concentration. Abused children, battered wives, and mistreated older people sometimes blame themselves for the

---

<sup>679</sup> Collin, G R (1988) *Christian Counselling*. Vancouver: Word Publishing, pp.299-300

treatment they receive and think that they must deserve to be abused. Often there is a willingness to take the abuse without resisting because the victim feels so helpless and afraid of the consequences if the abuse is reported.

3. **Actions.** Abuse sometimes leads victims to develop antisocial behaviour, learning disabilities, interpersonal tensions, inefficiency at work, and, as we have seen, a tendency to become violent and abusive themselves. Often victims are afraid to venture outside, so they stay home. Many withdraw from people at a time when they most need social support. Some start drinking, a few withdraw into a world of fantasy, others go on with life as best they can, but they recognise that because of the abuse, life will always be different than it might have been if the abuse had not occurred.
4. **Other considerations relating to abuse.** Where is God in all of this abuse? For some victims there is theological confusion and questioning. Why, they wonder, would God allow this to happen? Could any good possibly come from such a painful situation? Many are angry at God and this may be directed towards people representing God such as ministers or counsellors. Often there are struggles with doubt, the seeming inability to forgive, or questions about whether they can ever hope again or trust God to protect them. Family members, boyfriends, mates of rape victims, and close friends may all react with anger, confusion, prejudice, and feelings of helplessness, revulsion, and embarrassment. Male mates of rape victims sometimes feel personally violated because of what has happened to their wives. All of this can lead to marital tension, depression, and further stress on the victim.

**The abuser.** Often these people feel deep and lasting remorse, especially after their abusive behaviour becomes public knowledge. Many are frightened, guilt-ridden, and confused, but they find little support or sympathy from others. Few attempt to understand abusers, and counsellors seem reluctant to realise that many abusers need help as much as their victims.<sup>680</sup>

According to Des Fontaine, the effect of this action of abuse has devastating consequences on the victim. The result in a girl that is abused is guilt, condemnation, shame, and many different fears. It is difficult for her to face her own body, because it has become a source of shame. She relates with difficulty to her father, if he was the person who abused her. Later on she will become either very promiscuous (a spirit of lust will enter) or she will be frigid and

---

<sup>680</sup> Collin, G R (1988) *Christian Counselling*. Vancouver: Word Publishing, p. 300

fearful of men. A sense of shame will be so great she will be unable to enter into a normal marriage relationship. In a boy this abuse will result in homosexuality. It opens the door to a spirit of perversion. His emotions are twisted by the experience and demonic penetration occurs. He will experience symptoms like emotional inability to cope and self-hatred.<sup>681</sup>

Many people with a background of abuse become schizophrenic, paranoid and psychotic. Some become catatonic, either rejecting any activity or becoming extremely active and talkative, and some even have hallucinations (2 Timothy 3:3). The paranoid mind has delusions of grandeur and persecution. Psychotics simply refuse to acknowledge reality (2 Timothy 3:4).<sup>682</sup>

#### **4.6.6 Sexual Abuse**

Sexual abuse is the abuse of a person of any age on a sexual level. Even one episode of sexual abuse can leave a child scarred for life with feelings of powerlessness and extreme vulnerability. Abuse victims learn to fear and distrust others, even those who are closest to them. Clinical studies show that high percentages of homosexual adults were sexually abused as children.

A study done at the University of Utah Medical School found that 90% of the homosexual women and 75-80% of the homosexual men surveyed, had been sexually abused during childhood by men – many of whom had themselves been abused as children. Studies showed that boys victimised by older men are at least seven times more likely to identify as homosexual, and four times more likely to be currently engaged in homosexual activity, than non-victims. Many boys are so desperate to bond with older males that their vulnerability is apparent to the abuser. Child abusers learn to recognise the child who harbours this unmet homo-emotional need. The boy craves masculine attention and initially views the touching as innocent and evidencing affection.<sup>683</sup>

---

<sup>681</sup> Fontaine, D. Fiona Possess the Land. Teaching Seminar, City of Life, South Africa. Unpublished, p.24

<sup>682</sup> Demon Buster, Deliverance for the Subconscious Mind [Online] Available from: <http://www.demonbuster.com/dftsm.html> [Accessed: 26 September 2014]

<sup>683</sup> Buys, A, Healing the Sexually Broken Hearted. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished, p. 144

#### 4.6.6.1 The Effect of Sexual Abuse

The Word is clear. People who are subject to sexual abuse or sexual perversion become weak in character, i.e. they will become passive due to the soul ties. People who have been abused will in most cases become abusers. Statistics given indicate that every such a person will abuse 40 others in their lifetime. It can be seen that perversity creates an ever-increasing circle of effect – not only on the abuser's own generational line but also in regards to the other families that are drawn into it.

Abused people have a weakened spirit:

*Nevertheless, not all [believers] possess this knowledge. But some, through being all their lives until now accustomed to [thinking of] idols [as real and living], still consider the food [offered to an idol] as that sacrificed to an [actual] god; and their weak consciences become defiled and injured if they eat [it].*

*1 Corinthians 8:7*

Abused people will be open to deceiving spirits and doctrines of demons. The world media will portray this perverse lifestyle as normal and acceptable. As a result, these people easily depart from faith in God.<sup>684</sup>

*<sup>1</sup> But the [Holy] Spirit distinctly and expressly declares that in latter times some will turn away from the faith, giving attention to deluding and seducing spirits and doctrines that demons teach, <sup>2</sup> Through the hypocrisy and pretensions of liars whose consciences are seared (cauterized)*

*1 Timothy 4:1-2*

*Holding fast to faith (that leaning of the entire human personality on God in absolute trust and confidence) and having a good (clear) conscience. By rejecting and thrusting from them [their conscience], some individuals have made shipwreck of their faith.*

*1 Timothy 1:19*

---

<sup>684</sup> Buys, A, The Defiled Bride, Sodomy and Sexual Abuse. Kanaan Ministries, pp.34-35

#### **4.6.7 Ritual Abuse**

Ritual abuse<sup>685</sup> is a brutal form of abuse of children, adolescents, and adults, consisting of physical, sexual, and psychological abuse, and involving the use of rituals. "Ritual" does not necessarily mean "satanic". However, most survivors state that they were ritually abused as part of satanic worship for the purpose of indoctrinating them into satanic beliefs and practices. Ritual abuse rarely consists of a single episode. It usually involves repeated abuse over an extended period of time.

The physical abuse is severe, sometimes including torture and killing. The sexual abuse is usually painful, sadistic, and humiliating, intended as a means of gaining dominance over the victim. The psychological abuse is devastating and involves the use of ritual/indoctrination, which includes mind control techniques and mind altering drugs, and ritual/intimidation which conveys to the victim a profound terror of the cult members and of the evil spirits they believe cult members can command. Both during and after the abuse, most victims are in a state of terror, mind control, and dissociation in which disclosure is exceedingly difficult.

Ritual abuse is usually carried out by members of a cult. The purpose of the ritual elements of the abuse seems threefold:

1. Rituals in some groups are part of a shared belief or worship system into which the victim is being indoctrinated;
2. Rituals are used to intimidate victims into silence;
3. Ritual elements (e.g. devil worship, animal or human sacrifice) seem so unbelievable to those unfamiliar with these crimes that these elements detract from the credibility of the victims and make prosecution of the crimes very difficult.

Many victims are children under the age of six, who suffer the most severe and longstanding emotional damage from the abuse. These young victims are particularly susceptible to being terrorised and indoctrinated into the abusers' belief system. During and even long after the abuse, victims live in a state of terror and dissociation and suffer from the impact of mind-control techniques.

---

<sup>685</sup> Etymology: Abuse: early 15c., "to misuse, misapply," from Middle French *abuser*, from Vulgar Latin *\*abusare*, from Latin *abusus* "an abusing, using up," past participle of *abuti* "use up," also "misuse," from *ab-* "away" + *uti* "use". Of sexual situations from early 15c., but originally incest, homosexuality, prostitution, etc.; meaning "to misuse sexually, ravish" is from 1550s. Specifically of drugs, from 1968. [www.etymonline.com](http://www.etymonline.com)

The psychological abuse which is inflicted as part of ritual abuse causes severe mental and emotional suffering to the victims. Victims are subjected to profound terror as well as to mind control techniques so severe that most victims dissociate their memories of the experience and lose their sense of free will.

Ritual abuse victims are physically abused, often to the point of torture. Young victims who are being ritually abused without the knowledge of both parents are usually subjected only to physical abuse that is not easily detected.

The sexual abuse of ritual victims is unusually brutal, sadistic, and humiliating. It is far more severe than that which is usually inflicted by a paedophile or in the context of interfamilial sexual abuse (incest). It seems intended as a means of gaining total dominance over the victim, as well as being an end in itself.<sup>686</sup>

#### **4.6.7.1 Neshamah**

There is a core of the human spirit which is an individual's personality (also called the original self); the person the Triune God created from the beginning. This core of the spirit is called Neshamah. Ne'sh'mah is the Hebrew word meaning "breath" and "spirit" (not the same as ru'ach, which is the human spirit). Neshamah is the God-created breath of life.

*Then the Lord God formed man from the dust of the ground and breathed into his nostrils the breath or spirit of life [Neshamah], and man became a living being.*

*Genesis 2:7*

*The spirit of man [that factor in human personality which proceeds immediately from God] is the lamp of the Lord, searching all his innermost parts.*

*Proverbs 20:27*

Neshamah is an extension from the human spirit, and works with the Holy Spirit. Neshamah is the God-given capacity to know, perceive, and understand. Neshamah is the God-imparted capacity to know and connect with Him and His life.

---

<sup>686</sup> Sullivan, K, Ritual Abuse and Mind Control [Online] Available from: <http://www.whale.to/b/sullivan.html> [Accessed: 25 July 2014]

*But there is [a vital force] a spirit [of intelligence] in man, and the breath of the Almighty gives men understanding.*

*Job 32:8*

When a child is subjected to satanic ritual abuse the first thing the abusers do is to apply the five "I WILLs" of Satan (Isaiah 14:2-14) to the victim:

1. I will ascend into heaven.
2. I will exalt my throne above the stars of God.
3. I will sit upon the mount of congregation, in the uttermost parts of the north.
4. I will ascend above the heights of the clouds.
5. I will make myself like the Most High,

All this is then enmeshed into Neshamah and the human spirit. Then there is an agreement and alignment first to Satan and his rebellion, as well as to all those in history who have worked with/for Satan (for example: Cain, Nimrod, Caesar, Nero, Alexander the Great, Stalin, Mussolini, Hitler, Dr Mengele, Aleister Crowley, and so forth). This enmeshment and identification with the enemy and all the enemies of the Triune God throughout history is where the person's DID system and all programming is spiritually anchored.

Satan cannot separate Man from God's love, or completely do away with Neshamah (core), but he can steal and sequester parts of Neshamah through trauma, dissociation, SRA rituals, and clinical death, so much so that only very limited representation of the person's Neshamah will remain functional as God originally intended (Proverbs 20:27; Job.32:8; 33:4). Satan cannot completely confiscate or sequester in spiritual death the person's Neshamah, because at the very core Neshamah remains joined to the Lord Almighty (1 Corinthians 6:17) and belongs ultimately to Him.<sup>687</sup>

#### **4.6.7.2 Satanic Ritual Abuse (SRA)**

The worst possible type of child abuse occurring today is Satanic Ritual Abuse (SRA), a combination of all four forms of abuse. It is religious abuse performed on a child to cause unspeakable pain. It is physical abuse related to sexual abuse, often rape and perversions of every imaginable and unimaginable type. It results in the most extreme form of psychological damage. The growing child is pre-programmed through this ultimate evil to malfunction as a

---

<sup>687</sup> Buys, A, Understanding Neshamah. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished, pp.3-6, 14-15

youth and as an adult. Often the abuse splits the personality of the child, producing personality disassociation leading to Multiple Personality Disorder (MPD). Research reveals that 75% or more of MPDs resulted from SRA and related forms of extreme child sexual abuse.<sup>688</sup>

Satanic ritual abuse is very different from normal child abuse in that the abusers are not merely acting out their own sickness or unresolved rage from their own childhood abuse. Cult abusers are following prescribed ways of preparing children for cult membership and receptivity to Satan's demands.<sup>689</sup>

There are three foundational events in the life of SRA victims: (1) pre-conception rituals; (2) spiritual death at conception and birth; and (3) spiritual death and the new-birth (when giving his life to the Lord Jesus) identity.

Hexes, vexes, spells, curses (creating attachments), demonic blessings, and assignments are spoken over/attached to a child/victim at each of these events. This web of bondage controls the child/victim throughout life. Fallen angels and demons attach to all these words, making sure all that was said is carried out.

These words are embedded into the child through rituals, channelling, and wounding by various types of torture through trauma-based mind-control protocols. These demonic attachments connect to the DNA and the Neshamah part of the human spirit at new-birth by generational iniquity associated with the bloodlines. And so a lifetime of control is established. Getting rid of the fallen angels and demons does not get rid of the programming and control. If the programming and control are not removed through the process of re-connecting and re-associating the person's identity, the fallen angels and demons have the right to return.

Through the new-birth ritual, the primary aim of the abuser and Satan is to legally possess in spiritual death on an experiential, dissociative and extra-dimensional level. The enemy has effectively devised a way in this last generation to legally sequester (confiscate) and envelope in spiritual death the new-birth identity in those who are SRA/DID in generational sin and spiritual death (Romans 6:23).

---

<sup>688</sup> Murphy, E F (2003) *The Handbook for Spiritual Warfare*, Revised and Updated. Thomas Nelson Publishers, p. 439

<sup>689</sup> Buys, A, *The ABC of DID*. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished, p. 44



These three foundational rituals try to destroy any capacity to know/love the Triune God and to develop normal healthy relationships in family, marriage, and the Body of Christ.

The primal split happens when one suffers trauma as a baby and the mother has significant emotional issues. The baby tries to make sense of her moods. Babies typically create two mental constructs, two mommies: a good mommy, and a bad mommy. Baby also creates a good and bad baby inside that relates to the good and the bad mommies. The DID/SRA structures are then built upon these primal foundations. All the bad parts/alters are then built upon the bad baby foundation and all the good parts/alters are built upon the good baby foundation.

Then, at a special rite-of-passage ritual at the age of thirteen, the perpetrators and programmers will then call out the thirteen year old cult-aligned core representation and extension of themselves from conception to willingly surrender to spiritual death the person's new-birth identity in conformity with the pre-conception and conception generational agenda, where the "blueprint" or template for all the programming is spiritually anchored to the human spirit. Through free-will choice, this part surrenders their new-birth identity to Satan's agenda.<sup>690</sup>

Identifying SRA victims or survivors<sup>691</sup>:

1. *Fear of crowds*: Rituals are often held in crowded rooms or there may be outdoor rituals attended by large numbers of people.
2. *Fear of water*: A common means of control is to hold the subject's head under water.
3. *Dislike or fear of dogs*: Bestiality is often forced upon SRA children and women.
4. *Inordinate fear of snakes or spiders*: A child may have been restrained while snakes or spiders were allowed to crawl on him.
5. *Inordinate fear of bees*: A survivor may have been subjected to multiple bee stings.
6. *Fear of drugs*: The SRA person may have been drugged while being forced to do things against his/her will. Drugs are also used to open the spirit realm further to increase the torment of their victim.
7. *Fear of doctors and hospitals*: The survivor may have been subjected to painful medical procedures for evil purposes. Cults often have their own doctors and even clinics (clinics are usually depicted as being in foreign countries).

---

<sup>690</sup> Buys, A, Understanding Neshamah. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished, pp. 5-14

<sup>691</sup> Buys, A, The ABC of DID. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished, pp 55-56

8. *Fear of prayer:* There may be a fear of others gathering around him/her for prayer. It can remind one of a ritual where he may have been surrounded while people chanted.
9. *Frequent hand washing, hot showers:* Sometimes this is an attempt to wash the blood off one's hands or cleanse the body from shame and guilt. Others cannot see the blood but sometimes a survivor does.
10. *Ability to see and hear demons:* SRA opens a person's perceptions to the realm of evil spirits that others do not see or hear.
11. *Gender confusion:* Cults may purposely programme confusion regarding gender. For example, a woman may dress in a masculine or a sexual fashion.
12. *Self-mutilation:* Cutting, scratching, burning. Persons abused by satanic cults may have been taught to cut themselves as a means of coping with stress.
13. *Inability to pray:* The SRA survivor may have been programmed for an inability to pray.
14. *Inability to read the Bible:* The SRA survivor may have been programmed against Bible reading.
15. *Fear of God and Jesus:* The SRA survivor may have endured painful rituals intended to create a fear of God and Jesus. It is not uncommon for a cult member disguised as Jesus to horribly abuse the person.
16. *Memories of numerous rapes:* When a woman begins remembering many rapes, it is an indication that she may be SRA. Demon powers are stored in a female through rituals. These powers are accessed by perpetrators through rape.
17. *Confusion:* Cults often programme their victims for extreme confusion. They may experience difficulties with reasoning and common sense.
18. *Backwards thinking:* In cult families children are taught that good is evil and evil is good in every conceivable aspect of life; therefore, their thinking on many issues may seem strange.
19. *Nightmares:* The survivor may be troubled by dreams with violent or satanic themes.
20. *Demons manifesting:* Through satanic rituals demons are given control over a person's mind, body and voice.
21. *Self-punishing:* The SRA survivors may have been taught that they must punish themselves for laughing, receiving praise or making a mistake. It is not uncommon for them to hit themselves.
22. *Abuse identity:* The person seems to be consistently in hurtful situations stemming from a belief that it is his role in life to be abused. Others sense their expectation for abuse and act accordingly.
23. *Accident prone:* Due to demonic influences and curses placed on the lives of the SRA survivors some of them seem to experience more than their share of painful accidents.

24. *Emotional problems:* Low self-esteem, guilt, depression, anger, suicidal thoughts, unworthiness, self-hatred, and panic attacks are some of the emotional problems that may plague the SRA survivor.
25. *Night time demon visitations:* The SRA survivor may experience terrifying demon visitations and demon rape at night. The incubus (male) demon sexually attacks women and the succubus (female) sexually attacks men.
26. *Inability to wear restrictive clothing:* bras, coats.
27. Dislike of being touched.
28. Inability to tolerate certain sounds: Sounds such as crying babies or children, screaming, dogs licking or lip smacking may trigger emotions or partial memories of rituals.
29. *Troubled by strobe lights or blinking lights:* Strobe lights are often used in programming and may induce a trance-like state or fear.

The SRA victim or survivor may experience several of the following physical problems<sup>692</sup>:

1. Migraine headaches.
2. Eating disorders: anorexia, bulimia, food addictions.
3. Sexual dysfunction: aversion to sex or overactive sexually.
4. Fibromyalgia (so-called fibrositis): unexplainable pain in shoulder blades and shoulder and leg muscles for  $\pm$  2-3 hrs per day; also low energy, tiredness, headaches, spasms, cramps mainly caused by stress.
5. Digestive tract problems: acid reflux, ulcers, colitis.
6. Blood chemistry imbalance.
7. Pain in joints of hips.
8. Heart problems.
9. History of substance abuse: alcohol, drugs.
10. Temporomandibular joint syndrome (TMJ).
11. Hysterectomy.
12. Unexplained, intermittent pain in stomach, lower back, vagina, rectum.
13. Bowel problems, often starting in childhood.
14. Unexplained scars or tattoos.
15. Liver or adrenal malfunctions, thyroid disorder.
16. Diagnosed epileptic.
17. Urinary tract infections.
18. Collapsed rectal wall.

---

<sup>692</sup> Ibid. p. 57

19. Arthritis or lupus.
20. Problems with knees.
21. Hypertension.
22. Choking sensations.
23. Missing digits.
24. Unidentifiable bruises, cuts, scrapes, etc.

#### **4.6.7.3 Dissociative Identity Disorder (DID)**

Note that what was called Multiple Personality Disorder (MPD) is now called Dissociative Identity Disorder (DID).

DID is the result of an amazingly creative defence mechanism that a person of any age uses to cope with extremely overwhelming trauma. When there is no external way of escape, the person is able to escape within himself, erecting mental walls which served as a substitute for the physical haven he could not find.<sup>693</sup> Even though a lot of the symptomology of DID may seem very out-of-the-ordinary, a person with DID is not psychotic or mentally ill. Somebody that is divided is not diagnosed with a mental illness, nor is it retardation, and neither is it insanity. DID does not involve any biological or biochemical abnormality of the brain. It is not a physical disorder. DID occurs primarily within the non-material mind or soul of the person.

Amanda Buys makes the following contribution towards the study of DID by stating that *God built marvellous ingenuity into the human mind in order to allow the most vulnerable part of His creation - the little children - to survive the worst kinds of evil that Satan would perpetrate through fallen man.*<sup>694</sup>

Arthur Burk describes DID as people who *are simply carrying an extreme wound from an extreme trauma and they are divided because of their extraordinary creativity. To be able to divide in this way, only highly creative people create this kind of compensation for overwhelming pain; extraordinary people who got broken in a violent way.*<sup>695</sup>

---

<sup>693</sup> Buys, A, The ABC of DID. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished, p. 5

<sup>694</sup> Ibid. p. 5

<sup>695</sup> Burk, A, Helping a Divided Person [http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=u-UrVVQMJ\\_I](http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=u-UrVVQMJ_I)

When one of the mind-control programmers of the Church of Scientology, who has left Scientology, was asked about DID, he said, *It's the name of the game of mind control.*<sup>696</sup>

Fritz Springmeier explains MPD (or DID) as: *a natural response in some people when they are faced with unbearable pain or trauma. It is characteristic of people who have MPD to sleep with their eyes open. People who have MPD may have a devout Christian personality and a devout Satanic personality all within a single body.*<sup>697</sup>

The mental health field considers dissociation to be a disturbance or alteration in normal integrative functions of consciousness, memory, identity or perception of the environment. The disturbance may be sudden or gradual, transient or chronic. This describes a process whereby the mind separates one or more aspects of its function (knowing, feeling, tasting, hearing, seeing) away from the normal stream of consciousness. DID is therefore the presence of two or more distinct identities or personality states, each with its own relatively enduring pattern of perceiving, relating to, and thinking about the environment and self.<sup>698</sup>

Normal dissociation occurs whenever an individual concentrates so intensely on an internal mental process that he loses touch with his external environment (through day-dreaming, for example). It can only occur when the activity being carried out by the body is so familiar that the brain has been programmed to carry it out automatically without the direction of the mind. The instant the brain encounters something that is out of the ordinary, it summons the attention of the mind, which brings the person back into touch with his physical surroundings. This type of dissociation is minimally disruptive to normal functioning.

Pathological dissociation is dissociation that lies on a continuum that progresses to conditions that become increasingly more complex and disruptive to normal functioning. DID is the most extreme form of dissociation, resulting in the splitting of the soul.

Trauma Induced Dissociation is the degree of dissociation in response to trauma that seems to depend on at least two factors (1) the severity of the abuse and (2) the creativity of the person. When abuse is great and the person is very creative, then the walls between the various sub-selves and the host are very high and thick. Once an individual has begun to use this extreme form of dissociation as a coping strategy at this early age, he will be able to

---

<sup>696</sup> Springmeier F and Wheeler C, The Illuminati Formula used to Create an Undetectable Mind Control Slave [Online] Available from: [http://www.whale.to/b/springmeier\\_formula.html](http://www.whale.to/b/springmeier_formula.html) [Accessed: 28 July 2014]

<sup>697</sup> Springmeier F and Wheeler C, The Illuminati Formula used to Create an Undetectable Mind Control Slave [Online] Available from: [http://www.whale.to/b/springmeier\\_formula.html](http://www.whale.to/b/springmeier_formula.html) [Accessed: 28 July 2014]

<sup>698</sup> Buys, A, The ABC of DID. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished, p. 15

continue splitting off new personalities at any subsequent age. It is generally agreed that in about 97% of the cases where multiple personalities or alters or parts are formed, the victims suffered serious abuse at an early age.

When a person experiences an event that is so traumatic and carries seemingly unbearable implications, he desperately wants to escape conscious awareness of the event, but he cannot use normal dissociation, because his brain has no automatic programming in place to handle what is occurring in his external environment. Therefore, at that intolerable and inescapable moment of time, God allows him to use an extreme form of dissociation, dividing his consciousness in a way that essentially creates two selves so only part of him has to endure the trauma of the external environment while his core self is shut off from all awareness of the event. These *selves* are also known as alter-identities or parts. An enduring amnesiac barrier is put in place to keep these two selves separate from awareness of each other. When trauma occurs again, the Core Self can once again escape by (1) sending the previously created part out to handle the environment, and (2) creating another split in consciousness, or another new self, to handle the trauma. Over time these divided "segments of consciousness" develop into separate identities able to operate independently within the person as divided portions of the soul.<sup>699</sup>

Disassociation is a split in the conscious process and may have the following characteristics<sup>700</sup>:

1. **Memory loss:** Persons who have used dissociation as their main coping mechanism may be unable to remember some of the common experiences from childhood. They may complain that their past seems to be "full of holes". They may comment that years seem to have disappeared from their past. This leaves them with the feeling they are somehow less than whole persons.
2. **Time loss:** Some people experience the phenomenon of losing hours out of a day. They may realise it is four o'clock in the afternoon, but their last memory was of eating breakfast. They may find themselves in a strange location with no memory of how they got there.
3. **Hearing voices:** They may have conversations with another voice in their head or hear others talking inside their head. Voices may be demons or they may be parts formed through dissociation.

---

<sup>699</sup> Buys, A, The ABC of DID. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished, pp. 10-13, 15

<sup>700</sup> Buys, A, The ABC of DID. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished, pp. 22-23

4. *History of headaches*: The process of “switching” to another identity often causes headaches. Persons who switch several times a day may feel they have a perpetual headache.
5. *Changes in handwriting*: Distinct changes in handwriting may be observed if DID is present.
6. *Observed dissociation during conversation*: For example, the person may suddenly change from being distressed to being calm. Sometimes a slight shaking of the head or fluttering of the eyelids will be noticed.
7. *Cognisance of internal children or identities*: The person may be aware of little children inside (perhaps many) or other identities.
8. *Frequent changing of clothing*: Some persons change clothing several times a day because different parts of them want to wear outfits complementing their distinct identities.
9. *Very few clothing ensembles*: Some persons may tire of the endless bickering over clothing by their identities and strip their wardrobe to only a few items.
10. *A sense of deprivation*: Some people with DID feel they have missed out on life. This may stem from not being able to remember much of it.
11. *Inordinate desire to please others*: An abused child learns to try to please everyone in hopes of not being severely punished.
12. *Intelligent and creative*: These characteristics are necessary to have the ability to dissociate. Creativity may be evidenced in poetry, art and music.
13. *A highly developed imagination*: When abuse is severe and there is no safe place for escape a child has to go inward into the imagination and invent his/her own safe world.
14. *A desire to play with, or collect, stuffed animals*: Because the person may never have been allowed to be a child, child parts may surface when alone and want to play.
15. *Emotions disconnected from cognitive thoughts*: The ability to talk about horrendous abuse (which has not been healed) with no emotion may be an indication that one identity is describing something that happened to another identity.

Symptoms indicating DID can be grouped together in clusters. Information about the following symptom clusters can be useful in the diagnostic process.<sup>701</sup>

Post-traumatic stress disorder symptoms include sleep disturbances, flashbacks of traumatic experiences, alteration in concentration and attention, and physical symptoms.

---

<sup>701</sup> Buys, A, The ABC of DID. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished, pp. 24-25

Dissociative symptoms include little or no memories of childhood years, amnesia, trance-like behaviours, and switches, hearing voices in the head, hypnotisability, and feeling as if someone else has taken over control of the body.

Affective symptoms includes strong mood swings accompanied by changes in perceptions, values, behaviours, feelings, attitudes, likes and dislikes; abrupt or subtle changes indicate personality switches; often the predominate mood is depression; periods of extreme anger, periods of depression, extreme anxiety, inappropriate emotions and total lack of emotion at times or appearing to others as being unaware of feelings or going through the motions of life, like a robot ("I feel empty inside" or "I don't ever know how or what I'm feeling").

Somatic symptoms include frequent headaches, medical symptoms without a reason and fluctuation of medical symptoms.

Behavioural symptoms includes eating disorders, addictive behaviours, self-mutilation, suicidal tendencies, high tolerance of physical pain/numbing, hypervigilance/scanning - walking into a room and detecting moods - nervous, always watching others' behaviours and movements, and exaggerated startle response.

Mental symptoms includes fluctuation in intellectual abilities, confusion about time (loss of time), confusion over possessions (find things they can't remember buying), cannot remember saying things, confusion about their behaviour, confusion about people and relationships, problems with a bad memory, flashbacks, and multiple distinct styles of handwriting.

#### **4.6.8 Trauma Bonds to Time**

Trauma can bond to time when at the time of trauma the person sat in judgement on God; it is a person's response to what happened to the person causing the trauma; it is not what God did to the person, but what the person did to himself. If a trauma is involuntarily remembered from time to time, it is an indication that the trauma bonded to time; when the person's reality is in one place but the emotion is stuck back in time; the memory does not age or fade; when the emotion does not fit with the person's identity. Asking the question: "Where has this happened before in time?" gives an indication of the root cause.<sup>702</sup>

---

<sup>702</sup> Burk, A, Trauma Bonds to Time, CD 1, Track 7; Burk, A, Trauma Bonds to Time, CD 2, Track 1



## 4.7. SORCERY

The Merriam Webster Dictionary defines sorcery<sup>703</sup> as “*the use of power gained from the assistance or control of evil spirits, especially for divining*”.<sup>704</sup> Therefore it is the use of magical powers that are obtained through evil spirits. Sorcery includes the realm of magic (not sleight of hand); that is, the use of drugs, chants, and ceremonies which in themselves possess power to produce desired results or changes in people, circumstances or events, both black and white magic.<sup>705</sup>

Sorcery is the usurping for ourselves of god-like powers to manipulate reality; it is the use of supernatural power over people and their affairs. The attempt to get what is wanted is brought about through (1) incantations (confessing it), (2) mind power techniques (thinking it), and (3) Voodoo (performing a technique).<sup>706</sup>

Michael Ford, in his book *The Book of the Witch Moon*, defines Sorcery as the primal and illuminated act of focusing and controlling energy. The individual who practices sorcery does so generally by means of Will-Desire-Belief, by binding the energy of spirits into a focused and controlled object. The term ‘encircling’ refers to sorcery. The individual who ‘encircles’ energy, shadow or spirit is creating and wilfully imposing change, either internally (High Sorcery, Magick) or externally (Goetic or Low Sorcery).<sup>707</sup>

### 4.7.1 Witchcraft

Witchcraft<sup>708</sup>, also called “witchery” or “spell-craft” is the use of magical abilities, generally for religious, divinatory or medicinal purposes. This may take many forms, depending on cultural context.<sup>709</sup> Witchcraft uses sorcery or magic and can include communication with the devil or

---

<sup>703</sup> Etymology: Sorcery: c.1300, from Old French *sorcerie*, from *sorcier* "sorcerer, wizard," from Medieval Latin *sortiarius* "teller of fortunes by lot; sorcerer," literally "one who influences fate or fortune," from Latin *sors* (genitive *sortis*) "lot, fate, fortune". [www.etymonline.com](http://www.etymonline.com)

<sup>704</sup> Merriam-Webster Dictionary, Sorcery [Online] Available from: <http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/sorcery> [Accessed: 28 May 2014]

<sup>705</sup> Murphy, E F (2003) *The Handbook for Spiritual Warfare*, Revised and Updated. Thomas Nelson Publishers, p. 164

<sup>706</sup> Proclamation, Invitation, and Warning, Occult Terms [Online] Available from: <http://procinwarn.com/occult.htm> [Accessed: 12 May 2014]

<sup>707</sup> Ford, M W (2003) *The book of the witch moon, a Grimoire of Luciferian Witchcraft, Vampirism and Chaos Sorcery*. Houston: Succubus Inner Publications, pp. 30

<sup>708</sup> Etymology: Witchcraft: Old English *wiccecræft* "witchcraft, magic," from *wicce* + *cræft* "power, skill". Witchcraft was declared a crime in English law in 1542; trials there peaked in 1580s and 1640s but fell sharply after 1660. The last, in 1717, ended in acquittal. The Witchcraft Act was repealed 1736. [www.etymonline.com](http://www.etymonline.com)

<sup>709</sup> Wikipedia, Witchcraft [Online] Available from: <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Witchcraft> [Accessed: 28 May 2014]

with a familiar spirit. It has an irresistible influence and charm.<sup>710</sup> Magic(k) is the use of charms, spells, or rituals to cause or control events or govern natural or supernatural forces.<sup>711</sup>

Witchcraft works through three major components, namely intimidation ("I will scare you into doing what I want"), manipulation ("I will trick you into doing what I want or giving me what I need"), and domination ("I will force you to do what I want").<sup>712</sup>

Witchcraft leads to increasing discouragement, confusion, depression (unshakable dread), loss of vision (doubt that God has called the person to the task), disorientation (the Scriptures will no longer speak to the person and he will not trust the Lord's voice), spiritual incapacitation (the inability to function), withdrawal, despair (hopelessness) and defeat.<sup>713</sup>

William Schnoebelen, an ex-Wiccan made the following statement about the seriousness and deception of witchcraft in his book *WICCA*<sup>714</sup>:

*I thought that witchcraft was just gathering herbs and dancing naked in the forest, but now I realized it was the threshold of the dark, passionate thrills of the kingdom of Satan, or the "Kingdom" as we called it.*

The curse of witchcraft opens the door for spirits of destruction, insanity, sickness, poverty, lust, rebellion, fragmentation of the soul and a host of others to enter the bloodline, due to actual or ancestral participation in Witchcraft.<sup>715</sup>

#### 4.7.1.1 The Religion of Witchcraft

Wicca is a modern pagan witchcraft religion. Wicca is a diverse religion with no central authority or figure defining it. It is divided into various lineages and denominations, referred to as traditions, each with its own organisational structure and level of centralisation. Due to its decentralised nature, there is some disagreement over what actually constitutes Wicca.

---

<sup>710</sup> Merriam-Webster Dictionary, Witchcraft [Online] Available from: <http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/witchcraft> [Accessed: 28 May 2014]

<sup>711</sup> Proclamation, Invitation, and Warning, Occult Terms [Online] Available from: <http://procinwarn.com/occult.htm> [Accessed: 12 May 2014]

<sup>712</sup> Bloomer, G (2003) The Battle Plan, Strategies in engaging in Spiritual warfare, pp. 202-204

<sup>713</sup> Joyner, R (1995) Epic Battles of the Last Days. New Kensington: Whitaker House, pp. 80-84

<sup>714</sup> Schnoebelen, W (1990) *WICCA*. USA: Chick Publications, p. 47

<sup>715</sup> Eckhard, J (2004) Deliverance and Spiritual Warfare Manual. Chicago: Crusaders Ministries, p. 23

Wicca is typically duo-theistic, worshipping a god and goddess traditionally viewed as a mother goddess and horned god. These two deities are sometimes viewed as facets of a greater pantheistic godhead.<sup>716</sup>

#### **4.7.1.2 A Brief History of Madness Associated with Witchcraft**

The Emperor Constantine recognised Christianity in the Roman Empire in AD 313, and the subsequent triumph of the Church and conversion of the barbarian invaders gave official sanction in the centuries to come for supernatural thinking about insanity. Unlike Greek philosophy, Christianity denied that reason was the essence of man: what counted were sin, divine will, and love, and a believer's faith. It preached, moreover, an apocalyptic narrative of sin and redemption in which the human race was vastly outnumbered by otherworldly spiritual beings including God, His angels, saints, the souls of the departed, Satan and all his squadrons (not to mention ghosts, wood-demons, and hobgoblins omnipresent in peasant lore and semi-sanctioned by the Church's supernaturalism). Beliefs in traditional societies typically view some diseases as supernatural, and hence in need of magical remedies. Pulverised human skull was widely recommended, for instance, for the treatment of epilepsy.

In Christian divinity, God and the Devil battled for possession of the individual soul. The marks of such 'psychomachy' might include despair, anguish, and other symptoms of disturbance of mind. The Church also entertained a madness which was holy, patterned upon the madness of the Cross (the scandal of Christ crucified) and exhibited in the ecstatic revelations of saints and mystics. Holy innocents, prophets, ascetics, and visionaries, too, might be possessed by a good madness. But derangement was more commonly viewed as diabolic, schemed by Satan and spread by witches and heretics.

The Anglican clergyman Richard Napier, who doubled as a doctor and specialised in healing those unquiet of mind, found that many who consulted him were suffering from religious despair, the dread of damnation aroused by Calvinist Puritanism, the seductions of Satan, or fear of bewitchment. Unclean spirits were to be treated by spiritual means: amongst Catholics, the performance of masses, exorcism, or pilgrimage to a shrine, like that at Gheel in the Netherlands, where Saint Dymphna exercised singular healing powers. The insane were also cared for in religious houses. Protestants like Napier preferred prayer, Bible-reading, and counsel.

---

<sup>716</sup> Wikipedia, Witchcraft [Online] Available from: <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Witchcraft> [Accessed: 28 May 2014]

The witch craze which gathered momentum across Europe from the late fifteenth century, peaking around 1650, likewise viewed uncontrolled speech and behaviour as symptoms of satanic malice directed by witches who had compacted with the Devil. In the conflagration of heresy-accusations and burnings stoked by the Reformation and Counter-Reformation, false doctrine and delusion formed two sides of the same coin: the mad were judged to be possessed, and religious adversaries were deemed out of their mind. *Believers themselves personally experienced madness and despair as indications of sin, diabolical possession, or a lost soul.* A high proportion of the autobiographical writings of mad people have been religious.

The bloody excesses of witch- and heresy-hunting, where over 200,000 people, mainly women, were executed during the witch craze, eventually bred official and public scepticism about demoniacal possession. An early medical expression of this doubt is contained in the *De Praestigiis Daemonum* of Johannes Weyer, a medical officer from Arnhem in the Netherlands<sup>717</sup>. Weyer warned how readily illness in the old, the solitary, the ignorant, could be mistaken for witchcraft. The Devil could indeed influence human behaviour, Weyer conceded, but since his power was ultimately limited by God, those he was capable of afflicting were melancholics and others prone to disturbances of the imagination. Witches fantasised the enormities to which they confessed, and their imaginings were the products of hallucinatory drugs or dreams. At that time, Anglican leaders questioned supposed instances of demonic possession, fearing that such sensations played into the hands of Papists and Puritans: their manifestations were put down instead to fraud or the self-deluding fancies of zealots and the vulgar.

For the same reasons, the Anglican Church ceased to make use of exorcism. Physicians also expressed their doubts, not generally about the possibility of supernaturally induced madness as such, but about its proof in the particular instance.

Edward Jorden and three other doctors were summoned in 1603 to testify in the case of Elizabeth Jackson, arraigned on a charge of bewitching the 14-year-old Mary Glover. The latter had begun to suffer from fits so fearful that all that were about her supposed that she would die; she had become speechless and temporarily blind, and her left side was anaesthetised and paralysed. Glover had first been treated by physicians from the Royal College, but when she failed to respond, they deemed, perhaps all too predictably, that there

---

<sup>717</sup> Johann Weyer (1515 – 1588) was a Dutch physician, occultist and demonologist. His most influential work is *De Praestigiis Daemonum et Incantationibus ac Venificiis* (On the Illusions of the Demons and on Spells and Poisons, 1563).

was something beyond natural in it. Jorden demurred, however, arguing for disease, and he defended his medical explanation in a book whose title staked his claims<sup>718</sup>:

*A Briefe Discourse of a Disease Called the Suffocation of the Mother. Written uppon occasion which hath beene of late taken thereby, to suspect possession of an evill spirit, or some such like supernaturall power. Wherein is declared that divers strange actions and passions of the body of man, which in the common opinion are imputed to the Divill, have their true natural causes, and do accompany this disease (1603).*

Jorden named Glover's condition the 'suffocation of the mother' (i.e. matrix or womb), or simply the 'mother': that is, 'hysteria'. Such symptoms as digestive blockages and feelings of suffocation pointed to a uterine pathology. Relying on Galen's teachings, he argued that irregularities of the womb bred vapours which wafted through the body, inducing physical disorders in the extremities, the abdomen, and even the brain, thereby producing the paroxysms, convulsive dancing, etc., so often misattributed to possession, yet properly explained by 'the suffocation of the mother'. Jorden's prime concern was to establish a natural explanation. Medical interventions like Jorden's could exonerate a woman from being judged the Devil's disciple, and her life might thus be spared. Its downside might then be to draw down on her the charge of being guilty of imposture, thus being a fake witch. In later centuries, hysterical women were stigmatised much as witches had been, though they escaped legal penalties: misogyny remained, only the diagnosis changed.

The Thirty Years War (1618-1648) and the Civil Wars in Britain (1642-51) stirred strong reactions against religio-political extremism, condemned as ruinous to public order and personal safety alike. A barrage of invective was unleashed against Anabaptists, Ranters, Antinomians (those who believed that the Holy Spirit resided within them and that 'to the pure all things are pure'), and other self-styled saints who assailed public order in church and state alike. Their anarchic teachings were denounced not just on grounds scriptural, theological, and demonological, but medical, too: these prophets were literally brain-sick, inspired not with the Holy Spirit.

Doctors and their allies pointed to the affinities between the religious fringe and outright lunatics: did not both display glossolalia (speaking in tongues), convulsions, weeping and wailings, and similar symptoms? Enthusiasm was read as a sign of psychopathology. Some likened zeal to epilepsy; a surfeit of black bile was blamed by humoralist doctors; while the

---

<sup>718</sup> Porter, R (2002) *Madness, a brief history*. Oxford University Press, p. 27

new mechanical philosophy suggested that religious swooning and spasms could be inflicted by inflamed fibres, vascular obstructions, or smoky vapours ascending into the head from obstructed guts and clouding the judgement.

On such grounds Thomas Willis, seventeenth-century Anglican, royalist, and coiner of the term “neurology”, thus excluded the Devil: so-called possession was all a matter of defects of the nerves and brain. Especially after 1650, elites thus washed their hands of witchcraft: it was not a Satanic plot but individual sickness or collective hysteria; eighteenth-century magistrates similarly deemed converts who shrieked and swooned at Methodist meetings fit for Bedlam. John Wesley himself, by contrast, upheld belief both in witchcraft and in demonic possession. In England, as late as the 1630s, a physician as distinguished as Sir Thomas Browne might give evidence in court backing the reality of witchcraft. In other parts of Europe, the demonological debates rumbled on longer.

Around 1700, Friedrich Hoffmann, the great medical professor at Halle in Prussia, was at the thick of attempts to resolve this issue in the German-speaking lands. In Jena in 1693 a Dr Ernst Heinrich Wedel advanced the claim that spectres are fictitious representations, against the law of nature. Hoffmann, for his part, stated that the Devil acted upon witches through the animal spirits, and one of his students reaffirmed the Devil's influence over both the mind and the body. In the Dutch Republic, France, and Britain, all prominent physicians by Hoffmann's time explained religious melancholy wholly naturalistically.

Referring to the visions of Quakers and other sectaries, Dr Nicholas Robinson, an avid Newtonian, claimed they were mere madness, and arose from the stronger impulses of a warm brain. Dr Richard Mead's *Medica Sacra* (1749) provided rational explanations for possession, aghast at the survival of popular belief in the workings of Satan. In his *Zoonomia* (1794) and elsewhere, he blamed the Wesleyans for preaching hellfire and damnation: many theatrical preachers among the Methodists successfully inspire this terror, and live comfortably upon the folly of their hearers. In this kind of madness the poor patients frequently commit suicide. Himself an unbeliever, Darwin cited case histories of wretched sufferers whose scruples had plunged them into religious madness, and thence to despair and death.

The witch-hunts resulted from a marriage of traditional popular belief in the supernatural with the learned demonology advanced by Protestant and Counter-Reformation theology, Renaissance magic, and renewed anti-heresy crusades. From the mid-seventeenth century

the ruling orders were giving such teachings up: not only did they seem irrational and pre-scientific, but they had failed to provide guarantees for social order. Witches ceased to be prosecuted and began to be patronised, though it was a case of 'new witches for old', with the new scapegoats including beggars, criminals, and vagrants.

John Locke wrote to insist upon *The Reasonableness of Christianity* (1694): even religion now had to be rational. This pathologisation of religious madness led Enlightenment free-thinkers to pathologise religiosity at large. In effect, this was also, much later, Freud's<sup>719</sup> position, which saw God as an illusion, faith wish-fulfilment, and belief, though all too real, was a mental projection satisfying neurotic needs, to be explained in terms of the sublimation of suppressed sexuality or of the death wish. In reducing religion to psychopathology, Freud was echoing the more biting of the *philosophes*, like Voltaire and Diderot, who adjudged Christian beliefs the morbid secretion of sick brains.

These days, while the Churches continue to accept, in principle, the reality of visions, spirit possession, and exorcism, they are profoundly suspicious of credulity and deception. The Roman Catholic or Anglican who claims to be assailed by the Devil has become an embarrassment. His priest may try to persuade him that such doctrines are merely metaphorical; and, if he persists, he may be urged to see a psychotherapist. As just shown, opposition to religious models of madness was largely expressed through the concepts and language of medicine. In time, doctors replaced clergy in handling the insane. It is to medical theories of abnormal thought and behaviour that we now turn.<sup>720</sup>

#### **4.7.1.3 The Weapons of Witchcraft**

Confusion, chaos, emotional manipulation, inattentiveness and probing the soul for information are all common weapons of witchcraft.

Chaos is the complete lack of peace. When witchcraft operates there is a release of chaos, confusion and turmoil into a person's life. It is also difficult to hold the attention of the person under the influence of witchcraft. Many times people under the assignment of witchcraft are indeed very intelligent. They look good and sound good, but at times are not stable when they are under the spiritual influence of witchcraft. In fact, they often act like schizophrenics

---

<sup>719</sup> Sigmund Freud (1856 – 1939) was an Austrian neurologist who became known as the founding father of psychoanalysis. Psychoanalysis remains influential within psychotherapy, within some areas of psychiatry, and across the humanities.

<sup>720</sup> Porter, R (2002) *Madness, a brief history*. Oxford University Press, pp. 17-33

(without the hearing of voices) because they are with you one minute, holding an intelligent conversation, and the next minute they have drifted out into Wonderland. The third weapon of witchcraft is strong confusion. Witchcraft can be accurately described as a spiritual force that releases strong confusion against an individual's mind.

Another weapon of spiritual witchcraft is probing the soul for information, particularly hurts, wounds, scars, discouragement and rebellion. The spirit of witchcraft's purpose is to advance its own causes while controlling the person. Witchcraft will try to infiltrate one's life through the emotions. It knows how to pull on and manipulate one's emotions and will use them as a weapon against the person.

Manipulation of the soul is another weapon of witchcraft. The spirit of witchcraft uses tears to pull on the victims emotions, to manipulate him in order to make him feel sorry for the person. Spiritual discernment operate through the born again spirit of a person, not through the emotions. Spiritual discernment can be blocked by compassion through the operation of witchcraft in the emotions of the individual.

Isolation is a solid weapon of witchcraft. Witchcraft needs to separate and isolate its victim from the influence of friends and family, and anyone who can speak truth into the victim's life, in order to be most effective. And it is done chiefly through strife. One who is controlled feels the loss of personal identity and self-esteem. Depression and fatigue quickly follow as the super-spiritual controller gives abnormal attention to those she desires to manipulate.

The force of witchcraft will cause people to lose their individual identities. A person's identity is who he is, what he is all about, his focus in life, core values, purpose, goals, aspirations, life experiences, education and interrelationships. Those influenced by witchcraft will begin to wonder who they are. They doubt their unique purpose and role in life. Witchcraft will make a person feel like he is out of place and have no personal value as he watches his self-esteem disappear.

Sickness is a key weapon of witchcraft. When someone is battling witchcraft he might start getting severe headaches or feel like he is choking or cannot breathe. Fatigue is a much-used weapon of witchcraft. Witchcraft drains the life and energy right out of a person. Witchcraft uses time as another weapon: the time thief. It will go out of its way to control and waste a person's time.



Witchcraft uses soul ties to control its victim. If witchcraft can hook a person's emotions, then they can gain a soul tie with the person. When you have sexual relations with someone, for example, there is a soul tie, emotional bonding, that is generated as the two fleshs become one<sup>721</sup>. Sexual relations outside of marriage create unhealthy soul ties, used by the devil.<sup>722</sup>

Witchcraft uses false prophesy, dreams and visions to deceive and control others; the introduction of hidden agendas. Witchcraft is a great tool with which to manipulate. God may speak prophetically to you through others but in most cases (not always) it will be to confirm what He has already laid on your heart. Prophecies, dreams and visions have to be tested by the Word of God.

*Beloved, do not put faith in every spirit, but prove (test) the spirits to discover whether they proceed from God; for many false prophets have gone forth into the world.*

*1 John 4:1*

Many controlling prophecies are full of fear and are not from God. He never releases a spirit of fear at us. The spirit of witchcraft, however, will use fear as a tool to manipulate and control. If a prophecy is spoken by the will of Man alone, outside of the unction (permission) of the Holy Spirit, that prophecy is a curse and the operation of witchcraft. Behind all witchcraft divination is the spirit of Baal (a spirit of divination). Those who operate in witchcraft have difficulty with sexual sin and perversion somewhere in their lives. There is no true holiness, but only a form of godliness and they will never speak of sin and holiness.

The characteristics of prophetic witchcraft are betrayal (sexual sin and adultery), lying, compromise (strengthening evil doers), avoidance of confrontation of sin that hinders repentance (none return from wickedness) and an unclean spirit. Prophetic divination release only confusion and will never lead a person closer to God.

True prophetic operations will expose sin for the purpose of deliverance and to keep someone from being ensnared by deception.<sup>723</sup>

Witchcraft spirits gain their strength and sense of security by controlling others. A person with a witchcraft spirit will feel helpless without someone to control and many times will go into deep depression as a result of it. The religious spirit and the witchcraft spirit are close

---

<sup>721</sup> Genesis 2:24

<sup>722</sup> Clark, J (2003) Exposing Spiritual Witchcraft. Florida: Spirit of Life Publishing, pp. 5-36

<sup>723</sup> Clark, J (2003) Exposing Spiritual Witchcraft. Florida: Spirit of Life Publishing, pp. 39-71

cousins. A religious spirit will not let you advance or grow in the Lord. It will keep you bound in religious tradition and works, not freedom in the Spirit. Witchcraft wants to advance its selfish cause at any price. When a person refuses to submit to the projected witchcraft, only then will it have no further use for the person. It will discard the person and begin looking for its next victim. Beware of its final murderous attack, because witchcraft likes to kill what it can't control.<sup>724</sup>

The spirit of Jezebel operates in witchcraft. Jezebel is a controlling manipulating spirit of witchcraft. Witchcraft spirits will attack any person who wants to hold them accountable. Jezebel will say things like 'you are non-loving and mean'. People operating in the spirit of Jezebel (controlling witchcraft) seldom repent of their harmful actions and can be very brazen and outwardly aggressive to cover up their insecurities.<sup>725</sup>

Witchcraft plants seeds of deception in the mind through vain imaginations. The release of those imaginations causes confusion, which is a sure sign of witchcraft's influence. Witchcraft works against the mind to release all sorts of evil thoughts and imaginations in a sinister attempt to wear the person down and make him unstable. The mind must be fortified with spiritual truth in order to guard against the spirit of witchcraft.

Witchcraft seeks to get a person out of faith and walking in doubt and fear. This is a powerful tool of witchcraft, used to attack you through emotions. The voice of witchcraft will release thoughts of doubt into a person's mind. Witchcraft will throw the following thoughts: 'nobody loves you, nobody cares about you'. Witchcraft will project feelings of rejection and worthlessness. Witchcraft paints a dark and gloomy portrait of life in one's mind. It influences you through your soul, especially your emotions.<sup>726</sup>

#### **4.7.1.4 Witchcraft and Sex**

Initially, human sexuality is a matter of biology, with regard to the differences in DNA, and to physiology between males and females. It also refers to gender, in the sense of men and women, and it is obvious that a person will play distinctive social, cultural, religious and family roles as a consequence of being male or female. In addition, human sexuality refers

---

<sup>724</sup> Ibid., pp.133-136

<sup>725</sup> Ibid., p. 140

<sup>726</sup> Ibid., pp. 143-156

to the behaviour, motives, emotions, and values which result in human reproduction and sensual pleasure.

Sex in the ancient world was directly tied to religion and mystery. The ancient worldviews and religions were filled with sexual imagery and ritual. The religious art of New Guinea, Polynesia, Indonesia, Africa, and South America is as pornographic as that of the temples of India and Japan. The cosmologies of most ancient cultures tied sexuality and reproduction to the creation and birth of the universe. The gods and goddesses of the ancient world were sexual. According to ancient mythology, they engaged in seduction, jealousy, rape and brief affairs on a regular basis. Their sexual appetite included each other, mortals, and animals, both mythical and real. Their sexual activities were homosexual, heterosexual and bisexual. Temple prostitutes existed in every ancient religion. Sexual ritual assured fertility, prosperity, and peace between warring peoples by re-enacting the myths of cosmology.

The sexual drive in the ancient world was focused in two primary areas: sexual procreation and sexual recreation. Pro-creational sex was ritualised in religion because of its creative potential and was legitimised in marriage largely as a way to insure paternity, at least in patrilineal cultures. In many cultures, marriage was not about companionship. Therefore, a mate was not a romantic object or companion. For example, in the ancient Greek world, wives were beaten and raped until they produced children, upon which time the role of mother was the primary role in their lives. This was particularly true in Spartan relationships. The husband used his wife for sexual reproduction and little else. Marital sex was seen as important for offspring, inheritance, and lineage. This sexuality was heterosexual, for obvious reasons, but did not necessarily involve companionship. Recreational sex was tied to companionship and was generally separated from marriage. Among the ancient Greeks, an ideal companionship, which included sexual relationships, was between an older man and an adolescent boy.<sup>727</sup>

In various African spiritual traditions, female genitalia are signified by or correspond to vegetables (the calabash), animals (the cow), technical objects (the anvil), colours (red and green), and abstract shapes (the circle and the triangle). So sacred and mysterious is the vagina that in numerous cultures, men are not permitted to touch it with their hands. Female breasts, sometimes compared to calabashes (which signify containment of the cosmos on a macrocosmic plane and containment of sacred beverages and foods on a microcosmic

---

<sup>727</sup> Stokes, H B, Sex and Religion [Online] Available from: [http://hbrucestokes.com/images/Kesher\\_-\\_Sex\\_and\\_Religion.pdf](http://hbrucestokes.com/images/Kesher_-_Sex_and_Religion.pdf) [Accessed: 7 August 2014]

plane), profoundly connect women to female divinities, particularly those ruling the waters. Male genitalia are signified by or correspond to millet, the dog and the ram, the spear, yellow and white, and pillars of mud and stone. As with female organs, male genitalia connect men to phallic deities, such as the Yoruba “òrìsà Esù” and “Oìsà a Oko”.

Unsurprisingly, menstrual blood and semen are regarded as powerful, magical substances. Generally speaking, menstrual blood is greatly feared by males, who often refer to it in negative terms; it can also be dangerous to other women. The Dogon, for example, compare it to the use of vulgar language. For the Dogon, moreover, the origin of menstruation may be traced to either the punishment of a primordial goddess by a male deity disturbed by her possession of a clitoris (which was considered masculine) or to the rape of the goddess by one of her offspring, both acts resulting in a flow of “bad blood.” In a majority of African cultures, menstruating women are secluded from their communities and are considered dangerous. The Dogon, Azande (Sudan, Democratic Republic of the Congo, Central African Republic), and other peoples maintain that contact with a menstruating woman can bring about illness, pollution, and even death. It can render magic ineffective and transform order into chaos. Nevertheless, the Dogon, like the Zulu and Yoruba, also hold that menstrual blood can be a source of potent magic.

Although semen occasionally is thought to be a dangerous substance, as among the Suku of the Democratic Republic of the Congo, it is more often than not regarded as beneficial. The Yaka believe that semen contains a vital force called mooyi that nourishes the bones of offspring, promotes physical strength, and heals illness. The Koma of Ethiopia, Sudan, and Zambia believe that semen nourishes the child growing in the womb, just as the mother's milk will nourish it upon birth; as a food, semen is referred to as bayab, or “porridge.” The Tabwa of the Democratic Republic of the Congo associate semen with the revered culture-bringer Mbidi Kiluwe, and the Yoruba, who regard semen as stimulating intellect, associate the substance with the creator deity Obàtálá.

Among some African spiritual traditions, men frequently practice traditional medicine, magic and what some have described as witchcraft. Their actions often focus on sexuality and include enhancing sexual prowess, healing impotence and taking vengeance on other males who might engage in intercourse with their wives. To increase sexual drive and especially to achieve long-lasting erections, they tie gbaga, the fruit of the palm tree, to their waists and pray, “You are gbaga. May I be very potent sexually”. To cure impotence, or “imazigba”, a man may rub his penis with a ritually prepared ointment, which is believed to transform

magically into seminal fluid and restore potency. To punish an adulterer, after eating an antidote and surreptitiously having his wife do the same, a man might rub his penis with a substance made of moti, a purple-flowered plant believed to produce venereal disease, so that any man having sexual contact with his wife might become infected and perish. Deeply concerned with male beauty, some men powder their faces with a mixture containing dried chameleon, which is thought to enhance attractiveness magically. For the same reason, they wear leather pouches around their necks containing seeds, roots, and barks deemed to exert magical influence.

Beyond this type of spiritual union exists another that may bear an even closer resemblance to erotic relationships: that between a worshipper and a goddess. This type of union - which one finds especially in the Mami Wata cult of Togo and Benin and which has become increasingly central in the African-diasporic religion of Vodou - may even be formalised with an elaborate ceremony, complete with marriage contract. Included in this contract is an agreement that the worshipper must periodically abstain from sexual relations with his or her mortal partner to be ready to receive his divine partner. The worshipper typically creates a shrine in which this divine union may occur. Among the people of the Niger River Delta, women who experience problems with relationships, fertility, illness, finances, and other matters have traditionally wed one of the deities or spirits of the waters, such as the male spirit Anji.<sup>728</sup>

#### **4.7.1.5 Witchcraft and Music**

One of the greatest victories of the occult movement was to infiltrate the music world. The music that was performed during Druid ceremonies, had a "rock" beat, and they knew that when certain chords were struck, it acted as a hypnotic suggestion to stir rebellion. Witches have their own language, and some rock songs have incorporated these coded incantations. On the surface, what sounds like a bunch of strange words is actually an intentionally written lyric of hidden meaning.

---

<sup>728</sup> Machacek D W and Wilcox M M (2003) *Sexuality and the World's Religions*. California: ABC-CLIO Inc., pp. 25-27

Acid rocker Jimi Hendrix said in an interview with Life magazine (October, 1969) that:

*Music is a spiritual thing of its own. You can hypnotize people with music, and when you get them at their weakest point you can preach into their subconscious whatever you want to say.*

Jimmy Page, of the rock group Led Zeppelin, who owned one of the largest occult bookstores in England, had purchased the mansion of Edward Aleister Crowley (1875-1947), one of the most famous Satanists of all time, who called himself *the most wickedest man in the world*. The mansion is said to be inhabited by demons. Page referred to Crowley as an *unrecognized genius of twentieth century thinking*.

Band member Robert Plant, who wrote the song *Stairway to Heaven*, was also interested in the occult and said that the song just came together, as if he was being driven by some "spiritual force." He said: *Somebody pushed my pen, I think*. It became one of the biggest selling records in music history, and is still one of the most requested songs on rock format radio stations. Some of the words are typically of witch language and having a double-meaning. The line: *And when you wind on down the road, the shadow's taller than your soul*, means that Satan is supposedly to be stronger than man. Page said it was taken from the writings of a Druid priest, hundreds of years ago, which was based on the Bible.

The song also used a process known as backward masking, which is accomplished when a phrase is recorded on tape, played backwards, and then recorded again on the master tape. One segment which says<sup>729</sup>:

*Yes there are two paths you can go by, but in the long run, there's still time to change the road you're on. And it makes me wonder..., played in reverse, says: There's no escaping it, oh it's my sweet Satan, the one whose path makes me sad, whose power is Satan.*

Other parts of the song, when played in reverse, say<sup>730</sup>:

*I live for Satan ... The Lord turns me off ... Here is to my sweet Satan ... There's power in Satan ... Take the 666.*

---

<sup>729</sup> Stuart, D J, Jesus is Savior [Online] Available from: <http://www.jesus-is-savior.com/Evils%20in%20America/Rock-n-Roll/witchcraft.htm> [Accessed: 7 August 2014]

<sup>730</sup> Ibid.

The abovementioned song is just one of numerous examples of music containing backward masking. There is some evidence that suggests that the human brain can decode a recorded message that is played backwards, even though the person isn't consciously aware of what's being said.

Backward masking works on the principle of reversed speech. The unconscious mind is fully active all the time, thinking, processing, observing, recording, remembering – all kinds of processes. In psychology, the most significant feature of the unconscious mind is that it has a fabulous memory. However, it has one extraordinarily valuable attribute: it cannot lie.

Research determines that many mental processes can be mapped to certain points on the brain itself. Although some people turn out to deviate from the norm, the general rule that unconscious processes belong to the right brain while most conscious processes are in the left brain is fairly well known. On the right side is natural art, holistic understanding, intuition, psychic and spiritual connections. On the left side is math and science, a lot of scheming and planning, conscious control of the body including a speech centre, and of course lying.

While the right hemisphere was always assumed to be silent, it appears that there are speech centres on both sides. The fact that the right side demonstrates unconscious communication also proves that both speech centres are active. There was simply no way to discover this prior to the discovery of reversed speech. For most people, then, the unconscious speaks through the right side of the brain, although the power to actually initiate speech remains on the left side.

Things on the left side of the body can be connected to the right side of the brain, and vice-versa. Given this cross-wiring effect, it is not entirely surprising that speech coming from the wrong brain hemisphere comes out backwards. How this works is still somewhat of a mystery, but even more mysterious, even miraculous, is the fact that the backward speech is blended together with the forward speech so perfectly that under normal circumstances one can't tell it is there at all. This is something that cannot be accomplished with any tool other than the human brain itself.<sup>731</sup>

Satanic backward masking is not a fad of years ago. It is still relevant and very alive today. The Jonas Brothers were an evangelical wholesome boy band. Their song, "Kids of the Future" played backwards praises Satan, saying: "*I speak for Satan, Satan, Satan. My*

---

<sup>731</sup> Welch, K, Reversed Speech [Online] Available from: <http://www.ken-welch.com/ReversedSpeech.html> [Accessed: 7 August 2014]

*sweet forsaken Satan, Satan*". Walt Disney offers parents a seemingly wholesome group of boys, better than the rest, who don't use alcohol, illegal drugs, nor tobacco; and they all wear purity rings as a vow to abstain from premarital sex until they marry. It all seems so plausible, real and out of the ordinary. But it's all a big deception, because these boys are producing subliminal hard-core Satan worship, which cannot be denied after listening to Kids of the Future played backwards.

Children are led into the Luciferian religion via rock music. This is all necessary in order to prepare the masses of this world to receive the Antichrist when he comes. Aleister Crowley was a God-hating, bi-sexual, heroin-addict, Luciferian-worshipper, 33rd degree Freemason, drunkard, fornicator, and child-sacrificer. Crowley's books and writings on the occult are still greatly revered today by Luciferians. Crowley boasted of being "The Beast," and was infamous for making contact with demons. The Beatles, Led Zeppelin, and Ozzy Osbourne to name a few, openly praise and honour Aleister Crowley.

Aleister Crowley is probably the Black Magician who is the most popular foreground figure in Hollywood and the music industry today. He is considered to be the one who invented backward messages on music recordings used by The Beatles, Led Zeppelin and The Rolling Stones, to name but a few. A great percentage of the rock/rap/hip hop musicians of the 50's, 60's, 70's, 80's and 90's are highly influenced by this occult, black magician. The satanic influence is something that is programmed into the artist's mind by the Illuminati to serve a specific goal.<sup>732</sup>

Suicide has increased 300% since 1950. The teenage suicide rate in America is the highest of all industrialised nations. And according to the National Education Association, *teenage suicides are linked to depression fuelled by fatalistic music and lyrics*.<sup>733</sup>

In 1988, Dr Mark Rosenberg, addressing the American Society of Suicidology, said, *It was thought that the way to prevent suicides was to treat depression. It's not the case with these kids. Rather than being clinically depressed, these young suicide victims are impulsive, acting out fantasies*.<sup>734</sup> The fantasies acting on these young people are from rock music. Dr Paul King, medical director of the adolescent programme at Charter Lakeside Hospital, in

---

<sup>732</sup> Stuart, D J, Jesus is Savior [Online] Available from: [http://www.jesus-is-savior.com/Evils%20in%20America/Rock-n-Roll/jonas\\_brothers.htm](http://www.jesus-is-savior.com/Evils%20in%20America/Rock-n-Roll/jonas_brothers.htm) [Accessed: 7 August 2014]

<sup>733</sup> Dial the Truth Ministries, Rock Music [Online] Available from: <http://www.av1611.org/rockm.html> [Accessed: 11 August 2014]

<sup>734</sup> Ibid.



Memphis Tennessee, says more than 80% of his patients are there because of rock music. He adds, *the lyrics become a philosophy of life, a religion.*<sup>735</sup>

Charles Manson, who claimed inspiration from the Beatles, used music to gain satanic control over his followers, who went so far as murder under his command. Art Linkletter blamed secret messages in rock music for the death of his daughter in 1969. Dr Howard Hanson, a director of the famous Eastman School of Music said<sup>736</sup>:

*Music is made up of many ingredients and according to the proportions of these components, it can be soothing or invigorating, ennobling or vulgarizing, it has the power for evil as well as for good.*

Satan has commanded a vicious attack aimed at the young of this generation. The Bible, in Ezekiel 28 (KJV), describes Satan before his rebellion and fall, verse 13:

*Thou hast been in Eden the garden of God; every precious stone was thy covering, the sardius, topaz, and the diamond, the beryl, the onyx, and the jasper, the sapphire, the emerald, and the carbuncle, and gold: the workmanship of thy tabrets and of thy pipes was prepared in thee in the day that thou wast created.*

Tabrets and pipes are musical instruments. Satan is connected with music and he knows the awesome power of music.

<sup>3</sup> *But even if our Gospel (the glad tidings) also be hidden (obscured and covered up with a veil that hinders the knowledge of God), it is hidden [only] to those who are perishing and obscured [only] to those who are spiritually dying and veiled [only] to those who are lost.* <sup>4</sup> *For the god of this world has blinded the unbelievers' minds [that they should not discern the truth], preventing them from seeing the illuminating light of the Gospel of the glory of Christ (the Messiah), Who is the Image and Likeness of God.*

2 Corinthians 4: 3-4

---

<sup>735</sup> Ibid.

<sup>736</sup> Ibid.

One of the greatest attacks Satan ever directed against the human mind is rock music. Mick Jagger of the Rolling Stones, who Newsweek magazine calls the Lucifer of rock, said years ago<sup>737</sup>,

*we've had their bodies . . . and now we want their minds.*

Satan knows that if he can capture a person's mind he can control the person. In San Antonio, Texas, a sixteen-year-old boy, while listening to Pink Floyd's album The Wall, went into a trancelike state. Without warning, he suddenly jumped up and brutally stabbed his aunt to death. According to the police report, there were no drugs involved, only music. The boy claimed the music hypnotised him and he does not even remember the killing.

Satan is using a powerful and subtle form of hypnosis to capture the mind. The key to hypnosis is repetition and the main ingredient of rock music is repetition; an overwhelming, repetitive, driving beat. That steady, repetitive beat can place the listener's mind into a dangerous state of suggestive hypnosis.

In October 1984, nineteen-year-old John McCollum shot himself in the head, while listening to Ozzy Osbourne sing "Suicide Solution" which contains the words<sup>738</sup>:

*Evil thoughts and evil doings/Cold, alone, you hang in ruins/Thought that you'd escape the reaper/You can't escape the Master Keeper/ . . . /Where to hide, suicide is the only way out.*

Jimi Hendrix, among rock's greatest guitarists, who choked to death on his own vomit in 1970 due to a drug overdose, said<sup>739</sup>,

*Atmospheres are going to come through music because music is a spiritual thing of its own. You can hypnotize people with music and when you get people at the weakest point you can preach into their subconscious whatever you want to say.*

---

<sup>737</sup> Ibid.

<sup>738</sup> Ibid.

<sup>739</sup> Ibid.

Homosexual rock star Little Richard, said<sup>740</sup>,

*Some rock and roll groups stand in a circle and drink cups of blood. Some get on their knees and pray to the devil. Rock and roll hypnotizes and controls our senses.*

As of February 2011, Britney Spears has employed the Satanist director Jonas Akerlund to film the video for her new number one song "Hold It Against Me". Jonas Akerlund has publicly worn clothing with images of Satan, the sigil (the common symbol of Satanism) of Baphomet, and has incorporated representations of Satan and Satanism or Luciferianism in many of his past video work, such as in Lady Gaga's "Paparazzi" and "Telephone" with Beyonce Knowles, Ozzy Osbourne's "Let Me Hear You Scream," and the porno music video for Rammstein's "Pussy."

He was a member of the Swedish black metal band Bathory. It was named after the Hungarian Countess Elizabeth Bathory, who was the most prolific female serial killer in history and sexually molested and murdered over 600 young women and children to bathe in their blood to obtain eternal youth. One of the band's many Satanic songs is "Satan My Master." It seems Akerlund is aiding the major music industry to help brainwash people into accepting the corruption of the New World Order Illuminati.

Few people realise the connection between Nazism, Heavy Metal, violent crime, pornography, paedophilia, torture, homosexuality, sadism, Satanism and the music and movie industries. There's an entire underground occult (hidden) culture of evil that most people are not aware of in this world.<sup>741</sup> Rock music attacks the nervous system, affecting one's emotional state.

Heavy Metal rocker and known Satanist, Ozzy Osbourne, has featured Pan on all of his recent album covers (2000, 2001, 2002, 2003, 2004, 2005, 2006, 2007 and 2008). The Rock 'N' Roll industry is infamous for worshipping Pan, who is the very embodiment of Rock music. Pan represents Satan, which is what the ever-so-popular Satanic hand sign shows - allegiance to the Beast, the coming Antichrist.<sup>742</sup>

---

<sup>740</sup> Dial the Truth Ministries, Soft Rock [Online] Available from: <http://www.av1611.org/rockm.html> [Accessed: 11 August 2014]

<sup>741</sup> Stuart, D J, Jesus is Savior [Online] Available from: [http://www.jesus-is-savior.com/Evils%20in%20America/Rock-n-Roll/britney\\_spears\\_hires\\_satanist.htm](http://www.jesus-is-savior.com/Evils%20in%20America/Rock-n-Roll/britney_spears_hires_satanist.htm) [Accessed: 7 August 2014]

<sup>742</sup> Roe, A, The Great god Pan [Online] Available from: [http://www.jesus-is-savior.com/False%20Religions/Wicca%20&%20Witchcraft/pan\\_and\\_crowley.htm](http://www.jesus-is-savior.com/False%20Religions/Wicca%20&%20Witchcraft/pan_and_crowley.htm) [Accessed: 7 August 2014]

Rock music is rock music in all forms; whether it's soft, hard, metal, speed, Christian or grunge. Christian rock, for example, shows no difference between the holy and profane.<sup>743</sup> The highly-respected Professor Alan Bloom, professor of social thought at the University of Chicago, writes in his best-selling book, *The Closing of the American Mind*<sup>744</sup>:

*Rock music has one appeal only, a barbaric appeal to sexual desire—not to a pure, unselfish love, but sexual desire undeveloped and untutored. It acknowledges the first emanations of children's emerging sensuality and addresses them seriously. Young people know that rock has the beat of sexual intercourse.*

Goth music is particularly dangerous, because the lyrics to the music often glamorise killing, brutality, sadism, masochism, paedophilia, torture, freakism and all sorts of heathendom. The music is often characterised by relentless yelling and screaming, freakish embellishments of the voice and evil sounding backgrounds. The magician Criss Angel, has made millions of dollars with his “Mind Freak” series, and he definitely fits in well with the Goth freak culture. Goth is often associated with sexual immorality and paedophilia.

Television is infatuated nowadays with vampires, witchcraft and zombies, all related to Goth subculture. It is sin-centred music. Goth is a degenerate form of subculture that brings with it hate, loneliness, heartache and woe. Goth deliberately crosses all the lines of proper dress, manners, refinement and decency. Goth picks up where Rock 'n' Roll leaves off, offering a course in advanced rebellion, sexual immorality, and Satan worship. The Goth crowd is truly living at the bottom of the barrel of life, right where Satan wants them. Wiccan witches are naturally attracted to Goth, because they are Luciferians themselves, who worship hundreds of pagan deities.<sup>745</sup>

#### 4.7.1.6 Witchcraft and Abuse

Crimes in the name of witchcraft, such as the murder and mutilation of albinos in magic rituals or aggressions against alleged witches, are examples of the violent manifestations of the beliefs and practices of witchcraft in Africa. The belief in witchcraft, widespread across

---

<sup>743</sup> Dial the Truth Ministries, Soft Rock [Online] Available from: <http://www.av1611.org/question/cqok.html> [Accessed: 11 August 2014]

<sup>744</sup> Bloom, A (1987) *The Closing of the American Mind*, New York: Simon & Schuster, p. 73

<sup>745</sup> Stuart, D J, Jesus is Savior [Online] Available from: <http://www.jesus-is-savior.com/Evils%20in%20America/goth.htm> [Accessed: 7 August 2014]

many traditional faiths, is covered by the right of freedom of religion and belief, and recognised by a variety of international and national legal texts.

Crimes against child witches (a child who is supposed to be able to use evil forces to harm others) are common in several African countries, for example the Democratic Republic of Congo (DRC) or Nigeria. A few examples are: in 2000 an Ivorian girl was assassinated by her relatives who accused her of being possessed by an evil spirit; in 2005 an eight-year-old child was tortured by her guardians who feared she was a witch and, in 2010, an adolescent accused of practicing witchcraft was tortured and mutilated by his sister and her boyfriend.

In 2005, a study on cases involving children of African, South Asian and European origin showed that the majority of abuses linked to witchcraft involved Africans. The study revealed that most of the alleged child-witches were between 8 and 14 years old, and that boys and girls were equally at risk. Recent research shows that girls are more at risk of being accused of witchcraft and that the majority of abused children are teenagers aged between 11 and 15.<sup>746</sup>

Accusations of witchcraft are visible manifestations of witchcraft belief. These accusations usually start when problems arise within the family circle. Accusations of practicing witchcraft are normally followed by abuses. The most common types of abuses include<sup>747</sup>:

- *Physical abuses*: beating, burning, cutting, semi-strangulating, or tying up the child; cold water baths; rubbing chili peppers or other substances on the child's genitals.
- *Psychological and emotional abuses*: involving isolation – not letting the child eat with the family or share a room with them – threats of abandonment, labelling the child a witch.
- *Neglect of the child*: refusing to take the child to see a doctor, absences from school, lack of hygienic care, depriving the child of meals or clothes, etc.
- *Sexual abuse*.

---

<sup>746</sup> Garcia, A D (2013) Voodoo, Witchcraft and Human Trafficking in Europe. Research Paper, Policy Development and Evaluation Service, United Nations High Commissioner for Refugees, pp. 1-2

<sup>747</sup> Ibid., pp 3-4

The consequences of the abuses are physical and psychological damages, such as relationship problems or lack of self-confidence. Some children are separated from their abusers and put into the care of social services or orphaned.

Another phenomenon that has so far only been lightly studied is the abuse linked to witchcraft rituals. These abuses, which may include sexual abuses and human sacrifices, are carried out to make the oath ritual more effective. A ritual oath is *a seal placed on an agreement through rituals binding both parties to the terms of the agreement on pain of supernatural retaliation*.<sup>748</sup> Breaking such a pact is believed to incur the anger of the gods and might even jeopardise the victim's life. Victims are strongly persuaded that terrible things such as illness, deaths and even madness will befall them and their families if they don't repay the debt. According to one victim *those who do not respect the pact will be living without a meaning of life, like a snake that drags*.

In September 2001, the torso of a five-year-old African boy was discovered floating in the river Thames. Further investigation showed that the boy was brought expressly from West Africa to be sacrificed in a witchcraft ritual. The boy was poisoned before his body was mutilated and drained of blood by an expert traditional African priest.<sup>749</sup>

#### 4.7.1.7 Witchcraft and the Golden Triangle

The power of imagery is generated in Man's brain. Images are an internal process. The inner sanctuary of yoga is the golden triangle, the "holy of holies", the pyramid or throne is in the brain. It is the mid brain. The golden triangle reaches from the pituitary gland, to the brow chakra, situated in the brain, and then to the throat chakra.

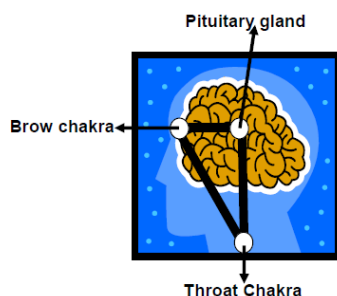


Figure 4.2: The Golden Triangle<sup>750</sup>

---

<sup>748</sup> Nwongu, V (2008) Human trafficking from Nigeria and voodoo. *Any connections?*, La Strada International Newsletter issue 9, Amsterdam, p. 8

<sup>749</sup> Garcia, A D (2013) Voodoo, Witchcraft and Human Trafficking in Europe. Research Paper, Policy Development and Evaluation Service, United Nations High Commissioner for Refugees, pp.7-12

<sup>750</sup> Buys, A, The Tree of Knowledge and Serpent. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished, p. 51

Inside the pyramid or throne are the hypothalamus, thalamus, hippocampus, amygdala and pituitary gland. All these are located in the mid brain, in the seat of the golden pyramid's throne. The golden triangle is a locus for psychic powers of the Kundalini serpent and witchcraft to be released to the inner brain to render the brain at the top of the tree powerless. The entrance is through the third eye – all the energy of the sun, psychic power, the latent power of the soul is released in the opening of the third eye. This is the occultic eye and it opens the eye to the false: the eye of false visions, the false prophet, false imaginations, and often the mouth of the false prophet.

From the third eye into the mid brain the psychic power flows into the hippocampus, known as the limbic system, the storehouse of sensory memory. This, plus the pituitary gland and the hypothalamus, affects almost every function of the body. The five senses are affected and the third eye will affect spiritual seeing, hearing, smelling, touch, taste and discernment. The psychic power affects the five senses and the five lobes of our brain and the Kundalini serpent powers aim to render a person powerless in the mid brain. The mid brain is impacted by emotions, feelings of anger, fear, depression, sexual arousal, pleasure and sadness.

The hippocampus is the temporal lobe of the brain and as psychic power hits the middle brain, severe mental illness can occur. Schizophrenia, depression, mood disorders, Alzheimer's disease, autism, Tourette's syndrome, epileptic seizures, memory disorders, trauma and loss of consciousness can occur. If the Hippocampus is damaged, a person can become a prisoner of the past. This is the organ targeted by satanic mind control programmers. For many of these conditions, there are no medical answers except to medicate or sedate.

The hypothalamus is the temporal lobe. It is also inside the golden pyramid, the throne, and can be rendered powerless by the psychic powers of the Kundalini serpent. It is the temperature control, centre of hot and cold sweats, hunger, appetites, weight gain or loss, sleep, shivers, hearing, memory, visual capacity and reading. The Hypothalamus affects the secretions of the endocrine system and can be affected by the serpent power on the throne of the endocrine systems. The Kundalini serpent comes to kill and destroy the mind of Christ. He wants to render the brain powerless, malfunctioning, to render it passive, believing the false and losing its God-given capabilities.

A believer's inheritance is that he has been given the mind of Christ. The serpent wants to steal from Man's mind his full potential, to render him powerless, cripple him physically and emotionally, to render the believer powerless and make him lose his full potential and to kill the true apostolic/prophetic mind, voice and visions. He comes to bruise Man's head, blank out his mind, and send him into a dream/sleepwalking state.<sup>751</sup>

#### **4.7.1.8 Witchcraft and the Third Yoga Chakras**

In yoga, chakras are called the windows of the soul. They are inner portals to the spirit world through which energy/light can flow. However, these windows can be bolted, barred, locked and covered with shutters or blinds to keep the light out. They are described as cone-shaped wheels of spinning energy, also called discs or plates of light. The seven primary chakras can be classified into three main groups:

LOWER: the root, sacral or spleen chakras.

MIDDLE: solar plexus, heart and throat chakras.

HIGHER: the 6<sup>th</sup> and 7<sup>th</sup> crown (third eye) chakras.

There are also chakras in the hands, the feet and genitals. There are also additional chakras along the spine. There are seven seals of the seven chakras. Seven seals of fire. Kundalini followers declare these seals have locked people up and stopped their knowledge and power to keep people enslaved and ignorant. So Lucifer comes to open the seals that are not to be opened and releases people into total destruction. The opening of the seals can be used in black magic to kill. Fire is released into the seven chakras, the sun recognised by occultists as the source of all energy in the galaxy.<sup>752</sup>

Based on the Hindu system, the yoga chakras, in summary, are as follows<sup>753</sup>:

---

<sup>751</sup> Ibid., pp. 51-55

<sup>752</sup> Ibid., p. 86

<sup>753</sup> Ibid., pp. 90-91



<b>Chakra</b>	<b>Description</b>
MULUDHARA, ROOT, BASIC, SEED or ROOT support chakra	At the base of the spine. It has four petals or spokes. It is connected to the element earth. The coccyx bone, sacrum bone – the sacred bone of witchcraft. This is the alpha of Lucifer and affects the legs, arms, feet, rectum, bones and immune system.
SVADISHTHANA / SWADHISHTHANA, SACRAL, PELVIC, GENITAL	Or 'own abode' chakra at the root of the genitals. It has six petals or spokes. It is connected to the element water. The spleen chakra, it affects the sexual organs, colon, urinary tract, small intestine, pelvis, lower back, immune system, body fluids and lymphatic drainage.
MANIPURA / MANIPURAKA	Or 'fullness of jewels' chakra at the level of the navel. It has ten petals or spokes. It is connected to the element fire. The solar pelvis chakra – affects the adrenal glands, stomach, muscles, liver, spleen, gall bladder, pancreas, metabolism, digestive tract, lumber vertebrae, and lungs.
ANAHAT	Heart or 'unstuck melody' chakra at the heart centre. It has 12 petals or spokes. There is also the HRIT heart chakra which has eight petals or spokes. It is connected to the element air. At this level, the person becomes an occult mind reader and enters the spirit world not the world of God. The petals are called the energy of love, loyalty, sincerity and forgiveness. It affects the heart, thymus gland, immune system, chest, skin, blood, circulatory system, endocrine system.
VISUDDHA	Throat or 'complete purity' chakra. It has 16 petals or spokes. It is connected to the element ether or space. The meaning of Visuddha is 'purification'. It affects the throat, vocal cords, neck, bronchial tubes, communication, thyroid and parathyroid glands – false oracles, false prophetic, false mouthpiece, dignity, pride, and honesty of Hinduism.
The TALU / LALANA chakra	Is in the roof of the mouth and has 12 or 64 petals or spokes.
AJNA/SAVIKALPA / SAMADHI chakra	Or 'gurus command' at the brow. The door is open for clairvoyance and the gateway to mental and physical power, the psychic realms and false power to move in the spirit, the past is nullified and the person has no need to repent. It has 96 petals or spokes. It connects to the spirit. This is also called INDU chakra. It has 16 petals or spokes and connects to the mind. It affects the pituitary gland, eyes, ears, nose, sinuses, and spinal cord. There is a pyramid of muscle fibres on the bridge of the nose – it is called the protection of the power to the brain – releasing the golden light of wisdom.
SAHASRARA- PADMA/ NIRVAKELPA/SAMADHI, NIRVANA	Or 'thousand-petaled or spoked' chakra. This chakra is the omega of Satan – the communion with the Shiva god at the crown. Shiva the destroyer, the light and power are released through the fontanel bones The little fountain. Kundalini allegedly cures a person and he comes to self-realisation and gives birth to the re-born dead man who is changed to meet the rising sun – Lucifer. The person can then experience astral travel into the seven heavens and seven planets. It is located on or above the head. It is technically not a chakra at all but a summation of all the chakras. The crown chakra, the crown of Lucifer, the crown of death, the gateway to higher consciousness. It affects the cerebral cortex, brain, skull, central nervous system, pineal gland, - affects hormones and melatonin for sleep. There is also a chakra called GURU which sits in this place. It has 12 petals or spokes. The crown chakra is associated with the pineal gland and the pituitary gland, which form a psychic link with the 6 <sup>th</sup> and 7 <sup>th</sup> chakras called the ANTAHKARANA psychic bridge.

The third chakra is located between the sternum bone and the navel. This chakra in Indian Tantra is called the place of gems. It is described as having ten petals or spokes. The number ten in numerology is reduced to the number one. One symbolises the beginning “as in the beginning was the Word.” Every word begins with the thought. So it is the unconscious thought that proceeds through communication. It is also the number representing communication with the astral world.

It is associated with the colours red, black, dark green or dark blue, but also to gold and yellow, which represent intellectual thinking. Yellow is between the red of stop and the green of go on the chakras. Its symbol is a red triangle. The musical note for this chakra is D and the mantra “ram”. It corresponds to the element fire – sun, solar fire. This is the navel or solar plexus chakra, hence the alternative name “Nabhi”. It also rules electricity and the firing of man’s nervous system that allows our cortex to determine a person’s behaviour, thus his willpower.

The area of the brain associated with this chakra is the neocortex, which is the beginning of higher mental functioning. The third chakra rules the mental portion of the brain of our consciousness and governs thinking, psychic power, intellectual capacity and the power/freedom that is gained by our minds. This is the power chakra, for it governs Man’s sense of self; the power that he has within to govern his destiny. If a person is too YIN (female energy), they may feel powerless, too YANG (male energy) they may tend to be too aggressive or greedy.

This chakra relates to the liver, gall bladder, stomach, spleen and pancreas, it regulates how centred an individual feels and influences the mental faculties controlling motivation. It maintains his sense of self. This is known as the gateway into the astral plane of the fourth dimension. It rules the cognitive emotions, and reactions to others. It is the combination of someone’s thoughts and emotions that opens his gateway to the fourth dimension. Once opened, this portal can begin to blend his third-dimensional perceptions with the higher psychic and intuitive consciousness. This chakra rules our sense of sight, the physical sight and second sight of astral vision. This chakra connects a person to the civilisations of 5,000 years ago, the great empires of Egypt, Syria, Greece, and Rome and their power over their opponents. It also connects him to their multiple gods and goddesses, as well as the animals that they worshipped.

The endocrine gland connected to this chakra is the pancreas. The pancreas plays an important part in the digestion of food. It secretes the hormone insulin, which regulates the blood-sugar levels and the metabolic processes involved in digesting carbohydrates. The endocrine gland is thrown off balance when too much sugar is taken into the system. Alcoholic beverages instantly convert to sugar and diabetes can occur from alcoholism. This chakra connects to the solar plexus, beneath the ribcage, and is associated with the lower back, abdomen, digestive system, stomach, liver, spleen, gall bladder, and automatic nervous system.

This chakra connects a person to the chakra of mother Earth in Mount Kilimanjaro, Kenya, Africa (one of the largest free-standing mountains in the world) or to Uluru- Katatjuta, Australia. It reminds the person of the occultic power within. When this chakra is blocked, a person feels powerless and this can produce, anger, greed, doubt, and guilt.

Its ruling deities are Vahni, Rudra, and Lakini. This chakra has centres in the front (navel) and rear (kidneys). There is also a centre called the "Tan Tien", described as being one and a half inches below the navel, called the "Sea of Chi" centre and it is linked to the molten core of the Earth, the fire (red), the central part of the Tantric Manipura chakra. Chi is the Chinese Kundalini, the name CHI +na = China echoes this power. Astrologically, the planet or celestial sphere that connects with the Manipura is Venus. This connects Venus/Lucifer to the womb.<sup>754</sup>

#### 4.7.1.9 Witchcraft and the Placenta

A placenta is a living entity while in the womb. It is an organ that develops in a pregnant woman, evidencing the fact that God is already introducing life in the womb. The foetus is attached to the placenta by the umbilical cord. The placenta is a physical and biological structure as well as a spiritual organ which carries positive and negative elements from both parents to the foetus.

This placenta is not affected by any infections, diseases or attacks during pregnancy and, as such, allows the baby to be delivered safely. A normal placenta comes out easily immediately after the baby is born. However diseases, infections, structural deformities, as well as *spiritual attacks* from demonic agents, can cause abnormalities in the placenta. Evil

---

<sup>754</sup> Ibid., pp. 97-99

people can target the placenta to cause bleeding in early pregnancy, which can result in miscarriage. Abnormal placentas can lead to deformities which can cause stillbirths, mental problems or epilepsy.

The placenta in or out of the womb plays a strong and significant role in the spiritual functions of the unborn child and its destiny. Practitioners of witchcraft believe that much power is acquired through blood, that the life is in the blood. Because of this, there is always a blood sacrifice with every ritual made to Satan. In these rituals, animal and human blood is used, and sometimes even the blood from a placenta, depending on what the satanic priest wants to achieve. There are families all over the world that have been involved in witchcraft for generations. They have performed ritual killings and drank human blood and eaten human flesh.

In some areas, when a child is born, they will preserve the placenta until the child reaches a certain age. They will then perform a ritual with the preserved placenta. It could even be roasted as a barbecue, whereupon the whole family will eat it together with the child. This results in a serious spirit-soul tie between the family members. It can also cause havoc to spouses who marry into this family and it can even lead to divorce. Many believers today do not realise that their families ate their placentas and many lives are caged in a spiritual prison that prevents them from growing spiritually in the things of the Lord.

Some parents were manipulated by agents of darkness to bury their children's placentas on a cursed piece of land, next to the hut of the family Sangoma or witchdoctor. These children may keep on dreaming of that piece of land or the houses on that piece of land every time they want to go forward with the things of the Lord. They could have dreams and voices calling them back to their spiritual roots, even hearing the voodoo drums beating and calling them back home when they are summoned by the ancestors to go home to serve at the family altar. Their placenta has become a spiritual magnet drawing them back into their past. Some of the ancestors even bathed in human or animal blood to obtain their power and popularity.<sup>755</sup>

---

<sup>755</sup> Buys, A, Africa, come forth out of Bondage. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished, pp. 101-105

#### **4.7.1.10 Marine Witchcraft**

Marine witchcraft is one of the most destructive evil powers. Many nations and many lives will not advance unless these spirits are dealt with in prayer. It is to be noted that in practically all nations there are people who worship bodies of water. These spirits are proud, mean, wicked, heartless, and stubborn. They try to control trade and commerce.

Marine spirits are water spirits or spirits that dwell in the water of sea and rivers. They are real; they execute their plans by possessing either a man or a woman. The marine kingdom is one of Satan's departments, headed by a queen, popularly known as the "queen of the coast". The Earth is divided into the air, the land and the sea. When God made man in Genesis, He gave him dominion over the fish of the sea, the birds of the air and over every living thing that moves upon the Earth.

There are two types of marine spirits; (1) the conscious marine agents and (2) the unconscious marine agents. The conscious marine agents are those who know they are possessed, while the unconscious marine agents don't know that they are possessed. Marine spirits possess females more than males: they do so to oppress men and scatter homes, since the man is the head of the home. Their primary tool is sex. They are extremely fashion-crazy, they purposely dress to attract male attention, they walk in certain ways specifically intended to attract. This marine spirit pushes single ladies to date married men without any remorse. They take delight in breaking the hearts of their victims, so as to render them emotionally unstable. Once a person is unstable emotionally, he is sure to make incorrect decisions about other things. They neutralise the willpower of their victims through sex. They are very unstable in relationships; they cannot keep a relationship for too long, they pretend a lot and change their voices to fit the mood they are in.

Falling in love with a lady possessed with this spirit is the worst thing that can happen to a man, because the moment he decides to end the relationship, she begins to behave well, the moment the man changes his mind, she starts tormenting the emotions of the man, constantly frustrating him. Lesbianism, homosexuality and indecency are also marine initiations. Those possessed by marine spirits are also "party freaks". This spirit pushes young, talented, beautiful girls into "runs".<sup>756</sup>

---

<sup>756</sup> Nairaland, Marine Spirits [Online] Available from: <http://www.nairaland.com/1143926/marine-spirits...what-how-identify-defeat> [Accessed: 29 August 2014]

#### **4.7.1.11 Black Magic, Sorcery, Witchcraft**

In practical black magic, a succession of spells is often used against an enemy to weaken, prepare and 'soften' him or her for a final purpose, for example, to obtain obedience or to destroy. In such an instance, the first spell forms a foundation for the second and the third attacks, and so on, against an enemy, to slowly weaken or poison that person at a distance, destroy every aspect of their lives and eventually drive them out of their minds or cause their deaths, due to accidents or some self-destructive act.

Highly effective black magic often has a psychological component, as well. The more a person knows about his enemy (the person's location, personal details, psychological make-up, associates, etc.), the better he can tailor his efforts toward effecting his or her subjugation (if that's the goal) or destruction. Many diseases, including catalepsy, somnambulism, hysteria, and insanity, were attributed to black magic.<sup>757</sup>

Powerful witches and black magicians have long had a place in the warfare of nations. One of the most talented and public figures to apply the esoteric science of witchcraft to government warfare operations for example was Lt. Col. Michael Aquino. He was the father of American Psychological Operations (PsyOps) and the founder of 'the Temple of Set'. Aquino's writings on black magic and psychological warfare explain the uninitiated basic aspects of black magic technique, which is to place an enemy into a suggestible state by whatever means, including the appearance of a friendly and familiar face on the television screen, for example. By this means, other methods of black magic can be implemented, including psychological trauma, emotional trauma and confusion. This is a means of weakening an enemy and obtaining compliance, which is equivalent to the domination and confusion spells used in practical, everyday witchcraft.

In practical black magic, an object of influence is placed in the home of an enemy. Sometimes it is placed secretly or it is given to the person as a gift. Once this object is inside the person's home, energy waves (much like a broadcast signal) are projected into this object, thus creating an influence on the person and everyone in their home. It is essential never to accept a gift from a black magician, because it may be used to influence the person, and his surroundings.

---

<sup>757</sup> Melton J G (2001) Encyclopedia of Occultism and Parapsychology, Firth Edition, Volume A-N, USA:Gale Group, p. 189

While television broadcasts can be used to psychologically weaken targets in other ways (for example, the relay of false information to an enemy to cause them to take certain actions according to the black magician's will), they can, also, be used to induce emotionally traumatised states and deepen the suggestibility level further. In hypnosis, this is simply called 'deepening.' It is done on a mass scale by means of these traumatic events being broadcast (i.e. massacres, 9/11 and other breaking news), repeatedly over the television sets to highly emotional and receptive targets, who are already in a lower-brainwave state and, therefore, highly suggestible.

The television, by means of its flicker rate, causes hypnotic induction to occur in a matter of a few minutes. Then, because of its ability to broadcast very realistic images combined with this brain wave-lowering flicker rate, it is the perfect medium for broadcasting telepathic suggestions to the subconscious minds of millions of people at a time. The subconscious mind has no power of reasoning or analysis, and willingly accepts whatever suggestions, images or other ideas it is given, without question.

The use of trauma to induce compliance in PsyOps is another reason for mass casualty events being broadcast in a highly emotional way on the television. The black magicians on the television will suggest to the viewers what to feel and think. Once the trauma has sufficiently taken hold, the magician assumes the target is now 'soft' for further telepathic suggestions. The black magician (anchor or television journalist, in this case) will say, "There is fear all across the country," "People are shocked!" "People are in grief over this event," "People demand tougher security measures," "People are demanding more gun control," etc. This is the second layering of a black magic spell by means of telepathic suggestion. The people under hypnotic induction receive these images at a subconscious level and accept them as their own.

The people subjected to it are literally under a spell and seem to live as if they are in a different reality because of the images and messages that have been broadcast to their subconscious minds while in a highly suggestible state. Anytime you suspect you are under the influence of black magic, the first thing to do is to get rid of the object of influence, by means of which the black magician is transmitting his or her influence. In the case of mass media PsyOps, this is the television and to a lesser extent other forms of mainstream media communication like certain radio broadcasts and newspapers. The television itself is not an object of witchcraft, but the signals that are being transmitted into your home by means of it

are. So, you don't have to give away or destroy your television to destroy this influence, simply cut the broadcast or cancel your subscription, for example.<sup>758</sup>

Every witch acknowledges the danger of dabbling in black magic. They guard against the evil spirits by drawing magic circles around themselves. When witches call up a spirit, they know the summoned entity is powerful and dangerous. Since witches frequently use drugs such as belladonna, aconite and hemlock, their minds and personalities are often vulnerable to the evil spirits. Mediums and witches who consort with evil spirits tell tales of others in their craft who became insane and committed suicide under the influence of evil spirits.<sup>759</sup>

#### 4.7.2 Magick

Michael Ford<sup>760</sup> in his book, *Beginning of Luciferian Magick*, describes magick as<sup>761</sup>

*the art of causing change internally and externally in accordance with the Will. Magick is the art of transformation into a sense of divine consciousness, thus it is meant to improve and assist the Luciferian.*

Rituals involve the restructuring of previously defined desires and wishes. Rituals are a fundamental reorganisation in relation to various points of chaos; to reach beyond what is called the demon Choronzon, the guardian of Da'ath, to the astral region of "wisdom and death", resurgence and evolution.

The practice of holding the body in one position for extended amounts of time is very significant. The self in a 'still' or 'frozen' state is often an avatar of building and controlled energy. When an individual controls their thoughts on almost every level, holding the point of consciousness between lines of almost subconscious existence, then the mind is at the threshold of magick and sorcery.

---

<sup>758</sup> Traditional Witchcraft and Occultism, Television and the layering of Black Magic Spells to cause Confusion and Trauma [Online] Available from: <http://traditionalwitchcraftandoccultism.wordpress.com/2013/11/11/traditional-witchcraft-and-the-occult-television-and-the-layering-of-black-magic-spells-to-cause-confusion-and-trauma/> [Accessed: 14 August 2014]

<sup>759</sup> Larson, B (1989) *New Book of Cults*. Illinois: Tyndale House Publishers, pp. 151-155

<sup>760</sup> Michael W. Ford is the Magister of The Order of Phosphorus, a closed order of solitary initiates and The Black Order of the Dragon, the inner guild based around Yatukivah – Persian and Chaos sorcery. He is the author of *Luciferian Witchcraft* and of *Liber HVHI*, an explanation of the Luciferian trinity and the rituals of the Qliphoth, *The Book of the Witch Moon* which features an introduction by Chaos Magician Peter J. Carroll and numerous articles and essays.

<sup>761</sup> Ford, M W (2008) *Beginning of Luciferian Magick*. Houston: Succubus Inner Publications, p. 17



The demonic structure found in magick is as follows: Lucifer is the god of light and wisdom, yet incubates a dark or shadow side. Beneath the name of Lucifer, one will find Samael, Satan, Ahriman, Set and Apep. There is also an equally strong feminine aspect: from Sumerian Mythology, Tiamat, the primordial sea dragon; Lilith, the bride of Samael who was a goddess of sorcery, vampires and the night; Hecate, the goddess of witchcraft in ancient Greece, are but a few.<sup>762</sup>

Magicians hire themselves out to people to work evil upon their enemies, and to cause madness and maladies.<sup>763</sup>

#### **4.7.2.1 Sexual Magick**

Karezza is a form of sexual magick, involving building up and controlling the sexual drive for transferring energy to magickal purposes. It is used to charge a particular wish, or focus energy and bring it into manifestation in a specific form. Karezza is an ancient technique which requires an immense amount of control and concentration. It may include autoerotic methods (masturbation) which are implemented to reach the point of orgasm. Shortly before orgasm, the sorcerer stops and focuses instead upon the symbol of their intention. Once this stage is complete, the sorcerer can enter a dream state in order to project the ideal envisioned.

The essence of Karezza is that once orgasm is denied, then this rampant energy which the sorcerer is controlling may, during visions or dreams, be fulfilled in another desired area. This method can also be used to contact a succubus or incubus demon and is a very useful technique for purposes of evocation and invocation.

Invocation is the calling of spirits and energies/god forms inward to gain anthropomorphic associations or to access the common or deeper attributes of the spirit. In the act of invocation, the spirit is absorbed by the "I" or self, in a Luciferian/Sethian sense. Invocation is the direct subconscious communication with the forces of 'outer' and 'inner' planes of being.

Evocation is to summon or call spirits outward, often projected into a circle or area from which a person may bind such forces or spirits to a specific area. In Goetic Sorcery, the

---

<sup>762</sup> Ford, M W (2008) *Beginning of Luciferian Magick*. Houston: Succubus Inner Publications, p. 18

<sup>763</sup> Melton J G (2001) *Encyclopedia of Occultism and Parapsychology*, Fifth Edition, Volume M-Z, USA:Gale Group, p. 1032

individual summons or evokes a spirit or energy into a circle. When the sorcerer is satisfied; they banish/release the spirit so it may leave. Evocation can consist of the sorcerer summoning or calling forth the darkest aspects of the self, i.e. atavisms, to will them to manifest visually or anthropomorphically outside of the self.<sup>764</sup>

Vampire spirits are notorious for invoking obsession and later madness by means of sexual services. Sexual demons can drive a person into horrifying nightmares, exhaustion, paranoia, obsession and even suicide or a subconscious seed-programme invoking death.<sup>765</sup>

Tiamat, considered as an aspect of Babalon in the path of Vampirism, fits naturally into the work of the Red Temple, meaning sex and blood magick. Tiamat is also an aspect of Leviathan, the primordial angel of the deep, the crooked serpent that devours its own tail. Sexual congress with a partner is a significant aspect of the work of the Red Temple. The awakened Kundalini or Fire Snake can be channelled within both individuals, achieving a major focus and build-up of energy. Strong bonds can be created through such work.

The Black Temple is that of necromancy and the calling of the dead. A combination of the magick of the Red and the Black Temple is a sexual tantric work which involves the use of bones, ashes, blood and sexual fluid (of both individuals, given as a gift to a Loa or spirit). This aspect is explored through sexual union, for either the creation of a moonchild or the calling of the dead. This ritual, which includes a consecration of a sigil covered in the blood and combined sexual fluids, should be given power by a focus of energy. If the sorcerer becomes obsessed with the spirits which traffic in the work of the Red and Black Temple, this will lead to insanity and mental pain.<sup>766</sup>

The Sorcerer who takes on the act of sex to invigorate a Moonchild is working based upon an Astral Moon spirit, not a baby conceived in the flesh (which is also possible). The automata formed through the sex and the spirit formed in the astral semen will give life to sex magick. Rituals such as this have long been hidden from the public and from most occultists. This is due to the fact that such workings invoke bestial and demonic incarnations, like flesh-taking atavisms which would drive one to the brink of madness and death. This is Black Magick in every sense of the word; it creates or evokes an offspring of sorcery.

---

<sup>764</sup> Ibid., pp. 22-29

<sup>765</sup> Ibid., pp. 126

<sup>766</sup> Ford, M W (2003) *The book of the witch moon, a Grimoire of Luciferian Witchcraft, Vampirism and Chaos Sorcery*. Houston: Succubus Inner Publications, pp. 32-33

The spirit is first given essence through the desire and will of the couple. Energy is fed to it by belief and the blood offering. This is obtained from the workers themselves, several days before, and fed into a jar, so that the blood may coagulate. The blood given would give the entity initial substance, while the intercourse and sexual energy within the circle gives it further energy; growing with the building intensity of the sexual act. At the moment of ejaculation, the spirit is given life through the semen itself, giving it astral substance and form. Some horrifying prospects include the initial astral formation with a sigil, and then later during a similar black rite, through natural congress, impregnating the woman and drawing the moon spirit into the embryo, giving it a further strength of spirit which could, in time and growth as a child, form a strong will.

Those who would actually desire to form a moon spirit into a baby through natural congress would proceed with the same invocations, forming a spirit net which would seize the evoked daemon. At the moment of ejaculation, with the man ejaculating within the woman, the spirit should be drawn within the body of the woman until the egg is fertilised. At the moment of orgasm or undertaking the Death Posture, a clear vision of the spirit must be formulated, clearly seen and projected into the astral, thus giving it clear life through Will, Desire and Belief. This rite is in honour of Hecate, Lilith, Kali and Babalon, a primal reaching towards the goddess.<sup>767</sup>

#### **4.7.2.2 Vampirism and Lycanthropy**

The shadow side of vampirism and lycanthropy has long been hidden from the basic study of magick on any serious level. The inherent goal of magick is to awaken and explore the self, progression, evolution and individual power. This is gained from first-hand experience and study. The path of the sorcerer is never an easy or safe one; many of the greatest dangers exist in the subconscious realm.

Vampirism has existed and grown in the European psyche for generations, stretching some thousands of years. The same is true with lycanthropy, shapeshifting and the darker aspects of witchcraft. Lycanthropy is closely connected with the dual aspects of sex and death, as is vampirism. The lunar current which the sorcerer opens and becomes aligned with is based on the aspect of hidden desire and lustful atavisms which manifest in the spirit and form of a

---

<sup>767</sup> Ibid., pp.138-139

wolf, owl, cat and other such animal. Lycanthropy can be a useful exercise in individual power points which can be used effectively on the astral plane.<sup>768</sup>

The individual who seeks to explore and envelop the self within the shadows of vampiric sorcery must be willing to become as those nocturnal archetypes which hide within their subconscious. Vampirism and lycanthropy are the most dangerous paths to take on magically, as they invite the dark arms of the Black Eagle and Thanatos (Greek personification of death). The system of shapeshifting is part of the nature of the vampire. For example, tales of female vampires would give them the astral form of a cat, an owl or raven. Many male vampires would take the astral form of a wolf or bat. It was said that vampires may take the form of mist or fog; this connection obviously comes from the ability to assume a mist form on the astral plane. If certain points of chi can be strengthened into a viable physical energy, then one can view the astral in the form of the chosen focus. Most often, this is seen in dreams or mentally open states of consciousness, depending on the individual thoughts and mind-set.

Throughout the past 600 years of vampiric history, many women and men would wake from a seemingly restful sleep, still feeling exhausted and worn out. Their dreams would be disturbed, or reminiscent of a waning sexual experience with a demonic or angelic being. It is possible to develop, out of inherited and personal traits, an independent predatory instinct which can function on "autopilot" while dreaming. Then the hunter may seek out unconsciously those who have imprinted on the astral plane their wishes of congregation and lust. Many have developed from personal experience (i.e. childhood or early life trauma) a predatory complex which would act out its frustration during the dream state.

Atavistic resurgence is the act of bringing forth primal desires via the subconscious, wherein such desires manifest and sometimes breed into monsters. It is up to the individual to build a great amount of strength to confront, understand and control such energies. Many lycanthropic urges manifest in violent sexual activity, wherein all honesty is present and a pure aspect of psychic makeup is understood. Blood and sexual congress have long been interpreted as animalistic lust, resulting in the creation of psychic bonds between the individuals involved.<sup>769</sup>

---

<sup>768</sup> Ford, M W (2003) *The book of the witch moon, a Grimoire of Luciferian Witchcraft, Vampirism and Chaos Sorcery*. Houston: Succubus Inner Publications, pp. 7

<sup>769</sup> Ibid. pp. 9-11

## CASE STUDY

Countess Elizabeth Bathory often would stick pins and cut the flesh of her young victims after beating them almost to the point of unconsciousness. Blood baths would provide the Countess with the ease of her own obsession with staying young and her subconscious desire for the blood of youth. Countess Bathory added fuel to the fire of vampire mania in Europe by being caught indulging in her blood lust, killing and bathing in the blood of over 560 girls.<sup>770</sup>

The powers of astral vampirism and lycanthropy can be obtained once the warlock and witch are adept in the arts of the witches' Sabbath. Vampiric or vampyric sorcery is a technique of evoking and directing energies which are Qlipothic in nature and/or origin. The Kabbalah defines the Qlipoth as unbalanced or negative energies which exist beyond the sphere of Da'ath, which is dual in its qualities. Da'ath is often represented as a power zone of wisdom, the hidden knowledge. The key is the subconscious, the dark matter of the brain.

Vampirism is also the will-directed internal focus of exploring the immortal aspects of the Vampyre in shadow and dream form. It is a process of sinister or left-handed alchemy, being the Adversarial path of Luciferian self-development. Elementals are different from spirits, in that they will often take the form of desires and what is called "atavisms", they take the form of urges within the psyche and rarely can be made to assume a visible appearance.

Da'ath is guarded by Choronzon, who is regarded as both demon and vampire. Choronzon is all that can invoke madness or destruction. Choronzon seizes upon every point of the self which is confused, in conflict, sick or twisted. It can take and build upon any form of hate, self-pity, depression and madness.

*Vampiric sorcery* is the mastery of the elementals of the deep subconscious. Choronzon could be considered the same as the Egyptian Apep, who is a demon of Chaos. The Lord of the Luciferian Witchcraft Cultus is Set, the Prince of Darkness, who is known for his battle with Apep. By destroying Apep, Set became the master of Chaos (Apep). This is believed to be a point of High Sorcery. This is mirrored in the Lord of Air and Fire, Lucifer/Azazel/Shaitan, revealed in the "Holy Guardian Angel" form known as Azal'ucel.

Vampire elementals are connected with deep desires and lusts that emerge from the subconscious. If undiscovered, they will often grow with the desires of the individual until they rise to the surface. If individuals are unbalanced, they create further dangers by attempting to invoke or evoke such elementals; for they exist on dark levels of the sleeping

---

<sup>770</sup> Ibid.

mind and hold the keys to the gates of Da'ath. If one is not prepared, they will be brought forth to the gates and come face-to face-with Choronzon. Their madness will grow until their reality is not their own.

Vampirism is a belief system of altered thinking and new focus. It is not at all different from the beliefs of any serious magus or sorcerer who seeks to build the black walls of individual strength. It is believed that the subconscious holds every key needed to awaken these primal atavisms: the serpent, the wolf, the dragon, the bat, the owl and raven are all at the invoker's command. The new age of shamanic tribal transformation and atavistic resurgence is at hand.

It is believed that when the sorceress can assume the form of the cat, raven or wolf and hunt for astral congress based on the individual's will and desire, she has reached the high levels of vampirism (not by staying away from the sun or sleeping in coffins). All of the trappings and imagery of vampirism are based on symbolism and transformation. Vampirism is the extension of the astral mind and night side reality. All that is transformable from the flesh to dream is subject to change on this level.<sup>771</sup>

Vampiric sorcery is based on essentially the same principles as more traditional forms of Magick. *Vampire spirits can become dream predators and can cause psychic damage and/or madness.*

Black Eagle is a familiar spirit, a spirit called up by the sorcerer from the atavisms of the depths of the mind and is horrific and self-destructive if not properly controlled and channelled. Black Eagle can lead to cases of madness, schizophrenia, even possession. It has numerous vampiric elements as part of its nature. A feature of this spirit is that, during dreams, Black Eagle will appear in a blood red or black background. It is an American Indian spirit.

American Indian sorcerers are actually shamans who practiced a high discipline, entering alternate states of being. The underworld and the waking world were often explored in depth, as connections between the spirit and the flesh. Many such journeys or explorations were under the web of sleep, where dream becomes flesh. Shamans are masters of the in-between worlds, from whence witchcraft derives – it is, after all, a mastery of both flesh and spirit. The adept of such magick and sorcery is bound to the Earth, and with numerous skills

---

<sup>771</sup> Ibid. pp. 16 - 21

and practices can later leave the physical body at will in order to go between worlds or even to take on the flesh of another. A wise sorcerer would seek to master both the methods of shaman and magickian, both the solitary and the ceremonial, as great keys of knowledge exist through both paths.

Black Eagle appears often as a pale Indian spirit, either black, blue or red-robed. Sometimes it appears in brown leather hides, with leathery skin which is abnormally pale and with burning black eyes. There have been occasions, however, when Black Eagle had no precise form at all, manifesting merely as a grey or different-coloured shapeless mass. It has a heavy North American Indian accent.<sup>772</sup>

#### **4.7.2.3 Sexual Magick in the Church Today**

Sweeping most quarters of institutionalised Christianity today, expressions of neo-paganism in the larger public square now range from self-help organisations working with corporations to offer symposiums to their employees to produce positive harmony, prosperity, and overall business success to other, not-so-subtle forms of paganism, such as those practiced by Wiccans and the women's spirituality movement, in which more than six hundred thousand women nationwide in the United States participate in the invocation of ancient Earth goddesses.

Retail stores in faddish malls are springing up across the United States to meet the need for replica idols of the popular female deities, and marketing occult paraphernalia used in venerating the goddesses (crystals, candles, books of spells, etc.) has become a multimillion dollar industry. Trendy New Age shops are now located in the most fashionable strip malls in the nicest areas of town. One such store, Necromance, resides at stylish Melrose Avenue in Los Angeles, where business is booming with sales of human fingers on a leather cord, necklaces of human teeth, bone beads, and human skulls, including tiny foetal ones. While store owners are generally New Agers or practicing witches, Necromance and similar businesses are attentively supported by a growing population of churchgoers, neo-pagans, politicians, Hollywood entertainers, and teachers of the arcane rites. Not long ago, one such witch claimed to be a temple prostitute of the goddess Astarte and performed sequential gate-opening magic sex with 251 men at the University of Southern California.<sup>773</sup>

---

<sup>772</sup> Ibid., pp. 106-107

<sup>773</sup> Horn, T and Horn N (2010) *Forbidden Gates*. Missouri: Crane, pp. 64-65

#### **4.7.2.4 Bone Magic**

Throughout much of human history, bones have been associated not with death but with life. In many cultures, people actually believe bones are the seat of the vital principle or even the soul. As the place of life, bones have mystic powers ranging from cures and divination, to birth and rebirth. The most important and widely held belief is that bones can be reanimated and therefore are essential to rebirth. They play a critical role in the ritual of the death and rebirth of man. This conviction is especially common among people in northern Eurasia, as well as parts of Asia, and can also be found in the myths of Germany, the Caucasus, Africa, South America, Oceania, and Australia. Where there is belief in reanimation, bones are often preserved after the flesh has decayed and are treated with special care.

In some cases, they are given a separate burial or are preserved as objects of worship. It is not only human bones that are declared sacred, but often the bones of certain animals as well. The use of bones for divination is a common part of many shamanistic rituals.

In Africa, they worship their ancestors and draw their practices from the ancient Egyptian rituals. Families and tribes are required to visit the graves of their ancestors at least once a year, where a feast is held to bring honour to them. This is to ensure that the living family will be protected and blessed by their ancestors for the next year. There is tremendous fear and respect for the ancestors and Africans will do anything to make sure they do not get into trouble with them. There are workers of iniquity that call themselves the Order of the Bone-Magic, the brotherhood of necromancers.

They worship Azazel, Lord of the Bones, who reveals the secrets necessary to control all things fashioned from the bones of the dead. The Order of the Bone-Magi is a secret organisation with a great deal of history and ritual. Membership is closely controlled and even in its ascendance the Order never numbered more than a few hundred. As part of their training, the disciple must seek out crypts and graveyards to learn about skeletons and the dead. They will speak to a pile of skeleton bones and actually get the skeleton to be built up bone-to-bone until it is standing up in front of the magician. This skeleton is then absolutely faithful to the magician and will do whatever it is told. Bone magicians will go to graveyards and battlefields where many people have died and then call up skeleton armies to fight battles in the spirit for Satan's kingdom. This is an army of the undead.



A single warrior skeleton can also be called up; he was a powerful warrior in life and will be so in this form, but cannot die. He is undead. This practice opens demonic doors to spirits of death, Hell, and the grave. This has wrought some major consequences in my own life, as well as the lives of my family. This destroyer has brought death through abortion, sudden deaths of babies, and the accidental death of my children.<sup>774</sup>

Bone Magic activates the following curses and/or covenants<sup>775</sup>:

- Curses of death through accidents where death and Hell has bound my family line with freak accidents, accident-proneness, and a pattern of continuous accidents;
- Curses of Hell bringing death that has come with accidents, and all the torment of loss, torments of financial disaster, and emotional torment that has followed the accidents, and even torment of the mind;
- Curses of accidents with loss, and the grief and pain that the accident and the loss has brought. Curses of grief over loss through accidents;
- Curses of the spirit of death and Hell, where there has been a sustaining of permanent injury through accident; accidents in the neck, the legs, hands, joints, and so forth. If the injury torments a person with pain, it is the spirit of Hell tormenting him;
- A cycle of rejection and abandonment with death and Hell, where I have in turn seeded my children with the same rejection;
- A cycle of rejection and abandonment with death and Hell and the loss of purpose in living;
- The tormenting spirits of abandonment keeps the feelings of rejection alive;
- Sickness comes into a person's body through rejection and abandonment; through rejection and abandonment it has opened the door to terminal illnesses;
- Curses of plagues to whip, to scourge, and to bring suffering and calamity;
- Curses of chain of abandonment linked to infirmity and every cord of hidden self-pity;
- The curse of a continual death-wish because of death and Hell bringing destruction down the family line;
- A covenant with death and agreements with death through the worshipping of Apollyon/Abaddon, bringing a curse of destruction through Apollyon/Abaddon;
- A curse of mouth and jawbone of death and Hell;
- The darkness of the shadow of death will cover the person;
- The grim reaper of Molech and Chemosh will reap from the person's life, emotions and mind in destruction;

---

<sup>774</sup> Buys, A, Africa, come forth out of Bondage. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished, pp. 77-84

<sup>775</sup> Ibid. pp. 85-92

- Divination and witchcraft will lead to deep depression, despair, hopelessness and seduce to suicide;
- Chains will pull the person into the torment of the pit of depression;
- A curse of abandonment linked to all depression bringing destruction;
- A curse of mutilation (including through accidents or emotional circumstances) linked to the sacrificial altar of mutilation and destruction; the person is tied to witchcraft, divination and mutilation;
- A curse of alcoholism resulting in financial trauma, continual financial distress and family arguments, living under no rest from emotional stress, emotional distress, continual grief, pain and hopelessness and emotional breakdown; alcoholic swings of emotion due to stress and tension living on the person's nerves; going from one financial crisis to another;
- A curse of occultic accidents;
- Patterns of unusual outbursts of rage and anger because of financial loss, financial problems or financial insecurity;
- A curse of inflamed anger and rage, and insane rage with alcoholism, or occult rage;
- An occult curse of emotional brokenness and emotional dysfunction, including mood-swings, depression, continual crying and breakdowns;
- A curse of false emotional burdens of the entire family and household;
- A curse of unusual schizophrenic behaviour, distress and loss of self-control over financial affairs;
- A curse of occult activity bringing financial calamity, financial collapse, "bad luck", suddenly everything turning bad, bankruptcy, the loss of all savings, the loss of all assets, and the emotional distress, grief and breakdown because of loss;
- A curse of financial destitution, and the fear of being thrown out on the streets with nothing;
- Tribulation and ravaging fires of death and Hell in every area of the person's life, including those that come with fevers, unusual fevers, and mystery fevers; burning fires of inflammation of the nerves resulting in pain, and inflammation of the joints, the nervous system, and arthritis and other diseases that are rooted in inflammation;
- Chains of the torment of Hell in my marriage, relationships and family life;
- A curse of the power of the skull and crossbones of death with divination and occult practices; and
- A curse of the fear of losing one's salvation, harvest and inheritance; death and Hell has swallowed up hope, vision, faith and even reason for living.

### **4.7.3 Shamanism**

#### **4.7.3.1 Shamanic Sorcery**

Shamanic sorcery is the craft of manipulating the fabric of psychedelic space for personal gain or vendetta. Shamanic sorcery's powers include clairvoyance, spirit channelling, shapeshifting, astral travel, remote viewing, curses, dream projection, magical darts, telepathy, mind control, necromancy and others. The shamanic ontology, or psychedelic spirit space, can be suspiciously viewed as a shared non-physical, non-temporal delusion accessible to any shaman as long as they accept the rules of the central ontology. In this way, the shared shamanic ontology becomes fluid through space and time, and is magically manipulated and reinforced through ritual use of psychedelic drugs. In a setting where the shamanic ontology is readily accepted and reinforced, the shaman has great power; in reductive scientific settings that refute the shamanic ontology the shaman appears to have an overactive guru complex and delusions of grandeur.

The shaman is also said to be able to enter people's dreams, making the destabilised world of fleeting nightly visions seem like a global river for the shaman to navigate. Under the influence of psychedelics the shaman can hear nonlinear, nonverbal information coming from the jungle, the city, the plants, the animals, and can intuitively sense their natural cycles and sense them disappearing into the past and future. The shaman can blow a curse into the passing wind and send magic darts on convoluted pathways towards enemies.

According to the fundamentals of Psychedelic Information Theory (PIT), the influence of shamanic sorcery can be presumed to be nonlinear, which means small periodic perturbations of system variables within a larger information system can produce disproportionately complex and chaotic results in any other part of the system. In the nonlinear psychedelic space the shaman is a chaos magician, or the butterfly that flaps his wings in China and creates a hurricane across the ocean. The nonlinear aspect of psychedelic sorcery makes it both a very subtle art form and something that escapes reductive scientific observation, but also makes it very prone to failure and lack of proper control. The weather is famously nonlinear, and one of the jobs of the shaman is reading and controlling the weather; this is not a coincidence. PIT assumes that the study of nonlinear systems and complexity has always been a fundamental part of shamanism and sorcery.

Accounts of hidden forces acting in concert to send messages through non-random coincidence are common in psychosis, paranoia, schizophrenia, mania, bipolar disorder, and psychedelic intoxication. On psychedelics, this state is dose-dependent and increases in complexity with larger doses until it appears the entire fabric of reality, down to the subatomic level, is speaking directly to the subject with a singular narrative message.

Independent accounts of the synchronicity hole describe an instant precognitive insight where probability appears to collapse and the subject intuitively knows exactly what is going to happen next. A shaman in this space is said to be able to look forward in time into many probable futures, and can choose any potential future by following the pathway that leads him there. By applying synchronicity magic and selecting non-random pathways into the future, the shaman collapses probability and subtly alters the fabric of reality. This process can also be described as a form of deterministic neuroplasticity.

Sorcery, as discussed earlier, is the craft of generating negative or destabilising information within a larger information matrix. Negative information is any information which seeks to subvert or destroy the larger information matrix. Examples of negative information at the biological scale include viruses, parasites, toxins, and cancers; at the personal scale negative information may include doubt, fear, stress, depression, abuse, neglect, trauma, and delusion; at the tribal level negative information may include dishonesty, distrust, withholding, disinformation, and warfare. When negative information is amplified with positive feedback it can grow to destroy the entire system. Negative information can be countered with negative feedback or positive information which seeks to minimise negative information and bring stability back to the matrix.

While a shaman uses psychedelics as a medicine or sacrament to heal and gain insight, the sorcerer uses psychedelics as a weapon to gain power over peers and attack enemies. If shamanic sorcery is a kind of nonlinear chaos magic it should also be considered to be somewhat unpredictable, uncontrollable, prone to high rates of failure, and potentially very dangerous.<sup>776</sup>

In every culture those who spent their lives learning the secrets of occult power were honoured as the priests, priestesses, witches, witch doctors, medicine men, sorcerers, magicians, gurus, and masters. All of these functions are so basically similar that they are

---

<sup>776</sup> Psychedelic Information Theory, Shamanic Sorcery [Online] Available from: <http://psychedelic-information-theory.com/Shamanic-Sorcery> [Accessed: 12 May 2014]

now included by anthropologists under the one term "shaman," the title given by the Tungus tribe in Siberia to its witch doctors or medicine men.<sup>777</sup>

#### **4.7.3.2 Voodoo Shamanism**

The voodoo shaman is a tribal witch-doctor of the worst kind. Instead of living on the donations of his fellow tribesmen in exchange for magical benefits, he seeks to rule them through intimidation and terror. Often an outcast by personal choice or the anger of his village, he lusts for revenge and power.

A voodoo shaman's favourite tactic is to set up camp near a burial ground, animate a small army of zombies and launch a campaign of terror against the unsuspecting village. His undead kill and kidnap the weak and the young for human sacrifice or never-ending slavery, hurl themselves into the wells to poison the water supply and generally cause as much suffering as possible. This continues until the tribe dies out, flees (with nowhere to go), the shaman and his creatures are killed, or the village comes under his command. The latter option is little better than death for the victims, for the greedy shaman will doubtless require human sacrifices and numerous slaves (these servant tribes are often engaged in desperate tribal wars for captives and riches), not to mention treasure and various privileges, ranging from taking apprentices to bed slaves and worse.

The shaman is able to gain various powers by consuming specific parts of sentient human beings sacrificed during a grisly ritual. This ritual is to be conducted on New Moon's Eve, in almost complete darkness. These powers last for a full month (until the next New Moon's Eve) and only one such power may be active at a given time. Consorting with undead and partaking in unwholesome rites prevents the shaman from reaching eternal rest. If he isn't resurrected within a fortnight of his demise, he will return from the grave to torment the living, possibly as a voodoo zombie.

Using the blackest voodoo magic, the shaman can create zombies (and *only* zombies) to do his bidding. The ritual of animation must be performed during the night with no spectators. The shaman is able to make pacts with wandering souls and evil spirits, encouraging them to possess prepared dead bodies. The result is a Voodoo zombie, an undead creature that has free will and a twisted personality. If the shaman is familiar with the spell Bestow Curse

---

<sup>777</sup> Hunt, D (2011) America, The Sorcerer's New Apprentice. Oregon: The Berean Call, p. 79

and possesses personal belongings or body parts (hair, nail clippings, etc.) of the intended victim, along with a wax doll, he can employ the curse at an unlimited distance, even without seeing him.

The Voodoo Zombie is an undead creature that was animated by the foul magic of a voodoo shaman. They appear as normal zombies, but can be recognised by the amber-like reddish glow in their eyes. The Voodoo Zombie possesses an intellect and free will, making it an ideal aide, guardian or assassin. It tries to obey the orders of its master in the most efficient way possible (unlike regular zombies, it has a limited self-preservation instinct).<sup>778</sup>

#### **4.7.4 Other Forms of Sorcery and Witchcraft**

##### **4.7.4.1 Voodoo**

The definition of voodoo, according to Rogets' Thesaurus, is to bewitch, charm, allure, attract, bedevil, beguile, captivate, capture, control, dazzle, draw, enchant, enrapture, enthrall, entrance, fascinate, hex, hypnotise, fascinate, magnetise, mesmerise, knock dead, knock out, send, slay, spell, spellbind, take, tickle, turn on, vamp, voodoo, wile, wow, conjure, disgust, irritate, offend, repel, turn off, levitate, play tricks, summon, curse, burden, bring calamity, jinx, abuse, anathematise, attack, ban, banish, cuss, confound, denunciate, excommunicate, penalise, condemn, condemn to Hell, to damn, obsess, madden, infest plague, terrify, terrorise, weigh on, worry, bless.<sup>779</sup>

The purpose of voodoo is to appease their gods and bring good fortune on themselves. Some practice voodoo to instil serious negative psychological effects on others.<sup>780</sup>

It is an ancestral African Religion, claimed by some as the first and oldest. It is Black magic, Satanism, Black Arts, demon worship, diabolism, magic, mysticism, necromancy, sorcery, witchcraft, witchery, wizardry, bewitchment, Ala Kazam, and conjuration. The root word is "Void" meaning an empty, vacant place waiting to be filled by a spirit. Voodoo is also known as Wodu, Vodou, Vudu, Vudun, Vaudun, Vaudoun, Vaudaux and Hoodoo and named from the god Vodun.

---

<sup>778</sup> Lux, G The Voodoo Shaman [Online] Available from: [http://3A%2F%2Fwww.angelfire.com%2Fd20%2Fnecropolis%2FVoodooe.pdf&ei=BKH0U\\_LTK-Xb7Abxh4DYBA&usg=AFQjCNGVOSWIzfbBxmppW6S19V4qJPdyw&bvm=bv.72676100,d.ZGU](http://3A%2F%2Fwww.angelfire.com%2Fd20%2Fnecropolis%2FVoodooe.pdf&ei=BKH0U_LTK-Xb7Abxh4DYBA&usg=AFQjCNGVOSWIzfbBxmppW6S19V4qJPdyw&bvm=bv.72676100,d.ZGU) [Accessed: 11 August 2014]

<sup>779</sup> Thesaurus.com, Voodoo [Online] Available from: <http://thesaurus.com/browse/voodoo> [Accessed: 11 August 2014]

<sup>780</sup> Larson, B (1989) New Book of Cults. Illinois: Tyndale House Publishers, p. 462

Voodoo is very prominent in those of African, Spanish and French ancestry. Many people may be bound by Voodoo and be completely unaware of it through the mixture that has entered the Catholic Church, New Age, yoga, magic, folk customs and rituals, Wicca, Freemasonry, night clubs, music, media, political regimes and tourism, among other varieties. Voodoo is an ecstatic religion, a dance religion, and a musical religion using shamanistic energies. Voodoo is at the very heart of all witchcraft, slavery and the master/slave mind control mentality. It is at the heart of greed, power seeking, corruption, sexual perversion and the control behind money and business and politics.

The effects of Voodoo are evident in the poverty, lack, apathy, sickness, oppression, death, insanity and despair of individual families. The people are demonically possessed or even demonised, knowingly or unknowingly. They are bound mentally, spiritually, physically, psychologically and financially. Voodoo forms generational slave mentalities that set the pattern for the lives of people to live in bondage to other people, regimes, spiritual systems, forces and governments. They feel too impotent or powerless to resist. Generational Voodoo also provides the familiar spirits which guide and give understanding of the powers to manipulate, dominate and control others through witchcraft, magic, pain, lack and fear.

The Voodoo religion has its ancient roots in Egypt, East Africa, Asia Minor (ancient Turkey), Syria, and in ancient Afro-matrilineal Ionia, later known as Greece, where the African queen mothers established their powerful temples and theocratic empires. Until the present, their cultural theology was hidden under Greek mythology. The consequence of this was to obscure forever that Voodoo was historically one of the major African religions practiced throughout the ancient world. Voodoo is primarily a matriarchal religion, with its current home in Haiti. In 2003, Voodoo was officially sanctioned as a religion in Haiti.

Voodoo is one of the most dangerous and perverted forms of witchcraft, involving voluntary and involuntary demonic possession, drunkenness, ancestral worship, necromancy, sexual perversion, bestiality and animal, child and human sacrifice. Underneath its primitive facade is a terrible and sophisticated system of magical machinery involving entrances into the otherworld and alien universes and control by fallen angels and those in league with them. It involves the surrender of oneself to satanic possession of the worst kind. It is the most powerful form of Black Magic.

Vodou/Voodoo exists in different forms and variations and is practiced throughout the Caribbean, Africa, Brazil, Argentina, Venezuela, Columbia, Mexico, and many other

countries. The High Priest and or Priestess, often called "Mamas" or "Maman" and "Papas" or "Mambos" or "Hougans", or kings and queens. They are vehicles for the serpent's power, called "Loas" or "Lwas", (spirits – a form of Kundalini) which take possession of them by riding them and turning them into their mounts or horses.

The possessed become the slaves of the spirit, to do with as he wishes. This is done through Voodoo ceremonies, night dancing or Voodoo dancing (exactly what is done in nightclubs only now called rave and trance dancing), which is in effect shamanic dancing, which opens doors for spirit possession. In Voodoo, this dancing into a trance opens the door for abandonment to the spirit world and total possession and is an expression of spiritual connection and unity to the divinity, to the spirit world that precedes sexual frenzy and ecstatic states.<sup>781</sup>

The phenomenon of zombies, the living dead, is one of the most popular aspects of Haitian voodoo that has created a morbid interest in the world at large. Voodoo is more than sorcery or magic; voodoo is a religion, cult, healing process, and body of magical practice.

In voodoo practice, the *Bokor* is a sorcerer who uses evil forces to bewitch, and he can change a human being into a zombie. Essentially every *Hougan*, who is at the same time a voodoo priest, a doctor, and the intermediary between the community and the spirit world, is more or less a Bokor. In fact, the major difference between a Hougan and a Bokor is the nature of the bewitchment he or she performs.

The Haitian conception of the duality of the soul is that the *n'âmm* (soul) is principally divided into two distinctive parts: the *gro bonanj* (big guardian angel) and the *ti bonanj* (little guardian angel). The *gro bonanj*, which represents the consciousness and the personality, is a spiritual substance connected with the world of the living. When the individual passes away, the *gro bonanj* survives and joins the world of *lwa* (spirit) to eventually become a *lwa* himself. The second part of the soul, the *ti bonanj*, is the conscience or the spiritual energy of the person. This corresponds to the individuality of each human being and also corresponds to the individual will.

The most popular and well-documented hypothesis concerning how a person is changed into a zombie state is that the transformation is achieved by means of poison. The Bokor "work of the left hand" possesses the knowledge to constitute a powerful poison with a

---

<sup>781</sup> Buys, A, The Background of Voodoo. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished, pp. 1-9



mixture of venom like tetrodotoxin, which is found in several species of puffer fish. The victims sink into a state of catalepsy and pass for dead; however, it seems that the person is still aware of what occurs around him or her. The person is then buried alive.

At night the Bokor comes to help the person get out of the grave and captures the *ti bonanj*. He then administers an antidote that enslaves him. The Bokor can use the services of the zombie to carry out work in the fields or he can sell or rent his slave's services. This kind of zombie is the soulless body and the victim is deprived of will, memory, and consciousness, speaks with a nasal voice and is recognised chiefly by dull, glazed eyes and an absent air.

There exists a type of zombie of the soul, a disembodied soul of a dead person. In this case, the sorcerer uses the *gro bonanj* or the *ti bonanj* of the victims for magical purposes. The soul may belong to an individual who died in an accident or the sorcerer may use the soul of a sterile woman or even a soul that has been captured by a magical process and is enslaved. In any case, the soul must be stored in a bottle or jar and then the Bokor can either use it or sell it.<sup>782</sup>

Some Voodoo gods and goddesses are:<sup>783</sup>

- BON DIEU or BONDYE: the supreme deity.
- GRAND MAITRE (GRAN MET): this is the grand master.
- LEGBA: the old man who is the gatekeeper between two worlds – the world of Earth and the spirit.
- KALFU/ CARREFOUR/KALFOU: (crossroads) the dangerous Petro (Loa) counterpart to Legba - the spirit of the night, origin of darkness, and of his symbol the moon.
- DUMBALLAH: the father figure of voodoo, Father of the Loas/Lwas, 'the good snake.' The god of peace and tranquillity, all eggs made as a sacrifice to him.
- VODUN: the god of Voodoo.
- MARASSA or MAWU LISA: the divine Voodoo twins: MAWU the moon Goddess. LISA is the sun god. Lisa is the voodoo Jesus.
- SAKPATA: god who rules disease.

---

<sup>782</sup> Encyclopaedia of Dying and Death, Zombies [Online] Available from: <http://www.deathreference.com/Vi-Z/Zombies.html> [Accessed: 7 July 2014]

<sup>783</sup> Buys, A, The Background of Voodoo. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished, pp. 51, 54-57

The Catholic Church in Benin explains that voodoo knows only one god of creation, made manifest in the gods Mawu (son god) and Lissa (moon god), who represent among other things the male and female principal.<sup>784</sup>

Mind control in Voodoo requires a homing device, for example hair, photographs, letters, nail clippings etc. Pins are placed into dolls or photographs and incantations and thoughts are projected onto the person. In ministry, the pins are pulled out and usually the person will experience extreme pain in the area.

#### **4.7.4.2 The Tokolosh**

Also known as Tokoloshe, Tokoloshi, Thokolosi, Tikaloshe

Belief in the tokolosh is widespread in South Africa. The name tokoloshe is believed to be of Xhosa origin, but is used by all of the indigenous peoples of South Africa. The names "hili" and "gilikango" are sometimes used to refer to the same creature. Occasionally, anthropologists include other paranormal entities, such as lightning birds, under the generic heading tokoloshes. Sometimes, the name tokoloshe refers to a dwarf zombie.

Apparently, such a zombie can be created after removing the eyes and tongue from a full-sized corpse. The corpse is said to shrink after a heated iron rod is thrust into the skull. Life and obedience are breathed into the zombie by means of a secret powder blown into its mouth. Whatever means are used to create a tokoloshe, the price includes the death of a relative within a year. The spirits do not give life freely. If a person is prepared to create an unnatural person, he must be prepared to destroy a natural one.

Originally a water sprite, the tokoloshe is nowadays often a domestic spirit in the households of witches and warlocks. Usually described as a brown, hairy dwarf, it is virtually identical, in habits and appearance, to the brownie of European folklore. The tokolosh is said to speak with a lisp. It is usually naked, but sometimes wears a cloak. In European folklore, a naked brownie often helps around the house until it is paid with clothing, after which it may disappear. The tokolosh has a single buttock.

---

<sup>784</sup> Brand, C, Voodoo. Pretoria: RÂDÂH. Unpublished, p. 2

The penis of the tokoloshe is so long that it has to be slung over his shoulder. Thus sexually well-endowed, the duties of the tokoloshe include making love to its witch mistress. In return, it is rewarded with milk and food. As with European myths and legends concerning familiars, salt must not be added to food offerings for tokoloshes. The witch keeps the tokoloshe docile by cutting the fringe of hair that hangs over its eyes. Witches sometimes inherit these demon lovers from their mothers.

The tokoloshe is usually invisible to adults. The tokoloshe achieves invisibility by means of a magic pebble, which it keeps in its mouth. The creature is mischievous, but only malevolent when controlled by an evil sorcerer.

Belief in the tokoloshe has spread to all races, nations and cultures in Southern Africa. Even people of European descent have been known to buy protection against the sprite, and members of the Cape Muslim community knew about the tokoloshe long before South Africa's Bantu peoples became a common sight in Cape Town.

In late 1918, an Afrikaans household in Steynsrust, in the Orange Free State, near the Lesotho border, was troubled by the nocturnal goblin, which remained invisible. A witchdoctor who had been imprisoned for burglary was suspected of invoking the tokolosh for revenge. In September 1998, a Queenstown woman, Nothemba Bekebhu, had a strange visitation. Her furniture was taken over by five tokoloshes, who made themselves comfortable. They had come to demand equal housing rights.

In 1999, a woman in the Bradfield suburb of Bulawayo, Zimbabwe, paid an inyanga (n'anga) to exorcise her home. Although of Portuguese descent, the woman had grown up in Africa. She believed that a neighbour's maid had summoned a tokoloshe that was tormenting her. The exorcism was apparently successful, and the suspected maid fell ill and had to leave. In the same year, Mr. K. K. Manyika, director of security for Zimbabwe's parliament, said that he had been attacked by several invisible tokoloshes sent by a disgruntled employee. In July of that year, six women in Guruve, Zimbabwe, resigned as teachers after accusing a male colleague of using a tokoloshi to bewitch them so that he could rape them as they slept.

There is even a UFO connection with the tokoloshi. On September 16th, 1994, three flying saucers were seen hovering over Ariel School, in Ruwa, Zimbabwe. In Zimbabwe, UFOs are so common that local people have an indigenous word for the flying saucer, "ruserwa". One of the spacecraft landed, and a small being with long black hair and large eyes emerged.

The being's physical appearance certainly matched many descriptions of the tokoloshe, and some pupils took it to be one, and fled for their lives. Perhaps tokoloshis do have an extra-terrestrial origin. Some of the children felt that the alien was telepathic. The incident was investigated by the Zimbabwean ufologist Cynthia Hind, and by the abduction expert Dr John Mack.

The Sunday Times reported another tokoloshi infestation on January 30th, 2000. The victims were the Sejake family of Motlonyane village, near Mafikeng (Mafeking). Household objects were thrown about, insulting writing appeared on walls, family members and visitors were spat at, and swearing was heard. The culprit was never seen, except by Mr. Sejake's son. The tokoloshe was unusual in that it hated the child, and repeatedly destroyed the boy's homework until he had to leave his books at school. Family members sometimes woke up to find their bodies smeared with Vaseline and other lotions. Even more bizarrely, they might awake to find themselves outside the house.

The tokoloshe can be seen by children, but fortunately is friendly towards them (invisible playmates are common all over the world). Even when on a mission for a sorcerer, a tokolosh may disobey its master and spare a child. The friendship is discouraged by adults, who fear that if it continues into adulthood, the children may become witches or wizards themselves.<sup>785</sup>

#### **4.7.4.3 Poltergeist**

A poltergeist is a type of ghost or other supernatural being supposedly responsible for physical disturbances such as loud noises and objects being moved around or destroyed, according to folklore and parapsychology. Most accounts of poltergeists describe movement or levitation of objects, such as furniture and cutlery, or noises such as knocking on doors. Poltergeists have also been claimed to be capable of pinching, biting, hitting and tripping people.

Poltergeists occupy numerous niches in cultural folklore, and have traditionally been described as troublesome spirits who haunt a particular person instead of a specific location.

---

<sup>785</sup> Van Hunks, Tokoloshe [Online] Available from: <http://www.vanhunks.com/tokoloshe1.html> [Accessed: 12 May 2014]

According to research in anomalistic psychology, claims of poltergeist activity can be explained by psychological factors such as illusion, memory lapses and wishful thinking. Lange and Houran (Lange and Houran, 1998) write that poltergeist experiences are delusions "resulting from the affective and cognitive dynamics of percipients' interpretation of ambiguous stimuli". Some cultures attribute poltergeist activity to the souls of deceased relatives of the family or person: dybbuks in Jewish mythology for example, are often described as possessing the characteristics of a poltergeist.

Poltergeist activity has often been believed to be the work of malicious spirits. According to Allan Kardec, the founder of Spiritism, poltergeists are manifestations of disembodied spirits of low level, belonging to the sixth class of the third order. They are believed to be closely associated with the elements (fire, air, water, earth).<sup>786</sup>

#### CASE STUDY

Many years ago as young Christians, Nina and Tom Horn walked through a local mall during the Christmas season and came upon a New Age bookstore conducting a grand opening. In a derisive tone, Tom said to his wife, "Can you believe the lack of intelligence of some people?" He strolled casually into the store, snatched a book from the shelf, and began offering sarcastic commentary as he read from its pages. He could tell his wife was uncomfortable with what he was doing, so he placed the book back on the shelf and proceeded out of the store. Suddenly, a dull sensation hit the pit of his stomach and shot upward through his chest into his cranium. His head started spinning, powerful nausea took hold, his hands began to sweat, and he could tell he was about to collapse. It was literally as if something invisible had jumped on him and was injecting rapidly spreading poison throughout his body. He moved away from the shoppers and began praying under his breath, asking for forgiveness for his smart attitude, for his lack of caution, and for his lack of concern for the lost. He prayed for deliverance from evil and for healing of his body and mind. After more than an hour of such intercession, he was finally restored. He discovered a valuable lesson that day: The princes of this world are powerful and territorial, and he should enter spaces that have been dedicated to them only with the proper attitude and when guided by the Lord.<sup>787</sup>

The poltergeist manifestation/phenomenon is in actual fact called psychokinesis. This means that the causative powers originate in the human psyche. The psychic powers of people are stronger than their natural physical powers. People with these mediumistic powers are able to organise the energy of others as well. A spiritist medium uses not only his own mediumistic power, but also the mediumistic power of those who are present. Spiritists explain psychokinesis by reference to the operators on the other side, their helpers, who

---

<sup>786</sup> Wikipedia, Poltergeist [Online] Available from: <http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Poltergeist> [Accessed: 5 May 2014]

<sup>787</sup> Horn, T and Horn N (2010) *Forbidden Gates*. Missouri: Crane, pp. 81-82

bring their influence to bear from that other world on the material world. These otherworldly friends of the spiritists are demons. Effects from spiritism are usually not evident until a spiritist tries to free himself from the net of spiritism and comes to faith in Jesus Christ. As long as the spiritist serves the devil, he is left in peace.<sup>788</sup>

## CASE STUDY

Pastor and theologian Dr Robert Cornwall was a young minister in a sleepy little town near the Oregon coast. At Redwood Family Camp meeting in the 1970s, he had barely settled into leadership at the church when strange things began to happen for which he had no explanation. Objects in the building seemed to move around on their own, especially overnight, when the building was supposed to be unoccupied. He would hear the piano playing and go into the sanctuary to find nobody there. Doors would slam, pews would be discovered positioned backward against the wall, and his notes would disappear - then reappear. Members of the church reported similar phenomena, and Cornwall eventually learned that the activity had been going on for years. One night, hours after he had gone home to bed, Cornwall's telephone rang and the police chief was on the other end of the line. He wanted to know what kind of party Cornwall was sponsoring at the church. They thought maybe the youth group was having an overnight event that was getting out of hand. Assuring the officer that nobody was supposed to be in the building, Cornwall agreed to meet him at the church. On arrival, they noticed the lights inside the auditorium were going off and on, the piano was banging loudly, and what sounded like shouting of some kind could be heard throughout the edifice. As they pushed the entrance open, all activity inside the facility abruptly ceased. The lights were still on, but the noises had suddenly gone silent. They found every entryway locked, there were no signs of forced entry. Together with his board members and ministry leaders, Cornwall began a series of special prayers over the building in what today some might call a cleansing ceremony, to purge the house of worship of malevolent spirits mimicking trickster ghosts or poltergeists. But the results of these prayers were mixed, and Cornwall could not understand why. Whenever members of the church were inside the building and prayed, the phenomenon stopped. As soon as they would leave the facility, it would start up again. Cornwall discovered a copy of the original deed to the church property and other interesting documents. One of these records was very enlightening. It revealed that the structure, which was nearly one hundred years old and had been boarded up for over a decade before the organization Cornwall was a member of purchased it and turned it into a church, had originally been constructed by an occult group as a meeting place for their order. It had been dedicated as a residence for spirits of Lucifer as they move to and fro upon the Earth. As, soon as possible, a new church was erected across the street from the old one, and subsequently the original building was torn down and an asphalt parking lot was poured over the plot of land on which it had sat for nearly a century. From that day forward, all paranormal activity on the property ceased, and a powerful and important theological proposition was born in Cornwall's mind - that under certain conditions, Satan and his spirits have legal rights to property and people.<sup>789</sup>

---

<sup>788</sup> Brand, C M J, *Leadership in Spiritual Warfare and Counselling*. Pretoria: RÂDÂH Academy. Unpublished.

<sup>789</sup> Horn, T and Horn N (2010) *Forbidden Gates*. Missouri: Crane, pp.77-79

## **4.7.5 Powers of Darkness Associated with Sorcery, Witchcraft and Magick**

### **4.7.5.1 Lilith**

Also Lili, Lilitu, Lilet, Lizet. As the mother of the Succubae and of Night, Lilith is a symbol of night and magickal power, sorcery and witchcraft. Her essence is that of feminine strength and individual focus. The connection of Lilith with the cult of Vampirism has been noted by many, for through the Astral Plane this goddess manifests on the day side as her fleshing ground. The sacred bird of Lilith is the owl. One may seek to invoke, or identify with the goddess Lilith through the dream assumption of the owl form. Lilith's name was suspected to have derived from the Sumerian Babylonian Belitilli. One rather interesting connection is that one of the 17 names of Lilith is actually Kali. Imbolg is the fire festival of Lilith on the 2<sup>nd</sup> of February.

Samael in Hebrew texts is the husband of Lilith, the father of Cain. Samael is often referred to as Asmodeus. Asmodeus is the son/husband of Lilith (as Samael in some Hebrew lore). The God of dual ecstasies, Octinimos, also known as Baphomet, is the result of the self-alchemical union of the fallen seraph Samael and the Queen of the Night, Lilith. Baphomet is the centre of which chaos is formed by will.

Lilith sprinkles her powder of wolf and bat blood within the chalice which invariably leads to either knowledge or madness. Lilith is a representative of the night and therefore a connection or mirror of the Hebrew term Laylah Halyal, meaning night and death.<sup>790</sup>

Within the Black Tradition the Luciferian Trinity is composed of Samael, Lilith and Cain. To summarise, the goddess of Luciferian witchcraft is Lilith or Babalon, as described previously. She is also Hecate, the darkened moon goddess of the cunning circle, whose blessing is youth, imagination and death. The son is within you and that is Cain, the Baphometric daemon whose magick is the core essence of the religion of sorcery.

Lilith, as described in post-biblical literature, is viewed as the queen of demons and also the bride of the devil. She went to the caves near the Red Sea and copulated with fallen angels to beget other demons. She also taught the fallen angels how to form bodies and have sexual relations to give life to other dragon children. Az is the sexual name for Lilith

---

<sup>790</sup> Ford, M W (2003) *The book of the witch moon, a Grimoire of Luciferian Witchcraft, Vampirism and Chaos Sorcery*. Houston: Succubus Inner Publications, pp. 50, 59, 73, 78-79, 86-87, 127

(according to Manichaeism lore). When kissed, she causes menstruation, and is known also as the "great whore Lilith-Az".<sup>791</sup>

The demon goddess Lilith is represented throughout history as an owl. Lilith appears as a succubus in Aleister Crowley's *De Arte Magica*. In folklore that stems from medieval legend, succubus (plural succubae) is a demon who takes the form of a woman to seduce men in dreams. The male counterpart is the incubus. Succubae draw energy from men to sustain themselves.

Lilith is described as either a winged serpent or a screech owl (or an anthropomorphic combination thereof) who murders infants (it would appear from the perspective of modern medicine that infants who succumbed to Sudden Infant Death Syndrome would have been thought to have been victims of Lilith), and who torments men at night who sleep alone, the original succubus.

In modern mythology, Lilith has become a symbol to many feminists of the independent woman, who refuses to submit to the control of men. While this is certainly an aspect of her egotism, there is a strong sexual component to Lilith's nature that must also be recognised. She is more than just an "uppity woman", she is the power of primal lust in female form. And also, she is Death, and this cannot be ignored when working with her magically.<sup>792</sup>

#### **4.7.5.2 Kali**

Kali is the Black Destroyer, as well as nurturing mother. Often represented as a Black Demonic Goddess, Kali stands atop her husband, Shiva, holding in her hands blades dripping with blood, and upon her neck a necklace of human skulls. Kali is black because all that transpires returns to her; she is the Abyss in its feminine aspect. All time melts into this Goddess. Kali grants ecstasy to those who would invoke her in the rites of Tantra. The union of male and female with a magickal aim or focus presents an accessible window to the astral and dream plane.<sup>793</sup>

---

<sup>791</sup> Ford, M W (2008) *Beginning of Luciferian Magick*. Houston: Succubus Inner Publications, pp. 31-33

<sup>792</sup> Johnson, S, *The Bohemian Grove Exposed* [Online] Available from: <http://www.contendingfortruth.com/wp-content/uploads/Bohemian-Grove-Exposed-Edited-Version.pdf> [Accessed: 14 August 2014]

<sup>793</sup> Ford, M W (2003) *The book of the witch moon, a Grimoire of Luciferian Witchcraft, Vampirism and Chaos Sorcery*. Houston: Succubus Inner Publications, p. 59



#### **4.7.5.3 Babalon**

Babalon is the Qabalistically restored spelling of the biblical Babylon, the great whore. This goddess is in union with the Beast of 666 fame in the Book of Revelation. Babalon is the goddess who holds the cup of her fornications, from which the blood of the saints spilled. Babalon is the goddess of an opened spirit, the Luciferian mind. Babalon is also to be considered a Goddess of death and blood; she is actually a varied aspect of Lilith. Babalon may be invoked with various methods of sexual gnosis and blood magick, from which she would incarnate.

#### **4.7.5.4 Hecate**

Hecate is also known as queen of the witches, the dark goddess, protectress of herds and sailors, goddess of the crossroads (which would draw a parallel towards Baron Samedi of several Voodoo traditions who is the lord of the crossroads and the mysteries of death) as well as the sender of nocturnal visions (dreaming visitation). Hecate is depicted as a woman or hag with three heads, each facing a different direction.

Residing with her as well is Thanatos (god of death), Hypnos (god of sleep) and Morpheus (god of dreams). Hecate is known as the goddess of witches, of sorcery and the Cunning Craft. The vehicle wherein she travels is a chariot guided by several dragons. Hecate, or Diana, is based on the more balanced side of the lunar Goddess. She is the watcher of mountains, forests, childbirth and women. In her dark aspect she is known as the huntress or destroyer.

The magick light of Hecate is the backwards or black wisdom of Lucifer, the Morning Star. The gnostic god Lucifer, or the "Morning Star", is the god of the sun, a being of solar energy. Lucifer's goddess counterpart is the Arabian Al-Uzza, a warrior of the morning star. She is a combination of both lunar and solar energy, strength and vision. Hecate carries three torches. The date of August 13th is sacred to Hecate, the anniversary of the traditional festival held in her honour, which dates back to the Roman era. It is historically the same date as the celebration of Diana, who is said to be yet another aspect of the goddess.

Hecate is regarded as the Triple Mooned Goddess, the witch queen of primal darkness who is regarded as Babalon, Lilith and Az. Hecate is the goddess of the crossroads, from which

one seeks self-initiation by congress with her in the succubus-fetish spirit. Revered as the goddess of the dead, she is the queen of ghosts, shades and phantoms of the night. It is in the centre of her essence that one discovers there is no difference between Hecate, Lilith or Babalon.<sup>794</sup>

As the goddess of three forms she was Luna (the moon) in heaven, Diana (Artemis) on Earth, and Hecate of the underworld. She characterised the unknown and night-terrors that roamed the abandoned and desolate highways. The appeasement of this dark goddess was primarily because of her role as the sorceress of the afterlife, but true believers also feared Hecate's ability to afflict the mind with madness, as well as her influence over the night creatures.<sup>795</sup>

#### **4.7.5.5 Asmodeus**

Asmodeus is an ancient Daemon with his roots in Persia and later in Palestine. Asmodeus is mentioned frequently in Hebrew texts. Asmodeus appears as three headed (a connection with Hecate, being the tripled nature of the moon), with the faces of a ram, human and bull. He rides upon a dragon, vomits fire and carries a spear. The association of Asmodeus with witchcraft beyond the Triple Mooned nature derives from the tradition that the daemon is said to be the child of TubalCain and Naamah, given life by the reverse aspects associated with witchcraft and demonology. Asmodeus is the lord of the circle, within which full attainment and union occurs. The Lord of the Circle is also the Lord of Sorcery.

The conjuration of Asmodeus into the mirror and through the conscious is the first step of successful sorcery and witchcraft. Asmodeus is a god of sorcery and dark or night-side, earth-based magick, as is Belial. A typical devotee will affirm both spirits, as well as Lilith.<sup>796</sup>

#### **4.7.5.6 Thoth**

Thoth is seen as an ibis-headed man, a baboon, or sometimes as a "dog-headed ape" or a "dog-headed baboon." According to The Satanic Bible, Thoth is the Egyptian god of magic. It

---

<sup>794</sup> Ford, M W (2003) The book of the witch moon, a Grimoire of Luciferian Witchcraft, Vampirism and Chaos Sorcery. Houston: Succubus Inner Publications, pp. 61-65

<sup>795</sup> Horn, T R (1999) The gods who walk among us. Louisiana: Huntington House Publishers, p. 126

<sup>796</sup> Ford, M W (2003) The book of the witch moon, a Grimoire of Luciferian Witchcraft, Vampirism and Chaos Sorcery. Houston: Succubus Inner Publications, pp. 50, 72

was Thoth, with his powers of magic, who taught Isis the many spells which were to earn her the title of enchantress. Thoth's spells enabled Isis to restore Osiris to life and to conceive by him after his murder. Not only was Thoth the god of magic, but he was also the god of the dead. There is also a connection between Thoth and Freemasonry, since the Masonic rituals, especially the death and resurrection ceremony of the third degree, is a portrayal of the death and resurrection of the Egyptian god Osiris.

Thoth is credited with creating the Tarot cards, which may also be used as amulets. Thoth is one of many gods mentioned as a witchcraft deity. When envisioning the goddess and god, many of the Wiccans [practitioners of Witchcraft] see them as well-known Tammuz, Hecate, Ishtar, Cerridwen, Thoth, Tara, Aradia, Artemis, Pele, Apollo, Kanaloa, Bridget, Helios, Bran, Lugh, Hera, Cybele, Inanna, Maui, Ea, Athena, Lono, Marduk - the list is virtually endless. Many of their deities, with their corresponding histories, rites and mythic information, furnish the concept of deity for Wiccans. Thoth and Hermes (*see Chapter 5 – 5.4.11.2 – Hermes*) were also known by the name of Marduk. Marduk was the god of magicians and magic arts. The Phoenician name for Thoth is rendered as Taaut (Taut or Thaaud). He was the originator of the worship of serpents among the Phoenicians.<sup>797</sup>

#### **4.7.5.7 Kundalini**

The Kundalini spirit is a Fire Snake, the serpent in the form of a phallus, the Sacred Fire Serpent. It is a magical energy that rises through the spine and coils at the base of the spine. It causes the baptism of serpent fire up the person's spine, nervous system, endocrine system and immune system. It causes electro-magnetic charges in the body through the strongman of death and Hell, Apollyon, king over the bottomless pit. It releases serpent fire power, the power of the occult and a world of illusions. It twists a person's perception of the true nature of the Triune God and causes a person to see God through his veils.

Kundalini comes in many forms and manifestations, and opens the door to the false holy spirit, the goddess connected to Lucifer and to Luciferian spirits. It cripples every part of a person's body, emotions, mind and spirit, to render him spineless and powerless.

The Kundalini serpent fire can awake and release into a person's body through no fault of his own or against his will as counterfeit fire through occult surgery, injury, accidents,

---

<sup>797</sup> Ibid., pp. 26-27

trauma, childbirth, rape (as a child or adult), sodomy, witchcraft initiations, satanic dedication, satanic ritual abuse, any form of ritual, among other methods. Kundalini opens the door to the psychic realm, clairvoyance, astral projection, magic power, and allowing the total destruction of the king of the bottomless pit, Apollyon, to afflict the person.

Where Kundalini is awaked, voluntarily and involuntarily, it causes disturbances of the brain, psychological disturbances, awakening of dormant diseases, weight loss or gain, food cravings, out-of-body experiences, meditation for hours, sitting in a yoga position, Buddhism, desperation, believing that divinity has come to take one home, distortion of time and space, loss of consciousness, emotional disturbance, a sense of chaos descending, fear and anxiety, anorexia or bulimia, visions or hallucinations, disassociation, changes in breathing patterns, a sudden shift in values, major impact on relationships, suicidal thoughts, self-mutilation, hyperactivity, strange sounds coming from inside the body, profound stillness, chronic fatigue, anxiety disorders, obsessions, fibromyalgia, nerve problems.

It is a double-faced spirit of both good and evil, of uncontrolled anger, hate; the murderous force of the Nazis and also of the healing bliss of beauty and passive “goodwill to all men”; therefore making the person unstable and unpredictable.

The Kundalini spirit can create Luciferian unions, yogic unions, covenants, marriages, nuptial contracts, all unnatural joining and connections, sexual unions (with Satan or his agents) in the person's body, soul, spirit, or mind. It can furthermore establish ungodly contracts, marriage certificates, yokes of oppression, shame, depression and slavery (it creates slave houses/prisons with slave chains and handcuffs; and/or a slave ball that drags the person down – secured with padlocks).

The Kundalini fire destroys family lines, their bodies and minds and by releasing into the family lines astral travel into the seven heavens and to the seven planets, worship of the four constellations (Aquarius, Scorpio, Leo and Taurus), worship of the stars and worship of the male generative power of the celestial bodies of the universe. Seven zodiacs and seven planets are worshipped in Kundalini.

Kundalini can connect the person to satanic timelines and call-back programming to the cave dwellers of ancient times, cave art, shamanism, or tribal national identities. It can also connect the person to call-backs to the New age, to the empires of Egypt, Syria, Greece, and Rome, to the Nirvana of Hinduism.

Kundalini works through chakras that include the seven wheels of fire up the person's spine and the wheels of fire in the hands and feet. Kundalini power works in the hands, feet and genitals through the alliance with magic. These chakras can be activated by the five senses, creating a river of hellfire flowing through the body with the roar of the sun god Ra, and brings blackness and death to the body. The fire wheel chakras release Kundalini fire into all the body parts.<sup>798</sup>

Experts in Kundalini write very clearly about the dangers of incorrect activation and awakening of Kundalini, that it can cause psychosis and can be mistaken for schizophrenia or psychiatric disorders and even Alzheimer's disease and senility. Anxiety disorders, depression, or nerve disorders, such as MS, fibromyalgia, and chronic fatigue, are other diagnoses that might be made by doctors without Kundalini awareness.<sup>799</sup>

This is a quote from a New Age article<sup>800</sup>:

*Kundalini bestows liberation on Yogis and bondage on the ignorant, it is simply Goddess energy. It can be dangerous in that it can cause terrible headaches, increased body temperature, extreme anxiety, along with numerous other symptoms within the body and the mind. Prolonged symptoms can lead to neurosis and chronic physical pains, mental collapse, psychosis, demon possession or oppression. We automatically want to fight what is happening within us, especially when we don't fully understand the process. If we recognize the body as energy, once the feelings are recognized we can deal with them accordingly.*

The *yogis* (disciples of the yoga philosophy) practice mental abstraction, and are popularly supposed to attain superhuman powers. In some cases, their extreme ascetic practices have resulted in madness or mental vacancy and many claiming paranormal powers, as in Spiritualism, have turned out to be simply using jugglery and conjuring. Charlatans, of course, exist in all religions. The authentic prerequisites of the training of a yogi preclude such imposture and warn against the vanity of displaying supernatural powers.<sup>801</sup>

---

<sup>798</sup> Buys, A, The Tree of Knowledge and Serpent. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished, pp. 121-147

<sup>799</sup> Buys, A, The Tree of Knowledge and Serpent. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished, p. 148

<sup>800</sup> Ibid., p. 112

<sup>801</sup> Melton J G (2001) Encyclopedia of Occultism and Parapsychology, Fifth Edition, Volume A-N, USA:Gale Group, p. 784

#### **4.7.5.8 Pan**

It is in witchcraft that Pan - the symbol of Nature - still lives. Pan is represented as the child of Samael and Lilith. Pan/Cain takes many forms: in the spring he is the wild beast who is also the hunter, horned and decorated in the colours of the earthen flesh. Pan is the god of the forest.

When represented by any image at all, Pan was regularly portrayed with goat's legs and a shaggy beard, and his few legends make him out to be as lustful as his prototype. The characteristics that were ascribed to Pan in numerous lesser tales are well known: dark, terror-awakening, phallic, but not always malignant. He could, of course, sometimes be malignant, especially at noon, if he were awakened from his sleep. At night he led the dance of the nymphs, and he also ushered in the morning and kept watch from the mountain summits. Many love stories were told of him, in which he pursued nymphs. These chases often had dramatic results. Syrinx turned herself into a reed-pipe, from which Pan fashioned the syrinx, a herdsman's flute with a row of holes; Echo, chased by Pan, became a mere voice, mere refracted sound. But Pan's greatest passion was for Selene. Of this affair, it was told that the moon-goddess refused to keep company with the dark god, whereupon Pan, to please her, dressed himself in white ram skins, and thus seduced Selene.

Sexual exploits made him odious, therefore making him a sexually perverse spirit. He is known to have seduced several nymphs. He also boasted that he had coupled with all of Dionysus' drunken maenads. Pan represented freedom of spirit, natural instincts, and sinless love.<sup>802</sup>

He often tried to capture women, and because of his lustfulness, they lived in such fear of him that his name is still associated with fear, in adjectives like "panicky" and the noun "panic". He is a spirit of panic. In *The Satanic Bible*, Pan is called the Greek god of lust who was later relegated to devildom. Pan is an adulterer, homosexual and bisexual.<sup>803</sup>

---

<sup>802</sup> Roe, A, *The Great god Pan* [Online] Available from: <http://www.whitedragon.org.uk/articles/pan.htm> [Accessed: 7 August 2014]

<sup>803</sup> Brand, C, *Sexual Brokenness and Deviation Part 2*. Pretoria: RÂDÂH. Unpublished, pp. 19-20

#### **4.7.5.9 Mami Wata**

Mami Wata is a water-spirit, sometimes described as a mermaid figure, who can be found throughout the western coastal regions and into central Africa. Mami Wata is described as having long dark hair, very fair skin and compelling eyes. Although she may appear to her devotees (in dreams and visions) as a beautiful mermaid, complete with tail, she is also said to walk the streets of modern African cities in the guise of a gorgeous but elusive woman. She is interested in all things contemporary: some of her favourite offerings include sweets, imported perfumes, sunglasses and Coca-Cola.

Mami Wata's colours are red and white. Those she afflicts with visions and temptations, and who experience her as an obsession or an illness, may wear the red of sickness and dangerous heat. Others who have a more positive orientation towards the spirit may show their blessings by wearing white. Most devotees wear a combination of red and white clothing. Mami Wata is also said to have a number of avatars on Earth, mortal women who have the same look as the deity and who act as her daughters. Mami Wata may give wealth to her devotees, her daughters or to her (male) spouses, but she is never known to give fertility. Some stories suggest that the fish under the waters are her children, and that she uses them as firewood.<sup>804</sup>

Mami Wata is generally known as the mermaid, and sometimes called Sirene or Madame Poisson. She is called Queen of the Ocean and Wonderful. A potential devotee may find Mami Wata worrying him in his dreams or suffer from an infliction such as poor health, mental illness, or infertility. In art she is shown as a siren, an image of temptation or a sex object. She is often called Mamba Muntu, crocodile person.<sup>805</sup>

Women sometimes initiate relationships with personal water spirits in order to overcome infertility. These spirits have a reputation for jealousy and expensive tastes. They can be blamed for a variety of physical, material, and emotional problems if their demands are not met.<sup>806</sup>

---

<sup>804</sup> Encyclopaedia Mythica, Mami Wata [Online] Available from: [http://www.pantheon.org/articles/m/mami\\_wata.html](http://www.pantheon.org/articles/m/mami_wata.html) [Accessed: 8 September 2014]

<sup>805</sup> Isichei, E (2002) *Voices of the Poor in Africa*. Rochester: University of Rochester Press

<sup>806</sup> Hackett, R I J, *Mermaids and End-time Jezebels* [Online] Available from: <http://web.utk.edu/~rhackett/mwucla.pdf> [Accessed: 8 September 2014]

## CASE STUDY

There was a student of mine whose behaviour started giving cause for concern. He would wander in and out of classrooms with a wild-eyed look. Attempts to heal his mental condition failed at both the local psychiatric hospital as well as a local spiritual church. His worsening mental condition was explained as possession by Mami Wata spirit.<sup>807</sup>

### 4.7.5.10 Anubis

The god of the dark wisdom. God of the dead, Anubis opened the roads to the other world and presided over embalmment. After the funeral, Anubis would take the dead by the hand and introduce him into the presence of the sovereign judges, where the soul of the deceased would be weighed. It is Anubis' duty to attend to the ritual preparation of bodies, to weigh the heart of every man on the scale of justice, and to judge a man's good and bad deeds on Earth. Anubis is one of the gods adored in witchcraft.

Anubis is depicted in the shape of a dog (or a jackal) and believed to be one of the hell-dogs from the south. These were originally believed to be animals or birds but in later years were anthropomorphised and pictured with human bodies with the head of the animal or bird. One of the prerequisites for the worship of Anubis is the burying of babies alive, which release lower vibrating energy through terror used by reptilians, half-bred and full bred.<sup>808</sup>

### 4.7.6 Testimony on the Workings of Witchcraft

Dr Nathan Uzroma delivers the following testimony on how witchcraft can contribute to mental illness in his book *How to overcome Witches and Wizards and all the Powers of Darkness*<sup>809</sup>:

*In the past when I was a high master of the Abra Melin witches of the realm of Gobi Desert, I used the spirits of witchcraft in the form of wild beasts to kill and maim several people. There was a girl at Umuahia, Nigeria, who offended me and I sent eight spirits of witchcraft to fight her. The eight spirits took the form of wolves who pursued the girl in the dream. Finally, they captured and ate her in that dream experience. The moment the girl woke up from the dream, she became mad physically*

---

<sup>807</sup> Ibid.

<sup>808</sup> Ibid., pp. 27-28

<sup>809</sup> Uzorma, I N (2007) *How to overcome Witches & Wizards & all the Powers of Darkness*. Nigeria: Harbinger Christian Publications, p. 30



## **4.8. SOCIAL CULTURE STRUCTURES**

The sociocultural perspective combines two areas of study: social psychology, which is the study of groups, social roles, and rules of social actions and relationships; and cultural psychology, which is the study of cultural norms, values, and expectations. These two areas are related in that they are both about the effect that people have on one another, either individually or in a larger group such as a culture.

Russian psychologist Lev Vygotsky (1978) also used sociocultural concepts in forming his sociocultural theory of children's cognitive development. The sociocultural perspective is important because it reminds people that the way they and others behave (or even think) is influenced not only by whether they are alone, with friends, in a crowd, or part of a group but also by the social norms, fads, class differences, and ethnic identity concerns of the particular culture in which they live.

Cross-cultural research also fits within this perspective. In cross-cultural research, the contrasts and comparisons of a behaviour or issue are studied in at least two or more cultures. This type of research can help illustrate the different influences of environment (culture and training) when compared to the influence of heredity (genetics, or the influence of genes on behaviour).<sup>810</sup>

## **4.9. ENVIRONMENTAL STRESSORS**

Stressors that are found in our surroundings are called environmental stressors. Everyday life is full of environmental stressors that cause minor irritations. If you use an alarm clock to wake up, the loud noise from your alarm is an environmental stressor. Extreme temperatures are also environmental stressors and can lead to discomfort. Other common environmental stressors include noise, crowding, air quality, colours, tornadoes and other natural disasters, war and other manmade disasters, light and insects.

Recent research has linked extreme temperatures, crowding, and noise with increased levels of discomfort and aggression. Studies have also shown that crime rates are higher during hot summer days. Different colours can raise or lower your stress levels. For

---

<sup>810</sup> Ciccarelli S K and White J N (2012) Psychology. USA: Prenticehall, p. 15

example, green is often associated with life and growth and is known to reduce tension and anxiety. Exposure to light can improve your mood and decrease fatigue, while prolonged exposure to darkness can interfere with sleep patterns and lead to symptoms of depression.<sup>811</sup>

#### 4.10. OCCULT CONTROL

The underlying theme of control will always be the manipulation of the human mind. One can only control billions of people by tactics of “divide and rule”. The ultimate manipulation and control will be to take total control of a person’s mind, up to the point of driving the person crazy, in order to immobilise them; unable to think for themselves, and defend themselves; to create a total zombie state.

Modern mind control is both technological and psychological. For as long as Man has pursued power over the masses, mind control has been orchestrated by those who study human behaviour in order to bend large populations to the will of a small “elite” group. Today, Mankind has entered a perilous phase where mind control has taken on a physical, scientific dimension that threatens to become a permanent state. For the purpose of this study, only manipulation and domination of human behaviour will be examined.<sup>812</sup>

When mind reading and mind control are used against a person it is sometimes referred to as “mind rape”. The reason is that in, general mind, reading is not used to observe but instead to control a person in illegal ways or to inflict maximum damage (including death) on a person. Mind rape occurs whenever one's brain feels as though it has been assaulted viciously by some event or entity in reality and when someone can control and manipulate someone's thoughts and therefore their actions.<sup>813</sup> Dr Joost A. M. Meerloo expresses the attitude of the majority of psychologists in calling it “mind rape”, and warns that it poses a great *danger of destruction of the spirit*, which can be compared to the threat of total physical destruction<sup>814</sup>

Menticide is an old crime against the human mind and spirit but systematised anew. It is an

---

<sup>811</sup> Education Portal, Environmental Stressors: Examples, Definition & Types [Online] Available from: <http://education-portal.com/academy/lesson/environmental-stressors-examples-definition-types.html#lesson> [Accessed: 14 August 2014]

<sup>812</sup> EMVS, Artificial/Synthetic Telepathy and Mind Control [Online] Available from: <http://emvsinfo.blogspot.com/2012/03/artificialsynthetic-telepathy-and-mind.html> [Accessed: 24 June 2014]

<sup>813</sup> EMVS, Artificial/Synthetic Telepathy and Mind Control [Online] Available from: <http://emvsinfo.blogspot.com/2012/03/artificialsynthetic-telepathy-and-mind.html> [Accessed: 24 June 2014]

<sup>814</sup> Meerloo, J A M, The Rape of the Mind [Online] Available from: <http://www.ninehundred.net/control/> [Accessed: 24 June 2014]

organised system of psychological intervention and judicial perversion through which a powerful dictator can imprint his own opportunistic thoughts upon the minds of those he plans to use and destroy. The terrorised victims finally find themselves compelled to express complete conformity to the tyrant's wishes.<sup>815</sup>

#### 4.10.1 Zero Point (Maya)

In his book *Occult Grand Master*, lyke Nathan Uzorma explains that the fifth abnormal faculty of the mind is the medium of destruction that tracks evil spirits to come and manipulate a person. It is through this abnormal faculty that one enters into what is called *Maya* in the Sanskrit, which means 'zero point' or illusion. The *zero point* of the five perversions or propensities of the fifth abnormal faculty is of the mind. In this state at *zero point*, an individual can be controlled, managed, dominated, or manipulated by the forces of darkness even beyond someone's awareness.

Uzorma iterates that man gets weakened and flummoxed in the mind by accusations, making the believer unable to pray. He continues by declaring

*no one on earth can be manipulated by an evil spirit except through the fifth abnormal faculty of the mind.*

Esoteric or metaphysical power can dominate a person when he is either physically asleep, or at zero point. Apart from the state known as *zero point* (Maya) all the known projected attacks against a person can only subdue him in a sleep state.<sup>816</sup>

The five perversions or propensities of the fifth abnormal faculty are: (1) lust - making up 50%; (2) anger – 20%; (3) greed – 10%; (4) vanity – 10%; and (5) attachment to mundane things making up 10%.

At zero point, all the psychic gates (gates of the power of the body) are open for manipulation. The power of sin opens the gates for power to pass in and out. The seven gates in are: anus, sex organ, naval, heart, throat, forehead centre and centre between the

---

<sup>815</sup> Ibid.

<sup>816</sup> Uzorma, I N (2005) *Occult Grandmaster now in Christ*. Volume 1. Nigeria: Harbinger Christian Publications, p. 13, 17

eyes. The ten gates out are the two eyes, the two nostrils, the two ears, mouth, naval, sex organ and anus.<sup>817</sup>

The believer needs to ensure that all these gates are sealed with the Blood of the Lamb (Jesus Christ). This is automatically achieved when taking communion. Satan blinds the minds of people due to lack of: (1) faith, (2) trust in God, (3) love for God, (4) and obedience to God (2 Corinthians 4:4).

#### **4.10.2 Magical Will**

The core idea of magical will is that the name of the god or goddess embodies the very essence of the deity and that by invoking that sacred vibration, one is not only tuning into the archetypal level of awareness associated with these sacred beings, but actually attaining mastery of them. This is found in the magic of the Hermetic Order of the Golden Dawn, where focused intent enables the magician to rise through the planes of inner space, through the symbolic and mythological realms of the Tree of Life in Kabbalah. This idea is also found in Shamanism.

Magic of this sort has a spiritual and metaphysical intent. Magicians are at the centre of their own particular universe. With their sacred formula, ritual invocations and concentrated willpower, they believe they can bring certain forces to bear; they believe that he or she can will to effect.<sup>818</sup> One form of this magical practice still in operation today is known as the "Cabalistic ritual magic of the Golden Dawn". Their techniques include transformation into an animal form and invisibility practiced by the ninjas and the assassin-mystics of feudal Japan.<sup>819</sup>

#### **4.10.3 Herbs**

Religious groups, shamans, medicine men, witches and cults have been using mind altering drugs throughout history. The medieval witches used potions of hemlock and aconite for their flying ointments. These are herbs (natural drugs) which will create delirium. Witnesses reported that covens during the medieval ages would apply the potion of hemlock and

---

<sup>817</sup> Ibid, p. 29-31

<sup>818</sup> Drury (2003), page 82-84

<sup>819</sup> Greer (1997), page xv, 267, 275. John Michael Greer first encountered the Western esoteric tradition in 1975 and has been actively involved in it as a student, practitioner and teacher since.

aconite to cause their new witch to go delirious, and then would transport the person from one point to another, whereupon they would be told that they flew there.

The Haitian satanic *Vodoun* cult, which has been manipulated by the CIA/Illuminati, has sorcerers called *bokors*. The *Vodoun* cult in Haiti is being used for trauma-based mind control. One of the features of the cult is to take the plant *Datura stramonium*, mixed with other substances. The plant provides the active ingredient of a potent psychoactive drug, the "zombie cucumber" which produces amnesia and pseudo-death of the victim. The brain doesn't die, but the mind is shut off. The victim is brought back to life as a zombie, a slave of the bokor. The power to create a zombie is called *zombificant* in French-creole. The ceremonies to kill and resurrect the zombie are full of magic and demonology also.

Magic, drugs and demonology have always gone hand in hand. Drugs remove the part of the will that prevents demonic possession. Drugs are considered powerful demonising substances by those skilled in Demonology. If demonic possession is seen as part of mind-control, then cocaine, hashish, crack, and some of the other drugs are part of the effort to enslave people. In Basutoland in the Drakensberg, the Zulu witchdoctors use drugs and trauma to create tokoloshes (mind-controlled zombie slaves). It is said that in recent years, they are using less children and more baboons and monkeys to obtain tokoloshes. The point is that drugs have been, and continue to be, used by the occult world for controlling people.

Intelligence agencies working through the U.S. government financed drug research. An example is that of Dr Beecher of Harvard University, who \$150,000 via the U.S. Army Surgeon General's Office to investigate "the development and application of drugs which will aid in the establishment of psychological control." Research into drugs for mind-control began in 1947 at Bethesda Naval Hospital in Maryland. A CIA report described this research as intended to isolate and synthesise pure drugs for use in effecting psychological entry into, and control of, the individual. At the California Medical Facility at Vacaville, Dr Arthur Nugent conducted research into drugs for mind control under the auspices of the CIA. The Bureau of Narcotics worked with the CIA to establish "safe houses" where drugs which were seized were given to victims.

The military did drug research/programming at the Army Chemical School in Ft. McClellan, AL and at the Edgewood Chemical Center. In 1958, Dr Louis Gottschalk, working for the CIA, suggested that addictive drugs be used to control people. Some GIs who became

addicted to painkilling drugs were subsequently blackmailed by withholding the painkillers until they complied with the demands made of them.<sup>820</sup>

Herbs often have a drug-like effect. What follows are examples of herbs and what effects they can have on a person.<sup>821</sup>

Herb	Effect
Ayahuasca	A Brazilian vine whose alkaloids, such as Telapatin, are said to produce a telepathic state where the recipient can see through people like glass and read their minds
Bayberry	Haemorrhaging
Calamas	Part of a cerebral tonic
Caladium sequinum	Injected into body parts to cause excruciating pain
Hemlock	A poison, used more to kill than for programming
Lady's Slipper	Relaxant
Kava Kava	Sedative
Mistletoe	For dizziness, and lower blood pressure
Opium	Enchanting trip
Saffron	Sedative
Sandalwood and henbane	When burned, the fumes cause convulsions and temporary insanity
Skullcap	Relaxant
Witch Hazel	Haemorrhaging
Cocaine	Is reported to give people a feeling of power, is highly addictive and acts as an aphrodisiac.

#### **4.10.4 Occult Poisoning**

Occult poisons are all mixed with demons and demonic powers. Therefore, there are two things to be dealt with: the physical poison and the demons. Some common substances which are available in most any occultic bookstore are not, in themselves, very toxic. But,

---

<sup>820</sup> Springmeier F and Wheeler C, The Illuminati Formula used to Create an Undetectable Mind Control Slave [Online] Available from: [http://www.whale.to/b/springmeier\\_formula.html](http://www.whale.to/b/springmeier_formula.html) [Accessed: 28 July 2014]

<sup>821</sup> Ibid.

when combined with special incantations, they can be deadly. Others are very deadly and must be ordered “under-the-counter” in occult bookstores or through occultic supply houses.

Some of the common substances used in poison potions are:

Ova ursi oil	Tannis root
Valerain root	Wormroot
Vervain oil	Cyanide
Muckroot	Hemlock
Mandrake	Curare
Bloodroot	Ginseng root
Quicksilver (mercury)	Double-cross powder (cyanide)

Unfortunately, as modern scientific technology progresses, witchcraft takes advantage of all the advances. Some poisons also come in powdered form and can be placed on paper or on gummed stickers or labels. The poisons can be absorbed through your skin from the paper, or taken into your body by licking the stickers, etc.

One characteristic common to almost all occult poisonings is that the symptoms of the illness frequently come on every day at the same time as the poisoning occurred: such things as intense headaches, muscle aches, fever, weakness, etc. Also, these symptoms will frequently worsen at sunset, as the demons become much more active at dusk and throughout the night. Some of the most powerful poisoning incantations come out of writings called the Grimories. These are very old books that were written by the alchemists of the middle ages in Europe. They were the scientists who tried to turn common substances into gold, and bring life out of inanimate substances. They were, in reality, very powerful sorcerers. These volumes are still available today, for a price, but are strictly under-the-counter materials.

The three common demons used in the various poisoning incantations from the Grimories are: (1) Valefor, king of all occult medicine and death. Valefor cannot be called up without a human sacrifice; (2) Alloces, king of torment; and (3) Andres, lord of swift destruction - especially mentally.

Occultic poisonings have limited time intervals in which they can work. These are governed by the astrological signs AND astronomy. Most poison incantations are done at the rise of a particular planet, such as Saturn, and their effect dissipates when the planet sets. This is

usually a period of one to three months. If it is a bad time of the year for the stars, they will use a more deadly physical poison.<sup>822</sup>

#### **4.10.5 Mind Control**

Mind control (also known as brainwashing, coercive persuasion, mind abuse, thought control, or thought reform) can be defined as a systematic process used to influence a person's identity (thoughts, emotions and beliefs) and to form an identity in the person that conforms to the belief system and needs of the controller. Mind control was formerly called "brainwashing". Brainwashing carried out by the Chinese was discovered during the Second World War. The Chinese use a method of water torture to force a person to forget or remember anything.<sup>823</sup>

Throughout the course of history, several accounts have been recorded describing rituals and practices resembling mind control. One of the earliest writings giving reference to the use of occultism to manipulate the mind can be found in the Egyptian Book of the Dead. It is a compilation of rituals, heavily studied by today's secret societies, which describes methods of torture and intimidation (to create trauma), the use of potions (drugs) and the casting of spells (hypnotism), ultimately resulting in the total enslavement of the initiate. Other events ascribed to black magic, sorcery and demon possession (where the victim is animated by an outside force) are also ancestors of Monarch programming.

It was, however, during the 20th century that mind control became a science in the modern sense of the term, where thousands of subjects have been systematically observed, documented and experimented on. One of the first methodical studies on trauma-based mind control was conducted by Josef Mengele, a physician working in Nazi concentration camps. He initially gained notoriety for being one of the SS physicians who supervised the selection of arriving prisoners, determining who was to be killed and who were to become forced labourers. However, he is mostly known for performing grisly human experiments on camp inmates, including children, for which Mengele was called the "Angel of Death".<sup>824</sup>

---

<sup>822</sup> Layman Evangelism, Spiritual Warfare, Wounds Inflicted by Demons or Satanists [Online] Available from: [http://www.layevangelism.com/greference/topicscip/s/spiritual\\_warfare/13.htm](http://www.layevangelism.com/greference/topicscip/s/spiritual_warfare/13.htm) [Accessed: 27 August 2014]

<sup>823</sup> Buys, A, The ABC of DID. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished, p. 47

<sup>824</sup> The Vigilant Citizen, Origins and Techniques of Monarch Mind Control [Online] Available from: <http://vigilantcitizen.com/hidden-knowledge/origins-and-techniques-of-monarch-mind-control/> [Accessed: 24 July 2014]



There are four components of mind control: (1) behaviour control; (2) thought control; (3) emotional control; and (4) information control. The mind control model must be distinguished from mere deception. Basically, the mind control model assumes inability to choose, while deception interferes with the accuracy of the knowledge one uses to make a choice.<sup>825</sup>

A number of environmental factors have been identified which operate to break down a person's will and rational capacity, replacing the individual's independent thought processes with ordered, prescribed thought patterns. Physical exhaustion, isolation from familiar frames of reference, and intense criticism and humiliation create confusion, anxiety, and psychological disorientation in the brainwashing victim. In addition, strict control over communication and information work to short-circuit rational thought so that patterned responses and a simplistic, dichotomous perception of reality may be substituted. Eventually, prescribed thought patterns are ingrained on the victim's mind, controlling his independent will.<sup>826</sup>

#### **4.10.5.1 Techniques of Mind Control**

There are many techniques that can be used to get control over a person's mind. The following can be seen as components of mind control<sup>827</sup>:

- Isolation – the isolation chamber was used to deprive the victim of light and sound stimuli and create disorientation in the mind and the inability to reason and to resist the “programme” put in by the programmer; isolation of normal contact with human beings to create confusion and fear;
- Control over channels of communication was used to deprive the victim of normal relationships and normal access to information;
- Control over information;
- Inadequate diet where, for example, salt and water is removed;
- Degradation of the self;
- Induction of uncertainty, fear, guilt, confusion;
- Alteration of harshness and leniency in context of discipline;
- Secrecy;

---

<sup>825</sup> Martin, W (1997) *The Kingdom of the Cults*. Bethany House Publishers, pp. 44-45

<sup>826</sup> Brown, L B (1991) *He Who Controls the Mind Controls the Body: False Imprisonment, Religious Cults, and the Destruction of Volitional Capacity*. Valparaiso University Law Review. Volume 25 Number 3, pp. 412-413

<sup>827</sup> Buys, A, *The ABC of DID*. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished, pp. 47-48

- Pairing of opposites like pain and pleasure;
- Confusion between right and ( e.g. to cry if in pain, to feel sorry);
- Mind altering drugs that can instantly alter certain brain/thought functions are used (these mind altering drugs are developed from modern technology and from ancient witchcraft formulas);
- Electroshock devices are used to give instant control over the conscious mind (the exact mind altering shock of an exact time duration according to the subjects brainwave activity and/or heartbeat);
- Electronic programming - the use of sound waves that are inaudible to the conscious ear that affect only the most powerful part of the mind (the subconscious);
- Electroshock with a stun gun to erase the memory of the victim;
- Hanging victims upside down by their ankles.

#### **4.10.5.2 Modern Methods of Mind Control**

The following are some modern day methods that can be used to gain control of the minds of individuals<sup>828</sup>:

1. *Education*: this is the most obvious, yet still remains the most insidious. It has always been a would-be dictator's ultimate fantasy to educate naturally impressionable children, thus it has been a central component of Communist and Fascist tyrannies throughout history.
2. *Advertising and Propaganda*: Edward Bernays has been cited as the inventor of the consumerist culture that was designed primarily to target people's self-image (or lack thereof) in order to turn a want into a need. This was initially envisioned for products such as cigarettes, for example. However, Bernays also noted that propaganda is the executive arm of the invisible government. This can be seen most clearly in the modern police state and the growing "citizen snitch" culture, wrapped up in the pseudo-patriotic War on Terror. The increasing consolidation of media has enabled the entire corporate structure to merge with government, which now utilises the concept of propaganda placement. Media, print, movies, television, and cable news can now work seamlessly to integrate an overall message which seems to have the ring

---

<sup>828</sup> Brain Computer, Computing Brain for Control [Online] Available from: <http://mind-computer.com/> [Accessed: 25 July 2014]

of truth because it comes from so many sources, simultaneously. When one becomes attuned to identifying the main “message,” one will see this imprinting everywhere.

3. *Predictive Programming:* This has its origins in predominantly elitist Hollywood, where the big screen can offer a big vision of where society is headed. Just look back at the books and movies which were thought to be far-fetched, or “science fiction”, and take a close look around at society today
4. *Sports, Politics, Religion:* Some might take offense at seeing religion, or even politics, put alongside sports as a method of mind control. The central theme is the same throughout: divide and conquer. The techniques are quite simple: short-circuit the natural tendency of people to cooperate for their survival, and teach them to form teams bent on domination and winning. Sports has always had a role as a key distraction that corrals tribal tendencies into a non-important event, which in modern America has reached ridiculous proportions, where protests will break out over a sports celebrity leaving their city, but essential human issues such as liberty are giggled away as inconsequential. Political discourse is strictly presented as a left-right paradigm of easily-controlled opposition, while religion is the backdrop of nearly every war throughout history.
5. *Food, Water, and Air:* Additives, toxins, and other food poisons literally alter brain chemistry to create docility and apathy. Fluoride in drinking water has been proven to lower IQ; Aspartame and MSG are excito-toxins which excite brain cells until they die; and easy access to the fast food that contains these poisons generally has created a population that lacks focus and motivation for any type of active lifestyle. Most of the modern world is perfectly groomed for passive receptiveness, and acceptance, of the dictatorial elite.
6. *Drugs* can be any addictive substance, but the mission of mind controllers is to be sure you are addicted to something. One major arm of the modern mind control agenda is psychiatry, which aims to define all people by their disorders, as opposed to their human potential. This was foreshadowed in books such as *Brave New World*. Today, it has been taken to even further extremes as a medical tyranny has taken hold, where nearly everyone has some sort of disorder, particularly those who question authority. The use of nerve drugs in the military has led to record

numbers of suicides. Worst of all, the modern drug state now has over 25% of U.S. children on mind-numbing medication.

7. *Military testing*: the military has a long history as the testing ground for mind control. The military mind is perhaps the most malleable, as those who pursue life in the military generally resonate to the structures of hierarchy, control, and the need for unchallenged obedience to a mission. For the increasing number of military personnel questioning their indoctrination, a recent story highlighted DARPA's plans for trans-cranial mind-control helmets that will keep them focused.
8. *The electromagnetic spectrum* is an electromagnetic soup enveloping us all, charged by modern devices of convenience which have been shown to have a direct impact on brain function. In a tacit admission of what is possible, one researcher has been working with a god helmet to induce visions by altering the electromagnetic field of the brain. Man's modern soup has us passively bathed by potentially mind-altering waves, while a wide range of possibilities such as cell phone towers is now available to the would-be mind controller for more direct intervention.
9. *Televisions, Computers, and "flicker rate"*: It's bad enough that what is programmed on TV is engineered; transmission of the message is made easier by literally lulling a person to sleep, making it a psycho-social weapon. Flicker rate tests show that alpha brain waves are altered, producing a type of hypnosis, which doesn't bode well, considering the latest revelation that lights can transmit coded Internet data by flickering faster than the eye can see. The computer's flicker rate is lower than that of the television, but through video games, social networks, and a basic structure which overloads the brain with information, the rapid pace of modern communication induces an ADHD state. A study of video games revealed that extended play can result in lower blood flow to the brain, sapping emotional control. Furthermore, role-playing games of lifelike war and police state scenarios serve to desensitise a connection to reality.
10. *Nanobots*: from science fiction horror, directly to the modern brain; the nanobots are on the way. Direct brain modification has already been packaged as neuro-engineering. Direct brain manipulation via fibre-optics could make someone happy with the press of a button. Nanobots take the process to an automated level, rewiring the brain molecule by molecule. Worse, these mini droids can self-replicate, forcing one to wonder how this genie would ever get back in the bottle once unleashed. This new

technology is expected to emerge by early 2020. A concerted effort is underway to manage and predict human behaviour so that the social scientists and the dictatorial elite can control the masses and protect themselves from the fallout of a fully awake free humanity.

#### **4.10.5.3 Hypnotic Mind Control**

Hypnosis can be used to anchor suggestions about sleep patterns, panic programmes, phobias, health healing programmes and health worsening programmes, pain control and pain programmes, motivation programmes, a suicide programme called hypno-sleep, an insanity programme, and countless other uses.

Hypnosis or hypnotic trance is a form of dissociation. There are a number of types of dissociation: amnesia, somnambulistic states, localised paralyses, anaesthesia, and hallucinations. Hypnosis can reproduce all of these dissociative states. The mind naturally hypnotises itself under certain conditions.

Hypnosis appears to affect several areas of the brain - the brain stem is modified in the hypnotic state, and the midbrain centres are inhibited so that other areas, the motor, sensory and memory areas, can be manipulated. Further, not all hypnosis works the same way. Hypnosis can be used on the intellectual part of the mind, the social-spiritual part of the mind, and the primitive reproductive part of the mind.

Hypnosis is a valuable tool to move the mind to different neurophysiological states and to get the conscious mind to access different levels of the subconscious mind. Hypnosis can also play a role in working around amnesia, since both are types of dissociation. Hyperventilation helps a person induce a hypnotic trance. Torture, depersonalisation, fear and acute anxiety stimulate the body to hyperventilate. So the fear, torture and depersonalisation are aids for the hypnotist to help induct a person into a hypnotic trance.

Hypnotic cues can be given to cause the body to go into various dissociative states. This could consist of a post-hypnotic suggestion that causes hyperventilation and an accompanying trance state. Hypnotic cues that are tied to everyday objects enhance the programming. Everything in life becomes a cue to reinforce the programming. The power of hypnosis is often underrated, because the power of the mind is underrated. The mind can

decide to control its breathing, heartbeat, blood pressure and other things that were once thought to be involuntary. The brain produces a substance which is a tiny peptide molecule called enkephalin, which acts just like morphine and reduces pain. The brain can be hypnotically trained to release enkephalin so that the brain doesn't perceive pain.

A common hypnotic device for washing away pain is running water. The victim is hypnotically told to go to a waterfall and wash their pain away. (According to a programmer the average healing rate is three times quicker under hypnosis than without). Another danger inherent in hypnosis is complications (side effects) that hit a percentage of those who are subjected to it.

A study showed that 31% of the 120 university students participating in a study of hypnosis had complications that lasted from five minutes to three hours after the trance, which included headaches, dizziness, nausea and stiff necks.<sup>829</sup>

Another example (not part of the study above) is a woman who, after the one and only hypnotic session she was the subject of, developed the complication of having nightmares of snakes crawling all over her.<sup>830</sup>

#### **4.10.5.4 Religious Cults**

Many of the processes common to the mind control environment are evident in the recruitment and conversion practices of religious cults.

The prevalence of religious cults has grown steadily in proportion to the increase in societal pressures and problems. Countless examples exist of converts who renounce families, friends, and career plans to devote all of their resources and energy to extremist and even bizarre religious groups. Critics of religious cults charge that the cults' sole purpose is to prey on and exploit unsuspecting youths for selfish ends. Such critics tell stories of slave-like devotees who work endless hours to make their leaders rich, while themselves living in conditions seriously detrimental to their physical health and mental stability. Cults are currently attacked for using coercive persuasion or mind control techniques during recruitment and indoctrination. More specifically, cult critics have charged cults with using

---

<sup>829</sup> Springmeier F and Wheeler C, The Illuminati Formula used to Create an Undetectable Mind Control Slave [Online] Available from: [http://www.whale.to/b/springmeier\\_formula.html](http://www.whale.to/b/springmeier_formula.html) [Accessed: 28 July 2014]

<sup>830</sup> Ibid.

deceptive recruitment tactics to lure vulnerable young persons into attending initial meetings and retreats, while passing the cult off as an organisation concerned with social or political problems.

While attending these meetings and retreats, critics contend, young persons (recruits) are subjected to methods of behaviour modification and psychological manipulation aimed at creating complete emotional and mental dependency on the cult. The most serious charge is that the processes that young recruits are subjected to result in complete mind control and loss of individual autonomy; eventually, converts become robot-like, with every thought and action controlled by the cult. The constant barrage of activity during meetings and retreats, combined with restricted food intake and little sleep, leaves the recruit physically exhausted and mentally fatigued, thereby impairing his rational capacity. The recruit is then emotionally manipulated by the imposition of guilt, fear, and anxiety.

Of course, any person contacted by a cult recruiter has the right to voluntarily choose to associate with a religious cult. Certainly, plausible reasons exist as to why a young person might find a religious cult attractive. Disillusionment with the immorality of today's society might cause some people to seek a haven in religious sects which strictly regulate alcohol, sex, and money. Some people might find that a cult's communal environment fulfils a need for sorely-lacking interpersonal contact, while others might find welcome relief from frustration and uncertainty in a cult's rigidly prescribed lifestyle.

Whatever the reason, a person clearly has the right to remain in a cult environment as long as he has voluntarily chosen to do so. Equally certain, however, is the right of any individual who is contacted by a cult recruiter to choose not to associate with a religious cult. Indeed, several deleterious effects associated with life in a cult environment have compelled some individuals to leave. For example, one cannot ignore the destructive experiences of ex-members who tell of deception, manipulation, and psychological dominance that left them zombie-like and unable to think or function on their own. Furthermore, some ex-cultists have suffered severe psychological trauma and dysfunction as a result of cult practices.

When a religious cult subjects a potential recruit to a mind control environment, that individual's ability to freely choose to leave the cult may be destroyed. Mind control can completely subordinate the will of some recruits to the cult's control. As a result, the recruit may be rendered incapable of forming an independent volitional desire. When mind control destroys a recruit's volitional capacity, the recruit's ability to freely choose to leave the cult is

destroyed. Therefore, when a cult intentionally subjects a recruit to mind control, the cult compels the recruit to remain with it as effectively as if the cult had physically restrained the recruit; psychologically he is incapable of forming a will to leave.<sup>831</sup>

#### **4.10.5.5 Silva Mind Control**

José Silva, founder of the Silva Method, developed a programme that trained people to enter certain brain states characterised by enhanced awareness. He also developed several systematic mental processes to use while in these states, allowing a person to mentally project with a specific intent. According to Silva, once the mind is projected, a person can view distant objects or locations and connect with higher intelligences for guidance. The information received by the projected mind is then said to be perceived as thoughts, images, feelings, smells, taste and sound by the mind. The information obtained in this manner can be acted upon to solve problems, among other things. The Silva Method teaches people to listen to and control parts of the mind-body that many Westerners have not yet learned to access. In this way, it is similar to certain advanced yoga practices. Silva also uses touch patterns to anchor mind states.<sup>832</sup>

Silva mind control uses visualisation and guided imagery quite heavily; both have long been recognised by sorcerers of all kinds as among the most powerful and effective methods for contacting the spirit world in order to acquire supernatural power, knowledge, and healing. This sort of thing has been going on throughout history. It's known as shamanism, or witchcraft.<sup>833</sup>

With the Silva Method, the mind's natural healing ability can be extended to other people, even from a distance. This concept is known as Remote Healing and much evidence exists to support it. Some of the most surprising evidence for Remote Healing comes from psychologist William Braud and his colleagues at The Mind Science Foundation of San Antonio, Texas. Braud's studies, conducted over 17 years, involved having people mentally attempt to influence the nervous system of remote participants. Typically, two groups of people were involved in Braud's studies: the Receivers and the Senders. What Braud found

---

<sup>831</sup> Brown, L B (1991) He Who Controls the Mind Controls the Body: False Imprisonment, Religious Cults, and the Destruction of Volitional Capacity. Valparaiso University Law Review. Volume 25 Number 3, pp. 407-411, 415

<sup>832</sup> Wikipedia, Silva Method [Online] Available from: [http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Silva\\_Method](http://en.wikipedia.org/wiki/Silva_Method) [Accessed: 13 June 2014]

<sup>833</sup> Biblical Discernment Ministries, Silva Mind Control (Silva Method) [Online] Available from: <http://www.rapidnet.com/~jbeard/bdm/Cults/silva.htm> [Accessed: 13 June 2014]



was that at the exact moment the Sender was asked to think of their Receiver, the Receiver would show a change in his or her physiological condition. The 37 experiments combined resulted in odds against chance of more than 100 trillion to one in favour of distant mental interactions between the participants. In short, Braud's study suggested that the ability of one person's mind to affect another person's body is scientific fact.<sup>834</sup>

#### **4.10.5.6 Trauma-based Mind Control**

Trauma-based mind control programming can be defined as systematic torture that blocks the victim's capacity for conscious processing (through pain, terror, drugs, illusion, sensory deprivation, sensory over-stimulation, oxygen deprivation, cold, heat, spinning, brain stimulation, and often, near-death), and then employs suggestion and/or classical and operant conditioning (consistent with well-established behavioural modification principles) to implant thoughts, directives, and perceptions in the unconscious mind, often in newly-formed trauma-induced dissociated identities, that force the victim to do, feel, think, or perceive things for the purposes of the programmer. The objective is for the victim to follow directives with no conscious awareness, including execution of acts in clear violation of the victim's moral principles, spiritual convictions, and volition.<sup>835</sup>

In discussing how trauma-based mind-control is carried, voodoo must be included as a possible component. Many of the Mind-controlled slaves have suffered voodoo as part of their trauma, and many had voodoo dolls placed into their systems. When vows and oaths are made, an object is given to the satanic cult or the Illuminati for the Keeper of the Seals to guard. If the vow is broken voodoo magic can be used against the offender by using the object given in the sealing.

Voodooism came from Africa, where it is called *Ju-Ju*. The West African name for Satan is Esu. A group in Phoenix, AZ claims to be in contact with an alien named Jesus Esu Sananda. Another word that has come from Voodoo is the word *zombie*. In Haiti, Voodoo, called Vaudou, is the religion of about 90% of the people. Possession behaviour in the various black occult groups, such as Umbanda (Brazilian Satanism), Haitian Vaudou, and the St. Vincent Shakers (also called Zeckeeboom people) is a learned behaviour.

---

<sup>834</sup> Mindvalley Academy, You Too Can Learn How to Activate Your Mind's Natural Healing Mechanisms, and Start Improving Your Overall Health and Well-Being [Online] Available from: <http://mindvalleyacademy.com/store/silva-mind-body-healing/> [Accessed: 13 June 2014]

<sup>835</sup> The Vigilant Citizen, Origins and Techniques of Monarch Mind Control [Online] Available from: <http://vigilantcitizen.com/hidden-knowledge/origins-and-techniques-of-monarch-mind-control/> [Accessed: 24 July 2014]

Candidates for mediumship in Sao Paulo Umbanda are given special training in trances and possession. They use dissociation techniques such as focusing on a lighted candle, or turning the person and snapping the fingers to put people in trance. In the U.S., because demon possession seems rare to psychiatrists, they have labelled demon-possessed people as “crazy”. However, in Haiti, an entire nation regularly conducts rituals to become demon-possessed. Since the norm is to be demon-possessed, it is no longer seen as abnormal behaviour.

Some of the explanations given by psychiatrists for demon possession in Voodoo are that a repressed personality is coming to the surface, or that the voodoo trance is an act to impress a crowd, or it stems from hysterical nervous disorders, or it stems from psychopathy, neurosis, or schizophrenia.

In Haiti, demon possession of people cannot be a repressed personality, because the person being possessed by a demon must behave according to rigorous rules of how each demon is supposed to act. Far from expressing himself, the victim of demon possession tries to personify some mythical spirit whose character on the whole is foreign to himself. In Haiti, most people who go into the demon-possessed state are not observed closely because it is the norm for people to become demon-possessed. People at the ceremonies may cast absent-minded looks at the people being possessed, but the entire scenario gains the possessed person very little attention. Nor does an entire crowd in Haitian Voodoo get possessed, or go into a collective delirium. The excitement is quite varied with the crowds.

40 years ago, it was shown that the Haitian people are not all hysterical, but that demon possession in Haiti was the normal means of communicating with supernatural powers. If demon possession trances were genetic in origin, then why do some groups of people of African descent, from the same gene pool but living in other nations, have little to do with the occult? Investigators in Haiti have had to discount demon possession as a neurosis. According to one investigator, the number of schizophrenics and psychotics is very small within cults like Voodoo.

According to the Haitians, a spirit which they call *loa* joins a person like a rider mounts a horse. The spirit then controls the person like a rider. The possessed person is called a “*chual*” which means “horse”, and the spirit is said to mount or saddle his victim. Blood sacrifices are often associated with the demon, and the possessed person will drink blood from the sacrificed animal. Polished stones, and herbs, and trance and dissociative states

are used to attract spirits. While the Monarch slaves have trauma-based dissociative states, the practitioners of Voodoo have ritually induced dissociative states. Voodoo rituals will involve chanting, drums, at times handclapping and frenzied dancing, to induce the dissociative states.

In fact, several features have been identified which bring about dissociative states in the black religions of the Caribbean and South America. First, they incorporate dancing to a pronounced and rapid beat. Next, the induction into the dissociative state frequently follows a period of starvation and/or over breathing (hyperventilation). The beginning of the demonic possession is characterised by a brief period of muscle inhibitions, or a collapse. The person who is experienced at being possessed acquires a specific behaviour pattern for the deity that is supposedly controlling it. Finally, the head and limbs may tremor under trance, and the person may become dissociative enough that they can pick up red hot irons. The possessed can be conscious, semiconscious, or unconscious.

Conservative estimates of the number of slaves brought into the port of Saint Dominique while it was a plantation colony are 900,000. The conditions on the island for the slaves were like a Nazi work camp. The cruelty on the colonial Haitian plantations was beyond comprehension. The Africans brought in as slaves already practiced Ju-Ju. Under the crucible of the severe torture of slavery, the slaves formulated Haitian voodoo, which is a conglomeration of African Voodoo, masonic rites, and European magic and Catholic saints and symbols. In Haiti, Cuba, Brazil, Trinidad and other areas of the New World, where Ju-Juism has transformed itself into black occult religions, the old gods of Africa: Damballa, Erzilie, Legba, Obatala, Ogun, Oshun and others have been equated with Catholic saints and given the names of these saints.

The ritually induced dissociative states of Voodoo are generally accompanied by amnesia, that is lost time. During this lost time, the person acts as if he is a spirit (god). This is a ritually-based dissociative state rather than a trauma-based dissociative state. The Illuminati Monarch programming at times attempts to combine the two bases, ritual and trauma, to create a dissociative state. This is why it is difficult to separate out the religious factor.<sup>836</sup>

---

<sup>836</sup> Springmeier F and Wheeler C, Using Spiritual Things to Control a Person [Online] Available from: <http://educate-yourself.org/mc/illumformula10Bchap.shtml> [Accessed: 7 July 2014]

#### **4.10.5.7 Monarch Mind Control**

Monarch programming is a mind-control technique comprising elements of Satanic Ritual Abuse (SRA) and Multiple Personality Disorder (MPD or DID). It utilises a combination of psychology, neuroscience and occult rituals to create within the slaves an alter persona that can be triggered and programmed by the handlers. Monarch slaves are used by several organisations connected with the world elite in fields such as the military, sex slavery and the entertainment industry.

Monarch slaves are mainly used by organisations to carry out operations using patsies trained to perform specific tasks, who do not question orders, who do not remember their actions and who, if discovered, automatically commit suicide. They are the perfect scapegoats for high-profile assassinations, the ideal candidates for prostitution, slavery and private movie productions. They are also the perfect puppet performers for the entertainment industry.

Monarch programmers cause intense trauma to subjects through the use of electroshock, torture, abuse and mind games in order to force them to dissociate from reality-forming parts or alters. The subject's ability to dissociate is a major requirement and it is, apparently, most readily found in children that come from families with multiple generations of abuse. Mental dissociation enables the handlers to create walled-off personas (parts of alters) in the subject's psyche, which can then be programmed and triggered at will. Installation of mind control programming relies on the victim's capacity to dissociate, which permits the creation of new walled-off personalities to hold and hide programming. Already DID children are prime candidates for mind control programming.<sup>837</sup>

A part or alter is a dissociated part of the mind (soul), which is developed by the mind control programmers to be a complete personality. The controlled person's occupation in life also determines some of the types of parts created. If the person is a politician, they will need special parts to deal with certain secret activities. If the person is a baseball pitcher, they will need parts that are trained to pitch.

Listed below are some parts or alters that could exist in a mind controlled person<sup>838</sup>:

---

<sup>837</sup> The Vigilant Citizen, Origins and Techniques of Monarch Mind Control [Online] Available from: <http://vigilantcitizen.com/hidden-knowledge/origins-and-techniques-of-monarch-mind-control/> [Accessed: 24 July 2014]

<sup>838</sup> Springmeier F and Wheeler C, The Illuminati Formula used to Create an Undetectable Mind Control Slave [Online] Available from: [http://www.whale.to/b/springmeier\\_formula.html](http://www.whale.to/b/springmeier_formula.html) [Accessed: 28 July 2014]

Alien alters	For contact, bonding with aliens, and acceptance of mock alien invasion, angel (imitation) alters for divine messages. These may be seen as Spirit Guide alters.
Angry alters	The child victim has been well conditioned not to get angry, but to passively accept their abuse. The programmers have to get the child's mind to break with their prior programming to get angry.
Animal alters	Animal alters are meant to act like animals. Although a large share of an alter system is dehumanised, there are certain alters which will be created to actually hold the body and act like animals. Animal alters are created by the standard dehumanisation methods, and then shown films of what they are to become. Through hypnosis and behaviour modification, the alters eventually accept the role they are tortured and programmed into taking.
Babysitter alters	To look after alters and keep them from popping out inappropriately.
Deaf and Dumb alters	To prevent the system from hearing non-approved users say access codes.
Element alters	Air, wind, water, earth, fire for magick and compliance.
Firechild or Bombchild alters	To make the body feel like it's burning.
Gatekeeper alters	To guard portals and gates. Guard (or Blocker) alters to guard important areas of the System. One of the early front Gatekeeper alters will be selected to be the alter who knows the entire system as it is made. This often is Gatekeeper no. three. After the entire structuring is finished, this alter will be hypnotically programmed to forget that they know the entire system. Infrequently,, the programmers may also call them "doorkeepers", or "toll men" and "toll women". The victim may refer to them as guards or blockers, although Gatekeepers are more than guards, they are an entrance or portal to something.
Justice alters	Alters who mete out justice for disobedient alters
Hierarchy alters	To take part in Illuminati hierarchy ceremonies (there will be a big demand for many of these alters). Different ceremonies and different times of the year are given different alters.
Mirror image alters	For deception.
Monster alters	To scare the other alters.
Mouse alters	To run the clocks (computer, and grids).
Nothing alters	Alters who believe they are nobody, or Mr Nobody, or "no-name".
Observation alters	These deep alters quietly observe all that goes on in an alter system. They may be called Watchers.
Reporting alters	To give the master reports regularly, esp. important to monitor all activity by a therapist.
Run/return to master alters	To ensure that they will always return to their master.
Satanic hierarchy alters	To ensure that the system is controlled by Satan.

Sexual alters	The early sexual trauma is designed to familiarise the child with sex, and to access the primal part of the mind. The torture and sexual abuse eventually becomes gratifying to the mind. The mind does a reversal, pain becomes pleasure. At any rate, the programmers are trying to obtain a type of nymphomaniac. They accomplish this on one level. The sexual alters have no feelings attached to what they do, and their masters never allow them to enjoy sex. They are not to have climaxes, although they may be coached in how to fake it.
Scrambling alters	To prevent alters from hearing Shell alters (to hide real alters from therapists). This is one of the hardest type of programmes for the victim to master. To make sure that the victim's mind is very alert, a drug is given which clouds the thinking. These alters must try exceptionally hard if they are to concentrate and learn what their job is. They will learn how to take something being said and scramble it.
Suicide alters	Clowns, Russian Roulette alters, etc.
Christian Front Alters	Some of the early splits around two years of age are provided the chance to genuinely accept Christ. From these alters, two things will be done. Front alters who are Christians will be created, and satanic alters. In order to get dedicated satanic alters, Christian alters are severely traumatised and God is blamed for not helping them. The satanic alters will be deeply convinced that God has abandoned them. Christian alters will also, like all MPD/DID alters, tend to deal with overwhelming problems by dissociation.
Egyptian Armies	The Egyptian armies are hundreds of fragments which have been programmed to have uniforms and to function as parts of an army. The main gods or spirits of Egyptian magic may be the names of the captains of the armies, such as the following names Isis, Osiris, Horus, Set and Ra. Thoth can be another name. In the Temple of Set, alters with Egyptian names abound, and aren't restricted to fragment armies. The armies are built to protect various internal structures. The technique to make these armies is to torment the victim child in such a way that they make the child very angry. At the peak of the child's rage, they split the mind. The result is lots of child alters, fragments which are angry. These are collected and shaped into an angry army of little children. When an adult Monarch slave triggers a protective army, the adult alter finds themselves with angry children alters who are like a large crowd of toddlers who are screaming their heads off.
Mirror Images	Mirror images are purpose fragments whose job is to confuse both victim and therapist. When an event happens, the abusers will fragment the alter who participated in the event, and create mirror images of that alter. This means that no one alter has the full memory. An alter doesn't know if the mirror image is itself or something else. It's very confusing.

The dehumanising of a multiple (that is of a fragmented personality) is carried out on most of the alters, but the front alters are allowed to be human. Because alters take on the characteristics of what they were created from, the front alters have to be some of the first splits, so that they have a sense of family and that they are human. That does not mean that the first series of splits can't be dehumanised later.

The dehumanisation process will make alters into various types of birds, cats, dogs, aliens, horses, earth elements, gemstones, rocks, and countless other items. They will then install backup programming to insure that the alters continue to believe they are not human. The backup programming will ensure that they continue to believe the lies. A great deal of hypnosis, and drug-induced states, and drug-hypnosis, together with painful rape and/or electro-shocks are used to carry out the dehumanisation process.

The thing that stands out so vividly for those who have met victims who are in therapy is the spirit of fear that controls them. Waves of paranoia roll back and forth through the alters. The programmers are sadists, and they don't derive satisfaction from their programming until they can see raw terror in their victims. The primary vehicle for programming is the raw terror that is repeatedly instilled in the victim. To achieve total terror, the sadist programmer gains total control over every aspect of a person: their thoughts, their bowel movements, their life, even the power to commit suicide are stripped from the victim. Nothing that originally belonged to the victim is left untouched. A realistic fear of most victims is that they will never be believed.

Traditionally, the psychiatrists have treated these victims as if their abuse is nothing but psychotic nonsense. How many fleeing victims have been locked up and told they were paranoid schizophrenics?

One of the things that the deeper alters will not be taught about is forgiveness. Because forgiveness of oneself and others is such an important spiritual dynamic, to not know about forgiveness cripples many deeper alters from healing from the deep spiritual wounds they have received. Forgiveness is an act of the will. Forgiveness of oneself is usually a major issue with deeper alters, who generally don't know how to do this. However, the handlers and abusers will be sure to heap lots of guilt and shame, whether deserved or not, onto the mind-controlled victim. Often a person accepts their strengths, but focuses on their weaknesses, hoping that that weakness will somehow be reduced by the focus that is placed upon it. The programmers know how to take advantage of that. They set impossible standards of perfection, and then demean the victim because they have failed to live up to the standard.

Black and white thinking develops in the slave's mind. The programmers will not allow the victim to display natural feelings of anger, sadness or doubt. To do so means that one is a failure and weak. Of course they are natural feelings, so the slave has to do a great deal of

repression and self-incrimination for having these natural feelings. The slave learns to turn his or her anger inward. Many of the male slaves end up committing suicide. They beat themselves up with subconscious and conscious guilt. Anything and everything wrong or bad in the slave's life is blamed upon him. Guilt can play a natural role in the forgetting of memories, too. If the Monarch slave would remember something terrible, the religious front alters can be made to feel repentant for such terrible thoughts. Then the natural desire to forget can be reinforced by suggesting that the evil memory be removed from the mind. In other words, memories are forgotten because they don't conform to a person's moral code. If good morals are programmed into the front alters, they will take the hypnotic suggestion not to remember what has really happened. The front alters will only remember a sanitised version of things in which they have been forced to participate. The person may even want to think of the memory as only a dream because of the guilt associated with believing the reality of it. If a person is hypnotised to have guilt about something that they didn't commit, then they can be convinced that they actually did it.

Any desire on the part of deeper alters to want something for themselves is painted as selfishness. They will be internally and externally punished for any pleasure. If a sexual alter enjoys a sexual encounter, he is programmed to internally experience some type of severe punishment programme. One form of tormenting a slave is to ridicule the slave as they have to carry out a wretched assignment. Many slaves lose their zest for humour because they end up the butt of so many bad jokes. Comedians, because they are skilled with puns, and other words games, have often served as handlers or programmers.

The spiritual ramifications of anger are very well known to the programmers. They know that anger opens up spiritual portals for demonic activity. A victim is pushed to its breaking point to create angry alters. The use of anger is seen in a number of different areas of programming. The Gatekeeper alters will be depressed and angry alters used to insure that they remain good portals for demons. Anger towards God, anger towards the outside world, and anger towards themselves are all built into a system using questions such as "Where was God? Where was the outside world, when all these things were happening?" Many, if not all, of the victims of Monarch turn their anger on themselves, which is the only safe place to vent it. Most of the deeper alters of a Monarch system will have very low self-esteem and will have lots of guilt and anger toward themselves. The slave is victimised so much that when their handlers give them the chance to victimise someone else, some victims find release in assaulting others. The slave may be given the power of life or death over others,



as well as the power of deciding another person's eternal fate. Sometimes this power is addictive. This addiction can be a trap that binds the slave to his source of power.

Anger within a system can be dangerous, when one alter directs its anger toward another alter. Sometimes one alter will try to kill another alter. Actually, this happens more often than one might imagine. If the alter succeeds of course, the body will be dead, with the resulting consequence that everyone dies. The programmers enjoy seeing this type of drama, but they don't want it to be carried out to its final conclusion, so they generally, if not always, have alters who can step in and take the body and stop this. If the alter system can't, then alters who understand what is going on can call their master for help, and the master can once again show how dependent they are upon him for life. This is the "divide and conquer" strategy. The divide and conquer strategy is used repeatedly in constructing an alter system.

A premature birth is important, because the naturally occurring events around a premature birth insure that the child is naturally traumatised. Studies have found that only 7-8% of the live births were premature, but 25 to 40% (about a third) of all battered children were born premature. A premature birth will create a fighter spirit within the child. If the child does not have a strong instinct for survival, and does not fight to survive the premature birth, then it will not fight to survive during the tortures of the programming. By having a premature birth, the selection process has already started. Which child will be a fighter? The preemie will be emotionally deprived of getting to suck on a real mother's breast, but will be fed with an eye-dropper or bottle. Studies on preemies have shown that they tend to have a sober affect with few smiles, and then the smiles come only if their eyes are averted from who is in front of them. They are less social and they depend upon the primary person (usually a caretaker at the hospital) to give them assistance and encouragement to interact socially.

There are several ways to alter a person's state of consciousness, but the most popular method used by Monarch handlers is to use a combination of drugs and hypnosis. Drugs are used to facilitate hypnosis. Modern drugs do almost all the work for the hypnotist. They place the person in an altered state and make them willing to take any order. Often survivors remember orange or grape drinks, or something else which they were given, which were used to give the child drugs. Occasionally, hypnosis must be carried out by the programmers on unwilling subjects. They have three primary ways to get around this. They can induce hypnosis by disguising what the hypnotist is doing, they can wait until the person is asleep and talk to him while asleep, or they can administer drugs. Also the Network has some high-tech equipment which stimulates the orgasmic (sexual ecstasy) part of the brain. By moving

the body into this state, the mind opens up all the unconscious states. Then sophisticated brainwave machines programme thoughts into the person.

Principle demons that are popular for use in Monarch systems are<sup>839</sup>:

Æsculapius	The satanic miracle healer, related to Apollos. In the pagan world he was depicted with his head encircled with rays. In order to show pagans that it was permissible to worship Jesus, the Catholic church put the golden rays of Æsculapius around pictures of Jesus. He is also at times represented as the sacred snake.
Absolom	Amon (various spellings). A marquis of Hell, who has the gift of prophecy.
Apollyon	This demon reigns over the bottomless pit and is described by REV 9:11. Demon of fear and destruction, who may be a deep part of a System.
Apollo	The Antichrist's father.
Astar	Star, Ashtareth, Ashtaroth, Astarte, Ishtar - Bible students will find this demon referred in many Bible passages including JDG 2:13 ACTS 20.
Balilo	Witch demon, Beelzebub. Ruling demon.
Beliah	The chief demon, with the name meaning "worthless one". Beliel - sexual demon, Bes - Spirit ruling the dwarfs. Blackwell - legion demon, upper rank, to divide the mind. Blood (aka Yahweh Elohim) - dark spirit using God's name and part of Black Mass, connects with early three-year-old trauma in a "locked-up child". Choronzon - to help with constructing the mind control Dameon.
Dagon	The fish god reigning over water. The fish sign was adopted by elements of the Catholic church to secretly keep Dagon worship alive. The Pope wears the garb that the Pontifex Maximus wore as leader of the cult of Dagon. One system had a water monster named Cthulhu.
Electra	Enigma - Geb - voice behind the Earth spirit, Gerberus - Guardian angels - the Illuminati may assign guardian angels called Hafaza. Javen - double-minded demon Kali - bloody female goddess Kemosh.
Leviathan	Seen as a sea-monster, or Tyrannosaurus Rex, or Dragon-like. This demon runs up and down the spine. Leviathan is related to the Babylonian reptilian God Tiamet (which looks like the Reptilian aliens portrayed today.) Is tied to the double-helix. It can actually be three spirits. Bible students can read about Leviathan in Job 3:8, Job 41:8, 15,22, Psalm 74:14, Isaiah 27:1
Lilith	A bloody demon, known as the "terror of the night". The occult story is that she was Adam's wife before Eve, and that her offspring with Adam were demonic-human monsters. It is worth mentioning that in Druidism, the life-force or energy force is considered to be the Dragon. There are several names for this Dragon, including Wyvern, nwyvre, or the winged lion.
Mammon	The demon of avarice, Meganosis.
Moriah-Moloch	(also spelled Molech) - The various satanic-Luciferian groups that programme and offer child sacrifices to Moloch, an internal Temple of Moloch may guard the innocent blood of children sacrificed during ceremonies. Historically, the people in

<sup>839</sup> Springmeier F and Wheeler C, Using Spiritual Things to Control a Person [Online] Available from: <http://educate-yourself.org/mc/illumformula10Bchap.shtml> [Accessed: 7 July 2014]

	Israel sacrificed children to Moloch at Tophet in the Valley of Hinnom near Jerusalem. Drums (tophim) were beat so the cries of the children couldn't be heard. Mormo - Important demon placed in Mormon Monarch slaves.
Metatron	Sometimes said to be Enoch.
Nanna-Nemo	Mormon programming Octopus - blood sucking demon.
Orion	Placed over Mormon victims, the name Orion is popping out all over the place.
Pan	Protector of woods.
Ronwe	Squat - a number of Illuminati Monarchs report that this demon gives them the ability to understand foreign languages.
Shu	Does internal weather magic.
Typhon	Programs tunnelling connections in the mind.
Verono	Vultar Val (legion), Pan whose depression sends one Rege (drugs), who sends one to Bacchus (addiction) which then starts a bondage loop.

Programming and mind-control cannot be separated from demonology and occult ritual. Even the alien programming uses lots of occult symbols, rituals & spiritual programming. Victims of mind-control need to realise that although demonic possession is one of the tools of control, that the diagnosis of demon possession should not be used to cover up the many other issues involved with the mind-control, including body memories, a lifetime of severe abuse, abandonment issues, safety issues, and all the rest of the garbage that goes with having been a mind-controlled slave.

Demons can make people act like animals, such as bark like dogs, rave in altered states, go into trances, and have uncontrollable changes in personality which they would be amnesiac about. A male voice would appear in a female, etc. Medieval witchcraft, Rosicrucianism, and the Illuminati have all had rituals where people dress themselves in cat, lion, owl, cuckoo, and parrot masks. In altered states, these medieval witches may have actually flipped into animal alters who thought they were a cat or owl, etc., which would account for written accounts by medieval craft adepts that witches would transform into animals.<sup>840</sup>

In 1888, French psychologist P Janet noticed that many of his patients found themselves losing control of their body to what they called a demon that would often be named Astaroth, Leviathan or Beelzebub.<sup>841</sup> Reports from other areas, such as Germany, over the years are

---

<sup>840</sup> Springmeier F and Wheeler C, Using Spiritual Things to Control a Person [Online] Available from: <http://educate-yourself.org/mc/illumformula10Bchap.shtml> [Accessed: 7 July 2014]

<sup>841</sup> Janet, P (1888) L 'Automatisme psychologique. Paris, pp. 440+

similar. Is this mere coincidence? It is stretching the imagination to believe that so many separate incidents have commonalities, and identical demonic entities, and yet are not related in some fashion.

Demonic possession is getting more and more recognition by psychologists. Some psychologists have discovered that their programmed multiples responded very positively to deliverance of demons, and were able to get more accomplished in a few hours of deliverance than years of psychology. It proves that deliverance can be very helpful. The programmers themselves are so demon possessed that people who have worked with them say that the powerful demons within them try to compete with each other for power. Those who have worked with the programmers know how the programmers themselves have been skilled in conjuring demons with a nine-foot circle with magical powers.<sup>842</sup>

The programmers use controlled and manipulated LSD trips for mind-control purposes when layering in the programming for the Illuminati slaves. The victim's mind is trained and mentally prepared before actually being subjected to the drug. The programmers understand how the mind unleashes its fears, including its fear of LSD itself, while under the drug, so that small doses are given at first and then increased. This is so the victim of mind-control can learn to face and manage the effects of the drug. LSD is not the only programming hallucinogenic that has been used for this type of programming: they have also tried Peyote, but LSD seems to be the drug of choice.

Mirrors can be used along with LSD to create visually projected images. The victim will be placed in front of a mirror. Then the victim will project the image that was repeatedly shown to them onto their own image in the mirror. A special state of consciousness is induced where the person's perception is altered and they see the projected image as their own reflection. While watching the projected image in the mirror, the mind under LSD will also project its own feelings and facial features into the mirror.

If the victim is angry, happy, in pain, admiring themselves, etc. then the projected image will also be seen this way. Using this type of programming, the programmers can create twinning parts. Under the influence of LSD and suggestion, each intended twinning victim will see themselves as the other twin. Ceremonies and demons will also be added to strengthen the twinning.

---

<sup>842</sup> Springmeier F and Wheeler C, Using Spiritual Things to Control a Person [Online] Available from: <http://educate-yourself.org/mc/illumformula10Bchap.shtml> [Accessed: 7 July 2014]

The overall effect of such LSD programming on anyone, whether child or adult, is that the mind, at a deep level, begins to doubt its ability to discern the real from the imaginary. Therapists sometimes wonder why alters are not more motivated to determine reality. Part of this may be the side-effect at a profound level of the brain beginning to doubt its abilities to separate reality from fiction. If the LSD trips are not controlled by the programmers, insanity could result for the victim. Further, the LSD trips pose a danger that they could clutter the internal world of the victim and splinter their mind uncontrollably. This is why the trips must be carefully guided, controlled and monitored.<sup>843</sup>

The Omega programming works along with an Executive Control Board (or Grand Druid Council) and internal programmers. The Executive Control Board is associated with both numbers of the clock, and precious gems and metals. The Beast computer can be accessed with Scripture triggers associated with the Vision of Daniel of the Beast, and its ten toes. The Ten Toes are an important part of the code in some models. Universal computer function codes hold a large amount of codes, of which the following are examples:

- Insanity 2144312
- suicide 3113246
- zombie 3321556

Under each of these codes, other codes may be attached. For instance, under Body Gestures, the following functions are coded and a sample coding scheme would look like this: talk verbally 3456343, touch chest 2322132, touch hair 3323221, touch mouth 5434232, touch nose 5443232. Some alters may only speak in rhymes.

Dominoes set off flooding programmes to overload the person. Program numbers on some slaves are entered by touching the third eye with the index finger and speaking the number. Dominos have been used in Monarch programming as the basis for what is called a "Mother Board" in actual computers. Telephone tones key in on a slave's computer matrix. At times, telephone tones in everyday life will make slaves accidentally erratic or insane. All computers run off of base 2 - which uses the numbers 0, and 1. 0 and 1 can be represented as on and off. In the programming, they were represented by "He Loves Me", "He Loves Me Not."

---

<sup>843</sup> Springmeier F and Wheeler C, Deeper Insights into the Illuminati Formula [Online] Available from: <http://www.crowhealingnetwork.net/pdf/Deeper%20Insights%20into%20the%20Illuminati%20Formula.pdf> [Accessed: 28 July 2014]

The root programme is the tree, which was used as a method of organising the various programmes, just like a computer's subdirectories branch out into more subdirectories. If the programming is tampered with, the slave will want to cut the tree - however, since the tree is in them, this means they will want very badly to self-harm, typically cutting their arms, especially their veins. The programming is not guarded as much as the computers. Everything guards the BEAST computer, including deaf alters who have to be communicated with using a hand number code system. Such a code might resemble finger signing 1,2,3,4,5,10 = 15, followed by a shutdown code which simply reverses the access equation. Surrounding the central All-seeing-eye will be alters and programmes with insanity, fear, hopelessness, cutting, burning, aloneness, etc.

Strong demonic forces are attached to these alters and programmes. They also can trigger the slave to display abusive behaviour as punishment. A system is given a life force which is able to regenerate it, and alphanumeric access codes protecting it: the cards, the dromines (represented by a die). The alters will often feel the heartbeat (which may be an alter) associated with the computer. In the background is a Luciferian blue light. This Satanic light empowers the Joker. This light, along with the Joker and the internal programmers, give a system the ability to regenerate itself. One can shut down internal computers which run programming to the levels of the system using the same codes that the original programmers used, but until one also takes care of the 13 Jokers and the faceless white-coated programmers who control the Omega Programming, then the backup computers can regenerate the programming & rebuild the system.<sup>844</sup>

To fully understand what the computers are, one must understand the mind-set of the programmers. The programmers are looking to Lucifer for their inspiration. An imitation of God's Book of Life for people, is for Lucifer to construct an internal computer that will contain all the history of all the alters. Colour plays an important role during programming.

The front computer that is linked to the front section will be different than the deeper computers. Its big difference is that its programmes (which are linked to all the front alters) are logical. The logical programmes of this level provide the alters with logical reasons and excuses to believe the lies, and to reason their life out. Of course they draw false conclusions from good logic, as they are using faulty information. Misinformation computers also exist. Thousands of demons are placed into the misinformation computers to not only

---

<sup>844</sup> Springmeier F and Wheeler C, The Illuminati Formula used to Create an Undetectable Mind Control Slave [Online] Available from: [http://www.whale.to/b/springmeier\\_formula.html](http://www.whale.to/b/springmeier_formula.html) [Accessed: 28 July 2014]

run them, but to dispense misinformation. Since the demons are not under drugs or hypnosis, they have full awareness and are very crafty in their deceptions.

For years the computers have been called "Beast" computers, with the big important Beast computer laid in at the bottom of the mind in the Hell pit. The core is at the bottom of the mind below the Hell pit, but is almost always never connected to the Beast computer. This is because the core receives very little programming. The core is told she is Sleeping Beauty and that her father Lucifer, who she is married to, will someday return for her and wake her up. The core is told she belongs to Lucifer. The core is protected by the false trinity in the pyramid and the Grand Druid Council, to which it is linked.

There are programmes that may be termed "false hope programmes". The system will rest and relax and the therapist will declare everything finished.

Finally, a very important warning, tampering with the computers is very serious, because the self-destruct programmes are very strong. The self-destruct programmes will turn the person into a vegetable or cause pure insanity if the victim survives the suicide programmes.<sup>845</sup>

Within the occult world, the entire study of demonology is wrapped around the geometric shapes that serve as focal points for demons (such as those made by crystals and pyramids), and the portals by which demons can enter the human body. A demon doesn't have to be materialised (conjured up) to enter into a body. Geometric shapes which are believed to attract demons are placed into the internal worlds of slaves. The will of the person also plays a role in the introduction of demons into the body. Torture attaches and layers in demons within the body. Sex and blood sacrifices are used to attach powerful demons.

According to high level demonology, certain powerful spirits can only be manipulated if there are blood sacrifices. This may seem strange; however, the record (evidence) bears out those generational victims of possession who have had demons placed in them via blood sacrifices and are definitely controlled by more powerful demonic forces. All of the chakra points and the orifices to the human body serve as portals. Both the Illuminati and Christian deliverance ministries agree that the mouth, ears, nose, anus, etc. are portals.

---

<sup>845</sup> Springmeier F and Wheeler C, Deeper Insights into the Illuminati Formula [Online] Available from: <http://www.crowhealingnetwork.net/pdf/Deeper%20Insights%20into%20the%20Illuminati%20Formula.pdf> [Accessed: 28 July 2014]

There are Cabalistic grades within Freemasonry. Sexual slaves were used by the higher and more occult Masonic rites in the 19th century. These sexual slaves were subjected to trances and demonic possessions. They were subjected to all types of perverse magical rituals. The Cabala teaches intercourse with demons. Theurgy is the skill or ability to invoke demons, variously called angels of light, genii, spirits of various kinds, such as elemental spirits.

Demons come with a price and that price is blood. Satanism and Luciferianism and other similar cults are blood cults that require blood to be sacrificed to attract certain demons. For instance, blood may be taken from both the tongue and the genital area and mixed in a certain ceremony to invoke a particular demon. Demons are not bought with gold or silver, they are bought with blood. The Spirit Choronzon and Typhon are critical spirits to place into a person for the mind-control to work. Typhon and Choronzon do the tunnelling and the DID work. An example of an important ritual to demonise the victim is the baptism of the child victim to Satan. Satan may be called Set or Shaman in the ritual.

The slave masters within the Illuminati, when they take away the hearts of the alters of a system, give them a heart of stone and a ring. The ring is important, for if they lose this, they think they will not get their hearts back. The slaves will wake up in the middle of the night looking for a ring, but never knowing what ring they are looking for. If the slave loses their ring, they are told the Master will never love them. The ring of the programmer, which has occult power from being used in ritual, is also used as a hypnotic cue. The ring also represents occult power and authority.<sup>846</sup>

There are vows and oaths associated with mind control. The Illuminati and generational occult families attach ancestral and generational curses to the victim. The programmers create soul ties (inter-meshment with others in an ungodly way), including inter-meshment of demonic spirits. Sex, emotional dependence, anger and love can be tied to this dependence. The spiritual power of the communion meal is reversed by the symbolism and bondage of the Black Mass.

Occult groups attach curses to a person that are brought on by occult involvement. These curses are the consequences of sinful occult involvement. The Monarch programmers force the slave to make blood covenants, contracts, oaths, and to shed innocent blood. Often the

---

<sup>846</sup> Springmeier F and Wheeler C, Using Spiritual Things to Control a Person [Online] Available from: <http://educate-yourself.org/mc/illumformula10Bchap.shtml> [Accessed: 7 July 2014]



deeper alters feel like they have made these contracts willingly. However, if they could see the whole picture, they would realise that they were forced and deceived into accepting these occult practices. To free themselves of these oaths and covenants, every alter has to break them, or at least the main alter breaks it for others.

What various witchcraft and Illuminati slaves will experience will be Satan drawing blood from their left hand and causing them to write in the slave's own blood a formal contract laying out the terms for entering his service. The ceremony has a lasting impression. Their signature in the Great White Book, which is an important Illuminati document, will change colour, and they will lose their magical power, etc. This creates a double bind: if they keep the system safe, they can't get out. The Illuminati and the Network keeps books which have the signatures of all their members, including slaves. They tell the slave that if they ever break a covenant with them, that Satan will cause the signature in blood to turn green. In other words, the slave is led to believe and is convinced that if they ever renege on their vows to Satan and the New World Order, they will be instantly found out.

Other vows, for example, might include penalty clauses like a flashback to torture on a cross, which is designed to cause a seizure and heart failure. The Final Vows of a Mother of Darkness or a Grand Master will make these cult alters feel like they are bound and trapped in service to Satan. The black stone is used in the Mothers-of-Darkness vows. The book of Revelation speaks about a white stone with a name written on it. Mothers of Darkness alters get a black stone with their assigned Queen goddess names written on them.<sup>847</sup>

#### **4.10.5.8 Evidence of Mind Control in the Church**

The primary evidence of mind control within the Church is behaviour such as<sup>848</sup>:

- Reacting with anger, laughter and ridicule when hearing the truth and accusing the communicator of truth of being a conspiracy theorist, when the individual hearing the truth knows basically nothing about the subject being discussed.

---

<sup>847</sup> Springmeier F and Wheeler C, Using Spiritual Things to Control a Person [Online] Available from: <http://educate-yourself.org/mc/illumformula10Bchap.shtml> [Accessed: 7 July 2014]

<sup>848</sup> McGuire P, Sorcery Prophetic Warning for the Last Days [Online] Available from: <http://paulmcguireblog.blogspot.com/2011/07/sorcery-prophetic-warning-for-last-days.html> [Accessed: 25 July 2014]

- Programmed individuals and leaders who merely repeat what they have been programmed to believe and become very threatened when challenged to think or presented with irrefutable evidence.
- Christians whose lives, beliefs and behaviour simply flow along with the world system are under powerful Luciferian programming.
- In the area of vocabulary, words, symbols and images, powerful mind control can be operating. For example, politically correct thinking and speaking is the language of mind control, along with programming. Phrases like tolerance, diversity, consensus building, hate speech, intolerance, “green” and other phrases reflect deep levels of brainwashing.
- When a person attempts to confront a brainwashed person with the truth, they will characteristically be greeted with a blank look and a vacant stare. It is not coincidence that this blank expression emerges when someone attempts to engage them in conversation designed to awaken their consciousness. This is exactly what Revelation is talking about when it uses the word “sorcery”. These people are literally under a spell that can only be broken by the truth of God’s Word and the power of the Holy Spirit
- A great deal of the theology coming from former Bible-believing denominations, churches and seminaries is the product of mind control produced by certain institutes and other groups. The theology of much of the Seeker-friendly Church Movements and the Emergent Church is mind control.
- Another form of being under mind control is when someone pretends to be intellectually superior and assumes a slight condescending smile when presented with evidence contrary to their ill-informed belief system. The believer cannot have a Biblically-based Third Great Awakening and revival until the spiritual deception created through occult mind control is confronted and the strongholds torn down through spiritual warfare.

#### **4.11. PSYCHOTRONIC WEAPONS**

A weapon system includes any other unacknowledged or as yet undeveloped means of inflicting death or injury on, or damaging or destroying, a person (or the biological life, bodily health, mental health, or physical and economic well-being of a person) through the use of

land-based, sea-based, or space-based systems using radiation, electromagnetic, psychotronic, sonic, laser, or other energies directed at individual persons or targeted populations or the purpose of information war, mood management, or mind control of such persons or populations.<sup>849</sup>

Psychotronic weapons use psychic energy as a weapon of war, also known as Psi-War. Man-made devices (Psi-generators) exist to amplify psychic energy to be used as a weapon. These devices capture and accumulate psychic energy and then release it on command. It is believed that psychotronic generators create a union between mind and matter, transforming human psychic power into a practical and controllable resource. In theory, the power originates from somewhere inside the brain, and is emitted most effectively through the eyes.<sup>850</sup>

Once accumulated and concentrated by a psychotronic generator, the power can be released and used for a multitude of purposes. It can be used as a weapon of mass mind control and psychic warfare. Lewis quotes a Russian expert interviewed for a television programme who said<sup>851</sup>:

*A psychotronic generator can influence a whole crowd of people. It can affect a person's psyche, memory or attention span. A psychotronic device can cause physical fatigue, disorientation; and even alter a person's behaviour.*

In layman's terms, psychotronic weapons are those that act to *take away a part of the information which is stored in a man's brain. It is sent to a computer, which reworks it to the level needed for those who need to control the man, and the modified information is then reinserted into the brain.*<sup>852</sup> These weapons are used against the mind to induce hallucinations, sickness, mutations in human cells, zombification and/or even death.

Specific types of weapons are<sup>853</sup>:

---

<sup>849</sup> Subversive Elements, Psychotronic Weapons [Online] Available from: [http://www.bibliotecapleyades.net/ciencia/ciencia\\_psychotronicweapons10.htm](http://www.bibliotecapleyades.net/ciencia/ciencia_psychotronicweapons10.htm) [Accessed: 24 June 2014]

<sup>850</sup> Lewis D.A., 1998, pp. 277-285. David Allen Lewis is an American prophesy author who believes that the Bible can interpret itself. He holds an evangelical, literalist view of end-time events, but contents that prophecy is not for spectators, but participants.

<sup>851</sup> Ibid. page 281

<sup>852</sup> Thomas, T L, The Mind has no Firewall [Online] Available from: <http://dprogram.net/2009/07/01/the-mind-has-no-firewall-army-article-on-psychotronic-weapons/> [Accessed: 24 June 2014]

<sup>853</sup> Thomas, T L, The Mind has no Firewall [Online] Available from: <http://dprogram.net/2009/07/01/the-mind-has-no-firewall-army-article-on-psychotronic-weapons/> [Accessed: 24 June 2014]

1. A psychotronic generator, which produces a powerful electromagnetic emanation capable of being sent through telephone lines, TV, radio networks, supply pipes, and incandescent lamps;
2. An autonomous generator, a device that operates in the 10-150 Hertz band, which at the 10-20 Hertz band forms an infrasonic oscillation that is destructive to all living creatures;
- (3) A nervous system generator, designed to paralyse the central nervous systems of insects, which could have the same efficacy on humans;
3. Devices using ultrasound emanations are supposedly capable of carrying out bloodless internal operations without leaving a mark on the skin and can be used to kill;
4. Noiseless cassettes: the ability to place infra-low frequency voice patterns over music, patterns that are detected by the subconscious.
5. The 25th-frame effect alluded to above, a technique wherein every 25th frame of a movie reel or film footage contains a message that is picked up by the subconscious;
6. Psychotropic weapons, defined as medical preparations used to induce a trance, euphoria, or depression. Referred to as "slow-acting mines," they could be slipped into the food of a politician or into the water supply of an entire city. Symptoms include headaches, noises, voices or commands in the brain, dizziness, pain in the abdominal cavities, cardiac arrhythmia, or even the destruction of the cardiovascular system;
7. A technique was pioneered in which researchers electronically analyse the human mind in order to influence it. They input subliminal command messages, using key words transmitted in "white noise" or music. Using an infra-sound, very low frequency transmission, the acoustic psycho-correction message is transmitted via bone conduction.

In March 2012 the Russian defence minister Anatoli Serdjukov said in the Voice of Russia<sup>854</sup>:

*The development of weaponry based on new physics principles; direct-energy weapons, geophysical weapons, wave-energy weapons, genetic weapons, psychotronic weapons, etc., of the state arms procurement programme for 2011-2020.*

In the USA, at present, several hundred people complaining of the remote manipulation of their nervous system are preparing a class action lawsuit against the FBI, Department of Defense and other agencies, requesting them to release files pertaining to their persons, and

---

<sup>854</sup> Babacek, M, [Online] Available from: Psychotronic and Electromagnetic Weapons: Remote Control of the Human Nervous System <http://www.globalresearch.ca/psychotronic-and-electromagnetic-weapons-remote-control-of-the-human-nervous-system/5319111> [Accessed: 24 June 2014]

detect the harmful radiations aimed at their bodies and sources of those radiations. In Russia, over 2000 people are complaining of the same symptoms, over 200 in Europe, over 300 in Japan and tens of people in China and India. It should be understood that most of those people pass through mental hospitals.

Research remains classified at the present time for one of two reasons: first, there is a secret arms race in progress in the world where the superpowers compete to gain decisive supremacy in this area and in this way rise to control of the whole world. Second, the governments keep those technologies in store for occasions when their rebellious populaces cannot be kept in check within the framework of the standard democratic government and they are forced to use weapons of mind control to maintain power. In both cases, the era of democracy and human freedom in history will come to an end. According to the declaration of the former Russian Defence Minister Serdjukov, there are maximally eight years left before these weapons will officially become a part of the Russian military arsenal. For democracy this would mean the beginning of the end.<sup>855</sup>

#### **4.11.1 Nanotechnology**

Nanotechnology, or Nanorobotics, involves miniaturised robots, which are smaller than bacteria and are powered by nanotransistors to go where no other technology has ever gone before. These robots can be inserted into a person's body through an injection or simply by swallowing them. They are controlled by computers.

The robots can also receive signals through transmitters and antennas, some of which are being secretly set up around the world. Unfortunately, in the wrong hands, these tiny robots are capable of being programmed to attack a person internally if he is perceived by the enemy as constituting a threat or just plain being politically incorrect. Nanorobots have the capacity to be secretly injected into a person during a mandated vaccination programme. Nanotechnology, which can place robotic chips inside the body, works exactly like the Global Positioning Satellite (GPS) that is used to track cars, ships, and airplanes through built-in transmitters. Small implants are now available to humans for medical, military, and safety purposes. The Global Positioning Satellite is able to locate a person, with an implanted bio-chip, within one foot of their exact location.

---

<sup>855</sup> Babacek, M, [Online] Available from: Psychotronic and Electromagnetic Weapons: Remote Control of the Human Nervous System <http://www.globalresearch.ca/psychotronic-and-electromagnetic-weapons-remote-control-of-the-human-nervous-system/5319111> [Accessed: 24 June 2014]

Nanotransistors are being developed today which are smaller than a single molecule. These tiny transmitters have the potential to be linked to antennas of the HAARP (High Frequency Active Auroral Research Project). HAARP's production of Electromagnetic Low Frequency (ELF) waves could then be broadcast to these transmitters as psychological warfare against anyone injected with a nanorobot. As previously discussed, ELF waves can produce hysteria, hallucinations, agitation, increased pulse rates, tumours, and can were also recipients of this technology. They would not only have their pineal glands receiving the ELF effects, but would also have robotic transmitters helping in this reception.

Holograms, which are three-dimensional pictures or illusions, can be generated in the sky using HAARP technology. Through the implant, a person's brain can be made to believe they are in danger when it is only an illusion. Nanotechnology offers many possible surveillance options that are readily accessible to the Brotherhood. The use of this new science has the potential to brainwash all those who will not open up their pineal glands to Satan. It is an advanced step in the wicked seeds' effort to rule the world.

It has already been proven through extensive research that individuals are defenceless against direct electrical manipulation of the brain because it deprives the person of the most intimate mechanisms of biological reactivity. By using electrical stimuli, the subject is unable to stop the biological response in his body. A person cannot override what the brain tells the body to respond to. The individual is therefore rendered completely helpless. This discovery led to the 1960's investigation into the strategy of directing microwave beams at targeted human beings from a distance. These studies found that microwave (ELF) beams created enormous anxiety and hyperactivity in those targeted, so much so, that it led to their complete physical exhaustion.

The plan to take over the mind of humans has been developed in stages. It has been going on for quite some time, and uniquely, it incorporates much of Tesla's technology. The intent of Satan's plan is to take away a person's capability of recognising the difference between good and evil, thereby hindering their biological ability to exhibit freedom of choice. It is an evil system, designed to allow the politically correct and so-called illuminated men to make all decisions for Man and his family with their free will, while robbing Man of his. This has been Satan's ancient agenda; to create a collective consciousness that will ensure evil progresses without defiance by Christians.

As nanorobots are perfected, they will have the capacity to attack the brain and damage areas where human emotions exist. This will produce an instant solution to the control of any rebel not willing to go along with the New World Order.

The sinister plan for nanorobotic technology will be to police and control the human body. Swimming within the blood, a nanorobot can lodge itself in various organs. In the brain, these little robots can produce a variety of sensations. One of these sensations is secretly said to render a person unable to perceive what is real and what is falsely being conjured up in the brain. This modification in perception can be used to make soldiers fearless and march for a common cause. At this point, the human body becomes a computer-programmed shell that takes orders from a nanorobot in the brain. The body is the slave to the mind; therefore he who controls the mind controls the body. The intent of those behind the sinister side of nanotechnology is to eventually link all men together through their minds.<sup>856</sup>

#### **4.11.2 Electromagnetic Control**

Electromagnetic control can be achieved via the Ionosphere, which is currently being manipulated by US government scientists using the Alaskan transmitter called HAARP, (High-Frequency Active Auroral Research Program) which sends focused radiated power to heat up sections of the Ionosphere, which bounces power down again. ELF waves produced from HAARP, when targeted on selected areas, can weather-engineer and create mood changes affecting millions of people.

GWEN (Ground Wave Emergency Network) transmitters placed 200 miles apart allow specific frequencies to be tailored to the geomagnetic field strength in each area, allowing the Earth's and Man's magnetic field to be altered. GWEN transmitters have many different functions, including controlling the weather, mind control, behaviour and mood control, and sending synthetic telepathy as infrasound to victims with mind-control implants. GWEN works in conjunction with HAARP and the Russian Woodpecker transmitter, which is similar to HAARP.

Extremely low frequency (ELF) waves are electromagnetic radiation (radio waves) with frequencies from 3 to 30 Hz. ELF radio waves are generated by lightning and natural

---

<sup>856</sup> Pugh, J J (2006) Eden. United States of America: Tate Publishing, pp.219-299

disturbances in Earth's magnetic field. Dr Andrija Puharich in the 50's/60's, found that clairvoyant's brainwaves became 8 Hz when their psychic powers were operative. He saw an Indian Yogi in 1956 controlling his brainwaves, deliberately shifting his consciousness from one level to another. Puharich trained people with bio-feedback to do this consciously, making 8 Hz waves. A healer made 8 Hz waves pass into a patient, healing their heart trouble. One person emitting a certain frequency can make another also resonate to the same frequency.

Man's brain is extremely vulnerable to any technology which sends out ELF waves, because they immediately start resonating to the outside signal by means of a kind of tuning-fork effect. Puharich experimented, discovering that 7.83 Hz (Earth's pulse rate) made a person feel good, producing an altered state, 10.80 Hz caused riotous behaviour and 6.6 Hz caused depression. Puharich made ELF waves change RNA and DNA, breaking down hydrogen bonds to make a person have a higher vibratory rate. He wanted to go beyond the psychic 8 Hz brainwave and attract psi phenomena.<sup>857</sup>

By using computer-enhanced electroencephalograph (EEGs), one can identify and isolate the brain's low-amplitude emotion signature clusters, synthesise them and store them on another computer. In other words, by studying the subtle characteristic brainwave patterns that occur when a subject experiences a particular emotion, the concomitant brainwave pattern can now be duplicated. These clusters are then placed on the Silent Sound[™] carrier frequencies and will silently trigger the occurrence of the same basic emotion in another human being. This can be achieved by HAARP (internationally) and GWEN (US). There appear to be two methods of delivery within the system. One is direct microwave induction into the brain of the subject, limited to short-range operations. The other utilises ordinary radio and television carrier frequencies. The sounds are subliminal, which makes them virtually undetectable and possibly dangerous. The result is that the temporal lobe stimulation can evoke the feeling of a presence, disorientation, and perceptual irregularities. It can activate images stored in the subject's memory, including nightmares and monsters that are normally suppressed.<sup>858</sup>

---

<sup>857</sup> Barium Blues, Electromagnetic Mind control [Online] Available from: [http://www.bariumblues.com/em\\_mind%20control.htm](http://www.bariumblues.com/em_mind%20control.htm) [Accessed: 24 June 2014]

<sup>858</sup> EMVS, Artificial/Synthetic Telepathy and Mind Control [Online] Available from: <http://emvsinfo.blogspot.com/2012/03/artificialsynthetic-telepathy-and-mind.html> [Accessed: 24 June 2014]



#### **4.11.3 Vaccine Implants**

Implants are now smaller than a hair's width and are injected with vaccine and flu shots. Millions in the US unknowingly received such implants. These 'biochips' circulate in the bloodstream and lodge in the brain, enabling the victims to hear 'voices' via the implant. There are many kinds of implants now and one in 40 people is a victim from alien abduction statistics, though one in 20 has also been gauged. The fake alien abduction event, revealed to be actually the work of US military personnel using technology to make hologram spaceships and virtual reality scenarios of going onto a spaceship with humans in costumes, has been astutely perceived. Though real alien abductions do occur, the alien abduction scenario has been useful to stop any further investigation or accountability of government authorities by poor victims who would face mockery and appear silly.<sup>859</sup>

#### **4.11.4 Microchips**

Scientists working at the University of Southern California, home of the Department of Homeland Security's National Center for Risk and Economic Analysis of Terrorism Events, have created an artificial memory system that allows thoughts, memories and learned behaviour to be transferred from one brain to another. A team of scientists working in the fields of "neural engineering" and "Biomimetic MicroElectronic Systems" have successfully created a chip that controls the brain and can be used as a storage device for long-term memories. In studies, the scientists have been able to record, download and transfer memories into other hosts with the same chip implanted. The advancement in technology brings the world one step closer to a global police state and the reality of absolute mind control.

More terrifying is the potential for implementation of the Thought Police, where the government reads people's memories and thoughts and then rehabilitates them through torture before they even commit a crime based on a statistical computer analysis.<sup>860</sup>

---

<sup>859</sup> Barium Blues, Electromagnetic Mind control [Online] Available from: [http://www.bariumblues.com/em\\_mind%20control.htm](http://www.bariumblues.com/em_mind%20control.htm) [Accessed: 24 June 2014]

<sup>860</sup> Fabio Ghioni, Scientists successfully implant chip that controls the brain [Online] Available from: <http://www.fabioghioni.net/blog/2011/09/15/scientists-successfully-implant-chip-that-controls-the-brain-allowing-thoughts-memory-and-behavior-to-be-transferred-from-one-brain-to-another/> [Accessed: 24 July 2014]

#### **4.11.5 Tesla Technology**

The Earth possesses currents which have the ability to stimulate the human brain. This neo-physical impact upon the brain could be harnessed and used upon the unsuspecting masses as a control tactic. Earth currents are where ancient Oracle sites and, later, Gothic Cathedrals, were built so that their energy could stimulate the pineal gland into submission to an unseen power who offered answers to anyone seeking advice. The chief feature of an ancient Oracle site was that the replies to questions of an inquirer were delivered by a man or woman who had been put in a trance over the Oracle site and who was receiving information from their subconscious mind. This person posing as the medium would speak answers to the inquirer's questions with a changed voice and different personality than what was typical of their natural self. Their body became some type of paranormal speaker that was able to transmit and receive data. Instead of a messenger, it was Satan who was speaking through the willing person being used as his transmitter. When the medium returned to normal consciousness, they did not recollect what had been said. Therefore, independent stimulation of the pineal gland can be achieved by anyone meditating over an ancient Oracle site. These ancient sites are well-hidden under Gothic Cathedrals. It is through the energy of the earth currents running below these Oracle sites that a willing subject can invoke paranormal contact and receive satanic transmissions.

Today, the resurgence of Tesla technology in what is being called non-lethal weaponry is seen. Radio frequency beams can be aimed at an unsuspecting public without their knowledge. These Extremely Low Frequency waves (ELF) vibrate the neurons in the brain. They produce an effect on an unsuspecting person, who does not realise their biological reactions such as fear, panic, heart racing, sweating, etc., came from a source outside their body. This technology has the capability to take over the brain's ability to instruct the body to perform biological functions against the person's will. Humanity cannot fight back, as the body does exactly what the brain tells it to do. If one has information beamed directly into their brain that it is cold, then the body will shiver, even though it is 100 degrees outside. Humans have no way to block these biological hackers from tapping into their main computer, the brain. It is the perfect weapon in the arsenal of psychological warfare, where the enemy never has to fire a shot to totally secure or annihilate their victim.

Tesla technology is presently being utilised to control the weather through a military-funded project called HAARP (High-frequency Active Auroral Research Project). This project possesses the power to change weather patterns anywhere in the world. It can also halt all

communications around the globe. HAARP has the potential to be used as a massive tool for psychological warfare, as it can affect the brain of all living things from a great distance. It holds the power of particle beam technology and essentially sends death rays at anything it targets. This force of energy, derived from Tesla's technology, is unlimited and cannot be matched by anything else on the planet. It is but one of the secret weapons that will be used in the near future to control the world.

The power to control and manipulate Tesla's powerful microwaves will allow the One World Order to disable, confuse, and even kill a person. The hidden use of these waves of energy makes it appear that the person died of natural causes. Microwaves are a cost effective weapon, and one of the most dangerous ever developed, due to their profound effect upon the brain. The human brain functions in 4 wave frequencies: beta, alpha, theta, and delta

Beta waves (13-35 Hertz) occur in normal outward thinking and are where agitated states can originate. Alpha waves (8-12 Hertz) indicate the body is in a relaxed state. Theta waves (4-7 Hertz) are involved in controlling internal functions within the body. Delta waves (3-5 Hertz) occur during deep sleep. If any of these brain waves are manipulated by a wave from an outside source, the person will experience sleepiness in low wave states, and agitation if hit with higher frequency waves. Microwaves produce a host of chemical releases within the brain. These chemical releases generate feelings of fear, anxiety, depression, and weakness.

Extremely Low Frequency (ELF) waves, between 1-10 Hertz, can cause loss of consciousness. These electromagnetic fields have a direct effect on heart rhythm, blood pressure, and the body's metabolism. They can also produce visual hallucinations, hearing problems, seizures, and the formation of tumours. A constant low frequency wave of 3-5 Hertz can kill a human. Enhancement of what appears to be ominous phenomena can be increased to make something unreal seem real to the person who is being subject to these waves. When a person's right to think and choose is violated and controlled from an outside source, it is the most evil thing that can be done to that person.

Free will is what humans acquired from eating of the Tree of Knowledge. It is man's ability to choose between good and evil. Removing free will and the ability to have control over his body through psychological warfare will be a tool the Antichrist will use to make all people politically correct when he comes to power. Mankind, without internal control of their biological processes, will become nothing but programmed robots.

Micro-beams using laser technology are capable, today, of producing holographic images, as well as broadcasting Extremely Low Frequency (ELF) waves that can directly affect the human brain. This advanced technology will eventually be used to make the masses believe God is speaking to them, as they will see an image and hear a voice. Biologically, the unexplained phenomena will terrify them into becoming submissive to the Antichrist. It will destroy free will.<sup>861</sup>

#### **4.11.6 Electromagnetic Disease Transmission**

Diseases can be reproduced as disease signatures, in that the vibration of a disease can be manufactured and broadcast, thus to be induced. The brainwave pattern of hallucinogenic drugs can also be copied and sent by ELF waves to induce visions. Once diseases are sprayed in the air, electromagnetic waves attuned to the disease, using harmonics and sub harmonics, will make them more lethal and infectious by sending particular disease frequency death-patterns.

Chemtrails (long-lasting trails of chemical or biological agents left in the sky by high-flying aircraft) are being sprayed daily all over the USA (and other countries too) in a white crisscross pattern. They contain diseases and chemicals which can affect a state of consciousness. They can produce apathy, which works in conjunction with fluoridation of the water, as well as aspartame and drugs. Fluoride disables the willpower section of the brain, impairing the left occipital lobe. Fluoride and selenium enable people to hear voices. ELF waves create disturbances in the biological processes of the body and these can be activated in the population once the diseases are introduced into the body from the chemtrails. Some chemtrails have been analysed and shown to be creating cleavages in special perceptions, blocking the interaction of various amino-acids that relate to higher-consciousness and to increased dopamine in the brain, producing a listless, spaced-out state of lower reactive mind.<sup>862</sup>

---

<sup>861</sup> Pugh, J J (2006) Eden. United States of America: Tate Publishing, pp. 282-290

<sup>862</sup> Barium Blues, Electromagnetic Mind control [Online] Available from: [http://www.bariumblues.com/em\\_mind%20control.htm](http://www.bariumblues.com/em_mind%20control.htm) [Accessed: 24 June 2014]

#### 4.11.7 Thought Control

Subliminal words in the correct electromagnetic field related to the expression of human consciousness, can enter one's mind at a subconscious level. A person's brain activity patterns can apparently be measured and stored electronically by super-computers. If a victim needs subliminal thoughts implanted, all that is necessary is to capture, save on computer, and target the person's brainwave pattern to send them such low frequency subliminal messages of such a character that they believe the signals to be their own thoughts.

The researcher Majix says that man's brain is so sensitive that it is like liquid crystal in response to the magnetic field of the Earth. Man is sensitive to Earth's magnetic changes, changes in the ionospheric cavity, and is capable of resonating those frequencies himself. Man is incredibly complex, beyond comprehension and a type of biocosmic transducer. He adds<sup>863</sup>:

*Physicists in Russia correlate the mean annual magnetic-activity, electro-magnetic and electro-static fields on human behaviour and medical indications. They are similar to biorhythms. These magnetic frequencies can be manipulated. Our brain waves can mimic magnetic frequencies from very simple equipment at extremely low power levels. From half a second to 4 seconds later, the neurons and brainwaves are driven exclusively by the device, with power levels almost non-existent. All one needs is a circularly polarized antenna aimed up at the ionospheric cavity and they can manipulate the moods of everyone within a 75 sq. mile area. The body picks up these "new" manipulated waves and begins to correspond immediately. "Sleep" frequency will make everyone become tired and sleep.*

#### 4.11.8 Electromagnetic Devices

Pulsed Energy Projectiles (PEPs) travel nearly at the speed of light. With pinpoint accuracy, they emit invisible laser pulses, electromagnetic radiation, stunning targets, knocking their targets off their feet, paralyzing them in pain. Their long-term effects, however, are unknown, including their effects on the brain.

---

<sup>863</sup> Barium Blues, Electromagnetic Mind control [Online] Available from: [http://www.bariumblues.com/em\\_mind%20control.htm](http://www.bariumblues.com/em_mind%20control.htm) [Accessed: 24 June 2014]

Voice-to-skull directed acoustic devices are neuro-electromagnetic non-lethal weapons, able to produce mood-altering sounds in a person's head. Pulsed microwave voice-to-skull is an example of such a weapon.

Remote Neural Monitoring (RNM) uses satellite-transmitted extra low frequencies (ELF) to send voice-to-brain communications.

Long Range Acoustic Devices (LRADs) are used for crowd control. They emit verbal challenges over distances beyond 500 meters, with warning tones to influence behaviour. They can also inflict physical harm, manipulate minds, and cause death.

Transcranial Magnetic Stimulation (TMS) is used therapeutically, to emit close proximity electrical impulses to the brain to affect mood, sleep patterns, and improve cognitive abilities in areas of learning, memory, attentiveness, visualisation, and decision-making. The long-term neurological effects are unknown.<sup>864</sup>

Silent (converted-to-voice FM) hypnosis can be transmitted using a voice frequency modulator to generate the "voice" (a hypnotist's voice). The output appears as a steady tone, but with hypnosis embedded. The mind-altering mechanism is based on a subliminal carrier technology and is typically transmitted through the use of loudspeakers, earphones, or piezoelectric transducers. The modulated carriers may be transmitted directly in real time or may be conveniently recorded and stored on mechanical, magnetic, or optical media for delayed or repeated transmission to the listener.

Embryonic Holography is where the specific frequency bands (0.3-3.0 Hz) are so flat as to appear almost two-dimensional to most biological processes on a semi-quantum mechanical level. This means that these frequencies can be seen as "scalar" in their possible interaction with specific brain processes. What these frequencies really are, however, are actual holograms of specific thoughts. They have a third component of detail. This means that a hybrid form of brain fingerprinting is now possible. And, once these "images" are stored (usually in a very sophisticated super-cooled computer), similar responses can be fed back to the person, inducing virtually any state desired (via entrainment protocols).<sup>865</sup>

---

<sup>864</sup> Lendman, S, Electromagnetic Frequency Mind Control Weapons [Online] Available from: <http://www.thepeoplesvoice.org/TPV3/Voices.php/2011/01/04/electromagnetic-frequency-mind-control-w> [Accessed: 24 June 2014]

<sup>865</sup> EMVS, Artificial/Synthetic Telepathy and Mind Control [Online] Available from: <http://emvsinfo.blogspot.com/2012/03/artificialsynthetic-telepathy-and-mind.html> [Accessed: 24 June 2014]

#### 4.11.9 Electromagnetic Satellite Technology

The electromagnetic satellite technology includes a neurophone which is a device that converts sound to electrical impulses, sometimes called the "Voice of God". When the signals are sent to the brain, it makes a person think that God or an alien is speaking to him/her. It targets the unique bioelectrical resonance frequency using a "vibrational pattern" in the brain called a "signature" and it acts like an audio receiver.<sup>866</sup>

#### 4.11.10 Magnetic Manipulation

Transcranial pulsed ultrasound was made famous by The God Helmet. Weapons are already being developed (and possibly used) that use transcranial pulse ultrasound on soldiers to increase alertness and minimise pesky emotions like fear or compassion. It turns human beings into thoughtless drones to be controlled from a distance. On the battlefield, enemies can be subjected to the opposite effects: lethargy, nausea, lack of impulse control, and a whole range of behaviour that has no bearing upon one's will to act otherwise. Every single aspect of human sensation, perception, emotion, and behaviour is regulated by brain activity. Thus, having the ability to stimulate brain function is a powerful technology.<sup>867</sup>

#### 4.11.11 Music

Noiseless cassettes are the ability to place infra-low frequency voice patterns over music, patterns that are detected by the subconscious. These messages are then stored in a person's subconscious mind, which they may later act upon.<sup>868</sup>

#### 4.11.12 Artificial Telepathy

Artificial is the term to describe something that is made or produced by human beings rather than occurring naturally, typically as a copy of something natural. "Telepathy" is derived from the Greek terms *tele* ("distant") and *pathe* ("occurrence" or "feeling"). The term was invented

---

<sup>866</sup> Bailey, P T, The Reality of Psychotronic Weapons Today [Online] Available from: <http://stopthecrime.net/docs/bailey%20mind%20control.pdf> [Accessed: 22 July 2014]

<sup>867</sup> 7 Future Methods of Mind Control (<http://www.activistpost.com/2013/06/7-future-methods-of-mind-control.html>)

<sup>868</sup> Bailey, P T, The Reality of Psychotronic Weapons Today [Online] Available from: <http://stopthecrime.net/docs/bailey%20mind%20control.pdf> [Accessed: 22 July 2014]

in 1882 by the French psychical researcher Fredric W. H. Myers, a founder of the Society for Psychical Research (SPR).

The problem is that artificial telepathy provides the perfect weapon for mental torture and information theft. It provides an extremely powerful means for exploiting, harassing, controlling, and raping the mind of any person on Earth. It opens the window to demonic possession of another person's soul.

The magnetic field around the head, the very brain waves of an individual, can be monitored by satellite. The transmitter is therefore the brain itself, just as body heat is used for "Iris" satellite tracking (infrared) or mobile phones or bugs can be tracked as "transmitters." In the case of brainwave monitoring, the results are then fed back to the relevant computers. Monitors then use the information to conduct "conversation", where audible Neurophone input is "applied" to the target/victim. The purpose of artificial telepathy is practical: communication with stroke victims and brain-activated control of modern jets are two applications. However, more often, it is used to mentally rape a civilian target; their thoughts being referenced immediately and/or recorded for future use.<sup>869</sup>

The experience of synthetic telepathy, or artificial telepathy, is really not that extraordinary. It's as simple as receiving a cell-phone call in one's head. Indeed, most of the technology involved is identical to that of cell-phone technology. Satellites link the sender and the receiver. A computer multiplexer routes the voice signal of the sender through microwave towers to a very specifically defined location or cell. The receiver is located and tracked with pinpoint accuracy, to within a few feet of actual location. But the receiver is not a cell phone. It's a human brain.

Out of nowhere, a voice suddenly blooms in the mind of the target. The human skull has no "firewall" and therefore cannot shut the voice out. The receiver can hear the sender's verbal thoughts. The sender, in turn, can hear all of the target's thoughts; exactly as if the target's verbal thoughts had been spoken or broadcast. For this reason, the experience could be called "hearing voices". The problem is that artificial telepathy provides the perfect weapon for mental torture and information theft. It provides an extremely powerful means for exploiting, harassing, controlling, and raping the mind of any person on Earth.<sup>870</sup>

---

<sup>869</sup> EMVS, Artificial/Synthetic Telepathy and Mind Control [Online] Available from: <http://emvsinfo.blogspot.com/2012/03/artificialsynthetic-telepathy-and-mind.html> [Accessed: 24 June 2014]

<sup>870</sup> Artificial Telepathy, Hearing Voices [Online] Available from: <http://artificialtelepathy.blogspot.com/2006/06/hearing-voices.html> [Accessed: 1 November 2014]



Therefore, synthetic telepathy has applications in concealed operations designed to drive a victim crazy with voices or deliver undetected instructions to a programmed assassin. It can allegedly contribute to a victim's death, driving a victim to suicide.<sup>871</sup>

## 4.12. PHARMAKEIA

Dr Ana Mendez-Ferrell,<sup>872</sup> in her book *Pharmakeia: A Hidden Assassin*, states that every infirmity originates in the devil's territory and is spiritual. Eventually, it is transferred from the invisible world and becomes visible in the natural world. The fact that they discussed their transgression prior to committing it, and the fact that they believed Satan's lie, made Adam and Eve fall.

People therefore create a mental panorama of everything they will undergo in life. If there is a family disease such as cancer, diabetes, or some serious illness, people begin to predispose themselves to get said diseases. Every time they go to the physician, they are asked if there is a history of any of these ailments in the family. The doctor, as well as the patient, is convinced that the dormant infirmity will one day appear.<sup>873</sup>

Charles Kraft<sup>874</sup> contributes disturbing evidence, in his book *Deep Wounds Deep Healing*, that when traumatic events occur during the formative years, (ages four to seven), and especially if these traumatic events occur often, a part of the inner being often gets shut down and one starts to believe the inner lie that captures one's potential.

It's the invisible world that rules over the natural world, and not the other way around. If people want to see victory in their bodies and in anything else, people need to understand where the root of the problem lies. In attempting to take down a tree, the solution is to lay an axe to the root, and not to try to prune its branches.

Medications operate in the same manner as witchcraft. They have an effect, which gives the appearance of healing, yet only the symptoms are treated, so the patient may feel well when he is not. A series of side effects and damages, often irreversible, accompany pharmaceutical drugs: from simple nausea, to heart attacks, terrible liver and pancreas

---

<sup>871</sup> EMVS, Artificial/Synthetic Telepathy and Mind Control [Online] Available from: <http://emvsinfo.blogspot.com/2012/03/artificialsynthetic-telepathy-and-mind.html> [Accessed: 24 June 2014]

<sup>872</sup> Mendez-Ferrell, A (2011) *Pharmakeia*. Florida: Voice of the Light Ministries, p. 44

<sup>873</sup> Ibid. p. 106

<sup>874</sup> Kraft, Charles.H (1993) *Deep Wounds Deep Healing*. England: Servant Publications, p.7

complications, Alzheimer's, dementia, depression, memory loss, haemophilia and in some cases, even suicide.

The immunological system God created is damaged little by little, until it ends up nullified in some cases, thereby creating one of the many forms of immunodeficiency.<sup>875</sup>

#### 4.12.1 Illusionist

The devil constructs his deceptions from the believer's history of fears and failures, which most people rehearse mentally and verbally. Moreover, he will manifest symptoms in his body which trigger memories of illnesses of the past. The devil is, in fact, an illusionist and the father of all lies. His most powerful weapon is access to the believer's memories through his words of fear. People who are afraid often talk about their fears, and he records every word. The believer's imaginations and thoughts are fertile fields, but will create a harvest of destruction if fear is added. Most people make a conscious decision that disease, poverty, or disaster will affect their lives, and the only choice they are left with is what or whom they will trust to solve the crisis. Sadly, most people put their hopes in human solutions.

God can use a man to resolve the believer's problem, but He wants him to trust Him first for the solution and not as a last resort. The prevailing consciousness from the first Adam is the source of man's confusion. The believer must reject every thought formed from fear and unbelief. Those thoughts originate from Adam and are outside of Christ.

*<sup>21</sup> For since [it was] through a man that death [came into the world, it is] also through a Man that the resurrection of the dead [has come]. <sup>22</sup> For just as [because of their union of nature] in Adam all people die, so also [by virtue of their union of nature] shall all in Christ be made alive.*

*1 Corinthians 15:21-22*

The devil is not creative, but is, in fact, rather predictable. His primary tactic is trickery along with illusions, designed to engage our self-preservation or pride. The illusions most easily believed are constructed from Man's own selfish nature. Greedy people believe lies; this makes the devil's job easier. The illusionist is skilled at making one believe a lie because he

---

<sup>875</sup> Ibid. p. 102

is the father of all lies (see John 8:44). So, if the believer is in Christ, who is the Truth, he should not be deceived.

Even our idea of self is composed from a false illusion conceived by the mind's images of reality. These unreal concepts and pictures are the foundation for the devil's illusionary tricks. Illusions are easily perpetuated on those who are preoccupied with their own self-image and identity. Fame, popularity, and notoriety are more desirable to those whose minds are engaged with the illusion of self.

The illusion the devil uses to trap people originates from the images acted out and spoken. The young form their self-images from movies, games, and peers. They are inundated with advertisements and commercials designed to influence their desires and self-images. The world of video or cinema is closely related to mental thoughts and imaginations. As a result, it is not difficult to use subconscious imagery as a form of hypnosis against those who are searching for an identity. It is easy to understand why the youth of today are attracted to the world of video games. Reality is blurred on the screens of monitors and it becomes an easy transition from the video screen to the mind. Rejection is one of the fears the devil uses on the younger generation, along with a lack of forgiveness, which drives them to act out detestable behaviours.

The corruption of the human mind is the number one goal of the devil and his demons. Illusions are convincing to those whose minds are conditioned by this world's ideas and images of reality. The spiritual realm is less important or relevant to those whose minds are continually evaluating the latest fashions and video games. Their search for God becomes critical only after a crisis or bad report. Then, after all physical options are exhausted, people turn to God. Most people who experience physical discomfort or symptoms of sickness and the like quickly assume the worst, even if they profess hope and faith.

Society, and even the majority of church members, is conditioned to accept and trust the doctor's report as the final word in diagnoses and treatments, even if they profess differently. The act of believing a symptom requires imagination and pride. Imagination accesses the picture from Man's mind and pride manifests the symptoms. Most people faced with physical discomfort or symptoms will make a self-diagnosis based on worst-case scenarios. People can sometimes manifest the disease they predict in order to proclaim, "I told you so," and identify with the majority of suffering Humanity.

Those with a bad medical diagnosis, such as cancer, are presented with a choice of either trusting another person's illusion or believing the promise of the One who overcame all things. Many times, those with such a diagnosis believe the physicians. Once a transition is made from thinking and talking about the disease to actually picturing it in the body, the next step is inevitable. The symptoms will appear worse, and, depending on the level of fear, the outcome will not be good.<sup>876</sup>

#### **4.12.2 Manipulation through Sickness**

A thought structure which produces sickness, is when people use their infirmity, including their mental health, to manipulate someone else. This can happen to get a mate's attention, or that of the children, or of the parents. When a person uses manipulation, domination and intimidation to have his way, it is witchcraft.

There are people who, because of not having resolved their low self-esteem and rejection issues, literally create sicknesses, which manifest in their bodies, to control their loved ones. It's like a self-defence mechanism, which is totally erroneous and destructive.<sup>877</sup>

In cases like these the solution does not lie in chemicals or drugs, but it is vital to get to the root of the problem.

#### **4.12.3 Caduceus**

The medical symbol is called Caduceus, the cross of Freemasonry, the cross of Lucifer, and/or the cross of Diana. It is a symbol of the occult healing power of the serpent, but also of the sacred Yogic marriage. It is raised over every institution of healing: hospitals, chiropractic offices and the medical profession in general.

It is associated with oaths taken in the name of other gods and goddesses; especially to the occult healer Asclepius, a type of false Christ, and bringing people under false systems that keep them drugged, robbed of true healing and their money, and destroy the people's faith in God the Father, and the Great Healer Yahweh Rapha.

---

<sup>876</sup> Ferrell, L E (2010) Immersed in Him. United States of America: Destiny Image Publisher Inc., pp. 75-81

<sup>877</sup> Mendez-Ferrell, A (2011) Pharmakeia. Florida: Voice of the Light Ministries, p. 59



Figure 4.3: Caduceus<sup>878</sup>



Figure 4.4: Caduceus (Kerykeion, Herald's Wand)<sup>879</sup>

This symbol releases the witchcraft power of the Caduceus to put people to sleep. This image creates subliminal responses (triggering mechanisms on the subconscious) that activate in a person every time he sees it, to go back to worship Lucifer, the false healer.<sup>880</sup>

The symbol is also known as Kerykeion, Herald's Wand, and has been nearly universal, found in Egypt, Mesopotamia, and India, where it is a symbol of harmony and balance. The symbol may have originally been a symbol of the sovereignty of the Goddess Tanit (the Carthaginian and Phoenician Goddess of the moon<sup>881</sup>), and has been used as an emblem of the goddess Ishtar and the Sumerian creator god Enki. The most recognisable form is the Kerykeion, or herald's wand, an emblem of authority carried by couriers for safe passage, and most often associated with the Greek Hermes and the Roman Mercurius. It has been mistakenly utilised as a symbol of the medical industry in the place of the wand of Asclepius (Asculapius). In the Hermetic Tradition, the caduceus is a symbol of spiritual awakening, and has been likened to the twin Kundalini serpents of Hindu mysticism.<sup>882</sup>

This emblem is a veiled symbol for the sex act and it is this symbol that represents the Supreme Deity of the Masons and, by extension, the Eastern Stars as well.<sup>883</sup>

---

<sup>878</sup> Buys, A, The Tree of Knowledge and Serpent. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished, p. 137

<sup>879</sup> Symbol Dictionary, Caduceus [Online] Available from: <http://symboldictionary.net/?p=1131> [Accessed: 29 August 2014]

<sup>880</sup> Buys, A, The Tree of Knowledge and Serpent. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished, p. 137

<sup>881</sup> Tanit was the Patron of Carthage and the consort of the god Baal. She may have been related to the goddess Astarte/Ishtar.

<sup>882</sup> Symbol Dictionary, Caduceus [Online] Available from: <http://symboldictionary.net/?p=1131> [Accessed: 29 August 2014]

<sup>883</sup> Brand, C, Sexual Brokenness and Deviation Part 2. Pretoria: RÂDÂH. Unpublished, p. 23

## **4.13. DEMONIC ENTITIES ASSOCIATED WITH MANIPULATION, DOMINATION AND CONTROL**

### **4.13.1 Victim Spirit**

In his book, *Overcoming the Victim Spirit*, Arthur Burk describes the workings of the victim spirit<sup>884</sup>. It has many faces, namely injustice, dishonour, destruction, malpractice, devouring and defilement. There is a whole genre of demons whose job it is to create victims. One part of the victim's job is to be a flashing beacon in the spirit realm, attracting the attention of all predator demons. Once a predator demon has made connections with a victim demon, the two demons facilitate bringing their human host together in a damaging way.

The victim spirit rarely operates alone. Its job is to attract other demons to routinely assault the victim from the outside or to attach themselves to the victim for continual harassment. In bringing about deliverance, it is sometimes desirable to sever the unholy alliances among the different demons and to recognise the other mind-sets that also have to be healed after deliverance.

The predator spirit is the primary partner of the victim spirit. It thrives on inflicting physical and emotional pain on others for the pleasure of the predator. This predator, like most, gets his greatest fulfilment out of the emotional pain he is causing by humiliating his victim. The victim spirit is skilled at leading their captive to the predatory spouse, boss, repairman, coach or neighbour. It is important to note that a person can be a victim and a predator at the same time.

The poverty spirit works primarily with a person's mind-set to keep them from possessing their birth right. There are four common manifestations of a poverty mind-set:

- (1) A person cannot accept and keep for themselves the good things that come to them. People with a poverty spirit receive an inheritance or insurance settlement and give it away as soon as they can. While their generosity is to be applauded, it is merely a thin disguise for the fact that in their spirit, they are very uncomfortable having fine things given to them.

---

<sup>884</sup> Burk, A (2001) *Overcoming the Victim Spirit*. USA: Plumblin Ministries, p. 1

- (2) They feel uncomfortable surpassing their peers. If their moral standards are higher than those of their spiritual leaders, they will go to great lengths to keep this private or to explain why they really are not more holy or more disciplined or more spiritual than someone else. They also downplay professional and academic excellence, quickly informing others why their own achievements aren't really all that they appear to be. This is not humility. It is false humility, a manifestation of the demonic poverty spirit.
- (3) They are typically unwilling to pay a price to achieve. The pain of making a change, taking a risk or facing the unknown is deemed reason enough for downsizing their expectations. They would rather endure endless pain of financial, emotional, academic, spiritual or relational poverty than to face the increased short-term pain required to obtain long-term blessings.
- (4) They are satisfied with less than God's best for them. This facet of the poverty spirit functions quite freely in the midst of abundance. Because a person finally has more than they once had, or more than others have, or more than they ever expected to have, does not mean that they have possessed their inheritance. What looks like godly contentment can be a poverty demon in disguise.

Spirit of Jealousy: This demon works through a second party and is empowered by two lies. Suppose Fred is jealous of George because George is going on a short-term mission trip through the church. That jealousy is rooted in one or the other of two perceptions. The first perception is that Fred was more deserving than George; therefore Fred should have gone on the trip, not George. Desert is a hugely relative term. It does not have to be pegged to any objective standard. All that matters is that in his own mind, Fred felt he was as qualified or more qualified than George.

Many times it is small people who have not been willing to pay the price to excel who are jealous of those who have paid the price. Their defence mechanism is to tear down the other person in their mind, rather than growing up to the spiritual stature necessary for the many spiritual leaders who have a victim spirit. They have only been slowed down, not destroyed by it. If a man or his wife has a victim spirit and the people in the pew have a spirit of jealousy about the marriage, the combination of the two can be devastating to a wife's physical and mental health, or to the marriage covenant itself. Men likewise can covet the pastor's wife, opening the door for the spirit of jealousy.

The welfare spirit works through problems which are to be passed on, not owned. If a person couldn't find someone to take the problem, he would be careful to find someone he could blame for the problem. Someone who wants to be free of their victim spirit must vigorously resist the deceptive mind-set and the demonic power of the welfare spirit. Problems were made to be solved.

As bad as the problem of cross-pollination is, the worst of it is the issue of re-infection. If one deals with the victim spirit and fails to evict the demons that are partnering with it, then the demons that are left will usually manage to create situations that will re-empower the victim spirit that was once evicted.

Most of these demons are generational. When a counsellor looks at just one person, he may primarily see one demon active. However, when he takes the history of an entire family line, he can usually see patterns that will reveal a bigger picture and he can identify the demons in the family background.

The victim demon will easily make a bad situation worse if there is also a curse on time.<sup>885</sup>

#### 4.13.2 Jezebel

The real Jezebel is in actual fact not a spirit but a principality and world power. Jezebel can be summarised in one word: witchcraft.

*Notwithstanding I have a few things against thee, because thou sufferest that woman Jezebel, which calleth herself a prophetess, to teach and to seduce my servants to commit fornication, and to eat things sacrificed unto idols.*

*Revelation 2:20*

Jezebel's name means "unexalted" and "without cohabitation". Jezebel and Ahab work together. The two complement one another. If Ahab is not present, Jezebel doesn't react. And if Jezebel is not around, Ahab won't react. Ahab can be summarised as silent rebellion.

---

<sup>885</sup> Burk, A (2001) Overcoming the Victim Spirit. USA: Plumblin Ministries, pp. 1-19, 27-34



Jezebel is driven from inside by perversion, rebellion, pride, arrogance, haughtiness, sorcery and witchcraft. Everything is done to satisfy the self in every area, including the materialistic and the physical (flesh). Jezebel is unteachable, independent and arrogant.

Jezebel wants to destroy and remove the true prophets of God (1 Kings 18:3-4), abuse authority and leadership-positions and resist the working of the Holy Spirit. She instigates fear and reacts in the flesh, via threats and tantrums for example. This principality manipulates people on an emotional level, lies, cheats and distorts the meaning of peoples' words.

Jezebel has an insane, unquenchable lust for power and authority. She is never satisfied until complete power is within her grasp. The Jezebel controls persons, marriages, families, bloodlines, congregations, etc. with the following cords: witchcraft, compromise, sexual iniquity, religion and domination, intimidation and manipulation. This principality can be responsible for senility in old age, drug abuse, occult, witchcraft, illegitimate sexual sins, fear and astrology (Isajai 47). Other areas where Jezebel rules are cancer, homosexuality, divorce and female domination. Jezebel can also bring forth blasphemy and incest.

This principality can sit behind schizophrenia, schizothymia, double-mindedness, doubt and instability. Persons coming from broken families usually carry with them strong spirits of death. Doubt and instability can be a false personality which causes weakness and insecurity; also called the Jezebel's child within. The child is an alternative personality which is weak and insecure, fearful, rebellious, sexually abnormal, or other characteristics against the true self.<sup>886</sup>

#### **4.13.3 Death and Hell**

The spirit of Death and Hell comes to steal, to kill and to destroy: to steal, kill and destroy a person's vision, his life, his health, his excitement, anything that God has given the believer. This spirit works through accusation, isolation, doubts, sickness and infirmity.

The enemy (Satan) is called the accuser of the brethren, accusing the believer day and night before God (Revelation 12:10). The next thing after accusation through words of the mouth, are intimidating thoughts, which leads to isolation. Death and Hell love to get a person to the

---

<sup>886</sup> Buys, A, Understanding Jezebel. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished, pp. 9, 43-46

point where he is in isolation. When someone is isolated, he is an open target for the enemy to come against. No one can survive being spiritual Lone Rangers. God has made Man to be dependent on Him and one another in the Body of Christ.

The next step is to bombard the person with thoughts of doubt. The believer will start doubting his calling, purpose, needs and then fear and torment will enter. Torment can push the person towards suicide. The last manifestation of the spirit of Death and Hell is sickness and infirmity, once your mind is in torment and terror. Nearly all sicknesses begin in the mind, as discussed before.<sup>887</sup>

#### 4.13.4 Belial

He is one of the most wicked and vile spirits in the kingdom of darkness. Belial is mentioned twenty seven times in the Old Testament and once in the New Testament. The Hebrew word "beliyyaal" which is translated as "Belial" is mentioned sixteen times in the Old Testament. The word is also translated in other verses as *wicked, ungodly, and naughty*. The Strong's Concordance definition of *beliyyaal* is: without profit, worthless, destruction, wickedness, and evil, naughty. The most common of these definitions is worthlessness.<sup>888</sup> Merriam-Webster's definition of *worthlessness* includes valueless, useless, contemptible and despicable.<sup>889</sup> "Despicable" is defined as "*deserving to be despised: so worthless or obnoxious as to rouse moral indignation.*"<sup>890</sup>

Belial's work is to cause men to commit sins that are so vile and contemptible that they rouse moral indignation. Belial attempts to draw people away from worshipping the true God. Under Belial are spirits that will seduce people and draw them away from the Lord. To seduce means to lead away, to persuade to disobedience or disloyalty, to lead astray by persuasion or false promises, to attract, to lure.

Belial works with Jezebel to seduce the servants of the Lord into fornication and idolatry. Jezebel can manifest through false teachings and is a seducing spirit. Jezebel is a seducing spirit and draws people into whoredom (prostitution, faithlessness, unworthy or idolatrous

---

<sup>887</sup> Buys, A, Understanding Jezebel. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished, pp. 13-16

<sup>888</sup> Bible Hub, Hebrew Beliyyaal [Online] Available from: <http://biblehub.com/hebrew/1100.htm> [Accessed: 29 August 2014]

<sup>889</sup> Merriam-Webster Dictionary, Worthlessness [Online] Available from: <http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/worthless> [Accessed: 28 March 2014]

<sup>890</sup> Merriam-Webster Dictionary, Despicable [Online] Available from: <http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/despicable> [Accessed: 28 March 2014]

practices or pursuits) and adultery. Spirits of whoredom, prostitution and debauchery (extreme indulgence in sensuality - to be fleshly or carnal, deficient in moral, spiritual, or intellectual interests: irreligious) work under the strongman Belial.

Belial works with Jezebel to draw people into abominable sins including sodomy, homosexuality, incest, rape and perversion of all kinds. Belial sears the conscience of man, therefore causing them to act without conscience. Men without a conscience are capable of committing any act without feeling remorse. When the conscience is seared, men and women are opened to all kinds of unclean spirits and capable of all kinds of unclean acts. There are many today who no longer feel that homosexuality, lesbianism, and incest are wrong. Belial has seared the conscience to accept these things. There is almost no limit to the depravity that men can exhibit when the conscience has been seared.

Other spirits working under Belial include rape and sexual abuse in their methods. The proliferation of rape and sexual abuse, including incest and sodomy, are the result of the wicked spirit of Belial. Thousands of women and men have been victims of sexual abuse as children. Spirits of death that come in during the violation need to be cast out. When someone is violated in this way, it can be like a death coming into their souls. These filthy spirits are the work of the wicked ruler, Belial.

The spirit of Belial operates through alcohol and drunkenness. Drunkenness is a way to break down the morals and open people up to lust and perversion. It is a known fact that many children of alcoholic parents are often the victims of sexual abuse, including incest. Alcohol can also open the door for spirits of rape including "date rape" that is so prevalent on many of the college and university campuses.

Spirits of perversion, including homosexuality and lesbianism, operate under the strongman of Belial. This is also referred to in the Word of God as *sodomy*. Sodomy is defined as copulation with a member of the same sex or with an animal (bestiality). The term *sodomite* is mentioned five times in the Old Testament. Sodomites were temple prostitutes that were a part of the worship of the idol gods of fertility in Canaan. These vile acts were a part of the idol worship of the Canaanites.

One of the works of Belial is to bring uncleanness into the temple of God. The ministry is a target of this spirit. He desires to draw the servant of the Lord, His anointed, into sin (especially sexual sin) to bring reproach to the church. Those controlled by Belial will

despise (to look down on with contempt or aversion, to regard as negligible, worthless, or distasteful) the Lord's anointed. Belial will cause individuals to not support men and women sent by the Lord. They will withhold their financial support.

It is important to honour and respect those who are called and sent by the Lord. One of the ways to honour the people sent by the Lord is to support them financially and to bless them with spoken words. It is dangerous to touch the Lord's anointed. As a person receives the Lord's anointed, he will receive the fullness and blessing of the Lord.

Belial hates the Lord's anointed. Belial desires to murder and destroy the Lord's anointed. Preachers and teachers anointed by God are a hindrance to Belial's work. Godly leaders call men to repentance and a lifestyle of righteousness. They bring deliverance and restoration to the people of God. They are a restraining influence on the work of Belial.

The men of Belial are selfish and only concerned about themselves. Belial causes men to be selfish and unconcerned about others. Those influenced and controlled by Belial are inconsiderate and unthoughtful about the needs and condition of others. Belial is a spirit that will cause increasingly cold love (to be pitiless, ruthless, have no compassion, have no pity, show no mercy, and harden one's heart), iniquity and lawlessness to abound.

Belial has released a flood of ungodliness (denying God or disobedient to Him: impious, irreligious, contrary to moral law, sinful, wicked) upon the nations. Belial is responsible for the flood of ungodliness manifested through Hollywood, television, and the mass media. Belial is responsible for rebellion and disobedience to God. This spirit has caused many to be irreligious and impious. A lack of reverence (no fear of God) is the result of Belial's influence. Belial desires to cover the Earth with filth and immorality. This flood also includes the persecution that comes against the Lord's anointed.

Belial also has a host of spirits of infirmity and sickness that operate under him. Wherever there is immorality, there will be sickness and disease. These are curses that come upon those who are perverse and crooked. Remember, Belial desires to draw men into sin, immorality and perversion in order to bring the curse of the Lord upon a nation.

The present day rise of pornography and sexual filth is the work of Belial. One of the vilest forms of pornography is child pornography, which is a thriving business supported by paedophiles. Paedophilia is sexual perversion in which children are the preferred sexual

object. Pornography opens the door for a host of evil spirits of lust and perversion. There has also been a connection between pornography and rape in some studies. Belial is a ruling spirit over spirits of pornography, whoredom, prostitution and other sexual spirits. Sexual impurity is another strong spirit that is under his control, as well as spirits of homosexuality and lesbianism (perversion). This spirit can pervert the morals of a nation through sexual immorality.

Belial causes men to plan and plot that which is evil. There are people involved in forms of witchcraft that are planning to destroy the Church. We have heard reports of witches fasting to break up marriages of Christian leaders and to disrupt the Church. Belial will influence men to plot against the righteous. The mind of Belial is lawlessness and rebellion. Where there is no law, people run wild. A society that rejects the Bible as its moral authority will eventually have problems with its judicial system. Belial hates the restraining power of the Bible, the Holy Spirit and the Church. This is why he attacks them so viciously.

Belial desires immorality and ungodliness to reign without any restraint. Belial is responsible for an attack upon our judicial system: laws against homosexuality, lesbianism, prostitution and adultery, which were once a part of our legal code, are now repealed. When there is an unequal yoke between believers and unbelievers, we call this an ungodly soul tie. Breaking ungodly soul ties is a key to deliverance. Ungodly association causes evil spirits to be transferred.

If Belial cannot directly control a person, he will influence him through ungodly association. Associating with the wrong people can cause an individual to receive an evil transfer of spirits. One of the keys to being delivered from Belial's control is to break every ungodly soul tie and obey the Word of God. Belial is tied to unrighteousness, darkness, infidels, and idolatry. The first reference to Belial in the Word of God ties him to idolatry.

The believer is not to touch the unclean (dirty and filthy). Belial is associated with uncleanness. There are unclean spirits attached to behaviours or objects that are unclean. Idolatry is unclean. It is considered spiritual whoredom and adultery. It is departing from the Lord and breaking covenant. The believer is to keep himself away from all that is unclean. According to Galatians 5:19, uncleanness is a work of the flesh. God has not called the believer unto uncleanness but unto holiness (1 Thessalonians 4:7). These verses tie uncleanness to fornication. "Fornication" is from the Greek word "porneia" meaning harlotry, adultery, incest, and idolatry. There was a man in Corinth that was guilty of sexual relations

with his father's wife (1 Corinthians 5:11). According to 2 Corinthians 7:1, the believer is to cleanse himself from all filthiness of the flesh and spirit, perfecting holiness in the fear of God.<sup>891</sup>

Spirits under the Strongman of Belial<sup>892</sup>:

Uncleanness	Perversion	Free love	Apostasy
Cold love	Death	Sorcery	Sodomy
Adultery	Lawlessness	Prostitution	Treachery
Infirmary	Abuse	Iniquity	Fornication
Rape	Harlotry	Idolatry	Blasphemy
Molestation	Implacable	Drunkenness	Betrayal
Rebellion	Pornography	Lying	Incest
Jezebel	Obscenity	Debauchery	Sickness
Whoredom	Shameless	Homosexuality	Destruction
Unmerciful	Lust	Delusion	Lesbianism
Irreverence	Deception	Backsliding	Seared
Alcohol	Witchcraft	Drug addiction	False Teaching
Immodest	Heresy	Hardness of	Doctrines of
Immorality	Filthiness	Sexual Impurity	

#### 4.13.5 Mesmerising Spirit

The mesmerising spirit is an unclean force designed to keep the believer focused on irrelevant things, rather than seeing what God wants them to see. In simple terms, the believer should cry out to God, asking Him to shine His light on the things that He wants seen and to hold His light there so long and so brightly that unwilling people are forced to see and acknowledge what He wants seen.

The believer gives an open door to the mesmerising spirit through misperceptions of the Trinity. These open doors grant admission to the perversions of the enemy. The

---

<sup>891</sup> Buys, A, The Defiled Bride, Sodomy and Sexual Abuse. Kanaan Ministries, pp. 82-103

<sup>892</sup> Ibid., p. 103

mesmerising spirit is a perversion of the Holy Spirit, and it is one of the devil's primary tools for hindering the vitality of a community through the devouring of honour.

The mesmerising spirit controls focus on (1) giving honour to someone who will defile another - it often goes hand-in-hand with the victim spirit; (2) dishonouring those who are not honourable - many people have been rejected, alienated etc., because the mesmerising spirit has been able to cause them to be seen and/or to see things in a particular way; (3) honouring those who are not worthy of honour - causing a person to follow people who shouldn't be in leadership because he focuses on the one good thing that they say or are able to do for him; and (4) exaggerating the problems so a person cannot see the good or what God is doing – the mesmerising spirit focuses on the problems and bring problems so close, and makes them greater than God's power and plans for the believer. Therefore, the primary focus of the mesmerising spirit is to defame God, to draw the believer's attention to whatever cannot be understood and to change his focus to whatever looks bad or painful.<sup>893</sup>

#### **4.13.6 Spirit of Anti-Christ**

Satan himself spawned the Anti-Christ spirit, as well as leading the demonic angels into their evil. The spirit of the Anti-Christ has as its purpose the destruction of everything that God has built within the person, including their looks, their curiosity of beauty, and their personhood itself.

One of the things that this spirit does to control individuals is to cause them to judge themselves. Another thing done to control the person is to change their focus so they can't grow spiritually. The spirit also bribes the person with enticing doctrines of demons, and misleads people from true freedom into religious bondage.

The spirit of the Anti-Christ is attached to the religious spirit when people receive the Lord Jesus Christ into their lives without the Spirit of Life (the Holy Spirit). Many Monarch slaves, for example, are working with the Anti-Christ spirit under the cover of being good Christians.

The Greek word translated "*transforming*" is also the source of the word "*masquerade*". It means to have a facade, with a hidden character behind it. The words of the apostles warn Christians about "double-minded men" (James 1:8) and that Satan's key people will

---

<sup>893</sup> Burk, A, Theft of Honor and the Mesmerizing Spirit [Online] Available from: [http://www.mysteryofdreams.com/wp-content/resourcefiles/Theft\\_of\\_Honor\\_and\\_the\\_Mesmerizing\\_Spirit.pdf](http://www.mysteryofdreams.com/wp-content/resourcefiles/Theft_of_Honor_and_the_Mesmerizing_Spirit.pdf) [Accessed: 24 July 2014]

masquerade with false fronts. In contrast, the Scriptures admonish followers of Christ to have their public lives match their private lives.

When the spirit of the Anti-Christ comes into a person, it comes in as a cold clammy spirit that consumes all hope and all joy in life. Rather than being a fresh breeze bringing joy, this spirit of the Anti-Christ is like a vacuum sucking life. It is like being raped. Victims of this spirit say they felt like they were raped and defiled by it. The person's own natural feelings of cleanliness will feel violated.

This spirit can touch a person's life in different ways and at different levels. When an individual's personal standards are violated, the person will often not forgive themselves. Instead, they judge themselves. This further illustrates how the Anti-Christ spirit sets up abusive patterns. By judging oneself, rather than forgiving, the victim sets himself up as God, for only God can judge a person. Jesus is the only one who has a true standard and measuring stick to judge by.

Captured by the cycle of abuse from the spirit of the Anti-Christ, a person will continue to beat up upon themselves. Satan wanted God's power and glory, but not the character of God. The spirit of the Anti-Christ has wisdom that it promotes which is earthly, natural, demonic (James 3:14-15). The Spirit of the Anti-Christ will entice people with the doctrine of demons (1 Timothy 4:1).

The Anti-Christ spirit breaks Man's ability to love God and others. Satan's original pride came from selfishness. The spirit of the Anti-Christ brings selfishness, but it brings it in a hidden way. The Anti-Christ spirit will cause pain. The hidden damage of pain is that it inflicts self-focus.<sup>894</sup>

The Anti-Christ spirit can also manifest in rebellion – open rebellion, cunning-, crafty-, and subtle rebellion as well as silent rebellion. Disobedience leads to rebellion which in turn is a sin of witchcraft (1 Samuel 15:22-23) which opens the door to the spirit of the Anti-Christ.<sup>895</sup>

---

<sup>894</sup> Springmeier F and Wheeler C, Using Spiritual Things to Control a Person [Online] Available from: <http://educate-yourself.org/mc/illumformula10Bchap.shtml> [Accessed: 7 July 2014]

<sup>895</sup> Buys, A, Understanding Jezebel. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished, pp. 4-9



#### 4.13.7 Spirit of Fear

The terms “fearful” and “cowardice” include the descriptions of “frighten”, “made fearful”, “dread”, “faint-hearted” and “trembling”. Fear is an unpleasant, often strong, emotion caused by anticipation or awareness of danger. an instance of this emotion, a state marked by this emotion, anxious concern, solicitude, profound reverence and awe, especially towards Trinity God, reason for alarm and danger. Terror implies the most extreme degree of fear.<sup>896</sup>

Neil T. Anderson, pastoral theologian, argues that fear has an influence on the spirit, soul and body. He goes on to explain that<sup>897</sup>,

*people can be so paralysed by fear to the extent that they couldn't carry out their heart's desire. The person knew what was right, and wanted to do the right thing, but some unknown fear kept him from doing it. The sudden episode of acute apprehension or intense fear that appeared out of the blue caused a shortness of breath and the victim felt like being smothered. His heart pounded, causing him to sweat profusely. He began to tremble with feelings of unreality, as though he was going crazy. He may have felt chest pains and numbness or tingling in his hands and feet.*

Fear can freeze a person into paralysis: physically, emotionally and spiritually.<sup>898</sup> Fear is a barrier to intimacy. It robs people of their intimacy in relationships, and above all, the intimacy with the Father, Jesus Christ and the Holy Spirit.<sup>899</sup> The spirit of fear chokes out faith, joy, peace, and love. It binds, paralyzes, and weakens the believer and softens him up for the arrival of other spirits, such as infirmity and bondage.<sup>900</sup>

Since the kingdom of darkness operates according to a specific hierarchy, the spirit of fear has a name and is called Kundalini. According to Professor Dr Connie Brand from the Radah Academy, Kundalini operates closely with Regea, the strongman of familiar and familial spirits, and Oblaharm, the strongman of occult spirits.<sup>901</sup> Brand affirms that the Kundalini is the spirit of fear and is seen in deliverance as a snake coming up from the root of the spine

---

<sup>896</sup> Demon Buster, Respect, Fear and Nervousness [Online] Available from: <http://www.demonbuster.com/rfan.html> [Accessed: 26 September 2014]

<sup>897</sup> Anderson, N T and Zuehlke, T E and Julianne S (2000) Christ - Centered Therapy. Grand Rapids, Michigan: Zondervan, p.267

<sup>898</sup> Meyer, J (2006) The Confident Women. Start Today living Boldly And Without Fear. USA: Warner Faith, pp.154-156

<sup>899</sup> Wood, J T (1976) What are You Afraid of? USA: Prentice-Hall, Inc., p.85

<sup>900</sup> Robeson, J and C (1984) Strongman's His Name ... What's His Game? USA: Whitaker House, p.128

<sup>901</sup> Brand, C (1998) Geestelike Oorlogvoering. Satan se Struktuur en Strategiee. Pretoria: Unpublished bl. 12,81

over the person's head, where it hypnotises the counselee. It also veils the person whom has much difficulty in seeing the truth.<sup>902</sup>

#### **4.13.8 Spirit of Mind Control**

A person who is under the power of the witchcraft mind-control spirit finds himself subject to uncontrollable urges and thoughts. Certain emotions and feelings arise unexpectedly. Despondency and mood swings mark his personality. Memories of the past haunt him and certain addictions increase, including drugs, alcohol, and masturbation. He feels compelled to do certain things or to act in certain ways. Often, anger and bitterness emerge unexpectedly and just as quickly subside.

The spirit of mind control is often seen as a giant squid with ten tentacles that stick into brains or cover heads. It is sometimes seen as a brown cylinder or dark brown bands that cover a person's body or head. There are different things that can open the door for the spirit of mind control and fear is one of them. Fear colours the way you think. Everything in the mind is slanted to reach a result prearranged by fear. Satan sometimes uses desire and even good intentions. Other things can change and control a person's mind, like hatred, bitterness, and unforgiving attitudes. A person's entire mental outlook can change overnight under control of this spirit.

Addiction to drugs is a form of mind control. So is gluttony. Fear, pride, or a lie can come in and control your mind. Satan has captured the minds of many. Schizophrenia and other mental diseases are on the rise. These victims no longer have control over their own thinking processes. They have bought the suggestions of the enemy and can no longer resist his evil schemes.

The spirit of mind control often brings headaches. It also brings unteachableness, hardness of mind, stubbornness, depression, unbelief, and unwillingness. Some people go through years of teaching but never learn anything. They still cling to old ideas and beliefs no matter what. They have been brainwashed and cannot get rid of their ways of thinking, even when proven erroneous by the Word of God. A kind of stupor exists where the victim cannot see

---

<sup>902</sup> According to Professor, Dr Connie Brand, expert in Christian Counselling and Deliverance.

reality or truth. They see things only through tinted glasses, so to speak. It brings narrowed vision, and the person cannot seem to understand the things of God.<sup>903</sup>

A person under attack from this spirit will manifest symptoms of passivity, forgetfulness, headaches, loss of train of thought etc. This spirit is part of the mind-binding and mind-blinding spirits.

People can receive mind control spirits through music (Rock, Jazz, Disco, etc.), meditation, reading certain books, drugs and alcohol (or anything that alters the mind and breaks down the hedges) (Ecclesiastes 10:8), passivity, control by another person, exposure of the mind to false teachings, psychology and pornography. Mind control spirits can also be inherited. Mind control works with insanity, mental illness, schizophrenia, intellectualism and a host of other spirits that operate in the mind.<sup>904</sup>

#### 4.14. EVIL DESIGNS

Both the kingdom of heaven and the kingdom of darkness function by designs established in the spiritual world and manifested in a person's life. God's designs originate in heavenly places and the devil's designs come from infernal places.

One of the greatest revelations of God for Dr Ana Mendez-Ferrell in her book *Regions of Captivity* came while she was praying for a pastor in the hospital<sup>905</sup>:

*The pastor's condition was considered terminal, so I got into the Spirit to try to see the spiritual world around him and find how I could help him. Suddenly, it was as if the Lord gave me a vision. I appeared in a place that was one of the regions of darkness. It was a gloomy, cold room and the sick brother was in there, in the same hospital bed in which I had already seen him, with the same tubes attached to his body. It was an exact replica of the visible realm. The place was full of demons speaking over the sick man. He was a holy man, a servant of God who the devil wanted to kill. I asked the Holy Spirit about the location and He answered: 'In the chambers of the designs of hell. I want you to get*

---

<sup>903</sup> Ing, R (1966) *Spiritual Warfare*. Whitaker House: United States of America, pp. 227-228, 232-236, 238-239

<sup>904</sup> Eckhard, J (2004) *Deliverance and Spiritual Warfare Manual*. Chicago: Crusaders Ministries, p. 45

<sup>905</sup> Mendez-Ferrell, A (2010) *Regions of Captivity*. Florida: Voice of the Light Ministries, p. 41

*closer to listen to what the demons are saying. I want to teach you something:’ I got closer, and I clearly heard them chanting in unison: ‘Oh, Satan, Satan, your will be done on Earth, as it is in hell:’ I was speechless as the Spirit of the Lord explained how the devil has made plans in the kingdom of darkness against all of us and that his servants of the underworld are establishing them upon the Earth. I asked the Lord what I should do. He responded saying, "The Son of God was manifested to destroy the works of the devil, not only on the face of the Earth, but to the depths of hell where they originate. The Word of faith decreed from a spirit united to Jesus does not stop on the surface of the Earth. It has power to penetrate the heavens, hell, and the invisible world:’ So I declared that Word, with all the power of God, and instantly, the place vanished before my eyes with all the demons. I came back from my vision to the hospital room where the brother was. The atmosphere of death that surrounded him disappeared. His face began to fill with the life of Jesus that lived within him. In a couple of days, he was released from the hospital in perfect health.*

From this it is clear that the demons continually pray for the devil's plans to prosper. Sadly enough, the majority of Christians never pray to pull God's designs toward themselves. The believer should pray for God's plans to prosper. The Lord's Prayer is a very powerful diagram to apostolically establish God's designs on the Earth. The prayer leads the believer step by step. One begins by entering into His presence, in deep adoration and exaltation of the heavenly Father. Once there, we pull down, from Heaven to Earth, everything He has designed for the believer. This is how a person should pray:

*<sup>9</sup> Pray, therefore, like this: Our Father Who is in heaven, hallowed (kept holy) be Your name.<sup>10</sup> Your kingdom come, Your will be done on earth as it is in heaven.*

*Matthew 6:9-10*

The devil is an imitator and knows how to unite the visible with the invisible. He uses the power of curses and witchcraft to establish and activate his designs upon the Earth. The word *witchcraft* points to something that is crafted, as in an object or a work. It is something done to produce evil in a person, business, or city. For this evil to work, it needs a design concocted under the inspiration of spirits of witchcraft. The sorcerer needs something that represents the person or project to be harmed.

The voodoo doll with pins sticking out of it can be taken as an example. Whatever the witch does on Earth, the devil reproduces in Hell and vice versa. From Hell, the demons keep the design alive so that it manifests in the life of the person. The power that Jesus gave the believer to bind and loose is one of the ways God gives him authority to pull His designs down from Heaven to Earth. When praying for someone and discovering by the Spirit of God the design that is operating in the person's life, the following is an example of the words to be used<sup>906</sup>:

*The Son of God was manifested to destroy the works of the devil to the very depths of hell  
And in this moment, I loose the manifestation of Jesus, the Son of God, tearing to pieces  
every design of the devil in the kingdom of darkness. Amen*

There are people under designs of failure, financial ruin, poverty, debt, divorce, family destruction, sickness, accidents, and many other things, including mental instabilities. Thousands of people will enter a new level of freedom when those designs that bind them are undone.<sup>907</sup>

A note of caution: this area of deliverance should be done via the gift of prophetic knowledge given by the Holy Spirit in order to penetrate the kingdom of darkness, where God wants to show key aspects that will set people free. It does not deal with going down to Hell for the sake of going there or penetrating it just to penetrate it. The person the Lord chooses to experience it does this type of deliverance under the direction of God, through His Spirit.

## **4.15. SOUL FRAGMENTATION**

### **4.15.1 The Fragment of the Soul**

The soul and spirit are ultimately connected and made of a substance that can be fragmented. A person's soul contains the information defining who he is as a spiritual being. There is a parallel in the physical realm: inside the nucleus of Man's cells is found a substance called DNA, which is a chain of amino acids. It works like a file in which all the genetic information about the physical being is found. If the technology to accomplish it existed, an entire body could be reproduced from a single cell.

---

<sup>906</sup> Ibid., pp. 41-46

<sup>907</sup> Ibid., p. 47

Likewise, a single fragment of the soul is all that is needed to capture a person spiritually. The devil does not need to possess the entire soul to take a prisoner in the spiritual sphere. He only needs a fragment to establish in it a region of his kingdom and, from there, afflict it. In order for this to happen, the devil must shatter the soul through circumstances, causing deep fear, trauma, or acute pain. In addition, he can divide the soul through participation in the occult and sin.

Every person has been a victim at some time or other of terrifying or painful situations. These are moments in which something breaks in the depths of his being. Expressions such as, 'I'm broken up' or, 'they broke my heart' reflect the injuries inflicted upon the soul during fragmentation. The devil takes advantage of moments of great suffering to capture a piece of an individual and take this as prisoner in his kingdom - even when most of the soul has been healed through Christ. Once the soul has been broken, Satan makes the person "good for nothing" in that area of his life, or in every area in some cases.

When the devil breaks a person's soul, it is as if his inner city becomes desolate and in ruins. Therefore, when an individual first comes to Jesus, he needs to begin a process of restoration and deliverance. This is a rebuilding of the old ruins. Every person needs to be rebuilt so that the temple of God can be constructed within them. The designs of the devil need to be destroyed in the person's life in order for them to totally be set free.

It is the work of Jesus to completely destroy the work of the devil through the anointing of the Holy Spirit. This is a process that does not end with the announcement and acceptance of the Good News of the Gospel. God wants to raise every individual up as kings and priests for God the Father. The kings of the Kingdom of God have shining cities. There is no king without a territory, without abundant riches, or without authority. Everything the king says is law. But as long as Tabeal<sup>908</sup> governs, a part of each of man's soul will be useless. He will not be in control of his life; he will live with confusion, terror, sickness, and the feeling that he is powerless to overcome.

The apostolic anointing is what opens a believer's understanding, enabling him to take authority, as the king he is in Christ, over the gates of Hell. As Jesus told Peter, *The gates of*

---

<sup>908</sup> Note that once the soul has been broken, the devil allows the son of Tabeal to reign over it. There is not much that is known from the Bible about this king except from the meaning of his name. In Aramaic, Tabeal means "good for nothing." From NAS Hebrew concordance.(Isaiah 7:6)

*Hell will not prevail against the Church*<sup>909</sup>. Behind those gates are captive kings, sons of God, who are unsuccessful at being who they are meant to be because the devil has rendered them useless. Spiritual and material treasures are also being held back from those kings. The soul that has been broken and locked up in prison is going to be tormented by everything that it sees, feels, and hears around it in the spiritual region of its captivity. It is trapped behind iron gates in regions of evil in the kingdom of darkness. Captivities are strictly spiritual places controlled by the hosts of Satan. Willpower is not enough to free souls from these places; the believer needs God's authority to move against the forces of darkness.

There are many reasons why a soul can be captive. The fire of Hell traps both the just and the unjust. Anyone can be exposed to traumas, spells, and spiritual traps. For example, when a patient is under anaesthesia or when a soul becomes heartbroken while visiting a cemetery, the person enters the regions of death. These regions can also be entered via the emotion of fear or by undertaking spiritual warfare with insufficient understanding.

Another cause of exposure is found in bringing the Gospel to enemy-controlled territories without the laying of appropriate spiritual groundwork. Some are born into captivity because of a parent's imprisonment. This is a form of generational captivity. This is the case in children who are born with autism and locked inside themselves in a world assigned to them in spiritual regions. There are other forms of captivity that occur in a variety of ways. Babies can become trapped when parents attempt abortion. Even the foetus who suffers the intense pain of a tormented mother while in the womb can be held captive. Many times these souls don't want to be born because they are already trapped in regions of death. Phobias such as claustrophobia, agoraphobia, the fear of heights, the fear of the dark, or anything else that scares a person, have to do with captivity of the soul.

The imprisoned soul of a child of God can never totally develop. By the grace of God, it will reach a certain level, but it will never go beyond that point without deliverance from these regions and the restoration of the soul.<sup>910</sup>

As seen earlier, Witchcraft involves the manipulation and control of the minds of people against their will. Can witchcraft steal away or control fragments of one's mind? God seems to say that is can, when looking at the following scripture:

---

<sup>909</sup> see Matthews 16:18

<sup>910</sup> Mendez-Ferrell, A (2010) *Regions of Captivity*. Florida: Voice of the Light Ministries, pp.52-60

*Thus says the Lord GOD: "Woe to the women who sew magic charms on their sleeves and make veils for the heads of people of every height to hunt souls! Will you hunt the souls of My people, and keep yourselves alive? And will you profane Me among My people for handfuls of barley and for pieces of bread, killing people who should not die, and keeping people alive who should not live, by your lying to My people who listen to lies?" Therefore thus says the Lord GOD: "Behold, I am against your magic charms by which you hunt souls there like birds. I will tear them from your arms, and let the souls go, the souls you hunt like birds. I will also tear off your veils and deliver My people out of your hand, and they shall no longer be as prey in your hand. Then you shall know that I am the LORD. Because with lies you have made the heart of the righteous sad, whom I have not made sad; and you have strengthened the hands of the wicked, so that he does not turn from his wicked way to save his life. Therefore you shall no longer envision futility nor practice divination; for I will deliver My people out of your hand, and you shall know that I am the LORD."*

*(Ezekiel 13:18-23, emphasis added)*

Richard Ing, in his book, *Waging Spiritual Warfare*, testifies that he had cases where the subject's parents were Satanists. When he prayed that God would send angels to pick up and restore the fragments of that person's soul that were stolen away through witchcraft, the person suddenly sat up and exclaimed that his or her mind became clear in that very instant. He believes that the fragments of their mind had been restored by the Lord.<sup>911</sup>

He goes on to affirm that a person can have parts of his or her personality separated or split because of trauma. A woman who has suffered ritual or sexual abuse at an early age may suffer from loss of memory because of the hurt. The mind copes with these extreme forms of rejection and hurt by blocking off the portion of the mind that contains the hurtful memories, a partial amnesia. Prayer can jog the mind and retrieve the memory. When that happens, you will find a terrified child with all the emotional scars and even physical pains behind that memory. That child is a fragmented piece of the whole soul, separated by the mechanics of the mind in order to cope with the hurt. The mind is in denial, saying, "I haven't been hurt; someone else was hurt - that little child, not me."<sup>912</sup>

---

<sup>911</sup> Ing, R (2008) *Waging Spiritual Warfare*. Whitaker House: United States of America, p. 59

<sup>912</sup> *Ibid.*, p. 60



Ing continues to explain<sup>913</sup>:

*Once, as I prayed for a pastor suffering from rejection, I had a vision of a small boy surrounded by icy walls that were eight feet high and three feet thick. The boy would stick his head outside one of the openings in the wall, but as soon as people appeared, the little boy would pull back into the self-imposed prison. Within these walls is the part of the soul or mind we call the inner child. This may explain why some people have cold personalities. They do not trust people and automatically put up walls and withdraw. They find it hard to trust people and rarely have good friends. When the rejection spirit left the pastor, I immediately had a vision of a man in a park holding a large bunch of balloons. The balloons were suddenly released and floated into the sky above the clouds.*

#### 4.15.2 Regions of Captivity

Dr Ana Mendez-Ferrell testifies that the Lord showed her different regions of captivity in her book *Regions of Captivity*. These regions are where spiritual prisons are located and they are divided into different zones inside of the kingdom of evil. The fragmented soul is brought to these regions so that the designs of the devil can be manifested in the person's life. A soul may belong to God (being saved and redeemed) yet suffer demonic influence because fragments of the soul are held captive. This condition produces illness, failure, fear, anguish, and breakdowns that do not respond to prayer.

These regions can be broken down as follows. The places are spiritual; they exist in an invisible realm. Some can be located over a geographical area, others are not. In each of the regions of captivity, there are prisons, pits, and turbid torrents of muddy waters. The soul drowns in despair, feeling helpless and unable to escape.<sup>914</sup>

##### 4.15.2.1 The Place of Darkness

Darkness is not only the generic name of the devil's empire; it is also a spiritual place. Darkness is established in certain places, creating violence, affliction, anguish, and confusion among people living in those areas. The Lord reveals many levels of darkness

---

<sup>913</sup> Ibid., p. 61

<sup>914</sup> Mendez-Ferrell, A (2010) *Regions of Captivity*. Florida: Voice of the Light Ministries, pp. 71-119

while setting captives free. In actual ministry situations, one needs to ask the Lord to shine His light to enable the person entering to free the soul to see, despite the darkness there. Many times, angels of intense light are needed to open the way needed to go.

The people who are trapped in these places stumble around as though they were blind. People live in constant doubt and unbelief because they cannot see. Their eyes are in complete darkness. This darkness not only symbolises living in sin but also the idea of not knowing where to go, what to do, or what one's purpose is. There are people who have repented, yet are still in darkness, as far as many situations in their lives are concerned. This region could be described as a place full of holes in the ground. People trip, and when they fall, their souls are afflicted in these places. In the natural world, these people seem dark and oppressed. Everything about them is narrow: their vision, their way of thinking, and even the way they walk and move. If one observes them, they appear bound by invisible cords. Their body language clearly displays their captivity. They prefer dark places and are hoarders. They are generally (though not always) people who lack any semblance of order in their lives or houses.

These deep pits in the regions of darkness make up different kinds of jails. In some, the people are tormented by demons of fear. These manifest as horrible spirits, beings with their flesh eaten away, spirits of perdition and homicide. In the natural world, these people are afraid of the dark and cannot sleep in a dark room. They feel as if something in the darkness is stalking them. They are always fearful that something unexpected and catastrophic could happen to them. This happens because this is what the trapped piece of their soul is literally experiencing in its place of captivity.

In general, when delivering people like this, the rescuer is first introduced through regions of fear, where the soul was fragmented by a terrifying incident or trauma. Fragmentation could also have occurred due to participation in the occult by ancestors or by the individual being ministered to.

Another type of prison in the region of darkness is sin. Spiritual regions are not isolated. For example, when a person suffers from intense trauma, regions of fear capture his soul. As fearful circumstances increase during the person's lifetime, the soul sinks into deeper levels. In general, the Holy Spirit reveals the soul's final place of captivity. Prisons of sin look like cells. Sometimes they look like valleys of chained people, whipped by demons that coerce

them to sin again and again. Many are located in muddy lakes of sexual filth and perversion, surrounded by grotesque demons of sensuality.

There are people who are forced to drink without ceasing in lakes of alcohol and others who are forced to drug themselves continually in their prison cells. Flames of fire arise from the bottom of the prison, violently burning the soul. This is the extreme case of someone who cannot get out. These cases are of true possession in which the person has repented many times and inevitably sins again. Discernment is needed in these instances, because some people who say they have repented really love to sin. In this case, the person needs to be led to an encounter with the sacrifice of Jesus on the cross, to feel Jesus' pain for his sin.

The regions of darkness are diverse. In the region where the prisons of homosexuality are, the sexes are confused. It is a whirlwind of sexes mixed together. Men are put in prisons formed in the shape of the male organ; women are housed within the female organ. In this way, the captives become homosexuals and lesbians. The people incarcerated inside those prisons are totally consumed by those gigantic organs. They are unable to see the opposite sex in order to function in the way God has designed them.

#### **4.15.2.2 Gates of Darkness**

The region of darkness, with its prisons, labyrinths, valleys, and abysses is a zone connected to other regions. Normally, the following listed places are front gates of entry:

- *Regions of Fear:* These regions and demons are guards and are responsible for bringing the prisoners from the regions of darkness. When a person's soul is terrorised by some extreme event, this gate opens and the fragmented soul is taken captive.
- *Covenant Chambers:* Occult ceremonies performed in the natural world open gates in the spiritual world. Some gates have their origin in sorcery, witchcraft, divination, rituals of idolatry, Masonic rituals, mind control, and all kinds of New Age rituals.
- *The Gates of Pain:* Gates open after a soul suffers deep pain, such as the loss of a loved one, rejection, or abandonment. It may also occur when the soul, as a foetus, suffers an attempted abortion. Treasons, humiliations, or insults lead the broken soul into captivity. They are led through pain to regions of darkness, such as the

captivities of hatred, anger, revenge, violence, and resentment, where they are afflicted and tormented.

#### 4.15.2.3 The Abyss, Pits and Deeper Places

The Abyss is a place close to Hell or Sheol. It is the place of the waters of darkness. Water spirits are sent out from there, such as Leviathan, the prince of pride. The Abyss is, without a doubt, one of the gates of Hell. This place is located under the ice in the polar regions, where there is no dry land. This is one of the points located on a physical plane, but not all of them are. It is made up of deep pits of water. Souls are trapped in some of the pits; in others are demons waiting to be loosed in the last days (see Revelation 9:1-3).

The miry pits in Psalms 69:1-2, 15 refer to the mud of iniquity. They are traps created by the enemy, situations where someone is tangled in a net of iniquity and cannot escape. In the natural world, this is going to show up through difficult situations. It may be a business deal gone wrong, creating legal situations, binding the person's hands. These are circumstances designed to bring destruction. The persons may feel like they are drowning and can't find an answer.

Many people who fall into depression are held captive in a pit. The Lord rescued Dr Ana Mendez-Ferrell from a psychiatric hospital, where her shattered soul had been trapped in pits seemingly without exit. She shares her testimony:

*I clearly felt myself sinking further and further into a deep, dark hole. The voices of the devil tormented me day and night. Visions of horrible beings harassed me all the time. My spirit and soul lived in the depths of a desolate, terribly sad place. I had vivid nightmares every night. The doctors called it schizophrenia. Today, I know differently. I was experiencing captivity in my soul. I felt bound and imprisoned by invisible walls that smothered me. I felt as though I could hardly breathe. When God rescued me and Jesus genuinely entered my heart, I literally saw the door of the vault-like iron prison open. I saw myself moving into a spacious place, full of light and peace. I had to remain firm in order to keep my freedom. I remember, at the beginning of my Christian life, how the devil suggested again and again that I dive into one of those pits of affliction. His words were depressing, reminding me of the pain I had suffered. It was like standing on a slippery slope where it was hard to keep my footing. Many times, I saw that pit clearly. It*

*invited me to jump in. The devil pushed me with great force, but my will was mine and I was not going to surrender it to the devil. My willpower served as a rudder and kept me in Jesus' arms. While sitting in His lap one day, I heard His voice say to me, "Shut the mouth of the Abyss! I have the authority to close it, and I am giving it to you!" So I did it. Now, it doesn't matter how sad my circumstances are, that pit is closed and it can no longer swallow me. Hallelujah!*

Although there are pits of eternal perdition, there are also those that hold people imprisoned in sin, vices, and evil actions. People's entire minds are held captive in this place. Almost all of their inner doors have been taken over by demons and their captive minds receive the designs of the devil with great clarity. This is the case with sorcerers, those in the mafia, drug traffickers, thieves, and serial killers.

In countries with a lot of corruption, the pits of corruption and iniquity operate at a national level. The consciousness of the people is totally influenced by these places. People operating in corrupt ways without remorse are seen here. Bribing policemen to avoid paying fines, lying, stealing, and taking advantage of others are common practices, even among Christians. The worst thing is they don't realise it in many cases. It is normal to them.

#### **4.15.2.4 Places of Death**

These places of death, including Sheol, the Valley of the Shadow of Death, and the Region of Death, constitute one of Jesus' most important victories. Death operates in the midst of the natural world in many ways: through fear, sickness, accidents, insanity and everything that decays. In the spiritual realm, death kills entire movements of the Spirit and destroys churches and ministries. Everything man does apart from God is death. Death is the method the devil uses to control this world. There are carnal believers that have their heart in the things of this world. For them, death is a cause of fear.

The Hebrew meaning for "Sheol" is "lower places". In Greek, it is called "Hades" and in Latin it is "Hell". The word *Hell* simply locates Satan's base camp. Satan is the prince of the power of the air (Ephesians 2:2). Under this title he controls the second heaven. He rules over captivity and death from the underworld. The devil also carries the titles angel of the Abyss (Revelation 9:11), prince or ruler of darkness (Ephesians 6:12), and he who holds the power of death (Hebrew 2:14). The devil governs from the air and the mountaintops. In Sheol, or

Hell, he deals with captivity and death. The region of death has two parts, one is the dwelling of the dead, and the second is the place of oppression used to torment the captured souls. From this place Satan releases sickness, disease, and death. Sheol is not only a place, it is also a power used by Satan in order to take people into captivity. It does not only take captives during victimisation, but Sheol has a power of attraction that causes people to become ensnared. Believing lies or falsehood is a way of feeding on death. It makes a person captive in the regions of death.

Many illnesses are from regions like the Valley of the Shadow of Death, or Sheol. People are unaware of the connection to the regions of death. In fact, most hospitals are built near cemeteries. There is spiritual activity from the regions of death located nearby. These places of intense suffering, trauma, pain, and death are designed to trap and capture unsuspecting persons. If someone must go to a hospital, he must immediately close the gates of death and Sheol and spiritually cut all the currents of death and the spiritual tunnels coming from the cemeteries.

The region of the shadow of death is the most superficial part of Sheol and is found at ground level. It is also where poltergeist spirits roam and spiritualists invoke the spirits of the dead. This practice attracts spirits of death, which produce sickness and spiritual death among the population. It is important to differentiate between demons, ghosts, and the spirits of the dead (dead people). A ghost is the disembodied spirit of a person; also known as a phantom, that demonstrates that the dead are not demons, but human spirits. Conversations with the dead are an attempt by the devil to trap one's soul. Ghosts that wandered in the zone of the shadow of death need to be taken captive to their eternal dwellings by the Lord's angels. In the place of the shadow of death, the devil has the designs to destroy the spiritual life of churches, movements of God, and ministers.

The regions of death are the dwelling place of those who have departed from this world. A dead person or someone whom someone is trying to bring back to life must be removed from this region of death. Only God can grant resurrections. Life and death are His alone.

Abaddon is the deepest part of the Abyss. This is the place where the devil forges his plans of destruction. The devil destroys homes, lives, ministries, and entire cities from this sinister place. The murder of millions of babies is carried out. The designs of terrorism are forged from Abaddon. War, genocide, the shedding of innocent blood, as well as natural disasters, such as earthquakes and hurricanes, originate from this place.

Abaddon has various regions and one is called the place (or haunt) of jackals or the place of dragons. It is a place in which the soul feels as if it is being attacked by wild beasts; the devourer is one of them. He devours finances, health, projects, dreams, and everything else within his reach. It is a place of brokenness and great destruction. In Abaddon, people are held captive and literally devoured by these beasts. There are entire cities held in this region of wild beasts.

The land of forgetfulness is a place of infinite loneliness, sadness, abandonment, and rejection. It is a place where the devil imprisons people in order for them to live their lives forgotten by others. After their names are placed in the land of forgetfulness, no one remembers them.

#### **4.15.2.5 God Put People in Prisons Too**

Not only do traumas and difficult circumstances take people to regions of captivity, but God Himself can put them there too.

*Those who sat in darkness and in the shadow of death, bound in affliction and irons, because they rebelled against the words of God, and despised the counsel of the Most High, therefore He brought down their heart with labor; they fell down, and there was none to help. Then they cried out to the Lord in their trouble, and He saved them out of their distresses. He brought them out of darkness and the shadow of death, and broke their chains in pieces. Oh, that men would give thanks to the Lord for His goodness, and for His wonderful works to the children of men! For He has broken the gates of bronze, and cut the bars of iron in two. Fools, because of their transgression, and because of their iniquities, were afflicted. Their soul abhorred all manner of food, and they drew near to the gates of death. Then they cried out to the Lord in their trouble, and He saved them out of their distresses. He sent His word and healed them, and delivered them from their destructions*

*Psalms 107:10-20 NKJV*

How many people are in this condition in the Church today because they choose their own paths and despised the Word and counsel of Jehovah? And how many leaders are suffering from sicknesses and tremendous pain because of their religiosity? God desires to take them

in some direction, but because they are bound to their own systems and doctrines, they refuse to change. Controlling one's own life and not glorifying God for everything can lead to these regions; bitter people who cannot forgive also end up in these prisons.

*<sup>16</sup> Give glory to the Lord your God before He brings darkness and before your feet stumble upon the dark and twilit mountains, and [before], while you are looking for light, He turns it into the shadow of death and makes it thick darkness. <sup>17</sup> But if you will not hear and obey, I will weep in secret for your pride; my eyes will weep bitterly and run down with tears, because the Lord's flock has been taken captive.*

*Jeremiah 13:16-17*

The believer must allow God to reveal any areas of imprisonment, so that he can strip off the shackles, be free, and set others free!

## **4.16. CONCLUSION**

Satan wants to control the minds of all the inhabitants of the world in order to force them to worship him. God, on the other hand, gives us liberty to love and serve Him. Witchcraft steals the souls of men and women. The soul contains the intellect, emotions, and will. Satan's most powerful weapon is deception.

*Let no one deceive or beguile you in any way, for that day will not come except the apostasy comes first [unless the predicted great falling away of those who have professed to be Christians has come], and the man of lawlessness (sin) is revealed, who is the son of doom (of perdition).*

*2 Thessalonians 2:3*

In the end times, many saints will fall away from the faith because of deception. Jesus Himself warns of deception (Matt. 24:12, 24). Revelation 13:14 says that Satan will deceive the whole world (except the mature In God) into worshipping him. Deceived people do not know that they are deceived. They have accepted lies as truth. They absolutely believe the lies that the enemy has fed them. Their minds are set and controlled by Satan, the father of lies. Once a person believes in a lie, he is imprisoned. There are many ways to introduce lies



into someone's mind, most of them so clever and insidious that the victim might never be conscious of them.

Satan does not need to put everybody in a trance before he can place suggestions in the mind. All he needs is an opportunity, and just about all of Mankind is susceptible. The opportunity usually comes when a traumatic incident takes place, such as physical accidents, personal losses, and times of extreme embarrassment, fear, stress, or rejection. It can happen when a simple suggestion or lie is accepted at that time.

Another area of mind control involves hypnotism. Hypnotism opens the mind to demonic control. There are many methods used to institute hypnotic control. Some use devices, some use chants, and others use drugs, but the result is the same - opening the door to demonic invasion through suggestion. Entire nations can be mass-hypnotised. Meditation represents one of the most insidious techniques ever devised by Satan. Millions of people around the world blank out their minds and bring their bodies into passivity through meditation; Hindus, Buddhists, Taoists, Shintoists, New Agers, and many other cults promote meditation. Transcendental meditation, Beta Level techniques, and other disciplines come out of the very pit of Hell. They creep into the church today under a disguise of inner healing, Jesus chanting, waiting or tarrying meetings. God sometimes desires that the believer linger in order to hear His voice. However, these tarrying meetings involve more than that. Many concentrate on seeing Jesus and looking into His eyes or focusing on Him, all while chanting "Jesus, Jesus."

A very interesting book is Jessie Penn-Lewis's publication *War On the Saints*. In her book, Mrs. Penn-Lewis exposes Satan's attacks on the minds and bodies of men and women by convincing them to wait on God by creating a passive mind and body. Many schizophrenic patients zone out even when they are not on drugs. These victims need to retake their minds by forcing themselves to concentrate on whatever they are doing. Once a person adopts the habit of going passive, they are easily swayed by voices and ideas passed to them by Satan.

Satan also attempts to control men's minds through modern devices. He alters brain patterns through back-masking records in which a satanic message can be heard. Although the conscious mind cannot comprehend backward messages, the subconscious mind can. Psychologists also found that if you place a single frame with a message every twenty-five frames in a film, the conscious mind cannot pick it up. But the subconscious mind can. Therefore, human behaviour can be manipulated through the use of subliminal messages,

either auditory or visual. Devices using light for the stimulation of the brain show another way how light flashing at certain frequencies could be used for the manipulation of human psychic life. As for sound, a report on the device transmitting a beam of sound waves, which can be heard only by persons at whom the beam of sound waves is targeted, appeared last year in the world newspapers. The beam is formed by a combination of sound and ultrasonic waves, which cause a person targeted by this beam to hear the sound inside of his head. Such a perception could easily convince the human being that he or she is mentally ill.

Psychotronic weapons are a reality and a force to be reckoned with. It is a fact that the world media avoid publishing the full scale of the progress in the research of the remote control of the human nervous system. Transmitting human speech into the human brain by means of electromagnetic waves is apparently, for the researchers, one of the most difficult tasks. It must be much easier to control human emotions which motivate human thinking, decision-making and actions. People who claim to be victims of experiments with those devices complain, aside from hearing voices, of false feelings (including orgasms) as well of aches of internal organs which the physicians are unable to diagnose.

The 7 July 1997 issue of U.S. News and World Report described several wonder weapons designed, among other things, to vibrate the insides of humans, stun or nauseate them, put them to sleep, heat them up, or knock them down with a shock wave. The technologies include dazzling lasers that can force the pupils to close; acoustic or sonic frequencies that cause the hair cells in the inner ear to vibrate and cause motion sickness, vertigo, and nausea, or frequencies that resonate the internal organs, causing pain and spasms; and shock waves with the potential to knock down humans or airplanes and which can be mixed with pepper spray or chemicals.

With modification, these technological applications can have many uses. Acoustic weapons, for example, could be adapted for use as acoustic rifles or as acoustic fields that, once established, might protect facilities, assist in hostage rescues, control riots, or clear paths for convoys. These waves, which can penetrate buildings, offer a host of opportunities for military and law enforcement officials. Microwave weapons, by stimulating the peripheral nervous system, can heat up the body, induce epileptic-like seizures, or cause cardiac arrest. Low-frequency radiation affects the electrical activity of the brain and can cause flu-like symptoms and nausea. Other projects sought to induce or prevent sleep, or to affect the

signal from the motor cortex portion of the brain, overriding voluntary muscle movements. The latter are referred to as pulse wave weapons.<sup>915</sup>

Furthermore, the human brain could be controlled remotely through extremely low-frequency modulated microwave beams, able to cause psychological and physical harm. People could be turned into zombies, their minds easily controlled. Physical harm can also result, affecting their blood, cardiovascular system, cells, central nervous and digestive systems, glands, metabolism, reproduction, eyesight, and hearing. In addition, subjects could be made suicidal or driven mad. In all of this, great confusion is created in the mind of every observer, friend or foe. In the end, no one knows how to distinguish truth from falsehood: mental chaos and verbal confusion result. Time, fear, and continual pressure are known to create a menticidal hypnosis. The conscious part of the personality no longer takes part in the automatic confessions. These people live in a trance, repeating the record graven into them by somebody else. The modern means of mass communication bring the entire world daily into each man's home; the techniques of propaganda and salesmanship have been refined and systematised; there is scarcely any hiding place from the constant visual and verbal assault on the mind. Basically, mankind is on the threshold of an era in which the human body may be manipulated or debilitated – knowingly or unknowingly, with or without permission.

Music, television and movies are in the hands of Satan, who is controlling it and sending his messages to pervert and desensitise the believers to the things that are important and vital for spiritual growth. Witchcraft is the order of the day, influencing and directing human life. Curses and death are threatening the very existence of mankind. Satan will use intimidation, manipulation and control from men to enslave a person.

However, fear not!

*And they have overcome (conquered) him by means of the blood of the Lamb and by the utterance of their testimony, for they did not love and cling to life even when faced with death [holding their lives cheap till they had to die for their witnessing].*

*Revelation 12:11*

---

<sup>915</sup> Thomas, T L, The Mind has no Firewall [Online] Available from: <http://dprogram.net/2009/07/01/the-mind-has-no-firewall-army-article-on-psychotronic-weapons/> [Accessed: 24 June 2014]

<sup>15</sup> And He said to them, Go into all the world and preach and publish openly the good news (the Gospel) to every creature [of the whole human race]. <sup>16</sup> He who believes [who adheres to and trusts in and relies on the Gospel and Him Whom it sets forth] and is baptized will be saved [from the penalty of eternal death]; but he who does not believe [who does not adhere to and trust in and rely on the Gospel and Him Whom it sets forth] will be condemned. <sup>17</sup> And these attesting signs will accompany those who believe: in My name they will drive out demons; they will speak in new languages; <sup>18</sup> They will pick up serpents; and [even] if they drink anything deadly, it will not hurt them; they will lay their hands on the sick, and they will get well.

Mark 16:15-18

<sup>1</sup> He who dwells in the secret place of the Most High shall remain stable and fixed under the shadow of the Almighty [Whose power no foe can withstand]. <sup>2</sup> I will say of the Lord, He is my Refuge and my Fortress, my God; on Him I lean and rely, and in Him I [confidently] trust! <sup>3</sup> For [then] He will deliver you from the snare of the fowler and from the deadly pestilence. <sup>4</sup> [Then] He will cover you with His pinions, and under His wings shall you trust and find refuge; His truth and His faithfulness are a shield and a buckler. <sup>5</sup> You shall not be afraid of the terror of the night, nor of the arrow (the evil plots and slanders of the wicked) that flies by day, <sup>6</sup> Nor of the pestilence that stalks in darkness, nor of the destruction and sudden death that surprise and lay waste at noonday. <sup>7</sup> A thousand may fall at your side, and ten thousand at your right hand, but it shall not come near you.

Psalms 91:1-7

I have told you these things, so that in Me you may have [perfect] peace and confidence. In the world you have tribulation and trials and distress and frustration; but be of good cheer [take courage; be confident, certain, undaunted]! For I have overcome the world. [I have deprived it of power to harm you and have conquered it for you.]

John 16:33

There are true Christians whose hearts are focused on heavenly things. For them, death is nothing more than the victory that unites them to their beloved Jesus. The person who learns to deny his own life, even if it means death, has overcome death and disarmed the devil and his empire. For these believers, this subject is not traumatic or scary, because they have conquered it.

Every believer, as a son or daughter of God, has the ability to call out his own soul and mind from captivity. God has given him the power to overcome the gates of Hell. He has the keys of the Kingdom of God to open every prison door where he may be held captive. Open them! Command your soul and mind to leave those places. The believer doesn't belong there. The believer is of God and must position himself in heavenly places. It is an active war. Participating means to deliberately and actively stand against the enemy and his devices. However, if a person is to truly be delivered from illicit drugs, witchcraft, the occult, sin and the demonic world, he needs to repent and surrender his live to Jesus Christ and agree to stop dancing with the devil.

*Do not call conspiracy everything that these people call conspiracy; do not fear what they fear, and do not dread it. The Lord Almighty is the one you regard as holy, He is the one to fear, He is the one you are to dread, and He will be a sanctuary.*

*Isaiah 8:12-13 NIV*

-----oOo-----



## *Chapter Five*

### *5. Satan's Strategy of Destruction through Sin*

*For the wages which sin pays is death, but the [bountiful] free gift of God is eternal life  
through (in union with) Jesus Christ our Lord.*

*Romans 6:23*

*For those whom God to ruin has designed, He fits for fate, and first destroys their  
mind.*

*John Dryden, Fables, The Hind and the Panther (1687), Part III, line 2,387.*

#### **5.1. INTRODUCTION**

The age old fight between good and evil is still valid and alive today. At the end, it is all about the winning of souls. A person will either go to heaven to worship the Trinity God for eternity, or he will be dispelled to hell. Satan is doing everything in his power to prevent man from realising that he is lost and in need of the Redeemer Jesus Christ. He wants to keep man blinded from the truth and in a fallen state, hoping to win the person as a worshipper unto him.

<sup>8</sup> [But] he who commits sin [who practices evil-doing] is of the devil [takes his character from the evil one], for the devil has sinned (violated the divine law) from the beginning. The reason the Son of God was made manifest (visible) was to undo (destroy, loosen, and dissolve) the works the devil [has done]. <sup>9</sup> No one born (begotten) of God [deliberately, knowingly, and habitually] practices sin, for God's nature abides in him [His principle of life, the divine sperm, remains permanently within him]; and he cannot practice sinning because he is born (begotten) of God.<sup>10</sup> By this it is made clear who take their nature from God and are His children and who take their nature from the devil and are his children: no one who does not practice righteousness [who does not conform to God's will in purpose, thought, and action] is of God; neither is anyone who does not love his brother (his fellow believer in Christ).

*1 John 3:8-10*

The Devil is a cunning adversary and knows just what it takes to destroy a person's hopes, happiness and his need for God. He uses knowledge that spans time and eternity against man while he only has a limited number of years on this earth to learn about him. A person's short life span put up against Satan's amassed knowledge renders him ill-equipped against this mighty enemy. But be not afraid, because God's Scriptures are the weapons to use against this ardent foe, whose only goal is to steal, kill and destroy.

*Time is running out as no one knows the hour the Son of Man will return to earth to judge the souls of man.*

Deception is a powerful tool that Satan uses on the human race for its destruction. Satan's deception is very subtle, mixed with just enough truth to make it palatable. One of Satan's ploys is to convince mankind that there is no consequence to sin. However, clearly there are lasting consequences that bring separation from God, shame and guilt. Compromise leads to deceit in a person's life, until he loses confidence in the spiritual dimension of his life.

Watchman Nee is in agreement as to the method Satan uses to accomplish defeat, as he contributes from his book *The Spiritual Man*<sup>916</sup>:

---

<sup>916</sup> Nee, W (1968) *The Spiritual Man*. New York, USA; Christian Fellowship Publishers, Inc., Vol. III, p. 223

*The devil is a murderer (John 8:44). The purpose of Satan's work against the saints is to kill them. He has a special tactic for the last days: to "wear out the saints" (Daniel 7:25). If he can add just a little anxiety to the believer's spirit, increase just a trifle the restlessness in his mind, cause the saint to lose sleep one night, eat less the next time and overwork still another time, then he has made inroads with his power of death. Although a single drop of water is powerless, continuous dripping can indisputably wear a hole in a rock. Being well acquainted with this truth, Satan incites a little worry here, a little anxiety there, or a little neglect elsewhere to literally wear out the saints.*

Satan knows that by keeping mankind in sin, addicted to sin and strangled in sin he has won the soul and death is evident: physically, mentally and spiritually.

*<sup>6</sup> And the Lord passed by before him, and proclaimed, The Lord! the Lord! a God merciful and gracious, slow to anger, and abundant in loving-kindness and truth,<sup>7</sup> Keeping mercy and loving-kindness for thousands, forgiving iniquity and transgression and sin, but Who will by no means clear the guilty, visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children and the children's children, to the third and fourth generation.*

*Exodus 34:6-7*

Sin is generally used as a collective term to include three categories: sin, transgressions and iniquity. God is serious about sin, transgressions and iniquity, even visiting iniquity to third and fourth generations. There are numerous consequences to sin, and punishment thereof is inescapable for the unsaved person as well as the believer. Satan uses this to his advantage to enslave people into worshipping him, using and abusing mankind to the point of total destruction.

Christians need a sharp and clear understanding of Satan's deceptive workings to enable them to pass through the trials and tribulations of the last days. The days ahead might be difficult and challenging but the Lord promises His children that His guidance and protection will be with them if His voice is adhered to (Revelation 3:10). One of the many lies of Satan is that honest seekers after God cannot be deceived. Many of those believing this lie throughout time have been deceived by lying spirits counterfeiting the workings of God. Having a true motive and being faithful to God is *not* sufficient safeguard against deception.



Every unregenerate man is first of all deceived by his own deceitful heart (Jeremiah 17:9; Isaiah 44:20) and by sin (Hebrews 3:13). Then Satan adds the blinding of the mind. Only the truth of the Word (Bible) can dispel the darkness when the regenerating life of God reaches the person. This blinding of the mind is removed only so far as the deceptive lies of Satan are uprooted by the light of truth. Satan and his followers will mix their counterfeits with the true manifestations of the Spirit of God, leaving a fine line between lie and truth.

## 5.2. SATAN'S ARSENAL

Satan is described, more than anything else, as a liar (John 8:44). He has no power to defeat God, but he is skilled at lying, at convincing people to listen to his lies, at wanting to destroy everything God has created. Lying is Satan's primary weapon against God's children. He uses the tactic of deceit to separate people from their heavenly Father. Some of his more common lies are "there is no God", "God doesn't care about you", and "the Bible cannot be trusted". Satan knows man's weaknesses and exploits these weaknesses for his own advantage. The Bible does not speak so much about the power of Satan as of his extreme subtlety, trickery and deceptiveness. He uses clever wiles, deceptive devices, wily stratagems and deceitful designs. Following are some yokes he puts on people in order to keep them in deception and bondage.

### 5.2.1 Hopelessness

*For I know the thoughts and plans that I have for you, says the Lord, thoughts and plans for welfare and peace and not for evil, to give you hope in your final outcome.*

*Jeremiah 29:11*

Hopelessness, according to Frank Hammond in his book *Overcoming Rejection*, the individual who sees no prospect of being loved, is a man trapped in a vast desert with nothing but miles of burning sand in every direction. He is utterly hopeless. His hopelessness leads to discouragement, despair, dejection, defeat and depression. Without hope there is no joy; without joy there is no desire to live. Agreement with death is a path which leads to heaviness of heart or possibly even to suicide.<sup>917</sup>

---

<sup>917</sup> Hammond, F D (2006) *Overcoming Rejection*. USA: Impact Christian Books, Inc., p.35

Hopelessness is deep in Job as he cries out in his suffering, *"My days are swifter than a weaver's shuttle, and come to an end without hope"* (Job 7:6) and *"Where now is my hope?"* (Job 17:15). As Job's focus turned more toward his circumstances and away from his relationship with God, he lost sight of his hope and sank deeper and deeper into despair. Ultimately, Job recognised that true hope comes only through faith in the Redeemer (Job 19:25-26). Faith and hope are intimately connected.

The Scriptures teach that *"faith is the assurance of things hoped for, the conviction of things not seen"* (Hebrews 11:1). Even heroes of faith like David (Psalm 13), Job (Job 3), and Jeremiah (Lamentations 3) struggled with times of intense hopelessness. While deep despair and hopelessness can occur in man, God is faithful. Focusing on that single truth brought hope to the prophet Jeremiah at his lowest point: *"This I recall to my mind, therefore I have hope. The LORD'S loving kindnesses indeed never cease, for His compassions never fail. They are new every morning; great is Your faithfulness"* (Lamentations 3:21-23).

For the believer, his hope is built on Christ (suggested verses: Romans 5:1-5; Colossians 1:27; 1 Timothy 1:1; Hebrews 6:17-20) who chose mankind, saved mankind, sealed the believer with the Holy Spirit, and promised to return and take him home. When the hopeless finds love, he finds hope. Love relationships are like wells of living water, especially our relationship with Jesus who declared, *"If any man thirst, let him come unto Me, and drink"* (John 7:37). One who has a personal relationship with Jesus receives a well of living water inside of him.

### 5.2.2 Loneliness

*He [God] Himself has said, I will not in any way fail you nor give you up nor leave you without support. [I will] not, [I will] not, [I will] not in any degree leave you helpless nor forsake nor let [you] down (relax My hold on you)! [Assuredly not!]*

Hebrews 13:5

Loneliness has been identified as the world's most common mental health problem, one of the most universal sources of human suffering, an almost permanent condition for millions of people, regardless of class, race or sex. It is an experience that hits all of us at times; a painful inner emptiness that may flee after a few minutes or persist for a lifetime. Loneliness

is a condition that effects people of all ages, including young children, but researchers agree that loneliness soars during the teenage years and reaches its highest peak in people between ages eighteen and twenty-five.

Although it is seen in all cultures, loneliness occurs most often in societies that emphasise individualism. Lonely people appear in all vocational groups, but there is evidence that highly ambitious, fast-track, upwardly mobile people (including the much discussed yuppies and baby boomers) have an especially high incidence of loneliness. The same is true among leaders who often feel alone at the top, workaholics consumed by activities that interfere with personal intimacy, and counsellors who spend their lives giving to others but failing to build closeness in their own lives.

Loneliness is the painful awareness that one lacks close and meaningful contact with others. It involves a feeling of inner emptiness, isolation, and intense longing. Even when they are surrounded by others, lonely people often feel left out, unwanted, rejected or misunderstood. Frequently there are feelings of sadness, discouragement, restlessness, and anxiety, accompanied by a longing to be wanted and needed by at least one other human being. There may be an intense desire to reach out, but often the lonely person feels frustrated and unable to initiate, continue, or experience a close relationship.

Many lonely people tend to look down on themselves. Weighted down with feelings of low self-esteem and worthlessness, the lonely often think, "Nobody wants me so I guess I'm not worth anything". Sometimes there is a sense of hopelessness and a strong desire for almost any kind of relationship that might end the awful pain of involuntary aloneness. Many people try to find relief in bars, encounter groups, church meetings, or involvement with the billion-dollar loneliness industry that provides seminars, dating services, health spas, singles vacation trips, self-help books, and a variety of other promised antidotes to loneliness. But even when they do have human contact, many lonely people are still unable to build significant relationships or gain emotional satisfaction from others.

Loneliness is primarily an inner feeling that doesn't always depend on whether or not others are present. The inner feeling of loneliness comes when a person perceives himself to be isolated from others, fails in his efforts to find friends, or lacks the social skills needed to relate to others. Often this sense of isolation is felt when the person is separated from God and feels that life has no meaning or purpose. Such persons need a committed and growing relationship with God, preferably within the confines of a concerned community of believers.

It is important to distinguish loneliness from solitude. Loneliness comes when an individual is forced to be alone; solitude is a voluntary withdrawal from other people. Loneliness sweeps over a person and clings in spite of his best efforts to cast it off; solitude can be started and terminated at will. Loneliness is painful, draining and unpleasant; solitude can be refreshing, rejuvenating and enjoyable. People talk to counsellors about the problem of loneliness; solitude rarely gets mentioned in the counselling room.

Loneliness is rarely discussed in the Scriptures<sup>918</sup>, but it is seen repeatedly, even in the lives of Bible heroes such as Moses, Job, Nehemiah, Elijah and Jeremiah. David once wrote that he was lonely and afflicted (Psalm 25:16). However the entire Bible focuses on man's need for communion with God and for people, especially believers, to love, help, encourage, forgive and care for one another. A growing relationship with God and with others is the basis for any solution to the problem of loneliness.

Perhaps the most obvious indication of someone suffering from loneliness is isolation from people, often accompanied by periodic but futile attempts to reach out to others. However, many loners, older people, singles, and others who live by themselves are not lonely even though they appear to have little contact with others. Low self-esteem and feelings of worthlessness can be symptoms as well as causes of loneliness. Failure in relationships or in activities can lower self-esteem and lead to greater loneliness. Unable to relate to others as they would like, lonely people sometimes withdraw into self-centred thinking, a poor-little-me attitude, a belief that nobody understands, and a conviction that things will never improve. Depression, then, is quite common among people with loneliness. Some chronically lonely people are not depressed and some depressed people are not lonely, but many are both. Lonely people sometimes have a hopelessness that can lead to despair and even thoughts of suicide. When loneliness is too great, suicide becomes a way out that might also send a clear message to the people who didn't seem to care.

In contrast, some people resort to exhibitionist behaviour like becoming the class clown, wearing outlandish clothing that is likely to be noticed, or acting in attention-getting ways. A few cover their loneliness with workaholic behaviour, frequent travel, or accumulating possessions. Alcoholism and drug abuse are also ways to escape. Some people turn to these in an attempt to find friends among other drinkers or to dull the pain of being alone. Others express their frustrations through violence. Based on a review of research reports,

---

<sup>918</sup> The word lonely is appears only four times. Two of these references refer to lonely places while the other both in Psalms refer to people.  
Psalm 25:16; 68:6

one writer concluded that very lonely people who get angry rather than depressed are prone to express their lonely frustration in destructive ways. When loneliness is expressed in violence or delinquency, this may be a release from pain and a cry for attention.

Sometimes the loneliness is expressed physically. Evidence suggests that lonely people are more likely to suffer from physical problems such as heart disease or high blood pressure. There now is convincing evidence that stress (including the stress of loneliness) affects the immune system and reduces the body's ability to resist disease. Loneliness can sometimes be hidden from the casual observer, but it influences the physical body and often shows itself through physical illness.<sup>919</sup>

Loneliness is an avenue of intrusion for familiar spirits. When a person grows up in an unhealthy family, he comes to believe that he is all alone. He feels there is no one with whom he can discuss his feelings or perceptions. Satan and his demons take full advantage of that feeling. They tell him lies about his circumstances, his judgments, and possible solutions to his plight.<sup>920</sup>

### 5.2.3 Worthlessness and Insecurity

*<sup>1</sup> Those who trust in, lean on, and confidently hope in the Lord are like Mount Zion, which cannot be moved but abides and stands fast forever.<sup>2</sup> As the mountains are round about Jerusalem, so the Lord is round about His people from this time forth and forever.*

*Psalms 125:1-2*

The next step from loneliness is becoming self-conscious, resulting in worthlessness. Worthlessness is a feeling of not being worthwhile, significant or really important to anyone, a feeling that one is not understood or accepted. A person lives a life of hiding, pretending, denying, covering up the real 'self' inside with a false, protective and substitute self. A person becomes self-critical, self-condemning and self-judging. The result is a person buried, unsettled or lost; though physical growth takes place, emotionally the person remained fixed and unfinished. The person becomes unsure of himself and is less confident than others, less assertive, very sensitive about things. Insecurity is the feeling of being unprotected, unsafe, powerless or distracted. The insecure must be in control or they are out

---

<sup>919</sup> Collin, G R (1988) Christian Counselling. Vancouver: Word Publishing, pp. 92-103

<sup>920</sup> Johnson, M (1992) Spiritual Warfare for the Wounded. Michigan: Vine Books, p. 73

of control – they have a need to control others. This opens the door to fears and anxieties. The insecure can also live in volatile anger that grows out of rejection – a feeling of frustration.<sup>921 922</sup>

The curse of worthlessness declares that a person is worth less than God has declared. Those under the curse feel devalued as they compare themselves to other people.<sup>923</sup>

### 5.2.1 Guilt

*Therefore, [there is] now no condemnation (no adjudging guilty of wrong) for those who are in Christ Jesus, who live [and] walk not after the dictates of the flesh, but after the dictates of the Spirit.*

*Romans 8:1*

Guilt is a major consequence of sin. It is at the basis of much human suffering. While most creatures suffer physical pain, humans additionally experience the anguish of mental suffering. Talk with people who are depressed, lonely, grieving, members of violent families, homosexual, alcoholic, terminally ill, struggling with marriage turmoil, or facing almost any other problem, and guilt is part of their difficulties. Guilt has been described as the place where religion and psychology most often meet.

Several types of guilt have been identified. These can be grouped into two broad categories: objective guilt and subjective guilt. Objective guilt occurs when a law has been broken and the lawbreaker is guilty even though he or she may not feel guilty. Subjective guilt refers to the inner feelings of remorse and self-condemnation that come because of one's actions.

Subjective guilt is the uncomfortable feeling of regret, remorse, shame, and self-condemnation that often comes when a person has done or thought something that he feels is wrong, or failed to do something that should have been done. Often there is discouragement, anxiety, fear of punishment, low self-esteem, and a sense of isolation, all tied together as part of the guilt feeling. These emotions may be strong or weak. Usually they are unpleasant, but they are not always bad. They can stimulate a person to change his

---

<sup>921</sup> Brand, C, Sexual Brokenness and Deviation Part 3. Pretoria: RÂDÂH. Unpublished, p. 9

<sup>922</sup> Brand, C, Bloodline Curses and Deliverance. Pretoria: RÂDÂH. Unpublished, p.36-38

<sup>923</sup> Ibid., p.40

behaviour and seek forgiveness from God or from other human beings. Guilt feelings, however, can also be destructive, inhibitory influences that make life miserable.

Subjective guilt feelings can be either appropriate or inappropriate. Appropriate guilt feelings are present when someone has broken a law, disobeyed biblical teachings, or violated the dictates of his conscience and feels remorse in proportion to the seriousness of his actions. Inappropriate guilt feelings are out of proportion to the seriousness of the act. Some people, for example, can steal and murder but feel little guilt while others may be immobilised with guilt in response to some minor act or unkind thought. Often these inappropriate guilt feelings come from within, but at times other people make comments or judgments that make them feel guilty. Sometimes these comments are made with no harm intended, but at other times they are designed intentionally to create guilt.

When people talk about guilt they usually are referring to subjective guilt feelings, but the Bible never uses guilt in this way. The three Greek words translated "guilt" or "guilty" refer to the theological guilt. A person is guilty, in the biblical sense, when he or she has broken God's law. In the Bible, there appears to be little difference between guilt and sin.

This has significant implications for believers. Since the Bible never talks about subjective guilt feelings, in no place does it imply that one should try to arouse guilt feelings in others. In spite of this, many well-intentioned parents, teachers, preachers, television evangelists, and counsellors attempt to stir up guilt on the assumption that this will motivate others, stimulate Christian growth, punish wrongdoers, prevent pride, protect people from future sin, or stimulate financial contributions. Satan and his following have been adherents of such tactics; they arouse unhealthy guilt feelings and tend to be manipulative.

In 2 Corinthians 7:8-10, Paul contrasts worldly sorrow (this seems to be equivalent to guilt feelings) and godly sorrow that brings repentance that leads to salvation and leaves no regret. Godly sorrow is constructive sorrow because it leads to constructive change. Many believers go through repeated cycles of sin, guilt feelings, confession, temporary relief, and then more sin; there is no real change. This is because the confession is actually based on a selfish motive: to get relief from guilt feelings. As soon as this relief is experienced, the person feels free to sin again and the cycle is repeated.

In contrast, Peter followed his denial of Christ by weeping bitterly (Matthew 26:75). He experienced deep remorse, sincere repentance and a genuine desire to change. He con-

fessed his sin, was freed from any feelings of guilt, and knew with assurance he was forgiven. Divine forgiveness and the Grace of God are major biblical themes; however, the majority of people find these difficult to comprehend – if at all. Jesus Christ came to die so sinful human beings could be forgiven and restored to complete fellowship with God (1 Peter 2:24). First, one must repent. Second, one must be willing to forgive, forgiving oneself, others and God. The person who seeks forgiveness must be genuinely repentant and willing to forgive others. A guilt-driven person is afraid of been caught and is even more afraid of punishment.

An awareness of objective guilt can come from the promptings of the Holy Spirit who convicts men and women of sin (John 16:8). Satan also attempts to intervene in men's lives both before and after sin. He tempts the believer, trying to make him stumble, and the Bible states that he accuses God's followers, at least before the Lord (Job 1:9-11; Revelation 12:10). Adam and Eve would not have known guilt if Satan had left them alone and it seems likely that he initiates many of our guilt feelings today. Perhaps he also stimulates believers to continue feeling guilty and unforgiven, even when they have done nothing wrong or when they have disobeyed and then been forgiven by God.

Objective guilt can have a variety of consequences. Breaking the law can lead to arrest and conviction, even in people who do not feel guilty. Social guilt may bring criticism from other people. Personal guilt often leads to self-criticism and condemnation. But theological guilt has consequences that are even more serious. God, who is just and holy, does not wink at sin and neither does He fail to notice men's acts of disobedience. According to the Bible, the ultimate punishment for sin is death, although God pardons and gives eternal life when we put our faith in Jesus Christ, who died to pay for our sins (Romans 6:23). Sometimes it appears that lawbreakers are avoiding their punishment, but God will bring justice in the end (Psalm 73).<sup>924</sup>

Subjective guilt feelings influence mankind in several ways, as seen next.<sup>925</sup>

1. *Defensive Thinking.* As described in psychology textbooks, defensive mechanisms are ways of thinking that most people use to avoid or reduce feelings of anxiety, frustration and stress. These thoughts tend to distort reality in some way even though people are usually not consciously aware of this. To some extent, all defensive mechanisms protect

---

<sup>924</sup> Collin, G R (1988) *Christian Counselling*. Vancouver: Word Publishing, pp. 134-140

<sup>925</sup> *Ibid.*, pp. 140-142



man from feelings of guilt. If an individual looks for ways to blame others (that is the defence mechanism known as 'projection'), denies wrongdoing, withdraws from people, and rationalizes and finds excuses in an attempt to justify his actions, then he can avoid anxiety and resist facing responsibility for his guilt-arousing thoughts or actions. Sometimes when guilt feelings begin to arise, some get angry at others, try to justify their behaviour, deny any personal responsibility for what has happened, or even apologise profusely. Convinced that mental or behavioural lapses in moral purity are part of the sinful nature, some believers sin continually with their minds (and sometimes with their bodies), admit that this is wrong, ask God to forgive, and freely rely on his grace to take away the guilt. They are likely to repeat the cycle over and over again. Such thinking minimises the severity of sin, cheapens grace and fails to comprehend the meaning of a life lived under the lordship of Jesus Christ.

2. *Self-Condemnation Reactions.* Guilt feelings almost always arouse anxiety and self-condemning feelings of inferiority, inadequacy, weakness, low esteem, pessimism and insecurity. Sometimes there is self-punishment: the person acts like a martyr who is pushed around by others. At times there may be a poor-little-me-I-don't-deserve-to-be-treated-well attitude. For others there is an inability to relax, a refusal to accept compliments, sexual inhibition, an unwillingness to say no to the demands of others, or an avoidance of leisure activities because the person feels guilty and unable to accept forgiveness. Often there is anger that is held within and unexpressed. This can lead the person into depression, sometimes even to thoughts of suicide. Some people continually put themselves down and then wonder why this alienates and drives away their friends who don't enjoy being with someone who wallows in self-condemnation. Even accident-proneness can accompany guilt feelings.
3. *Physical Reactions.* Guilt feelings, like any other psychological reaction, can produce physical tension. Recent research has found that the physiological effects of self-blame accumulate over the years. If a person blames himself for a long-enough period of time, his body begins to deteriorate. Whenever tensions build in a person and are not released, the body weakens and eventually breaks down. Some view this as an unconscious form of self-punishment. Psychologically and emotionally, it may be easier to tolerate physical pain than to bear the burden of guilt that would otherwise attract our attention.

4. *Moral Pain.* Involvement in excessive violence, such as in the case with war, is a fundamental source of inner turmoil, and it expresses not just psychological stress but moral pain. Inner guilt cannot be dismissed glibly. Because of experiences with intense violence, many veterans for example still feel a guilt that is accompanied by shame, confusion, depression, anger, inner emptiness, a fear of intimacy and an inability to trust others. Many experience a profound moral distress, arising from the realisation that one has committed acts with real and terrible consequences. These people, like many of their civilian counterparts, have learned that suffering is real, that one's actions can sometimes irrevocably determine the destiny of others; the mistakes one makes are often transmuted directly into others' pain; there is sometimes no way to undo that pain – the dead remain dead, the maimed are forever maimed, and there is no way to deny one's responsibility or culpability. These realisations persist in the thinking of those who live in moral pain. These guilt-burdened people need to find forgiveness.
5. *Repentance and Forgiveness.* The effects of guilt feelings are not all negative. Some people have learned to accept mistakes, to grow from them, to confess to God and to others, and to rest content in the assurance that God is a forgiving God, filled with mercy, love and grace.

Guilt is a moral issue and guilt feelings arise from moral failures. In a controversial book, psychologist O. Hobart Mowrer once argued that individuals sicken “*in mind, soul, and perhaps even body because of unconfessed and unatoned real guilt*”.<sup>926</sup> Mental illness, this author proposed, is really moral illness that can only be cured by confession to significant other people and by making restitution. His work challenged both counsellors and pastors, urging them to acknowledge the central place of sin and forgiveness in counselling.

### 5.2.2 Shame

*Looking away [from all that will distract] to Jesus, Who is the Leader and the Source of our faith [giving the first incentive for our belief] and is also its Finisher [bringing it to maturity and perfection]. He, for the joy [of obtaining the prize] that was set before Him, endured the cross, despising and ignoring the shame, and is now seated at the right hand of the throne of God.*

*Hebrews 12:2*

---

<sup>926</sup> Mowrer, O H (1961) *The Crisis in Psychiatry and Religion*. Van Nostrand: Princeton, p. 82

Shame means disgrace, nakedness and dishonour. Shame is a loss of significance and an inner disfigurement of the personality. Shame festers, resulting in illness and depression.<sup>927</sup> Shame is a feeling of being incomplete or having failed at being a person; it is about being unaccepting of "who you are".<sup>928</sup>

Shame is an extremely deep, long-term, defining wound to the human spirit. Shame is not earned or deserved. Shame is more deadly than guilt because guilt is feeling bad about an action, while shame is feeling bad about your person. It's a mortal wound to the soul, because what happens is:<sup>929</sup>

*In shame, when I see this perfect, loving God who has invited me to come to him, all I can do is run and hide, because I couldn't stand to be in that kind of love. What I need more than anything else is love; what I fear more than anything else is love.*

### 5.2.3 Denial

Denial is to hide something, to pretend that something does not exist. Most deny lies in the unreality of a situation. Not being in touch with the reality of a situation comes from not seeing or hearing accurately or being dulled.

*<sup>15</sup> To the pure [in heart and conscience] all things are pure, but to the defiled and corrupt and unbelieving nothing is pure; their very minds and consciences are defiled and polluted. <sup>16</sup> They profess to know God [to recognize, perceive, and be acquainted with Him], but deny and disown and renounce Him by what they do; they are detestable and loathsome, unbelieving and disobedient and disloyal and rebellious, and [they are] unfit and worthless for good work (deed or enterprise) of any kind.*

*Titus 1:15-16*

In the above Scripture, they profess that they know God, that there is a God, that there is but one true and living God, the God of Israel, God the Father, Son, and Spirit. Yet this

---

<sup>927</sup> Kitchen Y and Triplett D (2000) Jezebel's Murder. A Fruitful Vine Publication, p. 119

<sup>928</sup> Brand, C, Sexual Brokenness and Deviation Part 3. Pretoria: RÂDÂH. Unpublished, p. 9

<sup>929</sup> Murphy, J, Overcoming Hindrances to Intimacy with God [Online] Available from: <http://www.wwccr.org/ministry/hindrances.htm> [Accessed: 28 November 2014]

knowledge was only notional; it lay in theory and profession only. They did not have a spiritual experimental knowledge of God in Christ, so in works they deny Him.

There are two sides to denial – the one side denying God in their actions and the other denying that they need God, denying sin and the effects thereof, denying the power of God that can help them overcome their sins to live righteous lives. And yet they still profess that they are believers.

*<sup>5</sup> Examine and test and evaluate your own selves to see whether you are holding to your faith and showing the proper fruits of it. Test and prove yourselves [not Christ]. Do you not yourselves realize and know [thoroughly by an ever-increasing experience] that Jesus Christ is in you—unless you are [counterfeits] disapproved on trial and rejected?*

*2 Corinthians 13:5*

Denial in any form will be detrimental to an individual. People in denial are people being deceived.

#### **5.2.4 Rejection**

*I will say of the Lord, He is my Refuge and my Fortress, my God; on Him I lean and rely, and in Him I [confidently] trust!*

*Psalms 91:2*

Steve Hepden describes rejection as an inability to give or receive love.<sup>930</sup> Rejection results from a denial of love. Rejection causes a wound to self. When self is wounded, many abnormalities can, and usually do, develop within one's personality. The wounded personality is prone to become peculiar and unstable in behaviour, attitudes and opinions. Also, physical infirmities often emerge out of the emotional stress of one's rejection.

Every person has experienced rejection during his lifetime to some extent; times when, for no apparent reason, a person turned against another or issued some thoughtless comment. Some of life's most painful rejection, in fact, comes from childhood experiences. Rejection suffered in the early years often sets the tone for a person's entire life. Whenever a

---

<sup>930</sup> Hepden, S (1992) Explaining Rejection. England: Sovereign World, p. 6

significant other (a parent, grandparent, or someone held in esteem) rejects you, feelings of being unloved, unworthy, useless, or insignificant can arise.

Rejection, whether by a loved one or a stranger, means that one has been hurt in the worst possible way by a person or persons from whom sympathy, friendship, or help was expected. Rejection sometimes can hurt very, very deeply. When feeling rejected, one tends to react in certain predictable ways. People often become angry with themselves and others and assume that they've done something to deserve the rejection. They might grow bitter, filled with hatred for the person or persons who rejected them, scarring the person emotionally and socially for life. This in turn could cause the body to weaken and be susceptible to diseases. Deep rooted rejection could prevent the body from fighting off viruses and bacterium, even encouraging the body to turn on itself and reject its own organs.

*Rejection* is defined as reject, refuse, repudiate, decline, deny, rebuff, repel, renounce, discard, throw away, exclude, eliminate and jettison.<sup>931</sup> Rejection is three-fold: (1) the root of rejection (coming down the bloodlines); (2) the fear of rejection (with walls of self-protection); and (3) self-rejection. Each of these types of rejection works to destroy the mental and emotional health of an individual.

Rejection lies in one of three manifestations: (1) rebellion – the person is very aggressive and is under control of a spirit of pride, able to hurt other people verbally or physically; (2) fear – the person is very passive and is under a spirit of misbelief and unbelief, is able to hurt himself to the point of suicide: mental suicide through drugs and alcohol, moral suicide through sexuality, spiritual suicide through occult involvement, or physical suicide through anorexia, depression and death, having a strong self-hate; and (3) performance orientation – the person will perform to meet expectations.

People suffer from rejection through one of the following (among many):

- curses through the bloodlines;
- parents' negative attitudes towards an own child (born or unborn, in utero), adoptive child, unwanted in totality or unwanted gender;
- children conceived through lust or rape;
- children who survived abortion attempts;
- mothers fearing the birth or birth pains or birth process; mothers even afraid of gaining too much weight;

---

<sup>931</sup> Demon Buster, Rejection [Online] Available from: <http://www.demonbuster.com/reject.html> [Accessed: 26 September 2014]

- addictive habits and manners;
- abuse;
- rejection by peer groups, parents, teachers or authority figures;
- speech problems; and
- loose family homes, divorce.

If the father rejects the unborn child, the child's spirit can reject life and a spirit of death can enter in the form of a death wish which could result in miscarriage, bridged babies, umbilical cord around a baby's throat. Rejected babies might refuse to drink from the breast and therefore reject the mother. Rejection in babies results in severe fear which in turn can cause illness in the baby or throughout childhood. Rejection cultivates bitterness, pride, escapism, guilt, low self-esteem, unforgiveness and anger.

Perfectionism has at the root the fear of rejection and failure. These people have a low self-image. They always suffer from a self-depreciation that comes from fearful pride. They are afraid others will discover the terrible gap between their real selves and their fantasy selves and then reject them. The person lives a life of performance to live up to the expectations of someone else.

According to Bill Banks, studies have shown that one-third of bulimics have had at least one parent who was an alcoholic. This plants the roots of rejection within the child, leaving the child craving the need for love and acceptance. It leaves the child insecure, and helps the enemy plant the roots of a fear of abandonment. Other commonly attendant circumstances are depression, guilt, shame and thoughts of suicide. Other fears are a fear of being fat, fear of starvation and fear of poverty.<sup>932</sup>

If people who have a large spirit (a large call on their lives) are deeply rejected as children and have a deep sense of inadequacy because of this rejection, and have a deep drive for achievement in order to acquire legitimacy, they develop a sense of lawlessness stemming from having been robbed. These people will be the target of a mesmerising spirit – a spirit that makes a person be fixed on a small picture. The mesmerising spirit will not only control the host person but others along the way.<sup>933</sup>

*See Chapter 4 - 4.13.5 Mesmerising Spirit*

---

<sup>932</sup> Banks, B (1988) *Deliverance from Fat and Eating Disorders*. Missouri, USA: Impact Books Inc., p.60

<sup>933</sup> Burk, A, *Spiritual Warfare*, CD 3 Track 4

The biggest problem with rejection is that it makes a person double-minded, and double-mindedness is the root of all insanity. The Bible instructs us to be single-minded, having the mind of Christ, which is the Word of God. The key to defeating rejection is for the believer to start separating himself from his sin and start separating other people from their sin, to stop blaming the enemy for the sin. Let's begin renewing the mind by reading the Word and loving people and oneself.<sup>934</sup>

### 5.2.5 Grief

*I assure you, most solemnly I tell you, that you shall weep and grieve, but the world will rejoice. You will be sorrowful, but your sorrow will be turned into joy.*

John 16:20

Grief is a normal response to the loss of any significant person, object, or opportunity. It is an experience of deprivation and anxiety that can show itself in one's behaviour, emotions, thinking, physiology, interpersonal relationships and spirituality. Any kind of loss can bring grief: divorce, retirement from a job, amputation, the departure of a child to college or of a pastor to some other church, moving from a friendly neighbourhood (or watching a good neighbour move), selling one's car, losing a home or valued possession, the death of a pet or plant, loss of a contest or athletic game, health failures, and even the loss of one's youthful appearance, confidence, or enthusiasm. Sometimes desirable and long-anticipated events, like the move to a better job and new neighbourhood or graduation from college, can bring grief (mixed with happiness) because valuable memories or relationships are being lost and left behind.

Doubts, the loss of one's faith, the waning of one's spiritual vitality, or the inability to find meaning in life can all produce sadness and emptiness that indicate grief. Whenever a part of life is lost or taken away, there can be grief. When one encounters death, he faces an irreversible, unalterable situation that he is powerless to change. Even though death has been swallowed up in victory, the loss of a loved one can be devastating and grief can be overwhelming. Eventually everyone will die (Hebrew 9:27), but in the meantime, most mankind will grieve at least periodically.

---

<sup>934</sup> Wright, H. Our Lifestyle Determines our Life's Fruit [Online] Available from: [http://www.beinhealth.com/public/content/newsletter/thoughts-week-feb-10?theme=bih\\_r1](http://www.beinhealth.com/public/content/newsletter/thoughts-week-feb-10?theme=bih_r1) [Accessed: 30 September 2014]

The Bible describes the deaths and subsequent grieving of many people. The Psalms tell of God's presence and comfort as one walks through the valley of the shadow of death (Psalm 23:4); the Word of God strengthens those who are weary with sorrow (Psalm 119:28). In the New Testament, the numerous passages on death and grief can be grouped into two categories. Each deals with the influence of Jesus Christ: (1) Christ has changed the meaning of grieving. There are many nonbelievers who grieve without any hope for the future. For them death is the end of a relationship – forever. The believer, however, does not believe that. In 1 Corinthians 15 and 1 Thessalonians 4 the believer is given reason to hope, even in times of sorrow. Jesus died and rose again and God will bring with Jesus those who have fallen asleep in him (1 Thessalonians 4:14). For the believer, death is not the end of existence; it is the beginning of life eternal. The one who believes in Christ knows that the believer will always be with the Lord. This knowledge is comforting, even though it does not eliminate the intense pain of grief and the need for solace. (2) Christ has demonstrated the importance of grieving by grieving Himself (John 11; Matthew 26:38).

For the believer grief is normal and healthy. It also can be pathological and unhealthy. Simply stated, grief arises because something or someone of value has been lost and the griever is faced with the emptiness and difficult task of re-adjusting. The griever encounters four often difficult and time-consuming tasks: (1) to accept the reality of the loss; (2) to feel and consciously admit the pain of the loss (this includes untangling oneself from the ties that bind one to the deceased); (3) to adjust to an environment in which the deceased person is missing; and (4) to form new relationships. The last stage seems to be the most difficult because people feel both guilty and insecure about reinvesting their energies in new relationships. Nobody can say how long the mourning process will last. For some it may take only a few weeks or a few months, but studies of widows show that most need at least three or four years to regain stability in their lives. And even then, life is never like it was before the loved one died.

Normal grief usually involves intense sorrow, pain, loneliness, anger, depression, physical symptoms and changes in interpersonal relationships. Often there is denial, fantasy, restlessness, disorganisation, inefficiency, irritability, a desire to talk considerably about the deceased, an unconscious adoption of the lost person's mannerisms, and a feeling that life no longer has meaning. In all of this, there are great individual differences. How one grieves depends on one's personality, background, religious beliefs, relationship with the deceased and cultural environment. Even though the mourner may never recover completely from the loss, most people eventually return to a state of productivity and the restoration of mental



and physical well-being. At times, however, the grief is abnormal, pathological and complicated. This is grief that is intensified, delayed, prolonged, denied, or otherwise deviating from the more normal expressions of sorrow. It is a grief that keeps the mourner in bondage to the deceased person and prevents one from coping and moving on with life. Often there are no symptoms unique to pathological grief. Instead the behaviour seen in normal grieving appears with greater intensity and longer duration. There may be deep feelings of dejection, a lack of interest in the outside world, a diminished capacity to love, withdrawal and a significant decline in self-esteem. For some there is hyperactivity, a giving-up attitude of helplessness and hopelessness, intense guilt, a strong self-condemnation, extreme social withdrawal or moodiness, impulsivity, antisocial behaviour, excessive drinking, and veiled threats of self-destruction (sometimes followed by serious attempts at suicide).<sup>935</sup>

The following are some effects of grief<sup>936</sup>:

1. *Physical Effects.* Several studies have shown that grief hinders the body's immune system so that viruses and other disease-causing organisms are more difficult to resist, especially during the first six months of mourning. The death rate increases significantly during the first few years of widowhood and there are marked increases in congestive heart failure, high blood pressure, strokes, and cancer. Grief can put a significant stress on the body at a time when a person is least able to resist the onslaught of illness. There is ample evidence to show that intense or prolonged stress disrupts the body and can lead to numerous ailments, including some that are quite serious. In addition, stress can lead to exhaustion, weakness, headaches, indigestion, shortness of breath, loss of appetite and an inability to sleep.
2. *Emotional-Cognitive Effects.* Grief affects both how a person feels and thinks. Depression is common following the death of a loved one and often there are feelings of anxiety, inner emptiness, guilt, anger, irritability, withdrawal from others, forgetfulness, declining interest in sex, dreams about the deceased, nightmares, errors in judgment and intense feelings of loneliness. For many there is a loss of zest, disorganisation of routines, and a realisation that even the simplest activities that once were automatic now require great effort and the expending of considerable energy. At a time when the grieving person feels least able to handle extra pressure, there usually is an increase in

---

<sup>935</sup> Collin, G R (1988) *Christian Counselling*. Vancouver: Word Publishing, pp 344-347

<sup>936</sup> *Ibid.*, pp. 350-353

things that must be done, including the submission of claims for insurance, consolidating and changing names on bank accounts, paying extra bills connected with funeral and hospital expenses, meeting with lawyers concerning the deceased person's will, changing names on legal documents such as the mortgage or car title, informing the providers of pensions or the Internal Revenue Service, and even handling daily hassles like the tap that starts leaking or the lawn that isn't mowed. All of this can create considerable frustration and place additional stress on the grieving person.

3. *Social Effects.* The death of a loved one is a major social disruption. When a spouse dies, the surviving mate must learn to relate to others as a single adult. Grown children and other family members find new demands on their time. Relationships between the surviving spouse and the dead person's family often show new and sometimes unexpected tensions, particularly if the survivor starts dating. Old friends may not know how to relate to the survivor, and a widow may feel awkward to be the only unaccompanied person at a gathering of couples with whom she and her husband had previously socialised. To avoid some of these social tensions, grieving people often withdraw from others, get busy so they won't have to face their anxieties, or start traveling. In themselves, none of these is harmful, but each can also become a way of denying the reality of one's new, unfamiliar and often uncomfortable social status.
4. *Pathological Effects.* Pathological grief reactions occur when grief is denied, delayed, never ending, or distorted so there is intense fear, guilt, helplessness, withdrawal or other evidences of pathology. This most often occurs when the death has been sudden or unexpected; the mourner has been excessively dependent on the deceased; there was an ambivalent relationship (love mixed with hatred) between the mourner and the lost one; there was unfinished business between the mourner and the deceased (such as siblings who hadn't talked for years, family conflicts that hadn't been resolved, confessions that hadn't been made, or love that hadn't been expressed); the cause of death was violent, accidental, or suicidal; and/or the loss left the mourner with new and difficult challenges such as raising children alone or making business decisions. When grief is pathological, the survivor may show several of the following behaviours, few or none of which were apparent before the death occurred:
  - unwillingness to talk about the deceased, accompanied by intense sadness whenever the dead person's name is mentioned;
  - a tendency to speak of the deceased person in the present tense (for example, "He doesn't like what I am doing");

- open or subtle threats of self-destruction;
- persisting and deep depression, often accompanied by guilt and low self-esteem;
- antisocial behaviour;
- excessive hostility, moodiness, or guilt;
- excessive drinking or drug abuse;
- withdrawal and refusal to interact with others;
- impulsivity;
- persisting psychosomatic (mental and emotional) illnesses;
- veneration of objects that remind one of the deceased and the link the mourner had with the dead person;
- refusal to change the deceased person's room or to dispose of his or her clothing and other possessions;
- resistance to offers of counselling or other help;
- stoic refusal to show emotion or to appear affected by the loss (usually indicating denial and avoidance of grief);
- a happy, almost euphoric attitude (often explained as "rejoicing in the Lord"); and
- an intense busyness and unusual hyperactivity.

### **5.2.6 Depression**

*And be not grieved and depressed, for the joy of the Lord is your strength and stronghold.*

*Nehemiah 8:10*

Depression (previously called melancholia) has been recognised as a common problem for thousands of years. It is a worldwide phenomenon that affects individuals of all ages (including infancy), appears to be increasing among teenagers and young adults, and disrupts the lives of an estimated 30 to 40 million people in the United States alone. Some of history's greatest military leaders, statesmen, musicians, scientists and theologians have been its victims, as depression is no respecter of persons. It is known as the common cold of mental disorders and has been called the most widespread, serious and costly psychiatric disease afflicting humankind today. In its milder forms, depression may come as a passing period of sadness that follows a personal disappointment. More severe depression may overwhelm its victims with feelings of despair, fear, exhaustion, immobilising apathy, hopelessness and inner desperation.

The word *depression* covers a wide variety of symptoms that differ in severity, frequency, duration and origin. The signs of depression may include (1) sadness, often accompanied by pessimism and hopelessness; (2) apathy, an inertia that makes it difficult to get going or face decisions; (3) genital fatigue, along with loss of energy and a lack of interest in work, sex, religion, hobbies or other activities; (4) low self-esteem, frequently accompanied by self-criticism and feelings of guilt, shame, worthlessness and helplessness; (5) a loss of spontaneity; (6) insomnia and difficulties in concentration; and often (7) loss of appetite.

In what is sometimes known as masked depression, the person has many of the above symptoms but denies that he or she feels sad. The alert counsellor may suspect that depression is present even behind a smiling countenance. In many cases, the symptoms of depression hide anger that has not been expressed, sometimes isn't recognised and, according to one traditional theory, is often directed inward against oneself.

They are of two broad types, bipolar and unipolar depressions.<sup>937</sup>

- In *bipolar depression* the person experiences mood swings from manic enthusiasm on one hand to depressive gloom on the other. Manic highs can give the impression of both insanity and demonization. When on a manic high, the afflicted person may appear totally out of control. He may yell, run wild, or destroy personal property, or he may simply talk, incessantly, about illusions.
- In *unipolar clinical depression*, however, there are no manic highs; there is only gloom and despair. Such persons can become suicidal. Death is preferable to life that has become unending with ever-increasing pain.

Depressive reactions have been classified in a variety of ways with terms such as reactive versus endogenous, primary versus secondary, and unipolar versus bipolar. *Reactive depression* (sometimes called exogenous or neurotic depression) usually comes as a reaction to some real or imagined loss or trauma, is accompanied with high levels of anxiety, is of short duration, and often is self-correcting. *Endogenous* (also called autonomous and sometimes psychotic depression) is more likely to arise spontaneously from within, involves intense despair sometimes accompanied by self-destructive tendencies, persists for a long period of time, is more resistant to treatment, and has a high recurrence rate. *Primary depression* occurs by itself while *secondary depression* comes as the side effect of some medication, the influence of one's diet, or the result of an illness like cancer, diabetes, or even influenza. *Unipolar depression* refers to a condition where there are one or more

---

<sup>937</sup> Murphy, E F (2003) *The Handbook for Spiritual Warfare*, Revised and Updated. Thomas Nelson Publishers, p. 491

episodes of depression as the primary disorder. Less common is *bipolar depression* that involves periods of mania interspersed with the depressive behaviour. Most professionals distinguish all these forms of depression from *discouragement*, which is a mild, usually temporary, and an almost universal mood swing that comes in response to disappointments, failures, and losses.

All of this shows that depression is a common but complicated condition, difficult to define, hard to describe with accuracy, and certainly not easy to treat. *Depression* is a clinical term that is not discussed in the Bible even though the condition appears to have been common. Psalms 69, 88, and 102, for example, are songs of despair, but notice that these are set in the context of hope. In Psalm 43 David expresses both depression and rejoicing when he writes: *Why are you downcast, O my soul? Why so disturbed within me? Put your hope in God, for I will yet praise him, my Saviour and my God.*

Elsewhere in the Bible it appears that Job, Moses, Jonah, Peter, and even the whole nation of Israel experienced depression. Jeremiah the prophet wrote a whole book of lamentations. Elijah saw God's mighty power at work on Mount Carmel, but when Jezebel threatened murder, Elijah fled into the wilderness where he plunged into despondency. He wanted to die and might have done so except for the treatment that came from an angel sent by God (1 Kings 19). Jesus in Gethsemane was greatly distressed, an observation that is poignantly described in the words of the Amplified Bible:

*He began to show grief and distress of mind and was deeply depressed. Then He said to them, My soul is very sad and deeply grieved, so that I am almost dying of sorrow.*

*Matthew 26:37-38*

These examples, accompanied by numerous references to the pain of grieving, show the realism that characterises the Bible. It is a realistic despair contrasted with a certain hope. Each believer who plunged into depression eventually came through and experienced a new and lasting joy. The biblical emphasis is less on human despair and more on belief in God and the assurance of abundant life in heaven, if not on earth. Paul's confident prayer for the Romans will someday be answered for all Christians:

*May the God of hope fill you with all joy and peace as you trust in him, so that you may overflow with hope by the power of the Holy Spirit.*

*Romans 15:13*

Most people don't enjoy having problems, but sometimes problems can serve a useful purpose. Neurotic behaviour, which includes depression, may not be pleasant, but it does help an individual avoid responsibilities, save face, attract attention, and have an excuse for inactivity. Eventually, however, emotionally hurting people realise that the benefits of depression are not truly satisfying. Such people begin to hate what they are doing and, in time, they may end up hating themselves. This can create more depression.<sup>938</sup>

Depression leads to any or all of the following effects. In general, the deeper the depression, the more intense the effects.<sup>939</sup>

1. *Unhappiness and Inefficiency.* Depressed people frequently feel blue, hopeless, self-critical and miserable. As a result they lack enthusiasm, are indecisive, and sometimes have little energy for doing even simple things (like getting out of bed in the morning). Life thus is characterised by inefficiency, underachievement, and an increased dependence on others.
2. *Physical Illness.* Depression, including the sadness that comes with grief or loneliness, tends to suppress the body's immune system. As a result, the individual is more susceptible to illness and the body is less able to fight viruses and other disease. Depressed people, therefore, are more likely than others to get sick, and the reverse is true as well: whenever they have a psychiatric disorder or physical illness, they often develop depression as a result.
3. *Low Self-Esteem and Withdrawal.* When a person is discouraged, unmotivated, and bored with life, there often is low self-esteem, self-pity, a lack of self-confidence and the strong desire to get away from other people. Social contacts may be too demanding and the depressed person may not feel like communicating. Instead, the individual may daydream and escape into a world of television, novels, or alcohol or drug use. Some people dream of running away or finding a simpler job. A few do this, but more often, the depressed person just lacks the energy.
4. *Suicide.* There is no more complete way to escape than to take one's own life. Suicide and suicide attempts are prevalent among teenagers, people who live alone, the unmarried (especially the divorced), and persons who are depressed. Many depressed

---

<sup>938</sup> Collin, G R (1988) Christian Counselling. Vancouver: Word Publishing, pp.105-106

<sup>939</sup> Ibid., pp. 110-111

people never even consider suicide but others do, often in a sincere attempt to kill themselves and escape life. For some, suicide attempts are an unconscious cry for help, an opportunity for revenge, or a manipulative gesture, designed to influence some person who is close emotionally. While some suicide attempts are blatantly clear (as when a man leaves a note and shoots himself) others are more subtle and designed to look like accidents. While some people fully plan their self-destructive actions, others drive recklessly, drink excessively, or find other ways to flirt with death. All of this illustrates the pervasive and potentially destructive influence of depression.

Depressed people often are passive, nonverbal, poorly motivated, pessimistic and characterised by a resigned, what's-the-use-attitude. In some people, depression is hidden even from themselves, but it comes out in other ways including physical symptoms and complaints (hypochondriasis), aggressive actions and angry temper outbursts, impulsive behaviour (including gambling, drinking, violence, destructiveness or impulsive sex), accident proneness, compulsive work, and sexual problems, to name the most common. These are symptoms of masked depression that occur in children and adolescents as well as in adults. The person may be hurting emotionally but expressing this hurt in ways that hide the real inner despair. Sometimes the hiding is so good that even close friends don't recognise the depression.

More often, however, the depression has a strong impact on others. People who live with a depressed person often feel burdened by the patient's worrying, fatigue, feelings of hopelessness and lack of interest in social activities.<sup>940</sup>

### **5.2.7 Lies**

Satan is the father of lies. The primary way the enemy entices the believer to sin is through lies. Since the believer believes with his heart and his heart believes what he feels, it is an easy matter for the enemy to give a person a little push in the direction of believing a lie. When someone has believed a lie, his soul will then attempt to understand that lie. The questions then asked is, "Why did this happen to me?" The soul's answer is usually a judgment against oneself or someone else. That causes pain to increase. So then the soul tries to manage the pain by making a decision. We decide to suppress the pain or to not ever trust anyone again and so on. The enemy attaches to the promises made in the soul.

---

<sup>940</sup> Ibid.

Once the lie is replaced with truth, the judgment located and repented of and the promise broken, it is a simple matter to instruct any evil thing attached to the promise to go to the feet of Jesus.

Another area the enemy uses to breed lies is the area of family dysfunction. Every person has to identify the lies he has come to believe as a result of family dysfunction. Those faulty perceptions are part of Satan's attempt to dupe man into believing that his family's way of relating to the world and others is the only right one, or at least it is the only one he knows and his heart bends to its dictates. The untruth that becomes familiar to a person as a child brings him into direct contact with darkness. Familiar spirits (spirits that have often been with a person's family for generations) gain access to him.<sup>941</sup>

When people are victimized as children, they begin to base their thought-life on a view that is distorted by abuse of dysfunction. The ways in which humans establish intimacy and obtain love become particularly distorted, as they embrace numerous falsehoods in response to their caretaker's self-serving demands. They learn that love and security can only be obtained through self-deception and the sacrifice of their self-worth and dignity. As innocent children, people trust those who are in authority over them, never dreaming that they are teaching them to base their lives on a lie. They must be who they (caretakers) tell them they are if they are to gain love and approval. So they embrace a lie in an act of self-preservation. Eventually their life takes on a self-perpetuating distortion of its own as they embrace their assigned role.

Long after becoming adults, that assigned role continues to determine how someone relates to those around him. The role often reads like a script: since the 'prescribed lines' provide a person with a means of dealing with the uncertainties of the play he calls 'life', he unconsciously incorporates them into his relationships. He hopes that as long as he adheres to the script, he will always know just where he stands. Authors who write about dysfunctional families have labelled these roles in many different ways.

Dr Mark Johnson, a specialist in dealing with abusive victims, in his book *Spiritual Warfare for the Wounded*, labels these roles as follows<sup>942</sup>:

---

<sup>941</sup> Johnson, M (1992) *Spiritual Warfare for the Wounded*. Michigan: Vine Books, pp. 72-73

<sup>942</sup> Ibid, pp. 83-87



- *The Prince/Princess.* The prince or princess grows up believing that he or she is someone's favourite. The abuser often praises the child's beauty, charm, intellect or other natural asset. These children come to believe that they deserve special treatment. Playing the role of the prince/princess allows the child to gain some sense of significance and worth in an otherwise hostile world. Often (particularly in the case of physical intimacy) teaching the child to accept such a role whittles away his or her natural resistance to abuse. The abusive act is placed in a favourable – or at least acceptable – light because it makes them special. The result is that such children are set up to become the prey of numerous abusers throughout their lives.
- *The Whiz Kid.* The whiz kid is considered bright, strong, capable and perhaps adult-like. By casting children in this role, abusers absolve themselves – at least in their own minds – of the responsibility for caring for them. They convince themselves that the child can handle whatever is asked of him or her. The whiz kid is often treated by a parent as a friend and emotional support or caregiver. The emotional support required by the adult abuse may include sex, but this element is not necessary in order to be damaging to the child. Whiz kids come to believe that they are only acceptable to others when they are willing and able to perform the roles of confidant, counsellor and/or sexual partner as needed.
- *The Coward.* The coward is taught from his earliest memory that everything makes him afraid. "Don't be a chicken!" and "Don't be such a cry-baby!" become familiar refrains. The coward's script teaches the victim that he can't stand up to the rigors of real life and must accept whatever comes his or her way. The outcome of such a script is predictable. This child will probably become the family scapegoat or "fall guy" who learns never to complain or fight back. Such a child becomes easy prey for multiple abusers who regard the coward's mind-set as an open invitation to aggressively act out physically, sexually, or at the very least verbally.
- *The Loser.* Losers are convinced that they are a failure or a nuisance and often operate under the conviction that they just don't belong. Such children may discover that they were conceived accidentally. They may be the runt of the household or they may have come along too late in their parents' lives. The loser typically learns to expect mistreatment and regards it as further evidence that abuse is all he deserves.

- *The Deviant.* The deviate is the child who is repeatedly identified as a slut, fag, retard, fatso or clown. Such children are made to feel hopelessly different in any number of ways. Because of the constant derision, they learn to define their lives in terms of aberration. Families find many ways to give their children separate identities. Not all of them are pleasant or complimentary. Some children are taught that they are a deviate in some innocent way. Other children are called a hot number or flirt. Such damaging labels leave children with a dangerously warped image of themselves as a sexual being. Any labelling that causes a child to feel as if he is hopelessly different is ultimately destructive.
- *The Eunuch/Matron.* Generally the eunuch/matron grows up in a family system in which both parents have been equally abusive or neglectful. Such children feel alienated from both sexes as a result. They feel cut off from their own sexuality and question who they are and where their sexual interests lie. The eunuch/matron suffers from severe feelings of isolation. Their isolation then tends to confirm their feeling of being irrevocably different and never belonging.

Each of these scripts gives birth to a kind of self-talk that serves to make the assigned role self-perpetuating. If an individual grows up believing that he or she is a whore, a fag, an idiot, a coward, a failure, a monster, a weakling, a nuisance or a troublemaker, he will unconsciously need to live a life congruent with these labels and will relate to the world accordingly.

### **5.2.8 Lovelessness**

*Lovelessness* means without any love, feeling no love and receiving no love. This happens when a person does not receive any love when growing up. Children brought up in families where love is not the free and fundamental gift that every child should receive as a birthright will generate a lack of healthy pride and the feelings of isolation, of being unwanted, unimportant in the eyes of family members, unappreciated, and un-cared for. Even when clothed and well fed, sensitive children feel the loneliness of not being known for who they are, and they suffer from feeling essentially neither of interest nor personally cherished in the family. The fundamental basis for feeling loved is embedded in the ways in which adults care for a little one consistently throughout the early years. Adults need to provide tenderness,

careful holding and cuddling, and attuned attentiveness to signals of distress; as well, they need to engage in prompt and effective ways to ease that distress.

Extensive research on the sequence of attachment behaviours shows that securely attached children grow up feeling loved, are able to learn well, and are better able to deal with the emotional fluctuations that life sometimes entails. When parents are uncomfortable with warm snuggles and are unavailable when a little one is needy – for feeding, cuddling, reassuring loving company – children grow up to become insecure, 'avoidantly attached'. Research shows that as pre-schoolers, they are more likely to bully other children. Children who receive inconsistent care from narcissistic mothers often become insecure, 'ambivalently/hesitantly attached', and may grow up to become 'victims' in interpersonal relationships.<sup>943</sup>

There are three major child-rearing styles. The *authoritative* parent sets high standards and is also deeply invested in the child's well-being, genuinely admires the child, is personally cherishing, and acts for the well-being of the child. Other families are characterised as either *permissive* (where the child has all rights but few responsibilities), whose children often grow up demanding and spoiled, or *authoritarian* (where parents have all the rights and the child has all the responsibilities), and those children grow up often acting fearful or as callous and punitive with others as they were treated.<sup>944</sup>

Lovelessness is a key reason for pushing children towards insanity. Mentally these people are 'broken', in a vacuum out of which few of them can break free. Fear and unforgiveness will always flow from lovelessness.<sup>945</sup>

### 5.3. SIN: OVERT AND COVERT EXISTENCE

#### 5.3.1 Origin of Sin

Sin began in heaven among the angelic order. It came to earth in the being of the tempter, Satan. He is called Lucifer, the Day Star, the Shining One, the Light-bearer, and the Son of the Morning. Evil originated in the heart of Lucifer himself. He is the author, the originator of all sin, the beginning of sin, sin personification, the first and original sinner (1 John 3:8).

---

<sup>943</sup> Honig, A S, What Happens if you did not feel Loved as a Child?, American Psychological Association, March 7, 2012, Vol. 57, Release 10, Article 4

<sup>944</sup> Ibid.

<sup>945</sup> Personal Interview with Professor Dr Connie Brand, 4 November 2014.

The nature of Lucifer's sin was pride, covetousness (lust), self-will, self-exultation, self-enthronement, self-dependence and self-deification (Isaiah 14:12-14).<sup>946</sup> The Hebrew word *halal* is a common primitive root meaning shining or praise, but when used in a special Hebrew intensive (i.e. voice, tense, mood) it is called *Hithpoel*, meaning madness.

*How you have fallen from heaven, O star [halal, 1984, Lucifer] of the morning, son of the dawn! You have been cut down to the earth, You who have weakened the nations!*

Isaiah 14:12

The word *halal* in the above verse (common form, not the Hebrew intensive *Hithpoel*) is used to describe the Lucifer, who thought of himself as God.

The entrance of sin into humanity happened in Eden with the deception of Eve. Satan extends his sinful nature to the rest of mankind by tempting him in body, soul and spirit, tempting mankind to lust (covetousness), pride and self-will, always starting with the desires to the flesh. Therefore sin in its core is lawlessness, selfishness and self-will.<sup>947</sup>

The flesh encompasses the entire gamut of negative emotions and carnal desires and lusts. The *flesh* refers to the carnal or natural mind and its desires, along with the lusts of the body (sin-nature). In Romans Chapters 7 and 8, the Holy Spirit tells that the flesh and the mind (soul) are to be subjected to the Law of Life in Christ by faith, so that Christ in the spirit man governs and directs the soul-man and the flesh. The term *flesh* in the Scriptures has several other meanings, among which are (1) the body, (2) mankind, (3) humanity, (4) a blood relative, and (5) the total man (body, mind, spirit).<sup>948</sup>

### 5.3.2 Definition of Sin

Dr Richard S. Taylor, in his book *The Right Conception of Sin*, makes the statement that sin<sup>949</sup> is the cause and death is the result. "*In the day that thou eatest thereof thou shalt surely die*" (Genesis 2:17). "*The soul that sinneth, it shall die*" (Ezekiel 18:4). "*But sin... working death in me*" (Romans 7:13). "*For the wages of sin is death*" (Romans 6:23).

---

<sup>946</sup> Brand, C, Doctrine of Sin and the Cross of Christ. Pretoria: RÂDÂH. Unpublished, pp. 22-26, 44

<sup>947</sup> Ibid., pp. 28-31

<sup>948</sup> 1 Corinthians 15:39; Matthew 24:22; John 1:13; John 1:14; 1 Timothy 3:16; Hebrews 5:7; John 6:51-57; James 5:3; 1 Corinthians 10:18; Galatians 4:23; Romans 2:28,29

<sup>949</sup> Etymology: Sin: Old English *synn* "moral wrongdoing, injury, mischief, enmity, feud, guilt, crime, offense against God, misdeed," from Proto-Germanic *\*sun(d)jo-* "sin". [www.etymonline.com](http://www.etymonline.com)

*"Who were dead in trespasses and sins" (Eph. 2:1). "And sin, when it is finished, bringeth forth death" (James 1:15). Taylor continues to define sin as "the deviation from God's holiness and revealed will, either in Condition or in act".<sup>950 951</sup>*

He goes on to ask the question: What is spiritual death, the result of sin? It involves (1) separation from God, (2) depravity (deviation from God's holiness) of the moral and spiritual nature, and (3) just punishment – it is sin in the spirit.

Spiritual death, as defined above, is an essential effect of, and is always produced by, the following combination of facts: (1) the holiness and justice of God; (2) the choice of evil, or un-holiness and injustice on the part of God's subject; (3) the principle of intrinsic antagonism between good and evil, holiness and un-holiness, justice and injustice. *"Can two walk together except they be agreed?" (Amos 3:3). "Thou art of purer eyes than to behold evil" (Habakkuk 1:13).* The holiness of God combined with the second and third facts produces separation, for how could God fellowship with evil without violating His holiness? The justice of God combined with facts two and three requires punishment, for how could God fail to attach a penalty without violating His justice? Choice of evil combined with the resultant separation begets depravity of nature.

Choice of evil, or sin in act, always produces the combination of the three facts, and such combination always brings forth death. Therefore, to change the nature of sin sufficiently to prevent spiritual death, in fact, to change the nature of sin at all, is something that a holy and just God could not do. The only alternative, as a means of getting rid of death as the effect of sin, is to remove, altogether, that form of sin which effects death.

Salvation is an individual matter; hence, to free the individual from death requires that he be freed individually from sin. Herein do the necessity of personal repentance even though Christ's work of atonement has been completed. To benefit by the death of Christ and obtain the eternal life provided, one must break the combination of causes which produce death by renouncing and forsaking sin. Regeneration changes God's attitude toward the individual, but does not change his attitude toward sin.

Therefore the only way whereby the new-born believer can retain his freedom from spiritual death is by preventing the first and third facts from uniting with the second; in other words,

---

<sup>950</sup> Taylor, R S (1997) *The Right Conception of Sin*. USA: Nazarene Publishing House, p. 10

<sup>951</sup> Zampano, B (1998) *Healing the Broken Heart and the Wounded Spirit*. Miami: Harbour Light Publishers, p. 6

continuing to abhor and reject all known sin. For him again to choose evil will once more produce in his soul all the horrors of spiritual death: separation from God, depravity of nature, and liability to punishment. True, for him speedily to repent from the heart and plead the blood of Jesus will release him before the spiritual death is entirely realised. The Spirit departs slowly and reluctantly. But for him persistently to choose evil without repentance until his physical death is for him to die in a state of spiritual death and remain so throughout eternity.<sup>952</sup>

Sin simply means *missing the mark*; *one did not do what he was supposed to do*.

### 5.3.3 An Act of Sin

By definition, *sin* is every mistake in judgment, every unknown offense or other manifestation of human frailty and limitation included? Obviously not. God's quarrel is not with man's humanity, but with his disposition to set his will against God's. That is the thing which He is trying to get rid of, and that is the only thing which will bring final condemnation. God does not require that kind of legal righteousness which would necessitate a perfect head as well as a perfect heart. He does ask that every principle found in those commandments be the deeply imbedded, controlling impulse of one's moral and spiritual natures (Micah 6:8). The Triune God asks for a perfect fulfilment in heart – in motive, intention, choice and affection.

Here is God's requirement for man falling from the lips of the Lord Himself:

*Thou shalt love the Lord thy God with all thy heart, and with all thy soul, and with all thy mind. This is the first and great commandment. And the second is like unto it, Thou shalt love thy neighbour as thyself. On these two commandments hang all the law and the Prophets.*

*Matthew 22:37-40*

Such is God's conception of what it means to fulfil perfectly the law. He could require no more; He can accept no less. And yet, this is the New Testament standard of the believer experience; this is the new covenant, and it consists of fulfilling the law. The root meaning of the verb "to sin" is "to miss the mark". But what is the mark we are to hit? The mark is in the possession and expression of perfect love. To sin is to miss the standard of love. Again, "*Sin*

---

<sup>952</sup> Ibid., pp. 10-12

is the transgression of the law" (1 John 3:4). But what law? The law of love. Sin is the transgression of the law, but it can be committed only in the heart; the outward act is but the expression of that sin.

This helps also to make clearer some of John's statement, as when he says, "*Whosoever is born of God doth not commit sin*" (1 John 3:9), he is simply expressing the self-evident maxim that he who truly loves God from the heart will not at the same time disobey God from the heart. Is it possible to keep the law of love? If so, then it is possible to live without sin. It seems that any failure to fulfil absolute righteousness, whether intentional or unintentional, is called sin in the Bible and should be called sin by the believer. But is it actually called sin in the Bible? That depends on which dispensation one is living under. It makes all the difference in the problem of defining sin if the believer is not under law but under grace. "*For sin shall not have dominion over you: for ye are not under the law but under grace*" (Romans 6:11). Grace, however, takes into full consideration the circumstances and emotions and motives involved. If it was an unintentional, unforeseen and inescapable commission or omission, grace pronounces the man innocent; that is, grace says he is not a sinner.

If a believer insists on calling everything sin, he will either lose this proper attitude toward sin, or live in a state of condemnation and darkness.<sup>953</sup>

### 5.3.4 The Sin Nature or Inbred Sin

First may it be said that it is proper to speak of inbred sin as a state or condition rather than as an act, because it does not require the action of the will in order to exist. It is an inward propensity, an inner tendency toward evil which is present and felt even when the will is set against it. Constantly it is clamouring for the consent of the will, and when such consent is given, an act of sin is committed involving guilt. This we call *actual* or *personal sin*. But in the case of the Christian, the will is definitely opposed to this body of sin; yet it remains just the same. Its motions are felt and struggled against, a source of constant grief. It is sinful in character because it is contrary to the nature of God. It is a logical distinction, then, to recognise the difference between inbred sins as a tendency or state and personal sin as an act.

---

<sup>953</sup> Taylor, R S (1997) The Right Conception of Sin. USA: Nazarene Publishing House, pp. 22,30-31

The result of Adam's sin and separation from the presence of God was a depraved or degenerate moral nature. Losing its health and perfection, his nature became diseased and warped and out of line. Inevitably, man's mind and body were greatly impaired because of this spiritual depravity and his continued sinning, so that he became subject to countless mistakes of judgment, deficiencies of knowledge, lapses of memory, faulty reasoning and perceptive faculties, physical deformities, abnormalities and peculiarities of temperament, disease, pain and decay. But since none of these infirmities have a moral quality in them, they must not be considered a part of the Adamic depraved moral nature, or inbred sin. For instance, there are no moral implications in a lapse of memory; there need be nothing about it contrary to perfect love, or sinful in any way. On the contrary, an uncontrollable temper is decidedly a moral problem, as it breeds hate, precipitates murder, and promotes all sorts of ugliness and misery.<sup>954</sup>

### **5.3.5 The Effects of Sin after Regeneration**

A believer's initial salvation is conditioned on a faith that is rooted in repentance. Repentance is man's work. Every man has the ability to repent. God will not repent for man. This is seen in the words of Acts 17:30: "*God now commandeth all men everywhere to repent.*" Thus, with the necessity of repentance comes personal responsibility. Ability brings accountability. It may be granted that a painful process of outward repentance, involving restitution and detailed confession, is not always necessary, partly because it is not always possible (as with the thief on the cross) and partly because such a process constitutes the outward expression of repentance, not the inward essence.

The inward essence is a heart attitude of turning from sin, of renunciation, of yielding to the claims of Christ's righteousness, of a hunger after God that is willing to pay any price. The outward expression of repentance may be carried on not only for some time before conversion, but, as with those who have much restitution to make and lingering habits to break, even after conversion; however, without the inward attitude of repentance, true conversion is impossible and any professed faith is counterfeit.

Sorrow for sin may not be in the forefront of the sinner's consciousness at all. But the decision to turn from sin to Christ with all his heart is. And any inward reserve, any secret clinging to evil, any remaining unwillingness to conform to the demands of righteousness,

---

<sup>954</sup> Taylor, R S (1997) *The Right Conception of Sin*. USA: Nazarene Publishing House, pp. 47-48



any troublesome rebellion lurking on the edge of his consciousness, any accusing sense of playing unfair with God, will suffocate his faith and deadlock conversion with God. As far as the time element is concerned, a man may turn to Christ in true faith and be born again in a split second, but neither in a second nor in an hour nor in a year can he be born again with an impenitent heart and unyielding will. In such a state, he is incapable of believing unto salvation. Salvation is conditioned on a faith that is rooted in repentance.

Sin will cause one to lose eternal life; it will allow Satan a foothold in one's life to steal, destroy and kill (John 10:10), bringing spiritual and physical death upon a person. Sin is always killing, damning and separating.

*Whosoever hateth his brother is a murderer: and ye know that no murderer hath eternal life abiding in him.*

*John 3:15*

Note the word *abiding* above, for it is significant. The verse does not say that the murdered never had eternal life, but that he does not have it abiding, thus indicating that he had it at some previous time. If none who are saved ever lose their eternal life, then it falls upon those who support the theory to prove that none saved ever afterward become murderers. This they cannot do. David was a saved man before his sin; for in his great confessional prayer he did not say "give me" but "restore unto me the joy of salvation". But after once knowing that joy and after having had it said of him that he was a man after God's own heart, David became both a murderer and an adulterer. While in the throes of that guilt, did he possess eternal life? Not if 1 John 3:15 is correct. What is more, if we carefully read the 51st Psalm, one is certainly not given the impression that David considered himself a saved sinner; rather is it the cry of a lost soul. There is no keener, more vivid portrayal in the Scriptures of the certain fatality of sin.

Many will learn, that "the soul that sinneth, it shall die", and it matters not what dispensation that soul may be living under, grace or law. That is as eternal as the holiness and justice of God.<sup>955</sup>

---

<sup>955</sup> Taylor, R S (1997) The Right Conception of Sin. USA: Nazarene Publishing House, pp. 35-36, 41-42

*<sup>21</sup> Not everyone who says to Me, Lord, Lord, will enter the kingdom of heaven, but he who does the will of My Father Who is in heaven. <sup>22</sup> Many will say to Me on that day, Lord, Lord, have we not prophesied in Your name and driven out demons in Your name and done many mighty works in Your name? <sup>23</sup> And then I will say to them openly (publicly), I never knew you; depart from Me, you who act wickedly [disregarding My commands].*

*Matthew 7:21-23*

In the Sermon on the Mount, Jesus tells the believers that at the second coming, there will be some people who will fully expect to ascend to heaven with Him in the clouds of glory, but He will have to tell them, “depart from Me, I never knew you”, because they disregarded His commands to love God and love one another.

#### CASE STUDY

Simon himself believed and when he was baptized, he continued with Philip, and wondered, beholding the miracles and signs which were done (Acts 8:13). Acts 8:18-23 states <sup>18</sup>*And when Simon saw that through laying on of the apostles' hands the Holy Ghost was given, he offered them money, <sup>19</sup> Saying, Give me also this power, that on whomsoever I lay hands, he may receive the Holy Ghost. <sup>20</sup> But Peter said unto him, Thy money perish with thee, because thou hast thought that the gift of God may be purchased with money. <sup>21</sup> Thou hast neither part nor lot in this matter: for thy heart is not right in the sight of God. <sup>22</sup> Repent therefore of this thy wickedness, and pray God, if perhaps the thought of thine heart may be forgiven thee. <sup>23</sup> For I perceive that thou art in the gall of bitterness, and in the bond of iniquity.* According to Paul, Simon would have perished with his money. His heart wasn't right in the sight of God, AND, he had NOT been forgiven yet, for Paul would not have told him to ask for forgiveness. And the fact that he was in the bond of iniquity, indicates that he was enslaved to sin. (See 2 Peter 2:20)

Mary K Baxter was taken by the Lord to heaven and hell, describing and explaining what happens in both these locations. When visiting the hell the Lord showed her many parts of hell. She describes the following parts (related to the topic discussed) in her book *A Divine Revelation of Hell*. This is where people went who thought they were going to heaven but end up in hell instead<sup>956</sup>.

- In the place called Outer Darkness is constant weeping and gnashing of teeth (Matthew 13:41-42), utter hopelessness. In this place is where the servants of the Lord are that loved the world more than the Lord, servants that would not stand for the truth and for holiness.

---

<sup>956</sup> Baxter, M K (1997) *A Divine Revelation of Hell*. New Kensington: Whitaker House, pp. 120, 195

- There is a part in hell where the Lord's people went that did not love the sinner. The Lord teaches that the believer should hate the sin but love the sinner with a fervent love, help the helpless, give to those in need without any thought of getting anything in return. By this love shall all men know that the believer is a true disciple of Jesus.

### **5.3.6 The Consequences of Sin**

The Bible labels those who choose to indulge in sin as being

*darkened in their understanding and separated from the life of God because of the ignorance that is in them due to the hardening of their hearts. Having lost all sensitivity, they have given themselves over to sensuality so as to indulge in every kind of impurity, with a continual lust for more.*

*Ephesians 4:18-19*

One of the consequences of sin, therefore, is more sin. There's an unquenchable lust for more, once someone started sinning, attended by a dulling of the conscience and a blindness to spiritual truth (1 Corinthians 2:14). The consequence of suppressing the truth is that God gives the sinner over to their sinful desires of heart, shameful lusts and a depraved mind (Romans 1:24, 26, 28). This means that God may allow the sinner to serve as his own god and to reap the destruction of his body and soul. It is a fearful thing to be given over to one's own destructive ways (Psalm 38:1-5, 9, 17-18).

Professor Dr Connie Brand agrees that sin does not have a point of satisfaction. Sin is always accumulative. Peace only comes when one walks in the fullness of the truth according to the Word of God. Sin always brings uproar and chaos. The stronger the hold of the sin when it has advanced in stages of accumulation, the harder it is to break the sin in one's life. The hold will become stronger and stronger to the point that God gives the person over to the sin, closing his ears and eyes to the sin up to the point that the sin is now an irreversible problem in the person's life, one that does not bother him through his conscience even to a point where he no longer regards it as a sin.

With the first application of a sin (even through thought), a spirit of seduction enters the person which results in the searing of the consciousness of the heart. From this point, it is impossible for the sinner to discern between fact and fantasy, meaning the person would

enter the domain of delusion. A spirit of deception now enters, resulting in a grey area, an inability to know the difference between right and wrong and thus the road to addiction to the sin starts. The tragic element of sin is that it leads to the lack of relationship between man and his Creator (Trinity God) because of the fact of the conscious as described in *Chapter 3*

2.4.3.2 *The Seared Conscious*.<sup>957</sup>

Dr Lester Sumrall, in his book *Demons, the Answer Book*, explains that Satan torments man a little at a time, step by step, increasing his hold on man, unnoticeable at first. He uses the following progression (the order might differ from person to person) in his evil workings<sup>958</sup>:

- *Regression*. A battle against a person's God-given abilities of release and expression. To regress in the human personality is to go backward in spiritual force and power. Man is built for progress, advancement and understanding. When this goes into reverse it is the first warning that something is wrong.
- *Repression*. God desires exuberant expression from the believer. He wants his eyes to talk and his face to light up. He made mankind to express something. It is a bad sign when a person becomes silent and his eyes gaze in a fixed stare. It is a sign of bondage. To repress a person is to destroy the natural expression God gave him at birth.
- *Suppression*. To suppress is to abnormally squeeze down, to crush, to conceal, as to suppress information. It represents another step toward deterioration of emotions and the destruction of complete personal happiness. Suppression comes from without. Suppressed people are not energetic or enthusiastic about anything; they become listless and inactive or passive.
- *Depression*. A person is pressed down until his spirit is crushed. A process of sinking. The devil takes advantage of those people and moves in with conflict and confusion that will destroy their happiness, homes, businesses and maybe even their lives through suicide. Traditions can contribute to depression. Depression can bring about an abnormal state of inactivity.
- *Oppression*. To oppress someone is to weigh him down with something he is not able to carry. The Israelites were oppressed in Egypt. They were treated cruelly, beaten

---

<sup>957</sup> Personal Interview with Professor Dr Connie Brand, 4 November 2014

<sup>958</sup> Sumrall, L (1979) *Demons, The Answer Book*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers, p. 75-96

unmercifully and crushed down until they could carry their burdens no longer. Millions of people are oppressed by fear; some worry about going out of their minds; some are trampled through disaster and woes; some are hurt from all sides until they feel helpless. All believers are a target for Satan to oppose, hinder, hurt and destroy. From outside of a person these powers can draw very near to inject their temptation into the minds of the believer, to tamper with his emotions, to soften and condition his will, and to assault his body. These demonic oppressions vary in degrees and can be so intense and so great, that a believer almost despair of standing.<sup>959</sup>

- **Obsession.** Obsession is the act of an evil spirit in besetting a person or impelling him to unreasonable action. It destroys the human personality and changes the mind. Black becomes white and white seems black. A straight thing is now crooked and the lie becomes truth. It is a persistent and inescapable preoccupation with an idea or emotion. This preoccupation usually has no relationship with reality. Obsession can come through believing a lie, through jealousy, hatred or sins. An obsessed person eventually has no willpower, no strength to resist and becomes a slave. A believer who has of his own will developed overt curiosity about the occult, or in other ways has habitually given ground to Satan, may find himself demonically obsessed. It is obsessive in nature. A more intense level of demonic attack can however exist not caused by sin or ground-giving on the part of the believer causing the obsessive nature (see 2 Corinthians 12:7-10)<sup>960</sup>.
- **Possession.** A demon possessed person is under the absolute, total, complete jurisdiction of the devil. At this point, he has no mind of his own. Satan is now the master of all that person's thinking and doing, fully controlling that person's life. The person is helpless. Demon possession can sometimes reveal itself in forms of insanity, both temporary and complete.

Spirit-filled, re-born believers can be found in all of the exceeding stages except for being possessed. A believer can be oppressed, even in few cases obsessed, but no Holy-Spirit-filled believer can be possessed by a demon as the Holy Spirit is already in control of the vessel.

Sin separates on three levels: (1) separation from God, His Word and His love; (2) separation from oneself – many people do not like themselves, struggling with self-hatred,

---

<sup>959</sup> Bubeck, M I (1975) *The Adversary*. USA: The Moody Bible Institute of Chicago, p. 83

<sup>960</sup> *Ibid.*, pp. 83-85

lack of self-esteem, and guilt; and (3) separation from others – unforgiveness and bitterness towards others contribute to separation.

Sin gives legal right to Satan to bring destruction into a person's life. Legal right always involves human will (active or passive), words (deliberate or accidental), invitations (active or passive), agreements and/or covenants (known or unknown), choices (active or passive), violations of humanity (self or others), and woundedness (unrecognised or hidden).<sup>961</sup>

There are four judgements of God as consequences to sin: (1) physical and spiritual famine (Ezekiel 4:13); (2) ecological devastation on man and his environment/land (Ezekiel 4:15); (3) war resulting from anger, jealousy, competitiveness, division and strife (Ezekiel 14:17); and (4) disease including sorrow and mental, emotional and/or spiritual illness (Ezekiel 14:19-20).<sup>962</sup>

Ultimately, sin defiles time, land, things and people. To defile something is to make it unclean, as whatever is defiled is unholy, dirty, bad and unfit.

In the following sections of this chapter (*1.4 Sin Associated with mental Illness*) specific sins and their consequences will be discussed in detail.

### **5.3.7 Sin and Responsibility**

Some Christian writers and counsellors assume that mental disorders result mostly from personal sin and that counselling involves urging people to confess their sins and change their behaviour. This simplistic and naive viewpoint fails to appreciate both the complexity of mental disorders and the deeply penetrating influence of sin. Sin should be viewed from two perspectives: conscious deliberate sins that individuals commit, and the innate sinfulness that is part of human nature. In a similar way, responsibility can be viewed from two perspectives: either the person himself is responsible, or somebody else is responsible. When a person is mentally ill, therefore, the problem may come from one's sinful acts or one's sinful nature; the ultimate responsibility for the problem may come from the counselee or from another person.<sup>963</sup>

---

<sup>961</sup> Buys, A, Understanding Neshamah. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished, p. 7

<sup>962</sup> Buys, A, Breaking Generational Curses over Cities and their People. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished, pp. 18-19

<sup>963</sup> Collin, G R (1988) Christian Counselling. Vancouver: Word Publishing, p. 475

## **5.4. POSSIBLE SIN ASSOCIATED WITH MENTAL ILLNESS**

### **5.4.1 Idolatry**

*For you shall worship no other god; for the Lord, Whose name is Jealous, is a jealous (impassioned) God*

*Exodus 34:14*

*You believe that God is one; you do well. So do the demons believe and shudder [in terror and horror such as make a man's hair stand on end and contract the surface of his skin]!*

*James 2:19*

Idolatry is the worship of anything that usurps the rightful place of Trinity God.<sup>964</sup> Anything can be idolized, but behind the physical thing worshiped exists the true object of adoration—demons. Modern idolatry can be manifested in one of three ways: (1) classical idolatry (honouring images or created objects as divinity); (2) human idolatry (excessive admiration for another person or thing); and (3) occult idolatry (worshiping a spirit other than God, such as one's self, demons or Satan). Idolatry, in any form, is socially destructive.<sup>965</sup>

Idolatry, as in the most ancient times, produces its same foul brood: violence and bloodshed; illicit traffic in the spirit-realm and in every kind of occult art; fornication and every form of uncleanness; dishonesty and every type of deception. Utterly deceived and despoiled by demon power, men will be so blinded and beguiled as to believe "the lie" (2 Thessalonians 2: 11), Satan's lie, and will accept his false Christ, the usurper of the earth, instead of the true Christ, the rightful Possessor (Revelations 5:1-10).<sup>966</sup>

Idolatry in general is the sin where the flesh is rebelling against worshiping only the true and living God. Idolatry takes place when someone physically or mentally puts anything before God. Pleasure, money, things, work, even families may become gods. This fleshly sin springs from one's desire to choose the god that pleases his flesh rather than bowing before the true and living God.<sup>967</sup> Stubbornness not only complements idolatry but is also a form of

---

<sup>964</sup> Kitchen Y and Triplett D (2000) Jezebel's Murder. A Fruitful Vine Publication, p. 7

<sup>965</sup> Horn, T R (1998) Spiritual Warfare, the Invisible Invasion. Louisiana: Huntington House Publishers, p. 89

<sup>966</sup> Unger, MF (1994) Biblical Demonology. Grand Rapids: Kregal Publications, p. 210

<sup>967</sup> Bubeck, M I (1975) The Adversary. USA: The Moody Press, p. 30

idolatry (1 Samuel 15 23). The stubborn person makes idols out of his own opinions.<sup>968</sup> No wonder the Bible strongly instructs the believer to flee from idolatry (1 Corinthians 10:14).

Blindness and deafness and dumbness are consequences of idolatry. Idolatry leads to unbelief and to deaf and dumb spirits to control the person.<sup>969</sup> This applies to bloodline idolatry or personal idolatry. Another demonic entity that gains entry is Belial (2 Corinthians 6:15). Belial means *worthless* or *hopeless ruin*. He is the personification of worthlessness, hopeless ruin and the source of all idolatry and religion which is also hopeless or futile.<sup>970</sup>

*See Chapter 4.13.4 Belial*

#### **5.4.1.1 Self-Idolatry**

According to the teachings of the Bible, self is responsible for all sin. Throughout the Bible, it is clear that self is the outstanding problem in human life. How well Satan knows the human weakness! There is no method that he more frequently uses in order to try to mar God's work in the Church today and spoil the testimony of Christ, than just to play on the problem of the self as it is present in every person. The ways in which he does so are almost endless. He works on self in order to encourage pride.<sup>971</sup>

Self-idolatry states that "I must be in control. I must rule. I am the one of supreme importance." Self-idolatry idolises the person himself.

Self-idolatry is like a wild colt. It doesn't have a harness. It does what it wants and when it wants. God, however, wouldn't to break the wild colt within man. He wants to put His harness on an individual. This can only happen when a person declares: "no longer my will, but God's will". This, however, is prevented by pride, stubbornness and disobedience. This runs with a spirit of independence.<sup>972</sup>

---

<sup>968</sup> Prince, D (2006) *Lucifer Exposed*. UK: Derek Prince Ministries, p. 85

<sup>969</sup> His Kingdom Prophecy, Overcoming the Deaf and Dumb Spirits [Online] Available from: <http://www.hiskingdomprophecy.com/overcoming-deaf-dumb-spirits/> [Accessed: 1 November 2014]

<sup>970</sup> Schmoyer, J, *Spiritual Warfare Handbook*. Doylestown: Main St. Baptist Church. Unpublished, p. 8

<sup>971</sup> Lloyd-Jones, D (2003) *The Christian Warfare*. Michigan: Baker Books, pp. 332-334

<sup>972</sup> Kitchen Y and Triplett D (2000) *Jezebel's Murder*. A Fruitful Vine Publication, p. 57



#### **5.4.1.2 Moon Worship**

Worship of the moon brings curses of insanity or lunacy. The fertility cult practitioners are moon worshippers. There are rituals and practices associated with the different cycles of the moon, including rituals done at new moon, full moon and all shape-shifting.<sup>973</sup>

#### **5.4.1.3 Baal Worship**

Baal/Bull Worship is accompanied by with horrific consequences. Baal was the principal deity of the land for the Druids. It was he who was in charge of the rain and the weather, and man's survival was dependent upon Baal's provision. Baal ceremonies often included human sacrifice and temple prostitution. *Baal* means husband or lord. Unlike the Godly concept, he represents the totality of a broken covenant. He has cruel weapons such as a lightning bolt, bull's horns to gore, verbal cruelty, verbal intimidation, mental cruelty and mental torture. Nazism, Hinduism and Buddhism are all based on Baal bull worship.

Bull worship/phallic worship can take a person into torment of the mind, sexual torment, obsessions, and torment of burning lusts. Baal, bull worship, in the family line takes a person through open doors to homicide, suddenly, and without warning. The foundation of Baal worship is incest.<sup>974</sup>

#### **5.4.2 Witchcraft and Sorcery**

Sorcery is the act of controlling people, often through false signs, wonders and miracles (divination). A sorcerer is characterised by various lusts of spiritual power and money. Every addict, Freemason, Jezebelic women and false prophet is seduced or bound by sorcery. Jezebelic women behave like Jezebel. They have an insatiable lust for political, economic, religious and sexual power. They rely on seduction, witchcraft and murder to attain power and authority, whether in a marriage, family or church.

---

<sup>973</sup> Buys, A, How Fertility Cults devour our Blessings. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished, p. 77

<sup>974</sup> Ibid. p. 21-22, 25

A spirit of sorcery always prevents the gifting of the Holy Spirit and use financial aid or contribution as bait. Finances are the lure by which sorcerers grasp religious power. Jezebel operates with sorcery.<sup>975</sup>

Baal is also called Bel or Saturn. Saturn (Horus/Kronus) is considered the god of time. Saturn is Satan, the tempter or tester. He is also called the "Lord of Death". Human sacrifices were offered to him. He is represented by a goat's head. Saturn was also known as the god Set, the Egyptian god of evil. He is also seen as 'god the father'. Saturn is also supposed to be called Nimrod.<sup>976</sup>

See Chapter 4 - 4.7. SORCERY

### 5.4.3 Rebellion

*For rebellion is as the sin of witchcraft, and stubbornness is as idolatry and teraphim (household good luck images). Because you have rejected the word of the Lord, He also has rejected you from being king.*

*1 Samuel 15 23*

Rebellion is an intentional, wilful, deliberate going over the line, a willingness to risk the consequences of sin. It is the pleasures of sin far exceeding the price of sin, so one chooses wilfully to cross over the line and let God do what is necessary.<sup>977</sup>

The words "*to rebel, rebellion and rebellious*" are defined by the following phrases: be contentious, make angry, contend with, dispute with, stubborn-headed, opposition to someone motivated by pride, stubborn and rebellious, speech and actions against the Lord, rebellious attitude against God, disobedience, acts of defying the command of God, rebellious and defiled, listening to no voice, accepting no correction, making bitter, provoking, rejecting, not recognising, rebellious and stiff-necked, double rebellion and rebellious house. *Rebellion* can also be defined as to revolt, overthrow, mutiny, breakup, destruction, spasm, convulsion, resistance, interference, friction, withstand, repulse and disobedient. *Rebellious* can be further defined as revolutionary, defiance, aggressiveness, dare and scorn. All rebellion is against God. For example, when a wife rebels against her

---

<sup>975</sup> Kitchen Y and Triplett D (2000) Jezebel's Murder. A Fruitful Vine Publication, pp. 8-9

<sup>976</sup> Brand, C, Sexual Brokenness and Deviation Part 2. Pretoria: RÂDÂH. Unpublished, pp. 57-59

<sup>977</sup> Burk, A, Spiritual Warfare, CD 6, Track 1

husband, she is not only rebelling against him, but against God who put the husband in authority over the wife.<sup>978</sup>

According to Professor Dr Connie Brand, there are five mind-binding spirits that accompany rejection and rebellion<sup>979</sup>:

1. *Spirit of Escapism*. Runaway spirit with the names of Kisimi and Hermes. These people show serious symptoms of carelessness, passivity, alcohol and drug abuse, watching TV, sleepiness, escape into sexual fantasies. (See Chapter 3 – 3.11.3 *Escapism*)
2. *Spirit of Withdrawal*. A person sulks, day dreams, fantasizes, pretends all the time and lives in unreality.
3. *Spirit of Control*. The spirits of Lilith (See Chapter 4 – 4.7.5.1 *Lilith*) and Leviathan operate here. A person manipulates, dominates and is very possessive. He also exercises witchcraft.
4. *Spirit of Retaliation*. A person demonstrates hatred, destruction, sadism, spitefulness, wounding and cruelty.
5. *Spirit of Fear*. (See Chapter 4 – 4.13.7 *Spirit of Fear*)

A person that is bound by rejection and rebellion exhibits a definite spirit of fear. The effect of these mind-binding spirits on a person includes among other phobias, hysteria, fear of authority (this is a lying spirit and a spirit of deception), fright-tremble-dread, fear of death, worries, depression, feels unable in doing anything, nightmares, frequently overreacts, torment (torture), anxiety, stress, agitation and various types of nervous conditions: Neurosis (affects the nervous system), nervous breakdowns, Neuralgia (acute pain in the nerve ends) or Neuritis (inflammation of the nerves).

#### 5.4.4 Obedience/Disobedience

*Samuel said, Has the Lord as great a delight in burnt offerings and sacrifices as in obeying the voice of the Lord? Behold, to obey is better than sacrifice, and to hearken than the fat of rams.*

*1 Samuel 15:22*

---

<sup>978</sup> Demon Buster, Rebellion [Online] Available from: <http://www.demonbuster.com/rebell.html> [Accessed: 26 September 2014]

<sup>979</sup> Brand, C. (1998) Verwerping: Genesing van Kneusings en Wonde. Pretoria: RÂDÂH. Unpublished, p. 5

One time when Samuel the prophet was correcting Saul for not doing what he had been instructed to do, Saul's reply was, "I thought". He then proceeded to express his idea of how he *thought* things should have been done (1 Samuel 10:6-8; 13:8-14). Samuel's answer to King Saul was that God desires obedience, not sacrifice. Often, man doesn't want to do what God asks, so he attempts to do something to compensate for his disobedience.

Without obedience, there is no proper respect and reverence. The rebellion shown by many children today is caused by a lack of proper respect and reverence for their parents. This is usually the fault of the parents because they have not lived in front of their children a life that would evoke respect and reverence.

*All has been heard; the end of the matter is: Fear God [revere and worship Him, knowing that He is] and keep His commandments, for this is the whole of man [the full, original purpose of his creation, the object of God's providence, the root of character, the foundation of all happiness, the adjustment to all inharmonious circumstances and conditions under the sun] and the whole [duty] for every man.*

*Ecclesiastes 12:13*

The whole purpose of man's creation is that he reveres and worships God by obeying Him. All godly character must be rooted in obedience — it is the foundation of all happiness. No one can ever be truly happy without being obedient to God. Anything in a person's life that is out of order will be brought into adjustment by obedience. Obedience is the whole duty of man. A person's choice to obey or not to obey not only affects himself but multitudes of others as well. His decision to obey God affects other people, and when he decides to disobey God, that also affects others.

The decision to obey or disobey starts in the mind.

*15 But if you will not obey the voice of the Lord your God, being watchful to do all His commandments and His statutes which I command you this day, then all these curses shall come upon you and overtake you. 28 The Lord will smite you with madness and blindness and dismay of [mind and] heart.*

*Deuteronomy 28:15, 28*

This is a curse from the Lord when a person is disobedient to his voice and Word, resulting

in emotional instability. Notice the Scripture above says the Lord will smite with madness. To be smitten with madness means in essence insanity, craziness, foolishness, senseless behaviour and flakiness. He also uses the term blindness. This blindness releases confusion, indecision, and wonderment. To take it even further, God follows that with dismay of mind and heart meaning a trembling, unsettled, and fearful mind and heart.

Under this curse one is easily overcome by emotions and fear, as these trigger a person to make foolish decisions and do crazy self-destructive things. In this condition a person has a continual inner struggle, internal warfare, and frustration. Confusion and depression are two key indicators of this family curse, a curse which teaches why some are double-minded and have problems ordering their lives in alignment with the Word of God and renewing their minds.

#### **5.4.5 Anger**

*When angry, do not sin; do not ever let your wrath (your exasperation, your fury or indignation) last until the sun goes down.*

*Ephesians 4:26*

Anger is an emotional state, experienced by everyone, but impossible to define precisely. It occurs in varying degrees of intensity, from mild annoyance or aggravation to violent rage. It begins in infancy and continues to the later years. It may be hidden and contained inside or expressed openly and freely. It can be of short duration, coming and going quickly, or it may persist for decades in the form of bitterness, resentment or hatred. Anger may be destructive, especially when it persists in the form of aggression or revenge, but it can also be constructive if it motivates us to correct injustice or to think creatively. Anger is aroused when one feels threatened, demeaned or blocked in progress toward some desired goal. Anger can be kept hidden behind a calm and smiling facade, or buried someplace in the recesses of our brains. Regardless, it always involves a physiological arousal that the angry person may not recognise consciously.

Anger, openly displayed, deliberately hidden from others, or unconsciously expressed, is at the root of many psychological, interpersonal, physical, and spiritual problems. Along with hostility, anger has been called the chief saboteur of the mind and the leading cause of misery, depression, inefficiency, sickness, accidents, loss of work time and financial loss in

industry. No matter what the problem (marital conflict, alcoholism, a wife's frigidity, a child's defiance, nervous or physical disease) elimination of hostility is a key factor in its solution.

Divine wrath and human anger are mentioned repeatedly in the Bible. In the Old Testament alone there are almost six hundred references to wrath or anger, continuing on throughout the New Testament. Anger is an attribute of God and a common, probably universal, experience of human beings. In the Bible, God's anger, fury, and wrath are mentioned more frequently than His love and tenderness. Since anger is a part of God's nature, the conclusion is drawn that anger, in itself, is not bad. God is completely good and holy, therefore divine wrath is also good. Divine anger is vigorous, intense, controlled, and consistent with God's love and mercy. It is anger directed both at sin and at people who are sinners. Repeatedly God was angry with the unfaithful Israelites, and Jesus (whose wrath is clearly seen in Mark 3) was angry at the stubborn hearts of the religious leaders in his day.

The Bible never criticizes the anger of God, but it warns against human anger repeatedly. This is not a double standard. Anger against injustice is right and good in both God and human beings. Because God is wise, sovereign, powerful, perfect, and all-knowing, he never misinterprets a situation, never feels threatened, never loses control, and is always angered by sin and injustice. In contrast, humans misinterpret circumstances, make mistakes in judgment, react quickly when feeling threatened or hurt, and sometimes respond with vengeance and vindictiveness. As a result, human anger can be harmful and dangerous. The Bible cautions the believer about this because human anger can provide an opportunity for Satan to get a foothold that creates further problems. When one is angry do not sin, cautions Ephesians 4:26. Do not let the sun go down while you are still angry. The Bible also teaches that there is value in expressing anger if this will lead another person to repent and change for the better (Proverbs 15:28).

Human anger often leads to sin. Like other emotions, anger can be constructive (serving a useful purpose) or destructive. It can be Christ-honouring or it can be sinful. Sinful anger can be expressed in a variety of ways including vengeance (bitterness, hatred, revenge, and an attitude of judgment), verbal abuse, dishonest sharing, and even a refusal (deny, ignore, distort) to admit that one is angry. Human anger can be controlled. It is unlikely that God would have instructed man to control anger if human anger control is impossible. Anger must be acknowledged (at least to oneself) before one can put away bitterness, wrath, anger, and malice. Outbursts must be restrained. The man or woman of God thinks before acting. There must be a quiet weighing of issues instead of a gushing forth of sinful verbal explosions.

Ruminating and revenge must be resisted. It might be assumed that when Jesus was persecuted He had every right to become angry. Nevertheless, when they hurled their insults at Him, He did not retaliate; when He suffered, He made no threats. Instead, He entrusted Himself to Him who judges justly (1 Peter 2:23). People who are angry often enjoy ruminating on their difficulties, thinking vengeful thoughts and pondering ways to get even. This tendency must be resisted and replaced with an attitude of entrusting oneself and one's circumstances to God.

Anger influences people in four basic ways: it can be repressed (refuse to admit its presence), suppressed (deliberately hiding it from others), expressed (in either destructive or harmless ways), or confessed (to God and to others). Perhaps another way to summarise the effects of anger is to suggest that one can hold back and withdraw from an anger-producing situation, turn his feelings inward where others cannot see them, act out by attacking the source of anger or some substitute, or face and deal directly with the causes of the anger. These four approaches overlap and each of us may shift from one to another, depending on our inclinations, on our perceptions, and on the situation.<sup>980</sup>

There is nothing that generates anger more among believers than something that is said. The trigger that fires this kind of anger, as described in Ephesians 4:26-27, is what Paul calls *unwholesome words*:

*Let no foul or polluting language, nor evil word nor unwholesome or worthless talk [ever] come out of your mouth, but only such [speech] as is good and beneficial to the spiritual progress of others, as is fitting to the need and the occasion, that it may be a blessing and give grace (God's favor) to those who hear it.*

*Ephesians 4:29*

This trigger – unwholesome words – is so subtle and so well-disguised that it amounts to a state-of-the-art scheme. In many ways, we have come to believe that words are of little consequence. We may say ‘talk is cheap’ but every major relational tragedy is set in motion by unwholesome words. Words trigger chains of events that eventually destroy the effectiveness of our stand against Satan.

An unwholesome word is that which tears down rather than build up truth without grace. It is telling the truth devoid of edification according to the need of the moment (Ephesians 4:29).

---

<sup>980</sup> Collin, G R (1988) Christian Counselling. Vancouver: Word Publishing, pp.120-127

To do so is crueller than choosing not to meet the need at hand. It is making sure that the need is highlighted by the raw edge of truth and then made more painfully evident by withholding the grace needed to meet such need. The object is clear: to tear down. In so doing, we become *Exhibit A* for the accuser of the brethren (see Revelation 12:10).

We are more easily offended by the truth than by lies. If someone says something false about us, it hurts us, but somehow we are able to sleep in peace because we know, deep down, that there is no substance to it. However, when someone says something critical that we know is true – partially or totally true – it makes us angry and robs us of our sleep. We feel judged and condemned because somebody has voiced something that, while perhaps true, but was spoken without grace. It may be something with which we desperately need to deal, a weak point where we need to change, something we have continually tried to suppress in light of our inability to correct it. But telling the naked truth without grace is tantamount to passing judgment.

Truth without grace is devastating. For instance, if you remove God's grace from someone's life, all that is left is a wretched sinner. Nobody wants to face that kind of naked truth. Likewise, truth without grace can be enslaving. For instance, in Matthew 18:18 we are told in a context of broken relationships: *whatever you shall bind on earth shall be bound in heaven, and whatever you loose on earth shall be loosed in heaven*. The context refers to two people who have had a disagreement. Jesus instructs the one who seems to be in the right to seek the other party out for the purpose of effecting reconciliation. If he is not successful he is instructed to take two witnesses and repeat the procedure. If that fails, he should engage the church. If the offending party does not hear the church's admonition he should be considered a Gentile and a tax collector.

Matthew 18:15-20 is a favourite passage for dealing with broken relationships in the church. Unfortunately, it seems that every time people choose to follow the procedures outlined in Matthew 18, rather than fixing the relationship, they make it worse because they fail to incorporate grace to the truth under discussion. When someone has done a wrong to us we go to that person with a certain degree of anger and confront him with the truth.

Truth always has two sides. The greater the truth, the farther apart those sides are. When it comes to the truth itself, no single person on earth can claim a corner on its understanding. However, so many times self-appointed proponents and guardians of that truth claim the right to its full understanding. This is tantamount to considering themselves greater than the



truth itself and positioning themselves over the truth to 'instruct' others who, in their estimation, lack the *complete* understanding that they ascribe to themselves. No wonder the Bible warns us that knowledge puffs up (1 Corinthians 8:1).<sup>981</sup>

#### CASE STUDY

There was a boy who got along with everyone, except during a temper tantrum. Periodically, without apparent provocation, he would fly into a furious rage that looked like a seizure. After it was over, the boy would cry and apologise, saying he couldn't help himself. The cause for these outbursts was found to be bananas. When the boy ate a banana, his brain chemistry reacted in a way that produced rage and aggression. When bananas were eliminated from his diet, the angry outbursts stopped.<sup>982</sup>

#### CASE STUDY

Anger and Abuse towards Parents: A woman was rejected by her father. He was very stern with her. He did not want her because he wanted a son. He himself was abused by his military-trained father. She in turn was very strict with her daughter whom she had: her father had to hold the little girl when she spanked her, or she locked her in the closet for long periods. The daughter then cursed the mom and said "I wish you would die". The repercussions of this spirit of death spoken over her mom caused her mom's psychological death through depression; that for two years she could hardly walk; she could not walk to the bathroom. The daughter in turn went into spiritual death. On high school she was raped by a minister. The curse therefore was twofold. A curse is a boomerang. It is something throws out and it will always come back. For ten or more years she had no understanding of God, He did not exist for her.

Anger can be rooted in helplessness (being vulnerable). The more helpless (vulnerable) a person is the more intense the anger that he experiences. Loneliness and rejection can fuel anger. Frustration in not being able to fulfil one's birthright can fuel anger. If someone is undermined, this can fuel anger. To be deprived of your birthright in all its aspects can fuel anger. *All of the preceding is always revealed in anger.*

Extreme antagonism is seated in the vile seed of hopelessness and worthlessness. Instead of the person then being immersed in the living waters of Jesus Christ, he becomes immersed in the most evil pain and destruction, wrongfully trying to get relief. And this in turn can cause someone to rape: he must wreak himself (his pain) onto somebody else – someone innocent preferably. This rape can be physical or verbal of nature. The ultimate goal will be to 'rape' God. The angry person gets into the image of Satan and by doing that, the person gets into Satan's mind-set, wanting to destroy God – he wants to 'rape' God from innocence, from beauty and from love. Insanity in this instance is where God will say: 'No

---

<sup>981</sup> Silvano, E (1994) *That None Should Perish*. California: Regal Books.

<sup>982</sup> Ibid., p.124

more! I will close your eyes, he will see but not see, he will hear but not hear'. Then God closes that person up and it drives him insane.<sup>983</sup>

#### **5.4.6 Jealousy**

*For wherever there is jealousy (envy) and contention (rivalry and selfish-ambitioned vile practices), there will also be confusion (unrest, disharmony, rebellion) and all sorts of evil.*

*James 3:16*

The spirit of jealousy is one of the most deceptive demonic forces. Jealousy is very prominent among African people. Individuals are jealous over each other as well as families and tribes. If they see another individual/family/tribe prospering, they will consult witch-doctors to place curses on them in an attempt to stop them from progressing and prospering. Jealousy is extremely powerful; it can kill and destroy. Believers can also be jealous of one another and this can be just as dangerous if this believer goes to a witch-doctor to curse his brother or sister, family or tribe.<sup>984</sup>

The danger of a spirit of jealousy is that the jealousy not only influences the host (the person with the spirit of jealousy) but the projections of the jealousy can be very destructive in other people's (innocent or not) lives. By being jealous, the host partners with Satan and is then being used by Satan as a conduit for the jealousy Satan has towards God and the worship God receives, as well as his hatred towards the believer. This creates a severe destructive force in the life of the person the jealousy is reflected against, and can cause countless calamities such as heart attacks and damage in the projected person's life. If the host is a believer, the alliance is stronger than what it should have been if the host is a non-believer. The level of damage is also dependent on any alliance the spirit of jealousy can build.

There are five primary demonic strongholds that seem to partner effectively with, or establish an unholy alliance with, jealousy. These strongholds can be evident in the host or the projected person. Those unholy alliances need to be dealt with: (1) the spirit of death and infirmity; (2) the victim spirit; (3) Freemasonry; (4) any kind of financial curses; and (5) mental confusion or even mental illness in a family line, generationally. When someone lacks the ability to perceive true reality or is living in denial, this suggests the possibility of a spirit

---

<sup>983</sup> Personal Interview with Professor Dr Connie Brand, 4 November 2014.

<sup>984</sup> Buys, A, Africa, come forth out of Bondage. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished, pp. 111-112

of mental confusion or mental illness in the family line. When doing the family survey, it is vital to identify whether any of these five is present, and if so, call them to attention and sever the alliance between them and the spirit of jealousy before taking them on individually.<sup>985</sup>

Jealousy is always connected to witchcraft. Stealing is always a part of jealousy, or a desire to have no matter what. Jealousy produces obsessive behaviour. It is also very connected to deception and fantasy. The spirit of jealousy causes a man to be enraged (Proverbs 6:34) and opens the door for spirits of cruelty to enter (Song of Solomon 8:6).<sup>986</sup>

#### 5.4.7 Hatred

*Anyone who hates (abominates, detests) his brother [in Christ] is [at heart] a murderer, and you know that no murderer has eternal life abiding (persevering) within him.<sup>16</sup> By this we come to know (progressively to recognize, to perceive, to understand) the [essential] love: that He laid down His [own] life for us; and we ought to lay [our] lives down for [those who are our] brothers [in Him].*

*1 John 3:15-16*

Hatred can be defined as<sup>987</sup> *an intense aversion or active hostility that is expressed in settled opposition to a person or thing.* A good description of the word hatred is given by Earle<sup>988</sup> *as that fretted and irritable state of mind that keeps a man in perpetual animosity -- that inclines him to harsh and uncharitable opinions of men and things -- that makes him sour, crabbed, and repulsive in his general demeanour -- that brings a scowl over this face, and infuses venom into the words of his tongue.*

Generally speaking, this is a mental attitude sin expressed by one man (or a group of men) toward another man (or a group of men) (John 15:18-24). Hatred can be toward parents, children, siblings, bosses, teachers or even animals.

---

<sup>985</sup> Burk, A, Spiritual Warfare, CD 5, Track 3 and 5

<sup>986</sup> Eckhard, J (2004) Deliverance and Spiritual Warfare Manual. Chicago: Crusaders Ministries, p. 42

<sup>987</sup> Tenney, M (1976) The Zondervan Pictorial Encyclopedia of the Bible. Zondervan Publishing House, Vol. 3, p. 46.

<sup>988</sup> Earle, R (1998) Word Meanings in the New Testament, Baker Books

The strongest Hebrew meaning for *hatred* (verb) is to hate, to oppose, to bear a grudge, to retain or cherish animosity, to be against, to lay snares for someone, to lay a trap, to follow with hostility<sup>989</sup>. The second verb meaning is to hate, to loathe, to be hateful, to be filled with animosity. The International Standard Bible Encyclopaedia gives this meaning:<sup>990</sup> A feeling of strong antagonism and dislike, generally malevolent and prompting to injury (the opposite of love); sometimes born of moral resentment<sup>991</sup>. In short, the first Hebrew word is most closely associated with murder or extreme pain and suffering. The second Hebrew verb is associated with actions taken against the hated person, but this is not always seen as murderous intent. There are exceptions to this: Absalom bore hatred for Amnon for raping his sister, but kept it quiet until he had the opportunity to kill Amnon (2 Samuel 13:22).

The Greek meaning of *hatred* is to hate, pursue with hatred, detest; to be hated, detested (Strong's #3404). Hatred is clearly condemned in Scripture, in both Old and New Testaments. Hatred can also be directed towards God and the Word of God. The idea is this is negative desire toward the truth (Proverbs 1:29).

People hate because they do not love. A loving heart has no place for hate, bitterness and malice. Hatred is a deadly poison that exudes from the depths of hell, destroying every soul that breathes in its toxic fumes. The spirit of hatred and revenge originated with Satan. Whoever cherishes malice or unkindness is cherishing the same spirit, and its fruit will be unto death. In the revengeful thought the evil deed lies enfolded, as the plant in the seed.<sup>992</sup>

Dr Lawrence Wilson (MD) makes the following observation on his website<sup>993</sup>:

*All hatred is mental illness and has very bad consequences. Hatred is a form of neurosis, fixation, reversal and judgment. All of these words describe a type of mental illness that is always harmful for oneself and for others. If persisted in, it always leads to war with others and to disease in the body. When hatred is unacceptable to the mind, the mind twists the facts or reality to make it more pleasant or acceptable.*

---

<sup>989</sup> Strong's #7852 BDB #966

<sup>990</sup> International Standard Bible Encyclopaedia, Hatred [Online] Available from: <http://www.internationalstandardbible.com/H/hate-hatred.html> [Accessed: 8 September 2014]

<sup>991</sup> Strong's #8130 BDB #971

<sup>992</sup> White, E G Mind, Character, and Personality Volume 2 [Online] Available from: [http://www.gilead.net/egw/books/misc/Mind,\\_Character,\\_and\\_Personality\\_Volume\\_2/](http://www.gilead.net/egw/books/misc/Mind,_Character,_and_Personality_Volume_2/) [Accessed: 8 September 2014], p. 524

<sup>993</sup> Wilson, L, Hatred [Online] Available from: <http://drlwilson.com/ARTICLES/HATRED.htm> [Accessed: 8 September 2014]

Paul includes hatred under the works of the flesh (Galatians 5:20). Its toxic compound has many side effects<sup>994</sup>:

- *Hatred stirs up trouble.* It stirs up strife (Proverbs 10:12). The friction between Joseph and his brethren was induced by hate (Genesis 37:4, 5, 8). Congregations are torn asunder because brethren despise and detest, reject and repel one another.
- *Hatred leads to murder.* Because the brethren of Joseph hated him, they wanted to slay him (Genesis 37:20). Because of perpetual hatred, the Edomites shed the blood of the children of Israel (Ezekiel 35:5). The Jews crucified Jesus because of their animosity and hostility toward him (John 15:18-25). The apostle John succinctly states that whoever hates his brother is regarded as a murderer (1 John 3:15). Murder first exists in the heart of a person. Guy Woods, commenting on 1 John 3:15, wrote,<sup>995</sup> *What is meant is, he has exhibited the disposition and spirit of a murderer; he has allowed passions to arise in his heart which, when carried to their ultimate ends, result in murder . . . . Murder is simply hate expressed in an overt act.* Hatred is a conscious sin. As such, it gives Satan legal ground in one's life, if permitted, to dwell in the heart. When hating someone, Satan can step in and use a person's spirit body to attack the person being hated. Such an attack can produce all sorts of illness, accidents, emotional problems, and even physical, emotional or mental death. The person doing the hating is usually unaware that Satan is using his spirit body. The person being hated usually has no idea where his trouble is really coming from.<sup>996</sup>
- *Hatred provokes sins of the tongue.* David was the target of the biting barbs from the mouth of his enemies. He says, *They compassed me about also with words of hatred, and fought against me without a cause* (Psalm 109:3). The cruel opposition to David was nothing but a fabrication, but hatred needed no justification. Solomon said, *A lying tongue hates those it hurts* (Proverbs 26:28, NIV). Abrasive, rude, cutting and harsh language generates from those whose hearts are filled with hate. This is also true of gossip, slander, fault-finding and false witnessing.

---

<sup>994</sup> Warnock, W E Hatred: A Spiritual Malignancy [Online] Available from: <http://www.truthmagazine.com/archives/volume37/GOT037009.html> [Accessed: 8 September 2014]

<sup>995</sup> Woods, G N (1979) A Commentary on the New Testament Epistles of Peter, John, and Jude Gospel Advocate Co.

<sup>996</sup> Brown, R (1987) Prepare for War. New Kensington: Whitaker House, p. 273

- *Hatred fosters resentment and retaliation.* The Bible is replete with passages forbidding revenge (Proverbs 19:11; 24:27, 29; Matthews 5:38-48; Luke 6:27-36; 1 Corinthians 4:12; 1 Peter 3:9).
- *Hatred begets envy and envy begets hate.* Envy arouses hatred. A vicious cycle existed in the life of Joseph and his brethren. They hated Joseph (Genesis 37:4, 5, 8) and, subsequently, his brethren envied him (Genesis 37:11). The Jews hated Jesus and they delivered him to be crucified because of envy (Matthews 27:18). Envy is *rottenness of the bones* (Proverbs 14:30).
- Those who harbour hate, malice and envy are miserable wretches, and unless they excise this virulent cancer from their hearts, they will slowly destroy themselves as a malignancy emaciates the body.

It is vital to ask Jesus to cleanse and keep pure all three parts: body, soul, and spirit. That is why the Lord Jesus gave so many commands to forgive one another. Forgiveness puts a stop to hatred. The believer should ask the Lord regularly to clean out the heart of any sin.

*Create in me a clean heart, O God, and renew a right, persevering, and steadfast spirit within me.*

*Psalms 51:10*

Note the small "s" in the word spirit here. Obviously the sin in David's heart had affected his God-given human spirit also. If a believer suspects that his problems are because of hatred from another person, simply ask the Lord to sever himself from any attacks from the spirit world. One does not need to know completely just who is doing the hating, the Lord knows. Simply ask for special shielding against hatred.<sup>997</sup>

#### **5.4.8 Pride**

Perhaps the most destructive attitude of all is pride. It has damned not only Satan and his angels, but also men and women throughout history. Pride is worthy of condemnation because it violates the first commandment: having no other gods before God Himself (Exodus 20:3). God alone is to be worshiped and served because His will is supreme. But

---

<sup>997</sup> Brown, R (1987) Prepare for War. New Kensington: Whitaker House, p. 274

pride asserts that man should take supremacy over God. God will not tolerate a usurper who attempts to rise above Him.

The book of Proverbs gives insight into how God feels about pride:

- Proverbs 21:4 - *A high look and a proud heart ... are sin.*
- Proverbs 6:17 - *The Lord hates a proud look.*
- Proverbs 16:5 - *Everyone who is proud in heart is an abomination to the Lord.*
- Proverbs 8:13 - *The fear of the Lord is to hate evil; pride, and arrogance ... do I hate.*
- Proverbs 16:18 - *Pride goeth before destruction, and a haughty spirit before a fall.*
- Proverbs 29:23 - *A man's pride shall bring him low.*
- Proverbs 11:2 - *When pride cometh, then cometh shame.*

Pride is a serious sin that is condemned repeatedly throughout Scripture. It is an abomination because it desecrates the name of God. And it also brings about destruction because the end of pride is judgment. The root of every sin is pride, an attitude of the heart. Pride is rooted in rejection and rebellion. The image of pride is built over worthlessness and rooted in idolatry. Pride manifests itself in performance orientation, perfectionism, competition, unforgiveness, self-centredness and unbelief.

#### CASE STUDY

*Daniel 4.* It shows the importance of properly recognizing the sovereignty and supremacy of God and the humble state of man. That theme is capsulized in verse 17: *This matter is ... to the intent that the living may know that the Most High ruleth in the kingdom of men.* No man can set himself up above God. That same principle is repeated: *The Most High ruleth in the kingdom of men* (verses 25, 32). King Nebuchadnezzar finally got the message: *I blessed the Most High, and I praised and honoured him who liveth forever, whose dominion is an everlasting dominion, and his Kingdom is from generation to generation* (verse 34). In Daniel 4 we see a proud man. Nebuchadnezzar was the monarch of the first of four empires that ruled his part of the world. As king of such a great empire, he became proud and set himself up as God. He had a ninety-foot image of himself built out of gold and forced the people to bow down and worship it (Daniel 3:5). However, when Shadrach, Meshach, and Abednego refused to do so, they were thrown into a fiery furnace (verses 12, 20). Such was the strength of Nebuchadnezzar's ego. But in Daniel 4 God brings him down by making his dwelling among the beasts of the field and eating grass like oxen and then God gives him grace after Nebuchadnezzar humbles himself.

Leviathan (Job 41) is the ruler over the children of Pride (Job 41:34), a ruling spirit of pride that causes people to be stubborn and stiff-necked (Job 41:22), also responsible for

hardness of heart (Job 41:24). Leviathan is known as the piercing serpent, crooked serpent, and dragon (Isaiah 27:1). This spirit hates (Psalm 74:14).<sup>998</sup>

Spirits related to pride include<sup>999</sup>:

- *Hardness of heart* which causes divorce and marital problems (Matthew 19:8); unbelief and doubt (Mark 16:14); lack of spiritual perception, spiritual dullness, lack of wisdom and understanding, forgetfulness (Mark 8:17-18); lack of repentance and godly sorrow (Romans 2:5); backsliding and departing from God (Hebrews 3:12).
- *Rahab*, the spirit of pride meaning outrageous, violent, tumult, fierce, courageous, proud, vain and insolent. A sea monster, crocodile, destroyed by the arm of the Lord (Psalm 89:10; Isaiah 51:9). Has helpers (Job 9:13, literally meaning the helpers of Rahab).
- *Bashan*, the spirit of pride. Oaks of Bashan (Isaiah 2:12-13) represent pride and loftiness; Bulls of Bashan (Psalm 22:12) represent strength, and breaking forth in wild strength as a bull; or king of Bashan (Numbers 21:33), a long necked giant representing pride.
- *Arba* (Joshua 14:15), a giant meaning strength, a cube, four, symbol of great strength and stability, characterised in the square of a cube. Kirjatharba city of Arba, four giants (Judges 1:10).
- *Anak* (Deuteronomy 9:2), the long necked giants, represent pride.
- *Ishbibenob*, a giant, meaning my dwelling is on the prominence; my abiding is in the height; represents pride and loftiness; defeated by David (2 Samuel 21:16).
- *Crown of Pride* (Isaiah 28:1).
- *Chain of Pride* (Psalm 73:6).
- *Rod of Pride* (Proverbs 14:3).
- Python: linked to pride and control. It wraps around its victim, keeping the victim from doing the things they should do.<sup>1000</sup>

Pride in women causes baldness, burning, itching, and body odours (Isaiah 3:16-24). Other manifestations of pride include cursing and lying (Psalm 59:12), contention (Proverbs 13:10), drunkenness (Isaiah 28:3), wrath (Proverbs 21:24), strife (Proverbs 28:25), disobedience, rebellion and stubbornness (Nehemiah 9:16, 29), arguing and disputing (2 Timothy 3:2), and not seeking the Lord (Psalm 10:4).<sup>1001</sup>

---

<sup>998</sup> Eckhard, J (2004) Deliverance and Spiritual Warfare Manual. Chicago: Crusaders Ministries, p. 47

<sup>999</sup> Ibid.

<sup>1000</sup> Demon Buster, Python [Online] Available from: <http://www.demonbuster.com/python.html> [Accessed: 26 September 2014]

<sup>1001</sup> Eckhard, J (2004) Deliverance and Spiritual Warfare Manual. Chicago: Crusaders Ministries, p. 47



### **5.4.9 Violent Offenders**

Violent crimes range from the most trivial of assaults to the most disgusting of serial killings. Violent crimes includes homicide (the most serious), domestic violence and stalking (repeated patterns of harassment of a particular individual to a degree which may frighten the victim or worse), physical abuse and childhood abuse. Some statistics have proven that the biggest factor in the violent offender's violence is their own abuse by their parents in childhood. Violent offenders tend to be versatile offenders; they do not confine their activities to violent crime but commit all types of crime. 1002

When looking at homicide from a psychiatric point of view there are four types of murder: (1) paranoid-aggressive, (2) depressive, (3) psychotic and (4) over-controlled repressors of aggression.

From a standardised interview with convicted homicide offenders, four categories were identified<sup>1003</sup>: (1) normal profiles – 28%; (2) hypersensitive-aggressive – 49%. This group consists of people with the characteristics of being easily offended, prone to impulsive aggressive outbursts and intolerant of frustration. They are very rigid, uncooperative and permanently dissatisfied with things; (3) psychopathic – 17%. This group scores high on emotional instability, impulsivity and immaturity. They tend to have poor control of their aggression; and (4) psychotic – 5%. Their crimes appear to be bizarre such as the man who cooked his own child in a pot.

Generally speaking, most forensic and criminal psychologists would take the view that extreme acts of violence, including homicide, have multiple causes. Rarely is a single factor seen as sufficient to explain violent crimes. Since extreme violence such as a serial killer is such rare phenomenon, it is unlikely that a single factor associated with serial killing could be identified.

Extreme violent behaviour, as in the case of serial killing, may be understood by a multi-fractural framework which includes the following factors<sup>1004</sup>:

- *Predisposing factors.* This includes a failure of normal bonding with parents or other primary care-givers, leading to a lack of similar feelings towards others; traumatic

---

<sup>1002</sup> Howitt, D (2006) Introduction to Forensic Criminal and Psychology. Essex: Pearson Education Limited, p. 110

<sup>1003</sup> Ibid, p. 120

<sup>1004</sup> Ibid, pp. 124-125

experiences are not dealt with properly; fantasies about the traumatic experiences may develop and dominate; through fantasy, feelings of power, which are lacking through poor interpersonal skills and so forth, can be experienced and so the fantasy becomes increasingly rewarding.

- *Maintenance factors.* This includes several factors and processes. Cognitive inhibitory factors: most children gradually learn to avoid acting aggressively through normal socialisation processes (a child with unsatisfactory bonding and social relationships, however, may fail to learn). Cognitive facilitative processes: the tendency towards fantasy may allow the use of violent fantasy to deal with situations. Operant processes: the feeling of power experienced through fantasy is rewarding, encouraging further fantasy. It also serves to isolate the individual from the bad aspects of life.
- *Situational/Triggering factors.* These are the factors that encourage the acting out of a fantasy against a real person; particularly influential may be stressful situations such as financial problems, employment problems and relationship problems.

When looking at violent offenders, some may be psychopaths who act violently not out of anger but dispassionately in order to achieve their particular goals, perhaps to obtain money. Others may lack self-esteem and be vulnerable to taunts of others. However, in order to treat violent offenders, the reasons behind the violence must be clearly identified and understood.

The following are three findings that form the root of treatment<sup>1005</sup>:

- Violence is learned behaviour that is adopted as a way of coping with difficult life experiences. Violence, then, works effectively and reliably and serves to reinforce their sense of personal power and self-efficiency.
- Patterns of criminal behaviour include a diversity of criminal acts and are rarely confined to violent behaviour.
- Patterns of violent and criminal behaviour are entwined within ways of thinking that support those acts.

---

<sup>1005</sup> Ibid, p. 120

#### 5.4.10 Sexual Immoralities

*<sup>18</sup> Shun immorality and all sexual looseness [flee from impurity in thought, word, or deed]. Any other sin which a man commits is one outside the body, but he who commits sexual immorality sins against his own body. <sup>19</sup> Do you not know that your body is the temple (the very sanctuary) of the Holy Spirit Who lives within you, Whom you have received [as a Gift] from God? You are not your own, <sup>20</sup> You were bought with a price [purchased with a preciousness and paid for, made His own]. So then, honour God and bring glory to Him in your body.*

*1 Corinthians 6:18-20*

For many, sex no longer is something that may be right or wrong; it is little more than a way for two people to be together. Instead of speaking forcefully and clearly about the issues, evangelical Christians tend to be sounding an uncertain note on the ethics of sexuality. Sex apart from marriage is widely accepted in Western society and frequently tolerated within the church. Cohabitation, an unmarried male and female living together with full sexual relationships but with no intention of getting married, is so widespread that hardly anyone criticizes the practice today. Hedonistic philosophy, with its easy acceptance of both premarital and extramarital sexual intercourse, has become an integral part of the culture's values, reinforced by television, practiced by millions, and criticised by almost no one.

Sex involves in-depth intimacy and intense communication even in the absence of physical contact. It is an urge toward closeness and the expression of a deep personal relationship with someone else.

When it deviates from God's perfect plans for human beings, sex is destructive. It destroys intimacy and communication, is self-centred, and often expresses a desire to manipulate, control or hurt another person. The experience is pleasurable; it dulls one's sense of loneliness, temporarily reduces anxiety and provides a feeling of intimacy. All of this, however, is fleeting, dehumanizing, and ultimately unfulfilling. Perhaps this is why the biblical writers so soundly condemned fornication (which usually refers to premarital sex), adultery (sexual relations with a person other than one's spouse), and other forms of sex outside of marriage (1 Corinthians 6:9). These are sinful because they deviate from God's plan and commands. While sinful pleasures are enjoyable, the pleasure is only for a season. Within

marriage, sexual intercourse is good, created by God for reproduction, intimacy, and pleasure, but sexual abuse is condemned with great intensity.

Consider, for example, what the Bible says about fornication and adultery. In the New Testament alone, the word *fornication* (porneia) occurs thirty-nine times and often refers to general immorality (Ephesians 5:3). Although it is used sometimes as a synonym for adultery, the word *fornication* more often means voluntary sexual intercourse by an unmarried person with someone of the opposite sex (that is, premarital sex, 1 Corinthians 7:2). The word would include what today is known as casual sex, including sex with a prostitute (1 Corinthians 6:16-20). In every case, fornication is presented as behaviour opposed to the plan and will of God.

Adultery is used two ways in the Bible: one referring to idol worship and unfaithfulness to God (Revelations 2:20, 23) and the other concerns sexual intercourse by a married person with someone other than one's mate (that is, extramarital sex). In both cases, adultery is forbidden and strongly condemned (Matthew 5:27-30). Several times in the writings of Paul, lists of sinful behaviour are given – lists that include adultery and fornication along with immorality, impurity, sensuality, and homosexuality (Galatians 5:19-20). It is significant that the wrath of God will come upon those who engage in such behaviours. Clearly God does not take a light view of sexual intimacies apart from marriage.

Sex was created by God and is good. This is the place to begin all considerations of sexuality. God created the human race with male and female bodies capable of sexual intimacy, including genital orgasm. As with other parts of his creation, God called sexual human beings 'very good' and instructed mankind to multiply (Genesis 1:27-28, 31). When the human race fell into sin, God's creation was marred and the potential for unhealthy sexuality came into being. Adam and Eve, who previously were not ashamed of their nakedness, suddenly became self-conscious about their bodies (Genesis 2:25; 3:9-11).

1 Corinthians 6 describes sexual sin as something that affects the body, the place where the Holy Spirit lives. The body is not meant for sexual immorality but for the Lord. All other sins a man commits are outside his body, but he who sins sexually sins against his own body. Believers are implored, therefore, to flee from sexual immorality (1 Corinthians 6:13,18). Repeatedly, the Bible warns against the enslaving influence of sexual behaviour apart from marriage (Colossians 3:5-6).

Some writers argue that philosophy of pre-marital sex contributes to major social problems including the breakdown of the family, the increase in AIDS and other sexually transmitted diseases (STDs), the increase in one-parent families, the upsurge in teenage pregnancies, and the huge number of abortions, to cite the most apparent. Psalm 73 describes the personal end results of ignoring God's laws, and 1 Corinthians 6 would seem to suggest that immoral sex hinders the potential oneness that can come within marriage. Some have maintained that no adultery occurs as long as the male does not let his penis enter the female's vagina. Such a legalistic view was challenged by Jesus in the Sermon on the Mount. Jesus said that anyone who looks at a woman lustfully has already committed adultery with her in his heart (Matthew 5:28). Clearly adultery, lust and fornication can all take place in the mind without genital contact at all. Engaging in sex before marriage leaves at least two people abused. Mental lusting primarily influences the one who lusts. According to Jesus, both are wrong.

It is impossible to understand or adequately describe the effects of sex apart from marriage. Much of this sexual activity is sin, and, according to the Bible, all sin that is not forgiven will be punished in a time of future judgment. The effects of sin, however, often come much sooner. For a while there is pleasure, but the harmful influences of non-marital sex quickly become apparent to many people. It would be inaccurate to imply, however, that sex outside of marriage always (or even frequently) leads to immediate guilt and remorse. A perusal of research in this area indicates that many people report little or no guilt following non-marital sex, especially if the participants feel a genuine affection for each other. As sex apart from marriage continues, initial qualms and insecurities often disappear.

A lack of remorse does not make such sexual activity morally right. Sometimes people develop an attitude that is hardened to biblical teaching and unable to sense inner promptings from the Holy Spirit. In time, these people, some of whom may be highly respected and educated members of the church and society, do not think it worthwhile to retain the knowledge of God, and so God leaves them to their lust, sexual impurity, depraved minds, degrading behaviour, and tendency to not only continue to do these very things but also approve of those who practice them (Romans 1:24-28, 32).<sup>1006</sup>

In these end times, Satan is saturating the world with things of the flesh. He knows that sexual sins are particularly despised by God. Examples of sexual sins are homosexuality, sexual promiscuity, fornication, adultery, bestiality, sodomy, incest and general sexual lust

---

<sup>1006</sup> Collin, G R (1988) *Christian Counselling*. Vancouver: Word Publishing, p. 249

(Leviticus 18). Extremely bondage often follows sexual sins. The world is already full of sexual lust and opportunity. It's difficult to watch television without seeing sexually explicit commercials, shows, music videos and movies, all of which promote sexual promiscuity. Sexual lust brings man down to the level of the brute beast nature described in Jude and 2 Peter 2:12-15. As the world moves deeper into darkness, men will become like animals – lawless, full of insatiable lusts, and completely overcome by the flesh.<sup>1007</sup>

Similarly, the Bible teaches that as we run from sexual temptations, we should cling to and delight in the spouse of our youth (Proverbs 5:15-20). Sex bonds us to another person in a unique way (Genesis 2:24; 1 Corinthians 6:16). But in this fallen world, we have exchanged the truth for a lie, propping up images – lustful images of women – as idols that capture our imaginations (Romans 1:21-25). These are not idols of wood and stone, but pixels and pinups.

#### CASE STUDY

Born in Exeter in 1631 into a wealthy family of Anglican lawyers, George Trosse later looked back at his youth as a Sodom of sin, turning into an Atheist; he had followed every cursed, carnal principle which had fired his lusts. Pricked by a roving Fancy, a desire to get rich, and to live luxuriously in the world, Trosse travelled abroad to enjoy the unregenerate world; the lusts of the flesh, the lusts of the eyes, and the pride of life, being led into great sins and dangerous snares. Even grave illness did not lead him to think on death and damnation, or on the merciful providence which had spared him. Eventually he returned home, a notorious sinner against all the commandments, enslaved to a licentiousness which had hardened his heart. Crisis ensued. After one particularly gross drinking bout, he awoke hearing some rushing kind of noise and seeing a shadow at the foot of his bed. 'I was seiz'd with great fear and trembling', Trosse recalled. A voice demanded: 'Who art thou?' Convinced it must be God, he contritely replied, 'I am a very great sinner, Lord!', and fell to his knees and prayed. The voice proceeded: 'Yet more humble; yet more humble.' He removed his stockings, to pray upon his bare knees. The voice continued. He pulled off his hose and doublet. Warned he still was not low enough, he found a hole in the floor and crept within, praying while covering himself in dirt. The voice then commanded him to cut off his hair, and at this point he anticipated it would next tell him to slit his throat. Spiritual illumination now dawned: the voice was not God's but the Devil's! Knowing he had greatly offended, he finally heard a call: 'Thou Wretch! Thou has committed the sin against the Holy Ghost.' Falling into despair, the sin against the Holy Ghost which was reputed to be unpardonable, he wanted to curse God and die, and his head exploded with a babel of clamouring voices, making a 'Torment of my Conscience'. Buffeted by further voices and visions, Trosse fell into a distracted condition. The Devil, Trosse later recalled, had taken complete possession. He identified the Glastonbury madhouse with hell, seeing its fetters as satanic torments and his fellow patients as executioners. Eventually, however, though long seeking revenge and rebellion against God, he grew more tranquil, largely thanks to the doctor's wife, a very religious woman, who would pray with him, until his blasphemies began to subside. Finally 'I bewail'd my sins', and he was thought to have recovered enough to return to Exeter. Alas! Like the

---

<sup>1007</sup> Ing, R (1966) *Spiritual Warfare*. Whitaker House: United States of America, pp. 105-106

proverbial dog to his vomit, he returned to his old ways. This time, however, the fight with the Tempter was in the open. He now applied to godly ministers for guidance in removing his great load of guilt. Carried once again to Glastonbury, he raged against God, believing that he had sinned once more against the Holy Ghost, but the doctor reduced him again to a composedness and calmness of mind. Even then, his regeneration was not complete, for his faith was but pharisaical. Backsliding, he was induced to return for a third time to Glastonbury. Finally, and this time permanently, 'God was pleased, after all my repeated provocations, to restore me to peace and serenity, and the regular use of my reason'. A man reborn, Trosse went off to study at Oxford. With divine assistance, he was called to the ministry, and he became a pious Nonconformist preacher. The Trosse who then penned his autobiography—a conversion narrative comparable to Bunyan's *Grace Abounding*—had a well-defined religious concept of madness. Reason was walking in harmony with God, derangement that state of mind when the soul, diabolically assailed, blasphemed against the Almighty. Madness was thus a desperate, acute phase in the trial and redemption of souls, because it brought a sinner into a state of crisis, and provided the prelude to recovery.<sup>1008</sup>

Sexual immorality and idolatry are strongly connected in the Bible. Sexual sin is a particular graphic form of rebellion against God. Sex can, therefore, be very dangerous. Proverbs contain several warnings which Old Testament stories confirm, that sex can be fatal for all involved, including the offspring who are proof of the illicit sex. Sexual sins display a casual or callous disregard for human life, degrading people, bringing them down to the level of objects use or things to own. The only way to escape is to control one's thoughts.<sup>1009</sup>

The wilful commitment of sexual sin actually involves two forms of idolatry<sup>1010</sup>:

- The first thing is that sexual sin is equivalent to (and is) Baal Worship even though such worship is neither intended nor known by the person practicing such sin. Consider this: the idolatry of Baal worship centred on ritual fornication or fornication by people who were willing to prostitute themselves. The males were casual and willing spillers of their seed. Historical sources intimate that participants rejoiced in what they did.
- There is yet a second reason why the practice of sexual sin is idolatry: when a person takes his opinion of what is right regarding sexual sin (or any sin, for that matter) and places it upon the altar of his heart to honour it (while knowing how God feels about it and what God's will is), then that person chooses idolatry of self and self-will. It is exalting one's own will over the will of God. It is giving a place of honour to one's own opinion of what is right and wrong, and letting it take wilful precedence over what God says and wills. It is the exaltation of the will of the created over that of the Creator. That, too, is idolatry.

---

<sup>1008</sup> Porter, R (2002) *Madness, a brief history*. Oxford University Press, pp. 21-25

<sup>1009</sup> Brand, C, *Sexual Brokenness and Deviation Part 1*. Pretoria: RĀDĀH. Unpublished, pp. 3-4

<sup>1010</sup> Zumpano, B (1998) *Ministering Spiritual Warfare for Sexual Sin*. Miami: Harbor Light Publishers, pp. 32, 35

#### **5.4.10.1 Sexual Addiction is a Chemical Addiction**

Sexual intimacy (including viewing pornography and masturbation) triggers the release of the body's own endogenous chemicals. And thus the person can become addicted to these internal chemicals just as he would if the release were triggered by a pharmaceutical drug, thereby resulting in the addiction within the body's own chemistry.<sup>1011</sup>

In a similar manner, the sexual addict has developed conditioned responses to emotional pain, lust, orgasm, shame, depression and other experiences that trigger higher dosages of various biological chemicals. The addict has become biologically locked into a cycle of reflexive behaviours that fail to ease the anxiety caused by imbalances. The body chemistry of the sexual addict has learned to manage stress and so the addict, through repeated abuse, is conditioned to transfer much of their emotional pain into this cycle.

The imbalance for some people can be more addictive than codeine or cocaine. They develop an absolute need for more anxiety and an incontestable need to repeat a ritual to temporarily ease that anxiety. The sexual addict has a psychological and chemical addiction to cope with their emotional pain, and requires a series of repeatable behaviours in order to survive the pain. Often the pain from earlier years has been so effectively avoided that the addict may actually be unaware of what they are avoiding.

Each repetition of the cycle creates a stronger need for the next repetition as it simultaneously traps the accumulating emotional pain where it is neither properly felt nor resolved. Sexual addiction is a system of misleading denial that is reconfirmed with each pass through the cycle enabling the sexual addict to rationalise that he or she is not a sexual addict at all. Denial is the number one enemy of any addict.

#### **5.4.10.2 Harlotry and Fornication**

Fornication is sexual intercourse outside of the marriage covenant. It implies both lust and idolatry. Harlotry is seduction, lust, fornication *and* adultery. It destroys Godly covenant. Temple prostitution is the act of fornication between a prostitute-priestess and prostitute-

---

<sup>1011</sup> Kastleman, M B (2007) *The Drug of the New Millennium*. USA: PowerThink Publications, p. 61



priest. Every fornicator is a false priest or priestess of spiritual Babylon (see *Fertility Cults*).<sup>1012</sup>

Harlotry in some families is so obvious that no one would be able to miss its profound impact. It brings uncleanness, perversion, betrayal and a line of destruction and devastation. A family bound for harlotry can have either no moral boundaries, or a continual violation of moral boundaries, plus sexual, emotional and financial immorality. Harlotry comes with great subtlety and is often hidden, unseen and unexpected in families. It can be in every family line, but rarely gets exposed. God calls harlotry an *abomination* (Leviticus 19:29). Harlotry is a deep pit of destruction, despair and depression.

A harlot is one who habitually commits adultery or fornication (outside of marriage), living a lifestyle of uncleanness and violation of God's law of love. Harlotry takes the love that belongs to someone else. The beginning of the iniquity of harlotry in a family line can be rape.

A spirit of harlotry carries with it broken covenants, infidelity and betrayal, and with this, cruelty, pain and continual grief – ultimately bringing destruction and death on all levels. A spirit of harlotry in a family line will always produce a stronghold of paranoia, jealousy and fear of losing relationships through harlotry. Jealousy will come very strong down the line of women where the spirit of harlotry has had a previous stronghold. A spirit of harlotry from the maternal line over a woman will produce hatred of a husband and the children. A woman can have despising and murder in her heart, with great coldness and even frigidity.

A spirit of harlotry in a family line can bring chaos, confusion and deception concerning who the real mother is, because of either literal adoption occurring or a child feeling like he has been adopted. Either situation can engender a spirit of deception over the mind. The spirit of harlotry will not and cannot put the children first, and the children will also be despised. This spirit sits behind a son who becomes an emotional incestuous husband or the daughter who becomes such a wife. A family bound with the spirit of harlotry can also be bound with a code of silence and secrecy.

---

<sup>1012</sup> Kitchen Y and Triplett D (2000) Jezebel's Murder. A Fruitful Vine Publication, p. 6-7, 9

## CASE STUDY

A girl was head girl in primary school and again in high school. At the end of the year she was elected as head girl the second time when she had sex with a young student that had Syphilis of the brain, which she then extracted in the process. She turned mad, with foam around the mouth and had to be locked up in a padded room. Her whole life destroyed.

### 5.4.10.3 Prostitution

Prostitution has been euphemised as the 'oldest' profession. Anthropologists show that in even the most primitive societies, there is usually one woman who lives outside the village who engages in transactional sex or overt prostitution. Prostitution is well-documented in antiquity, alleged to have financed the production of some of Egypt's pyramids. Prostitution continues to fascinate and exists in all societies, even in enforced closed situations such as prison. Covert and overt prostitution is easily found in contemporary urban locations. All cautions against commercial sex only serve to increase the fascination. Prostitution takes a myriad of forms and occurs in an enormous variety of venues. Some manifestations of the sex industry are permutations designed not to contravene local laws. Child prostitution is also a worldwide problem.<sup>1013</sup>

Biblical prostitution can be examined in three ways: 'real' prostitution, metaphorical prostitution, and sacred prostitution.

- *Biblical 'Real' Prostitution.* The most basic definition of prostitution is to trade sex for money or material goods. Depending upon the status of the woman involved, biblical prostitution could be either an illicit or an illegal act.
- *Metaphorical Prostitution.* The most violent and negative portrayal of prostitution in the Bible is in the deployment of the whore metaphor. The 8th-century prophet Hosea is credited with the invention of the metaphor of the brazen harlot, a figure for Israel, God's wayward and unfaithful wife (Hosea 1-4).
- *Sacred Prostitution in the Ancient World.* Sacred prostitution is the temporary sale of a person's body for sexual purposes in which either all or some portion of the money received for this transaction belongs to a deity. In the ancient Near East, this deity was usually understood as Ishtar or Astarte; in ancient Greece, it was Aphrodite. At

---

<sup>1013</sup> Ditmore, M H (2006) Encyclopedia of Prostitution and Sex work. Volumn 1 and 2. London: Greenwood Press, pp. Xxvi, xxxi

least three separate types of sacred prostitution have been distinguished. In some examples, once in life every woman must prostitute herself, often to a foreign man, and give the money to the relevant deity. A second type of sacred prostitution involves women and men who are professional prostitutes and who are owned by a deity or a deity's sanctuary. There are also references to a temporary type of sacred prostitution in which women and possibly men only prostitute themselves during certain rituals.

- *Sacred Prostitution, Contemporary.* Modern sacred prostitutes, also called sacred harlots, sacred whores, or Qadesh(im), are people (mostly women) who interact sexually with strangers for the purpose of offering healing or an experience of divinity. This is based on ancient polytheistic traditions in which men would come to a temple to worship a Goddess (such as Astarte or Shakti) by making love to her priestesses. The vast majority of the clients/worshippers are male (and probably were even in ancient times) even when one takes into account the male and transgender sacred prostitutes.

Modern sacred prostitutes fall into two overlapping categories. Some are primarily spiritually motivated, people acting as sexual therapists or surrogates or teach Tantra or similar techniques. Some simply feel they have a calling to be sexually available to all and are less formal about it. Sometimes they accept money, and sometimes they do not. Another category of modern sacred prostitutes are people who identify primarily as sex workers and who bring an element of spirituality or healing to their work. Generally, these people are earning a living from their sex work, so money is almost always exchanged. During the course of the individual's career path, she may go from one type to the other or may function in both ways simultaneously. Sacred harlots differ in their spiritual paths. Some are Tantrikas who embody the Goddess Shakti and follow a Hindu-based path. Others are NeoPagan priestesses who may identify with a Goddess from an ancient European pantheon. Still others may not be focused on any deities, but proceed from the belief that sexuality is a sacred force and something to be enjoyed. The notion of the sacred embodied in the physical (pantheism) is a common idea. Activities may include touch and sensual massage; hand jobs; oral, vaginal, or anal sex; bondage and sadomasochism (BDSM); and role-play. Sacred prostitutes may even interact with clients over the phone, practicing in an astral temple. Not all are full service; each harlot sets her own limits.

Modern sacred prostitution has an element of therapy to it. Female sacred prostitutes who receive male clients/worshippers say that men have been wounded by our society by being taught that their sexual desire is bad or wrong, either in its focus (such as a fetish) or its intensity. In this way, they may provide acceptance, encouragement and understanding to the client. They may also help the men become more comfortable with women and women's bodies, including offering instruction on techniques (energetic and physical), birth control, and safer sex. With spiritually or energetically experienced clients/worshippers, they may be able to take things further and create a Great Rite or hieros gamos (a ritualised coupling between God and Goddess) or assist them in raising energy for magical purposes. The issue of money is hotly charged for people in this area. Some believe that to charge for the service is to strip it of its sacredness or demean the priest or priestess. Others see it as precisely the opposite situation: people value that which they have to pay for, and the harlot should be compensated for her time and hard work. Prostitution is illegal in most places, so sacred prostitutes who are compensated are sometimes paid as therapists, escorts, or performers.

Societal norms about sex and sexuality do not apply similarly to men and women. If sexual needs are at all acknowledged beyond procreation, it is only for men. Even if there are minor variations from community to community and if in the name of modernity certain mores have changed in some place, it is largely men who have had enjoyed the right to be polygamous or seek multiple sexual partners. Women have always been expected to be faithful to a single man. These male sex workers provide sexual services to homosexual men primarily. As today's society is strongly homophobic, and in fact, penetrative sexual act even between consenting adult men can still be legally penalised, the material and ideological status of male sex workers is even more precarious.<sup>1014</sup>

#### 5.4.10.4 Pornography

Men and women were not born liking pornography. Instead the brain learns that viewing pornography brings a neurological reward. The term used by therapists is *association*: a person learns to associate sexual arousal with specific stimuli, writes Dr Norman Doidge in *The Brain That Changes Itself*.<sup>1015</sup> Dr Doidge explains that human beings exhibit an extraordinary degree of sexual plasticity compared with other creatures. By plasticity he means that man's brains and his sexuality are moulded by his experiences, interactions, and

---

<sup>1014</sup> Ibid., pp. 60-61, 417, 419-420, 629

<sup>1015</sup> Doidge, N (2007) *The Brain that Changes itself*. Penguin Books, p.94

other means of learning, which is why people vary in what they say is attractive or what turns them on. The brain actually creates neural pathways that say a specific type of person or activity is arousing.

Pornography hijacks this sex drive that God created, and a person neurologically bonds to images rather than his spouse. It is a chemical addiction. Pornography corrupts more than just the person viewing it. Relationships with the partners of porn viewers are also negatively affected. Many men (and women) want something more imaginative from their partner as a result of viewing porn. When nothing more imaginative happens, the resultant dissatisfaction with the relationship can lead to divorce, with the lustful partner then pursuing a promiscuous way of life while desperately seeking sexual fulfilment.

The continual emphasis on sex influences every purchaser of porn into believing that sex is everything, more important in a relationship than anything else. Society has told an increasing number of people for the last three decades that sex is all important and the solution to everybody's problems. The reality is that an overemphasis on sex leads to an emotional void in relationships and an ever deeper spiritual void.

Pornography by its very nature encourages self-centredness. Rather than focusing one's sexual thoughts on one's marriage partner, porn fixates the mind on sexual lust and the prospect of a temporary sensual thrill. Such diversions from the commitment of the marital relationship will lead only to an absence of self-control and, in far too many cases, other immoral acts that break the Seventh Commandment.<sup>1016</sup>

Dr Ed Murphy, in his book *The Handbook for Spiritual Warfare*, defines and summarise pornography as<sup>1017</sup>:

*a mind-imagination-fantasy game. It leads to the mental lusting after women condemned by the Lord Jesus in Matthew 5:27-29. Pornography feeds fantasies ... by allowing men mentally to turn female flesh into putty. More exactly, pornography is an aid to masturbation. Pornography is primarily about masturbation, whether it is mental or actual. Pornography is addictive...degrades women and...undermines marriage.*

---

<sup>1016</sup> Vertical Thought, Pornography [Online] Available from: <http://www.ucg.org/christian-living/pornography-adult-entertainment-definitely-not-adults-or-youth/> [Accessed: 14 August 2014]

<sup>1017</sup> Murphy, E F (2003) *The Handbook for Spiritual Warfare*, Revised and Updated. Thomas Nelson Publishers, p. 123

Mark Kastleman, in his book *The Drug of the New Millennium*, gives the following effects of pornography<sup>1018</sup>:

- Pornography triggers child abuse;
- Pornography promotes incest;
- Children act out (copycat) what they see in pornography; and
- Adult pornography can lead to child pornography.

#### **5.4.10.5 Sodomy**

The Merriam Webster Dictionary defines sodomy as anal or oral sex with a member of the same or opposite sex.<sup>1019</sup> A man or woman or child can be sodomised through anal penetration. Many women get raped anally as well as vaginally. The curse of sodomy is released onto the victim and offender and it affects both their lives and their bloodlines. The Kundalini spirit is also awakened when a person has been sodomised.

“All men are equal” is the proclamation of Deuteronomy 6:4. This implies that even a child has rights – the right to security, protection and provision. Parents in family lineages with generational bondage either commit sins of violation or leave the hole in the hedge open for other family members or friends to violate the child. Violation of children in this family situation leads to a place where the child no longer has a will of his own and all too soon land up in the streets engaging in prostitution and crime.

#### **CASE STUDY**

A young girl who has been sexually abused and sodomised can so reject her sexuality that she will hate and reject her monthly cycle and suffer untold agony. She can experience skin problems like acne, and abnormal clotting during her monthly cycle which can possibly lead to having a hysterectomy later in her life. Hence - death to her sexuality. She can also suffer malfunctioning of the breasts, or production of lumps, in the breast. Death has entered in with the curse of sodomy. Repentance of the rebellion against her sexuality must take place to close the door to breast and uterine cancer as well as lesbianism.

Reaching puberty is the crucial time when the sex hormones are released. When there is an absentee father, or big upsets in the family at this time, or sexual abuse – especially sodomy – a huge open door to wrong sexual identification can occur (homosexuality and lesbianism).

---

<sup>1018</sup> Kastleman, M B (2007) *The Drug of the New Millennium*. USA: PowerThink Publications, pp. 124-134

<sup>1019</sup> Merriam-Webster Dictionary [Online] Available from: <http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/sodomy> [Accessed: 28 March 2014]

Also when teasing words (e.g. tomboy, sissy, fag) are spoken over a young teenager, it must be broken because these are wicked word curses.

After the three family members escaped out of Sodom, Lot's daughters committed incest with their father and both carried his child. Sodomy, then rape, then incest: the cycle was not broken. The filth, uncleanness and the perversion continued. The King of Sodom had not been broken. What a tragic story for one of God's own family.

A person who has been sexually abused will have his sensitive conscience violated and defiled. 1 Corinthians 8:7 “...*their conscience, being weak, is defiled.*” A victim of sodomy will be left with a guilty conscience. Because of immaturity or threats to keep quiet, the guilt is forced into the sub/unconscious. When the guilt has not been released, it can lead to obsessions, the person may lose contact with reality, or he may suffer from mental and emotional illnesses until the guilt is cleansed.

When a person is traumatised by sodomy, the guilt will produce fear, anxiety, panic attacks, depression, anger and rage. All responses to life will come from sub/unconscious minds, and a person can be reacting in ways that he might not understand. Sub/unconscious guilt is very hard to define and deal with. It can take a person into a lifetime of bondage unless the healing power of Jesus sets him free!

Sodomy in a family line, or sodomy with sexual abuse, can cause a pregnant woman to release the spirit of murder that she has been imprinted with in murderous, abortive thoughts against her unborn child, or to actually abort the child. The unconscious guilt can also cause resistance to pregnancy. A spirit of sodomy with murder can birth a hatred of pregnancy and even a repulsion of pregnancy in a family line.

A woman pregnant because of rape will surely struggle with a spirit of violence and murder. Shame over the pregnancy can also come down a family line with sodomy. Sodomy is a strong ruling spirit with abortion. It has been suggested that some women who are continually vomiting during pregnancy may sub/unconsciously want to be rid of the baby.<sup>1020</sup>

---

<sup>1020</sup> Ibid., p.54

## CASE STUDY

Brand gives testimony of a man who worked at one of the prominent correctional jails in South Africa who bears witness of the fact that any person who is put into a police van to be taken to jail is being sodomised in the vehicle before even reaching the destination. There is not one who is not being marked with sodomy and warns that when such a person is released again (with or without rehabilitation) he will sodomise the first person he finds on the street. He confirms that sodomy as well as any sexual perversion is nothing more than the transfer of demons from one person to another. He further attests that only the Lord Jesus can set these sodomised people free.<sup>1021</sup>

### 5.4.10.6 Incest

Incest can be defined two-fold: (1) sexual intercourse between family members, and (2) the Mother goddess-son god relationship. The Mother goddess-son relationship is the relationship of emotional and spiritual incest. Two people become lovers emotionally and spiritually. Men become fathers, husbands or sons of women who are not legitimate daughters, wives or mothers. Women became mothers, wives or daughters of men who are not legitimate sons, husbands or fathers. This type of relationship follows the Babylonian pattern of worship of the Mother goddess and son god. Mother goddess has many names: Ishtar, Isis, Astoreth and Astarte. She is the goddess of love and war. She is a major spiritual foundation of harlotry and idolatry. The son god had many names: Tammuz, Baal and Horus. He was invariably the son-lover of his mother and/or sister. He is a god of fertility and war, a major spiritual foundation of harlotry and idolatry.

Even within marriage, a woman can be looking for a father-figure, which is spiritual incest as well. Conversely, a man can be looking for a mother-figure, and/or a brother/sister figure. Adultery in the Body of Christ can be a brother-sister relationship. Affairs in the world can be any of the above. Incest in the family line can bring repercussions of hatred and contempt in all family or outside relationships. Incest opens the door to the spirit of harlotry which brings death on all levels.<sup>1022</sup>

The spirit of incest can bring forth family idolatry where for example the son becomes an idol of the mother, and where the mother discards the husband and other children; or a daughter becomes an idol worshipped by her dad, the dad then discards the wife and other children; or the son worships the mother and discards the father. Invariably, jealousy, rage, betrayal and murder occur. A mother will live through her child, if an idol. She insists strictly upon her

---

<sup>1021</sup> Personal Interview with Professor Dr Connie Brand, 4 November 2014

<sup>1022</sup> Kitchen Y and Triplett D (2000) Jezebel's Murder. A Fruitful Vine Publication, pp.7-8



maternal rights "I am your mother; you will do what I say". Usually the child responds with either rebellion or passivity (which is paralysis of the soul). The child becomes a puppet without a functioning will. In both cases he ends up the prey of the Jezebel spirit.

Physical incest is the act of rape. It occurs without consent. A spirit of incest and rape alights upon the victim and his or her descendants. They become carriers of incest and are subject to rape: emotionally, if not spiritually. A person sinks into depression and grief if raped by a spirit of incest. He or she begins to emotionally and spiritual bleed as a result of the emotionally and spiritual haemorrhage. If haemorrhage continues, a death wish arises. Paranoia also arises, emerging from rape-induced fear. Events are blown out of proportion. There is a loss of truth and reality. Paranoia breeds intimidation, mistrust and suspicion.

There is something called the twin spirit of incest. People are bound together. Some embrace and some receive it whether they want it or not. They entwine in the spirit. A person can project a twin spirit. His voice, face and actions will begin to plague the involuntary twin. This is a psychic intrusion. With time, the involuntary twin is left fatigued and a prey of illness. His life-force has been stolen, leading to torment, insanity and murder.

A spirit of incest may cause learning difficulties, retardation and physical deformities (e.g. Down's syndrome). It can cause someone to become large and bloated. The spirit may contribute towards testicular, uterine and breast cancer, and paranoia of cancer.<sup>1023</sup>

#### 5.4.10.7 Bastard and Incest Curses

*2 A person begotten out of wedlock shall not enter into the assembly of the Lord; even to his tenth generation shall his descendants not enter into the congregation of the Lord.*

*3 An Ammonite<sup>1024</sup> or Moabite shall not enter into the congregation of the Lord; even to their tenth generation their descendants shall not enter into the assembly of the Lord forever*

*Deuteronomy 23:2-3*

Earline Moody states that anyone whose ancestors in ten generations created a bastard or participated in incest is cursed. God has issued a three to four generational curse against the family line of those who worship other gods (Exodus 20:5), but He has issued a curse for ten generations on those who conceive bastards or practice incest. God is more concerned

---

<sup>1023</sup> Ibid., p. 108-109, 111

<sup>1024</sup> An Ammonite is an incest generation (see Genesis 19:30-38)

about what is done to the offspring than about worship of other gods. He further explains that a bastard child is a child who is conceived before the parents are married. The child is a bastard, even if the couple gets married after conception, because the sin of fornication was committed before marriage. If a child is conceived in incest, it is also a bastard. The child can have both the curses of incest and of being a bastard.<sup>1025</sup>

A bastard or incestuous person will never be content in any church and will wander from church to church. The person will cause trouble in the churches attended. The results of this curse fall on those conceiving the bastard, on the bastard, and on all other children born to either of them. It also falls on all of their children who are conceived inside a legitimate marriage. It falls on ten generations of descendants beginning with the bastard. When a bastard is conceived in lust, it is not true love. True love is protecting and providing. Neither is present when the bastard is conceived. Demons of lust will follow all children of this line. Besides lust, other sexual demons especially will follow them and try to gain entrance.

Most babies conceived as bastards are not wanted by one or both parents. The child will have more than normal trouble with rejection, anger escalating unprovoked murder on people whom they do not even know, and lust escalating to uncontrolled lust. They will harbour hate, envy and jealousy. They will be unsettled and irresponsible. These people have a hard time sticking to a job, whether this be an education, a profession or a marriage. They have a hard time with all intimate relationships, trouble with co-workers, sexual impurity and abnormalities, and alcohol and drugs. Fascination with crime and the occult distract them from their success. A co-operating chain of demon families work together to destroy these people in their family life, work and Christian life. These demonic families might include Ahab, Jezebel, Asmodeus, Rejection, Bitterness, Rebellion, Automatic Failure, Self-Hatred, and Obsessive-Compulsive Behaviour.

People with the bastard curse on them have trouble with religious deception. They cause trouble and strife in churches and groups. These demons will push people into ministry before they are grounded in Biblical principles. The intent is to destroy them before they gain sufficient strength and knowledge to stand against the attack of the demons. These people will fall into two extremes: they will spoil for a confrontation or refuse to confront an unpleasant situation. They will dwell excessively on their problems with self or others, or they seem to be able to pretend to or ignore problems.

---

<sup>1025</sup> Moody, E, Incest and Bastard Curses [Online] Available from: [www.deliveranceminister.com](http://www.deliveranceminister.com) [Accessed: 29 August 2014]

Whilst in the womb, they were unwanted or an abortion was attempted or considered. Because of the hurt they have suffered, they become hardened and have a difficult time receiving friendship, and in giving and receiving love. They often choose a mate who will not be able to give and receive love either. They have difficulty trusting themselves or others, and often trust the wrong people, thus housing more hate and hurt. Present day observations of society include more bastards, family and personal rebellion, sickness, suicide, can't feel welcome or at peace in God's house, physical deformities, delinquency, murder and mental illness.

The bastard curse opens the legal doorway to three opposing spirits: the spirit of bondage (meaning slavery), the spirit of fear (which is the opposite of faith; it is faithlessness or lack of trust), and the spirit of corruption (meaning perishing, decay). Believers can observe and discern the obvious effects of these spirits (bondage, fear and corruption) and their related spirits (such as rejection, anger, offence). But what is not obvious is their parentage, the legal authority permitted by the bastard curse.

A person affected by the bastard curse is unwilling to be governed by the Spirit of God. This shows up in their inability to have close fellowship with both the Lord and with fellow believers. Instead, they are often attracted to laws and legalism. They become hardened and easily estranged from fellow Christians, quickly offended, unwilling to change focus from themselves, consumed with the same.<sup>1026</sup>

The curse of the bastard can cause the following in an individual's life: venereal diseases, insanity, gonorrhea, staggering gait, chancroid (soft), heart disease, granuloma inguinal, blindness, spirochetal infections, ulcerative lesions, syphilis, yaws, congenital syphilis, bejel, gonorrheal arthritis, pinta, venereal lymphogranuloma, relapsing fever, AIDS, topical ulcers, meningitis, rat-bite fever, endocarditis, Weil's disease, sterility, herpes I and II, feeble-mindedness, alcoholism and epilepsy.<sup>1027</sup>

---

<sup>1026</sup> Malan, C E M (2008) An Exposition of Fear from a Biblical Perspective and its Effect on Mankind, specifically the Christian. Master's degree. Calvary University, pp. 118-119, 121, 133

<sup>1027</sup> Moody, G B, The Deliverance Manual. Deliverance Ministries. Unpublished, p.550

#### 5.4.10.8 Bestiality

The most perverted and degrading form of sexual immoralities is bestiality – sex with animals. This creates a very degenerate mind, physical deformities and is a form of Satan worship. Satan hates mankind and wants him to be lower than the animals. Bestiality can lead to horrible offspring who are evident today in families who have animal physical features. The person performing the act creates a type of demonic tie with that animal.<sup>1028</sup>

#### 5.4.10.9 Rape

Rape is defined as the unwanted penetration of the vagina, anus or mouth of another person. Statutory rape is penile penetration of any child below the age of consent to sexual intercourse. The frequency of rape is difficult to assess and is surrounded by much controversy. Sexual crimes are likely to be under-reported to the police for a variety of reasons including embarrassment, shame and fear.

Overwhelmingly, victims of rape know the rapist, who is likely their partner, an acquaintance, an ex-partner or a date. Only 8% of rapes were committed by men not known to the victim. There is good reason to believe that rape is associated with anger in the majority of offenders, as childhood abuse, rejection and isolation are common in sex offenders.<sup>1029</sup>

Rape may manifest itself in a variety of forms<sup>1030</sup>:

1. *The power-assurance rapist.* These rapists are concerned with dealing with their deep-rooted insecurities about their masculinity. Force is not great and threats may be involved. Weapons use is not common. Usually the rape is planned. 'Trophies' such as clothing might be taken.
2. *The power-assertive rapist.* This type of offender is sexually confident. Rape expresses his virility and sexuality and power over women. Victims may be found in social locations such as pubs or parties. Initially his manner is friendly but may quickly change. Violence is extreme, especially in later stages.
3. *The anger-retaliatory rapist.* This offender has high levels of anger towards women such that degrading activities may be involved in the rape. It involves short intense attacks.

---

<sup>1028</sup> Brand, C, Sexual Brokenness and Deviation Part 3. Pretoria: RÂDÂH. Unpublished, pp. 12-13

<sup>1029</sup> Howitt, D (2006) Introduction to Forensic Criminal and Psychology. Essex: Pearson Education Limited, pp. 134-138

<sup>1030</sup> Ibid, pp. 140-141

4. **The anger-excitement rapist.** This offender gains pleasure and sexual excitement from viewing the distress of his victim. The infliction of pain is common and violence is at such high levels that the victim may be killed. Torture is common. There is careful methodological planning. Victims are usually total strangers to the rapist. Photos or video recordings might be taken.

#### **5.4.10.10 Sexual Fantasy**

It is commonly accepted that sexual fantasy, especially violent sexual fantasy, has some role to play in the most serious sexual crimes, certainly including sexual murders. There is a process by which somewhat obsessive sexual fantasies escalate in frequency and extremity. Eventually those may lead to violent and sexual criminal acts. Following this there may be satiation. This sort of escalating cycle of fantasy is described in writings dealing with paedophiles. Fantasy-reduction and fantasy control is an important theme in the therapy employed with sex offenders. Research seems to have established that child molesters tend to have more fantasies about children when they are in a negative mood state, feeling depressed or miserable.<sup>1031</sup>

The Lord is clear in His Word that the believer has to take every thought captive (2 Corinthians 10:50) and keep his mind on what is good and pure and up lifting (Philippians 4:8).

#### **5.4.10.11 Paedophiles and Child Molestation**

Paedophilia is sexual abuse of youngsters below the age of consent. The paedophile has a mental abnormality but this does not mean that he is suffering a psychotic illness. Many sex offences are committed by young people, including ones against children. Child molesters are often classified as fixated or regressed. Fixated paedophiles are halted in their psychosexual development so that they retain a sexual interest in children. Regressed offenders have matured sexually but have returned to an earlier stage of psychosexual development. The regressed offender is much more likely to be an intra-familial (incestuous) offender but can offend against children outside their family.

---

<sup>1031</sup> Howitt, D (2006) Introduction to Forensic Criminal and Psychology. Essex: Pearson Education Limited, pp. 134-138

Only a minority of paedophile acts involve penile penetration and many involve non-contrast offenders such as flashing and peeping. Bribery rather than other more violent forms of coercion is typical of paedophile contact with children. Internet paedophile offenders can commit a number of offences but ones associated with child pornography are the commonest.<sup>1032</sup>

There are two types of child offenders:

- *Fixated offenders.* They are developmentally fixated on a permanent or temporary basis such that their sexual interest is in children rather than adults.
- *Regressed offenders.* They are men who matured in their sexuality but demonstrated a return to an earlier level of psychosexual development. Their psychosexual history would show primary interest in peer age or adult individuals rather than younger ones.

Youthful offenders can be divided into three categories: (1) paedophilic – generally the paedophile's first offence was committed between the ages of 6 and 12 years. They consistently molest younger children and prefer female victims; (2) sexual assault – these offenders first reported offences between 13 and 15 years of age but their victims may vary substantially and include victims both older and younger than themselves; and (3) mixed offences – these are youngsters who commit a variety of offences such as sexual assault, molesting younger children, exhibitionism, voyeurism and frotteurism.

Overall, youthful sex offenders in general tend to have the following characteristics: lower socio-economic class origins; pathological family structures and interaction style; fathers who were physically neglected as a child; mothers who were physically abused as a child; father who were commonly inclined to substance abuse; and many of them were victims of sexual abuse as a child themselves.

#### **5.4.10.12 Consequences of Sexual Perversity**

The Word teaches that in the last days at the time when the two witnesses are killed in Jerusalem, sexual perversity will be rampant (Revelation 11:7-8; Isaiah 1:9-10; Ezekiel 16:46, 53, 23:3; Matthew 24:37-39; Luke 17:26-30). God's directive on the consequence of

---

<sup>1032</sup> Howitt, D (2006) Introduction to Forensic Criminal and Psychology. Essex: Pearson Education Limited, pp. 152 -

people who choose to disobey His commandments and live in the world in all manner of perversity is severe<sup>1033</sup>:

1. They will not inherit the Kingdom of God (Romans 1:29; Galatians 5:19; Colossians 3:5; Ephesians 5:5; 1 Corinthians 6:9; Deuteronomy 29:23; Hosea 11:8; 2 Peter 2:6).
2. They will suffer poverty (Leviticus 18:24-25, 28).
3. They will suffer insanity. Romans 1:27 says *And the men also turned from natural relations with women and were set ablaze (burning out, consumed) with lust for one another—men committing shameful acts with men and suffering in their own bodies and personalities the inevitable consequences and penalty of their wrong-doing and going astray, which was [their] fitting retribution/recompense.* Recompense (Greek word is apolambano) means receiving back in full. There is an ungodly reward (or punishment) to be received in full with sodomy. Isaiah 3:9 declares, *Their respecting of persons and showing of partiality witnesses against them; they proclaim their sin like Sodom; they do not hide it. Woe to them! For they have brought evil [as a reward upon themselves].* The reward is not only insanity, but the whole countenance, appearance, and apparel will begin to reflect upon a person, and down the family line. The mannerisms, speech and dress will all be affected, either moderately or severely. Shame will be on the countenance ... and so will death. Romans 1:28 states, *And so, since they did not see fit to acknowledge God or approve of Him or consider Him worth the knowing, God gave them over to a base and condemned mind to do things not proper or decent but loathsome.* Reprobate (Greek word is adokimos) means a mind which God cannot approve, which must be rejected by Him. A reprobate mind is a much tormented mind; a degenerate mind; a depraved mind; a mind that will not be able to receive the engrafted Word of Truth and Faith. If there is sodomy in a bloodline that has not been repented of and broken, the resulting fruit could be insanity and torment, keeping the minds bound.
4. They will be slaves (Romans 6:16-32). Sodomy is one of the greatest chains of slavery and ownership of another's body. A person bound by perversion is a slave or a bondsman of Satan. A sodomite is referred to as a dog in Deuteronomy 23:18. Prostitution and sodomy take the victims as slaves and cause them to be treated as

---

<sup>1033</sup> Buys, A, The Defiled Bride, Sodomy and Sexual Abuse. Kanaan Ministries, pp. 48-56

animals. A prostitute can actually wear a dog-collar, use a whip and handcuffs and become a total slave. The spirit of sodomy opens the door to a spirit of slavery filled with filth and perversion.

5. They will suffer isolation (Leviticus 18:22-23, 29). When a person has been defiled by sodomy or a spirit of prostitution and harlotry, and is left with guilt and a defiled conscience and a suppression of the conscience, the next step is for them to withdraw into isolation, cutting off from relationships, into alienation and separation. Such a person feels that no one wants him. They have no peace and communication ceases. Isolation of the human soul is the deepest pain that a person can experience. The alienation is a pain unto death. Sodomy and bestiality come with a curse of isolation and exile, even within a marriage, and great loneliness and pain will enter into a marriage. The effects of the counterfeit relationship bring the pain of a Job experience.
6. They will be murderous (Psalm 106:38-39; Deuteronomy 19:10; Jeremiah 22:17). A reprobate mind is capable of murder because it has no restraints. There is a spirit of murder that comes with sodomy. The spirit of murder can come down the family line with insane rage and murder. When rape destroys a person's virginity, the rapist has murdered and shed blood. A person can come into a marriage with rape or sodomy in the bloodline. It can be that this person then expresses a need for anal sex. Sodomy in the family line will bring perversion and burning lusts that will produce the fruit of murder. Sodomy murders its victim emotionally, psychologically and spiritually. It also murders self-esteem, future and destiny. A person who has been defiled by a spirit of sodomy can receive of the spirit of murder. The victim must be set free from this spirit. With the spirit of murder can also come a spirit of violence. With loss of emotional control from sodomy, a person can demolish and destroy a home with violence. The victim can also turn the spirit of murder and the spirit of violence inwards on themselves – with self-mutilation and suicide.
7. They will be sick and suffer (Romans 1:24-32). Homosexuality can lead to HIV, STDs, and rare bowel diseases. Sodomy comes with a curse of death, dishonour of the body, deception, ungodliness, unrighteousness, idolatry of the body, vile affections, burning in lusts, shame, and a reprobate mind against the natural. Because of the element of 'uncleanness', diseases such as herpes II and AIDS are prevalent. Rare bowel diseases such as Amebiasis (a parasitic colon disease which causes dysentery and liver abscesses), Giardiasis (a parasite that causes diarrhoea), shigellosis (another bowel



disease causing dysentery) and Hepatitis A (a viral liver disease spread by faecal contamination are rife). It has been reported that sodomy suppresses the immune system even without AIDS. Sodomy has a higher prevalence of Hepatitis B. Sodomy creates bleeding lesions in the bowel and related areas.

Sexual sins can be the cause of the following in an individual's life: venereal diseases, insanity, gonorrhea, staggering gait, chancroid (soft), heart disease, granuloma inguinal, blindness, spirochetal infections, ulcerative lesions, syphilis, yaws, congenital syphilis, bejel, gonorrheal arthritis, pinta, venereal lymphogranuloma, relapsing fever, AIDS, tropical ulcer, meningitis, rat-bite fever, endocarditis, Weil's disease, sterility, Herpes I and II, injuries, mumps, accidents, diseases and structural damage.<sup>1034</sup>

#### **5.4.11 Demonic Entities associated with Sexual Immorality**

##### **5.4.11.1 Asmodeus**

Also known as Aeshma, Ashmedai, Ashmodai, Asmoday, Asmodius, Hasmoday and Sydonay, Asmodeus is a demon of lust and of jealousy, anger, and revenge. His chief objectives are to prevent intercourse between husband and wife, wreck new marriages, and force husbands to commit adultery. He is also one of the chief demons involved in cases of possession.

Throughout history, he has been regarded as one of the most evil of Satan's infernal demons. He is usually portrayed as having three heads, those of an ogre, a ram and a bull, all sexually licentious creatures; having the feet of a cock, another sexually aggressive creature; and having wings and the tail of a serpent. He rides on a dragon and breathes fire. Asmodeus has his roots in ancient Persia. His name is derived from Aeshma, one of the seven archangels, or am-arahspands, of Persian mythology. The Hebrews absorbed him into their mythology where he attained the highest status and most power of all his legends. According to the Hebrews, he is the son of Naamah and Shamdon. Prior to his fall from heaven, he was part of the seraphim, the highest order of angels. In other Hebrew legends, he is either associated with or as the husband of Lilith, the demon queen of lust. Sometimes he is said to be the offspring of Lilith and Adam.

---

<sup>1034</sup> Moody, G B, *The Deliverance Manual*. Deliverance Ministries. Unpublished, p. 585

He spreads the wickedness of men, plots against newlyweds, spreads madness about women through the stars, ruins the beauty of virgins and commits murders. He is forever thwarted by Raphael and the smoking liver and gall of a fish, especially the sheatfish, which lives in Assyrian rivers. He has knowledge of the future. Asmodeus was absorbed into Christian lore, becoming one of the Devil's leading agents of provocation. Witches were said to worship him, and magicians and sorcerers attempted to conjure him to strike out at enemies. Grimoires of magical instruction sternly admonish anyone seeking an audience with Asmodeus to summon him bareheaded out of respect. He rules gambling houses. He is the first and chief under Amaymon and goes before all other demons. He gives the ring of virtues and teaches arithmetic, geometry, astronomy and all handicrafts. When properly summoned, he gives full and true answers to all questions. He can make a person invisible and will reveal all treasures under the guard of Amaymon.<sup>1035</sup>

#### **5.4.11.2 Hermes**

Mercury was a Roman god but in Greece he was called Hermes. Hermes is believed to be the personification of Light and the Son, the Mediator, redeemer and saviour. It was Hermes who was an astrologer and who was also attributed with initiating men into magic and the founder of occult science, especially Alchemy. Hermes was the first to proclaim himself as 'the light of the World'. Satan and Hermes are one. He is called the Dragon of Wisdom, the serpent, identical with the god Hermes, inventor of the first initiation of men into magic, the author of serpent worship.

Hermes is Trickster in a different role as messenger, a god of the crossroads, and finally the leader of souls to and from the underworld. His phallus penetrates from the known into the unknown world, seeking a spiritual message of deliverance and healing. Among the goddesses he was, it appears, the lover of Persephone, Hecate and Aphrodite. Among the nymphs, whom he pursued in the shady depths of forests, his conquests were wider. By them he had a numerous progeny. Hermes was called the lord of the phallus and male and female at once. This sexual union is very prevalent in Masonic symbolism.

Among the pagan mythologies, Mercury or Hermes, was always represented by a cubical stone. These gods are purported to have many sexual encounters, nor is it a great astonishment to learn that these encounters are not only with girls but also with boys. Sexual

---

<sup>1035</sup> Guiley, R E (2009) *The Encyclopedia of Demons and Demonology*. New York: Infobase Publishing, pp. 18-19

perversions of all kinds have always been associated with mythology, witchcraft and Satanism.<sup>1036</sup>

#### 5.4.11.3 Set/Sirius

In ancient Egypt, Set was worshipped with obscene, homosexual rituals. In mythology Set himself is involved in incest for he married his sister, Nephthys. Set was also involved in adulterous affairs for he had at least two other consorts: Septet (Dog star) and Kheksit.

#### 5.4.11.4 Baphomet

Baphomet represents the powers of darkness combined with the generative fertility of the goat. In its pure form, the pentagram is shown encompassing the figure of a man in the five points of the star - three points up, two points down - symbolising man's spiritual nature. In Satanism, the pentagram is also used, but since Satanism represents the carnal instincts of man, or the opposite of the spiritual nature, the pentagram is inverted to perfectly accommodate the head of the god, its horns, representing duality, thrust upwards in defiance; the other three points inverted, or the trinity denied. The Hebraic figures around the outer circle of the symbol which stem from the magical teachings of the Kabala, spell out 'Leviathan', the serpent of the watery abyss and identified with Satan. These figures correspond to the five points of the inverted star – the symbol of Baphomet.<sup>1037</sup>

#### 5.4.11.5 Satan

Satan, like Baphomet, is often pictured as a hermaphroditic deity, having a male phallus and the breasts of a woman. He is the horned god of the witches, symbol of sex incarnate. The god of witches is sexual, but sexuality is seen as sacred. He wears horns seen as waxing and waning crescents of the goddess Moon, and the symbol of animal vitality. He is black as darkness, as night is seen as the time of power and part of the cycles of time. The god of witches is the god of love, a love which includes sexuality, wild and untamed as well as gentle and tender. In witchcraft, sex is a sacrament, *an outward sign for inward grace*.<sup>1038</sup>

---

<sup>1036</sup> Brand, C, Sexual Brokenness and Deviation Part 2. Pretoria: RÂDÂH. Unpublished, pp. 23-25

<sup>1037</sup> Brand, C, Sexual Brokenness and Deviation Part 2. Pretoria: RÂDÂH. Unpublished, p. 47

<sup>1038</sup> Ibid., pp. 10-11

#### **5.4.11.6 Ammon and Moab**

Moab and Ammon were brothers, children of incest involving Lot and his two daughters (Genesis 19:37-38). But given the incestuous origins of Moab and Ammon, these people sinned just like their parents. Moab led Israel into Baal worship on its way into Canaan (Numbers 25:1-3). Both the Ammonites and the Moabites hired Balaam to curse Israel as it journeyed toward the Promised Land and were thus forbidden to enter the Lord's assembly (Deuteronomy 23:3-4).

Therefore, the spirit of Moab and Ammon is one of fornication, incest, idol worship and child sacrifice.

#### **5.4.11.7 Marine Spirits**

Marine spirits are the principal demons in charge of adultery, fornication, abortion, incest, homosexuality, lesbianism, pornography, polygamy and other sexual perversions.

These demons are boastful and extremely proud, stubborn and incorrigible. Some marine agents have weapons in their palms: evil stones or pins. Some have serpentine tongues; they can abuse anyone. Most of them are talkative. They often talk themselves out of every good thing in life. Some have mirrors on their foreheads laden with wicked spiritual power. Some have demonic chains around their necks. Others have cowries inside their bodies.

Some women with marine spirits have dangerous plantations in their breasts. Many marine agents have serpentine spirits inside their reproductive organs. That is why they are addicted to sexual immorality, keeping them in perpetual bonds of sin. Marine spirits kill children who cannot defend themselves.<sup>1039</sup>

*See Chapter 4 - 4.7.1.10 Marine Witchcraft and 4.7.5.9 Mami Wata*

---

<sup>1039</sup> Olukoya, D (2002) Power against Marine Spirits. Nigeria. MFM Ministries, pp. 9-24, 68

#### 5.4.11.8 Kaeseme

Kaeseme (also Kisimi) is the spirit of first sexual encounter and comes in during the first act of fornication. This spirit is the originator of sexual fantasy dreams, a run-away spirit.

#### 5.4.12 Fear

*For God did not give us a spirit of timidity (of cowardice, of craven and cringing and fawning fear), but [He has given us a spirit] of power and of love and of calm and well-balanced mind and discipline and self-control.*

*2 Timothy 1:7*

*<sup>18</sup> There is no fear in love [dread does not exist], but full-grown (complete, perfect) love turns fear out of doors and expels every trace of terror! For fear brings with it the thought of punishment, and [so] he who is afraid has not reached the full maturity of love [is not yet grown into love's complete perfection]. <sup>19</sup> We love Him, because He first loved us.*

*1 John 4:18-19*

Fear is a present-oriented state that occurs in response to real or imagined danger or threat. Some of these threats are present in the here and now (e.g. a situation that is dangerous or distressing), while others are in response to what is going on inside the person (e.g. a disturbing physical sensation, a thought, or a memory of the past), and some are a combination of these. Fear is typically characterised by a sudden and heightened gush of the sympathetic branch of the autonomic nervous system, accompanied by intense physiological changes (e.g. increased perspiration, rapid heartbeat, breathlessness, increased blood pressure) and a powerful action tendency to fight or flee from signs of threat or danger. Fear is also associated with greater alertness and a narrowing of attention so that the individual's attention stays focused on the event that brings forth the fear. Under most circumstances, fear is perfectly adaptive because it serves an important function: it motivates and mobilises the individual to take defensive action. Both the physiological and psychological changes that are associated with fear are designed to maximise the behavioural effectiveness of the individual to avert the threatening event.<sup>1040</sup>

---

<sup>1040</sup> Eifert, G H and Forsyth, J P (2005) Acceptance and Commitment Therapy for Anxiety Disorders. Oakland: New Harbinger Publications Inc., pp. 15-16

Classifying panic as an intense fear response and as an action tendency means that it is an emotional alarm response: it serves to bring forth motion. It is that strong urge to escape that leads people to avoid places where escape could be difficult (e.g. movie theatres, large shopping malls, formal social gatherings). If the action tendency is actually blocked, the intensity of fear increases. A specific phobia is a marked, persistent, and excessive or unreasonable fear of a specific object or situation. Exposure to the feared object usually produces an immediate and intense fear reaction (i.e. a panic attack). This alarm response is accompanied by a strong urge to flee from the object or situation and may be accompanied by significant impairment and distress about the fear.<sup>1041</sup>

The core feature of all anxiety disorders is unrealistic fear: fear of failure, fear of catastrophe, fear of the unknown. The perfect love of God casts out all fear (1 John 4:18). If God is truly sovereign and fully in control of all things, then to be anxious and fearful is to question His sovereignty and love for mankind. In the Sermon on the Mount, Jesus speaks directly to those who are anxious and fearful about their daily lives.<sup>1042</sup> In reality, fear is the 'negative faith' of Satan. Someone who fears actually believes what Satan dictates more than God's Word; when one allows fear to reign in his life, he expects punishment. Fear is directly opposed to God's laws and the result thereof will be death.<sup>1043</sup>

*But the fearful, and unbelieving, and the abominable, and murderers, and whoremongers, and sorcerers, and idolaters, and all liars, shall have their part in the lake which burneth with fire and brimstone: which is the second death.*

*Revelations 21:8 KJV*

*For God hath not given us the spirit of fear; but of power, and of love, and of a sound mind.*

*2 Timothy 1:7*

Hear this and meditate on it: *Man will serve whom or what he fears.*<sup>1044</sup>

---

<sup>1041</sup> Ibid., p 19

<sup>1042</sup> Stanford, M S (2008) Grace for the Afflicted - Viewing Mental Illness Through the Eyes of Faith. USA: Inter-Varsity Press, p. 106

<sup>1043</sup> Robeson, J and C (1984) Strongman's His Name ... What's His Game? USA: Whitaker House, p.128

<sup>1044</sup> Bevere, J (1997) The Fear of the Lord. United States of America: Charisma House.

#### **5.4.12.1 The Fear of Man Leads to Witchcraft**

King Saul is a good example of how a man with a true commission from God can fall into this counterfeit spiritual authority. When Saul was commanded to wait for Samuel before offering the sacrifice, he succumbed to the pressure and offered it prematurely, because, *I saw that the people were scattering from me ... and that the Philistines were assembling* (1 Samuel 13:11). This is the same point where most who fall from true authority do it – when we begin to fear the people or the circumstances more than we fear God, we will fall from walking in true authority. When we start to fear the people leaving more than we fear God leaving we have departed from true faith.

The fear of man opposes the fear of God. Because witchcraft is basically rooted in the fear of man, and the fear of man brings a snare (Proverbs 29:25), those who begin to operate in witchcraft are trapped, and fear is the snare. The bigger the project or ministry that we have built with the hype, manipulation or control spirits, the more we will fear anyone or anything that we cannot manipulate or control. Those who are caught in this deadly trap will fear those who walk in the true anointing and authority the most. That is because those who walk in true spiritual authority are the least affected by the manipulation or control spirits. That is why Saul became enraged at David and was consumed with destroying him, even though David was but a flea at the time. As the manipulation and control spirits increase their dominion, so will the paranoia of those who are so trapped that they will become irrationally consumed by driving out or destroying anyone who threatens their control.

Those who receive their authority, recognition, or security from men will, like Saul, end up in the witch's house; that is why Samuel warned Saul that rebellion is as the sin of Witchcraft (1 Samuel 15:23 NKJV). When one in spiritual authority rebels against the Holy Spirit, the void will be filled by the counterfeit spiritual authority of witchcraft. This may begin as the simple reliance upon hype and soul power, but without repentance it can end up in the most diabolical forms of presumption and rebellion, as we see in the case of King Saul. Saul killed the true priests, persecuted the ones whose hearts were true to the Lord, and spent his last night in the house of a witch as the natural conclusion of the direction his life had taken.

Spiritual authority is a dangerous occupation. If the believer is wise, like David, he will not seek a position of authority, and he will not even take one which is offered until he is certain that the Lord is the One giving it. Satan tempts everyone called by God with the same temptation he offered to Jesus – if the believer will bow down to him and his ways he will

give the believer authority over kingdoms. God has called man to rule over kingdoms, too, but His way leads to the cross and can only be attained if he becomes servant of all. Satan's temptation is to offer the quick and easy path to the place God has in fact called man.<sup>1045</sup>

*Fear no man, lest you make him an idol of your heart.*<sup>1046</sup>

On the other hand, the fear of God includes, but is not limited to, respecting and reverencing Him, for the believer is to tremble at His presence. Holy fear gives God the place of glory, honour, reverence, thanksgiving, praise and pre-eminence He deserves.<sup>1047</sup>

#### 5.4.12.2 Anxiety

Anxiety is an inner feeling of apprehension, uneasiness, concern, worry, or dread that is accompanied by heightened physical arousal, often interchangeably used with words such as stress, fear, phobia and tension. In times of anxiety, the body appears to be on alert, ready to flee or fight. The heart beats faster, blood pressure and muscle tension increase, neurological and chemical changes occur within, sometimes perspiration appears, and the person may feel faint and jumpy, unable to relax. Anxiety can arise in response to some specific identifiable danger, or it may come in reaction to an imaginary or unknown threat. This latter kind of anxiety has been termed *free-floating*; the anxious person senses that something terrible is going to happen but does not know what it is or why.

Various types of anxiety have been identified including normal and neurotic, moderate and intense, state and trait. Normal anxiety comes to everyone at times, usually when there is some real threat or situational danger. Most often, this anxiety is proportional to the danger (the greater the threat, the greater the anxiety). It is anxiety that can be recognised, managed, and reduced, especially when circumstances change. Neurotic anxiety involves intensely exaggerated feelings of helplessness and dread, even when the danger is mild or non-existent.

Anxiety can vary in its intensity and influence. *Moderate anxiety* can be desirable and healthy. Often it motivates, helps people avoid dangerous situations and leads to increased efficiency. *Intense anxiety*, in contrast, is more stressful. It can shorten one's attention span,

---

<sup>1045</sup> Joyner, R (1995) *Epic Battles of the Last Days*. USA: Whitaker House pp.74-75

<sup>1046</sup> Ibid.

<sup>1047</sup> Bevere, J (1997) *The Fear of the Lord*. United States of America: Charisma House.



make concentration difficult, cause forgetfulness, hinder performance skills, interfere with problem solving, block effective communication, arouse panic, and sometimes cause unpleasant physical symptoms such as paralysis, rapid heartbeat or intense headaches. *State anxiety* often comes quickly, may or may not be of high intensity, and has a short duration. This is an acute, relatively brief apprehensive reaction that comes to all of us from time to time, usually as a response to some threat, and at times experienced as excitement. *Trait anxiety*, on the other hand, is a persistent, ever-present, ingrained emotional tension. It is seen in people who appear to worry all the time. Often it causes physical illness because the body cannot function effectively when it remains in a perpetual state of tension and arousal.

Two other types of anxiety have attracted media and professional attention during the past several years: *post-traumatic stress disorders (PTSD)* and *anxiety disease*. Intense stress (like dangerous military conflict, rape, terrorist violence, involvement in a serious accident, kidnapping, or natural disasters such as a tornado or earthquake) can leave a lifelong legacy of anxiety. For years after the trauma, people may have nightmares, irrational fears, depression, worry, and loss of interest in activities that once were pleasant. For these people, anxiety has become a way of life that follows in the wake of an earlier stress experience. These post-traumatic stress disorders have been seen frequently in war veterans, but they are persisting anxieties that can occur in any person following any traumatic experience. *Anxiety disease* is a term used to describe sudden, terrifying, intensely severe panic attacks that come to apparently normal people, often without warning, and frequently when they are least expected. An estimated 5% of the population, mostly women, experiences these panic reactions. For many years this anxiety was assumed to be a psychological disorder, but increasing evidence now indicates that the root is biological.

In the Bible, anxiety is used in two differing ways, as healthy concern and as fret or worry. Anxiety in the form of realistic concern is neither condemned nor forbidden. Although Paul could write that he was not anxious (that is, worried) about the possibility of being beaten, cold, hungry, or in danger, he said that he was anxious (that is, concerned) about the welfare of the churches. This sincere care for others put a daily pressure on the Apostle (2 Corinthians 11:28) and made Timothy genuinely anxious as well (concerned and interested) (Philippians 2:20).

Anxiety as fret and worry may have been in the psalmist's mind when he wrote that anxiety was great within me, and that God's consolation brought joy (Psalm 94:19). In his Sermon on the Mount, Jesus taught that we should not be anxious (worrying) about the future or about life's basic needs, such as food and clothing. We have a Heavenly Father, Jesus said, who knows what we need and will provide (Matthew 6:25-34). In the New Testament Epistles, both Peter and Paul echoed this conclusion. *Do not be anxious about anything*, instructs Philippians 4:6-7. Instead, Christians are to bring their requests to God, with an attitude of thanksgiving, expecting to experience the peace of God which transcends all understanding. Man can cast all anxiety upon the Lord because God cares for man (1 Peter 5:7).

Anxiety as fret and worry comes when a person turns from God, shifts the burdens of life on to himself and assumes, at least by his attitudes and actions, that he alone is responsible for handling problems. Instead of acknowledging God's sovereignty and power, or seeking His kingdom and righteousness first (Matthew 6:33), many people slip into sinful self-reliance and preoccupation with their own life pressures. According to the Bible, there is nothing wrong with honestly facing and trying to deal with the identifiable problems of life. To ignore danger is foolish and wrong. But it also is wrong, and unhealthy, to be immobilised by excessive worry. Persisting concerns must be committed in prayer to God, who can release man from paralysing fear or anxiety, and free him to deal realistically with the needs and welfare both of others and of ourselves.<sup>1048</sup>

Anxious people often are impatient people who need help in handling their pressures realistically and within God's perfect time schedule. Anxiety arises from threat, conflict, fear, unmet needs, physiology and individual differences.<sup>1049</sup>

When anxiety is intense, prolonged or uncontrollable, however, people begin to experience crippling physical, psychological, defensive and spiritual reactions.<sup>1050</sup>

1. *Physical Reactions.* Anxiety can produce ulcers, headaches, skin rashes, backaches, and a variety of other physical problems. Almost everyone has experienced stomach discomfort, shortness of breath, inability to sleep, increased fatigue, loss of appetite, and frequent desire to urinate during times of anxiety. Less conscious are changes in blood pressure, increased muscle tension, a slowing of digestion and chemical changes in the

---

<sup>1048</sup> Collin, G R (1988) Christian Counselling. Vancouver: Word Publishing, pp.77-80

<sup>1049</sup> Ibid., pp.80-84

<sup>1050</sup> Ibid., pp.84-86

blood. If these are temporary they cause little, if any, harm. When they persist over time, though, the body begins to break under the pressure. This is the origin of psychosomatic (psychologically caused) illnesses.

2. *Psychological Reactions.* Everyone who has taken an examination or applied for a hard-to-get job knows how anxiety can influence psychological functioning. Anxiety can reduce productivity, hinder interpersonal relations, stifle creativity and originality, dull the personality and interfere with the ability to think or remember.
3. *Defensive Reactions.* When anxiety builds, most people unconsciously rely on behaviour and thinking that dulls the pain of anxiety and makes coping easier. These defensive reactions often come to light in counselling. They include ignoring the feelings of anxiety, pretending the anxiety-producing situation does not exist, convincing oneself that there is "nothing to worry about", rationally explaining away the symptoms, blaming someone else for one's problems, developing physical illnesses that distract from the anxiety, or slipping back into childish ways of responding. Sometimes people escape through alcohol, drugs or withdrawal into various kinds of mental illness. All of these are various attempts to cope.
4. *Spiritual Reactions.* Anxiety can motivate one to seek the divine help that might be ignored otherwise. Although foxhole conversions were probably less common than once thought, there is evidence that many people do turn to God in times of stress. But anxiety can also drive people away from God at a time when He is most needed. Fraught with worry and distracted by pressures, even religious people find there is less time for prayer, and decreased desire or ability to concentrate on Bible reading, reduced interest in church worship services, bitterness about heaven's seeming silence in the face of crisis, and anger because God seems to let bad things happen to good people.

Ultimately, unhealthy anxiety is a form of self-indulgence which results either in a paralysis of the will or inappropriate actions. Anxiety frequently results in the inability to make decisions, bringing forth double-mindedness and confusion.<sup>1051</sup>

---

<sup>1051</sup> Whitehouse, D and Devey G (1996) Understanding Anxiety. England: Gazelle Books, p. 35

### **5.4.12.3 Stress**

Although the concept of stress is widely acknowledged, there is little scientific consensus about its definition. Most theorists agree that stress can be adaptive, that it is precipitated by demand or by threatening or harmful events, and that it is often associated with negative moods. Because both biological and psychological response systems are activated, some theorists argue that stress is an emotion. Others maintain that stress is best described as a 'general state of arousal that prompts and supports action directed toward dealing with the stimulus'. Operational definitions of stress also vary and can include measures of precipitating events (such as the number of major life changes a person experiences in a given time frame); psychological, physiological, or behavioural responses common in stress; or both the event and the responses. Regardless of how it has been measured, stress appears to be a fundamental component of adjustment and adaptation to environmental change.

All of the current theories on stress characterise the processes through which stress unfolds differently, but they all assume that stress has an adaptive function involving arousal of bodily response systems that prompt changes to re-establish homeostasis. Stress which is unusually intense or sustained can cause pathology. Integrative depictions of stress define it as a negative emotional experience accompanied by predictable biochemical, physiological, and behavioural changes that are directed toward adaptation either by manipulating the situation to alter the stressor or by accommodating its effects. After an appraisal of a situation as threatening or harmful, activation of both specific and nonspecific responses continue until the source of stress is eliminated or its effects have been accommodated. This catabolic fight-or-flight reaction is beneficial in the short term but can result in negative physical and mental health effects if these emergency responses are extreme or prolonged. Variability in the stress process occurs through environmental and personal factors that alter stress appraisals and choice of coping efforts.<sup>1052</sup>

Is life more stressful now than it was a century ago? It could conceivably be argued that pressures are greater at this time in history because of the present pace and complexity of life, the technological changes that demand constant adjustment and communication capabilities that give a person immediate information about international tensions or problems in the neighbourhood.

---

<sup>1052</sup> Gallagher M and Nelson R J (2003) Handbook of Psychology, Volume 3, Biological Psychology. New Jersey: John Wiley & Sons, Inc., p. 442

The stresses that lead to mental illness could be divided into at least three categories: biological, psychological, and social. *Biological stresses* include disease, the influence of drugs, toxins or pollutants in the air, brain damage, or physical deprivations such as a lack of nutrients or insufficient sleep. Get overly tired and the person is likely to be impatient and depressed. Get exhausted and the signs of abnormality are even greater, at least until the person has time to rest.

*Psychological stresses* include personal frustrations, inner conflicts, fears and feelings of insecurity. With some frequency, newspaper reports describe the suicides of students who get distraught over an inability to pass important examinations. In a society that values success and achievement, it is very difficult for some people to face failure, especially if they set high standards for themselves or feel pressure from teachers, employers and family members.

Family pressure can be one of the *social stresses* that push some people toward mental disorders. When there is economic uncertainty, widespread unemployment, or political instability, some people cannot handle the tension and uncertainties. Even the physical environment has an effect. Prolonged periods of heat, darkness, crowding, noise, or other stressful circumstances can make coping more difficult and increase the likelihood of mental disorders.<sup>1053</sup>

Numerous studies have shown that when people are chronically stressed in life, they are vulnerable to depression, anxiety and other disorders. Interestingly, 70% of the adults in one recent European war situation were found to have depression, which is a normal human response to relentless stress. Researchers presently think that the mechanism that triggers this depression is the depletion of certain neurotransmitters, particularly serotonin and norepinephrine, which may lead to other biochemical imbalances. For instance, most people diagnosed with schizophrenia have their first psychotic episode during such stressful situations as leaving home for college or military service. Genetic factors may add to a person's susceptibility to mental illness by lowering the body's production of neurotransmitters during difficult life transitions. The same combination of circumstances might affect the development of high blood pressure, diabetes, or ulcers in some families.<sup>1054</sup>

---

<sup>1053</sup> Collin, G R (1988) Christian Counselling. Vancouver: Word Publishing, p. 474

<sup>1054</sup> Encyclopaedia of Mental Disorders, Origin of Mental Illness [Online] Available from: <http://www.minddisorders.com/Ob-Ps/Origin-of-mental-illnesses.html> [Accessed: 27 June 2014]

Stress becomes detrimental when coping strategies are ineffective, demand exceeds ability to cope, or activation of psychological, behavioural, and physiological response systems is sustained or unusually intense. Among the systems affected is the immune system, a key component of overall survival because of its critical role in protection from disease. Although all stress response systems work in concert, the immune system has received considerable attention because of its role in infection and disease. The relationships among stress, coping and immunity are explored after separate discussions of major conceptual models of stress, the strategies people use to cope with stress, and the growing literature on stress-related immune changes.<sup>1055</sup>

Tics are a stress release. Many addictions are a stress release. Children who do not talk, or who do not stop talking can both be signs of an inner stress flowing over in fear. When fear then goes over in terror such which can manifest in night terrors or tantrums, this must never be ignored but dealt with as soon as possible. Night terrors and tantrums are both stress releasers for something bigger. Insanity can start in childhood because children are more open to the spiritual world and can see things that adults are unable.<sup>1056</sup>

#### **5.4.12.4 Worry**

Worry disturbs every area of a person's life – spirit, soul, *and* body. Worry distorts reality and causes a situation to appear much worse than it actually is. Worry is anxiety regarding the future. The Bible is clear in Matthew 6:25-34 that the children of God must not fear. Christ instructed five times: do not be anxious about tomorrow. In this passage one finds a good definition of worry. *Worry* is simply negative thinking – negative thinking about persons, places, things or conditions. Worry is never positive. If a person is anxious, his mind is distressed and apprehension of danger or misfortune is tormenting him.

The late Dr Lester Surnrall explains that worry is a form of fear. It manoeuvres from the outside to the inside. It is not a normal, natural situation, especially for the child of God. Worry involves foreboding about the future: What's going to happen tomorrow? Where am I going to get my next dress? Will I lose my job? Worry is a lack of confidence in God's

---

<sup>1055</sup> Gallagher M and Nelson R J (2003) Handbook of Psychology, Volume 3, Biological Psychology. New Jersey: John Wiley & Sons, Inc., p. 441

<sup>1056</sup> Personal Interview with Professor Dr Connie Brand, 4 November 2014.

protection and provision. One cannot have a full trust in the Lord Jesus Christ and be worried. When the believer is fully trusting and confident in the Lord, he is not anxious.<sup>1057</sup>

### **5.4.13 Unforgiveness**

Unforgiveness is the single most popular poison that the enemy uses against God's people. Unforgiveness can cause everything from mental depression to health problems such as cancer and arthritis. Not every single case of cancer is due to unforgiveness, but unforgiveness can certainly be the cause of cancer.<sup>1058</sup>

Jesus teaches in His Word that one needs to forgive others – multiple times – over and over again. There is no sense sacrificing to God if one has anything against his brother (Matthew 5:22-25). Before a person can take the splinter out of his brother's eye, he must first take the mote out of his own (Matthew 7:4-5). There is simply no excuse for unforgiveness. Unforgiveness is disobedience and rebellion against God.

#### **CASE STUDY**

Someone hurt them, so their pride smoulders in self-righteousness and resentment. They subsequently dedicate their lives to revenge, self-pity, and bitterness. They find themselves in all kinds of torment and physical problems-heart trouble, cancer, hypertension, kidney failures and diabetes and they still refuse to forgive. Some wear all of the trespasses people ever did to them on their sleeves. It becomes almost a badge of heroism, like a Purple Heart medal given to the wounded in battle. "Tell me your troubles; and I'll tell you mine." They love to put this sad "poor me" face on and cry on your shoulders for hours. They wring their hands and weep profusely, but they don't want to change. They measure their friends by how much sympathy each one gives. They love their pity parties and righteous indignation. Asking them to give up their bitterness is akin to asking them to cut off their right arms. They would rather die to be right, and often they do. They seek the advice of believers but don't want to give up their hatred. They often end up being manic depressives or schizophrenics.

Forgiveness is hard to give because it hurts to extend it to those who are undeserving and hard-hearted. To release a wrong-doer instead of exacting a just penalty requires that we reach out in love, rejecting the temptation to be ensnared by bitterness and resentment. This is contrary to our natural inclinations; thus the old saying: "To err is human, to forgive divine". Forgiveness takes place when the victim accepts the loss or injury done him and deliberately cancels the debt owed him by the offending person.

---

<sup>1057</sup> Sumrall, L (1983) *You can conquer Worry*. South Bend, Indiana: Sumrall Publishing Company, p. 4

<sup>1058</sup> Great Bible Study, Unforgiveness [Online] Available from: [http://www.greatbiblestudy.com/unforgiveness\\_poison.php](http://www.greatbiblestudy.com/unforgiveness_poison.php) [Accessed: 22 August 2014]

Jesus Christ willingly received all the hurt and evil of the entire human race in His own body on the cross (1 Peter 2:21-24) to pay the debt for man's guilt. He now offers what He has wrought as a free gift to undeserving and guilty persons so they can be free (Romans 6:23; John 10:28-30). As nothing else will, forgiveness takes a person into the mysteries of grace where God forgives unconditionally on the basis of the substitutionary payment by another (Mark 11:25-26). One of the fruits of the Holy Spirit's work in a life is the quality of meekness. It is a quality which is nurtured and abetted by practicing forgiveness.<sup>1059</sup>

#### 5.4.13.1 Bitterness

*Let all bitterness and indignation and wrath (passion, rage, bad temper) and resentment (anger, animosity) and quarreling (brawling, clamor, contention) and slander (evil-speaking, abusive or blasphemous language) be banished from you, with all malice (spite, ill will, or baseness of any kind).*

*Ephesians 4:31*

Bitterness is the greatest tool at Satan's disposal. It is the seedbed of every demonic work, the direct result of unforgiveness. Satan lies in waiting for unforgiveness. Bitterness comes through relationships. Humankind is made to live with love and acceptance and not with bitterness.

Bitterness is a principality; under it and answering to it are seven spirits that reinforce bitterness<sup>1060</sup>.

1. *Unforgiveness*. When the root of bitterness gets a foothold, the first thing that happens is a record of wrongs. Unforgiveness gives the enemy a legal claim and he moves in to oppress and torment.
2. *Resentment*. Resentment is the record of wrongs that are now being fuelled by feelings of holding unto it and starting to meditate, chewing on it. Resentment can come from four areas: unmet needs (bitterness against family), abuse (bitterness against family or others), hurts (coming from relationships, bitterness against family or others), and circumstances of life (e.g. Naomi in Ruth 1-4, often bitterness against God).

---

<sup>1059</sup> Demon Buster, Unforgiveness [Online] Available from: <http://www.demonbuster.com/unforgiv.html> [Accessed: 26 September 2014]

<sup>1060</sup> Fontaine, D. Fiona Possess the Land. Teaching Seminar, City of Life, South Africa. Unpublished, p.26



3. *Retaliation.* After resentment has started to simmer, ways are found to get back at the person who caused it. Retaliation wants to make the person pay.
4. *Rage/Anger/Wrath and Hatred.*
5. *Violence and murder.*
6. *Rebellion.*
7. *Deception and perversion.*

Each spirit that answers to bitterness – whether unforgiveness, resentment, retaliation, anger, wrath, hatred, violence or murder – is progressively more dangerous than the other and more powerful than the one before. When the final spirit interacts, the conclusion of the matter will literally produce spiritual and physical death. The kingdom of bitterness will separate you from God, carry you into apostasy, bondage, disease, insanity and ultimately into desolation.<sup>1061</sup>

Bitterness pollutes one's whole system. It comes out in one's speech; it is seen in one's actions and revealed in one's attitudes. The Christian's physical health breaks down and it pollutes others. Bitterness builds walls of isolation which gives way to fear of further hurt, fear and distrust of people, fear of inner hurts and weaknesses being exposed, and loneliness. Bitterness always results in broken relationships.

Richard Ing teaches that in handling cases of multiple and split personalities (some call them alters or alter personalities), unforgiveness and bitterness play a large role in poisoning the mind and attitudes of the rejected person. Women, in general, tend to become bitter when rejected. Men, on the other hand, tend to become fearful. If the root of rejection is allowed to grow, many other spirits can enter.<sup>1062</sup>

*<sup>14</sup> Strive to live in peace with everybody and pursue that consecration and holiness without which no one will [ever] see the Lord.<sup>15</sup> Exercise foresight and be on the watch to look [after one another], to see that no one falls back from and fails to secure God's grace (His unmerited favor and spiritual blessing), in order that no root of resentment (rancor, bitterness, or hatred) shoots forth and causes trouble and bitter torment, and the many become contaminated and defiled by it.*

*Hebrews 12:14-15*

---

<sup>1061</sup> Wright, H, Bitterness [Online] Available from: [http://www.beinhealth.com/public/content/newsletter/newsletter-68-bitterness-part-1?theme=bi\\_h\\_r1](http://www.beinhealth.com/public/content/newsletter/newsletter-68-bitterness-part-1?theme=bi_h_r1) [Accessed: 30 September 2014]

<sup>1062</sup> Ing, R (2008) Waging Spiritual Warfare. Whitaker House: United States of America, pp. 61-62

Bitterness is one of the spirits that enters through hard bondage (Exodus 1:14). The Lord revealed Himself as a Healer at Marah (Exodus 15:23-26). *Marah* is the Hebrew word for bitterness. There is a relationship between bitterness and sickness (cancer and arthritis). Spirits of infirmity have a legal right to enter and operate through bitterness. A root of bitterness can result from a lack of grace, causing defilement and trouble (Hebrews 12:15). Harlotry and sexual sin can open the door for bitterness (wormwood) (Proverbs 5:4). Bitterness can enter parents through foolish children (Proverbs 17:25). A person can be in the 'gall of bitterness' which leads to witchcraft and sorcery (Acts 8:23).

Bitterness also results in the heart turning away from God, hardness of heart, bitterness toward God for misfortunes in life, and not appropriating God's grace. Indeed, bitterness opens doors to resentment, anger, hostility, hatred, unforgiveness, retaliation and even murder and suicide. Other manifestations of bitterness include envy and strife (James 3:14), sharp and bitter words (Psalm 64:3) and complaining (Job 23:2).<sup>1063</sup>

#### 5.4.14 Occult Involvement

<sup>18</sup> *There is no fear in love [dread does not exist], but full-grown (complete, perfect) love turns fear out of doors and expels every trace of terror! For fear brings with it the thought of punishment, and [so] he who is afraid has not reached the full maturity of love [is not yet grown into love's complete perfection].* <sup>19</sup> *We love Him, because He first loved us.*

*Deuteronomy 29:29*

<sup>2</sup> *Nothing is [so closely] covered up that it will not be revealed, or hidden that it will not be known.* <sup>3</sup> *Whatever you have spoken in the darkness shall be heard and listened to in the light, and what you have whispered in [people's] ears and behind closed doors will be proclaimed upon the housetops.*

*Luke 12:2-3*

The word *occult* comes from the Latin *occultus* meaning hidden. The occult is a system of religious beliefs or rituals pertaining to the supernatural, that which is beyond the range of natural knowledge. It is rooted in idolatry. It is based on a farming term in Latin meaning *cultivation*. Sociologists and anthropologists sometimes use the term *cult* to describe

---

<sup>1063</sup> Eckhard, J (2004) Deliverance and Spiritual Warfare Manual. Chicago: Crusaders Ministries, p. 19

religious structure or belief patterns with meanings unique to their disciplines. In modern usage, the term cult is often used by the general public to describe any religious group they view as strange or dangerous.<sup>1064</sup> Thus, cult can describe religious leaders or organisations that employ abusive, manipulative or illegal control over their followers' lives. The occult religious expression could contain:

- the worship of self as the supreme will;
- a belief that Satan is a Christian invention designed for controlling people; or
- the conjuring and manipulation of supernatural Influences, agencies, or phenomena for one's own purposes and gain.

Occultism can be endorsed in movies, in video games, play station games, on television and in literature as one of the following:

- creatures that have both human and non-human form and characteristics;
- beings with paranormal (psychic) powers who call upon some strange gods to fill themselves with special supernatural powers; and
- people who are normal but can change into a different being by calling upon an element in nature (air, fire, earth, water, ethers).

A person who studies or practices any form of the occult sciences (such as divination, magic, mysticism, spiritualism, and so forth) is called an *occultist*. There are three main categories of the occult:

1. seeking carnal knowledge/sins of the flesh and eyes, including all forms of sex sin, including pornography (e.g. Satanism);
2. seeking knowledge of the future (e.g. divination); and
3. seeking supernatural power (e.g. spiritism).

God commands man not to be involved in the occult. He commands man to be separate from the occult so that men and women can be His people (Leviticus 20:24-26) without distraction. Seeking occult power or knowledge is essentially soliciting the help of demons or false gods. This directly disobeys God's command: *You shall have no other gods before Me* in Exodus 20:3. God has told man to seek Him for everything in life. Jesus explained: *You shall love the Lord your God with all your heart and with all your soul and with all your mind and with all your strength* in Matthew 22:37. This leaves no room for other gods. Part of God's nature is that He desires people's full devotion and attention – He is a jealous God and a consuming fire (Deuteronomy 4:24).

---

<sup>1064</sup> Fouche, A C M (2005) Exposing the Hidden Secrets of the Bloodlines, South Africa a Case Study. Master's degree, pp. 37-39

Involvement in the occult, whether innocent or otherwise, can result in strong curses. Scary nocturnal visitors, ghostly apparitions, voices, and bizarre happenings may occur in a person's life as he or she becomes involved in the occult. Some feel oppressed and sense a dark presence. Others begin to hear voices at night and even during the day. The voices often start out sweet and charming but end up as screams full of rough, filthy, blasphemous words. Some see things at night – a shadow of a head, hands, or legs; forms floating around; forms disappearing around corners; things moving around without human hands; or objects simply disappearing. Some report loud voices at night and feel their spirits leaving the bodies in levitation or astral projection without effort and against their wills. A few report nightmares of being forced into perverted sex with a half-goat, half-man beast, while other spirits ogle on and cheer. They wake up physically bruised and exhausted. Nightly visitations leave them tired and desperate.<sup>1065</sup>

Other occult activities that bring curses are the following: the use of Ouija boards, participation in séances, fortune-telling, tarot cards, palm reading, I Ching, crystals, B-balls, astrology, dousing, face reading, consulting psychics, holistic healing, acupuncture, martial arts, foreign religions, Dungeons and Dragons, voodoo, folk superstitions, Indian sorcery, folk healing using 'good' spirits, chants and rituals, occultist music and also plain old witchcraft.

Kurt Koch describes superstition and occult customs as the greatest contaminator of the soul of all time, stemming as it does from fear and the desire for power. To close the door to faith is to open the door to superstition and all the rest. To put it another way, if mankind reject God, Satan himself will plague them.<sup>1066</sup>

#### **5.4.14.1 Fertility Cults**

The act of corporate worship of false gods through harlotry and idolatry is a fertility cult.<sup>1067</sup>

The worship of Baal and Astarte was a fertility cult, a cult of lust. Together they symbolise the generative power of nature. Astarte is known as the Queen of Heaven; she is acknowledged as the goddess of love and also known as Venus and Ashtoreth, the goddess

---

<sup>1065</sup> Ing, R (1966) *Spiritual Warfare*. Whitaker House: United States of America, p. 95

<sup>1066</sup> Kock, K E (1991) *Occult Practices and Beliefs*. A Biblical examination from A to Z. Grand Rapids, Michigan: Kregel Publications, p.11

<sup>1067</sup> Kitchen Y and Triplett D (2000) *Jezebel's Murder*. A Fruitful Vine Publication, p. 6

of Sidions (1 Kings 11:5). Astarte, the goddess of fertility, was also known as the star, and fertility rites were often connected to the stars. Baal is the pagan god of fertility, the outpouring of male seed and believed to be a giver of life (occult conception). Baal is known as the god of Mars, the blood-red planet. These two gods are the fullness of uncleanness and sin – sexual immorality and occult lust.

The goddess Astarte is a goddess of the stronghold of Jezebel. Sexual immorality is the major characteristic of Jezebel. She teaches the practice of immorality and comes with all kinds of lust and perversion in the church to trap God's people.

Babylon worship is also a fertility cult. Babylon virginity was also symbolised by wearing a cross around the neck or upon the forehead, but is actually a sign of Babylonian immorality. Babylon at work is immorality and destruction that keeps getting passed down the generations. With the spirits of Babylon come martyrdom, assassination and false accusation.

Spiritual Babylon is a symbol of confusion, rebellion and idolatry. It is the following<sup>1068</sup>:

- the foundation of rebellion against God;
- the foundation of human religion, idolatry and harlotry;
- the spiritual city and civilisation of unredeemed people who have not acknowledged Jesus as their Lord and Saviour;
- the spiritual stronghold that attempts to replace the Kingdom of God with human or demonic substitutes; and
- a symbol of religious, political and commercial confusion.

The worship of fertility is a lost virginity, illegitimacy and prostitution. The foundation of fertility cults lies in rebellion, stubbornness, witchcraft and lawlessness. In fertility cults, fornication and adultery are encouraged and even commanded, while bisexuality, sodomy, incest, lesbianism, harlotry, prostitution and transsexual activity and the duality of sexes are also all part of the cult.<sup>1069</sup>

---

<sup>1068</sup> Kitchen Y and Triplett D (2000) Jezebel's Murder. A Fruitful Vine Publication, p. 9

<sup>1069</sup> Buys, A, How Fertility Cults devour our Blessings. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished, p. 25

#### 5.4.14.2 The Celts and Druids

The Celts are a family of tribes occupying large swathes of Europe between 2000BC. and the second century who migrated and expanded as far East as Asia even to China and from archaeological evidence, central Turkey and as far West as Britain and Ireland, their empire taking in Spain, Germany, Belgium, Switzerland, Italy, Greece, Austria, Hungary and Romania. Much of the domestic, social, artistic, literary, and cultural rites, rituals, and festivals can be traced right back to the ancient Celts.

In Celtic society of the ancient world, tribal communities were divided into various classes. Above the common people such as peasants and the artisans were the warrior class and then the ruling classes such as kings and chieftains. There was another ruling class of people called the Druids and Druidesses. They were equivalent to the Brahmins in India, a priestly class.

The Druids were the intellectual guardians of the unwritten ancient law, reservoirs of Celtic knowledge which included knowledge gathered from other civilizations such as the Mesopotamians, Sumerians, Akkadians, Egyptians, Greeks, Norse and Phoenicians. They linked the Celtic peoples with their numerous gods, performing a role similar to modern priests as they formed the mediation between gods and man. Druids were of the noble class, taking over twenty years to learn the philosophy, divination, poetry, healing, religious rites and magic. All this they committed to memory, not writing anything down, training in caves and forests and in sacred groves within forests, the lore being passed from master to initiate. In Irish and Welsh texts, Druids were teachers, healers, seers, wizards but not priests, unlike Gallic Druids they did not pray to any god nor did they appear to have performed any sacrifice. They were more like sorcerers.

The Celts did not build temples to their gods, the Druids worshipping in the open air in sacred groves or near sacred lakes or shrines. The Stone circles, in particular Stonehenge, are thought to be Druid temples. They believed in the souls being immortal, passed on to another body at death. They believed in reincarnation or eschatology. They also believed in a guardian spirit of the tribe translated as *dispater* which is Jupiter or Jovis Pater. Caesar translated this as Father Hades.

Druids practiced magic and witchcraft but also healing and divination, acting as shamans and medicine men, making talismans and spells to ward off evil. They were

physicians/priests/healers gathering herbs to make poultices, pronouncing incantations and prescribing 'drugs'. In magic, some Druids used wands, shape-shifted, had power over animals and used metamorphoses.

In ancient Celtic society, the Druids and Druidesses were called the intellectual elite. Druidesses were called the wise women, sometimes bondswoman, female seers and sorceresses, female magicians or witches. As the so-called wise ones, in some accounts they are the origins of WICCA (male) and WICCE (female), the ones of the craft of the wise which in modern English is the *WICCA CRAFT* or *WITCHCRAFT*. The witch priest was the Flamen; the priestess called the Flamenca. In Rome the sacrificial priests were called Flamen, their wives Flaminica, from the Latin word *flamma*, a blazing fire, heat, a flame, to be inflamed. Flammeoleum was the bridal veil they wore, the flame-coloured bridal veil the colour of blood.

Druidesses used magic to shape-shift and to turn people into animals in legend. They used magic to turn themselves into beautiful women or ugly old hags using the powers of sorcery, using herbs to heal, to hurt and to hallucinate for spirit travel. Both Druids and Druidesses used different forms of divination: Astrology, Augery, listening to animals, dreams, visions flights of birds, interpretation of signs, and Haruspicy, the cutting open the belly of an animal to observe the entrails (this was adopted by the Romans and Etruscans). Part of divination was to hear the screaming voice of the child in the womb and interpret it. They hurled spells against the elements and used them as curses. Druids were able to produce insanity and bewitchment in their victims.<sup>1070</sup>

#### 5.4.15 Secret Societies

The Oxford Universal Dictionary defines *secret society* as "An organisation formed to promote some cause by secret methods, its members being sworn to observe secrecy". Many cults may be characterised as secret societies as many of their memberships, proceedings, procedures and rituals are kept secret. Secret societies are illegal in several countries.

According to the Reverend Alexander Hislop, author of the book *The Two Babylons, The Papal Worship*, secret societies can be traced back to Nimrod, who became, after his death,

---

<sup>1070</sup> Buys, A, The Druidism root and its Fruits. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished, pp. 4-16

the first of sacred mortals. After the great flood, survived only by Noah and his family, a mighty man and warrior arose in what is now known as ancient Babylon. His name was Nimrod, and he commanded a tremendous presence upon what is today known as Ancient Babylon. Nimrod established a satanic system of idolatry openly, with many people flocking to this worship. At this time, the predominant religious system that ruled the world was the worship of the One True Trinity God. Soon after Nimrod established his alternative religion, based upon witchcraft and idolatry, Shem, one of Noah's sons, was greatly angered and was motivated by Almighty God to remove Nimrod. Shem militarily attacked Nimrod, defeating him and taking him prisoner.

Shem executed Nimrod and many of his satanic priests and followers. As an example of the thorough nature of his victory, Shem ordered Nimrod's body to be cut into pieces. Each of these pieces was sent throughout the known world to demonstrate to everyone that the worship of Satan through idolatry and witchcraft would not be tolerated. The world seemed safe from this tide of evil. However, Nimrod's wife, Semiramus, and some surviving priests, joined forces to create a secret, underground religion. They deified Nimrod, creating a counterfeit to the True Messiah, Jesus Christ. They created a system of Satanic Mysteries destined to spread over the entire world. The teachings of these 'Mysteries', as they came to be called, very subtly led men back to the very system of Nimrod's magic and idolatry, which Shem had so vigorously destroyed. This false path was made appealing to men by promising them hidden knowledge, by enticing them with the allure of keeping such knowledge secret, and binding them together with severe oaths and secret signs and handshakes. This, then, was the beginning of the secret societies, starting several generations after the great flood, in approximately 2200 B.C. Secret Societies have existed, therefore, for over 4,000 years of human history; they literally were Satan's church from the beginning. Through the ages and still today, members of the occult are taught that certain subjects were revealed to men in secret societies. Some of these subjects include geometry, astronomy, physics, medicine, higher mathematics, music, art, literature and the planting of subliminal messages.<sup>1071</sup>

Many cults may be characterised as secret societies as many of their memberships, proceedings, procedures and rituals are kept secret. All secret societies have very specific stipulations and rules for being part of the organisation and everyone associated with the organisation must take a vow of secrecy bound by conditions. If the vow of secrecy or any other related covenant should be broken by any member, curses will be released against the

---

<sup>1071</sup> Fouche, A C M (2005) Exposing the Hidden Secrets of the Bloodlines, South Africa a Case Study. Master's degree, pp. 42-43



individual, his or her loved ones and descendants, curses causing calamity, sickness, diseases and even death. Fear plays a very important part of any secret society, as fear keeps many people in bondage: fear of death, fear of sicknesses, fear of loss of loved ones. The same is applicable for curses. The results of the secret society interaction will be dependent on what was done via rituals. For example, in Freemasonry rituals include death and resurrection, blood oaths and phallus worship.

#### 5.4.15.1 Freemasonry

Freemasonry is a fraternity of men in a brotherhood bound by witchcraft and other works of the flesh. Freemasonry is overtly a business organisation as well as a religious organisation. The result of the participation in Freemasonry is that men are bound concerning prayer: they cannot pray. A lie of infallibility, stubbornness and pride comes into the home and rule with a rod of iron. These men betray their families and the result is grief to the wife and to the children. They enter into a false, ungodly priesthood. Freemasonry men become gods and many become male chauvinists, dominating women. The symbol of freemasonry stands for idolising male sexuality and the worship of male reproduction, resulting in hatred and contempt of women down the family line.

The foundation of Freemasonry is based on Mystery Babylon and Nimrod the high priest and sorcerer of Freemasonry. In the very first degree taken, a candidate is given the title 'the Entered Apprentice'. He is actually becoming a sorcerer's apprentice and moves into a full-blown sorcerer as he progresses. Operating in idolatry, witchcraft and divination Freemasonry leaves the following legacy: grief, fear, depression, anger, rage, favouritism, rebellion, hatred of authority, shame, despair, suicide, control and manipulation.<sup>1072</sup>

Following are the known curses (individual and bloodline) resulting from Freemasonry on the family:<sup>1073</sup>

- *Chronic Financial Curses.* The first symptom of a financial type curse is evident if there is a history of debt, bankruptcy, poverty and lack of gain in the family.
- *Chronic Sickness and Disease.* Chronic simply means of long duration, or frequent occurrence, constantly vexing, weakening or troubling. The signs of this curse include a sickness from childhood that persists throughout life.

---

<sup>1072</sup> Buys, A, Prayers of Renunciation: Secret Societies. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished, pp. 3-4

<sup>1073</sup> Ibid., pp. 4-7

- **Chronic Female Problems.** Another common household sign of a curse is frequently and simply the presence of female problems, taking many different forms. One form is barrenness and lack of productivity. Fruitfulness and multiplication have always been the signs of blessings, and lack of children is the sign of a curse. Yet another is miscarriages. Ladies who have repeatedly miscarried (once confirmed pregnant) can also take on the secondary curse (spirit) of grief, sadness and or depression. According to the Word of the Lord, and within the writings of Hosea 9:14, idolatry is one of the primary causes of miscarriage. These female-type problems can obviously include severe cramps, PMS, tormenting pain during their monthly cycles, tumours and growths in the abdomen and womb (e.g. hysterectomy). Fallopian tube infections or ill operating ovaries are common, especially in freemasonry-orientated families. Curses of infirmity operate in these areas resulting in idolatry.
- **Accident Proneness.** Merely being accident-prone is a curse in itself. The word *prone* means to have a tendency or inclination toward.
- **Marital Problems.** The household is one of the hardest hit areas of all, for the foundation of the household is the strength of the marriage union. Marital problems can be as simple as continuous arguments, fights or quarrelling, and these problems are easily rooted generationally (their parents also suffered with these same issues/curses).
- **Premature Death.** Contrary to popular belief, people often die before their appointed time. Wickedness in the family will often open a door to the curse of death and destruction and this curse acts quickly, giving no heed and no quarter.
- **Mental Problems.** One should never discount mental problems as being curses – for even the secular society is convinced and accepts that mental illness is generationally inherent. This includes the fear of insanity.

For those who have been involved in the Shriners (this applies in America only), the following curse is operative<sup>1074</sup>: The oaths involved in the Ancient Arabic Order of the Nobles of the Mystic Shrine – the piercing of the eyeballs with a three-edged blade, the flaying of the feet, the madness, and the worship of the false god Allah as the god of our fathers.

---

<sup>1074</sup> Buys, A, Prayers of Renunciation: Secret Societies. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished, pp. 25

#### 5.4.15.2 Knights Templar

The Knights Templar, a group that existed during the twelfth, thirteenth, and early part of the fourteenth centuries, had numerous charges laid against them, among others, the denial of Christ and defiling of the cross, adoration of an idol and ritual murders. The Knights Templars' confessions show them to have been basically a homosexual warrior order, like the Japanese samurai.

The Knights Templar participated in black magic and pederasty (anal intercourse, usually with a boy). They practiced phallicism, or sex-worship, and Satanism and venerated 'The Baphomet', the idol of the Luciferians. The crime of sodomy was a rite of Templar initiation. There was also a ritual kiss which involved a series of four kisses, the last one being a kiss on the anus or on the private parts. The demise of the Knights Templar came in 1314 when the last Grand Master, Jacques DeMolay, was burned at the stake. The Templars survived under a deep shroud of secrecy, and it was not long before they began taking their revenge, one that would extend some 400 years into the future. Many writers contend that Masonry is the continuation of the Knights Templars.

The Knights Templars, as it turned out, had been masters of deception, experts in duplicity, appearing to serve Christ on the surface while worshipping Lucifer in their inner rites. Fertility was symbolised by the egg, the serpent, the organs of generation (then wholly a mystery) and in Egypt especially, by the bull.<sup>1075</sup>

#### 5.4.15.3 Rosicrucianism

Rosicrucianism is an occult secret society allegedly founded in 1407 in Germany by Christian Rosenkreutz, who was under the influence of Egyptian occultism. The Rosicrucians are devoted to the pursuit of esoteric wisdom. They combine elements of Egyptian Hermeticism, Gnosticism, Jewish Cabalism, and other occult beliefs and practices.

One of the chief practices in Rosicrucianism was alchemy. In alchemy, the serpent is the *serpens Mercurii*, the quicksilver that represents the constant driving forward of psychic life forces: living, dying and being reborn. The serpent is the *prima materia*, the unformed and dark chaos, from which order and life spring. Alchemical art often shows the serpent wearing

---

<sup>1075</sup> Brand, C, Sexual Brokenness and Deviation Part 2. Pretoria: RÂDÂH. Unpublished, pp. 48-51

a gold crown, gem, diadem, or light to depict its expanded spiritual consciousness. This is another way of expressing the activated kundalini or serpent power.<sup>1076</sup> A prominent occurrence to look out for stemming from Rosicrucianism is alchemic poisoning.

See Chapter 4 – 4.10.4 Occult Poisoning

#### 5.4.16 Covenants

A covenant is a mutual understanding between two or more parties (people or institutions), each binding himself to fulfil certain obligations.<sup>1077</sup> This is the case with blood covenants and even verbal agreements. When someone makes a covenant with another person, he exchanges life with that person; he becomes a partaker of his life and the other person becomes a partaker of his life. Covenants and agreements can be made via religion (churches), social or the occult.

*<sup>14</sup> Therefore hear the word of the Lord, you scoffers who rule this people in Jerusalem! <sup>15</sup> Because you have said, We have made a covenant with death, and with Sheol (the place of the dead) we have an agreement—when the overflowing scourge passes through, it will not come to us, for we have made lies our refuge, and in falsehood we have taken shelter. <sup>16</sup> Therefore thus says the Lord God, Behold, I am laying in Zion for a foundation a Stone, a tested Stone, a precious Cornerstone of sure foundation; he who believes (trusts in, relies on, and adheres to that Stone) will not be ashamed or give way or hasten away [in sudden panic]. <sup>17</sup> I will make justice the measuring line and righteousness the plummet; and hail will sweep away the refuge of lies, and waters will overwhelm the hiding place (the shelter).*

Isaiah 28:14-17

A covenant is an agreement and is binding in death and Sheol. The spiritual connectivity is in two ways – from the person to the covenant person, or institution, and back.

A blood covenant is the most enduring, most solemn and most sacred of all contracts on earth. When a blood covenant is entered into, a contract is made whereby both parties covenant to give life, love and protection forever until death parts you. It cannot be broken.

---

<sup>1076</sup> Guiley, R E (2009) The Encyclopedia of Demons and Demonology. New York: Infobase Publishing, p. 230

<sup>1077</sup> Kitchen Y and Triplett D (2000) Jezebel's Murder. A Fruitful Vine Publication, p. 6

Violating a blood covenant was punishable with death. The blood covenant originated from the earliest days, when God taught man and covenanting was a universal custom. It has been practiced in some form or another by many nations in existence. A blood covenant binds families forever, including all their descendants.

Broken covenants can influence a person on all three levels: body, soul and spirit. It can cause anything from health problems, debt, poverty, to lost blessings. Violating a blood covenant was punishable with death; therefore, death could be a result.

#### 5.4.16.1 Vows and Dedications

Parents often make vows and dedicate their children to a particular god or goddess. Orientals and Roman Catholics especially include this in their traditions. Sometimes it is a boy scout or girl scout dedication to some American Indian guide spirit, a vow and dedication to Freemasonry, or some secret society's patron saint or god. These vows give evil spirits the right to enter into a person's life. The demon will actually claim that person's soul, even though he or she has become a Christian. Sometimes a saint will report feelings that he is not saved or dreams about some strange god beckoning them. Vows and dedications must be renounced and broken by the person prayed for. <sup>1078</sup>

#### 5.4.17 Addictions

*<sup>19</sup> Do you not know that your body is the temple (the very sanctuary) of the Holy Spirit Who lives within you, Whom you have received [as a Gift] from God? You are not your own,<sup>20</sup> You were bought with a price [purchased with a preciousness and paid for, made His own]. So then, honour God and bring glory to Him in your body.*

*1 Corinthians 6:19*

In many societies, thousands of individuals are addicted to alcohol, drugs, television, compulsive spending, sexual immorality, smoking, overeating and a host of other behaviours. Workaholism (the addiction to work) has almost become a badge worn proudly by those who want to be successful. Eating disorders, a specialised form of addiction, have become a major concern within the past decade. Some people seem addicted to politics, to

---

<sup>1078</sup> Ing, R (1966) Spiritual Warfare. Whitaker House: United States of America, p. 98

physical fitness, and even to religion. An addiction is any thinking or behaviour that is habitual, repetitious, and difficult or impossible to control. Usually the addiction brings short-term pleasure, but there may be long-term consequences in terms of one's health and welfare (some have called this short-term gain with long-term pain).

Addictions tend to be progressive conditions that slowly exert more and more power and control over the individual. With many addictions, the control is both psychological and physical. The addicted person may agree that the condition is harmful, but think that but stopping seems to be impossible. Even after difficult detoxification, the drug addict often returns to the needle. Even after repeated medical warnings, the smoker may continue to puff on two packs a day or the obese person continues to overeat and shun exercise. Even in the midst of increasing sickness and dehydration, the anorexic fails to eat. The workaholic continues a self-driving lifestyle even after a near-fatal heart attack.<sup>1079</sup>

Addiction is a form of idolatry, turning to someone or something other than God to fill a need. The Bible condemns drunkenness and alcohol abuse but makes no specific references to drug abuse, eating disorders, workaholism, or most other addictions. Nevertheless, biblical principles such as the following can apply to the issue of addiction.<sup>1080</sup>

1. *Don't be mastered by anything* (1 Corinthians 6:12). It is possible to become enslaved even by actions that are permissible and not bad in themselves. In stating his determination not to be mastered by anything, Paul mentions food and sex, both of which are good in themselves but sometimes abused. In addition, the apostle criticises people who are sexually immoral, greedy, idolaters, drunkards, and in other ways mastered by behaviour that they fail to control.
2. *Obey the law*. The Bible instructs believers to be law-abiding citizens (Romans 13:1-5). It is wrong, therefore, to buy, sell, condone, possess or use any drug illegally. Violence, drunken driving, criminal actions, and other illegal acts are wrong even if they are the actions of one who is addicted.
3. *Drugs or other addictions do not resolve problems or reduce tensions*. Stress is one of the major causes of addiction. When pressures build, some people use alcohol or other drugs to hide stress and give a feeling of euphoria and a sense that all is well. Others get

---

<sup>1079</sup> Collin, G R (1988) *Christian Counselling*. Vancouver: Word Publishing, p. 507

<sup>1080</sup> Ibid., pp. 507-508

involved in work, hobbies, or recreational pursuits that distract them from stress. Temporarily these behaviours may help a person avoid responsible stress management, but ultimately the stresses cry for attention and the developing addictions no longer provide relief. Instead, the addictions create additional stress. People may try to escape from their problems through drugs, work, sexual fantasy, hyperactivity, compulsive eating, or other addictive behaviours, but all of this fails to acknowledge the scriptural directive to bring one's burdens to Christ (1 Peter 5:7) where a person can face them squarely and deal with them directly.

4. *Keep the body pure.* The Holy Spirit dwells in the body of each believer, and for this reason he must do whatever he can to keep his body free of pollutants, including drugs, excessive amounts of food, lustful thoughts, and immoral sexual behaviour. Every human body was made by God, and the believer's body belongs to Him both because of divine creation and because of divine redemption (1 Corinthians 6:19-20).
5. *Don't expect to come to God through drugs.* It is believed that psychedelic drugs can offer a superior route to discovering truth and entering into a meaningful religious experience. This conclusion denies the fact that an individual can only come to God by way of Jesus Christ (John 14:6), and that he is to come with a clear mind rather than a brain that is drugged by addictive substances.
6. *Practice temperance, self-discipline, and self-control.* These characteristics are prominent in the list of qualifications for Christian leaders (1 Timothy 3:2-3), but they apply to non-leaders as well. All believers are expected to say *no* to ungodliness and worldly passions, and to live self-controlled, upright and godly lives (Titus 1:12). As far as self-indulgence and selfish ambition are condemned (Matthew 23:25), self-control is commanded (1 Thessalonians 5:6, 8) and listed as one of the fruits of the Spirit (Galatians 5:23). Gluttony (which could involve addiction to eating), greed (which might involve addiction to possessions and material things), and lust (which could lead to sexual addiction) are all warned against and condemned.
7. *Don't get drunk.* Drunkenness is clearly and explicitly condemned in Scripture and called a sin (Romans 13:13).
8. *Be filled with the Spirit.* Ephesians 5:18 instructs the believer to avoid drunkenness and be filled instead with the Holy Spirit. A life controlled by the Spirit is presented in the

Bible as superior to any alternative, including a life filled with chemical or other addictions.

Addictions affect people in different ways; much depends on the individual, the circumstances, and the substance or behaviour to which one is addicted. Drug abuse and alcohol addiction have differing effects but both involve behaviour change, physical deterioration, family stresses, financial problems, career destruction, and increasing psychological disintegration. Addiction to marijuana is much less destructive; however, the harmful effects of this drug have recently become more apparent. Caffeine dependence is even less harmful.

Although some people are able to withdraw from their addictions without help, most need professional guidance. Psychological and physical withdrawal symptoms can be very disruptive, but the effects of withdrawal depend on the addiction. It is easier to withdraw from caffeine than from nicotine; easier to quit smoking cigarettes than to stop using cocaine. Families can be destroyed by an addict's behaviour, but families also contribute to the condition and sometimes, in their efforts to help, family members can make the addiction worse.

It is well known that drug abuse and crime often go together, causing pain to the victims and great detriment to local communities and the whole nation. On the national level, addictions of all types contribute to the further loss of billions of dollars through absenteeism, declining work efficiency, failing health, and the high cost of treatment programmes. Most pathetic, however, are the shattered lives strewn in the paths that follow progressive addictions. Spiritual emptiness, broken bodies, destroyed relationships, ruined careers, dulled brains, and deep feelings of grief and guilt are all among the costs of addictions.<sup>1081</sup>

#### 5.4.18 Substance Abuse

*I appeal to you therefore, brethren, and beg of you in view of [all] the mercies of God, to make a decisive dedication of your bodies [presenting all your members and faculties] as a living sacrifice, holy (devoted, consecrated) and well pleasing to God, which is your reasonable (rational, intelligent) service and spiritual worship.*

*Romans 12:1*

---

<sup>1081</sup> Ibid., pp.514, 517



Drug abuse is the habitual use of illegal, prescription or over-the-counter drugs for purposes other than intended. Drug abuse may substantially injure the user and interfere with social, physical, emotional and job-related functioning. Drug dependence is thought of as the body's physical addictive craving for the drugs.

Alcohol is a central nervous system depressant. It plays a prominent role in the development of at least depression and is often involved in other mental disorders. In addition, people who abuse alcohol are at increased risk of mental disorders related to nutritional deficiencies. A lack of thiamin, a B-vitamin, can result in permanent brain damage in the form of severe dementia even at an early age. People in withdrawal from alcohol are also at risk for delirium tremens, a serious condition that can result in cardiovascular shock and death.

Street drugs are well known for their effects on young people's mood and behaviour. Permanent brain damage may result from the use of some designer drugs. One example is Ecstasy, which can cause permanent memory loss and severe depression that responds only slowly to treatment. Street drugs must always be considered as a possible factor in the sudden onset of a mental illness in a young person. Moreover, drugs may precipitate a first psychotic episode in a person with a genetic predisposition to schizophrenia. In this case, the drug is the stressor that reveals the person's dormant susceptibility to the disorder.<sup>1082</sup>

Neuroleptic drugs (tranquilizers used to treat psychotic conditions when a calming effect is desired) cause diabetes. In fact, among the mentally ill, roughly one in every five appear to develop diabetes – about double the rate of the general population. This is a little-recognised surge but one that is jolting mental health professionals into rethinking how they care for an often neglected population.<sup>1083</sup>

Psychiatric drugs have the following side effects: drug-induced mania, over-activity, insomnia, racing thoughts, frantic and exhausting outbursts of energy, grandiosity and fantasies of omnipotence, paranoia, suicide, throw away their life's savings on unrealistic schemes or to ruin or quit jobs and marriages, memory, concentration difficulties, headaches and stomach-aches, sleep problems, bladder and bowel dysfunctions of various kinds, skin problems, sexual dysfunctions, weight loss or gain, tiredness or apathy, anxious or depressed feelings, irritability, and impatience, abnormal sugar or

---

<sup>1082</sup> Encyclopaedia of Mental Disorders, Origin of Mental Illness [Online] Available from: <http://www.minddisorders.com/Ob-Ps/Origin-of-mental-illnesses.html> [Accessed: 27 June 2014]

<sup>1083</sup> Kleinfeld, N R., New York Times, June 12, 2006 AD

insulin metabolism, weight gain, elevated cholesterol levels, high blood pressure, and a flattening of emotions.<sup>1084</sup>

Other drug abuse effects on health are as follows<sup>1085</sup>:

- worsening psychiatric symptoms;
- cardiovascular conditions ranging from abnormal heart rate to heart attacks;
- injected drugs leading to collapsed veins and infections of blood vessels and heart valves;
- nausea, vomiting and abdominal pain;
- significant liver damage or liver failure;
- seizures, stroke and widespread brain damage that impact all aspects of daily life by causing problems with memory, attention and decision-making;
- global body changes such as dramatic changes in appetite; and
- addictions.

#### 5.4.18.1 Prescription Drugs

*<sup>19</sup> Now the doings (practices) of the flesh are clear (obvious): they are immorality, impurity, indecency, <sup>20</sup> Idolatry, sorcery, enmity, strife, jealousy, anger (ill temper), selfishness, divisions (dissensions), party spirit (factions, sects with peculiar opinions, heresies), <sup>21</sup> Envy, drunkenness, carousing, and the like. I warn you beforehand, just as I did previously, that those who do such things shall not inherit the kingdom of God.*

*Galatians 5:19-21*

The word *sorcery* in the above Scripture is translated as witchcraft in other Bibles. The word sorcery or witchcraft that was used here is not the Hebrew word for witchcraft. That word 'witchcraft' is only used once in the New Testament and it is the Greek word *pharmakeia*, (Strong's number 5331) which means medication (pharmacy, sorcery) and is taken from the Greek word *pharmakeus*, which means drug, a druggist (pharmacist or poisoner, that is, sorcerer). The word witchcraft in this scripture is referring to the use of legal or prescription

---

<sup>1084</sup> Breggin P and Cohen D (2007) Your Drug may be Your Problem. Da Capo Press, p. 110

<sup>1085</sup> National Alliance on Mental Illness [Online] Available from:

[http://www.nami.org/Content/NavigationMenu/Hearts\\_and\\_Minds/Smoking\\_Cessation/SubAbuse.pdf](http://www.nami.org/Content/NavigationMenu/Hearts_and_Minds/Smoking_Cessation/SubAbuse.pdf) [Accessed: 8 March 2014]

drugs. The word drunkenness in this Scripture represents illegal drugs (cocaine, heroin, ecstasy, alcohol abuse).

The Greek word *do* in verse 21 means *they that habitually practice as a way of life* as opposed to a single act. So when doctors prescribe or when patients take prescription drugs on a chronic basis, it is witchcraft and sorcery, and they that do this will not inherit the kingdom of God. According to the Law of Moses in the Bible, involvement in witchcraft and sorcery of any form carries a death penalty (2 Kings 1:2-8; 1 Chronicles 10:13-14; 1 Kings 11:4-11).

According to the Word, God is not interested in disease management; He is interested in disease eradication and disease prevention. Disease management in the worldly sense means, for example, prescribing drugs for a diabetic or a person with high blood pressure for the rest of his or her life. The person is artificially maintained and manipulated by these drugs but the underlying problem that initially caused the disease is not dealt with. Disease management means a person is not free – he is not healed of his disease.

God does not want a person artificially maintained and chemically manipulated by medical drugs for the rest of his life. He wants to heal everyone and set everyone free of every disease permanently. There is a place for doctors and medication, but disease management and taking medication on a chronic basis is merely an attempt to artificially by-pass the penalty of sin (which is the curse of disease) without dealing with or taking responsibility for the spiritual sin that caused the disease in the first place. So now you have two problems – the sin that caused the disease, and the sin of witchcraft employed to artificially maintain and manage your disease.

In following the attempt of mankind to heal himself, we have opened ourselves up to occultic practices and may be following a mind-set or action that is an abomination to God because these ways of thinking and actions do not even include Him and do not line up with His Word. That is why prescription drugs are an occultic deception, offering themselves as a solution meanwhile merely functioning as a delusional safety and what Paul called 'a work of the flesh'.

Paul identified pharmaceutical drugs as a work of the flesh because he knew even in those days that most disease is due to unrighteousness practiced as a way of life and hence that the drug would keep us from being disciplined and coming to a place of repentance. God's

will is that you are not a servant of sin, that you do not have disease and that you are not 'managed' by drugs.<sup>1086</sup>

## 5.5. FALSE BELIEFS

*<sup>9</sup> Anyone who runs on ahead [of God] and does not abide in the doctrine of Christ [who is not content with what He taught] does not have God; but he who continues to live in the doctrine (teaching) of Christ [does have God], he has both the Father and the Son. <sup>10</sup> If anyone comes to you and does not bring this doctrine [is disloyal to what Jesus Christ taught], do not receive him [do not accept him, do not welcome or admit him] into [your] house or bid him Godspeed or give him any encouragement. <sup>11</sup> For he who wishes him success [who encourages him, wishing him Godspeed] is a partaker in his evil doings.*

*2 John 1:9-11*

Satan is known as a liar, and he gets away with his lies more often than not. Following are examples of instances of people in bondage due to lies being believed.

False beliefs influence an individual mostly on the soul and spirit levels, creating deception and confusion through lies.

*<sup>3</sup> But [now] I am fearful, lest that even as the serpent beguiled Eve by his cunning, so your minds may be corrupted and seduced from wholehearted and sincere and pure devotion to Christ. <sup>4</sup> For [you seem readily to endure it] if a man comes and preaches another Jesus than the One we preached, or if you receive a different spirit from the [Spirit] you [once] received or a different gospel from the one you [then] received and welcomed; you tolerate [all that] well enough!*

*2 Corinthians 11:3-4*

Satan's primary tactic in opposing God is not to foster atheism but religion; not to prove there is no God but to be worshipped as God. Satan is not an initiator but an imitator. God has an only begotten Son – the Lord Jesus – and so has Satan, the son of Perdition (2 Thessalonians 2:3). There is a Holy Trinity, and there is likewise a Trinity of Evil (Revelation 20:10). One not only reads of the children of God, but also of the children of the wicked one.

---

<sup>1086</sup> Strydom, M K (2010) Healing Begins with Sanctification of the Heart. Eagle Wings Ministries, pp. 75-76

(Matthews 13:38) As there is a mystery of godliness (1 Timothy 3:6) so also is there a mystery of iniquity (2 Thessalonians 2:7). God seals His servants in their foreheads (Revelations 7:3) by His angels, so also, Satan sets a mark in the foreheads of his devotees (Revelations 13:16) by his agents. As Christ can perform miracles, so also can Satan (2 Thessalonians 2:9). As Christ is seated upon a throne, so is Satan (Revelation 2:13 - Greek). Has Christ a Church? Then Satan has his synagogue (Revelation 2:9). Is Christ the Light of the world? Then so is Satan himself transformed into an angel of light (2 Corinthians 11:14). As Christ appointed apostles, so has Satan his apostles (2 Corinthians 11:13). Satan's counterfeit religion is openly exposed in the Bible:

*<sup>6</sup> I am surprised and astonished that you are so quickly turning renegade and deserting Him Who invited and called you by the grace (unmerited favor) of Christ (the Messiah) [and that you are transferring your allegiance] to a different [even an opposition] gospel.*

*<sup>7</sup> Not that there is [or could be] any other [genuine Gospel], but there are [obviously] some who are troubling and disturbing and bewildering you [with a different kind of teaching which they offer as a gospel] and want to pervert and distort the Gospel of Christ (the Messiah) [into something which it absolutely is not]. <sup>8</sup> But even if we or an angel from heaven should preach to you a gospel contrary to and different from that which we preached to you, let him be accursed (anathema, devoted to destruction, doomed to eternal punishment)! <sup>9</sup> As we said before, so I now say again: If anyone is preaching to you a gospel different from or contrary to that which you received [from us], let him be accursed (anathema, devoted to destruction, doomed to eternal punishment)!*

*Galatians 1:6-9*

*But also [in those days] there arose false prophets among the people, just as there will be false teachers among yourselves, who will subtly and stealthily introduce heretical doctrines (destructive heresies), even denying and disowning the Master Who bought them, bringing upon themselves swift destruction. <sup>2</sup> And many will follow their immoral ways and lascivious doings; because of them the true Way will be maligned and defamed. <sup>3</sup> And in their covetousness (lust, greed) they will exploit you with false (cunning) arguments. From of old the sentence [of condemnation] for them has not been idle; their destruction (eternal misery) has not been asleep.*

*2 Peter 2:1-3*

The Scriptures reveals that at the time of Christ's return, the world will be saturated with false religion. But take comfort in knowing that there is only one true church<sup>1087</sup>:

*Endeavouring to keep the unity of the Spirit in the bond of peace. There is one body, and one Spirit, even as ye are called in one hope of your calling; One Lord, one faith, one baptism, One God and Father of all, who is above all, and through all, and in you all. Till we all come in the unity of the faith, and of the knowledge of the Son of God, unto a perfect man, unto the measure of the stature of the fullness of Christ.*

*Ephesians 4: 3-6, 13*

Involvement to any degree in religious error can open the door for demons as follows: (1) false religions (e.g. Eastern religions, pagan religions, philosophies and mind sciences); (2) Christian cults (all such cults may be classified as bloodless religions having a form of godliness, but denying the power thereof) (2 Timothy 3:5); (3) occultism and spiritism (any method of seeking supernatural knowledge, wisdom, guidance and power apart from GOD is forbidden) (Deut. 18:9-15); and (4) false doctrine (a great increase of doctrinal errors will be promoted by deceiving and seducing spirits in the last days) (1 Timothy 4:1).

### 5.5.1 Self-Deception

<sup>14</sup> *But every person is tempted when he is drawn away, enticed and baited by his own evil desire (lust, passions).* <sup>15</sup> *Then the evil desire, when it has conceived, gives birth to sin, and sin, when it is fully matured, brings forth death.*

*James 1:14-15*

Self-deception is a false belief concerning self: one thinks he is right when he is wrong. This is a trap of the devil. It is extremely difficult for one to extricate himself from deception, a counsellor is challenged to the maximum, for the deceived believes that he needs no help. Self-deception is an outgrowth from rebellion and is rooted in rejection. The pattern is the same with all who are self-deceived. The one wounded by rejection must either respond with forgiveness or react in some sinful way. Often, the reaction to rejection is rebellion. Rebellion constitutes hatred, disrespect and dishonour which are expressed in disobedience. When a

---

<sup>1087</sup> Fouche, A C M (2005) Exposing the Hidden Secrets of the Bloodlines, South Africa a Case Study. Master's degree, pp. 35-36

person becomes rebellious he refuses to yield to valid authority. He becomes his own authority. He decides, "No authority will tell me what to do. I will do as I please". He has closed the door to correction and opened the door to self-deception. The deceived person has become non-accountable to anyone, become his own authority and refuses to accept any attempts from others to correct him.

A person will cling to deception because it appears credible. When the deception is challenged, the person feels threatened. Therefore, he will rather suffer persecution than give up his deception. Only by the grace of God will the seriously self-deceived person escape his bondage. An outward manifestation of self-deception is a preoccupation with self, as self is foremost in the person's consciousness and conversation. There is urgency to defend, strengthen, share and promote the deception. Pride is a common companion to self-deception. Pride creates a false sense of superiority. When pride and 'unteachability' join forces with self-deception, a person is snared in serious bondage. Although he has a completely false view of himself, he is blind to his own problem. Self-deception is sometimes compounded by self-delusion. The New Testament usage of this word always represents a mental straying, wrong opinion, or error in morals or religion (2 Thessalonians 2:2, 9-11).

When a lie replaces truth in a person's mind, the lie becomes fixed misconception. The delusion is clung to so strongly that all illumination is excluded. Until the deluded soul admits that he has embraced a lie and sets his will against it, further counsel is rendered useless. Even a deep understanding of the Word of God does not insure a man against becoming self-deluded, for he must not only know the truth, but he must love the truth. Another augmentation of self-deception is self-seduction. A man may be seduced by another person, but he can also seduce himself. That is, he may wilfully choose to follow moral or doctrinal error. The process of self-seduction is usually a gradual one, as one plays with temptations.<sup>1088</sup>

### **5.5.2 Religion**

Religion is the system of beliefs and practices by which a group of people interpret and respond to what they feel is a 'religion'. It is sacred, and usually, supernatural as well. Religion is found in all societies but is expressed and institutionalised in various ways. The belief in a god or gods is called theism. Of the world's major religions, Christianity, Islam and

---

<sup>1088</sup> Hammond, F D (2006) *Overcoming Rejection*. USA: Impact Christian Books, Inc., pp.56-68

Judaism are examples of *monotheism*, the belief in only one God. Hinduism, by contrast, is an example of *polytheism*, the belief in more than one God. The other major religions of the modern world do not centre on a god figure but rather on abstract principles of transcendental idealism, dedicated to achieving moral or spiritual excellence.<sup>1089</sup>

Wheeler and Springmeier declare that many religious groups are built upon a collection of truths and lies. The truths are used as the enticing attractive front; the lies are used as the enslaving bondage.<sup>1090</sup> As god of this world, Satan continues to seek out those who will worship him, but with the exception of overt Satanists, who know exactly what they are doing, Satan has worked major deception on the whole of mankind by initiating a plethora of religions, each with its own belief system and behavioural code.<sup>1091</sup>

All strange religions are demonic in origin. Most seem quite innocent while a few are overtly Satanic. On one end of the spectrum is Satanism, with human sacrifice and eerie rituals involving Satan himself, witches and warlocks. On the other end are seemingly innocuous religions such as Luciferianism, Buddhism, Hinduism, Mormonism, Scientology, Christian Scientist, Unity, and similar Christian cults. In between are religions such as Santerias, Voodoo, Kahuna, Taoism, Shintoism, Roman Catholicism, New Age, and a wide array of native religions from the South Pacific, Africa, Central America, Europe, and other parts of the world. Every area of the world has its own brand of indigenous demon worship, all of which involve the occult in one form or other.<sup>1092</sup>

Any other religion that does the following is a false religion and rooted in idolatry:<sup>1093</sup>

- rejects Jesus Christ as the son of God, born from a virgin, died and rose again, and will come again one day;
- rejects the Trinity or declares someone as co-equal with the trinity;
- rejects God in favour of worshipping idols and false gods;
- rejects the Holy Spirit and prays to dead saints and/or dead family members; and
- rejects eternal life in heaven and eternal death in hell.

---

<sup>1089</sup> Fouche, A C M (2005) Exposing the Hidden Secrets of the Bloodlines, South Africa a Case Study. Master's degree, pp. 34-35

<sup>1090</sup> Springmeier F and Wheeler C, The Illuminati Formula used to Create an Undetectable Mind Control Slave [Online] Available from: [http://www.whale.to/b/springmeier\\_formula.html](http://www.whale.to/b/springmeier_formula.html) [Accessed: 28 July 2014]

<sup>1091</sup> Horrobin, P J (2003) Healing through Deliverance. Volume 2. Grand Rapids, Michigan: Chosen Books, p.69

<sup>1092</sup> Ing, R (1966) Spiritual Warfare. Whitaker House: United States of America, pp. 96-97

<sup>1093</sup> Exposing Satanism, False Religion [Online] Available from: [http://www.exposingsatanism.org/false\\_religions.htm](http://www.exposingsatanism.org/false_religions.htm) [Accessed: 29 August 2014]



### 5.5.3 Mythology

Oxford Universal Dictionary defines a *myth* as a *purely fictitious narrative usually involving supernatural persons, actions or events, and embodying some popular idea concerning natural or historical phenomena*. The term is often used vaguely to include in any narrative having *fictitious elements* or a *fictitious or imaginary person or object*. The word itself comes from the Greek 'mythos' which originally meant 'speech' or 'discourse' but which later came to mean 'fable' or 'legend'. In other words, it is a traditional story (i.e. one handed down orally over the centuries and only later committed to writing).

*Mythology* has two related meanings. Firstly it refers to a collection of myths that together form a mythological system. Thus one can speak of Norse Mythology, Roman Mythology, Greek Mythology, Asian Mythology or Egyptian Mythology. In this sense, one is describing a system of myths which were used by a particular society at some particular time in human history. A second meaning of the term *mythology* is the academic study of myths and systems of myths in general. Mythos means story. In short, mythology is the study of stories or a collection of stories.

There are three types of myths<sup>1094</sup>:

- *Myth Proper*: a traditional tale that explains a natural phenomenon, a custom, cult practice or the status of the divine and human world. In short, they are etiological and pre-scientific.
- *Legend*: a traditional tale about men and women popularly accepted as historical, but interspersed with supernatural events, such as the direct intervention of the gods.
- *Folktale*: a traditional tale that has no basis in reality but which is told to entertain (fables) or to instruct (parables). Themes include a quest, a divine command disobeyed, fraternal strife, a wicked step-mother or winning of the bride.

The gods of the pagans were not lifeless images; rather, Satan used these lifeless images to hold humans in bondage. Paul, therefore, admonished the members of his congregation to *flee from idolatry* (1 Corinthians 10:14), because involvement with pagan temples not only compromised their allegiance to the one true God but also exposed them to powerful demonic activity.

---

<sup>1094</sup> Fouche, A C M (2005) Exposing the Hidden Secrets of the Bloodlines, South Africa a Case Study. Master's degree, pp. 35-36

While Paul believed that the pagan gods were alive, he did not, like his pagan contemporaries, think the gods could help people in practical ways. Paul believed the pagan gods were inspired and perpetuated by Satan and his demons. Rather than being helpful resources for his Gentile converts, Paul saw these evil spirits as a hindrance to the gospel he proclaimed. The only spirit that Paul favoured was the Holy Spirit, whose indwelling and regular operation among believers meant ongoing spiritual progress for the body of Christ.<sup>1095</sup>

### **5.5.3.1 Lyssa - Greek Mythology**

Lyssa was the goddess or Daimona (spirit) of rage, fury, raging madness, frenzy, and in animals, of the madness of rabies. The Athenians spelt her name Lytta. Lyssa was a figure of Athenian tragedy. In Aeschylus she appears as the agent of Dionysos sent to drive the Minyades mad, and in Euripides she is sent by Hera to inflict Herakles. Greek vase paintings of the period also confirm her appearance in plays about Aktaion, the hunter torn apart by his maddened hounds. In one scene she appears a woman dressed in a short skirt, and crowned with a dog's-head cap to represent the madness of rabies.

Lyssa was closely related to the Maniai, the goddesses of mania and madness. Her Roman equivalent was variously named as Ira, Furor or Rabies. Sometimes she was multiplied into a host of Irae and Furores. Lyssa's parents were both (1) Nyx and the blood of Ouranos (Euripides Heracles) and (2) Aether and Gaia (Hyginus Preface).

Ira (Anger) was the Roman equivalent of Lyssa. She was often pluralised by the Latin into a host of Irae (Angers). Lyssa was probably the same as the Latin Furor (Rage). She was sometimes pluralised into a group of Furores. Lyssa also appears in Latin in the form of Rabies (Frenzied Rage), a DAIMONA of both battle-fury and the disease of rabies. The Maniai (or Maniae) were the spirits (Daimones) of madness, insanity and crazed frenzy. They were closely related to Lyssa, the spirit of mad rage, and the Erinyes.<sup>1096</sup>

---

<sup>1095</sup> Moses, R E (2012) Powerful Practices: Paul's Principalities and Powers. Doctor of Theology . Divinity School of Duke University, pp. 11-12

<sup>1096</sup> Theoi Greek Mythology, Lyssa [Online] Available from: <http://www.theoi.com/Daimon/Lyssa.html> [Accessed: 24 July 2014]

### 5.5.3.2 Mania - Greek Mythology

Madness is called Mania, and when in frenetic or rabid rage she is named Lyssa. The latter is notorious for suddenly raging everywhere at any time. Madness is represented as a primeval being whose existence began long before there were men on earth. They did not invent her but she invented the madman, a most common character who fully owes the turmoil of his soul to her. As a demon she is less distinct than a god and obeys the designs of more powerful deities, being rather the actual manifestation of their will. When such demons or gods act upon a man, he is no longer his own self but stands beside himself with cleft mind, or 'out of his mind'. And when they leave him, he may exclaim in amazement "What have I done?" or even refuse to accept any responsibility. For he regards the outcome of his actions as alien to his purpose or expectations, and therefore not properly his own. An action with unfortunate consequences, even if performed in serene self-control, does not belong to his intention, and therefore it does not belong to him: it is the work of 'some god'.

Medicalisation makes of madness not a demon but an illness, a mental illness or impairment of mental functioning, sometimes genetically predetermined. But it conveys very little on its origin and nature, and it could be difficult to assert whether there is an essential difference between the drugs that calm down the madman and the cords with which Heracles was bound to the column (Heracles was plunged into the raving madness that nowadays goes under the designation domestic violence, killing his own children). Both drugs and cords (followed by exhaustion and sleep) are methods for staying the madman's transgression of accepted norms, or for calming his inner distress. But not every transgression of accepted norms, nor every sign of distress are defined or definable as symptoms of madness. Moreover the notion of 'accepted norms' rests on a quantitative approach that could turn collective madness into sanity by means of the majority principle.<sup>1097</sup>

According to Plato, Mania is part of the divine inspiration behind the utterances of poets, prophets and philosophers:

(1) poets:

*And a third kind of possession and madness comes from the Muses. This takes hold upon a gentle and pure soul, arouses it and inspires it to songs and other poetry, and thus by adorning countless deeds of the ancients educates later*

---

<sup>1097</sup> Parada, C, Greek Mythology Madness [Online] Available from: <http://www.maicar.com/GML/Madness.html> [Accessed: 24 July 2014]

*generations. But he who without the divine madness comes to the doors of the Muses, confident that he will be a good poet by art, meets with no success, and the poetry of the sane man vanishes into nothingness before that of the inspired madmen.*<sup>1098</sup>

(2) prophets:

*For the prophetess at Delphi and the priestesses at Dodona when they have been mad have conferred many splendid benefits upon Greece both in private and in public affairs, but few or none when they have been in their right minds*<sup>1099</sup>

Or in the words of Michael Drayton, 1563-1631:

*For that fine madness still he did retain / Which rightly should possess a poet's brain.*

(3) and even of philosophers:

*I need not mention Socrates himself – and all the rest of them; every one of you has had his share of philosophic frenzy and transport (manía kai bakxeía).*<sup>1100</sup>

The madness of the Gorgon represents:

*... the terrifying horror of that which is absolutely other, unspeakable, unthinkable—pure chaos. For a human being, this is the confrontation with death—the death that the eye of Gorgo imposes on those who meet her gaze, transforming every single thing that lives, moves, and sees the light of the sun into a fixed stone, frozen, blind, and shrouded in darkness (Vernant, op.cit.).*

Pentheus had a hopeless diagnosis:

*you are mad in a most grievous way, and you will not be cured by drugs, nor are you sick without them.*<sup>1101</sup>

In this perspective, he is possessed by madness who is other than himself, and who remains in his otherness. His otherness has become his self and he can no longer transcend it. He has been petrified by the Gorgon. However, the myth suggests instead that sanity requires both the self and the other. Madness resides in neither, but in petrification: in the immobility that prevents crossing the boundary between the self and the other, or else in the chaotic

---

<sup>1098</sup> Plato, *Phaedrus* 245a

<sup>1099</sup> Plato, *Phaedrus* 244b

<sup>1100</sup> Plato, *Symposium* 218b

<sup>1101</sup> Tiresias to Pentheus. Euripides, *Bacchanals* 326

crossing of the same boundary. It has been customary for some time to worship the limitless whether in science, economy, politics or customs.

For it is believed that by its mere infinity it will open undreamt of opportunities and expand freedom. Accordingly, crossing boundaries has become more and more tempting. However, the myths have established the sacredness of boundaries, showing their significance in preserving identities and in allowing their sane interplay. Not only are there boundaries within the human psyche but between land and sea, city and countryside, beast and human, woman and man, childhood and adulthood, sky and earth.

These and many other realities have been regarded as worlds with their own laws, and the boundaries protecting them as sacred. Not to cross a boundary (geographical, political, artistic, moral, sexual or psychic) could mean narrowness since crossing boundaries permits passage from one state to another. Boundaries are seen as permeable, but crossing them without due preparation is often a violation. These two extremes are capable of freezing both the self and the other (within and in the outside world). It is such extremes that have often been associated with madness, and represented as petrification under the gaze of the Gorgon.<sup>1102</sup>

### **5.5.3.3 Dionysus (Bacchus) - Greek Mythology**

Dionysus, the Greek god of fertility, wine and ecstasy, was popular throughout much of the ancient world. In Rome he was known as Bacchus. A complex deity, Dionysus played two very different roles in Greek mythology. As the god of fertility, he was closely linked with crops, the harvest and the changing of the seasons. As the god of wine and ecstasy, he was associated with drunkenness, madness and unrestrained sexuality. His nature included a productive, life-giving side and a bestial, destructive side. Drunkenness and madness are elements that appear in many of the stories about Dionysus.

Dionysus did not start out as a Greek god. His cult had its roots in Thrace (north of Greece), in Phrygia (in modern Turkey), or possibly on the island of Crete. Many Greek city-states at first rejected the cult of Dionysus because of its foreign origins and its wild, drunken rituals. When the cult first arrived in Rome, worshipers held their celebrations in secret. However, in

---

<sup>1102</sup> Parada, C, Greek Mythology Madness [Online] Available from: <http://www.maicar.com/GML/Madness.html> [Accessed: 24 July 2014]

both Greece and Rome, the cult of Dionysus overcame resistance and gained many followers.

The most common myth about the origins of Dionysus says that he was the son of Zeus and of Semele, daughter of the founder of Thebes. Zeus's jealous wife, Hera, wanted to know the identity of the child's father. She disguised herself as Semele's old nurse and went to see Semele. When Semele told her that Zeus was the father, Hera challenged her to prove her claim by having Zeus appear in all his glory. Semele did so. However, because Zeus was the god of lightning, his power was too much for a human to bear. Semele was turned into ashes. Before Semele died, Zeus pulled Dionysus out of her womb. Then cutting open his thigh, Zeus placed the unborn child inside. A few months later he opened up his thigh, and Dionysus was born. The infant was left with Semele's sister Ino, who disguised him as a girl to protect him from Hera. As punishment for helping Dionysus, Hera drove Ino and her husband insane.

Some legends say that Hera also drove Dionysus insane. Thereafter, Dionysus wandered the world accompanied by his teacher, Silenus, bands of satyrs, and his women followers, who were known as maenads. When Dionysus travelled to Egypt, he introduced the cultivation of grapes and the art of winemaking. When he went to Libya, he established an oracle in the desert. He also journeyed to India, conquering all who opposed him and bringing laws, cities, and wine to the country on his way back to Greece, he met his grandmother, the earth goddess Cybele. She cured him of his madness and taught him the mysteries of life and resurrection.

This story contains three themes that run through the legend of Dionysus. One theme is the hostility that Dionysus and his cult face both from Hera and from the inhabitants of the places he visits. The second is the association of Dionysus with madness. The third is the idea of death and rebirth, an essential part of Dionysus's identity as god of the harvest and of fertility.<sup>1103</sup>

Around the first century BC, historians began using the term Osiris-Dionysus to commonly refer to dying-and-resurrecting deities, often part-human and born of virgins who were worshipped in the years before the emergence of Jesus Christ. In the fifth century BC, Herodotus spoke in particular of the syncretic relationship between Osiris and Dionysus. By

---

<sup>1103</sup> The Myth Encyclopedia, Dionysus [Online] Available from: <http://www.mythencyclopedia.com/Cr-Dr/Dionysus.html> [Accessed: 27 August 2014]

adding Dionysus to Osiris and Apollo, one can imagine a kind of demonic trinity, a single spirit represented in three manifestations, each of which illustrates a different side of the entity's makeup. As Osiris, this spirit is the god of death and the underworld, and as Apollo he is an oracular sun deity and destroyer demon. As Dionysus, he is superficially depicted as the inventor of wine, abandon, and revelry, a description that seems inadequate in that it refers only to the basic elements of intoxication and enthusiasm, which was used of the Bacchae (the female participants of the Dionystic mysteries, also known as Maenads and Bacchantes) in their rituals to experience Dionysus, the intoxicating god of unbridled human desire.

Ancient followers of Dionysus believed he was the presence that is otherwise defined as the craving within man that longs to 'let itself go' and to 'give itself over' to baser, earthly desires. What a believer might resist as the lustful wants of the carnal man, the followers of Dionysus embraced as the incarnate power that would, in the next life, liberate the souls of mankind from the constraints of this present world and from the customs that sought to define respectability through a person's obedience to moral law. Until that day arrives, the worshippers of Dionysus attempted to bring themselves into union with the god through a ritual casting off of the bonds of sexual denial and primal constraint by seeking to attain a higher state of ecstasy. The uninhibited rituals of ecstasy (Greek for 'outside the body') were believed to bring the followers of Dionysus into a supernatural condition that enabled them to escape the temporary limitations of the body and mind and to achieve a state of *enthousiasmos*, or, outside the body and inside the god. In this sense,

Dionysus represented a dichotomy within the Greek religion, as the primary maxim of the Greek culture was one of moderation, or nothing too extreme. But Dionysus embodied the absolute extreme in that he sought to inflame the forbidden passions of human desire. This gave Dionysus a stronger allure among the Greeks who otherwise tried in so many ways to suppress and control the wild and secret lusts of the human heart. Dionysus resisted every such effort, and according to myth, visited a terrible madness upon those who tried to deny him free expression. This Dionystic idea of mental disease resulting from the suppression of secret inner desires, especially aberrant sexual desires, was later reflected in the atheistic teachings of Sigmund Freud. Freudianism might therefore be called the grandchild of the cult of Dionysus.

The person who gave himself over to the will of Dionysus was rewarded with unlimited psychological and physical delights. These mythical systems of mental punishments and

physical rewards based on resistance and/or submission to Dionysus were both symbolically and literally illustrated in the cult rituals of the Bacchae, as the Bacchae women (married and unmarried Greek women had the right to participate in the mysteries of Dionysus) migrated in frenzied hillside groups, dressed transvestite in fawn skins and accompanied by screaming, music, dancing and licentious behaviour.

Human participants were sometimes subjected to the same orgiastic cruelty as animals that were considered resistant to the will of Dionysus, as the rule of the cult was anything goes, including lesbianism and bestiality. Later versions of the ritual (Bacchanalia) expanded to include paedophilia and male revellers, and perversions of sexual behaviour were often worse between men than they were between men and women. Any creature (sometimes a child) that dared to resist such perversion of Dionysus was subjected to sparagmos (torn apart) and omophagia (consumed raw).

Pentheus, the King of Thebes, was torn apart and eaten alive by his own mother as, according to the play, she fell under the spell of Dionysus. Tearing apart and eating alive of a sacrificial victim may refer to the earliest history of the cult of Dionysus. An ancient and violent cult ritual existing since the dawn of paganism stipulated that, by eating alive, or by drinking the blood of, an enemy or an animal, a person might somehow capture the essence or soul-strength of the victim.

The goal of the Bacchae, the frenzied dance, the thunderous song, the licentious behaviour, the tearing apart and eating alive: all were efforts on the part of the Bacchae to capture the essence of the god Dionysus and bring him down into incarnated rage within man, the idea of possession by the spirit of Dionysus. When one recalls the horrific rituals of the followers of Dionysus, it's easy to believe demonic possession actually occurred.

The Hebrew people considered Hades (the Greek god of the underworld) to be equal with hell and the Devil, and many ancient writers likewise saw no difference between Hades (in this sense the Devil) and Dionysus. The followers of Dionysus were also referred to as the 'Bacchants of Hades'. Dionysus was also known as Dionysus Morychos (the dark one) a fiendish creature, roughly equivalent to the biblical Satan, who wore goatskins and dwelt in the regions of the underworld. Dionysus is connected with the prince of the underworld; some are actually convinced that the two deities are the same.



Some Hebrews considered the magic (witchcraft) of the Bacchae to be the best evidence of Dionysus' satanic connection, and while most of the details are no longer available because Dionysus was a mystery god and his rituals were revealed to the initiated only, the Hebrew prophet Ezekiel made an important statement about the magic bands (kesatot) of the Bacchae, which, as in the omophagia, were used to capture (magically imprison) the souls of men.

*Wherefore thus saith the Lord God; Behold I am against your pillows [kesatot, "magic bands"] wherewith ye there hunt the souls to make them fly, and I will tear them from your arms and will let the souls go, even the souls that ye hunt to make them fly.*

Ezekiel 13:20

To carry the name of Dionysus typically meant one of two things: (1) the parents were devotees of Dionysus and thus the child was predestined to be a follower of the god; or (2) the individual was under the spell of the kesatot.

The kesatot was a magic arm band used in connection with a container called the kiste. Wherever the kiste is inscribed on sarcophagi and on Bacchic scenes, it is depicted as a sacred vessel with a snake peering through an open lid. How the magic worked and in what way a soul was imprisoned is still a mystery. Pan, the half-man/half-goat god (later relegated to devildom) is sometimes pictured kicking the lid open and letting the snake out. Such loose snakes were then depicted as being enslaved around the limbs, and bound in the hair, of the Bacchae women. Whatever the objects were, their function was to act as binders and loosers in a magical sense, or in other words, as means of attack and defence in sorcery.

The text in Ezekiel is believed to specifically refer to Dionysian or Bacchanalian magic, when combined with a related two-part binding-and-loosing question from God in Job 38:31: *Canst thou bind the sweet influences of Pleiades, or loose the bands of Orion?* The first part of God's challenge to Job here involves the star cluster Pleiades, which in mythology represented the seven sisters or teachers of the infant Dionysus, the very priestesses of whom used the kesatot and kiste to magically bind those souls that Ezekiel said God would loose. The second part of God's proposition to Job is equally meaningful, "Can you loose the bands of Orion?"

Studies in recent years have made intriguing findings that suggest the Giza Plateau which was known to ancient Egyptians as the 'House of Osiris, Lord of the Underground Tunnels',

and was designed to reflect the constellation Orion. The three pyramids of Giza do appear to be laid out in a pattern reflecting the three stars of Orion, which is none other than the heavenly representation of Osiris. In Greek mythology, the god Osiris fell in love with Apollo's sister, Diana (Artemis). Apollo did not like this arrangement and tricked Diana into shooting an arrow into Osiris' head. When she saw what she had done, Diana placed the dead Osiris among the stars and transformed him into the constellation Orion. Thereafter, Orion was thought to be the soul of Osiris.

Earlier history connects the constellation Orion to the Sumerian legend of Gilgamesh, identified in the Bible as Nimrod, the giant mighty hunter before the Lord, a fantastic personality who in later mythology was also called Osiris and Apollo. If Job 38:31 is therefore interpreted according to these ancient astrological and mythological renderings, it would have God asking Job if he could bind the magic bands of Osiris-Dionysus or loose the bindings of the mighty hunter, the giant Orion/Gilgamesh/Nimrod/Osiris/Apollo. What is potentially more explosive is the deep possible implication from this text that not only can God do this – that is, loose the forces bound at Giza and the constellation Orion – but that, when the correct time comes, He will.<sup>1104</sup>

Today, omophagia ('consumed raw') is practiced by certain voodoo sects as well as by cult satanists, and it should be pointed out that in some cases it is a demonisation of the Eucharist, or Holy Communion. But sparagmos ('torn apart') and omophagia, as practiced by the followers of Dionysus, were not an attempt of transubstantiation (as in the Catholic Eucharist) or of consubstantiation (as in the Lutheran communion), or yet of a symbolic ordinance (as in the fundamentalist denomination), all of which have as a common goal the elevating of the worshipper into a sacramental communion with God. The goal of the Bacchae was the opposite: the frenzied dance, the thunderous song, the licentious behaviour, the tearing apart and eating alive – all were efforts on the part of the Bacchae to capture the essence of the god (Dionysus) and bring him down into an incarnated rage within man. The idea was not one of Holy Communion, but of possession by the spirit of Dionysus.<sup>1105</sup>

---

<sup>1104</sup> Horn, T R (2009) *Apollo Rising* 2012. USA: Defender, pp. 177-181

<sup>1105</sup> Horn, T and Horn N (2010) *Forbidden Gates*. Missouri: Crane, pp. 114-115

#### **5.5.3.4 Odin – Norse Mythology**

Odin is originally a god of death, whose range later came to encompass magic (especially runic magic), battle (giving victory by choosing who should die), poetry, the fury of the berserk-warrior, and at least in part, the authority of the ruler descended from the gods (he is the most frequent father of royal lines, including, according to Anglo-Saxon genealogies, the current royal house of England). In the Prose Edda (written two hundred years after the conversion of Iceland), he is shown as the chief of the gods, but historical accounts of Germanic religion do not necessarily support this.

Odin won the runes by hanging on a tree for nine days and nights, wounded with his own spear. He gave up one of his eyes for a drink from the Well of Mimir (Memory). He won the mead of poetry by seducing the giant-maid Gunnlod who had been set to keep it, then asking for a drink and draining all three cauldrons. To his chosen ones, he gives victory, inspiration, magic, madness and death when he sees fit. He is seen especially as a god of wisdom, a patron of poets, thinkers and singers. Of all the gods, Odin is the one who seems to take the most active part in the affairs of humans, and the one who appears most often in the writings of the Germanic peoples.

Odin usually appears as a grey bearded man, tall and thin, with a blue-black cloak and an eye patch or wide-brimmed hat tilted to hide his missing eye. His weapon is the casting spear Gungnir, with which he dooms his chosen ones to die in battle. He has two wolves, Geri and Freki (both names mean the Greedy); two ravens, Huginn (the Thoughtful or the Bold) and Muninn (the Mindful or the Desirous); and a grey, eight-legged horse called Sleipnir (Slipper). He is the husband of Frigga and the father of many gods and human heroes. As the leader of the Wild Hunt, he also brings fruitfulness to the fields.

Odin is assisted by the Valkyries (Choosers of the Slain) who work his will on the battlefield, bringing the bravest warriors to Valhalla (Hall of the Slain) where they ready their strength against the coming of Ragnarok. It is said that Odin will help you if he feels like it, and it is true that he is a stern tester of his children and often seems rather unpredictable. However, even when he seems cruel, his purpose is always clear: to strengthen the hosts of the gods for the last battle so that life and knowledge can be preserved and the new world born after the old is destroyed.<sup>1106</sup>

---

<sup>1106</sup> Pagan and Proud of IT, Norse Gods and Goddesses [Online] Available from: <http://paganandproudoft.com/norse.html> [Accessed: 14 August 2014]

### 5.5.3.5 Huli Jing – Chinese Mythology

*Huli Jing* (fox fairy) in Chinese lore is a demon that is the malevolent spirit of the returning dead. The *huli jing* rises from its grave and shape-shifts into a seductive woman, scholar or old man. It seduces victims and vampirises the victims of the life force during orgasm. When the victim falls ill with tuberculosis, the *huli jing* leaves it for another victim. A female *huli jing* especially likes scholars for their virtuousness.

The *huli jing* has other powers and abilities that make it one of the most feared of all demons in Chinese lore. It can shape-shift into dead people, haunt places, and terrify the living. It can take on the appearance of living people. It can transport people through the air and enable them to pass through walls and closed windows. The *huli jing* is invisible during the day but can often be seen at night, especially lurking on the rooftops of homes. The *huli jing* is responsible for a form of possession that reduces a person to insanity. If madness affects generations of a family, that indicates that an ancestor once injured a *huli jing*. The *huli jing* is so feared that it is treated with great respect; above all, great care must be taken never to harm one. However, it is believed that should one cut off the tail, which holds its power, it will leave a home and never return.<sup>1107</sup>

### 5.5.3.6 Daeva – Iranian Mythology

One of the Daevas, Aesma Daeva ('madness') is the demon of lust and anger, wrath and revenge. He is the personification of violence, a lover of conflict and war. Together with the demon of death, Asto Vidatu, he chases the souls of the deceased when they rise to heaven. His eternal opponent is Sraosa.<sup>1108</sup>

### 5.5.3.7 Dybbuk – Jewish Mythology

In Jewish folklore, a dybbuk (or dibbuk) is the spirit or soul of a dead person that enters a living body and takes possession of it. *Dybbuk* is a Hebrew word meaning attachment. According to tradition, the dybbuk is a restless spirit that must wander about because of its sinful behaviour in its previous life, until it can attach itself to another person. The dybbuk

---

<sup>1107</sup> Guiley, R E (2009) *The Encyclopedia of Demons and Demonology*. New York: Infobase Publishing, p. 114

<sup>1108</sup> The Cicle of Ancient Iranian Studies, Gods and Goddesses [Online] Available from: [http://www.cais-soas.com/CAIS/Mythology/gods\\_goddesses.htm](http://www.cais-soas.com/CAIS/Mythology/gods_goddesses.htm) [Accessed: 27 August 2014]

remains within this person until driven away by a religious ceremony. Belief in such spirits was common in Eastern Europe during the 1500s and 1600s. Sometimes people who had nervous or mental disorders were assumed to be possessed by a dybbuk. Often a special rabbi was called to exorcise, or drive out, the evil spirit.<sup>1109</sup>

#### **5.5.3.8 Wodhanaz – Germanic Mythology**

Wotan is the ancient Germanic god of war, magic and mystical illumination. The word *Wotan* is a contraction and simplification of the name *Wodhanaz*, with *Wodh* being an ancient Germanic term for ecstatic, inspired mental activity. The next element, '*an*', indicates the idea of someone who is a master of this mental state. Thus, the intrinsic meaning of *Wodhanaz*, and the many different names related to it, such as Wotan, Wodenaz, Odin and Odhinn, is *Master of Inspiration*.

Wodhanaz is said to have slid into the mountain cave of the Etins in the form of a snake. After charming the female guardian of the three vats in which the mead is stored, he morphs into a falcon (or eagle) and flies from the mountain cave back to his kingdom. On the way, some of the mead spills from his beak down to the earth, from where it is believed to manifest itself as hallucinogenic mushrooms. When he arrives home, he expels the mead into three drinking horns for future use by him and his companions.

Thus, in its endlessly resurrecting fungal form, the poetic mead is made permanently available to man, who henceforth use it to be possessed and inspired by Wodhanaz. One of the best ways of preserving the active compounds in hallucinogenic mushrooms is by drying and crushing them, and then mixing them in honey, which is doubtlessly why mead (a drink made of honey) came to represent it. The sacred drink mythology surrounding Wodhanaz is also echoed in the mythology about the drug Soma which was the central sacrament of the Aryans, the Indo-European founders of modern day Hinduism. As is the case with the poetic mead of Wodhanaz, Soma was said to have been brought down to man from heaven by a falcon.

He is described as 'the Beserker', the wanderer, the warrior, the lord of the dead, the master of secret knowledge, the magician and god of poets. Wodhanaz was believed to appear to men in the form of a falcon. This bird of prey was a widespread symbol of war and spiritual

---

<sup>1109</sup> The Myth Encyclopaedia. [Online] Available from: <http://www.mythencyclopedia.com/Dr-Fi/Dybbuk.html> [Accessed: 27 August 2014]

illumination in the ancient world and was associated with mythological figures as diverse as Merlin and Horus. Interesting that Dionysus (Pan) is seen synonymous with this Germanic god.

In Northern Europe the followers of Wodhanaz were known as 'beserkers' and were renowned for the frenzy that possessed them during battle. What this divine madness amounted to was a state of temporary possession by their god. The whole Nazi phenomenon can be seen as an eruption of the Wotanic archetype out of the collective unconscious of the German people. Because of this formidable aspect to his nature, Wodhanaz was also known as the Storm God, which is where the Nazi term 'stormtrooper' derives.

In essence, Wodhanaz is a god who enters into and possesses his devotees, producing either a state of mystical exultation and mental inspiration on the one hand, or a state of pure, martial bloodlust on the other – a highly desirable state for a warrior on the battlefields of old. The men closest to the spirit of Wodhanaz were therefore shamans and warriors, with the area of activity of the shaman being the inner world of the spirit, and that of the warrior being the battlefields of the outside world.

Wodhanaz had many names but perhaps the most common one was 'Alfadhír', the All-Father. He was regarded as the pure embodiment of paternal authority and all its attendant masculine virtues of strength, loyalty and honour. For the Germanic tribes of Europe, Wodhanaz was the ancient father-figure who lay at the source of the ancestral line, and up which his influence flows through countless generations to the present. What essentially connected men to Wodhanaz was the ancestral chain stretching back to him. It was by honouring and keeping alive the memory of their forefathers that men's connection to Wodhanaz was strengthened, thereby ensuring the spiritual health of the tribe and helping to guarantee its survival into the future.<sup>1110</sup>

#### **5.5.3.9 The Fox - Japanese Occult Lore**

Supernatural powers were ascribed to animals in the Japanese Occult Lore. The fox was believed to possess such gifts to an almost limitless extent, for the animal had miraculous vision and hearing, could read the innermost human thoughts, and could be transformed,

---

<sup>1110</sup> Skandanava, Symbols [Online] Available from: <http://www.skandanava.org/symbols.html> [Accessed: 27 August 2014]

assuming any shape at will. He loved to delude humans and work destruction, often taking the form of a beautiful and seductive woman whose embrace meant madness and death. This animal was attributed demoniacal possession.<sup>1111</sup>

## 5.6. IN UTERO

*<sup>13</sup> For You did form my inward parts; You did knit me together in my mother's womb. <sup>16</sup> Your eyes saw my unformed substance, and in Your book all the days [of my life] were written before ever they took shape, when as yet there was none of them. <sup>17</sup> How precious and weighty also are Your thoughts to me, O God! How vast is the sum of them!*

*Psalm 138:13, 16-17*

### 5.6.1 In the Womb Experiences

The child can experience many things while being in the womb that sets the baby up for failure in life<sup>1112</sup>:

- A child can inherit rejection from both parents. If a mother has a root of rejection she will definitely transfer it to the unborn child.
- Conception out of wedlock causes a curse of ten generations. This curse is from the Lord and is known as the curse of the bastard. This curse manifests in the child as a deep shame and the person has great difficulty belonging.
- A child conceived out of lust, rape, and incest or out of wedlock might carry the spirit of lust and will only get free through deliverance. Masturbation is one of the symptoms that manifests at a very early age and furthermore during the adult years the person may develop an aversion to sex and an unhealthy relationship with a mate.
- The wrong sex preference is a problem. Sexual identity problems are very common amongst children due to the wrong sex preference of the parents. The deeply disappointed parents cause a wound of rejection and the devil takes advantage of it. Boys become more effeminate and girls more masculine. Rejection of one's own sexuality can ultimately lead that person into homosexuality.

---

<sup>1111</sup> Melton J G (2001) Encyclopedia of Occultism and Parapsychology, Firth Edition, Volume A-N, USA:Gale Group, p. 824

<sup>1112</sup> Malan, C E M (2008) An Exposition of Fear from a Biblical Perspective and its Effect on Mankind, specifically the Christian. Master's degree. Calvary University, pp. 214-217

- A non-Christian mother that abuses alcohol, drugs and cigarettes can transfer the spirits of this abuse onto her unborn child. Apart from the physiological damage, this can cause severe anxiety disorders in the child.
- Children born in an atmosphere of strife, disunion or lovelessness, and parents on the edge of divorce might have problems with their bones (skeleton). At an early age, it will be growing pains, but on a later stage it will manifest as rheumatism, arthritis, fragile, brittle and dry bones and other bone illness. To be born without love generates severe fear. People with these symptoms could also be those who survived an abortion. Where there was an attempt of an abortion, the child will have a fear-of-life and fear-of-death syndrome. These people are very pessimistic and highly stressed and nervous with false 'responsibilities'. Proverbs 15:13 states that by the sorrow of the heart the spirit is broken. Proverbs 18:14 answers that a wounded spirit is of no use as it can't even sustain the body in sickness.
- An unwanted pregnancy after marriage will leave a child with a feeling of blaming others for his existence.
- Being conceived too soon after marriage or if parents already have all the children they had planned, and pregnancy interferes with the parents' plans, this causes rejection, or even being conceived too close to the birth of a previous child.
- Financial strain on the family is created because the baby comes as an accident. This child will feel he is a burden to the family and feel rejected.
- If the mother-to-be entertains a fear of the pain accompanying childbirth, fear of complications of pregnancy or fear of the deformity of her child, which makes her wish that she had never become pregnant, this amounts to the rejection of the baby.
- When the mother-to-be has a fear of gaining weight during pregnancy, it will manifest in the child at a later stage as anger, insatiable hunger for food and wrong eating habits.
- Foetuses that have been rejected during pregnancy have developed a fear of being born and can even pass excretion at birth.
- If Satan has legal rights in the bloodline of the mother or the father, unholy, demonic bloodline curses can be transferred onto the unborn child in utero. These include curses such as personal curses of the mother or the father, peer rejection and cultural rejection.
- In utero, the small foetus is aware of the attitudes of the parents, words that are spoken, strife, tone of voice, love or lovelessness, anxiety, fear and stress in the home.
- If a father does not want the baby, the human spirit could reject the God-given life he had received and develop a death wish through the spirit of death. These babies do not want to be born or are born with much difficulty. They have a fear of life. This is manifested as



an impending miscarriage, breech babies (babies that want to go back into the birth channel), umbilical cord around the neck and birth with the help of forceps.

Although the physical development of a baby is important and all the hormones that play a role in triggering the actual birth process, the enthusiasm, excitement and endearment of the father's voice throughout the whole nine months contribute to the process of the baby being born on time and without complications. Unwelcome babies can often result in the mother not going into natural labour and rather requiring birth by caesarean section. Rejected babies often refuse to be breast fed and the mother is therefore totally rejected.

### 5.6.2 Abortion

Abortion is defined as the premature termination of the life of a foetus. Abortion is, in essence, human sacrifice to Satan, the god of self<sup>1113</sup>. Abortion can result in depression, guilt, sickness, fear, condemnation and continual sorrow that results from what is known as a *Travailing Womb* (Isaiah 42:14; Hosea 13:13) for both the woman and consenting man. The joy that is usually experienced with the birth of a child is also aborted, and the result is a womb always enlarged with (the presence of) the child (John 16:21; Jeremiah 20:17). If a female contemplates an abortion or attempts one unsuccessfully, her child is opened up to spirits of rejection, fear, suicide and the curse of rejection from the womb.<sup>1114</sup>

There's no doubt that abortion has become a profitable business for those involved ever since abortion clinics have sprung up around the world. Abortion on demand is the demonic Baal worship of modern times and is a leading indicator of invading spiritual forces in any country today. King Ahab and Queen Jezebel led the Israelites in Baal worship and the sacrifice of children in the Old Testament. It was believed that Baal held the key to prosperity. People desiring to live in prosperity and ease would bring their firstborn child to the high priest, where scholars say the child would be offered as a burnt offering to the deity. The altar of Baal was in the image of a bull with the head and shoulders of a man. Its arms extended outward and fire belched out from a hole in the chest. The priest of Baal placed the babies on the outstretched arms, where the child would be rolled into the fire. As the child died, the priest and priestess engaged in sexual intercourse, while an orgy occurred among

---

<sup>1113</sup> Brown, R (1987) *Prepare for War*. New Kensington: Whitaker House, p. 298

<sup>1114</sup> Eckhard, J (2004) *Deliverance and Spiritual Warfare Manual*. Chicago: Crusaders Ministries, p. 11

the onlookers. This was proven when archaeologists unearthed a Baal cemetery containing the remains of more than twenty thousand children.<sup>1115</sup>

This is the Jezebel spirit's false threshing floor: a place of death, mutilation and bloodshed. Lying helpless upon the floor, families are subject to ritual blood sacrifice. They fall prey to the wrath and insanity of the Jezebel spirit. Today this false threshing floor is an abortion clinic where mothers and daughters abort their fetuses. Following the spiritual pattern of Astoreth, they conceive children but fail to bring them to birth. Often, abortion is an iniquity passed on from grandmother to mother to daughter. If so, the maternal line of a family has deep foundations of Astoreth worship.<sup>1116</sup>

Victims (mother or child) of abortion will need to break curses of Molech who was the demon god of the Ammonites. Children were sacrificed in fire to Molech (Leviticus 18:21; 20:2-5). This demon god drove the Ammonites in Gilead to rip open women bearing children (Amos 1:13). Binding the spirit of Molech and breaking the curse of Molech are helpful in dealing with spirits of abortion.<sup>1117</sup>

Molech was a heathen god who was also called Moloch (Amos 5:26), Milcom (1 Kings 11:33), and Malcham (Zephaniah 1:5). In Jeremiah 32:35, it was at the high places of Baal that Molech was worshiped, thus showing a close relationship between the two gods. By worshiping Molech the children of Israel would profane the name of God.

A note: Stillbirths and miscarriages are relationships between mother and child that need healing. Ultimately these are sacrifices that Satan claims for himself, due to legal rights in the bloodlines (through many testimonies it has been confirmed that these babies are taken to heaven for care until the parents can join them). These sacrifices, however, need to be nullified and the legal right needs to be determined and sanctified to bring full restoration to the bloodlines for the coming generations.

---

<sup>1115</sup> Horn, T R (1998) *Spiritual Warfare, the Invisible Invasion*. Louisiana: Huntington House Publishers, pp. 102-103

<sup>1116</sup> Kitchen Y and Triplett D (2000) *Jezebel's Murder*. A Fruitful Vine Publication. 77

<sup>1117</sup> Eckhard, J (2004) *Deliverance and Spiritual Warfare Manual*. Chicago: Crusaders Ministries, p. 11

### 5.6.3 The Placenta

See Chapter 4 - 4.7.1.9 Witchcraft and the Placenta

According to Amanda Buys, the sins committed with the placenta of a baby can be passed into a person live through his own placenta because people are in the sinful person's loins as spiritual seeds during his generation. She goes on to explain that it is very important that all these sins are dealt with properly or else there will be serious consequences in a person's life. For generations the enemy and his evil workers have used the principle of the placenta as the foundation to transfer curses and demonic afflictions. The placenta is the *feeder* of each generation. The womb is the *carrier* of each generation. Many babies are dedicated to ancestral spirits, animal spirits, water spirits and nature spirits. This is an ungodly spiritual practice that is very annoying to God, yet which is still practiced by many individuals, communities, nations and on many continents. Many Africans up until today still have deep and accepting belief in reincarnation. They believe that the dead person has now come back to earth through a newly born baby in order to continue to do what he started doing prior to the original death. The destinies of innocent children are tied into things that do not reveal the glory of God.<sup>1118</sup>

## 5.7. SUICIDE AND SELF-MUTILATION

*<sup>19</sup> I call heaven and earth to witness this day against you that I have set before you life and death, the blessings and the curses; therefore choose life, that you and your descendants may live. <sup>20</sup> And may love the Lord your God, obey His voice, and cling to Him. For He is your life and the length of your days, that you may dwell in the land which the Lord swore to give to your fathers, to Abraham, Isaac, and Jacob.*

*Deuteronomy 30:19-20*

Suicide is a behaviour choice. Suicide is always a bad solution to the unhappiness, anxiety or guilt an individual experiences. Suicide is often a cowardly, selfish solution that hurts and harms those who love him. Suicide can be motivated by hurting those in revenge who have hurt the person committing suicide.

---

<sup>1118</sup> Buys, A, Africa, come forth out of Bondage. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished, p. 103-104

Thomas Szasz, an Atheist Professor of Psychiatry Emeritus at State University New York, made the following statement on suicide<sup>1119</sup>:

*The practice of routinely excusing self-killers as insane led inevitably to practices and policies ostensibly directed at preventing suicide, principally incarceration of the potential self-killer in an insane asylum. That practice, in turn, reinforced the belief that persons who kill themselves are insane, that the insane are likely to kill themselves, and that persons deemed dangerous to themselves or others are justifiably deprived of liberty under psychiatric auspices. For three hundred years, the legal and medical justification for psychiatric preventive detention—civil commitment—has rested comfortably and securely on that set of beliefs.*

Yvonne Kitchen and Dean Triplett state in their book, *Jezebel's Murder*, that suicide is a ritual of blood sacrifice. Committing suicide is people haemorrhage. Even where suicide is a slow process, such as with anorexia nervosa, ritual mutilation and death are still at work. These people's blood is poured out upon the altars of Astoreth and Baal.

They continue, arguing that people also worship Astoreth and Baal with self-mutilation. They may refuse to eat (e.g. anorexia nervosa), shoot drugs or mutilate themselves with sharp instruments. It is a curse of blood sacrifice operating.<sup>1120</sup>

## **5.8. GENERAL NOTES ON SIN**

Anger, bitterness, rage, rejection and rebellion usually result from wrong or alleged wrong from childhood or youth and continuing into adulthood. While reactionary sin (secondary sin birthed from the reaction to primary sin) arises because of wrong or supposed wrong done to an individual, reactionary sin itself can open the door to demons. Most demons of anger, bitterness, rage, rejection and rebellion come in after the abuse as the victim gives way to anger and rage over what is happening.<sup>1121</sup>

---

<sup>1119</sup> Szasz, T (2009) *Psychiatry: Coercion as Cure*. Transaction Publishers, p.99

<sup>1120</sup> Kitchen Y and Triplett D (2000) *Jezebel's Murder*. A Fruitful Vine Publication, p. 77

<sup>1121</sup> Murphy, E F (2003) *The Handbook for Spiritual Warfare*, Revised and Updated. Thomas Nelson Publishers, p. 440

## 5.9. TRANSGRESSIONS

*Transgressions* are the second category of the collective term of sin. The Hebrew meaning of transgression is a wilful deviation from, and therefore rebellion against, the path of godly living. The Greek meaning of transgression is to go beyond, overstepping the limits. This word links strongly to rebellion and disobedience. Transgressions are more potent than just sinning and are the next step into further permanent bondage. Transgressions are related to trespassing, which is a wilful violation of the law (human or Godly law).<sup>1122</sup>

Many refer to transgressions in the collective term of *rebellion*: being more than rebellion as defined earlier in this chapter. Rebellion here is the collective term encapsulating transgressions, rebellion and disobedience. Going forward whenever mentioning *rebellion*, we will be referring to this collective term.

## 5.10. INIQUITIES

*<sup>5</sup> You shall not bow down yourself to them or serve them; for I the Lord your God am a jealous God, visiting the iniquity of the fathers upon the children to the third and fourth generation of those who hate Me, <sup>6</sup> But showing mercy and steadfast love to a thousand generations of those who love Me and keep My commandments.*

*Exodus 20:5-6*

Iniquity is the third category of the collective term of sin. Iniquity<sup>1123</sup> is not just another name for sin. Kitchen and Triplett define iniquity as *the inner attitude of rebellion against God. Iniquities pass down the generations of a family. Just as physical and emotional characteristics get passed on, so do spiritual predispositions and family spirits. Covenants can definitely bind proceeding generation.*<sup>1124</sup>

Arthur Burk defines iniquity as to warp, to bend, to twist, to change the shape of, to mangle and to mutilate. There are several categories of iniquities but bottom line is that all of them

---

<sup>1122</sup> Members AOL, Transgressions, [Online] Available from: <http://www.members.aol.com/yadadocs/lessons/transgression1.htm> [Accessed: 30 September 2014]

<sup>1123</sup> Etymology: Iniquity: c.1300, "hostility, malevolence; a hostile action," from Old French *iniquité* "wickedness, unfavorable situation," from Latin *iniquitatem* (nominative *iniquitas*) "unequalness, unevenness, injustice," noun of quality from *iniquus* "unjust, unequal; slanting, steep," from *in-* "not". For vowel change, see *acquisition*. Meaning "evil, wickedness" is from late 14c. [www.etymonline.com](http://www.etymonline.com)

<sup>1124</sup> Kitchen Y and Triplett D (2000) Jezebel's Murder. A Fruitful Vine Publication, p. 7

are a defiance of God's right or ability to make the rules; a defiance of God's right to be right; a contesting of God's absolutes, a statement that they don't exist, or that they don't apply or that man can change them. He goes on to say that generational curses are rooted in iniquity.<sup>1125</sup>

The words *iniquity* and *evil* are referenced numerous times in the Bible and are fundamental to understanding the root of the vast majority of problems mankind suffers. Evil is the diabolic seed from which all wickedness originates. It is then transmitted to man in birth, impregnating his heart with thoughts and intentions opposed to righteousness, truth, love and everything good that God is. Iniquity is the sum of all twisted thoughts or the total of all that is evil in mankind. Iniquity impregnates the spirit of the human being at the moment of conception. In that very instant all of the spiritual data or the spiritual inheritance of evil is established in the person. Iniquity operates as a spiritual umbilical cord that transmits the spiritual DNA of evil from one generation to the next.

Dr. Ana Mendez Ferrell defines iniquity as<sup>1126</sup>

*the body of sin. The body of sin originates in the spirit and invades the soul and body, like mud that soils everything it touches. Iniquity is intrinsically tied to the spiritual world of darkness, and it is there the devil binds us with the curses from our ancestors. It is in this place the legal bases of sickness are rooted and transmitted from the parents to their children and from the children to their grandchildren. It is also here where Satan's legal right is granted to rob, to destroy and even to kill us. Our iniquity will constantly prevent us from receiving the fullness of the blessings of God.*

She explains that most believers confess their sins to God, but have never asked Him to blot out their iniquities. For this reason they continue suffering the terrible consequences of financial curses, incurable family sicknesses, divorces, accidents, and tragedies that would never occur under the protection of an omnipotent God.

Iniquity moulds the minds of men by creating strongholds that literally dictate their behaviour. These strongholds are spiritual, mental, or emotional structures from which a person operates and from where he makes decisions that do not come from God. Everything that is not built up in God is edified with iniquity, the substance of darkness. A stronghold is, so to

---

<sup>1125</sup> Burk, A, Spiritual Warfare, CD 6, Track 1

<sup>1126</sup> Mendez-Ferrell, A (2011) Iniquity. Florida: Voice of the Light Ministries, p. 14

speak, an invisible mould that surrounds and shapes the soul, giving it a personality and an identity. These structures are made by an aggregate of thoughts that dictate all that a person is and determine the fruit that he bears. Man is the reflection of his soul's dwelling. A soul built up in God will think, act and bear fruit after God. The natural man or the believer, who has not been spiritually edified, will think, act and bear the fruit of a limited mind structured by its culture and circumstances. This structure, or dwelling of the soul, is the place of his security or insecurity, where he has settled on his own.

These strongholds have to be undone by God's power, through an individual's determination to topple them and through his faith in order to replace the lies with God's unlimited truth. It is not about repeating verses, but about beginning to believe in a different way regarding himself, seeing himself in the fullness of the greatness and power as God sees him, and acting coherently, leaves no room for any sort of doubt.

Mendez-Ferrell gives the following operations and manifestations of iniquity in her book with the same title<sup>1127</sup>:

- *Iniquity produces sickness and pain.* Iniquity is the principle cause of sickness. Although it has its origin in the spirit of man, it travels through the soul and manifests physically, destroying the body. Science recognises it as psychosomatic illnesses. According to the doctors, this type of disease originates in the mind, and produces chemical reactions in the organs that make the individual end up minded. This is in a large part a response of our body to feelings of hatred, bitterness, resentment and shame. This is more than a chemical reaction, it is a spiritual matter. Iniquity that has been carried generation after generation has entered so deep in the lives of people that it affects the genetics or heritage of their physical bodies.
- *Iniquity takes the soul captive.* Iniquity manifests in the body as black water and oil that make the body sick. The origin of these substances is in the spirit of man. Iniquity in the invisible world of the human being will affect his whole physical environment. It is like a fountain that flows from his inner being, creating dense spiritual swamps where the soul of a person gets stuck, or even a righteous person sinks in a cesspit without exit. Spiritually, all this mud of iniquity is cast upon others through violent perverse words, threats, slander, unjust accusations and pressures of all kinds. Nowadays, many stressing situations come from iniquity that has been accumulated until the individual

---

<sup>1127</sup> Ibid., pp. 70-113

literally feels he is suffocated. These people have controlling spirits, which oppress, castrate, and manipulate them, polluting the places where they reside. Psychological problems such as fears or claustrophobia originate from this type of spiritual environment. Many times, even though the conditions have changed, the soul remains captive in the past and deliverance becomes necessary. Being surrounded by these waters may generate fear, nightmares, affliction of spirit and great desperation.

- *Iniquity creates torrents of perversity.* Iniquity manifests in the spiritual world as miry clays that are cast over someone, just or unjust, frequently causing great oppression. These 'muds' eventually become spiritual swamps or torrents of perversity sent by the devil to devastate a person and make him sink in the circumstance.
- *Iniquity devastates cities.* Iniquity not only affects a person's life, but it constitutes the foundation for the curse and the destruction of cities. Since men originally sinned, iniquity entered mankind and took part of all his being. The earth absorbed this evil seed and was cursed from that moment on. Entire cities are founded through the territorial consecration of pagan gods, masonic designs, geometric magic, and horrible bloodshed sacrifices. All of these things reverberate in the development of a city, being necessary to redeem its foundations to transform it.
- *Cultural Iniquity.* Iniquity also comes from one's culture. Men's collective actions of evil, for instance the genocide that the Spaniards and Portuguese committed towards the Latin-American Indians or the terrible massacres done by the British when they conquered the United States, were indirectly rooted in the soul and the spirit of the nations, like the Spanish Inquisition or the uncountable deaths produced by the crusades in Europe and the Middle East. All these acts of bloodshed are iniquity that remained stamped in a person's spiritual inheritance. On the other hand, a person also has the iniquity that is inherent to the idiosyncrasy (thought) of a nation. These thoughts are so rooted and common for a person that he does not even notice that they are iniquity. Thoughts such as: "the end justifies the means" or "they are not going to realise it" and many other sayings reflect how a society is bound to iniquity. Lies, deception and shame are inherent in the iniquity in many nations.
- *Religious Iniquity.* Religions are loaded with iniquity for they are deeds of death. Any religious system is, by essence, Babylonian and is opposed to the one true God. Those who come from a religious background have to uproot from their hearts the iniquity that



entered through religious ceremonies and traditions. Those who come from the Roman system must break all bounds with idolatry, magic and occultism. It is not enough to just stop old habits. A person must cleanse himself from the iniquity that has been soaked in his spirit.

- *Iniquity and affront.* An affront is an injustice done to someone and, as a consequence, the person remains in grief and dishonour. It is an insult or attack of injustice that affects the very core of the person. It is marked by an offense that destroys essential parts of the 'heart'. It is an impartation of iniquity into the most inner being. The presence of an affront in a person's life acts as a powerful magnet, attracting offenses and injustices. One way this kind of iniquity manifests itself is through the tongue. These people are not careful in how they express themselves, either through profanity or cursing. They create division and offend others, as if they had daggers in their mouths. These people are negative, exclusivists, and have a heart full of rage and bitterness. This is the result of multiple offenses and injustices that continually plague them. This type of iniquity produces a vicious cycle of destroying and being destroyed. People, who have been rejected, appear to attract more and more rejection. This happens because they are trapped in nets of iniquity. These people have been abused in some way, either incestuously or psychologically, and become victims of injustice. They attract affront and dishonour to their life. In the case of incest, iniquity is so strong that it attracts all kinds of curses. The abused person must forgive and ask for forgiveness for the sins of his ancestors.
- *Iniquity releases the spirit of fornication.* Bowing and serving strange gods is a work of iniquity that God hates. In Latin America, gods are made of sculptures and pictures. In Europe and in North America these gods are money, comfort and culture, although images are also worshipped. Unfortunately, idolatry is the beginning of a series of sins directed by the spirit of fornication. Nowadays, nations are overrun with bold licentiousness and sexual depravation as never before. Even in the Church sins of adultery, pornography and fornication are proliferating for there is little fear of God anymore. Where there is or has been idolatry, the spirit of fornication is loosed. That's why it is important to uproot iniquity in depth and precision. General repentance is superficial, but if the root and the essence of the problem are left untreated, sooner or later, sexual sins will manifest. Fornication is not only physical, but also a condition of the heart infected with iniquity that prevents people from knowing God intimately and embracing Him wholeheartedly.

- *Iniquity releases curses.* Blessings as well as curses are spiritual laws searching for places to land. Many times people who, after having read books or hearing teachings about curses, revoke them and cancel them in their lives, but over time these curses return. The reason is the power of the Spirit succeeded in removing them for a time, but their cause, which was actually iniquity, was never uprooted. Curses can be defined through several recurring symptoms that spring from specific roots of iniquity: chronic financial problems, poverty and misery, land that does not produce fruit, and businesses that dry up for no apparent reason. Examples are curses through iniquity are as follows<sup>1128</sup>:
  - *Curse of premature death and suicide.* Possible cause: homicide, blood shedding, idolatry, witchcraft and the love of money (Proverbs 2:22, Psalm 37:28).
  - *Curses of mental problems, insanity, Alzheimer's and senile dementia.* Possible cause: pride, haughtiness, trusting in riches and stubbornness (Daniel 4:32; Deuteronomy 28:18).
  - *Curses of affront and abuse of all kinds.* Causes: rape, abuse, slander and a slanderous tongue (Psalm 53:4).

### 5.10.1 Psychic Heredity

Psychic inheritance includes the ability to tell fortunes, including the disaster or death of someone, to find things, to predict happenings and to have visions and dreams that are occultist in nature. Some inherit spirit guides, often a dead ancestor. Some have been appointed as successor to an ancestor who was a noted psychic, fortune-teller, or sorcerer.<sup>1129</sup>

#### CASE STUDY

In one particular case, a young Christian woman began to be tormented at night with spectres, shadows, and voices. Unseen hands grabbed her, and many weird things began to happen to her. God revealed that a living aunt of hers practiced witchcraft, and the aunt had designated the young woman as her successor. We broke soul ties with her aunt, and she renounced the occult out loud. We rebuked the demons and called them out. Over a period of time, the woman found release from her captivity.\*<sup>1130</sup>

---

<sup>1128</sup> Mendez-Ferrell, A (2011) *Iniquity*. Florida: Voice of the Light Ministries, p. 114

<sup>1129</sup> Ing, R (1966) *Spiritual Warfare*. Whitaker House: United States of America, p. 99

<sup>1130</sup> Ibid.

## **5.11. AREAS AFFECTED BY SIN, INIQUITY AND REBELLION**

### **5.11.1 Time**

Time can be defined by sin, rebellion, iniquity, covenants or trauma. It is seen in the repetitive cycles of defilement recurring on time.<sup>1131</sup>

*See Chapter 4 – 4.5.3 Curses on Time and 4.6.8 Trauma Bonds on Time*

### **5.11.2 Land**

Adultery, idolatry, and violence (including murder) are the major role players in defiling land. However, all sin has an effect on the land. When sin is committed on a piece of land (whether in a hotel room, class room, veld or in a house) it defiles the land and an indirect tie is created from the body of the person to the land to the other body (one or more people) involved in the sin, rebellion or iniquity. There is then a spiritual flow between the two people, affecting them on many levels, including spirit, body or soul (even the emotions and mental abilities). Victims are in the same way connected to defiled land, whether in an abusive way or through shame. These ties can affect a person at any time of the day of any month, resulting in a person experiencing feelings and emotions that are not necessarily their own but are those of someone to whom they are connected via the land.<sup>1132</sup>

*See Chapter 4 – 4.5.1 Curses in General*

There are portals found on land that can influence a person negatively when defiled. There are sound portals to receive a broadcast from the stars proclaiming and declaring the glory of the God; these also increase a person's dominion. Fragrance portals are there for a release of revelation. A portal is a fixed location on the surface of the earth designed by God for a specific work. A sound portal can get perverted due to human sin and will then pick up the sound of death, destruction and devouring from the underworld, becoming a horrific defilement, a defilement which leads to cancers or lawlessness in the area of the portal.<sup>1133</sup>

---

<sup>1131</sup> Burk, A, Tools for Cleansing Time and Land, CD 2, Track 1

<sup>1132</sup> Burk, A, Tools for Cleansing Time and Land, CD 1, Track 4

<sup>1133</sup> Burk, A, The Mercy Season, CD 6, Track 3

### **5.11.3 People**

Sin not only affects the person committing the sin but other parties are always involved, whether it is a second or third party or the generations of the person (bloodline, marriage line, adoptive line) to follow (e.g. when killing someone there is another person that dies).

#### **5.11.3.1 Names**

Names are very significant. The names a person bears, whether the ones given to the person or his family names, can affect life positively or negatively. An individual's name is his social and spiritual identity. Every name carries a positive or a negative anointing, an anointing which is triggered each time someone is called by that name. A person's name goes a long way in determining his destiny. Names that glorify Satan, deities, idols and traditions provoke God and bring His wrath on the bearer. People give names according to their beliefs. Names are expressions of faith. When one is named after the Lord, it is like putting a stamp of God on the child. In the same way, when someone is given names associated with the family or community idols, he is attached to the spirits of these idols, and no evil spirit has a good plan for its patrons or their generations.<sup>1134</sup>

Family names and surnames can carry familiar spirits (a spirit that exists within the family bloodline; a generational spirit that has a familiarity with a person due to being connected to the specific family line; a spirit well known with the family history through long and close association with the family, closely guarding the secrets of a family line) and with the name can come any iniquity associated with the family or person whose name was given. It is advisable that a person change any name glorifying an idol or the devil. It is therefore important to find out the meaning of particular names and why the names were given.

Renounce the spirits behind the name and revoke all the demonic covenants and curses attached to these names.

---

<sup>1134</sup> Ing, R (1966) *Spiritual Warfare*. Whitaker House: United States of America, pp. 94-95

### **5.11.3.2 Spiritual Structures or Devices**

Spiritual structures or devices are inanimate things; they are not volitional. These are not demons. These are spiritual devices that the enemy created that affect a person. The emotions and words of other people can fabricate spiritual structures that land in and affect a person's body for good or for evil. Examples of demonic devices are labels, scares, chains, shackles, yokes and mantles. The power of demonic devices or structures is that they have no hearing and no will and do not have to respond to repentance or any other legal work. But they hold a person in bondage nonetheless, while evading all legal actions and all healing actions undertaken.

Spiritual structures are why so many people have been so conflicted. The person knows the demons are gone. He knows the curses have been dealt with. He knows the covenants have been broken. He experiences immense freedom at each step of those processes. But he also knows that 'something' is not right. Something is not clean. Something is holding him back. It may be that he has some structures which the demons conveniently left behind when they were evicted. The demons obeyed the command to go, but the structures don't have to obey -- they don't have hearing and don't have will. They don't have to obey.<sup>1135</sup>

A mantle of invisibility is generally embraced voluntarily. Many times this can be traced back to child where it was un-safe for a child to be visible, for example, an unwanted pregnancy. A wish is expressed to be invisible many times over and over: a wish to not be present, to have a low profile existence, to not exist, for gender to be invisible. "If only I had not been born, the family would be better off without me". The expression can be mental or verbal. All these beliefs, proclamations, thoughts, ideas and even vows can produce a mantle of spiritual invisibility, even though the person is physically visible. To attain restoration, the person first needs to break the vows and proclaim that it is ok and good to be seen, and then remove the mantle.<sup>1136</sup>

There are two types of marks (labels) that can be put on a person: (1) a specific mark of specific meaning is put on a person (Genesis 4), a label that cannot be removed and the rest of society can see it in the spiritual; and (2) marks of ownership (Revelation 7) put on the forehead. A person's spirit can carry a label that is applied to a person that is not necessarily who the person is through defilement on land, or defilement by personal iniquity or

---

<sup>1135</sup> Burk, A, Your Health and Redemptive Gifts , CD 1 Track 6

<sup>1136</sup> Burk, A, Spiritual Warfare, CD 5, Track 3

defilement by accusation. This label is seen by other people's spirits and acted upon. This label needs to be extricated from the person.<sup>1137</sup>

Examples of labels are traitor, murderer, unfaithful, adulterous women, bitter, Jezebel and ungodly.

### 5.11.3.3 Tattoos and Body Piercing

Leviticus 19:28 says, *Ye shall not make any cuttings in your flesh for the dead, nor print any marks upon you: I am the LORD.* Body tattoos and body piercing is foreign to the body and can bring curses and demons attached to it. However, God has permitted the wearing of earrings in Ezekiel 16:12 as long as this is not connected with idolatry.<sup>1138</sup>

Tattooing involves the insertion of fine needles and the placing of dye into the punctures in skin in order to form a pattern. Sorcerers often pass on their powers or demons through a tattoo on the body of a disciple or descendant. No wonder that God forbade the Israelites to mark their bodies in such a fashion.<sup>1139</sup> If tattoos have specific evil meanings or signify the worshipping of idols, it is advisable to have the tattoo removed once the owner has repented and renounced the tattoo and its meaning.

### CASE STUDY

One female Marine followed Navy traditions of obtaining a tattoo and vowing to raise hell. Demons tormented this young woman day and night. She saw shadows and felt things grabbing her and carrying her while she slept. When the young woman renounced the tattoo and asked God to close all gates, the demons responded by attempting to scratch her eyes out. They screamed obscenities and spat. It took six people to hold her down, but the demons fled after a few moments.<sup>1140</sup>

Moreover, the ink used can be harmful to the body. Skin infections, psoriasis, dermatitis and other chronic skin conditions, and tumours (both benign and malignant) have all been associated with tattoos. Due to the use of needles in tattoo application, there is also the risk of contracting infectious diseases such as tetanus, herpes simplex virus, staph, HIV, AIDS, Hepatitis B and C, and even Syphilis. And those with tattoos might not be able to get a life-saving MRI (Magnetic Resonance Imaging) test if they need one – some hospitals and

---

<sup>1137</sup> Burk, A, *Spiritual Warfare*, CD 5, Track 1

<sup>1138</sup> Eckhard, J (2004) *Deliverance and Spiritual Warfare Manual*. Chicago: Crusaders Ministries, p. 35

<sup>1139</sup> Ibid.

<sup>1140</sup> Ing, R (1966) *Spiritual Warfare*. Whitaker House: United States of America, p. 108

testing locations will refuse to do an MRI on people with body tattoos due to the metal particles in the tattoo, which may cause a burning pain during the test.<sup>1141</sup>

Excessive piercing becomes self-mutilation and harmful and destructive to the body. One in five piercings now lead to infection. Each body part presents its own specific danger, such as bleeding, nerve damage or infection, and therefore requires special attention. The most common piercing problem is ripped skin from the jewellery either catching on clothing or being pulled off. The most serious threat is hepatitis C, a blood borne infection that is being seen more and more in medical rooms that causes cirrhosis and cancer of the liver and is the most common reason for liver transplants in the U.S alone. There is currently no vaccine for hepatitis C. Unsterile equipment, poor follow-up care or the reuse of piercing needles all add to the risk of contracting hepatitis C.<sup>1142</sup>

The symptoms of hepatitis C can vary widely from case to case. In some people, symptoms may be barely noticeable. In others, there may be a significant impact on quality of life. The symptoms can also go away for long periods of time (remission) and then return. Some of the most commonly reported symptoms of hepatitis C include, among others, feelings tired all the time (sleeping does not seem to help improve energy levels), headaches, depression, mood swings, problems with short-term memory, concentration and completing relatively complex mental tasks such as mental arithmetic (many people describe this combination of symptoms as 'having a brain fog').<sup>1143</sup>

If a tattoo or body piercing has a negative motive or emotion behind it (e.g. rebellion, stubbornness or hurt) it will certainly draw curses and demons. Both tattoos and body piercing have proven to be addictive, as people generally are not satisfied with just one. It can also be an indication of self-hate and self-destruction, a cry for help, a sign of rebellion.

#### **5.11.3.4 Fear Create Bonds**

Fear bonds cause a person to avoid painful experiences. Fear is avoidance-based thinking and behaviour. The emotional effect of fear is only temporary although it produces long

---

<sup>1141</sup> Natural News, Tattoos [Online] Available from: [http://www.naturalnews.com/022073\\_tattoos\\_health\\_skin.html](http://www.naturalnews.com/022073_tattoos_health_skin.html) [Accessed: 8 September 2014]

<sup>1142</sup> Miller Q, The Downside of Body Piercing [Online] Available from: <http://www.tesoltasks.com/Piercing.htm> [Accessed: 8 September 2014]

<sup>1143</sup> NHS, Hepatitis C Symptoms [Online] Available from: <http://www.nhs.uk/Conditions/Hepatitis-C/Pages/Symptoms.aspx> [Accessed: 7 April 2014]

lasting changes in someone's thoughts. Diminishing returns from fear demand greater threats to achieve the same response. Fear fades, and as it fades, so does its ability to motivate action, thus requiring a constant renewing of fear to be effective. When these fear dynamics are strong, the strong fear causes the brain's alarm centre (amygdala) to dominate the brain of the one's who lacks a strong, joyful identity centre in their prefrontal cortex. When this happens, their wills can no longer control what their mind does. They are easily controlled by whoever they fear. They can think of nothing else.

Weak bonds produce weak identities, immaturity and anxious attachment, poor motivation, fragile relationships, inability to handle power appropriately, emotionally dominated behaviour, and detachment and inability to keep commitments. Intense emotional experiences form intense bonds, but not all strong bonds form strong identities.

Strong fear and trauma bonds unite abusive families. Strong fears are the family dynamic. Abusive family systems exchange emotional intensity and call it love. Weak bonds prepare people for cults by creating a sense of isolation and vulnerability. Broken family ties, neglect, disinterest and distraction by greed all produce weak bonds and the need for something stronger.

Intense fear bonds prepare people for violent cults. Destructive cults can be viewed as extended families of an intense sort. Satanism has strong fear bonds with its members. Satanists are looking for power and control, but not just control over children. Where control is important, fear bonds are the family dynamic. Cults rely on fear bonds because fear gets quick results. Because occultists are intent on controlling spirits, fear bonds become their spiritual dynamic. Satanists extend their fear bonds to the spirit world as a way to do business with evil spirits.

Fear bonds form as the result of failed attempts at self-preservation. While self-preservation is the great value of fear, early experiences in fearful relationships we cannot escape produce very negative and upsetting internal emotions. When these unpleasant emotions exceed our capacity to return to joy and quiet on our own, we begin to avoid pain as a form of self-preservation. After a while, avoiding pain becomes the central focus of fear bonds even when there is no real risk of overwhelming our capacity. Not only must the related sin (e.g. fear and unbelief) be repented of, but these bonds must be broken off the person.<sup>1144</sup>

---

<sup>1144</sup> Wilder, E J (2004) Fear Bonds and Love Bonds in Families and Cults. Unpublished, pp. 2-9



### **5.11.3.5 Soul Ties**

A soul tie is formed when a person is extremely close to someone or something. One can form 'Godly' as well as 'ungodly' soul ties with family, friends, pastors, other believers, churches, movie stars and rock stars. When a soul tie is formed, a person can take on the characteristics of the person or thing it has formed that tie with.

Soul ties with God are seen in Deuteronomy 10:20 which states:

*You shall [reverently] fear the Lord your God; you shall serve Him and cling to Him, and by His name and presence you shall swear.*

*Cling* or *cleave* in the Strong's Concordance means to cling or adhere, cleave (fast together) be joined together. A believer is to form a soul tie with the Lord, and this is very important for him in his daily warfare and deliverance. The believer *must* commit himself to the Lord and serve Him alone, and as this soul tie is formed he will be able to say as Jesus said, "...I and My Father are One..."<sup>1145</sup>

Soul ties with other believers are seen in Ephesians and Colossians:

*For because of Him the whole body (the church, in all its various parts), closely joined and firmly knit together by the joints and ligaments with which it is supplied, when each part [with power adapted to its need] is working properly [in all its functions], grows to full maturity, building itself up in love.*

*Ephesians 4:16*

*[For my concern is] that their hearts may be braced (comforted, cheered, and encouraged) as they are knit together..." v 19) "and not holding fast to the Head, from Whom the entire body, supplied and knit together by means of its joints and ligaments, grows with a growth that is from God.*

*Colossians 2:2*

The Godly soul ties with other believers are normal and part of the plan of the Lord. Believers should love each other and help each other. That is how they can fulfil the

---

<sup>1145</sup> Demon Buster, Soul Ties [Online] Available from: <http://www.demonbuster.com/soultie.html> [Accessed: 26 September 2014]

scripture, *Love thy neighbour as thyself*; they become as one body and therefore need and help each other. Soul ties with friends can be formed, as seen with David and Jonathan, who were best friends and as a result developed a soul tie (1 Samuel 18: 1). Soul ties with one's spouse are also Godly:

*Therefore a man shall leave his father and his mother and shall become united and cleave to his wife, and they shall become one flesh.*

*Genesis 2:24*

Having said all this, ungodly soul ties can form when the souls of men and women are knit together with negative repercussions. Manipulation and control by another person may create negative soul ties.

#### CASE STUDY

A domineering mother's soul knitted to her son's, and he ended up in an insane asylum suffering from schizophrenia. When the woman cut the spiritual umbilical cord and cast it off, the son recovered instantly and several days later left the asylum normal.

Souls are also created with every act of adultery and fornication, knitting ex-lovers together, even though they no longer see each other (Genesis 34:2,3). They may marry others, but they continue to be tormented by thoughts of the former lover. Strange circumstances may bring them together, and they bump into each other at unlikely times and places. Even if their relationship ended on a sour note, they often think of, fantasise about, and lust for each other. All soul ties need to be broken and cast off.

Other ungodly soul ties include ties with homosexual partners, former bosses, teachers, employers, employees, parents, siblings, relatives, or anyone who played a dominant part in your life at some point. Sexual partners can pass multitudes of spirits on through sex. Witchcraft creates extreme negative soul ties. In addition, the soul can be fragmented and destroyed piecemeal. Satan steals away fragments of the soul so that the victim never feels complete or at peace. Somehow, he feels something missing in his life, and he doesn't know what.<sup>1146</sup>

*See Chapter 4 - 4.15 Soul Fragmentation*

---

<sup>1146</sup> Ing, R (1966) Spiritual Warfare. Whitaker House: United States of America, pp. 91-93

Ungodly soul ties with the world can also be formed:

*Know with certainty that the Lord your God will not continue to drive these nations from before you; but they shall be a snare and trap to you, and a scourge in your sides and thorns in your eyes, until you perish from off this good land which the Lord your God has given you.*

Joshua 23:13

Evil or ungodly soul ties can cause the following in an individual's life: a fragmented mind or will or emotions, retardation, insanity and senility, madness, forgetfulness, vows, confusion, envy, jealousy, gossip, compromise, cravings, addictions, sickness, poverty, oppression, smoking, nicotine, craving of smoke, adultery, harlotry, fornication, lewd sex, sexual exploits, acting, deceit, role playing, fantasy, depression, imaginations, daydreaming, intellectual idolatry, infirmity, blindness, astonishment of heart, anger, hate, low I.Q., fear of failure, aging, anti-Christ, fear of man, divorce, self-centredness, ego, nervous habits, fatigue, religion without Christ, suicide, diabetes, kidney stones, cancer, hepatitis, arthritis, kidney infection, all fears and phobias, self-gratification and selfish pleasure, surfeiting derangement, dumb, crazy, worship of objects or persons, incantations and psychic prayers, trauma of accidents, fire and shock.<sup>1147</sup>

Ungodly soul ties need to be broken in Jesus' Name. It is very simple and easy to break these ungodly soul ties.

#### 5.11.3.6 Lost Joy

*<sup>22</sup> But the fruit of the [Holy] Spirit [the work which His presence within accomplishes] is love, joy (gladness), peace, patience (an even temper, forbearance), kindness, goodness (benevolence), faithfulness, <sup>23</sup> Gentleness (meekness, humility), self-control (self-restraint, continence). Against such things there is no law [that can bring a charge]. <sup>24</sup> And those who belong to Christ Jesus (the Messiah) have crucified the flesh (the godless human nature) with its passions and appetites and desires. <sup>25</sup> If we live by the [Holy] Spirit, let us also walk by the Spirit. [If by the Holy Spirit we have our life in God, let us go forward walking in line, our conduct controlled by the Spirit.]*

Galatians 5:22-25

---

<sup>1147</sup> Moody, G B, The Deliverance Manual. Deliverance Ministries. Unpublished, p. 570

Romans 14:17 informs the believer that the Kingdom of God is righteousness and peace and joy in the Holy Spirit. These are signs of the coming Kingdom in the midst of and in the hearts of God's people. As the world is growing in fear and depression, those living in the Kingdom will be growing in peace and joy. Because of this, those who have put their hope in this world that is falling apart will look at those in the Kingdom as being completely out of touch with reality, when in fact they will be the only ones in touch with reality.

Righteousness is doing what is right in the sight of the Lord. This leads to a peace that is incomprehensible to the world. This peace, coming only from being right with God, is the basis for true and lasting joy. As the world falls into deeper crises, fear and depression will be magnified. This will make the peace and joy that God's people are growing to be even more a contrast. This peace and joy, growing in the midst of hearts of God's people, will be one of the clearest signs of the coming Kingdom.

Rich Joyner gives the testimony<sup>1148</sup>:

*I was told that in the times to come, God's people will be so happy that the rest of the world will think we are mentally challenged.*

Joy is a fruit of the spirit. Joy is a virtue. Joy is the believer's strength (Nehemiah 8:10). God desires for His children to walk in joy no matter what happens, no matter the circumstances. However, joy can be lost by sinful values and lack of spiritual walk. The following can cause a person to lose his joy:

- *Sin of selfishness.* Thinking "me, me, me" and not looking at others through the eyes of Jesus with love and compassion.
- *Sinful spiritual pride.* Instead of helping people with an attitude of humbleness, one can become conceited and arrogant, making the other person feel unimportant and hurt.
- *Sin of anger.*
- *Sin of judging* and being critical of others, which takes away joy and peace of mind. Fault finding can create a feeling of dissatisfaction in one's life. It will destroy joy.

See Chapter 6 – 6.10.2 Joy

---

<sup>1148</sup> Joyner, R [Online] Available from: <http://soundofheavenblog.wordpress.com/2014/05/16/rick-joyner-true-peace-and-joy-signs-of-the-coming-kingdom/> [Accessed: 8 September 2014]

#### **5.11.4 Office**

Sin can attach itself to an office being held by a person. For example, if the mayor of a city was fornicating, then the person proceeding into the office of mayor will be attacked by sexual pervasive spirits if the office is not cleaned out and sanctified.

*See Chapter 6 – 6.5.6.10 Cleansing the Office*

#### **5.11.5 Belongings**

Curses and demons can attach to and defile items like clothing and jewellery.

*See Chapter 4 – 4.5.1 Curses in General*

### **5.12. STRONGHOLDS**

The Greek word for *stronghold* is *ochuroma*, which means power to hold or to grip. So stronghold is a power grip. The stronghold will increase in strength and the person, church or nation that it holds grows weaker. Their walls become difficult to penetrate. When a person, family, home, church or nation gets to a place where the situation is hopeless and unchangeable, then it is called a stronghold.

The fruit of a stronghold is darkness. A stronghold is really a network of sin. So when the stronghold is broken, the network is broken. Satan can only keep hold through sin.

#### **5.12.1 Demonic Stronghold**

Kylstra gives the following definition<sup>1149</sup>:

---

<sup>1149</sup> Kylstra, Chester and Betsy (2003) *Restoring the Foundations*. Florida: Proclaiming His Word Publications, pp. 327

*A Demonic Stronghold is a structure composed of a foundation provided by the sins of the fathers and resulting curses (SOFC) and walls/towers/rooms/ etc. made from self-sins, ungodly beliefs (UGB), soul/spirit hurts (SSH), and demonic oppression (DO). The complexity of this structure can range from relatively simple to quite complex, with many different parts and interconnections.*

One can see a demonic stronghold as a castle on a grassy plain. The SOFC provide the foundation, representing the starting point into which each person is born. In more severe cases, some of the superstructure (i.e. towers and wall) may also already be in place at birth. These would represent dedications or commitments that a person's ancestors had made. If they worshipped and served other gods, or engaged in blood covenants (i.e. the occult), considerable structure and interconnectedness could exist between the various parts of the castle. All of this could be in place at the time of birth. As the person sins and others sin against the person, more curses result. The structure then grows and becomes more mutually reinforcing as the different parts (sins) of the stronghold intertwine. The cement between the bricks or stones may represent the demons.

Evidence of a demonic stronghold may include any or all of the following:

- a person with a besetting sin;
- a person living below his potential and destiny, not to mention his inheritance as a child of God;
- a person who has already received counselling and ministry and yet is still in bondage;
- a person who resists during deliverance. This usually comes from fortified occult demons that exhibit extreme manifestations.
- a person's failure to effect significant freedom and healing using the traditional deliverance approaches. Little, if any, progress takes place, and the person receiving ministry does not report any significant change. And
- A failure of the ministry receiver to retain his deliverance and healing in the days following ministry, even when he is really trying.

### 5.12.2 Super Demonic Stronghold

Kylstra gives the following definition<sup>1150</sup>:

*A Super Demonic Stronghold is a combination of two or more strongholds, joined together and working together toward the destruction of their host. Each stronghold provides support and defence for the other. It appears as a city, as if there are “castles” located next to each other.*

Examples of Super Demonic strongholds are the ‘control-rebellion-rejection-fear’ stronghold and the ‘shame-fear-control’ stronghold. Super Strongholds frequently contain Demonic Strongholds such as abandonment, pride, fear, failure, sexual sins, religiosity, bitterness, anger, violence, victimhood, unworthiness, addictions and occult.

The following are important to note when dealing with strongholds<sup>1151</sup>:

- God gives the strategy and battle instructions.
- God generally has men carry out the plan.
- It is not the same strategy every time.
- The strategy is usually not logical or satisfying to the rational mind.
- The strategy may involve confusion or surprise for the enemy.
- Strongholds are generally defeated one at a time.
- It takes time to completely clear the land.
- Occasionally God does everything by Himself without man's help.

### 5.13. GOD ALSO SENDS CALAMITIES

Demons are always somehow involved and often allowed by God to afflict people for His purposes that might never be fully understood.

---

<sup>1150</sup> Ibid. p.333

<sup>1151</sup> Kylstra, Chester and Betsy (2003) Restoring the Foundations. Florida: Proclaiming His Word Publications, pp. 327-337

### 5.13.1 Biblical Examples

Nebuchadnezzar – a story of being humbled. Daniel Chapter 4 states that Nebuchadnezzar, King of Babylon, had a dream that troubled him. So he called in the prophet Daniel to interpret his dream. Daniel told him that the following would happen to the king because of his pride:

*<sup>24</sup> This is the interpretation, O king: It is the decree of the Most High [God] which has come upon my lord the king: <sup>25</sup> You shall be driven from among men and your dwelling shall be with the beasts of the field; you shall be made to eat grass as do the oxen and you shall be wet with the dew of the heavens; and seven times [or years] shall pass over you until you learn and know and recognize that the Most High [God] rules the kingdom of mankind and gives it to whomever He will. <sup>26</sup> And in that it was commanded to leave the stump of the roots of the tree, your kingdom shall be sure to you after you have learned and know that [the God of] heaven rules.*

*Daniel 4:24-26*

One year later, as Nebuchadnezzar was walking about his royal palace, the dream became reality. The Bible records in Daniel 4:30 that the king spoke with great pride saying: *Is not this great Babylon, that I have built for a royal dwelling by my mighty power and for the honor of my majesty?* While the word was still in the king's mouth, a voice fell from heaven: *King Nebuchadnezzar, to you it is spoken: the kingdom has departed from you and your dwelling shall be with the beasts of the field. They shall make you eat grass like oxen; and seven times shall pass over you, until you know that the Most High rules in the kingdom of men, and gives it to whomever He chooses.* That very hour, the word was fulfilled concerning Nebuchadnezzar.

And at the end of the predicted period, Nebuchadnezzar lifted his eyes to heaven, and his understanding returned to him; he blessed the Most High and praised and honoured Him who lives forever. He praised and extolled and honoured the King of Heaven, all of whose works are truth, and His ways justice. And those who walk in pride He is able to put down (Daniel 4:34-37).<sup>1152</sup>

---

<sup>1152</sup> Bible History, Nebuchadnezzar [Online] Available from: <http://www.biblehistory.net/newsletter/nebuchadnezzar.htm> [Accessed: 25 November 2014]



Following are other examples from Scripture where God was, is and can be the originator of mental torment, potentially to the point of insanity:

*In that day," declares the Lord, "I will strike every horse with bewilderment and his rider with madness [shiggaon, 2328]. But I will watch over the house of Judah, while I strike every horse of the peoples with blindness."*

*Zechariah 12:4*

*It will come about in that day that a great panic [mehumah, 4103] from the Lord will fall on them; and they will seize one another's hand, and the hand of one will be lifted against the hand of another.*

*Zechariah 14:13*

*Punishment of Babylon: "They will drink and stagger and go mad (Nebuchadnezzar) [halal, 1984, Hithpoel] because of the sword that I will send among them."*

*Jeremiah 25:16*

*Babylon has been a golden cup in the hand of the Lord, Intoxicating all the earth. The nations have drunk of her wine; Therefore the nations are going mad [halal, 1984, Hithpoel].*

*Jeremiah 51:7*

*Therefore God sends upon them a misleading influence, a working of error and a strong delusion to make them believe what is false.*

*2 Thessalonians 2:11*

### **5.13.2 The Days Ahead**

Reverent Daniel Yoder<sup>1153</sup>, Harvest Warriors Outreach Ministries, received the following prophetic Word from the Lord on the 1 April 2014 about the times to come<sup>1154</sup>:

---

<sup>1153</sup> Harvest Warriors is a spirit filled Christian ministry led by Rev. Daniel Yoder and his wife Rebecca (Brown) Yoder, M.D. This dynamic couple minister together as a team to boldly teach biblical truths with an authority based on their own extensive and unique experiences. The goal of Harvest Warriors is to raise up an army for God in these last days, empowered and trained to do the spiritual warfare necessary to reap a bountiful harvest of souls for Christ. Daniel is powerfully anointed as a prophet, healer, and evangelist. God has gifted him with a special gift of ushering the body of Christ into the very presence of God. He ministers with an outpouring of the Holy Spirit that results in changed lives and many miracles. Rebecca has been a pioneer and leader in the area of spiritual warfare for many years. She

*An Angel of the Lord woke me up early one morning saying, "Come with me, and see and hear what God has prepared for the churches." I was taken by the hand to a Great White Throne, which God Himself sat on. There before Him was the Lord Jesus with seven Giant Angels of God and a great multitude of other angels and beings. The four and twenty elders and everything became quiet as I saw a large hand of magnificent changing colour come out from the Glory around the Throne. In the hand were seven gnarled black staffs. Each one of the Angels was given a staff. "GO." Said God in such a stout strong voice that was shaking the Heavens and the Universes. Each staff had the word CALAMITY on them. "GO, GO and strike the seven Continents and the Seven Seas where men can travel with their wickedness. Strike the staffs seven times upon each Continent and also into the Seven Seas. Tell those on the Seven Continents and the Seven Seas to prepare for the calamities that I will send upon them. My calamities will start in the churches that are trying to turn Me into a HARLOT, with their lying lips, their fleshly schemes, flashy dress, false teaching and prophecies, teaching thus saith the Lord, when I never spoke to them. They are the ones who worship mammon, glorifying themselves, worshipping their leaders instead of Me. These churches are neither hot nor cold, and their calamities, they have chosen of their own accord. I AM GOD and I have been denied My rightful place in their houses. They use their lips calling to Me, in My Son Jesus' name while whoring with other gods. I must start with the houses of God first."*

*As I saw the Angels with the seven staffs of calamities turn and leave Heaven, God stopped them, touching each one on the mouth, "These words shall be spoken on the winds of the earth and on the Seven Continents and the Seven Seas. The hour of My calamities is at hand, turn to me My people, and you shall be safe from what shall be released." God's voice thundered. "Speak into existence NOW the following" "Those who falsely call themselves by My name shall have, displeasure in all that they do. I am sending grief, wretchedness, adversity, sadness with total loss of joy, sorrow such has never been seen before; their self-esteem will drive them into madness. For I have spoken," said the God of Heaven and Earth. From this time forth, their modes of transportation shall start failing them. Those on the Seven Seas shall be stranded. Their homes, their businesses, where they work, shall become infested with insects and rodents.*

---

is a uniquely teacher with the ability to present difficult concepts in a way that is easily understood by all. She is an exhorter, an encourager, and a skillful warrior. Her ministry powerfully draws people into an active personal relationship with Christ.

<sup>1154</sup> Brown R, Prophecy from Daniel [Online] Available from: <https://www.facebook.com/pages/Official-Rebecca-Brown-Page/131827026858516> [Accessed: 2 April 2014]

*Everything they touch shall turn to ashes. Their children shall disown them and many will turn deeper into the world of the devil. Their lives from this time forward shall be in utter dismay, unless they truly repent and turn back to Me NOW!"*

*I saw our Lord and Saviour turn from the Father saying. "As the Father has spoken so shall it be. These things are upon the leaders, false teachers, pastors, and prophets and those who will follow after their teaching and their ways. They shall now be more harassed by the enemy. The troubles that will be on their backs are, inconvenience, worry, anxiety, distress, strife as never before, agitation, unpleasantness, disease, headaches, pain, weak joints, failure, exertion, setbacks in their lives, accidents, mishaps both minor and major depending on their walk with ME," says the Lord.*

*The closer they turned to the Father through the Son, the calamities either subsided or stopped. As the Angel was returning me to earth, I saw all around the world, on both land and sea, turmoil was striking everywhere. The calamities were like a disease out of control. I saw as those that really loved the Lord flee from ungodly churches and leaders, leaving behind friends and family members. The small but true body of believers started growing as they went into the enemies' camps and truly took back what had been stolen. The enemies' camps were not only the satanic and occult places, they were the sinful churches that had stolen the treasures of God. At that point the angel once again spoke, "Daniel the churches have only part of the truth, you see the wealth of the wicked that is laid up for the righteous will first start coming from those churches and leaders that stole from God by lying to the people."*

*I heard the voice of God saying, "As it is written let it be. Let the calamities fall NOW! Then what a terrible sound I heard, God start laughing louder and louder at their calamities. What I saw was one of the worse disasters to be sent by God. It was not what we call natural disasters, it was all personal, the calamities happened to the people and the things they loved most. Next I saw a great falling away from God as the false leaders, teachers, prophets, including the servants who claimed to be Christians, got mad and cursed God for their disasters. My family of God, my friends, this is a call to wake up, the alarm bell is ringing. God is sounding the alarm. Judgment is next. The wrath of God will then closely follow. CALAMITY, JUDGMENT AND THEN WRATH. I myself prefer none of these so I am drawing closer and closer to my SAVIOR.*

*For the time has come for judgment to begin at the house of God; and if it begins with us first, what will be the end of those who do not obey the gospel of God?*

*1 Peter 4:17*

*Because you disdained all my counsel, And would have none of my rebuke, I also will laugh at your calamity; I will mock when your terror comes.*

*Proverbs 1:25-26*

## **5.14. WORLDLINESS**

The main trouble with worldliness is that in and of itself, it pertains to things which are not sinful. It is that condition in which a person allows things which are legitimate and right to play *too big* a part, and have *too big* a place in his life and experience as believer. It is because these things are not sinful in and of themselves that they constitute such danger.

The Lord Himself dealt with this matter, because worldliness is one of the most subtle dangers confronting believers today. He did so in the Parable of the Sower:

*As for what was sown among thorns, this is he who hears the Word, but the cares of the world and the pleasure and delight and glamour and deceitfulness of riches choke and suffocate the Word, and it yields no fruit.*

*Matthew 13:22*

This is exactly what is meant by worldliness. But still more strikingly, just under the shadow of the Cross at the end of His life, when the Lord gives a preview of history, He says:

*But take heed to yourselves and be on your guard, lest your hearts be overburdened and depressed (weighed down) with the giddiness and headache and nausea of self-indulgence, drunkenness, and worldly worries and cares pertaining to [the business of] this life, and [lest] that day come upon you suddenly like a trap or a noose;*

*Luke 21:34*

He is talking about the ultimate end of history, the climax of the ages, which is to come as a snare, suddenly and un-expectantly; so He exhorts his followers to be careful. This speaks

to the believer today. In many aspects, the most famous warning of all is found in the following Scripture:

*<sup>7</sup> But refuse and avoid irreverent legends (profane and impure and godless fictions, mere grandmothers' tales) and silly myths, and express your disapproval of them. Train yourself toward godliness (piety), [keeping yourself spiritually fit].<sup>8</sup> For physical training is of some value (useful for a little), but godliness (spiritual training) is useful and of value in everything and in every way, for it holds promise for the present life and also for the life which is to come.<sup>9</sup> This saying is reliable and worthy of complete acceptance by everybody.<sup>10</sup> With a view to this we toil and strive, [yes and] suffer reproach, because we have [fixed our] hope on the living God, Who is the Savior (Preserver, Maintainer, Deliverer) of all men, especially of those who believe (trust in, rely on, and adhere to Him).*

*1 Timothy 4:7-10*

Worldliness is a state in which a person's thinking is governed by the mind and outlook of the world. Only believers can be guilty of worldliness. Worldliness can only be true of God's people. Such people think that it is well with them about the way of salvation, but their thinking in that respect has been changed. Satan knows that it is no use tempting them any longer about the way of salvation, so he does not do so. What he does now is to see to it that in the remainder of their lives, they are still applying the old categories, still thinking in the old terms, their outlook still being governed by that which governed them before they came to Christ. In other words, they are living in two compartments. In the matter of the intellectual apprehension of salvation they are spiritual; however, in the remainder of their lives they more or less continue living exactly as they had before salvation. It is the failure to realise that the whole of a person's thinking must change and be aligned with the Word of God, the whole of a person's being and outlook must be spiritual. A person cannot live in compartments. Everything a person does and all of his activities must ultimately be dictated by his relationship to God in Jesus Christ.

Worldliness show itself in various ways. One is what is called worldly wisdom and calculation. Instead of being governed by the plain teachings of the Scripture, a person begins to argue and to reason and to question. Instead of obeying the spiritual leadings which come via the Word of God and through the Holy Spirit, a person applies his natural mind and outlook to his life and choices and decisions. So everything is toned down as the

person is afraid of leaning toward excess and becoming guilty of enthusiasm and a person becomes, on the other hand, worldly-wise.<sup>1155</sup>

The world has specific ways which it tempts the believer to sin and disobey God's will. The world system provides many varied enticements to the sins of the flesh or direct activities or pronouncements that tempt a believer. The world tempts the believer to gain its treasure and seek its approval (Luke 9:23-25); to gain or seek its power, its position, and its honor; to be exalted in the world. The world tempts the believer to be ashamed of the Lord Jesus Christ (Luke 9:26, Romans 10:11). The world system exalts its own intellectual system and rejects God's truth as foolishness (1 Corinthians 1:18-31).

The world tempts believers to conform to the world's standards. The world system tries to dictate values, to pressure people into its mould. Modern day communications and media put tremendous pressure upon believers in the western world to conform to its standards. Governments, television, educational systems, the press, music, literature, art, interaction with the people in our work and leisure, and virtually everything in our society bring the world's pressure to tempt us to step out of God's will.<sup>1156</sup>

Taking it one step further, since every believer is part of a cultural group, many of the norms of that group become the sinful world of the believer. The self-centred lifestyle of the group relentlessly presses in upon believers to conform to its mould. As citizens of the kingdom of God, believers are to recognise the intrinsic evil of many dimensions of their culture and resist these subtle entrapments.<sup>1157</sup>

## **5.15. CONCLUSION**

*<sup>4</sup> I tell you, My friends, do not dread and be afraid of those who kill the body and after that have nothing more that they can do. <sup>5</sup> But I will warn you whom you should fear: fear Him Who, after killing, has power to hurl into hell (Gehenna); yes, I say to you, fear Him!*

*Luke 12:4-5*

If initial salvation is conditioned upon repentance, and continued salvation is conditioned upon obedience, and final salvation is conditioned upon perseverance in obedience, then it

---

<sup>1155</sup> Lloyd-Jones, D (2003) *The Christian Warfare*. Michigan: Baker Books, pp. 360-364

<sup>1156</sup> Bubeck, M I (1975) *The Adversary*. USA: The Moody Press, pp. 48-49

<sup>1157</sup> Murphy, E F (2003) *The Handbook for Spiritual Warfare*, Revised and Updated. Thomas Nelson Publishers, p. 178

is concluded that God does not save man by taking the deadliness out of sin at conversion, thus effecting a change in the nature of sin. Man has a personal responsibility for his salvation. If he again chooses evil after initially repenting, he will forfeit eternal life and be lost.

God saves man, not by changing the nature of sin, so that he may be allowed to return to it later, or even die in it, without loss of eternal life, but rather he saves by changing the nature of man, taking man out of sin and sin out of man, and giving him an experience whereby he may live holy and justly in this present world, and serve God without fear, in holiness and righteousness before him all the days of our life. This experience is the *only* basis of true security. Those possessing it are enjoying perfect peace and a sweet, restful assurance that all is well. They are living without fear (1 John 4:18). They know full well that there can be no perfect assurance without perfect love, but they have found the perfect love, and therefore are enjoying the assurance. There can be nothing but a false peace for those who have an accusing or stifled conscience and who continue living in disobedience.

Sin opens gates for satanic invasion and consequences beyond man's wildest imaginations. Consequences on his bloodline, marriage line and adoptive line cannot be escaped. It is only with the guidance of the Holy Spirit that a person can overcome his sin nature and resist sinning. There are two parts to the answer of how to control the sin nature: controlling one's thoughts and saturating one's mind with God's Word is the first part, and the indwelling power of the Holy Spirit is the second part. It is vital that one has both in equal measure.

The longer a person lives in this walk with his Master, the more aware he becomes of his own utter helplessness to cope with or stop the sin in his life! But, praise God, the power of the Holy Spirit enables man to have the victory:

<sup>19</sup> Now the doings (practices) of the flesh are clear (obvious): they are immorality, impurity, indecency, <sup>20</sup> Idolatry, sorcery, enmity, strife, jealousy, anger (ill temper), selfishness, divisions (dissensions), party spirit (factions, sects with peculiar opinions, heresies), <sup>21</sup> Envy, drunkenness, carousing, and the like. I warn you beforehand, just as I did previously, that those who do such things shall not inherit the kingdom of God. <sup>22</sup> But the fruit of the [Holy] Spirit [the work which His presence within accomplishes] is love, joy (gladness), peace, patience (an even temper, forbearance), kindness, goodness (benevolence), faithfulness, <sup>23</sup> Gentleness (meekness, humility), self-control (self-restraint, continence). Against such things there is no law [that can bring a charge]. <sup>24</sup> And those who belong to Christ Jesus (the Messiah) have crucified the flesh (the godless human nature) with its passions and appetites and desires.

*Galatians 5:19-23*

Since the devil hates God so intensely, it is natural that this hatred would be extended to mankind who is created in the image of God, resulting in man becoming the object of Satan's attacks and torments. Every person gravitates toward sin. Satan cannot force sin upon a person, but he works cunningly to get man to yield to it. He does this by temptation, enticement and deception. Sin does not have a point of contentment and the person sinning (believer or non-believer) will always crave more sin, deeper, more revolting and more destructive. Sin, then, can cause insanity, psychosis and demon possession.

True believers do sin and sin terribly, just as did Ananias and Sapphira. They lie, deceive, steal, commit adultery, and are filled with rage, shame, rejection, even bitterness and hatred. They are not supposed to act this way, but they do. It is a biblical abnormality but a vivid reality. Fleshly-living believers therefore come into a state of bondage to Satan where they are living in accord with Satan's will rather than the will of God. That is a fairly obvious reality, in harmony with the whole tenure of Scripture and its emphasis upon man's responsibility. This rather sobering observation, then, indicates that wilful indulgence in fleshly sins without claiming ground of victory in the Lord Jesus Christ will result in bondage to Satan.

There comes a time where the practice of a particular fleshly sin may move from a sin of the flesh into a sin controlled and dictated by satanic, demonic activity. This means that the compulsive inner desire of the old nature is joined by a strong spirit of demonic power that begins to dictate in a given area the behaviour of that person. Once spiritual wickedness has



gained a foothold in a life, it proceeds to develop a whole hierarchy of powers of darkness against that person's life.

In the words of Professor Dr Connie Brand<sup>1158</sup>:

*Not only is sin great but it is strong, for it is the devil's bridle on men's ills and ground of his authority in their lives. Outside God, sin is the greatest power in the world today. Sin is the source of all chaos, disharmony and strife in the world.*

Therefore, sin cannot be accepted as part of human nature once a person is reborn. He is to be set apart for God. God is a God of grace, but if a person is unwilling to repent and realign himself, then God will not continue to ignore his sin. Man is given every opportunity for correction. However, man is often too distracted with his own desires to take notice of the disaster coming his way. But the punishment is certain. Therefore, the Word of God advises to run the other way (1 Peter 4:3-4).

-----oOo-----

---

<sup>1158</sup> Brand, C, Teaching Manual – Volume 4 – Module 31. RADAH Academy. Unpublished, p. 45



## *Chapter Six*

### *6. The Answer to Insanity, Psychosis and Demon Possession*

*Much more surely will those who receive [God's] overflowing grace (unmerited favour) and the free gift of righteousness [putting them into right standing with Himself] reign as kings in life through the one Man Jesus Christ (the Messiah, the Anointed One).*

*Romans 5:17b*

*In darkness there is no choice. It is light that enables us to see the differences between things; and it is Christ that gives us light.*

*J. C. and A. W. Hare, Guesses at Truth.*

#### **6.1. INTRODUCTION**

In a world of collapsing institutions, moral chaos and increasing violence, never was it more important to trace the hand of the prince of the power of the air, the spirit that now works in the children of the disobedience and then, not only learn how to wrestle with him and his forces, but also how to overcome his forces by the Blood of the Lamb and the words of their testimonies. If we cannot discern the cause of mental instabilities, more importantly insanity and psychosis, how can we cure the people?

The Word of God recognises that we face three unique enemies which seek to defeat the spiritual life of believers. Commonly we speak of these three as the world, the flesh and the devil. Each of these enemies has a unique and particular role to play in the warfare against believers. It is vital to our victory in the Lord Jesus Christ that we know how each of these enemies seeks to turn believers aside from their purchased possession and position of victory. It is important to discern what kind of temptation or testing believers are facing in any given situation.

When a person becomes a believer in the Lord Jesus Christ, his relationship to everything in the physical, spiritual, mental and emotional world should undergo a radical change. But it does not necessary happen instantaneously: it is a process which requires deliberate action and will-power from the believer to grow and mature in the Lord Jesus Christ. It is therefore put to the reader that insanity and psychosis are not merely things happening to unsaved people, but can very much happen to believers and in fact will increase in number and intensity in the days coming. In actual fact, the number of believers experiencing mental disorders is increasing at a rapid pace.

We have seen in the previous chapters that insanity and psychosis experienced by all can have one of three locations in a human: it sits either in (1) the human spirit, (2) the soul (specifically the mind), and (3) the body (specifically the brain). It was also explained that for insanity and psychosis to be established in one of these locations, there are social, medical, spiritual and environmental factors which can be traced back as the origin including brain damage, diseases, sin, occult, mind-sets and witchcraft.

Insanity and psychosis can take anything from an immediate effect to numerous years to develop. Each case should be treated as unique and with a great hope of full recovery which is available in Jesus Christ of Nazareth. No other means presents full, complete and lasting healing and restoration of spirit, soul and body as Jesus offers. He created each person uniquely and with a design to be fulfilled. He has the blue-print and He is the only one that knows what is needed to restore the person back to original design.

But for each of these victims to find complete healing and restoration through Jesus in spirit, soul and body, four filters will be presented through which each person, his history and circumstances will need to be taken in their spiritual warfare to victory. These filters might happen at different times or simultaneously, and likely in different order for each person. But

the filters need to happen only under the guidance of the Holy Spirit, the four filters being (in no specific order) demonic warfare, counselling, inner healing and physical healing.

Each of these filters is primarily to identify and eliminate darkness, deceptions, lies, domination, manipulation and evil designs in a person's life in order to restore light, joy and peace as God intended each person to have. Jesus came so that the believer will have life abundantly.

<sup>10</sup> *The thief comes only in order to steal and kill and destroy. I came that they may have and enjoy life, and have it in abundance (to the full, till it overflows).*

*John 10:10*

Sanctification is a process by which our minds are transformed through submission to Christ. Biological defects and weaknesses do not go away by themselves, no matter how much we want them to or have faith that they will. God can certainly choose to heal us supernaturally, and in some cases He does so. But we should see our weaknesses as an opportunity to grow in our faith (2 Corinthians 12:7-10; James 1:2-4). Like the man born blind, we are flawed so that "*the works of God might be displayed*" in us (John 9:3).

People diagnosed with mental disorders often behave in strange and bizarre ways. Their perception of the world and those around them is very different from yours and mine. They may even perceive your attempts to help them as a threat. They may deny that they have a problem. They may refuse to be involved in treatment. This is difficult stuff-long term, messy, and requiring a steadfast commitment on the part of the counsellor. Don't expect appreciation; in fact, you might receive just the opposite.

For these and other reasons, the response within the church has been a tendency to withdraw from the mentally ill (not to mention insanity and psychosis) either by categorising them as sinful or by ignoring the problem altogether. However, the Scriptures do not give us qualifiers about to whom we should minister; they simply say we should love one another (John 13:34; 1 John 3:11), bear one another's burdens (Galatians 6:2), and pray for each other (James 5:16). They tell us that if we see people in need and do nothing to help, the love of God does not abide in us (1 John 3:17) and our faith is of no value (James 2:14-17).

## **6.2. THERE IS ALWAYS HOPE**

Our caretakers create circumstances that imply a god who must be angry or displeased with us. Satan uses our abusive homes to teach us about a god whose love must be earned. We come to know a god of expedience, power and selfishness – a god who lies and manipulates, who uses people. Our inborn hunger to know God is fed with a poisonous presumption about His character.

The answer to the question about our safety is bound to be tinged by frightening impressions of the world. Fear becomes a constant in our lives. Just as it's true that perfect love casts out fear, so it is also true that constant fear blocks out love. Consequently, our view of life is distorted. We come to see God as someone to be feared, despised or simply disregarded. Inadvertently, we pass that view on to our children. And so it passes from generation to generation.

The biblical promises are glorious: a heavenly Father who reaches out with loving arms, freedom from condemnation and shame and abundant life. Yet they seem only to mock us and the faith we claim. We struggle to walk the narrow road with heavy packs on our backs, while those around us seem to glide by. And always the questions add to our burden: Why me? What's wrong with me? Has God failed or have I?

Neither has failed. There is hope. Hope comes in knowing that the truth sets us free. Consequently, we need to destroy the stronghold Satan has formed in our lives through his distortions of the truth. In order to overcome their influence and to claim a more abundant life, we need to demolish arguments and every pretension (everything) that sets itself up against the knowledge of God. And we must take captive every thought to make it obedient to Christ (2 Corinthians 10:5).

That isn't as simple as it sounds. We must learn to differentiate between the inaudible cry of our hearts and the lies our circumstances have taught us. This is difficult because our hearts have grown coldly silent over time. The silence that brought safety and survival killed us emotionally as well. We need to hear our own cry for help once more and learn to express it.

Then we need to embrace the truth: God is for us! Satan strives to keep us locked safely in a prison formed of the lies we learned as children. When we begin to take steps to recover

from the wounds of abuse or neglect or even our parents' innocent mistakes, we are engaging in a spiritual battle. Christ has already purchased our freedom. We have only to use the sword of truth in order to claim it.

It is truth that sets us free from the devil's influence over us. The truth, rather than some personally achieved spiritual power, is what is essential to the success of our warfare. In order to emerge victorious from our warfare, we need the Word of God. Through his Word we learn the nature of the battle we face. We learn about our armour and its effectiveness. We learn that we have an ally in the Holy Spirit. We learn that while demons may compose a formidable enemy, God says: *do not be afraid or discouraged*.<sup>1159</sup>

The beginning of all healing of spiritually rooted diseases begins when you make your peace with God and accept His love once and for all, accepting yourself and accepting others. If these three things are not in place and in right standing, healing will not come.

The challenge still remains to be able to identify where the root of the insanity and psychosis sits. Dominion over Satan is every believer's right as a result of the Blood of Jesus Christ. God allowed the Israelites to face diseases and sickness when they disobeyed Him (Deuteronomy 28:58-61) and when they would turn back to Him, He would heal their land and take sickness from their midst (Exodus 23:25; Deuteronomy 7:15).

The first step to freedom is to take responsibility for one's life, generation and forefathers – no matter what the condition it is in. Everyone has to have a starting point. Rome was not built in one day. Once the problem areas have been identified and Satan's strategy in one's life and bloodline has been exposed; one can seek God's guidance and direction in resolving the issues at hand. God desires his people to be healed and whole, spirit, soul and body (Psalm 103:3; 1 Thessalonians 5:23; 3 John 2).

### **6.3. JESUS, THE ONLY ANSWER**

Jesus came to this world with three main objectives: (1) to save the world from sin; (2) to destroy the works of the devil; and (3) to bring the kingdom of God among us. Through the cross, Jesus' soul and body carried all mankind's sin, ungodliness, iniquity and every abomination; in His spirit, he carried the immeasurable pain with which mankind had pierced

---

<sup>1159</sup> Johnson, M (1992) *Spiritual Warfare for the Wounded*. Michigan: Vine Books, pp. 26-27

the Father's heart. Without Jesus, man cannot receive from God. He cannot receive His blessings, His communion, His revelation or His power. This is the first law for man to come to God: those who are under the protection of the blood of the sacrifice cannot be touched by death.<sup>1160</sup> Jesus, therefore, disarmed the principalities and powers of Satan. He stripped them of all their weapons.

Dr Ed Murphy,<sup>1161</sup> in his book *The Handbook for Spiritual Warfare*, gives the following as a summary of the defeat of evil supernaturalism by Jesus Christ<sup>1162</sup>:

1. The Lord Jesus has already bound the strong man (Matthew 12:22-29).
2. The Lord Jesus has already proclaimed release to the captives and recovery of sight to the blind and has set free the oppressed (Luke 4:16-19; Acts 10:38; Ephesians 4:8; 2 Corinthians 4:3-6).
3. God has already taken all of us as His children out of the kingdom of darkness and placed us in the kingdom of His Son (Colossians 1:12-14).
4. The Lord Jesus has rendered the devil powerless against His elect and has delivered all of His children from slavery to him (Hebrews 2:14-18).
5. The Lord Jesus has already totally destroyed the works of the devil in the lives of all the children of God (1 John 3: 1-10).
6. All this was accomplished in His redemptive event by the Lord Jesus on our behalf as the Representative Man, the Last Adam, and the Second Man (Philippians 2:5-11; 1 Corinthians 15:45-47; Hebrews. 2:9-18).
7. God's Word declares Jesus' lordship over Satan and his kingdom (Matthew 28:18; Mark 16:19; Philippians 1:19-23; Philippians. 2:9-11; 1 Peter 3:22).
8. Jesus totally defeated the entire kingdom of evil supernaturalism on our behalf (Colossians 2:13-15).
9. God promises all obedient believers victory in spiritual warfare over Satan and his entire kingdom of evil (Romans 16:20; 2 Corinthians 2:11, 10:3-5; Ephesians 2:6, 3:10, 6:10-20; Colossians 2:8-15; James 4:7-8; 1 Peter 5:8-11; 1 John 2:12-14, 5:18-19; Revelation 12:11).

One of Satan's strongest weapons against the human race is guilt. Jesus stripped him of the ability to make us guilty. He took upon Himself all the guilt and all the condemnation and all the evil consequences of Adam's transgression. He died as "the last Adam", He was buried

---

<sup>1160</sup> Mendez-Ferrell, A (2006) *Eat My Flesh and Drink My Blood*. Florida: Voice of the Light Ministries, pp. 32, 43

<sup>1161</sup> Dr Ed Murphy is known worldwide for his training and counseling work in the area of spiritual warfare. His teaching has benefited church leaders and other Christians in the U.S. and all around the world.

<sup>1162</sup> Murphy, E F (2003) *The Handbook for Spiritual Warfare*, Revised and Updated. Thomas Nelson Publishers, p. 526

as "the last Adam" and He rose again as "the second man", the head of a new race. In that way, Jesus extinguished the guilt of Adam's race. For those who believe in Jesus, the guilt of Adam is no longer held against them. As a result of Jesus' sacrifice, God can now forgive us without compromising His justice. He has removed Satan's argument from him by the death of Jesus. He has made it possible for us to be received by God as righteous without any condemnation.

### 6.3.1 The Foundation of Jesus' Ministry

The foundation of the ministry, the kingdom and motivation of Jesus Christ consists of two facets: (1) the love God the Father has for man, and (2) the Father's grace needed to restore fellowship with man. This foundation is encapsulated in Jesus being sent by the Father:

*<sup>16</sup> For God so greatly loved and dearly prized the world that He [even] gave up His only begotten (unique) Son, so that whoever believes in (trusts in, clings to, relies on) Him shall not perish (come to destruction, be lost) but have eternal (everlasting) life.*

*John 3:16*

It is upon this foundation and from this foundation (being set in this foundation) that ALL spiritual warfare including counselling, deliverance and healings is to be conducted.

Jesus' love on the one hand is the greatest force in the universe. Jesus came to reveal the love of the Father to man. For love, someone will do things that he wouldn't do for any other reason. Love is of divine origin. Love is God. Love is that He loved man first. Love is a Person. This Person is Jesus, but it is the part of His being that is above all of His attributes and greatness. It is in this part of Himself that the fullness of God manifests itself. What gives the fullness is not some great anointing of power, or the greatness of a ministry, or the size of a church. Only love gives fullness.

It is the knowledge and the presence of this love in a believer's life that drives out fear (1 John 4:18) and covers a multitude of sin (1 Peter 4:8); a knowing that creates an appreciation, a true humbleness and a boldness within believers that can be seen by others – that draw others to them.



Love is of spiritual origin, since love is God. It is not something that comes from a deep emotion, nor is it something of the will. Love is not a decision, which is solely a mechanism of the soul. Love is a Person who wants to exist through man, who wants to love through man, who wants to unite with man in his spirit, and flood with fullness his entire being. It is in the love of God where heaven and earth are mixed and united. Love is not an option; it is the highest, and the only commandment, that Jesus gave the believer, because love is the life in His blood, which mixes together and flows throughout His body. Without love, the body cannot exist as such; it is only dried bones, scattered about and dead.<sup>1163</sup>

*For the Son of Man came to seek and to save that which was lost.*

*Luke 19:10*

All of us were like sheep going astray. We were lost in our sin, on our way to destructive paths. Jesus came to set us free and to give us a new life filled with God's abundance. Jesus came to save us from the condemnation the world was under (see John 3:16-19).

Jesus's grace, on the other hand, is commonly described as the unmerited favour of God toward man. However, it is much more than that: grace surrounds us, it enveloping us every day of our lives. Grace is behind all of God's actions. Grace prompts God's involvement in our lives: it takes the galling exactness out of our efforts to please Him, and it relieves us from the choking grip of needless guilt. Where sin abounded, grace super abound (Romans 5:20).

Grace is God's free and abundant demonstration of love to those who do not deserve it, have not earned it and cannot repay it. Grace is acceptance without reservation and forgiveness without condemnation and pardon without probation. Even the sinner being lost, lustful, disobedient and spiritually dead can be the recipient of this grace, unconditionally. When grace is understood and applied, we are no longer afraid of God and no longer demanding of others. Grace is at the heart of our eternal salvation; it removes all human effort from God's plan, and it motivates us to unity, harmony, and tolerance.<sup>1164</sup>

---

<sup>1163</sup> Mendez-Ferrell, A (2010) Seated in Heavenly Places. Florida: Voice of the Light Ministries, pp. 90-92

<sup>1164</sup> Insight for Living. [Online] Available from: The Grace Awakening.  
[http://www.insightforliving.com/pdf/retailseries/TheGraceAwakening\\_MessageMates.pdf](http://www.insightforliving.com/pdf/retailseries/TheGraceAwakening_MessageMates.pdf) [Accessed: 29 October 2014]

### 6.3.2 The Blood of Jesus

The Blood of Jesus is the believer's defence. It is his witness. It was poured out for man from the torn apart side of Emmanuel and He promised in His Word it would wash away all the guilty stains. God the Father is the Judge who is pleased to see the believer through the blood of His Son. The believer enters his plea in the court case: not through any good works that were done, but only through the Blood of the Son of God. The Blood is the believer's plea, his covering, the price paid for his redemption, his witness. The Blood of Jesus speaks of life and forgiveness, mercy and cleansing, and of power to deliver mankind from the sentence of death. As a sinner, a person pleads the Blood of Jesus for his sins. As a believer, the person pleads the Blood of Jesus for his failures and weaknesses. As a warrior against evil, the person pleads the Blood of Jesus as his protection against the attack of Satan as Satan is afraid of the power of the Blood of Jesus.<sup>1165</sup>

This blood of Jesus Christ of Nazareth provides the following to the believer:<sup>1166</sup>

- *Remission or forgiveness of sins* (Matthew 26:28).
- *Complete washing of sins* (Revelations 1:5).
- *Redemption* (Ephesians 1:7; Colossians 1:14). Redemption means we have been bought back. We were in the kingdom of Satan; we've been bought back out of the kingdom of Satan. The price of our redemption, Peter told us, was not silver or gold, but "*the precious blood of Christ, as of a lamb without blemish and without spot*" (1 Peter 1:19). We make this our personal testimony by saying out loud: "Through the blood of Jesus, I am redeemed out of the hand of the devil".<sup>1167</sup>
- *Cleansing* (1 John 1:7). The words used in this passage are all in the continuing present tense: if we continually walk, we continually have fellowship, and the blood continually cleanses us. Bear in mind, it is conditional. If we are not walking in the light, the blood does not cleanse us. But by walking in the light, we have fellowship with fellow believers. If we are out of fellowship, we are out of the light. If we are out of the light, the blood doesn't cleanse us. That is an important truth to remember. We make this personal by saying out loud: "While I am walking in the light, the blood of Jesus is cleansing me, now and continually, from all sin".<sup>1168</sup>
- *Justification* (to be regarded as innocent) (Romans 5:9); Justified means, acquitted, not guilty, made righteous; just-as-if-I'd never sinned. We make this personal testimony by

---

<sup>1165</sup> Shaw, G (1978) The Power of the Precious Blood. USA: End-Time Handmaidens Inc., p. 4

<sup>1166</sup> Baxter, M K (2005) The Power of the Blood. New Kensington: Whitaker House, p. 19.

<sup>1167</sup> Prince, D (2006) Lucifer Exposed. UK: Derek Prince Ministries, pp. 65-66

<sup>1168</sup> Ibid, p. 66

saying out loud: "Through the blood of Jesus, I am justified, acquitted, not guilty, made righteous, just-as-if-I'd never sinned". <sup>1169</sup>

- *Being brought closer to God* (Ephesians 2:13).
- *Having peace with God* (Colossians 1:20).
- *Being cleansed in conscience* (Hebrews 9:14).
- *Sanctification* (Hebrews 13:12). Sanctified has both a negative and a positive meaning. It means, negatively, "to be separated and set apart from sin." And, positively, it means, "to be made partaker of God's holiness". We make this our personal testimony by saying out loud: "Through the blood of Jesus, I am sanctified, separated from sin and the kingdom of Satan, and made partaker of God's own holiness". <sup>1170</sup>
- *Having new boldness* to approach God and ask for His help (Hebrews 10:19).
- *Having ongoing cleansing from sin* (1 John 1:7).
- *Overcoming the enemy* (Revelation 12:11).

### 6.3.3 The Battle is The Lord's

*[David, speaking to Goliath] "Then all this assembly shall know that the Lord does not save with sword and spear; for the battle is the Lord's, and He will give you into our hands.*

*1 Samuel 17:47 (NKJ)*

*Hear, O Israel, today you are going into battle against your enemies. Do not be faint-hearted or afraid; do not be terrified or give way to panic before them. For the Lord your God is the one who goes with you to fight for you against your enemies to give you victory.*

*Deuteronomy 20:3-4 (NIV)*

*It is God who arms me with strength and makes my way perfect. He makes my feet like the feet of a deer; he enables me to stand on the heights. He trains my hands for battle; my arms can bend a bow of bronze. You give me your shield of victory, and your right hand sustains me; you stoop down to make me great.*

*Psalms 18:32-35 (NIV)*

---

<sup>1169</sup> Ibid, p. 67

<sup>1170</sup> Prince, D (2006) Lucifer Exposed. UK: Derek Prince Ministries, p. 67

*'Not by might nor by power, but by my Spirit,' says the Lord Almighty.*

*Zechariah 4:6 (NIV)*

*Because of Him, and through Him, and to Him are all things. To Him be the glory forever! Amen.*

*Rom 11:36 (GLT)*

### **1.12.2 Victory over the World**

Is there victory over the world, or are we destined to passively allow it to conform us to its own mould? Yes, there is victory! Victory over the world is as much our birthright as is victory over the flesh and over the devil. That victory only comes through Christ, but in a way that differs from the specific means of victory over the flesh and over the devil. We win over the flesh, by putting its deeds to death and making no provision for its wrong desires. We win over the devil by resisting him, even as we submit ourselves fully unto the Lord.

With the world, however, we triumph neither by killing it (as we do the deeds of the flesh) nor by directly resisting it (as we do the devil). Instead, we detach ourselves from 'this world'. We win over the world by learning what it means to be in the world, but not of it. In Galatians 6:14 (NASB), the apostle Paul testifies to this path of certain victory over the world through the cross of Christ:

*May it never be that I should boast, except in the cross of our Lord Jesus Christ, through which the world has been crucified to me, and I to the world.*

Victory over the world is ours daily through continually choosing to practice obedient faith (1 John 5:5). If we walk in the obedience of the faith which overcomes the world, then our end will be the same as that promised by the writer: *"the one who does the will of God abides forever"* (1 John 2:17b).<sup>1171</sup>

---

<sup>1171</sup> Murphy, E F (2003) *The Handbook for Spiritual Warfare*, Revised and Updated. Thomas Nelson Publishers, p. 191

### **6.3.4      Joining Jesus' Army**

Just as there are physical principles that govern the universe around us, so there are spiritual principles that govern our relationship with God. The first and most basic principle is that God loves us and has a wonderful plan for our lives (John 3:16), but when sin entered the world it separated man from our holy God (Romans 2:23). Being a just and righteous God, sin cannot be overlooked but must be paid for and since there is no way we can pay for our own sins God Himself, in His great love, became the payment for our sins. He was born to die in order to pay the price for our sins.

We worship Jesus as a baby, but the story doesn't end there. Jesus grew up and went through all the things we go through in life. He was rejected and crucified, but while dying on the cross, He suffered the eternal punishment of every sin we would ever commit. In other words, He went through our hell so we wouldn't have to (Romans 5:8). Because He was man, He could represent us and take our place. Because He was God, He could endure punishment way beyond anything we could ever experience. At the end of the crucifixion Jesus said "*finished*" and His spirit returned to heaven. His body went into a grave but three days later came back to life, proving forever that sin and death had been conquered.

He is in Heaven today at the right hand of the Father. There He has made a place for us if we will only accept the gift and the joy that He has offered us. Salvation is freely available to every person (Ephesians 2:8-9), but it is a gift we must voluntarily receive by recognising our need and inviting Him into our lives and circumstances, to live in us (John 1:12). He Himself then lives within us through His Spirit, the Holy Spirit, and gives us new meaning and ability in life.

The only way a person can get to the point of committing his life to the Lord is if the Father pulled him towards Jesus (John 6:44) and he is given life by the Holy Spirit (John 6:63). No man can contribute to this process apart from praying for the salvation of the person.

If you haven't received this wonderful free gift do so now by asking God for His gift of salvation. While there are no special or magical words to use, here is the idea of a prayer to pray to accept God's free gift of salvation. However, it's not just saying the words, but meaning them from the depths of one's heart that makes the difference.

Here is a sample prayer you can use:

*Dear Jesus, I recognize my need of you. I am a sinner and I know I sin and am guilty in your sight. Thank you for leaving heaven to come to earth and die on the cross for my sins. I know you took my eternal condemnation on Yourself through the cross and paid for it all. I repent of my sin and ask forgiveness. Renew my heart and my mind and fill me with Your Holy Spirit. I freely accept your gift of salvation. I want to live for You and only You. I put You first in my life and want to serve You. I reject any other forces or powers and forbid any of them to have any influence on me. Dear Jesus, fill me and use me. Thank you for hearing and answering me. In Jesus' name I pray.  
Amen.*

Know that if you have ever prayed this prayer or one similar to it, you are born again into God's family and nothing can take your salvation away. One of Satan's first lies is to get us to doubt our salvation and to question if we are a child of God. You have just joined God's army.<sup>1172</sup>

A note on the spiritual transition into Christ via the water and Spirit: that transition is called being 'born again', or 'entering the Kingdom of Heaven'. Jesus restores us from our past and heals those who enter the Kingdom. The devil uses our past memories and beliefs to stop our minds and thoughts from being converted. Until we are free from the past as our 'reality' of Christ, church, truth, freedom, or being born again, we will not change.

Our minds are created to access and operate within the spiritual dimension, and this requires more than five senses. Christ-consciousness is known without learning. In other words, those whose minds have entered Christ are no longer subject to the laws and regulations of traditional education. The realm of the supernatural is the norm, not the exception. Be made new in the spirit of your mind (Ephesians 4:23).

Being in Christ is outside of time and traditional learning. Faith is required to enter that dimension which is the only reality in the vast universe. Men are unable to measure or calculate its whereabouts, but it remains the pure substance of Christ for those same reasons. It is precisely that substance-faith which enables our minds to grasp the power and authority Jesus offers to those who become a disciple (Hebrews 11:1), those who join the

---

<sup>1172</sup> Schmoyer, J, Spiritual Warfare Handbook. Doylestown: Main St. Baptist Church. Unpublished, p. 4

army. We become joint heirs with the King of Kings. A true disciple is unaffected by the illusions of this world as he worships in truth and spirit (John 4:24). Those who form attachments with the visible world are the ones most easily deceived. The truth requires dying to all perceptions of reality.<sup>1173</sup>

### 6.3.5 Dare to Believe

Is anyone oppressed? Let him cry out to God. It is always good for people to cry out. The Holy Spirit and the Word of God will bring to light every hidden, unclean thing that must be revealed. There is always a place for deliverance when a person lets God search out what is spoiling and marring his life. God is compassionate and says *Seek the Lord while He may be found* (Isaiah 55:6). He has further stated *whoever calls on the name of the Lord shall be saved* (Acts 2:21). Seek Him now; call on His name right now. There is forgiveness, healing, redemption, deliverance – everything needed right here and now, and that which will satisfy throughout eternity.

*Most assuredly, I say to you, he who believes in Me, the works that I do he will do also; and greater works than these he will do, because I go to My Father. And whatever you ask in My name, that I will do, that the Father may be glorified in the Son. If you ask anything in My name, I will do it.*

John 14:12-14

"He who *believes*" – what a word! God's Word changes man as he enters into fellowship and communion. Man enters into assurance and Godlikeness, for he sees the truth and believes. Faith is an effective power; God opens the understanding and reveals Himself. *Therefore it is of faith that it might be according to grace* (Romans 4:16). Grace is God's blessing coming down to everyone. Anyone can open the door to God as an act of faith.

Jesus drew the hearts of the people to Himself. They came to Him with all of their needs, and He relieved them all. He talked to men, healed the sick, relieved the oppressed and cast out demons. *He who believes in Me, the works that I do he will do also* (John 14:12).

"He who believes in Me" – the essence of divine life is in the believer by faith. To the one who believes, it will come to pass. The believer becomes supernatural by the power of God.

---

<sup>1173</sup> Ferrell, L E (2010) Immersed in Him. United States of America: Destiny Image Publisher Inc., pp. 139-140

If he believes, the power of the Enemy cannot stand, for God's Word is against him. Jesus gives him His Word to make faith effective. If anyone can believe in his heart, he begins to speak whatever he desires, and whatever he dare to say is done. Dare to believe, and then dare to speak! Dare to believe the Lord Jesus for breakthrough, healing and restoration from insanity and psychosis and every imaginable mental illness.

## **6.4. THE ROLE OF THE HUMAN SPIRIT**

Faith is the by-product of trust and is the result of living in Christ. Those who merely say they believe in Jesus Christ but do not have Him filling their lives are, for the most part, depending on someone else's experience of Christ. Faith will always grow proportionate to one's personal loss of identity. "Entering Christ" is achieved only after a person's human spirit connects back to the Holy Spirit and regains dominion over the soul. The soul will be the master until the believer surrenders control by sacrificing himself to Jesus Christ and entering Him.<sup>1174</sup>

Every living person has a God-given human spirit, a spirit that was designed by God and by His choice placed in him. A person would not be alive without the presence of a human spirit. Scripture says that before the foundation of the world, the human spirit was exquisitely crafted to do a set of good works that nobody else can do. Every human spirit is unique, one of a kind, and has a contribution to make to the world at large that nobody else can do like that specific human spirit can do. The human spirit is made of the light that God is made of. God's light is infinite, but He weaved together a unique blend of His light, loaded it with wisdom that He calls the human spirit. Every human spirit has been in heaven since eternity passed; he has watched the Almighty on his throne, he has seen human spirits be dispatched into time and space and return from time and space.<sup>1175</sup> The human spirit is therefore also eternal (Genesis 2:7; Ecclesiastes 12:7).

He is made in the image of God, with seven facets or portions: Prophet, Servant, Teacher, Exhorter, Giver, Ruler and Mercy (Genesis 1:26-27; Romans 12:6-8; Revelation 1:4, 3:1). The human spirit acts as a searchlight and is described as the searchlight (lamp, candle) of the Lord and has the ability to search out a person's inward being in the same way that the

---

<sup>1174</sup> Ferrell, L E (2010) Immersed in Him. United States of America: Destiny Image Publisher Inc., p. 124

<sup>1175</sup> Burk, A, Ministering to SRA/DID Clients. 13 August 2014



Holy Spirit searches out even the depths of God (Proverbs 20:27; 1 Corinthians 2:10-11). The human spirit can be overwhelmed, wounded, crushed and broken (Psalm 34:17-18; Psalm 142:3-4; Proverbs 17:22; Proverbs 18:14).<sup>1176</sup> The human spirit has its own will, memory and emotions. The soul needs to be educated but the human spirit needs to be unpacked as it comes 'pre-loaded' with everything needed for the specific individual as per his unique design (2 Peter 1:3-4). However, just as the soul needs to mature, the spirit has to be nurtured and matured by being prayed for and blessed.

The human spirit was designed by God to have dominion over the soul and the body.

*Now may the God of peace make you holy in every way, and may your whole spirit and soul and body be kept blameless until our Lord Jesus Christ comes again.*

*1 Thessalonians 5:23*

The believer's life is therefore to be a walk "after the spirit", minding "the things of the spirit" (Romans 8:4-5). In the Revised Version (of 1881), in these verses the word "spirit" is not written with a capital "S," denoting the Spirit of God, but with a small "s", referring to the spirit of man. But the believer can only thus walk "after the spirit" if the Spirit of God dwells in him (Romans 8:9). The Holy Spirit lifts one's spirit to the place of rule over soul and body (flesh, both ethically and physically) by joining it to the Risen Lord Jesus, and making it "one spirit" with Him (1 Corinthians 6:17).

That the believer's will retains control over his own spirit is the important point to note, for through ignorance he can withdraw his spirit from cooperation with the Holy Spirit, and thus, so to speak, "walk after the soul", or "after the flesh", even unwittingly. A surrendered will to do the will of God is therefore no guarantee that he is doing that will; he must understand what the will of the Lord is (Ephesians 5:17), and for the doing of that will must seek to be filled in spirit to the utmost of his capacity.

The knowledge that the Spirit of God has come to indwell the shrine of the spirit is not enough to guarantee that the believer will continue to walk in the spirit and not fulfil the lusts of the flesh (Galatians 5:16). If he wishes to truly "live" in the realm of the Spirit and know His power, he must learn how to "walk" with the Spirit. And for this, he must understand how to "combine" and "compare" spiritual things with spiritual (1 Corinthians 2:13), so as to interpret

---

<sup>1176</sup> Bowman, S, The Human Spirit's Role in Inner Healing [Online] Available from: [http://www.thepoolministries.org/spirits\\_role.htm](http://www.thepoolministries.org/spirits_role.htm) [Accessed: 9 October 2014]

truly the things of the Spirit of God – exercising the spirit faculty by which he is able to examine all things, and so discern the mind of the Lord. Such a believer should know how to walk after the spirit, movements or admonitions as it is moved or exercised by the Spirit of God cultivating its strength by use, so that he becomes "strong in spirit" (Luke 1:80) and a truly mature spiritual man in the Church of God (1 Corinthians 2:6; Hebrews 6:1).

When the Holy Spirit takes the spirit of man as His sanctuary, evil spirits attack the human spirit to abort it from co-working with God. They seek to deceive the mind, their object being to close the outflow of the Spirit of God dwelling at the centre. And yet, when the man is "spiritual" and the mind and body is subservient to the spirit, the spiritual forces of Satan can come into direct contact with the spirit and then follows the "wrestling" referred to by Paul (Ephesians 6: 12).

If the man is ignorant of the laws of the spirit, especially the tactics of Satan, he is liable to yield to an onslaught of deceiving spirits by which they (1) force his spirit into strained ecstasy, or elation, or else (2) press it down, as it were, into a vice. In the former case, he is given "visions" and revelations which appear to be divine, but afterwards are proved to have been of the enemy by their passing away with no results; in the latter, the man sinks into darkness and deadness as if he had lost all knowledge of God. When the believer understands these direct onslaughts of wicked spirits, he becomes able to discern the condition of his spirit and to retain control over it, refusing all forced jubilation and strain and resisting all weights and pressure to drive it below the normal state of poise, so that it is capable of cooperation with the Spirit of God.

The danger of the human spirit acting out of cooperation with the Holy Spirit and becoming driven or influenced by deceiving spirits is a very serious one, yet it can be increasingly detected by those who walk softly and humbly with God. For instance, a man is liable to think his own masterful spirit is an evidence of the power of God because in some directions he sees the Holy Spirit using him in winning souls. In another instance, one may have a flood of indignation inserted into his spirit which he pours out thinking it is all of God, though others shrink and are conscious of a harsh note which is clearly not of God.

This influence on the human spirit by evil spirits counterfeiting the divine workings or even the workings of the man himself, because he is out of co-working with the Holy Spirit, needs to be understood and detected by the believer who seeks to walk with God. He needs to know that because he is spiritual, his spirit is open to two forces of the spirit realm, and that if

he thinks only the Holy Spirit can influence him in the spiritual sphere he is likely to be misled. If such were so, he would become infallible; but he needs to watch and pray, and seek to have the eyes of his understanding enlightened to know the true workings of God.<sup>1177</sup>

A side note: it is important to note that the human spirit is not held hostage by any damage that might be done to the body, specifically the brain of that person.<sup>1178</sup>

Arthur Burk has built up a ministry over the past twenty years in which he engages with the human spirit and therefore partners with the human spirit and the Holy Spirit in order to determine in the client's life legal rights (covenants and un-confessed sin), spiritual structures, the presence of demons.

#### **6.4.1 Ministering to the Human Spirit**

The human spirit was designed by God to play a central role in everything pertaining to man. It is, therefore, presented that the human spirit can play a vital role in the spiritual warfare including the demonic warfare through deliverance of the individual to achieve victory over insanity and psychosis.

When ministering to the spirit the following four steps should be taken<sup>1179</sup>:

1. *Engage the spirit*: Speak to the person's spirit, calling it to attention in the Name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth and inviting it to come to the front. We then speak to the soul, asking it to step aside and to allow us to dialogue directly with the human spirit.
2. *Legitimise the spirit*: The second step is to speak to the spirit about essence. The human spirit is made of light, the same kind of light of which God is made. Each of our spirits was designed by God before the foundation of the world, and was made from the same light that He is. That essence cannot be removed from us. At times, we may also speak to the issue of authority, explaining to the spirit that it was designed by God to walk in dominion over the soul. Even if this has not happened in the person's life, it does not change God's original design. The spirit was designed to lead, and it needs to know that.

---

<sup>1177</sup> Penn-Lewis, J (2004) War on the Saints. Pennsylvania: CLC Publication, p. 164, 166-167

<sup>1178</sup> Burk, A, Ministering to SRA/DID Clients. 13 August 2014

<sup>1179</sup> Burk, A, Ministering to the Human Spirit. Sapphire Leadership Group, Inc., pp. 1-3

3. *Instruct the spirit:* The central truth about the spirit is that it was designed by God to heal and nurture the soul. This happens when the spirit is legitimised and comes to a place of dominion.
4. *Occasionally direct the spirit:* By directing the spirit, we mean telling it what to do. Other than telling a person's spirit to seek direction from the Holy Spirit, I recommend not being directive. It is too easy to fall into witchcraft (control), and we often cannot see the bigger picture that God has for timing and sequence of events in our lives. After explaining the proper positioning to the spirit, I will say, "God will help you grow and develop, and in His time, He will tell you when and how to initiate the changes to make things right".

*See Appendix for an example on how to Minister to the Spirit.*

#### **6.4.2      Seat of Dominion**

The seat of dominion or power is where the control panel is of the human spirit. It is situated in the centre of forehead. It is from here that the spirit man can take control over situations, the body, the brain and the soul. Man was design by God to have the spirit man be sufficiently whole, healed and restored to the image of God, that it has the right and the capacity to go to the seat of dominion and to meet the Lord Jesus Christ and to begin to calibrate the body systems.<sup>1180</sup> If the spirit is wounded or divided, it may cause the spirit to move from this seat to a staging area where it is limited in function and control.

#### **6.4.3      Ministering with the help of the Human Spirit**

When ministering to someone coming for counselling (the client), through engagement with the human spirit, the following can be revealed by asking him binary questions relevant to the issues at hand<sup>1181</sup>:

- Inner healing issues: For example, what the heart believes, any judgments or vows that are hidden.
- The presence of the demonic entities, spiritual structures or devices and/or alien human spirits.

---

<sup>1180</sup> Burk, A, Your Health and Redemptive Gifts , CD 4 Track 4

<sup>1181</sup> Bowman, S, The Human Spirit's Role in Inner Healing [Online] Available from: [http://www.thepoolministries.org/spirits\\_role.htm](http://www.thepoolministries.org/spirits_role.htm) [Accessed: 9 October 2014]

- If any of the spirit portions are missing or defiled.
- Generational defilement.
- False beliefs.
- Any legal rights such as un-confessed sin, covenants or curses.

The human spirit might reveal the preceding in one of the following ways by using the faculties of the soul<sup>1182</sup>:

- **Recalling memory:** This might be in the form of a (1) a graphic recall: crystal clear memory pictures; (2) hazy impressions: faint but plainly discernible images that tend to become clearer when focused upon; (3) strong impressions: body sensations such as changes in breathing or sensations of tightness, tension, pressure or pain in the head or other areas, dizziness or sensations of movement; emotional responses such as anxiety, fear, panic, crying, anger; smelling fragrances or odours, hearing sounds or voices. These can be very strong; (4) medley: any combination of the above; or (5) nonvisual, non-sensory impression: the person simply knows what happened, even without pictures or feeling. Sometimes this is due to repressed memories/emotions and may mean the person is not as fully involved as he needs to be in order to work toward healing in this particular area. It might be wise to work in another area and return here another time.

Note: Work through the memory until the person is sure of what is believed in the memory about self, others, life and God. Then ask the human spirit what the person chose to do to protect himself from the pain of what he believed. That will be the inner vow. Inner vows prevent the spirit from ministering to the soul. Follow standard repentance guidelines for bitter root judgments and inner vows.

- **Pictures:** Often the human spirit will show the person a picture that symbolises what the person believes. Usually the picture will change into a memory. (1) Persons: the human spirit always appears as an adult. When you are given a picture of a child that is a picture of the soul, not of the spirit. (2) Places: darkness, nothingness, colours, boxes, tunnels, curtains, mist...all are pictures that represent what the soul believes. They need to be explored.

---

<sup>1182</sup> Ibid.

- **Feelings:** Feelings may surface for no apparent reason. Remind the person to tune into and report what he is feeling. Sometimes the spirit will reveal the state of the person through how he feels: hopeless, restless, fearful that it is just too hard. Or he may feel choked or trapped. Explore this.
- **Generational problems:** Ask the spirit if the problem is generational. Sometimes the sense is that the problem goes a long way back or is very deep.

#### **6.4.4 Nishe-Anointings**

Nishe-anointings are a specific anointing given by God to specific people as part of their design.

##### **6.4.4.1 A Motion Anointing**

There are individuals whose human spirit is dependent on motion to be able to connect to God. They cannot be still. Their spirit can connect with God when they are active in some way. They cannot do the spiritual thing like other people. They have to have motion when they are to engage with God. That is not ADD, but it is God's design. These people release anointing through tambourines and flags, for example, during worship services; they are also more sensitive when going into specific directions. These people have the ability to clear up defiled motion (e.g. freeway and highway congestions and high accident rate areas).<sup>1183</sup>

##### **6.4.4.2 A Time Anointing**

There are individuals who have, as another example, extreme challenges on what to wear some mornings. They might go through four or ten different outfits, and are still absolutely not at peace. There is turmoil within them; their spirits are just not at ease. They have been ridiculed and mocked and criticised and nobody can understand that this is a profound spirit compulsion. This is not a person being insecure, dressing in competition with others. They will even come home at noon and change clothing because their spirit is upset. It has to do with the colour of time. When they wake up, they know that time has been defiled, that the

---

<sup>1183</sup> Burk, A, The Mercy Season, CD 6, Track 4

colour of time is wrong. It grieves their spirit very deeply and they try, in their clothing, to create a compensation that will pull time into the right colour. Sometimes it is achieved and this brings peace, but other times not and they walk around with an uneasy spirit. These people have the authority to clean and bring time into alignment and move it at times into the supernatural realm.<sup>1184</sup>

#### **6.4.5 Passivity of the Spirit**

Passivity of the spirit is closely associated with passivity of mind, because there is a vital relationship between mind and spirit: a wrong thought generally reveals a wrong spirit, and a wrong spirit engenders a wrong thought.

This form of passivity may come about through the following:

- Ignorance of the laws of the spirit, especially how to maintain the freedom of the spirit.
- Wrong mental conclusions. Mixing up feelings (the physical, soulish and spiritual) resulting in not knowing which is which: for example, (a) putting the spiritual down to soulish or physical, or (b) attributing to the spiritual that which is natural and physical.
- Depending upon the soulish life instead of the spiritual, through lack of knowledge of the difference between them. Also, by quenching one's spirit through ignoring the spiritual sense, for the mind should be able to read 'the sense of the spirit' as clearly as it does the senses of seeing, hearing, smelling, and all other senses of the body. There is a knowledge by the mind and a knowledge by the spirit; hence, a sense of the spirit, which we should learn to understand. It should be read, used, cultivated, and when there is a weight on the spirit of the believer, he should be able to recognise it and know how to get rid of it.
- Drainage and exhaustion of the body or mind, by constant activity or excessive use. In short, the mind and body must be released from strain before the spirit can be fully operative (note the experience of Elijah in 1 Kings 19:4-5, 8-9a).

Worrying over the past or about the future, checks the free action of the spirit by making the outer man and outer affairs dominant, instead of the inner man (human spirit) being at liberty for the will of God at each moment. When one violates or ignores these important precepts, the human spirit becomes locked up, so to speak, so that it cannot act. The rapidity with

---

<sup>1184</sup> Burk, A, The Mercy Season, CD 6, Track 5

which a believer can then sink into passivity, as he will at any moment when the resisting attitude ceases, may be likened to the sinking of a stone in water.<sup>1185</sup>

#### **6.4.6 The Wounded Spirit**

In order to determine a wounded spirit, one needs to define a sound and healthy spirit. A sound spirit is identified as follows:

- A gracious spirit wrought in us by the Spirit of God.
- A spirit cleansed in the precious blood of Christ.
- A spirit which exercises itself daily unto a growing confidence in God. It is not a spirit of doubt and fear and mistrust; in fact, there is no power about such a spirit as that, as that would be like a body without bone or sinew or muscle. Strength lies in believing. He who can trust can work, he who can trust can suffer.
- A perfectly consecrated spirit. The man who is free from all secondary motives, who lives only for God's glory, says if he is sick, "How can I glorify God upon my bed?" If he is in health he cries, "How can I glorify God in my vigour?" If he is rich he asks, "How can I glorify God with the possessions which he has put under my stewardship?" If he is poor he says, "There must be some advantage about my poverty; how can I best use it to the glory of God?" He looks to see not how he can comfort himself, but how he can most successfully fight his Master's battles and give Him glory in all circumstances.
- A spirit, renewed by God, in dominion over the soul and body.

The bottom line: *a sound spirit can bear infirmities.*

A wounded spirit cannot bear its own infirmity so it becomes a load to itself. Some have a wounded spirit through the cruelty of men, the unkindness of children, the ingratitude of those whom they have helped, and for whom they have had such affection that they would almost have been willing to sacrifice their own lives. It is a terrible wounding when he who should have been your friend becomes your foe, and when, like your Lord, you also have your Judas Iscariot. A wounded spirit may be the result of diseases which seriously shake the nervous system. Sometimes the spirit is wounded by the fierce temptations of Satan. A

---

<sup>1185</sup> Penn-Lewis, J (2004) War on the Saints. Pennsylvania: CLC Publication, pp. 89-90



wounded spirit may also come through desertion by God. A spirit can be wounded by false beliefs.<sup>1186</sup> The spirit is immensely affected by guilt and may even be wounded by it.

In short, the human spirit has the seven portions which are always a bit separate from each other, but working together, somewhat like the sections of the orchestra. The percussion is not the brass, but they team intimately. So any kind of sin, rebellion or iniquity can have implications for the spirit, as can trauma.<sup>1187</sup>

#### **6.4.7 Spirit Fragmentation**

When a person is born, his human spirit is complete, with all seven portions (prophet, servant, teacher, exhorter, giver, ruler and mercy<sup>1188</sup>) on the seat of dominion, but because of sin, wrong beliefs and trauma in the person's life the spirit can be divided and no more situated on the seat of dominion. When the human spirit is divided (not working united and in harmony as intended by God), some portions of the human spirit might be missing, some experiencing blindness, deafness or might even be locked up in a cage; some might be guarded by evil spirits. This is also referred to as a wounded spirit.

A person cannot function in his God-given design if the spirit is not healed and restored to fullness. This can be achieved in many ways, of which ministering to the human spirit is the quickest and clearest cut. The human spirit can be ministered to in his different portions by addressing each portion and finding out if the portions are present, complete and whole. Once all the portions have been accounted for on a staging area, the spirit portions need to be united and reconciled with each other in Jesus Christ Himself. God needs to establish each of them in their different offices. And then they need to move to the seat of dominion and take their rightful place.

Reasons for the human spirit to be divided (not working in harmony) are as follows<sup>1189</sup>: a portion might have been made the scapegoat; pain of rejection; the whole spirit or portions taken captive by the demonic; violations of boundaries; any kind of sin, rebellion or iniquity; and finally, trauma. The enemy can steal parts of the original self (Neshamah). However, he cannot separate us from the love of God, or completely do away with the Neshamah (core).

---

<sup>1186</sup> Spurgeon C H, The Cause and Cure of a Wounded Spirit [Online] Available from: <http://www.biblebb.com/files/spurgeon/2494.htm> [Accessed: 30 October 2014]

<sup>1187</sup> Burk, A, Ministering to SRA/DID Clients. 13 August 2014

<sup>1188</sup> Genesis 1:26-27; Romans 12:6-8; Revelation 1:4, 3:1

<sup>1189</sup> Burk, A, Ministering to SRA/DID Clients. 13 August 2014

He can steal parts through trauma, dissociation and SRA rituals. He can steal so much that only a little piece of the Neshamah will be left. But the little bit that he cannot take belongs only to God.<sup>1190</sup>

The following are some guidelines into bringing restoration and healing to the core Neshamah<sup>1191</sup>:

- Bring up the *oldest* core identity and work with this identity to get to the *Coming of age* (generally around thirteen years old) core identity.
- Repent for allegiance to Satan (usually at thirteen rite-of-passage ceremony).
- Continue repentance and healing as the Holy Spirit leads.
- Ask God the Father for His truth.
- Cancel any rituals or blessings as revealed.
- Remove attachments from sperm and ovum as revealed.
- Keep on with the above process until you get down to the *core Neshamah* and the person is set free.

#### 6.4.8 Trapped in Outer Darkness

There are instances where the original self, the spirit, or a portion of the spirit or the soul can be captured or trapped in outer darkness (Genesis 1:2). Outer darkness is a place separate from time and space as we know it. There are two indications that this might be the case: (1) The person has a sensation of falling at any time; (2) the person can have periods of weeping with no end.

This situation cannot be medicated. This can only be restored by engaging with the original self and asking him if this is the case. And if so, then by asking what the reason is (e.g. taken captive or out of choice due to torture). Original self must acknowledge that he wants to come out of this place. He will only come out if there is assurance of no torment. Only Jesus has the power to move someone from outer darkness into time and space. Once he is established on the timeline where he belongs he needs to be brought in relationship with the rest of the human spirit (bring all the portions to the original self and unite), on the seat of dominion and with Jesus Christ.<sup>1192</sup>

---

<sup>1190</sup> Riggs, D, Articles and Information. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished, p. 22

<sup>1191</sup> Ibid.

<sup>1192</sup> Ibid.

## 6.4.9 Alien Human Spirits (AHSs)

Alien human spirits (AHSs) is the concept concerned with the situation of when a person dies and his human spirit does not go into eternity but for some or other reason remains in this time and space. These are found to be commonly the ones who have died through cruel or violent deaths such as suicide, war deaths or murder. However, this is not the rule; there are the ones who had a full life. These AHSs can take up residency in another human body after their first original human bodies died.

### 6.4.9.1 Earth Bound Spirits

The idea of earth bound spirits is not a foreign concept to the occult. Remorse is said to make a spirit earth bound, but additional theories have also been brought forth. It is believed that spirits may be earth bound for four reasons: desire, habit, dreams and insanity. Revenge may be just as potent a factor in making a spirit earth bound as love. They believe that a violent death is the most frequent cause of haunting, as it results in a stress on the mind that influences the *crypto-conscious* mind to re-enact the last scene on earth. It is not the moral but the psychic conditions that make a spirit earth bound. However, the belief is that only houses are being haunted by these earth bound spirits.<sup>1193</sup>

Plato quotes Socrates in *Phaedo*:

*And in this case [impure life] the soul which survives the body must be wrapped up in a helpless and earthy covering, which makes it heavy and visible, and drags it down to the visible region, away from the invisible region of spirit world, Hades—which it fears. And thus these wandering souls haunt, as we call it, the tombs and monuments of the dead, where such phantoms are sometimes seen. These are apparitions of souls which departed from the body in a state of impurity, and still partake of corruption and the visible world, and therefore are liable to be still seen. And these are not the souls of good men, but of bad, who are thus obliged to wander about suffering punishment for their former manner of life which was evil.*

---

<sup>1193</sup> Melton J G (2001) Encyclopedia of Occultism and Parapsychology, Firth Edition, Volume A-N, USA:Gale Group, pp. 705-706

#### 6.4.9.2 Metempsychosis

The Encyclopedia of Occultism and Parapsychology describes a term *Metempsychosis* (or Transmigration of Souls): *from the Greek meta, “after”, and empsychos “to animate”, the belief that after death, the soul passes into another body, either human or animal.*

In ancient Greece, this was approximately equivalent to the idea of reincarnation. The idea seems to have originated in Egypt but to have first been promoted by Pythagoras around 455 B.C.E. Diogenes Laertius noted that Pythagoras once recognised the soul of a departed friend in a dog that was being beaten. Plato picked up on the idea and expounded it in several of his Dialogues, most notably the *Phaedo* and *Republic*. According to the vision of truth that one attains, one will be born in the next life in a body suitable to that attainment, Plato said. The most enlightened will be reborn as a philosopher, musician, artist or lover. At the lowest level, he placed tyrants. Once a soul has beheld true being, it will pass from animal into human form, he said. Plato also put forth the idea that a person *chooses* his next life, the very choice being a sign of his character.

The idea of *metempsychosis* was also held by some of the Gnostics, and it became a source of disagreement between them and the leaders of the Christian church. Irenaeus, the second century bishop of Lyons, wrote at length against the Gnostics in his pacesetting *Contra Heresies*, singling out *metempsychosis* as an idea that was incompatible with Christianity. The church had essentially followed Irenaeus' lead in its consideration of metempsychosis and reincarnation. Origen, a Christian theologian of the third century with a platonic background, tried to defend some aspects of the metempsychosis doctrine, primarily the prior existence of the soul, but soon gave up, having found the idea contrary to the New Testament teachings.

Metempsychosis found its last great philosophical defender in Plotinus (205-270 C.E.), the Neoplatonic philosopher. He saw repeated births of the soul as a means for its education. By being in the body, the soul learns how desirable the nonphysical existence is, Plotinus taught. The idea of reincarnation lingered in the West, passing through a succession of Gnostic groups, but experienced a rebirth in the twentieth century. Its current spread, however, has a basis in Indian and Oriental ideas of reincarnation, usually attached to the additional notion of karma.<sup>1194</sup>

---

<sup>1194</sup> Melton J G (2001) Encyclopedia of Occultism and Parapsychology, Firth Edition, Volume M-Z, USA:Gale Group, pp. 1030-1031

### 6.4.9.3 Astral Projection

*Astral Travel* or *out-of-body travel* is a phenomenon based on the belief that individual consciousness can leave the physical body during sleep or trance and travel to distant places or into an ethereal or astral realm. The ancient Hindus believed in the phenomenon of out-of-body travel, featured in such Scriptures as the Yoga Vashishta-Maharamayana of Valmiki. Hindu teachings recognize three bodies: physical, subtle and causal. The causal body builds up the characteristics of one's next reincarnation by the desires and fears in its present life, but the subtle body may sometimes leave the physical body during its lifetime and re-enter it after travelling in the physical world. Ancient Egyptian teachings also represented the soul as having the ability to hover outside the physical body in the *ka*, or subtle body.<sup>1195</sup>

Many techniques exist for exchanging or hijacking bodies through astral projection. An attacker can even lead someone, for example, through violent schizophrenia to a vulnerable, passive state of mind. The Phoeron, a neuro-occultist gives the following testimony about astral projection<sup>1196</sup>:

*But still, the most dangerous spirit you will ever contend with is the living soul, astrally projected. They are alive, supplied with a constant source of energy through their physical body; to be a conscious astral projector, they also have to be quite skilled at a range of other magickal techniques, and probably know your energy body better than you do; they can read your mind, they can plant thoughts into your head, they can manipulate you and shape you until you become complacent enough to just let them in. It's also worth noting that these malevolent astral projectors tend to go for the throat chakra.*

Phoeron continues to describe another technique called the *Black Rite*, alluded to in *Liber Null*. It is known and taught as a 'last-ditch' effort for sorcerers to save themselves when beaten; in short, upon death of the physical body, disembodied sorcerers have a very short time in which to find a new body while preserving their full cognitive state. Since a new, unoccupied baby body is probably not available for regular reincarnation (White Rite), and a specially prepared baby body is certainly not available (Red Rite), they have no choice but to

---

<sup>1195</sup> Ibid, pp. 1160-1161

<sup>1196</sup> The Phoeron, Astral Projection and Body Theft [Online] Available from: <http://thephoeron.wordpress.com/2012/09/23/astral-projection-possession-and-body-theft/> [Accessed: 30 November 2014]

take possession of the body belonging to their killer. This usually ends up in total raving madness and the mutual destruction of both psyches.

There is another method taught to witches known as *soul switching*, also referred to as *body swapping* or *transference*. It allows two practitioners to willingly exchange physical bodies for the duration of the rite, essentially by astrally projecting into each other's physical bodies. The rite requires a third person, a priestess/mediator, who guides the two people through the projection and can assess whether the *soul switching* was a success or not. This allows each person to literally see through another person's eyes and understand exactly where they are coming from.

#### **6.4.9.4 Dealing with Alien Human Spirits**

Dr Kenneth McAll<sup>1197</sup>, a pioneer in this area of dealing with AHSs, in his book *Healing the Family Tree*, gives many testimonies on his expectations for China of people being healed from physical and mental illness (including insanity) when dealing with what he calls *ancestors that could be causing problems in some way*. He believes that many supposedly 'incurable' patients are the victims of ancestral control and that insanity, for example, could be caused by *human spirits from the ancestral line* (not demons) that are linked to something that happened in the past. He then cuts the bond between the ancestor and the client by celebrating, with a clergyman, a service of Holy Communion in which he delivers the tormented ancestor to God. He had remarkable results through this method of healing.<sup>1198</sup>

Arthur Burk has been dealing actively with AHSs in his ministries to people for more than ten years, finding them in houses and people. He has found that all the AHSs, which are much different from demons, have one thing in common and that is that they did not live out their full story line in their lifetime and are looking for a second attempt at it. In his experience of dealing with AHSs, he has seen that it brings multiple illnesses into the human body.<sup>1199</sup>

---

<sup>1197</sup> Dr Kenneth McAll (1910-2001) was born in China and graduated in medicine from Edinburgh University. He returned to China as a Anglican missionary-surgeon and was interned by the Japanese, with his wife and child, for four years during the Second World War. His experiences in China led to interest in the powers of possession, and he subsequently devoted his life to the curing of psychiatric illness including insanity through divine guidance with impressive results for which he became quite famous.

<sup>1198</sup> McAll, K (2013) *Healing the Family Tree*. SPCK Publishing.

<sup>1199</sup> Burk, A, *Alien Human Spirit Part 1*, CD 1, Track 1-4

Burk gives the following markers that might indicate the presence of an AHS in someone; however, discernment is the key (having one is not absolute – having all four is also just an indication of the potential present of an AHS and needs to be explored further)<sup>1200</sup>:

- *Physical problems that do not obey the laws of science.* People taking medication that only works the first day or so and then does not work anymore; or the healing process is out of norm; when the feet change shape for no apparent reason, and not the result of something explainable; people who have gallbladder problems with no scientific evidence (blood tests are negative); people with symptoms of a heart attack but no scientific evidence (tests are negative).
- *Specific thought patterns.* Any thoughts that are repetitive and are out of norm that comes without or minimal provocation (a picture that keeps coming back; a movie clip in the thoughts that runs over and over; a persistent fear with related thought patterns).
- *People that feel that their life is not going forward:* People feel ‘blocked’; however, the people around them do not see it as there are no noticeable milestones. These people are driven, high achievers and even leaders in the community.
- *Having issues with whether or not God is pleased with them.* They normally cannot answer the question “What did you do today that brought the most pleasure to God the Father”? They normally do not have an answer for this and go into a ‘spin’. These people have already worked through their father issues, have gone through inner-healing and deliverance, and have a relationship with the Father, Son and Holy Spirit.
- *Obsessions.* Especially relating to children that might not have access to certain data, yet have an obsession of focussing in a limited area (e.g. war related happenings – battles, strategies or generals; sexual obsessions when there was no molestation or sexual abuse).<sup>1201</sup>

Burk goes further to testify that in his experience there is also what is called *shared alien human spirits*. These are AHSs that are shared between two people who might even be on different continents. How they are related (linked) is also unknown, and how the AHSs choose their hosts is unknown. Shared AHSs can have demonic covenants in place protecting them from being evicted which need to be dealt with first. Dealing with shared AHSs is done the same way as with single AHSs: they need to return to eternity. You do not

---

<sup>1200</sup> Burk, A, Alien Human Spirit Part 1, CD 2, Track 1

<sup>1201</sup> Burk, A, Alien Human Spirit Part 2, CD 2, Track 1

need both of the clients in one room for the eviction; when dealing with one client you can ask the Lord to have it evicted from the shared person.<sup>1202</sup>

It is still unknown what exactly gives an AHS the right to enter another body. From Burk's experience, it is not sin, not trauma or anything else that is true for demonic entities. There is also the unknown of when an AHS can take occupancy in another body. The following are some reasons for entry from Burk's experience<sup>1203</sup>:

- People who are just too nice attract AHSs.
- An AHS can target someone with a similar calling as his.
- The person (host) is present at the time of death of the AHS' original body.
- People who make vows (e.g. the military or a father vowing to never leave his child) attract AHSs.
- A needy person's spirit can make an agreement with an AHS and permits it to come in, resulting in a deeply entrenched AHS.
- An AHS (an anti-Christ spirit) can have an agreement with Sheol (the place of the dead) to enter into an assigned individual who has a specific God-given design and potential. Sheol is believed to be able to identify a believer's calling, design, birth right, office, generational blessings, and other assets that have value. He then partners with an AHS to devour, torment, block and destroy those assets given to the individual as well as the individual himself, ultimately to bring death (spiritual, mental or physical) onto the person, preventing him from possessing his birth right. This can very well include insanity.
- Burk continues that in order to destroy any agreement in the spiritual dimension *power* is needed, though not legality as in the case of covenants. As a believer you need *righteousness* (a life lived according to the plumb line<sup>1204</sup>) in order to gain this kind of *power* needed over the forces of darkness.<sup>1205</sup>

Dealing with AHSs requires a different methodology than that used for demon entities. There is no connection between AHSs and demons, although a demon can force an AHS to be its body shield, or to be a bodyguard to the AHS. Getting rid of demons goes with repentance and deliverance (including dealing with covenants, agreements and curses), but alien human spirits do not play along these rules.

---

<sup>1202</sup> Burk, A, Alien Human Spirit Part 1, CD 2, Track 4

<sup>1203</sup> Burk, A, Alien Human Spirit Part 2, CD 1, Track 1-8

<sup>1204</sup> Amos 7:7-10

<sup>1205</sup> Burk, A, Alien Human Spirit Part 1, CD 5, Track 4



For the AHS of a deceased person, he simply has to return to eternity with the help of Father God and His angels. There are the AHSs that will return to eternity willingly and there are those who flat out refuse. The latter one has to be escorted by enforcing angels sent by Father God and they are the ones who leave harmful structures in the tissue of the person's body which need to be removed and restored by the Lord through prayer.<sup>1206</sup>

For the AHS of an astral projection, he needs to be sent back to his real body. He must then ask Father God to prevent him from leaving his body ever again.

## **6.5. SPIRITUAL WARFARE**

### **6.5.1 Introduction**

Spiritual warfare is multidimensional warfare with the flesh, the world and evil supernaturalism. We have already examined the sin problem in the previous chapter. We discovered that sin is personal in that we war against our own flesh; that it is social in that we battle worldly influences around us; that it is supernatural in that it is fostered by Satan's invisible, cosmic kingdom of evil, made up of Satan himself and all the demonic hierarchy under his command (Ephesians 6: 10-20). This third area is called *evil supernaturalism*.

One of the greatest pitfalls in spiritual warfare teaching and counselling is the tendency to consider only one of these three forces to be the major cause of human sin, while neglecting the other two. Since the fall of man, all three work together in promoting human evil. In any particular case, one force may be the primary cause. That area would require special attention, but all three areas should be carefully dealt with in spiritual warfare counselling and deliverance ministry.<sup>1207</sup>

In light of this fact, it is vital that Christians recognise the enemy and his methods before entering into spiritual warfare. The greatest generals in history planned their battles in minute detail, based on a thorough knowledge of their enemies. If the Church does not focus on exactly who the enemy is, his strategies, his methods, and his past successes and failures, we will never be able to combat him effectively. Without a doubt, individuals are targeted for deception. Spiritual warfare, as taught in the Bible, is personal warfare (Ephesians 6:12). It is always wise to know the enemy. In their contacts with human beings, demons have revealed

---

<sup>1206</sup> Burk, A, Alien Human Spirit Part 1, CD 2, Track 2

<sup>1207</sup> Murphy, E F (2003) The Handbook for Spiritual Warfare, Revised and Updated. Thomas Nelson Publishers, p. 341, 521

a great deal about themselves. It is obvious, from multiple historical accounts of séances (recorded by credible sources), that demons keep track of details. All aspects of individual human lives are noted by the enemy and preserved for the time when they are needed to deceive.<sup>1208</sup>

Pertaining specifically to insanity and psychosis, the previous chapters have explained critical points: (1) what the strategy of the enemy is; (2) who some of the evil contenders might be; and (3) what the methods are in achieving these strategies.

We do not have to leave people trapped and doomed in Satan's evil kingdom. We must wage an offensive war against Satan for the souls of lost people, especially those captivated through insanity and psychosis. Jesus' reason for coming to earth was to die on the cross to rescue those who are in Satan's kingdom. When He went back to heaven, He left man to finish the job by inviting those lost ones to believe in Jesus and to be transferred out of their captivity. It is a war. This war will not end until the final judgment of evil supernaturalism (Revelation 20), which includes Satan and his kingdom of fallen angels (Matthews 25:41). All of mankind is involved in this warfare – a war of universal proportions, putting God and His truth against Satan and his lies. It is a battle of wills between God and Satan. Satan and his army of demons are fighting Jesus Christ, His holy angels, the nation of Israel, and every believer.<sup>1209</sup>

Discernment in spiritual things and submissions to the leading of the Holy Spirit will give the advantage needed against the kingdom of darkness. God's soldiers view the Kingdom of Light as the powerful reign of Jesus, the King of Kings and Lord of Lords, the only way through which to obtain the needed victory against the Kingdom of Darkness and all its evil glory.

The following are important principles for effective warfare against insanity and psychosis and Satan and his following<sup>1210</sup>:

- It is the will of God for all believers to be strong in the Lord and the power of His might (Ephesians 6:10). There is no reason for the believer to be defeated and destroyed by Satan's power. The believer is to remain strong and powerful regardless of all that Satan

---

<sup>1208</sup> Martin, W (2008) *The Kingdom of the Occult*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Inc., p. 537

<sup>1209</sup> Brand, C M J (2007) *Spiritual Warfare Two*. Pretoria: CMJ Brand, pp. 32-36

<sup>1210</sup> Bubeck, M I (1975) *The Adversary*. USA: The Moody Bible Institute of Chicago, pp. 70-74

purposes to do. His most sophisticated strategy and concentrated power need not be a threat to any believer.

- The believer must have a biblical understanding of what he is up against. Paul tells the believer in Ephesians 6:10 to put on the whole armour of God that he might stand against the wiles (cunning, craftiness, sneakiness) of the devil. He is extremely subtle and clever about the way he works against the believer. At the one end he is the tempter, injecting the minds with wicked thoughts and desires. At the other end he is the accuser, taunting the believer about what terrible person he is to have those thoughts to begin with.
- The believer must have a biblical understanding of the powers of darkness that work with Satan and in his kingdom. Ephesians 6:12 states that the warfare is not against flesh and blood but against invisible spirit beings who are very structured, organised and disciplined, under Satan, the commander-in-chief. First level is the principalities and princes who carry vast responsibility and power to guide the affairs of Satan. There are different levels of authority among these princes. Next level is the powers. These are probably more numerous and somewhat less independent and powerful than the princes. Next are the rulers of darkness who are even more numerous, the real workhorses on the command level. These rulers of darkness have directly under them a very vast final level of spirit beings called spiritual wickedness or wicked spirits in high places. The same will imply for the evil hierarchy behind insanity and psychosis.
- The provided armour of God to the believer is of vital importance (Ephesians 6:12-18). The believer is to aggressively take the armour of God and put it on. Every time the believer faces the enemy in battle, he is to be sure that his armour is securely in place. As the believer equips himself with the whole armour of God, he will find himself meditating on the armour and relying on it many times throughout the day.

A true believer's spiritual warfare against insanity and psychosis is living a life of consecration, obedience and fellowship with God in such a way that he enables God to effectively deal with the evil working against him. It is a form of abiding in Christ that overcomes Satan's legal and illegal grounds against him.<sup>1211</sup>

---

<sup>1211</sup> Gondwe, E I (2008) Major Spiritual Warfare Principles. Cambridge: Jesus Work Ministry, pp. 41-42

## 6.5.2 Spiritual Warfare Prayers

Praying according to God's will (1John 5:14) simply means praying Scriptural prayers. It involves claiming God's promises, pleading God's attributes, aligning our prayers with God's commandments and filling our adorations, confessions, thanksgivings and supplications with the text of the Bible. What a way to increase the faith of prayer warriors! Unfortunately, too many people lack faith because they seek to base their prayers on God's secret will (guessing what His decrees might be). However, nowhere are we commanded to discern God's secret will and to somehow make that secret will be the basis for our prayer life.

Indeed, quite the opposite. Deuteronomy 29:29 says,

*The secret things belong to the LORD our God, but those things which are revealed belong to us and to our children forever, that we may do all the words of this law.*

Guessing what God's secret decrees might be would certainly not give us confidence in praying, yet it is precisely confidence that God wants us to have when we are called to pray according to His will. John says, *now this is the confidence that we have in Him, that if we ask anything according to His will, He hears us.* (1 John 5:14). If we examine the prayers of Nehemiah, Daniel, Moses and other saints, we will discover that these prayer warriors confidently prayed because they filled their prayers with the promises of a God who cannot lie; they anchored their prayers in the character of a God who is faithful; and they aligned their desires with God's revealed desires.<sup>1212</sup>

## 6.5.3 Setting the Captives Free

Setting the captives free is part of the believers' calling. God wants all believers to heal the sick, cast out demons, raise the dead and set the captives free. When we see souls tormented by the devil, what kind of Christianity must we offer? It is the true love of Jesus which leads us to give our lives to find answers from the depths of God. His ways are higher than our ways and the natural mind cannot understand them. Jesus' Bride goes wherever He goes. She is not afraid because perfect love casts out fear. She trusts Him, even if it means experiencing the darkest places on earth to rescue a soul from the flames of hell.

---

<sup>1212</sup> Kayser, P G and Bubek M (2009) Prayers for Spiritual Warfare. USA: Biblical Blueprints, p. 36

Setting the captives free is the call of God's love to those who love Him more than they love themselves.<sup>1213</sup>

People develop bondage in their lives and need to be set free. The believer has the authority to do this and should do it where necessary. Only the Lord can reveal whether bondage is at work in a person. For Jesus, the Kingdom of God means abolishing the kingdom of Satan. The believer should aggressively deal with the enemy, verbally opposing the devil and using the Word of God to counter his attacks. Jesus told us to first bind the strong man and then the goods can be spoiled (Matthews 12:29). The strong man is simply the predominating demonic influence in any situation, and the believer is meant to eliminate that influence. It can mean the difference between life and death.

Endurance and resistance is vital in getting the final victory. Too many believers quit minutes before the breakthrough. To fight Satan is to fight the world and the flesh, to fight conformity to and friendship with the world, and to fight the dark lies and lusts of the flesh. It is an on-going fight to the end when Jesus returns.<sup>1214</sup>

#### **6.5.4 Powerful Weapons Available**

The Lord is a diverse God. He is not One for recipes and quick fixes. He is into the business of lasting results, changing lives for the good: lives that will carry the fruits of the Holy Spirit; lives that will make an impact on others; lives that will carry His Glory out for the whole world to see. In this diversity, He has given the believer many powerful weapons to use. Some might ask more effort in applications; some might work the first time in some cases but have no effect in others. Some might give fast relief and might have lasting effects while others might give only mediocre results. The secret is in getting a strategy from the Lord in the combination of the weapons needed in the specific war at hand, not only to obtain the victory and breakthrough needed but to keep the victory and breakthrough to the point of complete healing and restoration for the client for eternity.

Following are some of the weapons available.

---

<sup>1213</sup> Brown, R (1986) *He came to Set the Captives Free*. New Kensington: Whitaker House, p. 121-122

<sup>1214</sup> Brand, C M J (2007) *Spiritual Warfare Four*. Pretoria: CMJ Brand, pp. 12-16, 43-50

#### 6.5.4.1 Humility

God said in 2 Chronicles 7:14, *if my people will humble themselves*. Humility keeps us focused on the need for prayer. Humility brings us to repentance and keeps us keenly aware that without God's ongoing help, we will never prevail. Humility forbids false pride and persuades man of his need for preserving and redeeming grace.<sup>1215</sup>

#### 6.5.4.2 Prayer

When we put on the armour of God, we are then commanded to *pray always with all prayer and supplication* (Ephesians 6:18). In 2 Chronicles 7:14, God continues saying, *if my people will pray*.

There are three basic kinds of prayer<sup>1216</sup>:

- *Devotional prayer*. Daily appointments with God where people offer prayer and praise to God and open their hearts and receive spiritual sustenance. This is very important.
- *Intercessory prayer*. This type of prayer often accompanies militant prayer but is equally distinct in that its primary purpose is to intercede or act on behalf of another.
- *Militant prayer*. This prayer concerns itself not only with interdiction, but actually initiates the aggression. Militant prayer plays a vital, active role in God's plan of redemption, and that, without the Church's prayers, God will not reclaim territories invaded by Satan. Every verse in the Bible dealing with spiritual warfare indicates that the action must begin on earth. We must bind and release on earth for heaven to do the same. Part and parcel to the great commission is the Church's responsibility to cast out demons and to tread over the power of the enemy.

In prayer, God is to be the object of our desire. God gave the gifts of fasting and prayer so that we could commune with Him. *That I may know Him and the power of His resurrection* (Philippians 3:10) is our goal. *This is eternal life that they may know you, the only true God, and Jesus Christ, whom you have sent* (John 17:3). The pursuit of God, for no greater reason than to know Him and be known of Him, is our objective.

One can pray religiously, devotionally, or even as an intercessor, and not seek after Him. All sincere forms of prayer should mature to this level. Discipline is the chief mandate for

---

<sup>1215</sup> Horn, T R (1998) *Spiritual Warfare, the Invisible Invasion*. Louisiana: Huntington House Publishers, pp. 117-187

<sup>1216</sup> Ibid.

developing such a prayer life, and is observed by heaven as the memorial of one who loves God. Fasting combined with prayer is the biblical method for seeking the Father. Almost every important biblical figure practiced fasting as an approved method for seeking God. Furthermore, seeking the Lord through fasting is biblically defined as reaping greater spiritual rewards than prayer alone. There are levels of spiritual power, insight and deliverance that come only to the soul who is committed to a fervent pursuit of God through fasting. Jesus taught that power in prayer is increased through fasting.<sup>1217</sup>

#### **6.5.4.3 If My People Will Turn from Their Wicked Ways**

While a remnant have shown faithful the keeping power of Christ in the midst of subtle corruption, others have discovered their true reflection, and do not like what they have found. Believers who know all the right doctrine, who use the proper words, and who strictly adhere to the fashionable things equate to popular Christianity, sometimes live amidst great wickedness. Among the church's closet skeletons brought to light recently is an increasing justification for indulgence in the baser desires – drugs and alcohol, financial mismanagement, sexual improprieties and other expressions of worldliness. The God who saved us by His grace shall keep us by His power. Should that include disciplined correction and reinforced accountability, so be it. That is our only hope. No secularised sin-saturated 'church' will rise to defeat the powers of darkness or change our country for God. A congregation made up of carnal sin-filled believers is a powerless vehicle to stand in authority against the powers of hell.<sup>1218</sup>

#### **6.5.4.4 The Name of the Lord**

All things are possible through the name of Jesus (Matthew 19:26).

*God also has highly exalted Him and given Him the name which is above every name, that at the name of Jesus every knee should bow.*

*Philippians 2:9-10*

There is power to overcome everything in the world through the name of Jesus.

---

<sup>1217</sup> Ibid.

<sup>1218</sup> Horn, T R (1998) *Spiritual Warfare, the Invisible Invasion*. Louisiana: Huntington House Publishers, pp. 117-188

*There is no other name under heaven given among men by which we must be saved*

*Acts 4:12*

The phrase, *in the name of Jesus*, (Mark 16:17; Luke 10:17) did not signify that the sacred title, formally pronounced, possessed any magical power to accomplish a cure. The "name" was and is equivalent to the infinite Person behind the name. The expression "*in His name*" was thus equivalent to "*in His power*," and "*in all that He is and does*". While it is said that Jesus "cast out the spirits with a word" (Matthew 8:16), the word is obviously not ritualistic, but authoritative. Jesus' own explanation of the method and power used in His expulsions is given when He said, *But if I by the Spirit of God cast out demons, then is the kingdom of God come upon you* (Matthew 12:28). It was, accordingly, by the power of the Holy Spirit, operating in unrestricted fullness in His sinless humanity, that Jesus effectuated His cures, rather than by reliance upon His central power of deity as the second Person of the Godhead.<sup>1219</sup>

Knowing that we have power with which to fight the forces of darkness through the name of Jesus Christ also provides us with safety. Intimately knowing the one who keeps us safe – our heavenly Father – helps us to feel secure. We can be sure that He is steady and unchangeable.<sup>1220</sup>

#### **6.5.4.5 The Extensions of the Lord**

The following are extensions of the Lord that are available to be carried out in resistance, proclamation and prayer, mighty weapons available in the arsenal of the Lord.<sup>1221</sup>

- The Arm of the Lord

<sup>10</sup> *You have broken Rahab (Egypt) in pieces; with Your mighty arm You have scattered Your enemies.* <sup>13</sup> *You have a mighty arm; strong is Your hand, Your right hand is soaring high.*

*Psalms 89:10, 13*

- The Hooks of the Lord

---

<sup>1219</sup> Unger, MF (1994) Biblical Demonology. Grand Rapids: Kregel Publications, pp.102-103

<sup>1220</sup> Johnson, M (1992) Spiritual Warfare for the Wounded. Michigan: Vine Books, p. 33

<sup>1221</sup> Brand, C M J (2007) Spiritual Warfare Five. Pretoria: CMJ Brand, pp. 51-52



*<sup>4</sup> But I will put hooks in your jaws [O Egyptian dragon] and I will cause the fish of your rivers to stick to your scales, and I will draw you up out of the midst of your streams with all the fish of your streams which stick to your scales.*

*Ezekiel 29:3-5*

- The Net of the Lord

*<sup>3</sup> Thus says the Lord God: I will therefore throw out My net over you with a host of many peoples, and they shall bring you up in My dragnet.*

*Ezekiel 32:2-3*

- God's Wisdom

*<sup>12</sup> He stills or stirs up the sea by His power, and by His understanding He smites proud Rahab*

*Job 26:12*

- Proclamation of God's Word. Uproot the evil that was planted by the enemy and plant what God intended as revealed by His Word.
- The Sword of the Lord. The Word of God is the only inspired source book on spiritual warfare. Scripture memorisation and meditation is central. Spiritual warfare should be founded and grounded upon the growing use of the Bible. When dealing in deliverance, Trinity God will always give strategy through His Word which needs to be applied during the warfare. Reminding the enemy of his final destiny can bring breakthrough in times of need (Revelation 12 and 20). It is vital for the believer to be sure of his ground and his certain victory through the Lord Jesus Christ in combating the forces of darkness. It is not unusual to be challenged by a wicked spirit who contests the believer's spiritual authority when commanding him to depart to the place the Lord Jesus Christ sends him. The quoting of the Word and pressing it constantly against the contesting spirit always bring victory.<sup>1222</sup>

There is one thing that distinguishes the sword from the other five items that we have examined. The sword is the first item that is not purely defensive. Without it, we have no way to drive off the Devil. The Bible compares God's Word to a sword because God's Word pierces and penetrates.

---

<sup>1222</sup> Bubeck, M I (1975) *The Adversary*. USA: The Moody Bible Institute of Chicago, pp. 55-66

Hebrews 4:12 declares the following:

*<sup>12</sup> For the Word that God speaks is alive and full of power [making it active, operative, energizing, and effective]; it is sharper than any two-edged sword, penetrating to the dividing line of the <sup>[a]</sup>breath of life (soul) and [the immortal] spirit, and of joints and marrow [of the deepest parts of our nature], exposing and sifting and analysing and judging the very thoughts and purposes of the heart.*

God's Word penetrates to every area of human personality. It penetrates to the marrow, the very innermost part of the physical being. It also penetrates and divides between soul and spirit, the innermost area of human personality. It is sharper than any double-edged sword. In Revelation 1:16, where John had a vision of Jesus in His glory as the Lord of the church, one of the things that he saw was a sword coming out of the mouth of Jesus:

*<sup>16</sup> In His right hand He held seven stars, and from His mouth there came forth a sharp two-edged sword, and His face was like the sun shining in full power at midday.*

That sharp double-edged sword is the Word of God coming out of the mouth of Jesus. In Ephesians 6:17, where Paul spoke about the sword of the Spirit, the Word of God, the Greek word he used for *word* is *rhema*, which primarily means a spoken word. It is significant that the sword of the Spirit is not the Bible on the bookshelf or on the nightstand. That does not scare the Devil. But when you take the Scripture in your mouth and quote it directly, then it becomes the sword of the Spirit. Notice also the significance of the phrase, "the sword of the Spirit" (Ephesians 6:17). This indicates cooperation between the believer and the Holy Spirit. We *must* take the sword. The Holy Spirit will not do that for us. But when we take the sword in faith, then the Holy Spirit gives us the power and the wisdom to use it. <sup>1223</sup>

#### 6.5.4.6 Communion

When the believer enters the Kingdom of God through genuine repentance and commitment to follow Jesus Christ as Lord and Saviour, the Spirit of God unites with the spirit of man (1

---

<sup>1223</sup> Prince, D (1987) *Spiritual Warfare*. USA: Whitaker House, pp. 80-87

Corinthians 6:17), transforming him into a new creation. From that moment on, he will grow and be strengthened through spiritual food, which is the flesh and blood of Jesus, as well as the Word of God. When the elements are sanctified for Communion, Christ is powerfully present among His believers. This is not a ritual or a memorial. It's something real that occurs in the invisible world.

The elements of the bread and the fruit of the vine will always remain bread and the fruit of the vine, but in the invisible realm, the body and blood of Jesus are really there. The believer's spirit will literally drink of His blood and will become one with His flesh and His body. The believer's spirit will absorb the very life of God and everything that is contained in that flesh and that blood. God and man will blend little by little together until he is totally consumed within Him, and He within the person, becoming one spirit. This is what the early church believed. That is why the works of God were so amazing during those days. Communion was not a religious sacrament. It represented the very life of Jesus. This life was so visible within them, and the works of God were seen everywhere.

There are divine encounters awaiting us, revelations reserved by the Father that will only come through the divine food that only Jesus can give us. Eating His flesh is much more than feeding oneself. It is entering into dimensions with God that transforms our very being and our understanding.

It is not enough that Jesus shed His blood on Calvary. The blood must be applied to the lintels of the door of a man's heart, which is his spiritual house. This is done through drinking His blood. Jesus said:

*Behold, I stand at the door and knock; if anyone hears My voice and opens the door, I will come in to him and will dine with him, and he with Me.*

*Revelation 3:20*

This door is our innermost being, and this meal is the new covenant in His blood. Communion through the blood of Christ brings judgment upon sin, destroying it in the believer's life and leading him into a new walk with Him. Drinking His blood makes the believer a pleasing sacrifice upon the altar. It gives him strength and conviction of loving as He loved, of giving as He gave, of sacrificing as He sacrificed. When a believer feels that it is impossible to love someone, drinking His blood will change his feelings and transform his heart.

Drinking His blood leads a believer to forgive the unforgivable. When he takes Communion, and he has not been able to reach the freedom of true forgiveness, the sacrifice of the cross comes between him and that person who has hurt him. Jesus, forgiving from the cross, will become flesh within his being. He will not only forgive, but he will want to do something beautiful for that person. That is how He loved and forgave man. Drinking His blood leads to seeing as He sees, always seeing possibilities where natural man has lost all hope.

His blood continues to release power, judging and destroying everything that opposes the righteousness of the Most High. It is a burning fire that the devil cannot endure. The blood of Jesus contains all the authority of God. It speaks of His victory. It reminds the devil how Jesus' sacrifice unleashed the power of God upon hell, taking from the devil the keys of authority over the earth and mankind.

*... Do not be afraid; I am the first and the last, and the living One; and I was dead, and behold, I am alive forevermore, and I have the keys of death and of Hades.*

*Revelation 1:17b-18*

When the believer drinks His blood, his spirit is flooded with that glorious power. From it, his soul drinks, and then his body, until his entire being is saturated with undefeatable power<sup>1224</sup>.

Each one of the seven parts of Christ's suffering in which His blood was poured out are doors to hidden mysteries that open and reveal themselves in fellowship with His blood. The cross is an infinite paradise of blood droplets, each one full of light and revelation<sup>1225</sup>.

1. *The blood in the sweat of His forehead* (Luke 22:42-44). Victory over all pain and suffering of the soul is found in those drops in the sweat of His forehead. The power that submits man's will to that of God is found there. These are drops of blood that take a person to unprecedented levels of intercession. They attract God's angels to help man die to self and assist him in passing tests of purification that, without His blood and His angels, would be impossible to get through.
2. *The blood that flowed from the slaps and blows that disfigured his face* (Matthew 26:67-68; Micah 5:1). The blood that flowed from the slaps and blows that disfigured Jesus' face gives man triumph over pride and vanity, and rescues him from the yoke of

---

<sup>1224</sup> Mendez-Ferrell, A (2006) *Eat My Flesh and Drink My Blood*. Florida: Voice of the Light Ministries, pp. 24-32, 43

<sup>1225</sup> *Ibid*, pp. 60-75

reproach and rejection. It gives him the power to endure when people humiliate and mock him. It allows him to be like Him during the loss of his reputation. Drinking this blood strengthens the heart in order to love and love and love again, where natural man no longer has that capacity.

3. *Blood shed when pieces of His beard were pulled out* (Psalm 133:2). His beard speaks of the priesthood. Through this blood, man reclaims the lost priesthood that permits him to minister before His presence. It is from Jesus' beard that His anointing descends upon his entire body.
4. *The blood shed during the whipping that tore his back* (Isaiah 53:4-5). The believer drinks the victory over all disease in his physical body as he drinks this blood. Just as Jesus took away his sins, He suffered in order to carry in His body all his sickness and pain. He looks at His wounds and His shed blood and he decrees, believing with all his heart that these wounds were not in vain for him. He gave the death sentence to all sickness, and man should believe it and drink in that blood his own victory over all sickness.
5. *The blood produced by the crown of thorns* (Matthew 27:29-30). This blood crowned Him as King of Kings and Lord of Lords. It gave Him the victory over the devil's empire. He conquered the government of the earth. This gives the believer the position of kings and the ability to govern with Christ. This blood conquered strongholds in the spiritual world and in the mind of man. By drinking this blood, the believer conquers his thought life so he can have the mind of Christ. He appropriates for himself the conscience of Christ.
6. *The blood shed from the wounds caused by the nails* (Isaiah 53:11; Isaiah 59:3). From this blood the believer obtains triumph over iniquity, over sin, over the twisted, crooked way of his footsteps. This blood opens the way of righteousness, restoring the paths of his destiny. It opens roads to carry the Gospel where there is no path or any way to get there. It is the blood that also heals the earth contaminated with his iniquities (Psalm 58:2).
7. *The blood shed from His side when pierced by the spear* (John 19:34). Fellowship with the blood of Jesus will allow the believer to know Him intimately. It will begin to transform him so that he is able to penetrate the most sensitive parts of His heart. God will only open this part of His being to those He considers to be His bride. His bride is the one

who desires Him above all. She goes wherever He goes. She follows Him because of who He is, and not because of what He can bless her with.

When a believer has to struggle to separate himself from sin, it is due to a strong presence of iniquity in his life. Many times this iniquity is strengthened by unclean spirits that make the battle more difficult. The solution is to take the step of repentance, desiring with the whole heart that the power of God will free and transform. This determination of the heart, together with the blood and flesh of Jesus, will give the believer total victory. The authority of the resurrection is established in every true believer so they can cast out every tormenting demon.

The blood has a cleansing, purifying power that penetrates the deepest roots of iniquity in the believer's lives. But in order to experience such complete victory, he really needs to actively apply the blood. The same way that natural blood has a purifying power to eliminate toxic elements and waste, the blood of Jesus also cleanses us from all that is unclean. In the spiritual, the blood of Jesus pulls out every root of iniquity, destroys strongholds in the believer's inner man and provides him with the elements of life and power that will carry him from glory to glory.

When a believer struggles for holiness, the blood he drinks day after day through Communion will regenerate him. Sin will not only be destroyed, but the Lord through His blood is going to feed him His will. His sinful desires change into good, holy desires. The irresistible urge to do evil, to lie, to pursue fleshly desires is exchanged for the urge to do good and to draw nearer to God.

However, turning Communion into a lifeless ritual brings upon a person the opposite effect. Judgment, sickness and death come upon the church. That is why one sees so much sickness among believers, both physical and spiritual (1 Corinthians 11:27-32). The early church discerned the body of the Lord in terms of Christ's huge sacrifice, and they valued it every day of their lives. They also appreciated His body made up of all the believers. Discerning the body of the Lord doesn't end with the cross. His mystical body upon the earth is also of great importance to the Lord. The early church realised that breaking the bread had a supernatural power that kept the body of Christ united.

The Love of God that bonds together all those who are His children was put into action through this act. They not only loved one another as a body, but there was something

powerful coming from Heaven that made this unity possible. It wasn't something fabricated through sermons, but something real that proceeded from the Spirit. In fact, when the Holy Spirit came upon them on the day of Pentecost, the impact of love in this outpouring was so great that it caused them to have all things in common and no one lacked anything.

As the bread is broken into pieces, it generates the opposite force; members that are separated will be attracted to form the spiritual body. The body (the bread) that is divided in the natural realm is united in the spiritual. To operate in the opposite spirit of the one we want to conquer is a spiritual principle. Through His death Jesus produced life in us. His wounded body produced health. His humility conquered pride. His true love disarmed hatred. Under this principle, the breaking of bread, symbolic of His pierced body, frees a power that supernaturally binds together those who are legitimately His church.

Upon eating the bread, we are submerged in the spiritual body of Christ throughout the world. From within it we can begin to attract each one of the parts that God has predestined to be united to us. The breaking of the bread takes us to that experience of knowing Him in which our eyes are opened so we can see and our ears can hear Him. Each time we eat of Him, we are building His dwelling within us and He is being formed within us.<sup>1226</sup>

Taking communion daily is a mighty weapon for both the counsellor and the client in the spiritual battle of insanity and psychosis to healing and restoration.

#### **6.5.4.7 Baptism**

Christian baptism is the immersion of a believer in water in the name of the Father, the Son, and the Holy Spirit. It is an act of voluntary obedience symbolising the believer's faith in a crucified, buried and risen Saviour, the believer's death to sin, the burial of the old life, and the resurrection to walk in newness of life in Christ Jesus.<sup>1227</sup>

Kingdom baptism is both physical and spiritual immersion into the nature and character of the Father, Son, and Holy Spirit - being immersed three separate times, the complete and full measure of heavenly baptism. Jesus is commanding an allegiance and undying faith in God the Father, God the Son, and God the Holy Spirit, illustrated by immersion into each of

---

<sup>1226</sup> Ibid, pp. 86-87, 104-106, 116

<sup>1227</sup> Grudem, W (2000) Systematic Theology, An Introduction to Bible Doctrine. England: Inter-Varsity Press, p. 1067

their characters and natures (Matthew 28:18-20). Following are examples of the characteristics and natures (among many) that the believer receives in faith through the water baptism:

- *Father*: His all-encompassing, never ending compassion, mercy and love, a driven desire towards righteousness.
- *Jesus*: His obedience to the Father, humility, submissiveness, repentance, the peace that surpasses all understanding, the blood of the Father (heaven) and water of the mother (earth); to see the Father as the one who gave His Son (1 John 3:1-12); bringing together the spiritual power of heaven and power of the earthly (blood and water) so that the believer can be part of the Heavenly Father's kingdom while still being on earth, walking in a kingdom vision. Receiving the mark of 'the son of the Father' on the forehead empowered by Him.
- *Holy Spirit*: The anointing of the Holy Spirit with truth, might, self-discipline, wisdom and power – with Him being the soother of your sorrows, the teacher to show you the path, your protector and prayer companion ensuring that you will not pull away from Jesus.
- *Bearing the fruit of the Spirit*: joy, peace, love, patience, kindness, goodness, faithfulness, meekness and self-control.

The authority and power released spiritually through immersion into the Father, Son and Holy Spirit destroys the sin consciousness once and for all. The triune immersion is the act which changes a believer's consciousness from sin to salvation. Peter describes a baptism of power to go through the storm, not to escape it (1 Peter 3:20-22).

The final authority over powers and principalities is after Jesus baptises the believer with the Holy Spirit. The fire of the Holy Spirit is an ever-increasing baptism which is administered by Christ. Baptism in the Spirit is an invisible submersion with visible results beyond just speaking in tongues. The mark of this baptism resides in the spiritual dimensions. Those truly baptised with the Holy Spirit are not satisfied with their present knowledge of Christ. They are marked with a hunger and passion to change the status quo. They are not people of reputation or recognition, but many times are the ones interceding for the next generations. Many of them are before the Lord night and day, praying for mercy and grace over their countries and nations. Their lives are dedicated in the pursuit of knowing Christ and His Spirit in deeper and more profound ways.<sup>1228</sup>

---

<sup>1228</sup> Ferrell, L E (2010) Immersed in Him. United States of America: Destiny Image Publisher Inc., pp. 176-179



#### 6.5.4.8 Anointing

Anointing breaks the yoke according to Isaiah 10:27:

*And it shall be in that day that the burden of [the Assyrian] shall depart from your shoulders, and his yoke from your neck. The yoke shall be destroyed because of fatness [which prevents it from going around your neck].*

*Anoint* is from the Hebrew word *maschach* meaning *to rub with oil*. Anointing with oil and casting out demons work together.<sup>1229</sup> Anointing oil can be applied to the person during times of prayer or deliverance or for everyday use. The anointing oil is a tangible symbolic representation of our faith in Jesus Christ when in need of strength, healing and protection. In Scripture, anointing oil is used for decorating the person (Ruth 3:3), refreshing the body (2 Chronicles 28:15), purifying the body or sanctification (Esther 2:12; Isaiah 57:9), curing the sick (Mark 6:13; James 5:14), healing wounds (Isaiah 1:6; Luke 10:34), preparing weapons for war (Isaiah 21:5), preparing the dead for burial (Matthew 26:12; Mark 16:1; Luke 23:56) and during fasting (Matthew 6:17).

A side note: mind control works with insanity, Schizophrenia, intellectualism and a host of others spirits that operate in the mind. These spirits hate the anointing of the forehead with oil, so this is helpful in the deliverance process.<sup>1230</sup>

#### 6.5.4.9 Praying in Tongues

Praying in tongues is a gift available to all believers (Mark 16:17). A spirit language is the greatest gift the Holy Spirit can give a believer. Jesus is the greatest gift God could give for the redemption of the world, and the Holy Spirit is the greatest gift Jesus could give to His church. Of all the resources in heaven and the eternal universe, nothing is more valuable, beneficial or important for the Holy Spirit than to give the individual child of God his own spirit language (1 Corinthians 12:31; 14:4).

Praying in tongues is a weapon of warfare not only to the counsellor but to the client, as it builds and increases faith. Faith is the medium of exchange for all heavenly things, just as money is the medium of exchange for all earthly things. A major way to increase our faith is

---

<sup>1229</sup> Eckhard, J (2004) Deliverance and Spiritual Warfare Manual. Chicago: Crusaders Ministries, p. 46

<sup>1230</sup> Eckhard, J (2004) Deliverance and Spiritual Warfare Manual. Chicago: Crusaders Ministries, p. 45

to pray in the tongues of our spirit language (Romans 12:6; Jude 1:20; Mark 9:23; Matthew 9:29).

Praying in tongues activates the fruit of the Spirit. It's vital and beneficial to have each of the spiritual attributes become active and mature in us. Praying in tongues helps fulfil God's predestined purpose for us to be conformed to the image of His Son (Galatians 5:22-23; 2 Corinthians 3:18; 1 Corinthians 13:1-13; Romans 8:29). The Holy Spirit directs our spirit language to pray in accordance with the will of God. Probably the only time we can be assured that we are praying 100% in the will of God is when we are praying in our spirit language. God always answers requests that are made in alignment with His will (Romans 8:27; 1 John 5:14-15).

Praying in tongues quiets the mind. When Dr Andrew Newberg, a neuroscientist, compared brain scans of believers praying in tongues with Buddhist monks chanting and Catholic nuns praying, the study showed the frontal lobes (the brain's control centre) went quiet in the brains of believers talking in tongues, proving that speaking in tongues isn't a function of the natural brain but an operation of the Spirit (1 Corinthians 14:2,14).<sup>1231</sup>

Praying in tongues is also seen as an extension of the sword of the Spirit. However, the issue of tongues can create great difficulties in the area of deliverance if not tested to see which spirit is doing the speaking. Tongues can also be a demonic manifestation which can bring interference with the spiritual warfare.

#### **6.5.4.10 Armour of God**

The importance of the armour of God cannot be expressed in words. It not only protects lives but generate spiritual abilities otherwise not available to the believer. Putting on God's armour means that in every trial and temptation by faith, Christ's strength is appropriated in place of our weaknesses.

The following is a summary of the armour<sup>1232</sup>:

---

<sup>1231</sup> Charisma Magazine, 10 Reasons for Speaking in Tongues [Online] Available from: [www.charismamag.com/spirit/supernatural/17419-10-reasons-for-speaking-in-tongues](http://www.charismamag.com/spirit/supernatural/17419-10-reasons-for-speaking-in-tongues) [Accessed: 4 November 2014]

<sup>1232</sup> Fouché, A C M (2007) Eschatological Exposition of Sun Worship. Philosophiae Doctor. Calvary University, p. 215

God's Armour	Know the Truth about...	Supporting Scriptures
Belt of Truth	God	Deuteronomy 4:39; Psalm 23:1; 18:1-3
Breastplate of Righteousness	The Righteousness of Jesus in you	Psalm 100:3; Romans 3:23-24, 6:23; Galatians 2:20-21; Philippians 3:8-10
Shoes of Peace	Inner peace and readiness	Romans 5:1; Ephesians. 2:14; John 14:27, 16:33, 20:21
Shield of Faith	Living by faith	Romans 4:18-21; Heb. 11:1; 1 Pet. 1:6-7
Helmet of Salvation	Salvation through Jesus Christ today and forever	For each day: Psalm 16, 23; Hebrews 1:3-6 For eternity: 2 Corinthians 4:16-18; 1 Thessalonians 4:17; 1 John 3:1-3

In the war against insanity and psychosis, the helmet of salvation is key, not only for the client but the counsellor, and will therefore be explored further for the purpose of this study.

Roman soldiers wore helmets made of thick leather that were often covered with metal, with thick bands to protect the forehead and the cheeks. The metal cover extended down the back to protect the neck. When it was tightly strapped on, the only exposed areas were the eyes, nose and mouth. Although the helmet would protect the head from arrows, its primary purpose was to ward off blows from the enemy's broadsword. The broadsword was a massive, three to four foot long weapon that was held in both hands like a baseball bat. A soldier would lift it over his head and chop down on his opponent's head in order to try and create a split personality. And the helmet was the primary means of protecting the head against those blows.

It's not too difficult to see the spiritual implications of the helmet. Paul here draws on Isaiah 59:17, where it says of the Lord as the righteous Judge and Warrior, *For He put on righteousness as a breastplate, And a helmet of salvation on His head; He put on the garments of vengeance for clothing, And was clad with zeal as a cloak.* Isaiah was picturing God going forth into battle to bring deliverance to His people by judging their enemies. But in Ephesians, Paul pictures believers putting on the helmet of salvation to protect themselves in the conflict with the enemy. We've consistently noted that Satan's attacks primarily come against our mind. And it is the helmet of salvation that protects us from those attacks.

<sup>13</sup> *In Him you also who have heard the Word of Truth, the glad tidings (Gospel) of your salvation, and have believed in and adhered to and relied on Him, were stamped with the seal of the long-promised Holy Spirit.*

*Ephesians 1:13*

Paul is writing here about the Lord Jesus Christ; thus, salvation begins by trusting in Him. We do that by believing the word of truth, the gospel. When we are saved, God seals us with His Holy Spirit. Later, in Chapter 2 Paul says, *for by grace you have been saved through faith, and that not of yourselves; it is the gift of God*. Paul is writing here to believers wanting them to be protected by understanding the fullness of salvation.

There are three aspects of salvation (Romans 5:1,2):

1. *Past justification*: freedom from the penalty of sin.
2. *Present sanctification*: freedom from the power of sin.
3. *Future glorification*: freedom from the presence of sin.

Paul frequently made reference to all three of these aspects throughout Ephesians. We were saved the very moment that we trusted Jesus Christ. At that moment, we were positionally righteous before God and freed from the penalty of our sin. That's what the first three chapters of Ephesians are all about. But salvation doesn't stop once we initially believe. Jesus Christ continues to save us. We are being saved right now as we live out that righteousness through the work of the Holy Spirit in us. That's what the last three chapters of Ephesians are all about. We no longer have to be under the power of sin. And one day in the future, our salvation will be complete. Paul has described how we have the Holy Spirit as a guarantee that we will one day receive the full inheritance that God has in store for us.

<sup>8</sup> *But we belong to the day; therefore, let us be sober and put on the breastplate of faith and love and for a helmet the hope of salvation.*<sup>9</sup> *For God has not appointed us to [incur His] wrath [He did not select us to condemn us], but [that we might] obtain [His] salvation through our Lord Jesus Christ (the Messiah)*

*1 Thessalonians 5:8-9*

The Biblical concept of hope is much more than just wishful thinking: it is a confident expectancy and the absolute assurance of the good that God has in store for me in the future. When we apply that concept to our salvation, we come up with a very clear picture of

the helmet of salvation: the helmet of salvation is the absolute assurance that God will be faithful to bring our salvation to its full and complete fulfilment. You are secure. You have a hope, and your hope isn't in finances, your hope isn't in people, your hope isn't in circumstances. Your hope isn't other people coming through for you. Your hope is not what's going happen someday, some way, somehow. Your hope is in the person of Christ.

When we define the helmet of salvation in those terms, it is very easy to see how this is such an effective weapon against the weapons of discouragement and doubt that Satan launches against us. In the same way the helmet of our salvation gives us confidence because we know that no matter what happens we will ultimately win the victory! Salvation infuses us with the optimism that victory is assured! Let the enemy attack. Let the forces of hell rage against us. Let them shoot their fiery darts. We may be wounded. We may suffer momentary defeats. We may falter and stumble. However, because of the cross, victory will ultimately be ours! <sup>1233</sup>

#### **6.5.4.11 Fasting**

Fasting in the Bible implies abstinence from food and water to some degree or another for a certain period. Fasting begins in the Old Testament as a voluntary act of individual piety. Most cases of fasting in the Bible can be seen as a normal, voluntary result of the human state of mind. Fasting naturally seems to reinforce the attitude of repentance and heartfelt confession. During fasting a person's mental and spiritual faculty seems more alert and sensitive to the Holy Spirit. Thus intercession seems easier and more effective. While seeking the will and direction of Trinity God, it is beneficial to fast. <sup>1234</sup>

Fasting is a tremendous weapon against the enemy, especially concerning generational bondage and freedom thereof.

---

<sup>1233</sup> New Covenant. Helmet of Salvation [Online] Available from:  
[http://www.newcovenantgj.org/web\\_documents/the\\_helmet\\_of\\_salvation.pdf](http://www.newcovenantgj.org/web_documents/the_helmet_of_salvation.pdf) [Accessed: 29 October 2014]

<sup>1234</sup> Brand, C M J (2007) *Spiritual Warfare Four*. Pretoria: CMJ Brand, pp. 17-21

Jessie Penn-Lewis noted<sup>1235</sup>:

*There is a permanent attitude toward the body that may be described under the word fasting and that is a necessary condition for continuous victory over evil spirits. It is imperative, especially for the casting out of evil spirits, that the believer has complete mastery over his body; that he is able to discriminate between its legitimate demands and the spirits of evil seeking to gain a foothold behind its lawful needs; and that he can detect all the files seeking to rob him from victory over them.*

Fasting is a very personal issue in the life of the believer only to be instigated in relationship with the Lord Jesus Christ through the in-working, unction and revelation of the Holy Spirit. Jesus said, *this kind can come forth by nothing, but by prayer and fasting* (Matthew 17:21), indicating that there are levels of spiritual opposition within the demonic realm, and the greater powers and the locations of their rule will only be defeated as militant Christian soldiers descend from the mount of fasting. 'This kind' requires more than religious ceremony. 'This kind' is not intimidated by clever three point sermons. Prayer alone will not bring down 'this kind.' For the purpose of this study 'this kind' refers to the deaf and dumb spirit and every demonic entity behind insanity. Triumph over these is found only by those who are in pursuit of God through fasting, as supernatural benefits were provided to individuals who participated in fasting.

The Bible describes three major types of fasting<sup>1236</sup>:

- *A Partial Fast:* This type of fast refers to leaving out a specific meal from your diet or refraining from certain types of foods. Daniel 10:2-3 says, *at that time I, Daniel, mourned for three weeks. I ate no choice food; no meat or wine touched my lips; and I used no lotions at all until the three weeks were over.* In Daniel 1:12, they restricted their diet to vegetables and water: *Please test your servants for ten days: Give us nothing but vegetables to eat and water to drink.*
- *A Full Fast:* These fasts are complete, no food and no drink whatsoever. Acts 9:9 describes when Paul went on a full fast for three days following his encounter with Jesus on the road to Damascus: *For three days he was blind, and did not eat or drink anything.*

---

<sup>1235</sup> Penn-Lewis, J (1996) *Secrets of Spiritual Warfare*. New Kensington: Whitaker House, p. 297

<sup>1236</sup> All About Prayer, Fasting [Online] Available from: <http://www.allaboutprayer.org/types-of-fasting-faq.htm> [Accessed: 1 April 2014]

Esther also called for this type of fast in Esther 4:15-16: *Then Esther sent this reply to Mordecai: 'Go, gather together all the Jews who are in Susa, and fast for me. Do not eat or drink for three days, night or day. I and my maids will fast as you do. When this is done, I will go to the king, even though it is against the law. And if I perish, I perish.'* It is recommended that this type of fast be done with extreme caution and not for extended periods of time unless instructed by the Lord.

- *A Sexual Fast:* 1 Corinthians 7:3-6 says *the husband should fulfil his marital duty to his wife, and likewise the wife to her husband. The wife's body does not belong to her alone but also to her husband. In the same way, the husband's body does not belong to him alone but also to his wife. Do not deprive each other except by mutual consent and for a time, so that you may devote yourselves to prayer. Then come together again so that Satan will not tempt you because of your lack of self-control.*

Although not mentioned in the Bible, Christians today commit to fasting from other activities as well. Some give up entertainment such as TV or movies to concentrate on prayer. Others fast from sleep or other activities for a specified period of time.

The Bible contains many examples of people receiving everything from physical deliverance to visions of the future, through the potency of fasting. It is in the context of spiritual warfare that fasting provides two of the most essential items needed for the church to conduct a successful military campaign: battlefield encouragement and spiritual discernment. Fasting produces three kinds of discernment needed to conduct a victorious military crusade: (1) discernment for witnessing, (2) discerning of spirits, and (3) discernment for church activity. For the sake of spiritual warfare, we sometimes need to know what kind of a spirit is at work in a person or community. At other times, we need to understand the nature of a spirit's position in the person or community. Both of these circumstances can be understood when spiritual discernment has been enhanced through fasting.<sup>1237</sup>

#### **6.5.4.12 The Spirit of God and His Gifts**

Spiritual warfare is about being led and guided by and through the Holy Spirit. This is a vital truth that has escaped the notice of most believers. We talk about being saved, baptised in

---

<sup>1237</sup> Horn, T R (1998) *Spiritual Warfare, the Invisible Invasion*. Louisiana: Huntington House Publishers, pp. 186-187

the Spirit, baptised in water, and that's it. But that is only the entrance. Life is being led by the Spirit daily, hourly, moment by moment.<sup>1238</sup>

It is impossible to do counselling, deliverance and healing without the nine gifts of the Holy Spirit which are divided in three categories as seen in 1 Corinthians 12:10: (1) *Utterance gifts*: speaking in tongues, interpretations of tongues and prophecy, (2) *Revelation gifts*: word of knowledge, word of wisdom, and discerning of spirits, and (3) *Power gifts*: faith, miracles and healing.

For the full spectrum of spiritual warfare, a believer needs all the gifts of the Holy Spirit at some stage or another in the process to full restoration; however, the one gift that does stand out and cannot be magnified enough is the gift of discerning of spirits.

Discerning of spirits is a gift of the Holy Spirit that enables the believer to recognise, identify and distinguish between various spirits that confront the believer. The purpose for this gift is (1) to lift the veil that covers the unseen spiritual world, (2) to enable the believer to see as God sees (1 Samuel 16:7, the condition of the heart), (3) to protect the believer against deception, and (4) to enable to diagnose people's problems and thus to help them.<sup>1239</sup>

If this gift is operating in a person he will be able to distinguish between the presence of a (1) demonic or dark spirit, (2) a spirit from Trinity God, which is either His Holy Spirit or an angelic spirit, and (3) a human spirit that might be manifesting at a specific time. The gift will also show a person the demonic or spiritual realm. This might not be visual but can also be a knowing; the demonic might also be seen as shadows.<sup>1240</sup>

### 6.5.5 The Role of Heavenly Angels

*<sup>14</sup> Are not the angels all ministering spirits (servants) sent out in the service [of God for the assistance] of those who are to inherit salvation?*

*Hebrew 1:14*

---

<sup>1238</sup> Prince, D (2006) *Lucifer Exposed*. UK: Derek Prince Ministries, pp. 40-45

<sup>1239</sup> Prince, D, *Discerning of Spirits* [Online] Available from: <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=PGMG2iiLYtw> [Accessed: 13 October 2014]

<sup>1240</sup> King, P, *The Gift of Discernment* [Online] Available from: <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=GRXfUuO4VOA&list=PL43236F95E3BCE2E9> [Accessed: 13 October 2014]



According to Jesus' teaching, angels are spiritual beings created by God to serve Him: personal, sinless, immortal beings, existing in countless number, and in close relation not only with individual men, but also with the history and building of God's kingdom. Angels have specific roles to fulfil and jobs to do (they have a specific hierarchy): there are angels that war, angels that worship, and angels that deliver messages. There are heavenly hosts that work together in praise and in battle.<sup>1241</sup>

*<sup>20</sup> Bless (affectionately, gratefully praise) the Lord, you His angels, you mighty ones who do His commandments, hearkening to the voice of His word. <sup>21</sup> Bless (affectionately, gratefully praise) the Lord, all you His hosts, you His ministers who do His pleasure.*

*Psalm 103:20-21*

Examples of angelic activity in spiritual warfare are as follows:

- Exodus and Numbers are filled with incidents where the angel of the Lord went before God's people into battle. Angels smote entire armies. (Exodus 23:23; Exodus 33:2).
- An angel strengthened a depressed Elijah, twice. The angel also gave him a word of knowledge (1 Kings 19).
- Jesus was strengthened in the desert by angels (Matthew 4:11).
- In Gethsemane, an angel strengthened Jesus (Luke 22).
- Paul was encouraged and instructed by an angel (Acts 27).
- Matthew 13 proclaims that angels are even now helping to reap the end-time harvest.
- The Book of Revelation makes sixty-six references to angels.
- Michael and his angels will overcome the Dragon in heaven (Revelation 12:7).
- An angel will bind Satan and cast him into the pit (Revelation 20).
- Angels guard and protect those who make the Lord their refuge (Psalm 91:11).

Prayer engages angels. On several occasions, God's people prayed and God sent angels to war against their enemies. During deliverance, we can ask the Lord to send his angels to chase and persecute the demonic entities; we can ask the Lord to send angels to beat the enemy down as dust before the wind and cast them out as dirt in the streets (Psalm 18:41, 42).

The Angel of the Lord (Jesus) encamps around the saints (Psalm 34:7). Demons fear the Angel of the Lord. The believer is responsible to go forth in battle and destroy the works of

---

<sup>1241</sup> Sayadi Al Nas, The Ministry of Angels [Online] Available from: [http://www.sayadi-al-nas.com/misc/ministry\\_angels.htm](http://www.sayadi-al-nas.com/misc/ministry_angels.htm) [Accessed: 1 November 2014]

the devil. Ask the Lord to send His Angel before you to drive out the enemy (Exodus 23:23).<sup>1242</sup>

To be clear, Scripture warns by word and example *not* to worship angels. Furthermore, cooperating with God and angels is biblical. Having said that, it is comforting to know that God may protect, provide, and encourage us in supernatural ways, but this does not always guarantee such deliverance and certainly we should never presume on this provision of God. Having considered the various ways angels minister, we should keep in mind that God does not always deliver us from danger or supply our needs in such miraculous ways whether by angels or by His direct intervention. For His own sovereign purposes in His plan for using suffering (a tool of growth, to manifest the character of Christ, to witness to others) the opposite is sometimes His will, as life clearly illustrates and Scripture declares (see Hebrews 11:36-40).<sup>1243</sup>

#### **6.5.6 The Court Case**

Parts of the spiritual warfare process are set in a courtroom fashion. There is the Righteous Judge of the universe, God the Father; there are the witnesses, Heaven and Earth; there is the accuser, Satan and his entourage; and there is the advocate for the accused, Jesus, asking the Righteous Judge of the universe to open and search the archives and to open all books relevant to the case presented relating to all associated generational lines (bloodlines, marriage lines, adoptive lines and the covenant lines).

By the word of the testimony of the person, and the blood of the Lamb, the cleaning and sanctification is done (Revelation 11:12). Confess the iniquity and sin and transgressions. Let the accusations be made before the throne. And then apply the word of the testimony of the person and the blood of the Lamb onto the piece of iniquity and sin and transgressions and then bring the cleansing forward to the person and the covenant spouse and his spiritual and physical seed to a thousand generations to come. Ask God to release all the blessings that He intended to flow for this specific area, and then speak blessings into the person and his associated belongings, namely time and land.<sup>1244</sup>

---

<sup>1242</sup> Eckhard, J (2004) Deliverance and Spiritual Warfare Manual. Chicago: Crusaders Ministries, p. 13

<sup>1243</sup> Bible.org, Angels, God's Ministering Angels [Online] Available from: <https://bible.org/article/angels-god%E2%80%99s-ministering-spirits> [Accessed: 1 November 2014]

<sup>1244</sup> Burk, A, Trauma Bonds to Time, CD 1, Track 3

### 6.5.6.1 Dealing with Covenants

Bring before the Righteous Judge of the universe all the covenants that have bearing on the person to examine the terms of every covenant and agreement (Isaiah 28:17). All covenants not found just and righteous in all the terms the Righteous Judge of the universe has the right to annul. Ask the Righteous Judge of the universe to release His judgement against Satan and his demons for any putative damages (Isaiah 28:18).

Ask questions such as “Is there a demon? Is there a covenant protecting the demon?” If a covenant does exist, deal first with the covenant and then with the demons (and then with any DID parts and alters).<sup>1245</sup>

There are, in fact, covenants that provide protection for demons. If you are trying to evict a demonic intruder who is resistant, it may be that there is a covenant providing protection for that evil spirit. If there is an unholy alliance between jealousy and death, the victim spirit or Freemasonry, a lot of time could be spent commanding, rejecting and renouncing without results because their unholy alliances do indeed afford the demons some level of protection.

A verse in Isaiah gives us the solution to this problem:

*So this is what the Sovereign Lord says: ‘See, I lay in Zion, a tested stone, a precious cornerstone for a sure foundation; the one who trusts will never be dismayed. I will make justice the measuring line and righteousness the plumb line; hail will sweep away your refuge, the lie, and water will overflow your hiding place. Your covenant with death will be annulled; your agreement with the grave will not stand. When the overwhelming scourge sweeps by, you will be beaten down by it.*

*Isaiah 28:16-18*

A covenant that was voluntarily entered into by two parties is allowed to stand regardless of the pain it causes one party or the other, unless there is a law that supersedes it. There are ancient generational covenants that were made voluntarily at some point, providing a measure of protection for the demons in an individual's life. However, those covenants are subject to the higher law of the universe. Any individual can appeal to the Righteous Judge of the Universe on the basis of those covenants not being just or righteous according to the

---

<sup>1245</sup> Burk, A, Ministering to SRA/DID Clients. 13 August 2014

supreme law that God has established. Then, if God agrees that those covenants stand in violation of His law, He declares them annulled. That removes the protection the demons once had.

Once the unholy alliances and the covenants of protection have been annulled by God, we proclaim that the individual has voluntarily entered into a Blood Covenant relationship with Jesus. We proclaim that this Covenant transcends and supersedes every other covenant, agreement, or protection. We command each of the different demonic heads to stand alone at attention with those under them, not in communication with each other and not helping each other. At the same time, we may find it necessary to block any demonic reinforcement coming from the land or the building. Once all the preparatory work is done, we come to the heart of the matter and that is severing the agreements with the devil. We proclaim the truth that this individual has a legal right to receive everything God has given him. We may list life, health, beauty, mental acuity, skills, talents, spiritual gifts, family, wealth, ministry, open doors or whatever the focus of the jealousy has been.

We ask God to open the books and to identify every individual who has thought or spoken or written untrue words about the things God has given us. We then ask God to sever every agreement that was entered into between any two people or any groups of individuals and to only allow standing those things that are true. Then we ask God to sever the agreements between human beings and the demonic realm where those agreements empowered the spirit of jealousy, directly or indirectly.<sup>1246</sup>

### **6.5.6.2 Dealing with False Agreements**

False agreements are things that are said, proclaimed or suggested at one stage or another in a person's life that the person took as truth or fact about their life, resulting in a false agreement. These agreements would have affected one's decisions, thought life and dreams. These agreements need to be identified, repented of and brought to the throne room for the Lord to give the release to the damage they brought to the client's life. These agreements might be, for example, a doctor's report to family members telling you that you will be just like your dad or granddad, that the same fate will be yours as they had.

---

<sup>1246</sup> Buys, A, Africa, come forth out of Bondage. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished, pp. 113-115

### **6.5.6.3 Dealing with Defilement through Enmeshment**

The damage brought onto the spirit via enmeshment can only be corrected, restored and healed by Jesus Christ of Nazareth. Christ is light and in Him there is no darkness. Bring the human spirit into Christ to leave, clear and heal, and for Jesus Christ to take out the enmeshment from the human spirit and bring the restoration and healing.<sup>1247</sup> Soul ties need to be cut as well as defiled attachments to time and land.

### **6.5.6.4 Cleansing the Body from Defilement**

A person can only cleanse a body physically and spiritually up to a specific point; if the client wants to sanctify the body, if he wants the body to be holy, it means activating the principles of God's design. How he eats, when he eats, how he sleeps, how he studies, how he exercises, all these things are principles established by God that are just as significant as how he worships, and the more of these principles he can discover, the more he can understand about who he is, the holier he will be in spirit, soul and body.<sup>1248</sup>

### **6.5.6.5 Cleansing Time from Defilement**

The time that the enemy curses is the precise time that God expects and intends the blessings to flow in someone's life. Therefore, defiled time must be cleansed and redeemed so that the blessings God intended for the person are restored.<sup>1249</sup>

There are cyclical divine time periods, windows of reconciliation that are times where there is uncommon grace from God available to be able to reconcile along particular themes, for example:

1. *10-30 March*: uncommon grace from God for reconciliation of relationships.
2. *10-30 June*: uncommon grace from God for reconciliation to land.
3. *10-30 September*: uncommon grace from God for reconciliation with God.
4. *10-30 December*: uncommon grace from God for reconciliation with man's destination, past and future.

---

<sup>1247</sup> Burk, A, Ministering to SRA/DID Clients. 13 August 2014

<sup>1248</sup> Burk, A, Tools for Cleansing Time and Land, CD 2, Track 9

<sup>1249</sup> Burk, A, Tools for Cleansing Time and Land, CD 2, Track 2

Steps to follow to clean time once the sin, rebellion, iniquity, covenants or trauma are brought before God and confessed where applicable:

1. Acknowledge the fact that the time is defiled via the sin, rebellion, iniquity, covenants and trauma.
2. Ask God to cleanse the land.
3. Bless the time.
4. Ask God to restore the blessings that need to flow from the time.

Time is very central in the counselling deliverance process. If time is not cleansed, no measure of deliverance will bring lasting freedom and healing.

#### **6.5.6.6 Dealing with Spiritual Structures or Devices**

Spiritual structures or devices, once identified through the guidance of the Holy Spirit, need to be destroyed by the Lord.

#### **6.5.6.7 Cleansing Land from Defilement**

When land needs to be cleaned and disconnected from a person, only the following people have the right to do so: (1) the owner of the land, (2) the renter of the land, and (3) the tax payer (government owned land can be cleansed by the tax payer).

Steps to follow to clean land once the sin, rebellion, iniquity or covenants are brought before God and confessed:

5. Acknowledge the fact that the land is defiled via the sin, rebellion or iniquity.
6. Ask God to cleanse the time.
7. Bless the land.

When the land is cleansed, the tie from the person to the land does not exist, nor does the tie from land to the other parties involved exist; thus the person is no longer tied to other people through the piece of land.<sup>1250</sup>

---

<sup>1250</sup> Burk, A, Tools for Cleansing Time and Land, CD 1, Track 4

There are instances though where the land should stay connected to a person, as in the case of conception or birth. In these instances, only the defilement should be cleansed, but the tie should remain.<sup>1251</sup>

#### **6.5.6.8 Cleansing Possession from Defilement**

Defiled items in the home will contaminate people immensely, especially in the area of sexuality. God is about redemption and a believer needs to have at the centre of his approach of cleansing redemption and not fear.<sup>1252</sup> Scripture draws a very clear line relating to what can be redeemed and what cannot be redeemed. God was there first. There are instances that one should rather clean and sanctify possessions by redeeming them. Examples of possessions that cannot be redeemed<sup>1253</sup>:

- Anything that is used as an object of worship cannot be cleansed and should be destroyed by fire.
- Anything that is used with a personal motive that is wrong (motivated in rebellion, for example) needs to be removed or destroyed.

#### **6.5.6.9 Cleansing the Soul from Defilement**

Cleansing the soul from defilement is a process of the identification of lie vs. truth. The soul consisting, of the mind, will and emotions, needs to be evaluated against what the Word of God has to say about our minds, wills and emotions. The soul will only be cleansed in an active washing by the Blood of Jesus and the Word of God, resulting in a change in the way you think and act, and the way you feel to be the way Jesus intended it to be.

*See Chapter 3 – Dissevering the Mind*

#### **6.5.6.10 Cleansing the Office**

Many people stand in an office of work. This is not the office at work that consists of table and chairs, but the office such as medical doctor, mayor, president or Chief Operational

---

<sup>1251</sup> Burk, A, Deliverance on the Brain. 15 November 2014

<sup>1252</sup> Burk, A, Tools for Cleansing Time and Land, CD 2, Track 6, 7

<sup>1253</sup> Ibid.

Officer, for example. The office carries a spiritual dimension to it that could have been defiled by previous occupants and through sin, covenants and oaths. It is necessary for a person to cleanse this office from defilement. This is done through the normal course of repentance and breaking of curses and nullified covenants through Jesus Christ. If this is not done, the defilement will effect and influence the person in the office to the extent that the person will become defiled.<sup>1254</sup>

## 6.6. THE COUNSELING PROCESS

### 6.6.1 Defining Biblical Counselling

Dr Jeremy Lelek, founder of the *Association of Biblical Counselors* in America, gives the following definition of Biblical counselling<sup>1255</sup>:

*Biblical counseling endeavors to build a relationship with another person in which God's work of change can thrive. It is therefore dependent on the Word of God, the work of the Holy Spirit and the grace of Jesus Christ. It seeks to build a contextualized understanding of the client (past and present) and will view that data through the lens of Scripture. The Biblical counselor rests in the knowledge that he is not the change agent, but a tool in the hands of the One who is. The biblical counselor does not ignore physical issues or emotional data, but seeks to integrate them into a holistic understanding of the person and where change needs to take place. The biblical counselor is not adversarial in his relationship to the psychologies of his culture, but examines research and insights through the lens of Scripture. In his work with the client the biblical counselor always recognizes the sovereignty of God, the transformative grace of Christ, and the insight-giving and conviction-producing ministry of the Holy Spirit. In all of this the biblical counselor sees himself not as an isolated instrument of change, but one whose work is intimately connected to God's primary tool of change; the church, with all of its God-ordained, duties, structures and means of grace.*

Every ministry and counsellor should have strategic goals when counselling<sup>1256</sup> a person.

---

<sup>1254</sup> Burk, A, Trauma Bonds to Time, CD 1, Track 1

<sup>1255</sup> Association of Biblical Counsellors. Biblical Counselling Defined [Online] Available from: <http://christiancounseling.com/content/biblical-counseling-defined> [Accessed: 29 October 2014]

<sup>1256</sup> Etymology:



Following are some vital strategic goals as examples:

- to give Glory to the Lord Jesus and to establish His Kingdom,
- to lead people to Christ,
- to help believers grow to spiritual maturity in his walk with the Lord, and
- to encourage believers to strive towards a sinless life.

### **6.6.2 A Mind Change**

In counselling, habitual tracks of the mind defeat the fruits of counselling more than anything else. It is not enough to wash long forgotten sins in the blood, nor enough to apply the cross to habitual patterns of behaviour. The mind must learn to think in new ways. Habitual tracks of thought must be overcome before the new way of Christ can be built. A total surrender is needed to allow the Holy Spirit to replace their mind for the Mind of Christ; this is the ultimate victory over mood distortions and illnesses.

The death we fear is death of self. It is the threat of death to our supposed self-control, our carnal mind's predominance over all that we think and do, fear of what awful things we suspect we might do if we let go – that is what claims us to the lifelong bondage of our fleshly ways of thinking. Whoever lets go finds true freedom.<sup>1257</sup>

We must discipline our mind, will and emotions. We learn to control our thinking the same way we control our physical body. The physical is told what to do; likewise, the brain is also told what to think by the spirit. The Holy Spirit leads our spirit which leads our soul which leads our body. The passive mind is an empty vessel inviting demons to have their way. Your mind must be disciplined so that it will think properly in accordance with the Bible.<sup>1258</sup>

*See Chapter 3 - Dissevering the Mind*

A distinction is vital between demons on the one hand that attach to people and cause certain identifiable undesirable consequences, and on the other hand there is a distinct mind-set that people can develop, quite apart from demons. For example a victim spirit is used loosely to describe a kind of demon, as well as a mind-set in a person who has no

---

Counsel (v): late 13c., from Old French conseiller "to advise, counsel," from Latin consiliari, from consilium "plan, opinion". Related: Counseled. Counseling "giving professional advice on social or psychological problems" dates from 1940.

Counsel(n): early 13c., from Old French conseil (10c.) "advice, counsel; deliberation, thought," from Latin consilium "plan, opinion". As a synonym for "lawyer," first attested late 14c. [www.etymonline.com](http://www.etymonline.com)

<sup>1257</sup> Brand, C M J (2002) Teaching Manual III. Pretoria: CMJ Brand, p. 37

<sup>1258</sup> Moody, G B, The Deliverance Manual. Deliverance Ministries. Unpublished, pp. 29, 31

demonic attachment. When referring to a Jezebel spirit, a poverty spirit, a welfare spirit, a predator spirit or a victim spirit, one can be describing a specific mind-set without any trace of demonic presence. In fact the mind-set not only precedes the demon, it actually opens the door for the demon.

The mind-set and the demonic presence, however, are treated very differently. The demon will be dealt with through the process of deliverance, whereas the mind-set has to be dealt with by the client through the renewal of the mind. By extension, if the mind-set is not dealt with, then the person who has been through deliverance will open the door again because of their thinking patterns.<sup>1259</sup>

### **6.6.3 A Lifestyle Change**

It is imperative to distinguish between the following three points when counselling individuals: (1) who we are (our spiritual DNA), (2) how we behave, and (3) the results of our choices. The bondage never changes the spiritual life of new birth, thus who we are. We were born again, the life and character qualities of Christ were placed within us and no amount of misbehaviour on our part changes that spiritual DNA. We have great and precious promises and have the DNA within us and through them, we can, but not necessarily do, overcome the evil desires. The choices a person makes affect behaviour. Choices will determine whether or not we are walking out, manifesting, and incarnating the spiritual life that is within us. It needs work to develop the virtues within a person, to bring it to a point of maturity, to come to a position of freedom so that one does not require will power to do what is right – one automatically does what is right. It is only through Christ where the believer has the supernatural power of God at work within him to produce required changes.<sup>1260</sup>

Deliverance itself is no guarantee of complete recovery of the physical body and the mental faculties. The Bible gives overwhelming evidence that deliverance is just a step to restoring the person back to where he should be. Jesus likened it to a house that was cleaned out and the old, filthy tenant evicted. The old, filthy tenant could not find another home, so he brought seven of his friends with him and returned to the same house. After that house had been cleaned, the door was not locked. So the last state of that person was seven times worse

---

<sup>1259</sup> Burk, A (2001) *Overcoming the Victim Spirit*. USA: Plumline Ministries, pp. 19-20

<sup>1260</sup> Burk, A, *Spiritual Warfare*, CD 5, Track 7

than his first state. The person needs to be 'filled up' with spiritual food and drink that will bring along spiritual growth and maturity.<sup>1261</sup>

#### **6.6.4 The Full Picture**

Proverbs 20:5 describes our hearts in this way: *A plan in the heart of a man is like deep water, but a man of understanding draws it out.* The plans hidden in our hearts began forming in the womb in response to the sins of others, hurts, pains and misunderstandings. It is in this atmosphere of darkness that we begin the process of forming a plan deep within our hearts. Usually, this plan is a 'Plan of Escape from Pain'. For some of us, that means 'Longing for Death' while for others, it means 'Trying Really Hard' and still for others, it means 'Resignation'.

Unless we learn to draw out that heart-level plan, placing it before the Lord, all our efforts to transform ourselves by working hard and doing all the right things will fail. This is because 'What We Believe in our Hearts' determines who we really are. The Scripture teaches us that we *believe with the heart* (Romans 10:10). Unless our heart-level beliefs are brought to the surface, all our labour is as worthless as painting over rust.

When a person knocks on the door for counselling, deliverance or healing, he needs to comprehend that the requests and expectations he came with might not be met or adhered to. This is because Father God alone knows the bigger picture the person is part of. Some people will come for deliverance in one area and end up leaving in disappointment from only receiving counselling in another. Counselling, deliverance and healing all form part of a bigger set of tools for spiritual warfare available to the counsellor to serve the person with the kingdom requirements for his specific, unique and special design.

Furthermore, we have seen in previous chapters that the person consists of multiple parts and has multiple interactions that all need to be attend to, cleaned, delivered and healed on the road to complete restoration and complete healing. The counsellor has to deal with the entire package and bring to full restoration each of the associated belongings through holiness and sanctification.

---

<sup>1261</sup> Pittman, H O (1995) Demons, An Eyewitness Account. USA: Philadelphian Publishing House, p. 52

Defilement can sit on the following levels:

1. *Human spirit*.
2. *Soul* (mind, will and emotions).
3. *Body* (brain): body memories can be used to begin a counselling journey. A note on the body dynamics: the right side is the side for authority (dominion, righteous and predatory) which can indicate abused authority. Male. Predatory. The left side indicates righteous vulnerability, godly vulnerability. Female. Victim.
4. *Time* associated to the person (past, present and future) as well as time attachments.
5. *Land* associated to the person (past, present) as well as land attachments.
6. *Community* associated to the person.
7. *The birth right* of the person.
8. *Belongings* of the persons (items and clothes).
9. *Office* the person is standing in (present): the spiritual and physical office the person might be standing in (e.g. mayor, head of a hospital, office of prophet, office of teacher).

Sanctification comes via Revelation 11:12, therefore by the word of the testimony and the blood of the Lamb.

### **6.6.5 The Contribution of the Brain in a Counselling Session**

The brain region most strongly implicated in emotional memory is the amygdala. The amygdala is critically involved in calculating the emotional significance of events, and, through its connection to brain regions dealing with sensory experiences, also appears to be responsible for the influence of emotion on perception, alerting us to notice emotionally significant events even when we're not paying attention. The amygdala appears to be particularly keyed to negative experiences. But it is not only the amygdala that is involved in this complex interaction. The cerebellum, most strongly associated with motor coordination skills, may also be involved in remembering strong emotions, in particular, in the consolidation of long-term memories of fear.<sup>1262</sup>

---

<sup>1262</sup> Empowering your Memory and Mind, The Role of Emotion in Memory [Online] Available from: <http://www.memory-key.com/memory/emotion> [Accessed: 1 November 2014]

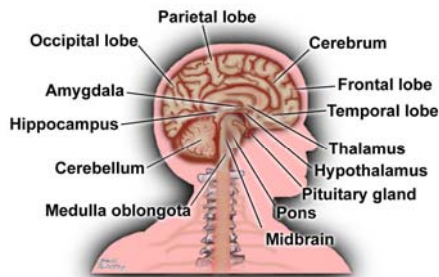


Figure 6.1 The Brain<sup>1263</sup>

When in a counselling session and discussing events where memories are involved, a person is 'pulled' into the lower parts of the brain where negative emotions are stored. These emotions are destructive and can be anything from anxiety, fear, guilt or anger. It is important not to leave the person in this place of the brain as the person will leave with those emotions pulling them into depression and sadness and might even contribute towards suicide. This often happen when the counselling session runs out of time and the client is in the middle of explaining or recalling traumatic events.

Understanding that the brain influences behaviour, we need to get the client to function from the pleasure centre located in the front of the brain when leaving the counselling session. This is a unique little tool to assist the client in having the advantage of being in a better 'place' when having to face the world and reality on the outside.

The pleasure centres is also called the reward circuit, which includes all kinds of pleasure, from sex to laughter to certain types of drug use. Some of the brain areas impacted by pleasure include<sup>1264</sup>:

- *amygdale*: regulates emotions;
- *nucleus accumbens*: controls the release of dopamine;
- *ventral tegmental area (VTA)*: actually releases the dopamine; and
- *pituitary gland*: releases beta-endorphins, which decrease pain; oxytocin, which increases feelings of trust; and vasopressin, which increases bonding.

Activation of brain reward systems can be considered a natural component of normal behaviour. Indeed, brain reward systems serve to direct the organism's behaviour toward

---

<sup>1263</sup> Medicine Health, Anatomy of the Central Nervous System [Online] Available from: [http://www.emedicinehealth.com/anatomy\\_of\\_the\\_central\\_nervous\\_system/page2\\_em.htm](http://www.emedicinehealth.com/anatomy_of_the_central_nervous_system/page2_em.htm) [Accessed: 1 November 2014]

<sup>1264</sup> Wize Geek, Where is the Brain's Pleasure Centre [Online] Available from: <http://www.wisageek.org/where-is-the-brains-pleasure-center.htm> [Accessed: 1 November 2014]

goals that are normally beneficial and promote survival of the individual (e.g. food and water intake).

This transition to the pleasure centre can happen with simple but specific indented questions or conversion, for example, something about the hobby of the client, or what exciting things he is planning for the weekend.

### 6.6.6 Spiritual Growth

Deliverance can only be done up to a point and then spiritual growth has to take place.

*The average, modern believer is not Christ-like. He is quick to defend his flaws, his weaknesses and defeats in fiery red-faced indignation.*<sup>1265</sup>

God is not honoured by a person's arrested development. The New Testament teaches that the believer should continue to full maturity, that mediocrity is not the highest Jesus offers. God will speak to man if he reads and studies and obeys the Word of God. But when He speaks, man should speak back to Him in prayer and devotion. That which is spoken back to Him is important, as can be seen in the Psalms.

*<sup>12</sup> Not that I have now attained [this ideal], or have already been made perfect, but I press on to lay hold of (grasp) and make my own, that for which Christ Jesus (the Messiah) has laid hold of me and made me His own. <sup>13</sup> I do not consider, brethren, that I have captured and made it my own [yet]; but one thing I do [it is my one aspiration]: forgetting what lies behind and straining forward to what lies ahead, <sup>14</sup> I press on toward the goal to win the [supreme and heavenly] prize to which God in Christ Jesus is calling us upward. <sup>15</sup> So let those [of us] who are spiritually mature and full-grown have this mind and hold these convictions; and if in any respect you have a different attitude of mind, God will make that clear to you also.*

*Philippians 3:12-15*

Here is an example of a contradiction: the believer has entered into perfection but has not yet gone all the way. A common believer is one who is of ordinary quality and ability. He is

---

<sup>1265</sup> Tozer, A W (1990) I Talk Back to the Devil. Pennsylvania: Christian Publications, p. 28

not distinguished by superiority of any kind. He has begun. He does believe. Perhaps he carries a Bible. But he is not distinguished for spiritual attainment. As a result, no one will consult such a believer for guidance or help. No one would want to quote him about the things of God as he is mediocre. These believers are halfway to the peak; they are morally above the hardened sinners, but they are spiritually beneath the shining saints. Many have settled for halfway to the peak: they are being lukewarm, neither hot nor cold.

The believer honours God by going on to full maturity. These believers do not bicker and bargain with God about His standards for spiritual attainment; they do not ask selfish questions or define their own conditions.

*<sup>26</sup> If anyone serves Me, he must continue to follow Me [to cleave steadfastly to Me, conform wholly to My example in living and, if need be, in dying] and wherever I am, there will My servant be also. If anyone serves Me, the Father will honor him.*

*John 12:26*

The devoted and committed believer takes the cross and follows the Lord unconditionally (Luke 9:23). He does not ask what the consequences will be; neither does he argue about God's plan and God's wisdom. Cost in time, in money and in effort and friendships are not calculated. No fear rules them, but the fear of God governs them. Personal safety and convenience takes no priority in their books. They have calculated the cost – it will be tough to stand alone.<sup>1266</sup>

Spiritual growth is not a matter of your position in Christ, God's love, time, knowledge, activity and prosperity. Spiritual growth is development or improvement toward a goal called maturity (or, in the Bible called *perfection*). Spiritual growth is the process of becoming more mature in one's relationship with Jesus Christ. Someone who is growing spiritually will become more and more like Christ. The spiritually mature will be able to *distinguish good from evil* (Hebrews 5:14). Spiritual growth begins the moment a person comes to faith in Christ and should continue until a person enters Christ's presence after this life. Many problems result when believers fail to grow: some go back to the world; others cause strife because of ignorance or become stumbling blocks because of irregular attendance,

---

<sup>1266</sup> Tozer, A W (1990) I Talk Back to the Devil. Pennsylvania: Christian Publications, pp. 39-51

worldliness or indifference.<sup>1267</sup> Spiritual growth is expected of the believer and it comes from trials and applying Biblical principles in our everyday lives.

The Bible occasionally communicates directly in principles. For example, *You shall love your neighbor as yourself* (Leviticus 19:18). We know this is “a general truth applicable in a variety of situations” because the same instruction is used in other parts of Scripture to address different, though related, issues.

On the other hand, most Scripture does not communicate directly in principles. Biblical authors use many different genres or kinds of writing to communicate truth: narrative, laws, speeches and sermons, poetry, prophecy, history, wisdom, and even personal correspondence. The abiding truth must be gleaned from the surrounding details that are specific to that time and place. For example, the narrative account of Abraham's faith becomes a paradigm or principle of faith for all believers (Genesis 16:5; Romans 4:3); David's personal testimony of God's deliverance (poetry) provides the principle that we can trust God, even praise him, in any and every trial of life (Psalm 34); the parable of the Good Samaritan (parable) teaches us the principle of helping those in need whom God brings across our path.

As important as principles are for application and spiritual growth, there is an inherent danger with them. We encounter this danger when we apply a Biblical principle outside of its Biblical context. Who has not heard “I can do all things” applied to just about anything and everything? While a Biblical principle may apply to a variety of situations, it does not apply in just any situation. Not only must we identify the Biblical principle, we must also identify a situation parallel to the Biblical context.<sup>1268</sup>

#### **6.6.7 The Mental Picture of God**

The very important aspect of faith is the mental picture of God a client carries. The actual picture of God most influences how a client feels about Him, which in itself affects the trust he has in Him. It's impossible to enjoy genuinely passionate and loving relationship with God when a person's mental picture of Him does not inspire passionate love. A person's picture

---

<sup>1267</sup> Gods Way, Steps to Spiritual Maturity [Online] Available from: [http://www.gospelway.com/christianlife/steps\\_maturity.php](http://www.gospelway.com/christianlife/steps_maturity.php) [Accessed: 30 October 2014]

<sup>1268</sup> Thinking Biblically Today, What is a Biblical Principal? [Online] Available from: <http://thinkingbiblicallytoday.com/?p=104> [Accessed: 30 October 2014]



of God influences his emotional responses to God as well as his understanding of everything else in his life, including his prayer life.<sup>1269</sup>

The persons of the Trinity have different primary functions in relating to the World. God the Father spoke the creative words to bring the universe into being. But it was God the Son, the eternal Word of God, Jesus, who carried out these creative decrees.

*All things were made through him, and without him was not anything made that was made*

*John 1:3*

*in him all things were created, in heaven and on earth, visible and invisible, whether thrones or dominions or principalities or authorities—all things were created through him and for him*

*Colossians 1:16*

The Holy Spirit was active as well in the creations but in a different way, in “moving” or “hovering” over the face of the waters (Genesis 1:2), apparently sustaining and manifesting God’s immediate presence in his creation. In the work of redemption there are also distinct functions. God the Father planned redemption and sent his Son into the world (John 3:16; Galatians 4:4; Ephesians 1:9-10). The Son obeyed the Father and accomplished redemption for us (John 6:38; Hebrews 10:5-7). God the Father did not come and die for our sins, nor did God the Holy Spirit. That was the particular work of the Son.

Then, after Jesus ascended back into heaven, the Holy Spirit was sent by the Father and the Son to apply redemption to us. It is especially the role of the Holy Spirit to give us regeneration or new spiritual life (John 3:5-8), to sanctify us (Romans 8:13; 15:16; 1 Peter 1:2), and to empower us for service (Acts 1:8; 1 Corinthians 12:7-11). In general, the work of the Holy Spirit seems to be to bring to completion the work that has been planned by God the Father and begun by God the Son.

So we may say that the role of the Father in creation and redemption has been to plan and direct and send the Son and Holy Spirit. The Holy Spirit is obedient to the directives of both the Father and the Son. Thus, while the persons of the Trinity are equal in all their attributes, they nonetheless differ in their relationships to the creation. The Son and Holy Spirit are

---

<sup>1269</sup> Brand, C M J (2007) *Spiritual Warfare Four*. Pretoria: CMJ Brand, p. 98

equal in deity to God the Father, but they are subordinate in their roles. Therefore, the different functions that we see the Father, Son and Holy Spirit performing are simply outworking of an eternal relationship between the three persons, one that has always existed and will exist for eternity.

God has always existed as three distinct persons: Father, Son and Holy Spirit. These distinctions are essential to the very nature of God himself, and they could not be otherwise. Finally, it may be said that there are no differences in deity, attributes or essential nature between the Father, Son, and Holy Spirit. Each person is fully God and has all the attributes of God. The only distinctions between the members of the Trinity are in the ways they relate to each other and to the creation. In those relationships, they carry out roles that are appropriate to each person.<sup>1270</sup>

#### **6.6.8 Strongholds**

A *stronghold*, as seen in *Chapter 3 - 2.11.5 Strongholds*, is something that blinds men's minds so that the light of the Gospel cannot shine in. When a person is in that condition, it is worse than useless to argue with him. The more you argue, the more they restate their error and the more firmly they are stuck in that error. The only way to deliver such people is to use spiritual weapons and break down the strongholds in their minds.<sup>1271</sup>

#### **6.6.9 The Process of Breaking Free from Bondage**

The Lord expects instant obedience. In 1 Samuel 15:22 Samuel asks *has the Lord as great delight in burnt offerings and sacrifices as in obeying the voice of the Lord? Behold, to obey is better than sacrifice, and to hearken than the fat of rams*. Man needs to hear and respond with the first command. It is a tragedy and often costly presumption when man refuses to hear and respond to the Lord the first time He speaks to a person, regardless of whether it is what man wants to do or not.

Jesus promises help through the Holy Spirit in John 14:15-17: *If you love me, obey my commandments. And I will ask the Father, and he will give you another Advocate, who will*

---

<sup>1270</sup> Grudem, W (2000) Systematic Theology, An Introduction to Bible Doctrine. England: Inter-Varsity Press, pp. 206-208

<sup>1271</sup> Prince, D (1987) Spiritual Warfare. USA: Whitaker House, p. 38

*never leave you. He is the Holy Spirit, who leads into all truth. 1 John 4:4 states, But you belong to God, my dear children. You have already won a victory over those people, because the Spirit who lives in you is greater than the spirit who lives in the world.*

The conviction of the Holy Spirit (the small still voice guiding and convincing of sin, transgressions and iniquity) is specific and needs to be dealt with without delay. But most of all, this conviction leads us to freedom if we sincerely repent.

The following are steps that can assist in the process of breaking free from bondage<sup>1272</sup>:

- **Confession.** Acknowledge and confess the existence and right of an identified sin, iniquity or transgression. Confess with the mouth, out loud, that it is wrong in God's eyes and according to His Word.
- **Repentance.** Repentance of the sin, iniquity or transgression needs to be sincerely. Announce that you choose to turn away from the sin. This can be done on behalf of bloodlines in the case where someone has passed away.
- **Forgiveness.** Forgive any party involved or that is responsible for the committed sin, iniquity or transgression. Forgive yourself where necessary and forgive God if you should blame Him for any part in it.
- **Acceptance.** Receive forgiveness from the Lord as He is faithful and just to forgive any confessed sin (1 John 1:9).
- **Renounce.** Renounce any more involvement or putting up with the sin or transgression.
- **Bind.** Bind the strongman (Matthew 12:29). For example, say out loud: "I bind the strongman in this body in Jesus Name".
- **Break.** Break the power of any curse, in the authority of the Name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth, and cast any evil spirit (demon) out, in the Name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth, that was working through the legal right of the confessed sin, iniquity or transgression. For example say out loud: "I break the power of the curse of sickness in this body in the Name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth and declare this curse null and void. I command the spirit of sickness to leave this body now in Jesus' Name".
- **Ask.** Ask the Holy Spirit to fill the space left behind by the curse or evil spirit (Matthew 12:43-45). For example, pray out loud: "Father, I ask in Jesus Name that you will fill any void left by the demon or curse with your Spirit of love, power and a sound mind according to 2 Timothy 1:7. I also ask that You will seal any door left open in Jesus Name for it (demon and curse) never to be able to return".

---

<sup>1272</sup> Buys, 1990, p. 83

- **Affirm.** Affirm your healing, deliverance and restoration in the Name of Jesus.
- **Forsake.** Forsake the sin or transgression in your life going forward and obtain mercy (Proverbs 28:13).

#### **6.6.10 A Note on Scientific Medical Diagnosis**

It is important to mention the fact that it is necessary for the Christian counsellor to have knowledge about the scientific medical diagnosis and treatment because in many cases the client will be under psychological and psychiatric treatment, in which case the counsellor must carefully discern the situation under the guidance of the Holy Spirit. Never ever disregard medication promptly without wisdom because that can lead to a crisis like suicide.<sup>1273</sup>

#### **6.6.11 The Motivation of Counselling**

The primary purpose of authority is to bring honour to God and not to benefit man. God the Father gave the authority to Jesus and Jesus again gave the authority over to the believer with the total focus to bring the world into submission into the kingship of Jesus Christ so that He can present it back to the Father in order to give Him the honour. God did not give the believer authority to benefit individuals; however, along the way individuals will benefit from it even though the purpose of benefitting them is to actually bring them one step closer to the Kingdom of God. When Jesus was on earth doing all the deliverances and healings and miracles, these were not always about the individual. He came primarily to establish the Kingdom of Heaven here on earth and the people that benefitted along the way were secondary to his primary objective of using His authority to establish God's presence here on earth.

When a counsellor is not fiercely intentional about honouring God and the Kingdom of God, the counsellor will default to honouring people. It is not wrong to honour people; there is honour that is due a lot of people, and indeed, Scripture is full of appropriate honour for people. However it is easy for honour to the individual to transcend, to exceed, to become more complex, more elegant, more persistent than the honour to God, unless the counsellor is absolutely determined to keep God's honour primary. And what ends up happening with

---

<sup>1273</sup> Brand, C M J (2002) Teaching Manual III. Pretoria: CMJ Brand, pp. 36-37

this gentle casual slide led by love of man is that instead of a passion to honour God, that the counsellor ends up 'enabling'. If the counsellor does not stop and ask, if he doesn't seek out where the individual is in his Kingdom relationship, the counsellor will use the Power of God to remove from them the consequences of some of their actions that they are not dealing with appropriately. The counsellor becomes an enabler, out of love, perhaps, not intending to undermine the Kingdom, not intending to block the work of God, but in affect doing so whether intentional or not. There is so much ministry done out of love, but it is done with an eye towards removing the superficial pain without making the person any more effective in the Kingdom.

There are only two groups of believers coming for counselling and deliverance: *builders* and *consumers*. People who are *builders* (who have a vision that they are effectively implementing) see everything through the eyes of how it is going to advance the Kingdom; they are always thinking Kingdom, they are thinking advancing the Kingdom, they can see what they do today has a direct implication in benefiting the Kingdom. On the other hand, *consumers* do not have a Kingdom view and constantly want to be fed. They only want answers, but never move forward and do not advance the Kingdom. Some people will start off as consumers but need and then move over to be builders. It is very important that believers progress. But there are professional consumers who are absolutely resistant to building and will go from church to church, from conference to conference, from ministry to ministry, to take-take-take.<sup>1274</sup>

## **6.6.12 Counselling the Insane**

### **6.6.12.1 Family Support**

Life can be very difficult for those who must live with someone who is deeply depressed, suicidal, inclined to be violent or seriously mentally disabled. Family members are often the primary care givers for the mentally ill, but this consumes time, energy, emotional stamina and frequently drains the family's financial resources. Activities and interests that once were pleasant, daily routines that used to be habitual or uninterrupted, may be changed forcibly. Individual lifestyles and goals are altered. Family togetherness is so often disrupted that a conscious effort is required if the family is to retain a sense of unity. Many have difficulty

---

<sup>1274</sup> Burk, A, Leviathan, CD 3, Track 1

keeping sensitive both to the needs of the person with the disability and to the needs and goals of the other family members.

Sometimes support and education from the family are not enough. Family members need more specialised help in coping with their own feelings of futility, guilt, worry and insecurity. Since the strain can be so overwhelming, family members may themselves begin to show symptoms of emotional disturbance, and this in turn can lead to a relapse in the mentally ill person, especially when family members are critical, hostile or impatient.

For relief, family counselling can lower tension, give encouragement, promote tolerance, allow the expression of emotions, deal with conflicts in the home and teach family members how to care for the patient. In one study of schizophrenics, family meetings in the first year following hospitalisation reduced relapse six-fold. These meetings were most effective when they were held in the home, rather than at a clinic or counsellor's office. Such meetings provide opportunities for families to see their strengths, to ask questions, to learn about community resources, to clarify goals, to acknowledge their limitations, and to learn practical ways to get away for a break without feeling guilty or shirking family responsibilities.<sup>1275</sup>

Proper support or the lack thereof (whether direct family or friends) can make or break complete healing and restoration for the client. If he does not have positive encouragement, prayer support, inspiration and vision, he may not be able to see through the process to full restoration. He might take the route of suicide or medication, which can have detrimental effects and dire consequences.

#### **6.6.12.2 Suicide**

When a client shows indications of suicidal thinking, it is appropriate to ask if suicide is being considered. Sometimes clients are relieved to have the issue out in the open where it can be discussed. In assessing risk, try to determine if the person has considered a method, has chosen a means that is likely to be lethal (guns are more lethal than bottles of aspirin), has tried suicide before, and has a history of severe problems or mental disturbance. All of these increase the likelihood of suicide.

---

<sup>1275</sup> Collin, G R (1988) Christian Counselling. Vancouver: Word Publishing pp. 480-481

Try to assess what brought the client to this point of crisis. What solutions were attempted and failed in dealing with this and similar crises in the past? What could be tried going forward? As you talk with the client, challenge the romantic ideas about death. Teenagers, for example, sometimes think friends will grieve forever and talk about the victim's wonderful and tragic qualities. Point out that this might not happen, that others will get on with their lives, and that suicide is a permanent solution to what might be a temporary problem. Try to show respect for the person, don't shame or belittle, avoid arguments if possible, and let the individual know that you care. In all of this, remember the importance of prayer, asking God to give you wisdom and sensitivity. Often your care and interest will help to defuse the idea of suicide, at least temporarily. But if the individual persists in his determination, you need to deal with the demons sitting behind the idea of suicide attempts.

For the survivors, suicide is a painful and deeply distressing experience. Taking a life, including one's own life, is sin, but it is not the unpardonable sin. Close friends and family members may criticise themselves for not preventing the loved one's death, but ultimately the responsibility for suicide rests with the victim who was unable or unwilling to cope with the pressures of life. Christian counsellors and those who worship alongside us in church need to show compassion and sensitivity in the aftermath of suicide. We must take care not to glamorise the suicide, lest this give reason for others to follow the victim's example.<sup>1276</sup>

### **6.6.12.3 It is a Process**

No one person, counselling agency, community or church can do everything in treating insanity and psychosis, but each of us can carve out some area of need and work to prevent problems from getting worse. Some will work in drug prevention programmes or suicide prevention centres. Others will concentrate on marriage enrichment, pre-retirement counselling or divorce recovery. Some will stimulate development of support groups that help the survivors of suicide, parents of handicapped children, unmarried pregnant teenagers, children of alcoholics, or others who could develop more severe emotional disorders.

The church has a role to play in this effort. Jesus demonstrated compassion, caring, and social concern, even as he preached the gospel and called people to repentance. Can we too find ways to fulfil the Great Commission while we also care for the needy, including the

---

<sup>1276</sup> Collin, G R (1988) *Christian Counselling*. Vancouver: Word Publishing pp. 482-483

mentally disabled and those who are especially susceptible to mental illness, even to the extent of insanity and psychosis?<sup>1277</sup>

*We rejoice in the hope of the glory of God. Not only so, but we also rejoice in our sufferings, because we know that suffering produces perseverance; perseverance, character; and character, hope. And hope does not disappoint us, because God has poured out his love in our hearts by the Holy Spirit, whom he has given us.*

*Romans 5:2-5*

If we are adopted by God as his sons, it follows that we are accepted by him. Once the Lord takes us in hand, we are permanently accepted by him. Jesus' relationship with us is solid and unwavering. When He accepts us, He commits Himself to us so that, provided we continue to the end, we are safe. In this acceptance that we enjoy from God there is a security which should enable us to lay anxiety aside. At every level, the Holy Spirit secures our acceptance with the Father. It is up to us to recognise this and relax in the fact. The fact is undisputable; our enjoyment of it is more problematic. If our mind is set on the old, carnal nature, we will not enjoy our acceptance by Christ and by his Father. However, if our minds are fixed on spiritual reality, we can be overcomers.

*<sup>37</sup> Yet amid all these things we are more than conquerors and gain a surpassing victory through Him Who loved us.<sup>38</sup> For I am persuaded beyond doubt (am sure) that neither death nor life, nor angels nor principalities, nor things impending and threatening nor things to come, nor powers,<sup>39</sup> Nor height nor depth, nor anything else in all creation will be able to separate us from the love of God which is in Christ Jesus our Lord.*

*Romans 8:37-39*

Nothing that makes us anxious can separate us from God's love. It follows, then, that neither can anxiety itself. Character comes from allowing the Holy Spirit to be constantly at work in our lives to change our attitudes, getting rid of the bad and fostering the good. The fruit of the Holy Spirit is a transcript of the character of Jesus. Love comprises: joy, peace, patience, gentleness, goodness, faithfulness, meekness and self-control. Jesus is patient, Jesus is kind. He does not envy, He does not boast, He is not proud, He is not rude, He is not self-seeking, He is not easily angered, he keeps no record of wrongs. Jesus does not

---

<sup>1277</sup> Collin, G R (1988) Christian Counselling. Vancouver: Word Publishing pp 484-485



delight in evil. He rejoices with the truth. He always protects, always trusts, always hopes, and always perseveres. Jesus never fails.

The Holy Spirit does not impart these characteristics to us as passive subjects either. We have our part to play. The more our character blossoms, the less room there will be for the blight of anxiety.<sup>1278</sup> The Apostle Peter has a character list which effectively underscores this point:

*<sup>5</sup> For this very reason, adding your diligence [to the divine promises], employ every effort in exercising your faith to develop virtue (excellence, resolution, Christian energy), and in [exercising] virtue [develop] knowledge (intelligence),<sup>6</sup> And in [exercising] knowledge [develop] self-control, and in [exercising] self-control [develop] steadfastness (patience, endurance), and in [exercising] steadfastness [develop] godliness (piety),<sup>7</sup> And in [exercising] godliness [develop] brotherly affection, and in [exercising] brotherly affection [develop] Christian love.<sup>8</sup> For as these qualities are yours and increasingly abound in you, they will keep [you] from being idle or unfruitful unto the [full personal] knowledge of our Lord Jesus Christ (the Messiah, the Anointed One).*

*2 Peter 1:5-8*

## **6.7. DEMONIC WARFARE THROUGH DELIVERANCE**

The Lord never does anything through routines or rituals. Each person is a unique individual, and the Lord treats each one as such. No two deliverances will be the same. If they were, we would quickly come to depend upon the ritual rather than the Lord. It is the Lord and His power that deals with the demons.

As counsellors, we are only servants, doing what the Lord directs. We cannot use the power and authority of the Name of Jesus as we want, only as our Father directs us. If we ever forget this principle, we are sure to fall into error. Sometimes we are only to just fellowship together and lift up His name. He will take care of the demons, silently and gently. We must wait on the Lord in every case!<sup>1279</sup>

---

<sup>1278</sup> Brand, C M J (2002) Teaching Manual III. Pretoria: CMJ Brand, pp. 31-33

<sup>1279</sup> Brown, R (1987) Prepare for War. New Kensington: Whitaker House, pp. 307-308

Robert S. Roseberry, missionary statesman of French West Africa, confirms why deliverance is so needed<sup>1280</sup>:

*The powers of darkness hold in bondage countless numbers of the human race. One can easily trace each system back to the great destroyer, Satan himself. Different manifestations, but the same malignant power stands within the shadows, controlling and directing his forces of evil to the destruction of mankind.*

Jesus was always the same, and consisted neither in magical means nor in ritualistic rigmaroles, but in His own Living word of infinite power. He spoke, and the demons obeyed Him as Lord of the spirit world. In one respect all those who were demonised exhibited the same phenomenon. They all recognised Jesus and owned His power (Mark 1:24, 34; 5:7).

For the believer who acts in obedience to the command and commission of the Lord, deliverance only takes place through one means and that is the *Name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth*. Jesus returned to us the authority over evil spirits. Always remember, though, it is only possible because of the power of the Holy Spirit that abides in us and comes upon us. One verse of Scripture spoken by the Master reveals not only His understanding of the categories of principalities, powers and demons, but our authority over them. Jesus said,

*Behold, I give you the authority to trample on serpents and scorpions, and over all the power of the enemy, and nothing shall by any means hurt you.*

*Luke 10:19 NKJV*

In this verse, Jesus referred to principalities as serpents, powers as scorpions, and demons as the power of the enemy. He gave us authority over each and all of them. Another reference shows the distinction between them as well as our authority over them. These verses also reveal to us how to deal with each category differently.

*And these signs will follow those who believe: In My name they will cast out demons; they will speak with new tongues; they will take up serpents*

*Mark 16:17-18a NKJ*

---

<sup>1280</sup> Roseberry, R S (1935) *Black Magic*. Chicago: World-wide Prayer and Missionary Union.

It is apparent that Jesus makes a distinction between these categories of evil spirits. He is talking about casting out one and taking up the other. He gives us the simplicity of dealing with principalities, powers and demons in this verse alone: we cast out demons, but we take up the battle against principalities and powers by prayer in order to displace them.<sup>1281</sup>

Today's deliverances should be a combination of traditional and prophetic deliverance. The Lord confirms that in the last days He will pour out His Spirit on ALL flesh (Acts 2:17), endorsing that the prophetic ministry will increase in proportion and strength for ALL the believers. However, not all counsellors are strong in both areas due to anointing, spiritual authority and Holy Spirit gifts. What is essential is that the deliverance should only be done through the guidance of the Holy Spirit:

- *Traditional deliverance* concentrates on casting out demons from the person, but leaves the person in prison. That soul will feel partial relief because its tormentors have been cast out. Nevertheless, the individual will not enter the levels of glory and freedom from sitting in heavenly places with Jesus because imprisonment continues. New tormentors will be sent. Traditional liberators will think the demons returned because the person opened a door of some kind, but the reality is the person was never truly set free in the first place.<sup>1282</sup>
- *Prophetic deliverance* sets the captive free from prison without having to deal with the demons. If one is present at the moment of the deliverance, we may have to deal with a demon guard; but in most cases, the cells are not guarded. This makes the rescue easier. Once the person is outside and established in heavenly places, the demons that tormented that soul are no longer around. The results of this type of deliverance are much more powerful and easier to carry out. Only rarely do you deal with demons inside the person after a deliverance from captivity.<sup>1283</sup>

Every case is unique and the warfare remains that of the Lord Jesus. He will reveal the what (root) and the how (strategy for deliverance and counselling) needed to set each person free from his captivity, and it will happen in His time. Some things cannot be rushed. Some clients might be set free in one afternoon; some however will only be set free over an

---

<sup>1281</sup> Liberating Ministries for Christ International, Principalities, Powers and Demons [Online] Available from: <http://www.lmci.org/articles.cfm?Article=76> [Accessed: 1 April 2014]

<sup>1282</sup> Mendez-Ferrell, A (2010) Regions of Captivity. Florida: Voice of the Light Ministries, p. 127

<sup>1283</sup> Ibid.

extended period. Take heart – the battle and the victory is the Lord's! Praise be to Trinity God!

*Seek Him (JESUS), not the deliverance and the results will be lasting and joyous!*

### 6.7.1 Definition of Deliverance

A very comprehensive definition of deliverance<sup>1284</sup> as given by Word Based Counselling considers four areas:

- The first meaning of deliverance is *to deliver out of the hands of, to escape*. This meaning illustrates God's rescue of His people from the dominion of Satan and the world system. An example is found in the Hebrew word *Natsal*<sup>1285</sup> which is defined as "*to snatch, take away; to snatch out of danger, preserve, deliver anyone from danger.*" For example:

*And Moses told his father-in-law all that the Lord had done to Pharaoh and to the Egyptians for Israel's sake, all the hardship that had befallen them on the journey, and how the Lord had delivered them. And Jethro rejoiced over all the goodness which the Lord had done to Israel, in delivering them from the hand of the Egyptians. So Jethro said, "Blessed be the Lord who delivered you from the hand of the Egyptians and from the hand of Pharaoh, and who delivered the people from under the hand of the Egyptians. Now I know the Lord is greater than all the gods; indeed, it was proven when they dealt proudly against the people.*

*Exodus 18:8-11 NASV*

The same sense is poetically conveyed in Psalm 124:7 (NASV) by a word meaning to slip away, to escape, and deliver from danger. Our soul has escaped<sup>1286</sup> as a bird out of the snare of the trapper; the snare is broken and we have escaped.

---

<sup>1284</sup> Etymology: Deliverance: c.1300, "action of setting free" in physical or spiritual senses, from Old French deliverance (12c.), from délivrer. Formerly also with senses now restricted to delivery. <http://www.etymonline.com>

<sup>1285</sup> Strong's #5337

<sup>1286</sup> Malat Strong's #4422

- The second meaning of deliverance adds the idea not only of rescue but also of *drawing someone to one's self*. This concept shows that God's motive behind deliverance is His fervent desire to fellowship with His people upon whom He has set His unfathomable love. The following two verses both beautifully capture this thought.

*You yourselves have seen what I did to the Egyptians, and how I bore you on eagles' wings, and brought you to Myself*

*Exodus 19:4 NASV*

*For He delivered<sup>1287</sup> us from the domain of darkness, and transferred us to the kingdom of His beloved Son*

*Colossians 1:13 NASV*

- The third meaning of deliverance is to deliver into the hands of someone for the purpose of judgement. This idea involves God bringing His people into confrontation with their enemies so that they can defeat them in battle. The Old Testament picture of Israel confronting the Canaanite nations typifies the battle of the New Testament believer against the powers of darkness and the ongoing influence of the world system. For example, God promised Israel:

*And I will fix your boundary from the Red Sea to the sea of the Philistines, and from the wilderness to the River Euphrates; for I will deliver (Nathan Strong's #5414: to give) the inhabitants of the land into your hand, and you will drive them out before you*

*Exodus 23:31 NASV*

This aspect of deliverance requires the believer to be equipped by God with spiritual weapons of warfare. God will supply the power to defeat the enemy once the believer faces the enemy in faith. David gives us an example of God's faithfulness to the one who will face the enemy.

- The fourth and last meaning of deliverance is to have ample space between oneself and one's enemies. It is the end result and goal of the process of deliverance, where one's enemies have been beaten back and brought into subjection, so that they do not press in to harass, distress, and endanger a person or his land. This idea is expressed as follows:

---

<sup>1287</sup> Rhuomai Strong's #4506: to rescue, to draw out, hence to draw to one's self, to deliver

*And Thou hast not given me over into the hand of the enemy; Thou hast set my feet in a large place.*

*Psalms 31:8 NASV*

*From my distress I called upon the Lord; the Lord answered me and set me in a large place*

*Psalms 118:5 NASV*

This concept of safety is captured in Hebrew in the word, *Yasha*,<sup>1288</sup> meaning to be *spacious, ample, and broad*. It was used of Samson where it was said that *he shall begin to deliver Israel from the hands of the Philistines* (Judges 13:5), thus enabling Israel to live in peace from her enemies.

By combining the above four categories of meaning of the many Biblical words translated as *deliverance*, one can define deliverance as<sup>1289</sup>:

*To be removed by God from the hand of the enemy and drawn close to Himself, from which position God places us in confrontation with the enemy on God's own terms, in order for us to gain victory and defeat the enemy, and to experience freedom from oppression in an ample and secure place.*

### **6.7.2 Location for the Deliverance**

This is an area too often overlooked. First of all, be sure you are fighting on holy ground. Be sure you know who you are fighting with as well. Any soldier knows he will get into terrible trouble if he goes into a battle with an enemy at his back. If you are going to cast a demon out of someone, be sure you bring them to a home or church or office which you know is clean and dedicated to the Lord. If you go to their home, you must first go through the home to be sure you aren't fighting in the midst of a demonically infested house.

Also, if you do have to go to someone's home, watch out for their pets. Don't forget to first clear out the animals, or remove them from the room. Almost all people involved in witchcraft

---

<sup>1288</sup> Strong's #3467

<sup>1289</sup> Total Life Ministries, Deliverance [Online] Available from: <http://www.wordbasedcounseling.org/Articles/Deliverance.htm> [Accessed: 1 November 2014]

or the occult have placed demons within their pets. Those demons will cause the animal to attack anyone who either tries to hurt their owner or cast demons out of the owner.

Deliverance should always be done in as controlled a situation as possible. Also be sure you know where your fellow deliverance workers stand with the Lord. The physical surroundings of the room should be comfortable. It is advisable for ladies to wear slacks or culottes to maintain modesty. It is best if everyone present sits in an upright chair. This not only helps to maintain alertness, but provides ease of movement.

Often, physical contact excites the demons, causing unnecessary manifestations, and sometimes opens doors for lust. There should not be physical contact between people of opposite sexes except for anointing with oil. Demons will use everything they can. Lust and even illusions of wrong contact are easily created by demons. We must do everything we can to guard against this problem.<sup>1290</sup>

### **6.7.3 Deliverance through the Blood**

The enemy will take what we will give him through our indifference, neglect, disobedience and compromise. It is up to us to stand firm and resist the temptations of the devil. Jesus Christ, the precious Lamb of God, stands at the boundary of blood as our great Conqueror. He is there to fight our battles for us and to help us slay all the giants in our paths. When Jesus died on Calvary, He opened up for us the fountain of His life's blood.

*<sup>11</sup> And they have overcome (conquered) him by means of the blood of the Lamb and by the utterance of their testimony, for they did not love and cling to life even when faced with death [holding their lives cheap till they had to die for their witnessing].*

*Revelation 12:11*

With that blood, we overcome the powers of darkness – the devil and the entire spiritual underworld. The blood is God's trophy that celebrates Christ's victory over death, hell and the grave. Jesus said:

---

<sup>1290</sup> Brown, R (1987) Prepare for War. New Kensington: Whitaker House, pp. 309-310

*I am He who lives, and was dead, and behold, I am alive forevermore. Amen. And I have the keys of Hades and of Death*

*Revelation 1:18*

His blood may not be visible to you and me, but you can be sure that demons and all other unclean spirits can see it. They are terrified by the blood. They run from it. They cannot remain in the presence of the blood of Jesus Christ. Satan had no idea that the death of Christ would bring about his defeat, although prophets had predicted it for centuries. Paul called this truth 'a mystery' or 'hidden wisdom'. But we speak the wisdom of God in a mystery, the hidden wisdom which God ordained before the ages for our glory, which none of the rulers of this age knew, for had they known, they would not have crucified the Lord of Glory (1 Corinthians 2:7-8). Satan and his demons failed utterly at Calvary; they lost their claim on our souls. The blood of Jesus is an eternal reminder to them.<sup>1291</sup>

#### **6.7.4 Sin**

Simple, relentless obedience and inviting the Lord into our dark places overcomes sin. Sin gives the enemy an opening, so our front line of defence and offense is simple obedience. Another powerful weapon in our arsenal is honesty. If the client is caught in sin, he needs to be honest with God about it. Tell Him the truth. He honours light and truth.

*<sup>18</sup> He who believes in Him [who clings to, trusts in, relies on Him] is not judged [he who trusts in Him never comes up for judgment; for him there is no rejection, no condemnation—he incurs no damnation]; but he who does not believe (cleave to, rely on, trust in Him) is judged already [he has already been convicted and has already received his sentence] because he has not believed in and trusted in the name of the only begotten Son of God. [He is condemned for refusing to let his trust rest in Christ's name.] <sup>19</sup> The [basis of the] judgment (indictment, the test by which men are judged, the ground for the sentence) lies in this: the Light has come into the world, and people have loved the darkness rather than and more than the Light, for their works (deeds) were evil. <sup>20</sup> For every wrongdoer hates (loathes, detests) the Light, and will not come out into the Light but shrinks from it, lest his works (his deeds, his activities, his conduct) be exposed and reproved.*

*John 3:18-20*

---

<sup>1291</sup> Baxter, M K (2005) *The Power of the Blood*. New Kensington: Whitaker House, pp. 198-199



So it is wise to bring all thoughts, feelings and actions into the light. The enemy relishes darkness and that is where he works, so even though you feel ashamed, bring it to the Lord.<sup>1292</sup>

To truly submit to God (James 4:7), all sin must be faced. If the believer is truly ready to come into victory in his life, he will be ready to humble himself before God and in the presence of the counsellor. He will honestly deal with the sin areas and sin handles in his life. While this does not imply crippling subjectivism on the believer's part nor morbid probing on the part of the counsellor, if sin is hidden, victory will not come (Psalm 32:1-7; 51:1-17; 66:16-20; 139:1-24). To truly submit to God implies surrender to the Lordship of Christ. It is a total commitment of the whole person and each individual area of the life to the Lordship of God. Without doubt, this surrender to God is the principle key to victory in spiritual warfare. Ultimately, Christ's Lordship is the central focus of God's redemptive plan.<sup>1293 1294</sup>

Scripture indicates that when we confess sins, we are not on our own supposed to wade through any list of sins, whether our own personal sins or corporate and generational sins. Philippians 3:12-15, in which Paul says that God will reveal to the Philippians any incorrect thinking or attitudes in their lives, suggests it is God who enables the process of sanctification in our lives. Secondly, confessing the sins of one's parents and grandparents under the guidance of God's Spirit is not an additional burden. Such prayer often is an additional way from God to unburden oneself or one's church or ministry from personal and corporate guilt, oppression and stubbornly entrenched sin patterns.<sup>1295</sup>

#### **6.7.4.1 True Repentance**

The only means being cleansed from sin is through repentance and faith in the precious Blood of Jesus Christ. No sin can be fought by sin. When we repent and pray, we smash the enemy's hold over people, pave the way for revival and help establish the Kingdom of God. Repentance is a major weapon against Satan. If a person repents, he breaks the powers of darkness.<sup>1296</sup>

---

<sup>1292</sup> Bowman S, Deliverance [Online] Available from: <http://www.thepoolministries.org/deliverance.htm> [Accessed: 9 October 2014]

<sup>1293</sup> See Ephesians 1:9-10,20-23; 2:4-7; 3:4,9-11; Philippians 2:9-11; 3:20-21; Colossians 1:16-19,25-27; 2:2-3,9-10; 3:1; 1 Corinthians 15:24-25; Hebrew 1:8,10,12; 12:2; 1 Peter 3:22

<sup>1294</sup> Murphy, E F (2003) *The Handbook for Spiritual Warfare*, Revised and Updated. Thomas Nelson Publishers, pp. 514-515

<sup>1295</sup> Buys, A, *Breaking Generational Curses over Cities and their People*. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished, p. 32

<sup>1296</sup> Brand, C M J (2007) *Spiritual Warfare Four*. Pretoria: CMJ Brand, p. 7

Repentance must be heartfelt. Just speaking the words is not enough for repentance as Father God looks towards the heart of man.

In the Old Testament *to repent* meant to be penitent, to be eased, to comfort self, to turn back. This means to change your heart, disposition, mind, purpose or conduct. If we do not repent, then we are in rebellion against God. When God repented, He changed his mind. He would alter a course of action planned for his people when they repented and changed their course of action. He never changed his mind from punishing sin.

*<sup>29</sup> And also the Strength of Israel will not lie or repent; for He is not a man, that He should repent.*

*1 Samuel 15:29*

In the New Testament *to repent* means to be careful or concerned with, to have another mind, a change of mind, or not to be careful or concerned with. We are not to repent or change our purpose about gifts, calling and salvation. We perceive our sin, and change our mind and purpose for the better in Christ. We regret our sins and repent to God.<sup>1297</sup>

*Identificational repentance* is a means of receiving God's grace toward the one who is praying to be freed from any consequences of the sin by others, whether past or present, to which the person praying is linked in some way. *Identificational repentance* is also a means of releasing God's grace on a corporate level to others which may move them to repent more freely of their personal sins and turn to Christ. Scripture shows us examples of this in the accounts of Jesus' prayer for his persecutors on the cross, and the prayers of Ezra, Nehemiah and Moses for God's people and for pagans.

1 Peter 2:9 says that we are a "royal priesthood", and there is a priestly aspect to biblical examples of identificational repentance prayer. Even in cases where we have not personally committed the corporate sins we are confessing before God, *we can all identify with the roots of any given sin*. We may not have had an abortion, but we can identify with the lust, the love of comfort, the love of money, the rejection, and the unbelief which are the sinful root attitudes leading to abortion.

Daniel's example of identificational repentance in Daniel 9 and 10 shows that identificational repentance breaks through the spiritual opposition of satanic principalities and powers.

---

<sup>1297</sup> Moody, G B, *The Deliverance Manual*. Deliverance Ministries. Unpublished, pp. 105-106

Repentance from sin smashes the work of the devil, because the devil and his forces work through sin in the world and in our lives (1 John 3:7-9; Ephesians 4:26-27). Daniel's identificational repentance led to spiritual breakthrough (Daniel 9:20-22) when the angel Gabriel appeared to him. Daniel 9:3 mentions that Daniel was praying and fasting when he confessed his people's sins on that occasion.

Daniel 10:2-3 and 10:12 show that Daniel was praying and fasting on a second occasion. The result of Daniel's prayer, fasting, and identificational repentance was that the angel sent to him on the second occasion broke through the opposition of the demonic principalities of Persia and Greece (Daniel 10:13, 20). Because there was spiritual breakthrough, God's desire was fulfilled to reveal to Daniel by the angel of God what God's redemptive plan was for Israel in world history – that the anointed Messiah of Israel would establish God's Kingdom over Israel and all nations.

In John 20:23 Jesus gives the disciples the authority to forgive the sins of others – to apply God's forgiveness to others. And Paul seems to expect the Corinthians to exercise such forgiveness toward a repentant member of the church in 2 Corinthians 2:7-10. Again, this seems to suggest a priestly function which reflects the fact that we are *royal priesthood* (1 Peter 2:9) who can receive and apply and proclaim God's forgiveness to others we pray for and pray with.<sup>1298</sup>

In summary, the beginning point of repentance is a cognitive decision where a person acknowledges the justice of God, that what was done by the person or his predecessors was wrong; it is validating the legality of the system that God put in place; acknowledging that there was enough understanding, revelation, wisdom and maturity on the part of the person that he knew better and that he positively should have done what he did. There is an emotional involvement in repentance that is essential and that is that the person should have a grief that touches his heart; grief for what was done, for what was failed to have done, for lost opportunities; grief around the lost knowledge of God and the intimacy with God for not doing the right thing.<sup>1299</sup>

---

<sup>1298</sup> Buys, A, Breaking Generational Curses over Cities and their People. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished, pp. 33-49

<sup>1299</sup> Burk, A, Three Levels of Repentance [Online] Available from: [http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=eP3KFRz\\_0K8](http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=eP3KFRz_0K8) [Accessed: 13 October 2014]

#### **6.7.4.2 Dealing with Sin**

The clearest instruction about dealing with our sin is found in James 4:4-10. This passage applies to dealing with any form of oppression, not merely the kind that lingers from the sins of the pre-conversion life. If no evil spirits are involved, there will be no manifestation, only a quiet process of confession and cleansing.

The following steps give a guideline to the client in dealing with personal sin:

1. *Be willing to separate your life from the world, and to be a friend only to God.* Our Lord jealously desires each of us to abide in a love relationship with him. Attachment to idols – money, ambition, pride – may leave one an enemy of God and a target of the arch-enemy. Our Father longs for the loyalty of our love.
2. *Submit to God in brokenness and humility.* Make an earnest effort to forsake all pride and to come near to him. He waits to be wanted. Grace is freely given to the one whose spirit is broken and contrite.
3. *Wash your hands of any known sin.* Repent and receive the washing of forgiveness that puts the devil to flight. A clear conscience is a key to victory in warfare. All rationalisations and justifications have to be nailed to the cross. Verbally confess anything that separates you from fellowship with the Father.
4. *Purify your heart from any double-minded wavering.* The Lord is a jealous Master. He wants to know He is first love. He commands our commitment. Fence-sitters are fair and foolish game for the devil. Doubt, mistrust, and duplicity must be forsaken.
5. *Realise how serious your struggle with the world, the flesh, and the devil really is.* Flippant, half-hearted attitudes are inappropriate when seeking the presence of the Lord.
6. *Resist the devil.* There is no substitute for taking personal responsibility to act in the authority of Christ's name, commanding the devil to flee. If the prior conditions are met, all enemies of Christ must and will go. Resist by verbal confrontation based on the truth of God's Word (Matthew 4:1-11; Luke 4:1-13); a daily, on-going resistance, both offensive and defensive (Matthew 16:18).

If the client is under sin-based oppression, seek and submit to God, repent of sin and double-mindedness, and grieve over his condition. When he makes the additional choice of

resisting the devil, God will fulfil two promises: He will draw near to his struggling child, and He will drive the devil off.<sup>1300</sup>

When dealing with generational sin the following steps can give a guideline to the client:

1. *Recognise sources, or entry points, of possible oppression.* If you suspect a stronghold, search out names and relatives and the type of sin or bondage that may have opened a door to demonic infiltration.
2. *Pray according to the illustration of Leviticus 26:40,42.* Confess your own sins, and those of your fathers, especially sins related to rebellion against God and hatred of others. When the Israelites did this in a spirit of humility, God said He would remember his covenant with Jacob and remember the land. In short, there will be a restoration of divine favour.
3. *Deliberately forgive those in your ancestry who sinned.* Don't fall into the trap of carrying bitterness against anyone. Give up the grudges and bring resolution to strained relationships.
4. *Partake of the Lord's Supper.* There is power released in the observance of communion. Encouraging the church at Corinth to separate itself from pagan idolatry, Paul states in 1 Corinthians 10:16-21 that *you cannot partake of the table of the Lord and the table of demons*. This should be a time of reaffirmation of your commitment to the Lord and a formal removal of ground claimed by Satan.
5. *Pray with authority in Jesus' name* to separate your life (and your children's lives) from the sins of former generations. This is like building a dam, cutting off the flow of evil influence. Here is an example of how you might pray:

*Heavenly Father, I confess the wickedness of my earthly father, his sexual sin and violent anger. I forsake and separate myself and my children from those sins. God, be gracious to me. In Jesus' authority, I now apply the power of His blood to break all curses and consequences of evil that may have entered my family.*

After this prayer, it is wise to utter a verbal command to rid your life of any familial spirits. Tell the enemy he has no legal claim to continue working in your family.

---

<sup>1300</sup> Brand, C M J, Spiritual Warfare – Document 2. Pretoria: RÂDÂH Academy. Unpublished Page 5-7

## 6.7.5 Discerning the Spirits through the Holy Spirit Guidance

### 6.7.5.1 Demons

John L. Nevius, after surveying demon possession in China, documents the amazing knowledge revealed by the demon-possessed. Many persons while demon-possessed give evidence of knowledge which cannot be accounted for in ordinary ways. They often appear to know of the Lord Jesus as a divine person and show an aversion to, and a fear of Him. They sometimes converse in foreign languages of which, in normal states, they are entirely ignorant.<sup>1301</sup>

C. Gordon Beacham, missionary of the Sudan Interior Mission, writes of demonism in the Central Sudan, Africa<sup>1302</sup>:

*The demons which the people worship are of various orders, each with its own name . . . While the air is supposed to be full of these terrifying spirits, the water is thought to be their special place of abode, reminding one of the Scriptural account of that unclean spirit which 'walketh through dry places, seeking rest, and findeth none: Many other similarities are to be found between the records concerning demons in the New Testament and those in the life of these backward peoples. I have frequently seen natives who are covered from head to foot with scars of burning, some unseen power having taken possession of them and cast them into the fire. Such occult possession is not to be confused with mere dementia. The native recognizes the difference between insanity and demon possession, and calls each by its appropriate name. Actual conversation is held by normal people with the demons temporarily possessing another individual, and the words which come from the lips of the possessed one are, beyond doubt, the words of some other being.*

---

<sup>1301</sup> Nevius, J L (1984) Demon Possession and Allied Themes. New Jersey: Old Tappan, p. 161

<sup>1302</sup> Beacham, C G (1928) New Frontiers in Central Sudan. Toronto: Evangelical Publishers

Dr Merrill Unger comments on severe demonisation<sup>1303</sup>:

*The fact that confronts us in all demonization is that demons are in control [partial control] of the demonized person. This is true of course of all degrees of demonization, including mild, moderate and severe invasion. But in the severest cases the control is much deeper and more domineering and enslaving. The number of demons may be more, their wickedness greater, their strength more terrible, and their entrenchment in the life more binding. All of this is dramatically illustrated by the demonized man of Gadara (Mark 5:1-20; Luke 8:26-32).*

Derek Prince classifies the following demon activities<sup>1304</sup>: (1) entice a person, play upon lust; (2) enslave a person (e.g. sex and smoking); (3) torment a person, due to, for example unforgiveness, spiritual torment (e.g. spirit of fear, condemnation, doubt); physical torment (e.g. cancer and arthritis); (4) drive or compel a person – anything that is compulsive (persistent) point to demon activity; (5) defile a person (e.g. mind and conscious); and (6) harass a person (e.g. disturbed).

Demons mostly work in groups, for example:

- depressions, fear, loneliness, self-pity, despair, suicide;
- anger, violence, murder; and
- resentment, hatred, rebellion.

Demons work on the following areas, each with its own characteristics in a person:

- *emotions, attitudes and relationships* (e.g. depressions, fear, loneliness, self-pity, despair, resentment, hatred, envy, jealousy, pride);
- *mind* (doubt, unbelief, indecisiveness, procrastination, compromise, forgetfulness);
- *tongue* (blasphemy, lying, unclean talk, gossip);
- *sex* (every form of sex perversion is demonic, like homosexuality and masturbation);
- *addictions* (food gluttony, alcohol, nicotine); and
- *health*.

---

<sup>1303</sup> Unger, M F (1977) What Demons can do to Saints. Chicago: Moody, p. 129

<sup>1304</sup> Prince, D, How to Recognize and Expel Demons <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=waA6LEI5o0M> [Accessed: 13 October 2014]

The following may be symptoms of indwelling demons<sup>1305</sup>:

- sudden dilation of the pupils or sudden form changes of the eyes;
- unnatural change of features or body language;
- abnormal changes of voice;
- sudden changes to vocabulary such as becoming abnormally profane or abusive;
- impromptu urge to abuse of alcohol or do drugs when you normally don't do this;
- aberrant craving for raw meat or blood;
- strong desire to hurt yourself;
- sudden urges to hurt people and animals for no reason;
- abnormal changes in a personal hygiene (a normally clean person suddenly becomes filthy and putrid);
- Changes in normal routings (e.g. suddenly sleeping all day or complete lack of appetite for extended period, or sudden onset of gluttony);
- severe constipation; and
- aversion or hatred when speaking about God or other Biblical subject matter.

Note: It is important to realise that the behaviour caused by defective brain functions often mimics similar behavioural patterns produced by demonisation; thus the need for correct diagnosis. We cannot cast out non-existent demons.<sup>1306</sup>

#### **6.7.5.2 Personalities/Alters**

In an attempt to keep secret their crime, abusers with occult knowledge sometimes deliberately transfer a demon to their victims to keep alters too terrorised to reveal themselves and the abuse they suffered. Even when this occurs, it might not apply to all the alters a person might have. For example, once a person learns how to split, further splits could occur in response to new traumas after the original abuser has left. Of course, if any alters are suppressed by demons, those alters are free to reveal themselves once the demons are ejected.

Even though the above was not the specific reason, people might only discover they have alters after being delivered from demons. Not only are alters not demons, confusing them

---

<sup>1305</sup> Spectra Intelligence Solutions, Demon Possession Facts [Online] Available from: [http://spectralintelligencesolutions.com/demon\\_possession\\_facts.html](http://spectralintelligencesolutions.com/demon_possession_facts.html) [Accessed: 11 November 2014]

<sup>1306</sup> Murphy, E F (2003) *The Handbook for Spiritual Warfare*, Revised and Updated. Thomas Nelson Publishers, p. 492



with demons could prove disastrous. There are many things that make alters disturbingly easy to be mistaken for demons: (1) some can seem evil; (2) they can give themselves bizarre names; (3) they themselves can be confused about their identity; and (4) they can create inner voices within a person.

Although in seeking comfort certain alters might assume a false identity, their suffering and memories are real. It is understandable why some alters mistakenly consider themselves demons, although there are exceptions. A common reason is the low self-esteem of alters coupled with the fact that abusers often do their utmost to brainwash their victims into thinking that these innocents are evil or 'of the devil'. Alters usually appear as human, whereas demons only sometimes pretend to be human. Demons are external beings that might enter a person and mess with one's mind but they are not part of the person.

Alters cannot be cast out of people. How alters are treated is critical, because every alter has deep feelings and sensitivities and is as much a person as the host is. You cannot drive alters *out*, but you can drive alters *into hiding* – forcing them deeper into a person, reeling in the pain of being grossly misunderstood, and unwilling to risk further contact with people – even with people who have great potential to help.

Usually within just a few days of contact with a loving, accepting person, an alter will begin to heal and feel more peace and so become increasingly delightful to converse with.<sup>1307</sup>

Following some more differences between Alter Personalities and Demons<sup>1308</sup>:

Alter Personality	Demon
1. Most alters, even "persecutor" alters, can become strong allies. There is a definite sense of relationship with them, even if it starts out negative.	1. Demons are arrogant, and there is no sense of relationship with them.
2. Alters initially seem ego-dystonic but that change to be ego-syntonic over time.	2. Demons remain ego-alien -- "outside of me".

---

<sup>1307</sup> Net Burst, Powerful Answers & Surprising Help For People Traumatized as Children [Online] Available from: [http://www.net-burst.net/sex\\_abuse/alters.htm#demons](http://www.net-burst.net/sex_abuse/alters.htm#demons) [Accessed: 11 November 2014]

<sup>1308</sup> James G F, Discerning Alter Personalities from Demons [Online] Available from: <http://www.healthypace.com/abuse/wermany/discerning-alter-personalities-from-demons/> [Accessed: 11 November 2014]

3. Confusion and fear subside with appropriate counselling when only alters are present.	3. Confusion, fear and lust persist despite counselling when demons are present.
4. Alters tend to conform to surroundings.	4. Demons force unwanted behaviour, and then blame a personality.
5. Alters have personalities with accompanying voices.	5. Demons have a negative voice which has no corresponding personality.
6. Irritation, discontent and rivalry abound among alters.	6. Hatred and bitterness are the most common feelings among demons.
7. Images of alters are human in form, and remain consistent during imagery.	7. The imagery of demons changes between human and non-human forms, with many variations.

The key in dealing with alters is to get each alter or part to merge with the core or main part of the personality.

### 6.7.6 Principalities and Powers linked to Insanity and Psychosis

Who is the leader of the principalities, powers and spiritual wickedness (demons) in high places? Paul tells us in 2 Corinthians 4:3-4. It is Satan, Lucifer, the god of this world.

Principalities and powers are evil spirits who function in the heavenlies and are in direct conflict with angels. Principalities and powers are the angels who were deposed along with Lucifer. They are categorically not demons. Principalities and powers exercise their dominion in the heavenlies. Nowhere in Scripture is a principality or power cast out as with the demons. They are *displaced by prayers through the presence of the Lord Jesus* as we saw in Daniel 10. An eviction of the darkness must take place by the replacement with the Light (Jesus); thus the person needs to be taken out of the captivity.<sup>1309</sup>

This is in agreement with what Jesus said in Mark 16:18, “to take up serpents”. *To take up* means *to lift up* as is depicted in the constellation Ophiuchus. It means to *take control and authority over something* by lifting it up. This is perfectly described in the commission of

---

<sup>1309</sup> Personal Interview with Professor Dr Connie Brand, 4 November 2014

binding and loosing (Matthew 16:19). This is the authoritative power given to the church to enforce the rules and laws of the kingdom of heaven on the earth. We bind principalities away from their influence on earth by loosing angels through asking the Lord in prayer to war against them in the heavenlies just as in the days of Daniel, when Michael came to fight against the prince of Persia. Principalities and powers are bound from having influence upon the earth through the vocal orders given through prayers or commands as the Holy Spirit directs individuals.<sup>1310</sup>

### 6.7.6.1 Principalities

Satan heads up the whole hierarchy. Under him are the principalities that could be considered as generals in the demonic army. The Greek Word for "principalities", *arche*, (#746) means *chief or ruler*. Some scholars say this refers to the Fallen Angels that were cast out with Lucifer (Revelation 12:4,9). They give orders to the powers.

Following are examples of principalities<sup>1311</sup>:

- *Beelzebul*. (Matthew 12:24; Mark 3:22). He is the great general. Three possible spellings of this word each have a different meaning: (1) Beelzebul means "lord of the dung", a name of reproach. (2) Beelzebub means "lord of the flies". Either one of these is names of reproach and of uncleanness applied to Satan, the prince of the demons and uncleanness. (3) Beelzeboul means, "lord of the dwelling". This would identify Satan as the god of demon-possession. This spelling has the best manuscript evidence behind it.<sup>1312</sup> He heads up all that is flying, all the witches and wizards, and all blood collections from sacrifices to Satan. He is a personal body guard of Satan. He also controls gluttony. Strongman over demonic tongues. We must always cut off his instructions to the demonic world.
- *Abaddon/Appollyon*. (Revelation 9:11). Working from the East. *Abaddon* is the Greek form and *Apollyon* is the Hebrew equivalent. These words mean *destroyer* and *destruction*. This title stresses his work of destruction; he works to destroy the glory of God and God's purpose with man. He further works to destroy societies and mankind.

---

<sup>1310</sup> Liberating Ministries for Christ International, Principalities, Powers and Demons [Online] Available from: <http://www.lmci.org/articles.cfm?Article=76> [Accessed: 1 April 2014]

<sup>1311</sup> Brand, C M J (1998) Geestelike Oorlogvoering. Satan se Struktuur en Strategie. Pretoria: RÂDÂH. Unpublished.

<sup>1312</sup> Schmoyer, J, Spiritual Warfare Handbook. Doylestown: Main St. Baptist Church. Unpublished, p. 8

- *Leviathan*. (Job 41; Psalm 74:14; Isaiah 27:1). Working from the West. Leviathan is the name of a demonic entity that is talked about throughout the Scriptures. His main demonic influence is with *spiritual pride and stopping deliverance*. He is described as a wreathed animal or serpent created to frolic in the sea. Burk considers that Leviathan works on seven principals what each will activate a righteous or a negative head depending on following or breaking the principal.<sup>1313</sup>
- *The Beast*. (Revelation 13). Working from the South. Also called the *Hell dog*. He is extremely evil, with his primary workings in deceiving people and causing bloodshed, false worshipping and destruction.
- *Belial*. (2 Corinthians 6:15) Working from the North. He controls the occultic world including the magical arts. He heads up metaphysics and is responsible for the establishment of all secret societies. His main focus is bringing about worthlessness on all levels.

#### 6.7.6.2 Powers

The powers could be considered the lesser officers. The word *power* is the Greek noun (#1849) *exousia* and means *one who possesses authority or influence*. The powers have demons under their control that are just like them. They are territorial demonic entities and have access to both the earth and part of the heaven.

Examples of powers are Ashtaroth (Queen of Heaven), Baal (Son god), Magog (head of anger, hate and fear), Baphomet (head of Satanism) and Asmodee (head of sexual immorality).<sup>1314</sup>

#### 6.7.7 Demonic Entities linked to Insanity and Psychosis

The last group in the hierarchy is 'spiritual wickedness' (or could be translated *wicked spirits*) in high places. The *high places* is translated from the Greek (#2032) *epouranios* and refers to the dwelling place of God as well as the abode of angels and evil spirits. These are the

---

<sup>1313</sup> Burk, A, Unstoppable Joy: Leviathan, CD 1 through 10

<sup>1314</sup> Brand, C M J (1998) Geestelike Oorlogvoering. Satan se Struktuur en Strategie. Pretoria: RÂDÂH. Unpublished

spirits that possess a human or animal. These demons/evil spirits are the lesser minions, the grunts if you will, that can inflict pain, cause disease and mental problems. You can identify any demon and its name just by the iniquity that is present in the area or the client's life.

When they are outside of a body, they roam about in dry places (walking over the face of the earth as terrestrial spirits), seeking resting places within human bodies. They will have no rest until the Day of Judgment when they will join the devil and the fallen angels in the lake of fire (Matthew 25:41). Demons are cast out of people by a command.<sup>1315</sup>

Note: When dealing with demons it is of critical importance to isolate the demon from the surrounding environment, as well as from any other demons, in order to deal with a specific demon or power and the lesser demons associated with it.

#### **6.7.7.1 Mystery Demons**

In his book *Demons, An Eyewitness Account*, Howard Pitman<sup>1316</sup> describes a new class of demons showed to him by the Lord when caught up to Heaven, called Mystery Demons<sup>1317</sup>. These demons have great power over flesh, even much more power than the other demons. Part of their great strength rests in their anonymity. They operate differently from the other demons. When a human is demon possessed, there are certain classic symptoms which indicate demon possession. This is not true with the mystery demon. It is a mandated fact that demons must indicate their presence when they totally possess a human.

All demon-possessed people display certain symptoms which indicate demon activity in that person. However, when the personality of the mystery demon is displayed, it is not always obvious. When the mystery demon exhibits his personality in a human he has possessed, it is usually revealed as a hidden personality in that possessed human. These same demons may manifest themselves as physical deformities, sicknesses, or in many other ways which are not so obvious. When dealing with these demons, then, a different approach is needed. (Matthew 17:21)

---

<sup>1315</sup> Liberating Ministries for Christ International, Principalities, Powers and Demons [Online] Available from: <http://www.lmci.org/articles.cfm?Article=76> [Accessed: 1 April 2014]

<sup>1316</sup> Howard O. Pittman was a Baptist minister for 35 years after being a law enforcement officer for 26 years. Through a near death experience he was shown many startling things in the second heaven from which originated multiple books.

<sup>1317</sup> Pittman, H O (1995) *Demons, An Eyewitness Account*. USA: Philadelphian Publishing House, p-. 47-51

In all cases where demons work in humans, the sovereign will of that human must be taken into consideration. When a human has a choice, he is exercising his sovereign will. Man is made in the image of God. His sovereign will is part of that image. When man is not able to make a choice, then he is not responsible for what he does unless he gives up that choice wilfully (for example, wilfully taking himself into a state of altered consciousness by use of drugs, TM, hypnosis, or some other such way). When demons work through an individual who had no choice, then that individual has no blame. This is the case in demon possession of children who are under the level of accountability. Demons can and do work through children. Demon activity below the level of accountability is limited to no more than ten percent of their total work and is closely regulated.

All demon activity in those below the level of accountability is done so on permission basis. Even then, before that permission will be granted, certain circumstances must be present. This is divine permission and is obtained by one of only two ways: (1) one way of securing divine permission is that Satan must seek it (Job 1:12); and (2) the second method is that God must decree it for divine punishment (Psalms 78:49). It appears that in the case where demon activity in children is permitted, the circumstances in the child's life that are necessary for this permission to be granted are produced by the parents.

The mystery demons are the only group of demons allowed to work in that individual who is below the level of accountability. This is the only group of demons who have such a wide range of capabilities or areas of expertise. These demons are also the hardest with which to deal and must be dealt with in a special way (Matthew 17:21). The mystery demon is able to mimic epilepsy in humans and much more. One thing that is really prominent about the mystery demon is the fact that his great strength seems to depend on his remaining anonymous in the life of the human. The mystery demon is free to work in all humans, just like the rest of the demons.

The mystery demon is well-respected by the other demons. He is also involved with insanity in humans; he interferes with the control line between the spirit of man and the physical organ called the brain. The spirit of man, which is also called the mind, controls the physical brain which, in turn, rules the physical body through some sort of invisible line of communication. The line of communication of the brain to the body is through the nervous system. The communication line between the mind (soul), spirit and the brain is invisible and not known. When that invisible communication line is distorted or disrupted in some manner, it produces an unstable reaction in the physical body called insanity.

It is Pittman's personal opinion that most people certified as insane are therefore actually demon-possessed<sup>1318</sup>:

*In light of these revelations I experienced, I am convinced that our mental institutions are filled with people who are demon possessed, and I believe that many of these same people would be normal if they were only delivered.*

### 6.7.7.2 Deaf and Dumb Spirit

Deaf and dumb spirits are able to change how the mind responds. This spirit inhibits our ability to communicate with God. There are various doorways in which this spirit can gain entry to a person: (1) as seen before trauma can play a big part;<sup>1319</sup> (2) ungodly order in the home (perverting God's plan for the home) which is rooted in bitterness even for generations, a deep penetrating resentment fuels the ungodly order<sup>1320</sup>; (3) the occult: a lot of people struggle because they are under a false covering of the spirit of occultism, through a witchcraft or controlling spirit and they don't know; Satan has blinded their minds or covers their eyes from the truth, with the 'deaf and dumb spirit'; and (4) there is an association of deaf and dumb spirits with spirits of infirmity.

There is a link to homosexuals or anyone sexually broken of having deaf and dumb spirits due to a huge percentage of such people being sexually abused, with the trauma then opening the door. In addition to this severe rejection brings anger and rebellion, defensive pride, self-preservation, and the lifting up of self in defence of all the evil done.<sup>1321</sup>

The Lord gave us an example of the workings of this spirit (manifestations and deliverance) from the eye witness accounts of Mark and Matthew:

---

<sup>1318</sup> Ibid., p. 51

<sup>1319</sup> Paradox Parables, Overcoming the Deaf and Dumb Spirit [Online] Available from: <http://paradoxparables.justparadox.com/2010/04/23/overcoming-a-deaf-dumb-spirit-conquering-the-spirit-of-rejection/> [Accessed: 11 November 2014]

<sup>1320</sup> Wright, H, Be in Health [Online] Available from: <http://www.beinhealth.com/public/> Henry W. Wright [Accessed: 30 September 2014]

<sup>1321</sup> Van Sutphin, P, Overcoming Deaf and Dumb Spirits [Online] Available from: <http://www.hiskingdomprophecy.com/overcoming-deaf-dumb-spirits/> [Accessed: 30 September 2014]

<sup>14</sup> And when they were come to the multitude, there came to him a certain man, kneeling down to him, and saying,<sup>15</sup> Lord, have mercy on my son: for he is lunatick, and sore vexed: for oftentimes he falleth into the fire, and oft into the water. <sup>16</sup> And I brought him to thy disciples, and they could not cure him. <sup>17</sup> Then Jesus answered and said, O faithless and perverse generation, how long shall I be with you? how long shall I suffer you? bring him hither to me. <sup>18</sup> And Jesus rebuked the devil; and he departed out of him: and the child was cured from that very hour. <sup>19</sup> Then came the disciples to Jesus apart, and said, Why could not we cast him out? <sup>20</sup> And Jesus said unto them, Because of your unbelief: for verily I say unto you, If ye have faith as a grain of mustard seed, ye shall say unto this mountain, Remove hence to yonder place; and it shall remove; and nothing shall be impossible unto you. <sup>21</sup> Howbeit this kind goeth not out but by prayer and fasting.

Matthew 17:14-21

<sup>17</sup> And one of the multitude answered and said, Master, I have brought unto thee my son, which hath a dumb spirit; <sup>18</sup> And wheresoever he taketh him, he teareth him: and he foameth, and gnasheth with his teeth, and pineth away: and I spake to thy disciples that they should cast him out; and they could not. <sup>19</sup> He answereth him, and saith, O faithless generation, how long shall I be with you? how long shall I suffer you? bring him unto me. <sup>20</sup> And they brought him unto him: and when he saw him, straightway the spirit tare him; and he fell on the ground, and wallowed foaming. <sup>21</sup> And he asked his father, How long is it ago since this came unto him? And he said, Of a child. <sup>22</sup> And oftentimes it hath cast him into the fire, and into the waters, to destroy him: but if thou canst do anything, have compassion on us, and help us. <sup>23</sup> Jesus said unto him, If thou canst believe, all things are possible to him that believeth. <sup>24</sup> And straightway the father of the child cried out, and said with tears, Lord, I believe; help thou mine unbelief. <sup>25</sup> When Jesus saw that the people came running together, he rebuked the foul spirit, saying unto him, Thou dumb and deaf spirit, I charge thee, come out of him, and enter no more into him. <sup>26</sup> And the spirit cried, and rent him sore, and came out of him: and he was as one dead; insomuch that many said, He is dead. <sup>27</sup> But Jesus took him by the hand, and lifted him up; and he arose. <sup>28</sup> And when he was come into the house, his disciples asked him privately, Why could not we cast him out? <sup>29</sup> And he said unto them, This kind can come forth by nothing, but by prayer and fasting.

Mark 9:17-28



From this it is clear that the deaf and dumb spirit can be the cause of insanity (lunacy) with terrible manifestations of uncontrolled behaviour such as foaming at the mouth. This spirit will only go away through prayer and fasting.

### 6.7.7.3 Familial Spirits

A familial spirit is a spirit that exists within the family bloodline, a generational spirit that has a familiarity with a person due to being connected to the specific family line, a spirit well-known with the family history through a long and close association with the family. He guards the secrets of a family line. All families have familial spirits. They never die off with a person but stay in a family line. These spirits can be linked to the surname or family names. They can be the cause of mental illness or even insanity if the legal right exists. They carry legal rights from generation to generation causing defilement accordingly.

### 6.7.7.4 Familiar Spirits

*<sup>10</sup> There shall not be found among you any one that maketh his son or his daughter to pass through the fire, or that useth divination, or an observer of times, or an enchanter, or a witch. <sup>11</sup> Or a charmer, or a consulter with familiar spirits, or a wizard, or a necromancer. <sup>12</sup> For all that do these things are an abomination unto the LORD: and because of these abominations the LORD thy God doth drive them out from before thee.*

*Deuteronomy 8:10-12*

Those who divine by a familiar spirit are called: (1) enchanter (magician); (2) witch or wizard (one who practices witchcraft and sorcery, using Familiar Spirits to do their bidding); (3) medium (consulter with familiar spirits); (4) clairvoyant (witch or wizard); (5) necromancer (one who consults the dead, wicked, unjust spirits); and (6) conjurer (one who commands or summons Familiar Spirits to appear).

A familiar spirit can be assigned to a family line. In this case the spirit will know all the personality traits. He will furnish the medium, for example, with the secrets that only the family members know. Familiar Spirits can pass from generation to generation every evil trait, genetic disease, evil inheritance of every unrepented sin.

The familiar spirits can cause paranoid or a split personality. Because they are an innumerable class of evil spirits, each having a personality of his own, they seek to gain possession of living bodies and souls that they may express their own habits, personality traits, appetites and lustful desires. Insanity can occur when the familiar spirit completely overthrows, subdues, conquers, suppresses, and locks up the human spirit in a cell inside the body and totally takes it over, thereby total possession taking place, fully controlling the body and mind.<sup>1322</sup>

Familiar spirits can have the following assignments:

- carry curses of illness,
- cause behaviour problems,
- keep people from repenting,
- cause unholy personal tendencies,
- carry illness and sickness from generation to generation,
- cause evil habits, and
- turn family members from the paths of righteousness into everlasting punishment.

#### **6.7.7.5 Cthulhu**

Cthulhu has various spelling including *Tulu*, *Clulu*, *Clooloo*, *Cthulu*, *Cthullu*, *C'thulhu*, *Cighulu*, *Cathulu*, *C'thlu*, *Kathulu*, *Kutulu*, *Kthulhu*, *Q'thulu*, *K'tulu*, *Kthulhut*, *Kutu*, *Kulhu*, *Kutunluu*, *Ktulu*, *Cuitiliú*, *Thu Thu*. It is often preceded by the epithet *Great*, *Dead*, or *Dread*.

Cthulhu is sometimes called “the highest priest of the Great Old Ones”. His other titles include “The Lord of R'lyeh”, “The Master of the Watery Abyss” or “The One who is to Come”. R'lyeh is the sunken city in which Cthulhu reputedly lies “dead but dreaming”. He is also the principal identified with Babylon Apsu, the personification of sweet waters. His female counterpart is Tiamat, the dragon goddess who embodies the salty waters. In Sumerian Kutulu is the “Lord of the Abyss”.

Cthulhu is presented as a deity who rests dormant in the ocean and awaits the time when he will rise again and rule over the earth. The waters of Cthulhu are not the same as the earthly element. These are the cosmic waters, higher ones which exist outside the structure of

---

<sup>1322</sup> Garrison M (1980) How to Conduct Spiritual Warfare. Florida: Mary Garrison, pp. 64-70

creation. Cthulhu is believed to be the voice of the subconscious, the dark instinct hidden in the depth of the psyche, manifesting to chosen priests.

Cthulhu is a dream master, the lord of the dreams, dormant at the back base of the skull. Through dreams he acts as intermediary between the Great Old Ones and humans. He sends waves of telepathic messages that reach the minds of individuals sensitive enough to receive these impulses, which may then cause madness or stir up a desire to follow his cult.

Cthulhu has been described as a mix between a giant human, an octopus and a dragon. His head is depicted as related to the entirety of a giant octopus, with an unknown number of tentacles surrounding its supposed mouth. He is described as being able to change shape at will, extending and retracting limbs and tentacles as he sees fit.<sup>1323</sup>

#### **6.7.7.6 Khush**

Khush, also called Jan-Wier, is the main demon working on the brain and mind. Its main aim is to bring chaos to the person on all levels. It is a spirit of confusion.

Common Demon Groupings:

Confusion: Frustration, Incoherence, Forgetfulness

#### **6.7.7.7 Schizophrenia**

The spirit of schizophrenia is always rooted in rejection, unforgiveness, bitterness and rebellion. It brings double-mindedness. These spirits whip the mind and personality back and forth as they contest for power, such as pride versus inferiority. Schizophrenia always begins with rejection. Rejection invites rebellion. Rebellion is the reaction to rejection. Rebellion is aggressive, angry, bitter, and resentful and it retaliates. It manifests itself in the person being moody, stubborn and selfish. Having rejection and rebellion in the same body is hard to bear and will constantly switch back and forth in seconds.

When a person with this demon explodes, he opens the door to bitterness. Under the rejection come infirmity and insecurity, deep depression, self-accusation, and compulsion to

---

<sup>1323</sup> Mason, A (2007) *Necronimicon Gnosis*. Germany: Edition Roter Drache, pp. 29-31

confess sins. For example, a person enters into wrong doing and cannot keep from confession. He really wants to shock and hurt others so that he can get attention as a substitute for love. Hard on the heels of these comes deception, self-seduction, delusion, fear and pride. Now we enter into the paranoid companion of schizophrenia. On the rejection side are jealousy and envy, usually of others who can give or receive love. On the rebellion side are distrust, suspicion and fear of all types of persecution. Paranoid demons do not care how they hurt others but are super sensitive to their own hurts. A person with the spirit of schizophrenia cannot forgive so he keeps bitterness alive.<sup>1324</sup>

#### **6.7.7.8 Spirit of Insanity**

The spirit of insanity can come in many forms and with many names. It can manifest with insane laughter. These demons tend to act out their personalities; therefore, the name can be anything from insanity, madness, mania, lunacy, idiocy, imbecility, non-compos mentis or psychosis. Only the Holy Spirit can reveal the name it goes by.<sup>1325</sup>

The spirit can manifest in many forms: from a tongue that turns blue to foam around the mouth, from screaming at the top of the voice to being calm and pitiful.

#### **CASE STUDY**

I had admitted a Hispanic man about 52 years old who had frankly become psychotic over a one-week period of time. When I entered the room Monday on rounds, I realized that there was no objective medical reason to this man's insanity. He had indeed had 2 small strokes – one distant and one more recently according to the CT scan, but this did not account for what I was seeing. He was unable to speak and had not spoken in 15 hours. He was writhing in the bed with agitation. He would not respond to the family or me at all. I began to sense that the Lord wanted to show His power here, so I asked the family if they went to church. They are Catholic. I then asked if I could pray for him. They said yes. I then began to ask for the Father's peace for the family and for His presence in the room. I then took authority over the spirit of insanity and fear and cast them out. He immediately quit writhing in agitation. I left and returned in the afternoon. The family told me that as soon as I had left the room that he began to talk. He is now lucid and speaking quite normally today. I explained to the family that this is a miracle of God and that Jesus had healed the man. Medicine had not done it. They do not know what to make of it at this point.<sup>1326</sup>

---

<sup>1324</sup> Moody, G B, *The Deliverance Manual*. Deliverance Ministries. Unpublished, pp. 68-73

<sup>1325</sup> Eckhard, J (2004) *Deliverance and Spiritual Warfare Manual*. Chicago: Crusaders Ministries, p. 45

<sup>1326</sup> Wright, H, *Psychosis gone after Prayer* [Online] Available from: [http://www.beinhealth.com/public/content/psychosis-gone-after-prayer?theme=bih\\_r1](http://www.beinhealth.com/public/content/psychosis-gone-after-prayer?theme=bih_r1) [Accessed: 30 September 2014]

## CASE STUDY

A woman with a master's degree in physics was constantly told from being very small that she will have the same destiny as her dad and granddad, which both died while being in a mental institution diagnosed with insanity. At a mature age she came for help. During her deliverance the Lord revealed that her head idol was Imbecilia strengthened by Jezebel and Lilith. In the process her tongue turned blue and hanged from her mouth with the dripping saliva. The Lord delivered her from insanity in one afternoon.

As seen in this study, the roots of insanity can sit in numerous areas of which the following seems to be the most common<sup>1327</sup>:

- *Sexual Perversion*. Brand testifies that all of the cases of insanity she dealt with had sexual perversion at the root, whether through the bloodlines or personal (see Chapter 5 - 5.4.10 Sexual Immoralities).
- *Occult Involvement* (see Chapter 5 – 5.4.14 Occult Involvement).
- *Anger* (see Chapter 5 - 5.4.5 Anger).

## 6.7.8 Dealing with the Demonic through Deliverance

### 6.7.8.1 Looking at a Biblical Example

The Bible describes the deliverance of an insane man in Mark 5:

*there met Him out of the tombs a man [under the power] of an unclean spirit. <sup>3</sup>This man continually lived among the tombs, and no one could subdue him anymore, even with a chain; <sup>4</sup>For he had been bound often with shackles for the feet and handcuffs, but the handcuffs of [light] chains he wrenched apart, and the shackles he rubbed and ground together and broke in pieces; and no one had strength enough to restrain or tame him.<sup>5</sup> Night and day among the tombs and on the mountains he was always shrieking and screaming and beating and bruising and cutting himself with stones.*

*Mark 5:2-5*

This scene takes place in the region of the shadow of death, in the land of Nephtali and Zebulun, which Isaiah prophesied:

---

<sup>1327</sup> Personal Interview with Professor Dr Connie Brand, 4 November 2014.

*... at first He lightly esteemed the land of Zebulun and the land of Naphtali, and afterward more heavily oppressed her, by the way of the sea, beyond the Jordan, in Galilee of the Gentiles. The people who walked in darkness have seen a great light; those who dwelt in the land of the shadow of death, upon them a light has shined*

*Isaiah 9:1-2 NKJV*

Dr Ana Mendez-Ferrell in her book, *Setting the Captives Free*, speculates that the reason Jesus went there, on the Sea of Galilee, was to set the man free and that liberation affected the entire region. She believes the principality of the area was the demon called Legion who possessed the man from Gadarene. The young man dwelt in the cemetery where the deliverance occurred. She goes on to explain that the graveyards are gates of hell and a good place for a territorial power to have its headquarters. Jesus arrived with a purpose. He knew He was going there to fight against a territorial spirit.

Mendez-Ferrell continues that on their way there, Jesus and the disciples encountered a storm that arose on the water (Luke 8:20-25). As the storm raged, the disciples found Jesus asleep in the boat. She believes the reason Jesus was asleep was because some trances or visions in the Bible happened while the servant of God entered into a deep sleep; Jesus was in a trance in which He fell into a deep sleep and there fought against the demon, Legion of Gadarene. While Jesus was in the boat, the battle in the Spirit unleashed the physical manifestation of a storm. When Jesus was awakened by His disciples, He rebuked the wind and the raging of the water, which is how you deal with the spirit of darkness. When the storm was over, Jesus had won the battle in the Spirit against Legion and delivered the soul of the man from the regions of Sheol. This was why the demon-possessed man ran to meet Him and kneel before Him. His soul had been set free for him to do this although the unclean spirit still lived within him. It was through this victim that the entire region was controlled.<sup>1328</sup>

*<sup>6</sup> And when from a distance he saw Jesus, he ran and fell on his knees before Him in homage, <sup>7</sup> And crying out with a loud voice, he said, What have You to do with me, Jesus, Son of the Most High God? [What is there in common between us?] I solemnly implore you by God, do not begin to torment me! <sup>8</sup> For Jesus was commanding, Come out of the man, you unclean spirit!*

*Mark 5:6-8*

---

<sup>1328</sup> Mendez-Ferrell, A (2010) *Regions of Captivity*. Florida: Voice of the Light Ministries, pp. 126-127

Still the demons (called Legion) did not want to leave the region: this is how territorial spirits talk. The territory is more important to them than human beings.

*And he kept begging Him urgently not to send them [himself and the other demons] away out of that region.*

Mark 5:10

Mendez-Ferrell confirms that in her ministry, this is still the case today<sup>1329</sup>:

*We have witnessed this kind of thing many times after liberating cities and territories. Storms are present when entering the prophetic dimensions and waging war in the Spirit. Afterward, wonderful deliverances occur in the people who were tormented by the devil.*

Jesus then granted those demons permission to enter a great herd of hogs which ended up jumping into the sea and drowning.

The man, however, was totally free from this demonic possession and returned to his right mind:

<sup>15</sup> *And they came to Jesus and looked intently and searchingly at the man who had been a demoniac, sitting there, clothed and in his right mind, [the same man] who had had the legion [of demons]*

Mark 5:15

### 6.7.8.2 Challenging Demons

If you suspect a demon, you request permission from the client to test the possibility. It is good never to go beyond what the client is willing to do. If we ask this permission and the client refuses, we go no further. To a certain point the client determines the pace of the deliverance session.

Challenge demons by looking straight into the client's eyes. Most, if not all manifestations, happen through the eyes. The Lord will reveal the names or groupings of the demons as He

---

<sup>1329</sup> Ibid

sees appropriate; it might be via Scripture, a vision, a prophetic word, a word of knowledge or He might even use the demon to reveal its name through the client's voice.

### 6.7.8.3 Deliverance Prayer Points for Madness of the Mind (Heart)

Dr Olukoya, in his book, *The Madness of the Heart*, gives the following prayer points against madness of the mind:<sup>1330</sup>

*I frustrate every demonic arrest over my mind, in the name of Jesus.*

*Every powerful family spirit and every power of witchcraft working against my life, release me now, in the name of Jesus.*

*Holy Ghost fire, destroy every satanic plantation in my mind, in the name of Jesus.*

*I bind every spirit withstanding my testimony; in the name of Jesus.*

*Every river of backwardness flowing into my mind, dry up, in the name of Jesus.*

*Every evil association with unfriendly friends, break now, in the name of Jesus.*

*I destroy anything that is representing me in any demonic meeting, in the name of Jesus.*

*Amen*

### 6.7.8.4 Deliverance Prayer Points for the Brain

Dr Olukoya, in his book *Deliverance of the Brain*, suggests that the client needs the following<sup>1331</sup>:

- *Receive a heavenly blood transfusion.* Those who have studied the functions of the human body tell us that blood flows throughout the body and the brain. If there is an evil blood flow through the brain, the brain cannot function properly. You must flush out every satanic blood transfusion and receive divine blood transfusion. Pray and ask God to make fresh, heavenly blood to run through your brain.
- *Deal with the serpents and scorpions of the head.* The presence of serpents and scorpions is inimical to the wellbeing of your brain. The venom of serpents and scorpions

---

<sup>1330</sup> Olukoya, D (2003) *The Madness of the Heart*. Nigeria. MFM Ministries, pp. 51-52

<sup>1331</sup> Olukoya, D (2009) *Deliverance of the Brain*. Nigeria. MFM Ministries, p. 62, 64



must not be allowed to pollute your brain and poison it to the extent of making your brain behave abnormally. You must kill serpents and scorpions with the bullets of prayer.

- *Upgrade your brain.* God is the Creator of your brain. Just as He can give fresh legs to the paralysed, fresh eyeballs to the one with a diseased socket and fresh body organs to those who have none, He can also bless you with what can be regarded as brain upgrade. If need be, God can transplant a new brain into your head. He can turn a dullard into an intellectual. No matter what your present brain level looks like, the power of God can affect its transformation.

Olukoya continues to give the following prayer points<sup>1332</sup>:

*Arrows of darkness fired into my brain, die, in the name of Jesus.*

*Power of household wickedness upon my brain, die, in the name of Jesus.*

*My head, reject every bewitchment, in the name of Jesus.*

*My brain, wake up by fire, in the name of Jesus.*

*Any power calling my head for evil, scatter, in the name of Jesus.*

*I fire back every arrow of witchcraft in my head in the name of Jesus.*

*Every evil hand laid upon my head when I was a little child, die, in the name of Jesus.*

*Strongholds in my life battling my destiny, I pull you down, in the name of Jesus.*

*Every power using my thoughts against me, bow, in the name of Jesus.*

*Anointing for productive thinking, come upon my life, in the name of Jesus.*

*Confusion, hear the word of the Lord, bow, in the name of Jesus.*

*Anointing for uncommon success, fall upon my life, in the name of Jesus.*

*Every power assigned to hinder my breakthroughs, rush into the Red Sea and die, in the name of Jesus.*

*I pronounce blessings and good things upon my in the name of Jesus. Amen*

We need to expel and drive out all psychic intrusion and power out of the golden triangle and out of the specific lobe. Command the serpent to be driven out in the Name of Jesus and bruise his head by the power of the Blood of the Lamb and the victory of the Cross. The Kundalini serpent is the golden glow of the sun, the energy force of great evil, of Lucifer himself. The serpent must be driven out of our minds and our homes. We need to declare

---

<sup>1332</sup> Ibid, p. 82

healing of all unhealed memories that are bound in a prison of the occult and witchcraft and break the paralysing powers of the past.

We must drive out the serpent from our minds, bruise his head and destroy his assignment to render powerless the mind, head and body of the Body of Christ. If we are to be true clean, pure prophets and priests, we must cleanse the throne of Satan in our brain with the Blood of Jesus. When our eyes are opened to perversion and evil, Satan's eyes of illumination will take us into the inner sanctuary, the pyramid throne and into false visions, false revelation and false glory.<sup>1333</sup>

### 6.7.9 The Deliverance Process

#### 6.7.9.1 Step 1 - Preparation for Deliverance Session

The following are guidelines in preparing for a deliverance session<sup>1334</sup>:

- *Any deliverance session must be bathed in prayer.* Many find it helpful to fast as well. It is strongly advised when dealing with insanity that the three days prior to the deliverance session should be spent in prayer, praise, worship and fasting.
- *Ministering in teams when dealing with insanity is best,* whenever possible. When working in a team there is a variety of gifts available in the session that a particular counsellor might not have. Even without different gifting, though, the ministering team can be praying and listening to the Lord in a way not possible by the counsellor, as his concentration has to be on the client, the problems, and the demons, while theirs can be on listening to God more fully.
- *At the start of each session, take authority over the place, time, and people involved.* See the Appendix for an example prayer to pray before a deliverance session.
- As stated before and iterated here, *no deliverance session confronting insanity-associated demonic entities (principalities, powers, demons) should go without fasting.* Preparation for deliverance by prayer and fasting is very important for both the counsellor and the person being delivered. Fasting and prayer should always proceed the deliverance session as directed by the Holy Spirit. The period of fasting and prayer advised is three days.

---

<sup>1333</sup> Buys, A, The Tree of Knowledge and Serpent. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished, pp. 53-54

<sup>1334</sup> Kraft, C H (1992) Defeating Dark Angels. USA: Regal Books, pp. 183-185

### **6.7.9.2 Step 2 - Conditions for Deliverance**

The following are conditions that need to be met by the client in order for deliverance to be a successful tool in the healing and restoration process<sup>1335</sup>:

- *Humility*. The client and counsellor must humble themselves. This must be an act of the free will (James 4:6–7; 1 Peter 5:5–6) to submit before God the Father, Son and Holy Spirit.
- *Truth*. Only the knowledge of the truth will set a person free (James 8:32). The client must be truthful, all secrets and sin revealed.
- *Confess* any known sin in the open (James 5:15).
- *Repent* (renounce and turnaround from) of all known sins (Proverbs 28:3).
- *Renounce* and break with all occultic practices, false religion and secret societies.
- *Forgive* all other people, the self and God (Matthews 18:23-25).
- *Call on the Lord Jesus Christ of Nazareth* – whoever will call on the Lord will be delivered (Mark 16:17).

### **6.7.9.3 Step 3 – Renewal of the Heart, Senses and Will**

The following are guidelines for starting with the process of deliverance by cutting the client loose and bringing healing through prayer to areas shown by the Holy Spirit:

- Always start a deliverance session with prayer.
- Have the person desiring deliverance make a positive statement in their own words as to whom they serve. Make them define the ‘Jesus’ they serve according to the Bible and have them renounce and reject anything they have received from Satan, if applicable.
- Ask the Holy Spirit to bring to the front any unconfessed or hidden sin, iniquity and rebellion (transgressions).
- Ask Jesus to search the heart and test the mind (Jeremiah 17:9-10). Ask him to reveal any searing of the conscience of the heart. Ask the Lord to take the person’s heart into His hands and to remove all deceptions, temptations, seductions and torturers that could have come in, and to bring any bitterness to the front. Ask the Lord to remove the heart of stone from the person and to give him a new heart of flesh (Ezekiel 36:26).
- Ask Jesus to remove any blindfolds from his spiritual eyes through the working of the Holy Spirit, as well as any filthy garments and turbans from the head (Zechariah 3:4);

---

<sup>1335</sup> Prince, D, How to Recognize and Expel Demons <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=waA6LEI5o0M> [Accessed: 13 October 2014]

also to remove any mind controlling spirits and any mind-bands which bind the will of the person. At this stage, the person has to verbally acknowledge his willingness to submit his will under the will of God. Once this is done, ask the Lord to open his spiritual ears in order to be able to hear the voice of the Holy Spirit, and to open his spiritual eyes in order to see the plan of God for his life.

- Ask the client if he is willing to submit his voice and the use of his voice to God for His use during the deliverance. If there are demons controlling the voice, mouth, tongue, lips or vocal cords, due to legal right, deal with it through prayer, asking the Lord to reveal the legal rights whether personal or bloodline related.

#### **6.7.9.4 Step 4 – Preparing the Brain**

The following are guidelines on preparing the brain for the deliverance as showed by the Holy Spirit:

- Ask Jesus to remove all signs from the forehead that were placed there by the evil kingdom and to bring release to the influence of will of the client, signs that speak against the will and Word of God.
- Cut loose the frontal lobe, the parietal lobe, the temporal lobe, the occipital lobe, the left brain, the right brain, medulla, the brain stem, the basal ganglia, cerebellum and hypothalamus and apply the blood of Jesus to the root of anything that can bind the brain or any of its workings.
- Through Revelation 12:11, loose the testimonies of the client from fear, including fear and resistance for taking up the authority of Jesus Christ of Nazareth, acknowledging that the authority does not sit with the person but only through Jesus Christ.
- Each client's case is different and the Holy Spirit will guide here where the problems areas are. This must be dealt with through prayer.
- Ask the Lord to remove all coverings, walls, shields, glass panels, mirrors, splinters, demonic soul bands, astral soul bands and sexual soul bands, everything that influences the brain function to be separated from the mind of Christ; to take into possession and to destroy all the works of the evil doers sent out against this brain through the anointing of the Holy Spirit and the power of the blood of the Lam.
- Next, anoint all the 'door posts' (Exodus 12), the areas as shown by the Holy Spirit. These might be behind the ear or on top of the head or between the eyes.
- Break all false agreements as to where this brain had a part in by will.

### **6.7.9.5 Step 5 – Dealing with the Strongman**

The next step is to deal directly with the strongman. Remove the strongman or head idol (and all his workers) from the brain and declare his works powerless – the Lord will show what his name is (e.g. lunacy, insanity, imbecility, chaos) through the working of the Holy Spirit and will reveal where this idol received its legal right. The Lord might show a word that was spoken over the person – it can be anything. It could even have been through music.

This part of the deliverance might take time and a break might be needed in order to seek Scripture (strategy) from the Lord, or to praise and worship. The Scripture given must be spoken and proclaimed. The Lord might even reveal things through the Holy Spirit, gift of prophesy or through a vision. The battle is the Lord's and He will give what is needed for the final victory!

If the idol is pulling strength from bloodline rights, then rebuke all spirits from every mother and every father, from every grandmother and grandfather, from every family name and surname, from every man and woman on all the sides up to paradise. Proclaim the blood of the Lam on any false trees:

- Cut loose the client by name from every sickness and illness related to the bloodline trees: migraine, scoliosis, depression, dyslexia, cancer, multiple sclerosis, homosexuality, cerebral paralysis, heart conditions, epilepsy, brain damage, insanity, grinding of the teeth, stupor, muscle dystrophy, coma, spinal bifida.
- Cut loose the client by name from every occultic fruit: Jihad, suicide, abortions, rebellion, pride, suggestion, anger, bitterness, deception, jealousy, idolatry, incense, lobsang rampa, third eye, magic (white, black, red, neutral), astral projection, ancestry, lies, astrology, Kundalini yoga, hatha joga, witchcraft, mind control, fortune-telling, emptiness, boastfulness, murder, temptation, seduction, falseness, Judaism, Buddhism, Hinduism, Islam, Freemasonry, secret societies.
- Cut loose the client from Rege, Kundalini and Oblaharum (isolated from each other) sitting at the root of trees.
- Resist, refute and rebuke the strongman that is at work in this family line and in this person from the four cardinal directions:
  - From the North he is called *Belial* bringing forth into the life of the client intellectualism, worthlessness on all levels, rage and encouragement to get involved into the occult.

- From the West he is called *Leviathan* bringing forth into the life of the client confusion, addictions, pride, false peace, rebellion, spiritual blindness, false spiritual gifts, false worship, being lukewarm and an inability to have self-control.
- From the East he is called *Apollyon* bringing forth into the life of the client lies, darkness, fear, sickness and illnesses, falseness, spiritual dryness and prayerlessness, jealousy, pride, disunity and idolatry; also called *Abaddon* bringing forth into the life of the client destruction, deception, seduction, prevention of repentance, hopelessness, fruitlessness, aggression, passivity, defilement in thoughts and actions, poor habits, fornication, homosexuality, bestiality, pornography, paedophilia, addictions, lust, slavery, protestation, greed, discontentment and gluttony.
- From the South he is called *the Beast* bringing forth into the life of the client bloodshed, false worship, deception, suicide, depression, mental illnesses, passivity and inability to do bible study or pray.

Cut loose any waters (including waters of insanity) in the heavens above and on the earth, and in the earth below. Cancel out any old crones (old ones, the old spirits).

Insanity can be caused by groupings of demons (e.g. unholy trinities) examples of which include the spirit of fear, the deaf and dumb spirit and the familiar spirit. At time they will struggle with each other for momentary control of the body which manifests in expressing horrible acts of violence whether upon that body or others. These demons must be isolated from each, and then each one dealt with (together with its lessor demons linked to it) separately.

When doing deliverance, it is imperative to deal with all three parts in a person: human spirit (including conscience, intuition and worship), soul (including conscious, subconscious, unconscious, mind, emotions and will) and body (including brain and sexuality). It is of *no importance* where the insanity is lodged. All three areas need to be cleaned out from demon entities (principalities, powers and demons).

*For examples of strongmen (depending on the legal right) please see:*

- Chapter 4 - 1.7.5 Powers of Darkness associated with Sorcery, Witchcraft and Magick*
- Chapter 4 - 1.13 Demonic Entities associated with Manipulation, Domination & Control*
- Chapter 5 - 1.4.11 Demonic Entities associated with Sexual Immorality*
- Chapter 5 - 1.5.3 Mythology*
- Chapter 6 - 1.7.9 Demonic Entities linked to Insanity and Psychosis*

### **6.7.10 Deliverance Hints**

The following are hints that might assist during a deliverance session:

- When dealing with atheism, first explore the root of this belief.
- Ask the Father to send His angels to keep the counselee confined to the chair in order to minimise manifestations when dealing with demons.
- Ask Father to *only* let the person speak, or the demons to speak through the person if the Father wants to reveal something.
- Megalomania<sup>1336</sup> is often found among people with insanity, especially of a religious kind, for example, the person believes he is Jesus. The counsellor needs to bind the lies and the deceit and to ask Jesus to penetrate into the client's essence and human spirit with the living waters of the living fountain, washing him and showing him the real Jesus.
- When dealing with principalities and powers, there might be links to the Alien strategy of Satan. This, then, needs to be dealt with first.
- Use the power in the Word of God. Read and quote Scripture out loud. This helps in the deliverance process when the demonic entities are reminded of their final destination (for example Revelation 18, Revelation 20:10,14-15 and Revelation 22:15). Demons hate these Scriptures.
- Sometimes the demons will produce a state of unconsciousness in the person being delivered, even to the point of slowing down their breathing and heart rate. The most effective measure in this event is to simply start reading Scripture out loud. Pray first, and ask the Lord to make the demon hear every word. Reading from Revelation 18 works well. Then, after the person regains consciousness, you must teach him to rebuke the demon and refuse to accept unconsciousness. As long as a demon is able to knock a person unconscious, they are far too passive to stay clear after deliverance. You must teach them to ask the Holy Spirit to alert them to the demon's attempts to knock them out

---

<sup>1336</sup> The megalomaniac differs from the narcissist in that a person wishes to be powerful rather than charming, and seeks to be feared rather than loved.

so that they can immediately resist. It is hard work, and frequently the person involved will not want to put forth the effort. They must understand that they cannot be cleared, nor can they remain clear, until they are willing to work to control their minds.<sup>1337</sup>

- Ultimately it is Lord's decision what will happen with the demons when cast out. We cannot send them anywhere, including to Hell. Send them to the feet of Jesus when casting them out of a person. Sometimes demons fear torture by other demons on the outside when leaving a person. In these cases, ask the Lord to give them safe passage to where He is sending them.
- Demons weaken rapidly in the presence of praise. Singing songs of praise as lifting up prayers of praise and thanksgiving is often very helpful in weakening the demons.
- In most persons involved deeply in the occult, there is a doorway for Satan himself. This innermost doorway is held open by a very high demon that usually refers to himself as a 'son of Satan'. (Note: this title will change with different geographical areas, and the specific names of these demons also change. They are too numerous to try to list. Specifying the demon by his function will be sufficient to establish authority over him.) This doorway permits Satan himself to enter a person and speak and act through their body as he wishes.<sup>1338</sup>

#### 6.7.10.1 The Uncontrolled Person

When the person comes in for deliverance as mad as a hatter (totally out of touch with reality), only the Holy Spirit can show what to take away, what to eliminate and by eviction the person can come back to a sort of normality in order to follow the process or guidelines stipulated above. This particular state the client may be in can be as a result of demon influence or a stronghold of powers, and can only be identified through the discerning of spirits. The Holy Spirit will show the counsellor.

The basis on which to build this session will always be:

*<sup>20</sup> For wherever two or three are gathered (drawn together as My followers) in (into) My name, there I AM in the midst of them.*

*Matthew 18:20*

---

<sup>1337</sup> Brown, R (1987) Prepare for War. New Kensington: Whitaker House, p. 321

<sup>1338</sup> Ibid.



Ask Jesus to show Himself to the principalities and powers which are restricting the client and to bring the person under control.

Ask the Lord to dislodge and cast down the following strong-hold cities and cut loose their influence in and on the client's life:

- Cut loose and bind the works of the 'spirit of the age':

Area	City Name	City is representing
North-East	Jericho	Unholy false worldly riches
	Ai	Depression and hopelessness
	Jerusalem	False peace
	Hebron	New Age, Humanism, wisdom of people
	Jarmuth	Heights, strength, reputation, pride

- Separate the following two cities from each other and isolate and release them from Rege, Khundalini and Oblaharam. Cut with the sword of the Spirit the lay lines between North-West and South-East in two:

Area	City Name	Representing
North-West to South-East	Lachish	He is the initiator which put the rest of the rulers in action. It is a city of sin
	Eglon	He throws thoughts into the mind that broods, and have the ability to push out tentacles of fear

Area	City Name	Representing
North-West	Gezer	Greed, have-the-right-to
	Debir	Own righteousness
	Geder	Put up a wall of protection against fear (Kitron)
	Hormah	Destruction, burnout for serving the Lord, doing it for yourself
	Arad	The fugitive, run-away from problems (Kaeseme)

- Cut loose from and bind the works of Leviathan and Jezebel:

Area	City Name	Representing
West	Libnah	False white light
	Adullam	Start of addiction (Hermes)
	Makkedah	To push other into addiction
	Bethel	False house of God – a prison
	Tappuah	Appel, fruit from the tree, rejection from morality, child pornography
	Hepher	The pit, searing of the conscious, work in gangs, make life cheap

- Cut the loose and bind the works of Satan, the dog:

Area	City Name	Representing
South	Aphek	Me, myself and I, False kingdom of own power and might
	Las-Sharon	False prosperity
	Madon	Throne of self-righteousness, tradition, status, worship and self-satisfaction
	Hazor	Genealogical tree, self-realisation, self-coming-into-being

- Cut the loose and bind the works of Beelsebub:

Area	City Name	Representing
Centre	Shimrom-Meron	Spirit of control, witchcraft, impudence, violent spirit of suicide (Achshaph)
	Taanach	Deception, abuse, experience-theology
	Megiddo	A gathering place, self-mutilation, sadism, masochism, attack each other with Scripture
	Kedesh	Seven levels of Satanism. Vision of self

- Cut loose and bind the works of Abbadon and Appolyon:

Area	City Name	Representing
East	Jokneam	Tortured people, unusual grief, manic depression (bipolar) migraines
	Dor	Bloodline curses, timeless family imprisonment
	Gilgal	Never ending circle of life, evolution, reincarnation
	Tirzah	False joy to re-pay debt against the death spirit, becoming one with Lucifer

### 6.7.10.2 The Emergency Call

Should it happen that the counsellor is called out to an emergency such as an attempted suicide by the client, apart from what is mentioned already, making use of the angels of the Lord plays a very important role to the believer. One cannot command angels, but rather should ask Father God to send His angels to assist in these situations. They can minister, for instance, to the person's spirit directly; they can go into spiritual battle on behalf of the person. Again, the Holy Spirit will guide each specific situation.

### 6.7.11 Why Deliverance is not Successful

#### 6.7.11.1 General Reasons

There may be various reasons why deliverance is perceived as unsuccessful or only partly successful<sup>1339</sup>:

- If any of the conditions for deliverance (see 1.7.2.3 *Conditions for Deliverance*) is not met, deliverance will not be successful.
- If the human spirit of those affecting the deliverance is *not in tune with the Holy Spirit*, deliverance can come to a halt. This was evidently the type of situation the disciples faced with the demonised boy, only in their case the problem was with themselves (Matthew 17:14-20).
- Much also depends also upon the *type and class of demons* being dealt with. Scripture, history, and contemporary experience verify that some demons and groups of demons are more difficult to deal with than others.
- False expectations. The client comes in with certain expectations that might not have been met in his eyes. However, *deliverance forms part of the process of establishing the kingdom of God in the client's life*. God will only do deliverance in order to bring this to completion in his life.
- Timing. God determines the times for deliverance in a person's life. As believers we cannot force or manipulate the spiritual things to happen. *God is concerned with raising sons*. Therefore, in His divine knowledge and timing, He knows what is needed to bring forth the right fruit in the right time for His Children (John 15).
- Lack of faith, fasting and prayer (Matthew 17:19-21)

---

<sup>1339</sup> Murphy, E F (2003) *The Handbook for Spiritual Warfare*, Revised and Updated. Thomas Nelson Publishers, pp. 296-297

### 6.7.11.2 Misuse or Misunderstanding of Authority

The legal basis of our authority was established by Jesus Christ of Nazareth as recorded in Colossians 2:15:

*[God] disarmed the principalities and powers that were ranged against us and made a bold display and public example of them, in triumphing over them in Him and in it [the cross].*

Through the cross and resurrection, Jesus possess the keys of death (Revelation 1:18). In this capacity, Jesus gave mankind authority over Satan and his Kingdom confirmed by the following Scriptures:

*Behold! I have given you authority and power to trample upon serpents and scorpions, and [physical and mental strength and ability] over all the power that the enemy [possesses]; and nothing shall in any way harm you.*

*Luke 10:19*

*And these attesting signs will accompany those who believe: in My name they will drive out demons; they will speak in new languages; They will pick up serpents; and [even] if they drink anything deadly, it will not hurt them; they will lay their hands on the sick, and they will get well.*

*Mark 16:17-18:*

However, with this authority comes responsibility to use it for God's purposes. The call comes to cleanse oneself from everything that contaminates and defiles the body and spirit (2 Corinthians 7:1). Man has to lay down sin, bearing in mind that sin cause division and separation from God. In assisting man with this process, when Jesus ascended to the Father, He promised the great gift of the Holy Spirit. He will convict and convince man of sin. He will guide man into the truth and will be the Comforter, Counsellor, Helper, Advocate, Intercessor, Strengtheners and Standby when and where needed (John 16:7-13).

The following are five means for exercising one's authority<sup>1340</sup>:

- *The name of Jesus is a powerful weapon.* It is the only name that gives authority. No other name but the name of Jesus before which every knee shall bow and every tongue shall confess that He is God (Romans 14:11).
- *The Word of God is your sword.* A two-edged sword (Ephesians 6:17; Hebrews 4:12). There is nothing as powerful as the spoken Word of God.
- *The power of the Holy Spirit:* the battle is not by power or by might but by the Spirit of God (Zechariah 4:6).
- *The Blood of Jesus.* Revelation states that a person will overcome the enemy by the blood of the Lamb and by the person's testimony (Revelation 12:11). Only by His Blood can a person be justified (Romans 5:9).
- *Proclaiming the truth.* The truth shall set you free (John 8:32).

The enemy must be dealt with. He is a defeated foe, but will successfully hold his ground until the God-given authority is exercised against him and the legal ground taken back from him. Jesus gave the disciples power and commanded them to use it (Matthew 10:1; Luke 10:17; Mark 6:7; 16:17). Now, we are His disciples and so this applies to us too. They did what they did following Jesus' example and in His power (Matthew 10:1,8; Mark 3:15; 6:7; Luke 9:1). We, too, are given power over the enemy (Luke 10:19; Matthew 10:1; Zechariah 3:15). This must all be done in the power of Jesus' name (Matthew 8:22; Luke 9:49).

Therefore, when you do deliverance you need to command the demons to be quiet, to leave and to never return in the name of Jesus of Nazareth (note: there are demons who call themselves Jesus).

### **6.7.11.3 Medication**

Professor Dr Connie Brand has found in her practice that medication definitely has an effect on the level of deliverance that takes place. When someone is still on psychiatric drugs, this will prevent deliverance in certain areas as the demons feed on the lies and deception the medication brings, and the demons are strengthened by Pharmakeia.

The medication additionally creates a blockage to the human spirit of the person, preventing deliverance and healing on all levels. So many times the client might want to reject the

---

<sup>1340</sup> Sherman, D (1990) *Spiritual Warfare: How to live in Victory and Retake the Land*. Seattle: YWAM Publishing, pp. 14-31

medication but the family insists on the usage of drugs due to their own fear and insecurities. Support makes such an important leg of any spiritual war in the process of healing and restoration.<sup>1341</sup>

See Chapter 4 - 4.12 Pharmakeia

#### **6.7.11.4 Only through the Finger of God**

He himself said, casting out a demon,

*<sup>20</sup> But if I drive out the demons by the finger of God, then the kingdom of God has [already] come upon you.*

*Luke 11:20*

Do not memorise long lists of names of spirits. Such lists serve only to provide examples and awareness of what exists in the spirit realm. Instead, pray and yield to the Holy Spirit for revelation (word of knowledge) as to what spirits are present and who the ruler spirit is. Often, the ruler spirit ministers what is observed as the dominant behaviour being expressed by the person.

Again, the central effort of the deliverance must be directed toward the binding, loosing and casting out of the ruler (strongman) spirit, with those under him, bound, loosed, and cast out or commanded to leave with him and directed to an appropriate destination. A definitive command should be given for them not to return. With time, the believer may find the Holy Spirit leading him in variations on the basic themes of deliverance into a highly individualised deliverance style. This is a good thing, for we depend upon the Holy Spirit to teach us all things.

We must be cautious, however, that the things which we are led to do are biblical, time-honoured and time-tested, effectual in bringing lasting deliverance, and not some form of extra-biblical revelation. The believer must be particularly on guard for the latter, since Satan is all-too-willing to try to seduce the believer into doing something unscriptural, soulish, and ineffectual for the purpose of delaying deliverance or creating a mock or counterfeit deliverance, to make the believer feel that he has come upon a great new effective

---

<sup>1341</sup> Personal Interview with Professor Dr Connie Brand, 4 November 2014.

revelation. Paul cautions us in the Scriptures that we are not to be unaware of the wiles of Satan. Satan loves to put on shows. Don't permit it. He's stealing the Lord's glory when we permit theatrical demonic displays.

Again, the direction and leading of the Holy Spirit is needed during the deliverance session and the Holy Spirit should be frequently asked for revelation, discernment, and for what He desires to be done as the deliverance session progresses. The Holy Spirit's responses and guidance should be sought frequently during each session. Deliverance sessions tend to become long and drawn out when the deliverance minister and those assisting deliverance attempt deliverance under their own power and might (or in other words, 'in the flesh').<sup>1342</sup>

#### **6.7.11.5 Dealing with Emotions and Habits**

Often, one needs to deal with personal problems and habits before deliverance can bring about permanent improvement. This is especially true when the person has other emotional or psychological problems. Although anything is possible with God, a person cannot expect long-standing emotional issues to be completely cured in one session without miraculous, divine intervention. It takes time to deal with personalities, habits, compulsions and emotions. If these issues are not accurately identified and fully addressed, the smiles and 'alleluias' immediately after deliverance will soon be followed by a return to the same old depression, fears and emotions experienced before.

Deliverance without a permanent change in attitude can reopen the door for spirits of rebellion and pride. Holiness is the most effective way to keep demons out. Jesus said, "The ruler of this world is coming, and he has nothing in Me" (John 14:30). There was no open door, no back door, and no garage – nothing in Jesus for Satan to gain a foothold. Sadly, such an emphasis on holiness is rarely preached or taught in churches today.<sup>1343</sup>

#### **6.7.11.6 Ongoing Sins**

Ongoing sin is a pile of garbage that attracts flies. Some believers ask for deliverance in one area while they are harbouring hidden sin in another area. God is not in the habit of blessing

---

<sup>1342</sup> Zumpano, B (1998) *Ministering Spiritual Warfare for Sexual Sin*. Miami: Harbor Light Publishers, pp. 45-47

<sup>1343</sup> Ing, R (2008) *Waging Spiritual Warfare*. Whitaker House: United States of America, pp. 17-18, 25

people who are openly and freely sinning. Until there is true repentance, which includes a turning from all sinful practice, permanent relief is not possible.

For instance, a man may desire deliverance from fear but is engaging in premarital sex with his girlfriend. In such an instance, deliverance will not work. Before lasting deliverance can be achieved, the person needs to renounce the sexual sin and repent. Failure to desire change in sexual areas will keep that person in bondage. Sexual lust represents a difficult area in deliverance because of the ample opportunities available to indulge. The person who desires to be rid of sexual lust must realise the dangers of allowing his eyes to drink in what the world offers. The knowledge of how God views the ugliness of sexual sins and the heartfelt desire to avoid future sins of sex must burn in a person's soul; the mind must be changed and discipline applied.

If a person desires only temporary relief, he will not achieve permanent deliverance. Some want to control their lusts when they cannot satisfy them, yet when opportunity arises to indulge, they don't mind them. They look at sexual fantasy as harmless entertainment for the mind and body.<sup>1344</sup>

#### **6.7.11.7 Forgiveness**

A general prayer asking for forgiveness or forgiving others won't suffice. Often people pray, "I forgive my mother for everything she has ever done to me". Sometimes it's "I forgive everybody that ever sinned against me". This is definitely not sufficient. One needs to get before the Lord and bare his heart. God wants a washing from the inside, not just the outside. Your mind can say it, but your heart can remain unaffected and hard. Be specific.<sup>1345</sup>

Genuine forgiveness restores relationships wherever possible or practicable. Certainly, there are cases where it may not be healthy or prudent to restore a relationship, as in cases with a history of abuse or assault, but such circumstances are rare. For the most part, when it comes to hurts from family and friend, restoring a relationship with them not only brings spiritual and emotional healing but also stands as a reminder of God's forgiveness toward mankind.

---

<sup>1344</sup> Ing, R (1966) *Spiritual Warfare*. Whitaker House: United States of America, p. 107

<sup>1345</sup> Ing, R (1966) *Spiritual Warfare*. Whitaker House: United States of America, p. 90



Love is the basis of forgiveness; love seeks to restore relationships. God does not want resentment and bitterness to take root in any heart. In truth, a person can forgive somebody yet still harbour bitterness against him or her. God requires forgiveness of specific people for specific actions before demonic bondages can be broken. That is, one should mention the person's name and forgive the specific trespass committed. As a rule, the deeper the hurt, the deeper the forgiveness has to go. In some cases, it might take more than one attempt at forgiveness. However, since demons attach to deep-seated resentments, if forgiveness becomes a process, deliverance will also become a process.<sup>1346</sup>

#### **6.7.11.8 Passivity**

When passivity of body takes place, it practically means a cessation of conscious action because this passivity affects sight, hearing, smell, taste and feeling. Any person in normal health should be able to focus his eyes on whatever object he chooses, randomly or by design, and should have similar control over all his other senses. They all are avenues of information for his mind and spirit. But when any of these senses are kept in a passive state, consciousness becomes dulled and deadened. Such a person, unaware of what he should be keenly alive to, becomes mechanical in his actions. Peculiar or even repulsive habits easily take hold. It is much simpler for persons in this condition to see these flaws in others than to recognise what is going on in themselves, even though they may be fully aware of external influences which affect them.

When this passive condition brought about by evil spirits reaches its climax, passivity of other parts of the body may result, such as stiff fingers, lost elasticity of the frame in walking, lethargy, heaviness and stooping of the back and spine. The handshake is flabby and passive; the eyes will not look straight into the eyes of others, but move from side to side, indicating passivity brought about by deepening interference of the powers of darkness with the whole man. This results from the initial passive condition of the will and mind, in which the man gave up both his self-control, and the use of his will.<sup>1347</sup>

*See Chapter 3 – 3.4.2.2 The Conditions of the Mind - The Passive Mind*

---

<sup>1346</sup> Ing, R (2008) *Waging Spiritual Warfare*. Whitaker House: United States of America, pp. 16-17

<sup>1347</sup> Penn-Lewis, J (2004) *War on the Saints*. Pennsylvania: CLC Publication, p. 90

It is, therefore, vital to get an understanding of just how much passivity the client practices. People involved in the occult, and especially with problems of depression and suicide, usually have very lazy and passive minds. The number one cause of depression is a passive mind. People in the occult (the New Age Movement is included in this) have become used to blanking out their minds, thereby giving control of their mind and body to demons. These people must be carefully taught how to regain control over their minds before deliverance can be successful, and also to enable them to keep the demons out after deliverance. Passivity is a real block in keeping demons out after deliverance. The less passive a person is in their deliverance, the more likely they are to remain free of demons once they are set free.

The natural desire of most people is to remain passive and let others deal with all their problems. It is important to teach these clients how to command the demons to leave. They need to learn to take up the power and authority available to them in the Name of Jesus to overcome the demons themselves. They need to learn to regain authority over their bodies including arms, legs, voices and minds. Every time they feel a demon is trying to take over control of the body, mind or voice, the demons should be commanded to leave at once in the Name of Jesus Christ.

Teach the client through coaching and prayer, asking the Holy Spirit to make him aware when the demons first starts the attack (e.g. to knock him out) and he will finally learn to recognise their tactics and stop them with the power in the Name of Jesus. Many people will tell you that they cannot control or stop the demons because they knock them unconscious. This is because they have allowed their minds to be passive. The Holy Spirit will help them regain control of their minds so that they will recognise the demon's activity the instant it starts. This is a real key: not only to kicking the demons out in the first place, but in keeping them out.<sup>1348</sup>

#### **6.7.11.9 Not Wanting to give up Demonic Powers**

Many people involved in the occult want to 'have their cake and eat it too'. In other words, they want the power of Jesus Christ to bail them out of trouble, but they don't want to completely give up their demonic powers. Brown has found that we can save ourselves much time and effort in the area of deliverance if we make it clear to a person requesting

---

<sup>1348</sup> Brown, R (1987) Prepare for War. New Kensington: Whitaker House, pp. 306-307, 316-317

deliverance that the first demon we will command out is the 'power' demon giving them the ability to communicate with the spirit world. Once this demon is out, they will immediately lose all ability to use their powers of witchcraft. If someone is not really serious about desiring deliverance, or is trying to deceive us, they will back off quickly when they find out that with the removal of this demon they will instantly lose their ability to use their spirit body.<sup>1349</sup>

## 6.7.12 Final Notes on Deliverance

### 6.7.12.1 Binding and Loosing

Binding and loosing are the rabbinical terms for *forbidding* and *permitting*. In usage, *to bind* and *to loose* simply mean *to forbid by an indisputable authority* and *to permit by an indisputable authority*. Matthew 18:18-19 states

*Verily I say unto you, Whatsoever ye shall bind on earth shall be bound in heaven: and whatsoever ye shall loose on earth shall be loosed in heaven. Again I say unto you, That if two of you shall agree on earth as touching anything that they shall ask, it shall be done for them of my Father which is in heaven. I will give you the keys of the kingdom of heaven; whatever you bind on earth will be bound in heaven, and whatever you loose on earth will be loosed in heaven.*

Matthew 16:19

In this verse, Jesus is speaking directly to the apostle Peter and indirectly to every believer. By these words Jesus virtually invested the disciples with the same authority as that which is found belonging to the scribes and Pharisees who "*bind heavy burdens and lay them on men's shoulders, but will not move them with one of their fingers*"; that is, "*loose them*," as they have the power to do.

Note: One cannot bind principalities and powers directly; you can bind their influence, fruits and works. However, you can bind a lower level wicket spirit (as the Lord instructs that we have to bind the Strongman in order to take the house<sup>1350</sup>).

---

<sup>1349</sup> Brown, R (1987) Prepare for War. New Kensington: Whitaker House p. 320

<sup>1350</sup> Matthews 12:19

### 6.7.12.2 The Importance of Protein

In her book *Prepare for War*, Rebecca Brown explains the importance of protein to both the counsellor and the client<sup>1351</sup>: spiritual battling results in an acute loss of protein from our physical bodies. If we are not careful to increase our intake of high quality protein during times of intensive spiritual battle, we will become weak. The Scriptures have much to say on this subject. Ever since God's covenant with Noah in which he gave Noah the animals to eat, Satan and his demons have been trying to stop humans from eating meat. God's judgment in the flood was brought about due to the intercourse occurring between humans and demons (Genesis 6). God told Noah to start eating meat after the flood for a very specific reason. He knew the spiritual battle Noah and his descendants would have to go through to keep demons from controlling them and their lives.

As we study the Old Testament and the laws God gave to his people, the children of Israel, we find that the spiritual warriors of those days were the Levites of Israel. Their diets were clearly high in beef and lamb. If we look at the various spiritual warriors of renown in the Old Testament, we will find that every time before they engaged in a great battle, God prepared them with the eating of meat.

The Lord also speaks very directly through Paul to this point in the New Testament:

*Now the Spirit speaketh expressly, that in the latter times some shall depart from the faith, giving heed to seducing spirits, and doctrines of devils; Speaking lies in hypocrisy; having their conscience seared with a hot iron; Forbidding to marry, and commanding to abstain from meats, which God hath created to be received with thanksgiving of them which believe and know the truth. For every creature of God is good, and nothing to be refused, if it be received with thanksgiving: For it is sanctified by the word of God and prayer.*

*1 Timothy 4: 1-5*

If Satan can keep God's warriors from eating meat, he can cause much weakness and illness among them from the lack of protein. The physical body rapidly loses its ability to fight infections when deprived of protein. Many people die unnecessarily in these days of 'modern medicine' because their doctors don't supplement their protein intake. Brown testifies to this:

---

<sup>1351</sup> Brown, R (1987) *Prepare for War*. New Kensington: Whitaker House, pp. 290-293

*During times of intense battling we often find it necessary to eat meat at least twice daily. If we do not, we rapidly lose strength and often become physically ill. I have worked with many people who, when under intensive attacks by witchcraft, became excessively weakened and even ill, simply because they did not know about God's simple principles regarding the needed protein intake. All of them were much improved when they increased the amount of meat in their diets. I have also worked with people who were unable to keep the demons out after a complete deliverance because they persisted in maintaining a vegetarian diet. They simply didn't have the strength necessary to keep the demons out. If you are having trouble getting someone completely delivered, or in helping them to keep the demons out afterwards, don't forget to ask them about their diet. If they are a vegetarian, they will have grave difficulties keeping the demons out.*

It is wise for people who have been through a difficult time of deliverance to eat a diet very high in high quality protein for several weeks after the deliverance. Increasing the protein intake will contribute towards healing of any unseen physical damage that might have occurred during deliverance. The whole area of spiritual warfare is a very deep and dangerous one.

### **6.7.12.3 Prescribed Medication and Drugs**

Never stop taking prescribed drugs of a medical doctor or psychiatrist without first consulting them. Stopping cold turkey can kill someone. If the client is on Neuroleptic by a judge's order, the client needs to get a job and show he can function on his own and ask for his drugs to be reduced by his doctor. The more one shows the psychiatrist he can function independently, responsibly and normally on his own, the fewer drugs will be prescribed. It's all up to the client.

### **6.7.12.4 Clean the Place of Deliverance when Done**

When the deliverance session has been completed and the person has gone home, it is very important to ask the Lord to clean and remove any demons still hanging around the place where deliverance took place, and anything left behind by the demons (e.g. markings, jewellery, beacons).

### **6.7.13 Aftercare**

The battle will be seven times harder to keep the demons out than it was to get them out in the first place. This is because each demon cast out will go and get seven more demons, each stronger than himself, and try to get back in. Too many people think that the battle is over once they are delivered. When they find it is just starting they get discouraged and, even worse, are afflicted with guilt. Because of the battle they are experiencing, they feel they are doing something wrong, or that all the demons were not driven out at the time of deliverance. So the more you teach the person about the battle after deliverance before it even happens, the more successful they will be in keeping the demons out afterwards.

The client must be taught that the demons, once delivered and outside, will try to afflict them with the same physical symptoms or emotions as they did while they were inside them. Every time they experience such emotions or symptoms, they must immediately rebuke the demons. The demons will always lie and tell a person that they are back in them when they really are not. If the person accepts these thoughts from the demon as being true, then they have actually accepted the demon back into them. Everything in our Christian walk must be based on faith. Once a person has been delivered, and everyone concerned feels a unity and peace that he has indeed been completely delivered, then that person must stand in faith that it is so.

Those who were involved in meditation and other techniques which involved 'blanking out' their minds must understand that they cannot, under any circumstances, allow their minds to go blank. If they do so, the demons will have an open doorway to re-enter them.

The actual time of deliverance, of battling through until all of the demons have been forced to leave is extremely exhausting for everyone involved. Both the person who received deliverance and the deliverance workers will experience exhaustion and various physical symptoms afterwards. Muscle and joint pain is very common.

Some people who have been demon-possessed from birth or early childhood will need to be cared for in someone's home for a period of time after deliverance. Each person is different, but anyone possessed from childhood will have areas in their personalities and lives which did not properly develop. This is a very difficult period which requires much love and care from God's people. It is then the responsibility of the assisting person to daily pray for shielding for them and stand in the gap for them. Usually the Lord seems to hold back the

attacks of the demons until they have had a chance to 'grow up' and get their feet on the ground with the Lord. This is a very vulnerable period, however, and those of us working in deliverance have a big responsibility to help these people through this difficult time.

Scars are a fact of life, and those working with and loving such people must accept them without condemning the person who has them.

In every case where a person was deeply demon-possessed, there will be a prolonged period of healing. Everything in the body, soul and spirit will have to be healed and re-adjusted once the demons are out. This is often a very painful process which does not happen overnight.<sup>1352</sup>

#### **6.7.13.1 Seven Steps in Retaining Deliverance**

*The spiritual warfare for the believer will never be over.* One cannot afford to take a step back at any time. The demons will always try to regain the territory that was lost during the deliverance and counselling even if it is years down the line. As believers we can *never* allow ourselves to drop our guard. We need to continually grow in our maturity and spiritual authority by becoming more and more Christ like. The following are some steps to ensure that the client will retain their deliverance<sup>1353</sup>.

- 1 *Put on the whole armour of God.* The believer needs this every day in order to stand in the victory. To iterate what was said earlier: pay special attention to the helmet of salvation for the guarding of the thought life. Most demons seeking to re-enter assail the thoughts. Become watchful of any thoughts that could be considered negative; they are from the enemy.
- 2 *Confess positively.* Negative confessions characterise demonic influence. Positive confession is faith expressed. Confess what God's Word says.
- 3 *Stay in the Scripture.* Jesus withstood Satan's temptation by speaking Scripture. The Word is a mirror to the soul (James 1:22-25); it is a lamp unto the feet for guidance (Psalm 119: 105); it is a cleansing agent (Ephesians 5:25,26); it is a two-edged sword,

---

<sup>1352</sup> Brown, R (1987) Prepare for War. New Kensington: Whitaker House, pp. 320-332

<sup>1353</sup> Hammond F & I M (1986) Pigs in the Parlor. United States of America: Impact Christian Books, pp. 35-36

laying bare the heart (Hebrews 4:12); it is food for the spirit (1 Peter 2:2; Matthew 4:4). No person can long maintain deliverance apart from the Word of God as a primary factor in his life.

*Blessed is the man that walketh not in the counsel of the ungodly, nor standeth in the way of sinners, nor sitteth in the seat of the scornful. But his delight is in the law of the Lord; and in his law doth he meditate day and night. And he shall be like a tree planted by the rivers of water, that bringeth forth his fruit in his season; his leaf also shall not wither; and whatsoever he doeth shall prosper.*

4 Psalm 1: 1-3

- 5 *Crucify the flesh.* Take up your cross daily and follow Jesus (Luke 9:23). Break old habit patterns set up in league with evil spirits. If fleshly appetites, desires and lusts are not brought to the cross, a way for demons to return will be left open (Galatians 5:19-21,24).
- 6 *Develop a life of continuous praise.* Praise silences the enemy. Praise is not an attitude of heart; praise is the expression unto God of thankfulness, adoration and joy by speaking, singing, shouting, dancing, leaping, playing musical instruments and clapping the hands. Pray in the Spirit (in tongues) and also in the understanding (1 Corinthians 14:14). Pray without ceasing (1 Thessalonians 5:17).
- 7 *Maintain a life of fellowship and spiritual ministry.* It is the sheep that wanders from the flock that is most endangered. Find and fulfil a function within the body of Christ. Desire spiritual gifts and yield to their operation through you within the body of Christ (1 Corinthians 12: 7-14). Keep yourself under authority.

## 6.8. INNER HEALING

*Inner healing*<sup>1354</sup>, also called deep-level healing, is a ministry in the power of the Holy Spirit aimed at bringing healing to the whole person. Since the majority of human ailments are closely tied to damage in the emotional and spiritual areas, inner healing focuses there. It seeks to bring the power of Christ to bear on healing the roots from which damage springs. Since these are often in the memories carried unconsciously by those who come for help,

---

<sup>1354</sup> Etymology: Healing: "restoration to health," Old English hæleng; see heal. Figurative sense of "restoration of wholeness" is from early 13c.; meaning "touch that cures" is from 1670s. <http://www.etymonline.com>



inner healing involves a special focus on what is sometimes called 'the healing of the memories'. Specific problems often encountered are unforgiveness, anger, bitterness, rejection, low self-esteem, fear, worry and sexual issues.

Inner healing is a form of Christian counselling and prayer which focuses the healing power of the spirit on certain types of emotional and spiritual problems.

As we go through life, we get hurt. When we are hurt, we do our best to keep from falling apart or reacting in such a way that our behaviour is socially unacceptable. Either way, we suppress our honest (truthful) reaction. Suppressing these reactions, while enabling us to cope at the time, becomes counterproductive later. When we suppress our true reactions, it is like putting bandages on open, unhealed wounds without cleansing them first. Those wounds, then, though bandaged, become infected and fester under the bandages. But the bandages leak, allowing the infection to affect our lives long after the cause may have disappeared from our conscious memory.

Ideally, we would have dealt honestly with each hurt at or soon after the time it happened. This is done by facing our true feelings, admitting them and allowing Jesus to take charge. He has invited us to come to him with all of our heavy loads (Matthew 11:28). We are further admonished by Paul to deal with our anger and, presumably, other such reactions before the end of every day (Ephesians 4:26). Above all, as both Jesus and Paul made plain, we are to forgive anyone who has hurt us (Matthew 6:14-15; Ephesians 4:32).

The fact that we have ordinarily not kept such 'short accounts' with our hurts, leaving them to fester within us results in mild to severe disruption in three relationships: with God, with ourselves, and with others. Disruptions in these areas create most of the garbage the enemy takes advantage of. Bringing healing in those areas breaks the enemy's grip on us.

The ideal relationship with God would see us as new and growing creatures (2 Corinthians 5:17), united with the Lord and one with him in spirit (1 Corinthians 6: 17), filled with the Holy Spirit (Acts 2:4) and living as close to the Father as Jesus did (John 5:19,30).

The ideal relationship with self would see us accepting, loving and forgiving ourselves as God accepts, loves and forgives us. We would then see ourselves as full-fledged children of God (1 John 3:1; Romans 8:14-17; Galatians 4:4-7), heirs with Jesus of all that God has for

us, and holding our heads high as his princes and princesses. Such a relationship frees us to totally forgive any who hurt us.

The ideal relationship with others would see us as accepting, loving, and forgiving others as God accepts, loves, and forgives them, and as he has enabled us to accept, love, and forgive ourselves. We relate in a healthy, constructive manner with all others, and especially Christians, free of envy, judgment, and other negative emotions. We also relate properly to all God-ordained authority.

These are the ideals.<sup>1355</sup> These are the goals of inner healing. But with regards to the methods on obtaining it Richard Ing puts forward the following warning<sup>1356</sup>:

*The subject of inner healing has been a controversial issue among Christians. There are some who believe that inner healing is too close to secular psychiatry or occult techniques. I am similarly concerned about occult techniques and shy away from anything that smacks of the occult. On the other hand, I also realize that not everything done in the secular world is the exclusive property of the devil. Remember, the devil has never created anything; he can only counterfeit and corrupt the legitimate creations of God. The structure and functions of the mind all stem from the blueprint of God's original creation.*

Inner healing is therefore in summary a method of dealing with the negative emotions and mind-sets within a person that shape his outward behaviour. They tend to take the form of wrong conclusions, negative agreements, and bad attitudes that affect not only the person but those with whom he comes in contact. These inner realities of the mind and soul are as much a part of spiritual warfare as are the deliberate attacks of demons that must be cast out.

### 6.8.1 Inner Healing Ministers the Love of Jesus

Perhaps the most important reason for inner healing is that the process enables us to really demonstrate and minister the love of Jesus. Jesus simply needs to be invited to come and minister to those who hurt during inner healing sessions. Time and time again, He shows up

---

<sup>1355</sup> Kraft, C H (1992) Defeating Dark Angels. USA: Regal Books, p. 141, 144-145

<sup>1356</sup> Ing, R (2008) Waging Spiritual Warfare. Whitaker House: United States of America, p. 27

in powerful, yet tender ways, touching the deep wounds within people in ways we could never imagine. He alone knows the deep pain buried within the hearts of those to whom we minister. When we call upon the Holy Spirit to guide, he usually gently leads from the less painful events to the more painful ones, healing each as he goes along. As this takes place, trust in Jesus and intimacy with Him is established or restored. This trust and intimacy becomes the base both for overall healing and for fighting the demons and their lies.<sup>1357</sup>

### **6.8.2 Helpful Tips for Accomplishing Inner Healing**

There is no magic formula for relating inner healing to deliverance. Dr Charles Kraft, in his book *Defeating Dark Angels*, suggests some approaches he has found most helpful. These all have to be used according to the leading of the Holy Spirit and after he has been consciously invited to guide the ministry:<sup>1358</sup>

1. *Invite Jesus to appear to the person within the situation.* Before using this approach, we make it clear to clients that (1) we cannot explain why God allowed their abuse, but (2) we know Satan wanted to destroy them, yet (3) they were not destroyed. (4) This must mean that Someone more powerful than Satan was present, protecting them.
2. *A longer procedure we often use is to take the person back to the womb.* This approach provides a means of dealing with certain problems in a general way and of uncovering others that need to be dealt with more specifically. It is based on the psychological theory that children in the womb are greatly affected by what their mother is feeling and thinking. We also assume that enemy forces are actively attempting to destroy or damage babies before birth.
3. *A useful procedure to use with miscarriages and abortions.* This approach also can be modified and used effectively to help a person deal with the death of anyone close. He uses it both for miscarriages and abortions experienced by the person or her husband and for any siblings that may have been lost in this way. Once life has been given, it is for eternity. And when the ones who have given it in some way lose it, the pain can be very great. So He has the person picture the baby, decide on its sex, give the child a name and talk as if the baby had been born. Sometimes apologies are in order; usually there is

---

<sup>1357</sup> Kraft, C H (1992) *Defeating Dark Angels*. USA: Regal Books, p. 149

<sup>1358</sup> Ibid, pp. 150-155

regret to talk about. But since parent and child will get to spend eternity together, it is fun to think of starting conceiving of a relationship in this way. He instructs people to hold and talk to the baby as long as they care to and then to give the baby lovingly to Jesus. In this way, parents agree to accept what Jesus has allowed to happen. They usually will see Jesus lovingly take the baby and disappear with him or her.

4. *How to deal with adulterous relationships and other bonding of human spirits.* If sexual relationships exist with persons other than one's marriage partner, that bonding will inhibit freedom. He first makes sure all sin has been confessed and repented of. Then He asks the person to picture the person bonded with sexually and join him in saying something like, "I break my bonding with so-and-so and renounce any and all ties with that person that are empowered by satanic power". As we said this, one person who had been raped hundreds of times as part of satanic rituals saw all of the men lined up like dominoes and fall down. There are other bonding relationships that need to be broken in this way as well. Homosexual relationships, dominating relationships, and certain close friendships result in what some call 'soul ties'. If there is any suspicion that any of these are empowered by Satan, they need to be broken, using the same method as that for sexual ties.

### **6.8.3 Life's Three Basic Questions**

When we grow up in a dysfunctional, and consequently toxic, home environment we sustain profound losses. Survivors of childhood neglect or outright abuse suffer significant debilitation – physical, mental and spiritual – at the hand of others. In fact, it is essential for the Christian counsellor to see the results of victimisation not only from a psychological standpoint but a spiritual one.

The damage on a spiritual level is frequently the most difficult to recognise and to deal with because it is below the surface of our minds. This spiritual damage involves an inability to think properly or to feel anything that bears witness to what is hidden in our hearts. Numbing strategies and the lies we have been taught make it impossible to cry out our real pain to God.

As survivors of abuse and neglect, we feel that something precious has been stolen from us, and rightly so. Frequently, we have lost our purity, innocence, wholeness, well-being and

sense of belonging. Those losses can result in a brokenness of will and spirit that is nearly crushing. Our victimisation caused us to come to numerous erroneous conclusions regarding our worth as human beings and the moral choices available to us. We grew up believing that we were the exception. Somehow we felt so damaged or despicable that we alone lacked whatever intangible qualities make a human being 'deserving' of love. We never knew that we had intrinsic value or that we deserved to be loved simply by virtue of our existence.

When Satan can use our circumstances to attack us with 'we have no worth', we become vulnerable to all the other lies he want us to believe. If we have no worth, then our feelings and perceptions must also be worthless. God created us to seek Him. He created us with a need to worship Him. All of Satan's efforts are devoted to fill our need to worship God with something other than God.

Our need to know and worship God generates two questions every human strives to answer during the early, formative years. We are also born with an inherent need to avoid pain, which serves the basic function of self-preservation. This brings into play a third question with which children commonly grapple. Life's three basic questions are as follows:

- Who am I?
- What is my purpose?
- What must I do to be safe?

As children we needed to make our lives as simple, safe and secure as possible. That need has an overriding effect on our belief system. Those beliefs then dictate what we do, how we react, and what we expect whenever uncontrollable events take place in our lives. Because such events translate into a lack of safety, we are willing to adopt a self-defeating behaviour in order to make the outcome of any event predictable and therefore 'safe'.

Even if the outcome we opt for is a painful one, we have at least insured that our existence is simple, safe and secure. In turn, our moods become predictable and self-fulfilling. Paranoia and depression serve useful purposes. After all, believing we are always in danger prevents us from being taken by surprise. Believing the worst will always happen prevents us from being disappointed. And remaining isolated prevents us from being rejected.

We maintain our illusion of control – and thereby safety – by reducing our expectations to their lowest possible state. However, our hearts find it difficult to become comfortable with

the lies we have embraced. We find it necessary to wilfully stifle the cry of our hearts in order to make peace with our 'solution'. As we silence our hearts, we make it possible for the powers of darkness to convince us of even greater lies. And that is the most vicious cycle of all. Once our life script has told us who we are and what our purpose in life must be, the circumstances that produce these vicious cycles indicate to us what we must do to be safe. Life's three basic questions seem to have been answered.

Because we are never given the opportunity to talk about what has happened to us, our toxic feelings and misperceptions remain bounded in silence and our answers all wrong. We focus on our own weaknesses and our efforts to compensate rather than our strength in the Lord. As long as we listen to the lies founded in our past experiences, we remain blind to God's truth about our future.

When we incorporate any lie – even in the form of a misperception – into our lives, we fall prey to forces outside our awareness. These forces are governed by the Father of Lies. Darkness waits to take advantage of every untruth we incorporate into our thinking as evil gains a larger and larger place in the shadows of our mind. Humankind was made in God's image. He has fashioned and integrated a pattern for our lives that requires heart, soul and mind to function in unison. When they don't, we become dysfunctional. Satan knows this and works at perpetrating our misperceptions. By creating circumstances in our lives that cause us to fear that our perceptions can't be trusted, he succeeds in creating a split between our mind and our heart. We figuratively lose our minds. In convincing us we have no right to our feelings, he creates a split between our heart and our will. We then lose heart. Lastly, we just give up trying to be our true selves.

We need to replace the lies we have believed with the truth. *For as he thinks in his heart, so is he* (Proverbs 23:7 NKJV). As we make this substitution, we learn to trust God with our emotions – to allow our hearts to speak again. God designed us with emotions. He won't "scold" us for expressing them. As we infuse our thought-life with the truth and vent our suppressed emotions, our choices will begin to reflect the fact that we are new creations in Christ Jesus. Old perceptions will finally give way to a whole new way of seeing things.<sup>1359</sup>

---

<sup>1359</sup> Johnson, M (1992) *Spiritual Warfare for the Wounded*. Michigan: Vine Books, pp. 23-25, 100-101, 103

#### 6.8.4 A Model for Recovery

Dr Mark Johnson, in his book *Spiritual Warfare for the Wounded*, gives the following model for recovery from wounding.<sup>1360</sup>

- *Take Responsibility.* Yes, someone wronged us. But we are the ones with the problem. We need to acknowledge that we are choosing to remain alone, dependent, irresponsible, inconsistent and uncommitted. It is up to us to take responsibility for our recovery, secure in the knowledge that we are not alone. God is with us.
- *Define the Problem.* Once we have identified the areas where we have suffered an arrest in our developmental process, we can define our needs more accurately. Then, with God's help, we are able to see that those needs are met.
- *Ask God For Help.* Ask God for help in overcoming the past. He has proven Himself faithful. He will never leave nor forsaken His children (Deuteronomy 31:6).
- *Find Appropriate People to Help.* Positive experiences with others help repair developmental breaks. As each break is healed, maturing will take place in the individual. There is a time and place for therapy groups for certain individuals. Each case is unique.
- *Expect the Recovery Process to be Painful.* In order to recover, one must uncover. The process necessarily includes uncovering pain, grief, anger and fear. It is helpful to keep in mind that those feelings have been hidden within all along. This is not an introduction of those feelings into someone's life, merely an exposure of them to God's healing light.
- *Expect to Fail.* We can slow our progress by expecting to make major strides simply as the result of identifying our recovery needs. The identification of those needs is simply a first step. Expect to take many, many "baby" steps for some while. Our progress can seem excruciatingly slow in the beginning. We must allow ourselves the luxury of failing. We will learn as much or more from our "mistakes" or "failures" as we do from our successes. *God's grace is sufficient for you, for (his) power is made perfect in weakness* (2 Corinthians 12:9).

---

<sup>1360</sup> Ibid, pp. 118-125

- *Develop the Habit of Seeing through the Eyes of God.* We are perfected in Jesus Christ. We are already victors and have access to the throne of grace through Jesus Christ. If we can learn to go easy on ourselves, we will make faster progress. If we can see ourselves in the process of “becoming” rather than as we are at this moment, we will be kicking the supports out from under one more of Satan’s lies: “It’s hopeless, I’ll never make it”. Don’t believe it. There is hope in all our tomorrows. When we accepted Jesus Christ as our Saviour, God began his work in us. Philippians 1:6 tells us that you can be *confident in this, that he who began a good work in you will carry it to completion until the day of Christ Jesus*. You will make it. It just takes time.
- *Continually Invite God to be Part of the Recovery Process.* Through prayer, through the application of God’s Word, and by inviting God to reveal truth to our spirits, we consciously acknowledge that God is at work in our recovery. When we remind ourselves that God is orchestrating the events of our lives in order to promote our healing, our recovery progresses more quickly than it otherwise would.
- *Learn to be Real.* We have probably attempted to hide the handicaps that have resulted from our developmental arrests. We need to abandon any such attempts. This, of course, is a trust issue. When we lack trust, then we will usually suffer from generalised fearfulness, blaming and projection, isolationism, chronic dissatisfaction, hyper vigilance, and even panic attacks. While trust is the issue, it has a lot more to do with whether or not we trust God than it does whether we trust our fellows. When we learn to trust God, we find that we can risk being “real”. After all, if God is for us, who can be against us?
- *Identifying the Lies.* Overcoming each of our developmental arrests will become easier if we are able to identify the lie we have believed in response to the events that caused our arrests. A stage one arrest, resulting in the inability to trust, is usually accompanied by misbeliefs like these:
  - “No one can be trusted”
  - “I’m safer alone”
  - “Bonding with another human being is an impossible dream”

Given the incapacity to achieve autonomy or separation, which results from a stage two arrest, we tend to believe that:

- “My safety depends on remaining dependent”
- “Setting personal boundaries is dangerous because it separates me from others”



A couple of lies that accompany a stage three arrest resulting in a lack of initiative are:

- “People won’t like me if I take the initiative”
- “I’m not safe unless I wait for someone else to tell me what to do”

Untruths we believe as a result of a stage four arrest where our industriousness is undermined tend to be:

- “My work and I are one and the same”
- “When someone criticises my work, they criticise me”
- “Nothing I do will ever be good enough”
- “Why try?”

As a result of the absence of a clear-cut identity, which is a reflection of a stage five arrest, we come to these kinds of wrong conclusions:

- “I don’t know who I am”
- “If I admit I’m wrong, I’m admitting I’m no good”

If we are unable to commit to another person, as a result of a developmental break in stage six, we think:

- “I have to give up me in order to love you”
- “If I commit to the service of God, I will have to give up everything I want and everything I am”

Ascribing to such lies keeps us relationally handicapped, incapable of enjoying the fullness of God’s grace within the fellowship of believers. Our woundedness results in mistrust, misunderstanding and misuse of one another. The church then becomes just another dysfunctional family.

When we see God as loving and sovereign, we find it easier to trust him and one another. We are able to rest in God’s goodness as we hack away at the falsehoods in our lives with the sword of truth. We can rest in the knowledge that nothing that happens to us is out of God’s control. Nothing has taken Him by surprise. God has promised to use the events of our lives to build us up and to help us to better reflect his Son, Jesus Christ.

We need to approach each new phase of our recovery with prayer and a genuine desire to become all that God wants us to be. Along with that desire, we need the assurance that God sees us as already perfected. Our place with him is guaranteed. Being continually mindful of God's sovereignty allows us to accept the pace at which we are able to grow. It also affords us the self-acceptance to openly admit the handicaps that have resulted from our developmental arrests. When we know that we are completely accepted by God just as we are, we are enabled to separate ourselves from the lies that we have believed. When we openly admit our shortcomings, we invite God to perfect his strength in our weakness (2 Corinthians 12:9). Such a stance also allows us the courage to confess our shortcomings, fears, and secret shame. We know that we are confessing to a loving Father who only wants to help us overcome them.

- *Discovering Secrets.* The shame of a secret that remains in hiding provides a foothold for Satan. Frequently, our shame stems from a milestone experience – a traumatic event frozen in time through the act of repression. It holds within it the kernel of our shame and much of our shame-based behaviour is founded on it. Once we have openly admitted our secret and confessed whatever wrong we feel may have been our responsibility, whether legitimate or not, we will be free from that milestone shame. Many of us feel shame over the fact that our bodies responded pleasurably when we were molested. We may feel shame over having supplanted our mother or father in the life of his or her spouse. We feel shame over our anger, our childish plans for revenge, our loss of innocence and purity. The list can seem endless. Many of these things were simply not our fault, but the shame and guilt we feel as a result of our experiences is nonetheless real. Once we have confessed all of it to our Daddy-God, we have deprived Satan of one of his strongholds in our lives. We are free to admit our anger, move on to grief and, finally, to healing.
- *Recovery Check List.* Once you know the relational issues that most hinder you, you can begin to explore ways to overcome them. Is it trust, autonomy, initiative, industry, identity, or intimacy? You most likely struggle with more than one of these issues. Choose to work first on the issue that developed earliest in your life. Here is a checklist for the client to aid in the recovery process:
  - Take responsibility for solving this problem.
  - Confess all my secrets to God.
  - Promise to seek help and not to go it alone.
  - Pray daily, inviting God to show me in what ways I need to change and how.

- Search the Scriptures each day to seek a fuller knowledge of the truth.
- Accept the fact that I will have setbacks or “failures” in the course of my recovery and that’s okay. I will learn from them too.
- Do my best to keep a daily log in order to track the progress I make in whatever area I happen to be working on. For example, if I am working on trust issues, then each day I will log whom I have trusted and in what ways.

### **6.8.5 Dealing with Power and Anger**

As children we cried out for the assurance that we mattered to someone. But, when it became apparent to us that we had no significance to those who were most important to us, we learned to cover our hurt by convincing ourselves that we could live very nicely without those people. We claimed power in place of significance. We derived power from denying our emotions, struggling to remain unflappable, striving to have all our own answers. We learned to live out our lives strictly in our heads rather than our hearts. We often denied our feelings because our caretakers interpreted any show of emotions as a challenge to their authority or as an intentional reminder of their failures.

We also denied our feelings because our anger or sorrow reminded us that we were at the mercy of the adults who abused or neglected us. That didn’t feel safe. We convinced ourselves of a kind of “omnipotence” in order to feel less threatened. And many of us find it necessary to deny our memories in order to keep our sense of power intact. In addition, our abusers often led us to believe that we were responsible for much of what went on around us. We were often “parentified” through having been enlisted by the adults in our lives as sexual partners, confidants and helpers. Playing these roles added to our feelings of omnipotence. We became hungry for any knowledge that would help us show the world we were capable. We were driven to become “do it alls” and “know it alls”.

In order to recover from the abuse and neglect we suffered as children, we have to renounce the false power we have claimed. We need to eat from the Tree of Life and give up our self-sufficiency. We need to acknowledge, absolutely, that God alone is omnipotent. Only then will we feel safe enough to unlock the secret compartment of our hearts and truly feel all of our emotions, especially our anger. Repressed anger is continually recycled within us. It plays itself out in our decisions and reactions to others over and over again, becoming

progressively more toxic. Even when we have no consciousness of our anger, it relentlessly continues to poison us. Repressed anger will remain a poison within until we express it.

The next step is forgiveness. Only true forgiveness can follow anger. What is there to forgive if we have nothing to be angry about? When we choose to “forget” what has happened to us before we have fully expressed our anger, we are simply choosing to maintain our control and omnipotence. Denying the pain of our past cuts us off from God’s strength. We can only continue in our denial when we maintain an image of false strength and self-sufficiency. Denying anger results in counterfeit forgiveness. Many of us manufacture forgiveness in an effort to be obedient, while scrambling to maintain our illusion of self-sufficiency. That false forgiveness leads to legalism, moralism, and false pride. Forgiveness that follows and honest expression of hurt and anger is the only kind of forgiveness that makes it possible for anyone to align their hearts with the gospel. When we relinquish our omnipotence, we can finally acknowledge our true feelings. When we acknowledge our feelings, we admit our vulnerability. And when we admit our vulnerability, we find that we stand in need of a loving God.

Releasing our emotions serves two purposes:

- *On a psychological level*, such a release allows us to circumvent our developmental arrest. Our pent up emotions tend to prevent us from processing new experiences that might help us to grow up. Once we have expressed them, we are free to substitute healthier relational experiences for the unhealthy ones stored in our memory.
- *On a spiritual level*, we learn a new way of relating to God when we risk being transparent with Him. We learn that we have significance. We give ourselves the chance to experience His grace in a new way. Revealing our true emotions to God – who is fully aware of them anyway – also removes one more opportunity for Satan to whisper accusations in our ear. Once we have expressed all the secrets of our hearts to our loving Daddy-God, we have nothing left to hide. There is nothing left for Satan to threaten to expose. In releasing our repressed emotions, we also experience God’s forgiveness. We can finally leave behind forever the guilt we have felt over our hidden anger and the resulting bitterness.

Anger is always a secondary emotion, a response that follows some other very intense emotion, like fear or pain. The sooner you discover the emotion behind the anger and deal with that, the sooner you will be free to get on with your life in Christ.

Many of us may need to admit that we are angry with God before we can get on with our recovery. Most survivors are. In fact, we are usually angry with God, ourselves and everyone else. If we are to be completely healed, it is essential that we be honest about the anger we feel – including the anger we feel with God. There are three common indications that someone is mad at God: (1) being grudgingly obedient; (2) wanting to serve God but remaining mistrustful of His promises; and (3) believing what God says, yet remaining disobedient to His commands.

Being begrudging or disobedient is perhaps easier to see as anger than is mistrust. However, the author of Hebrews says, *Anyone who comes to him must (already) believe that he exists and that he rewards those who earnestly seek him* (Hebrews 11:6). Withholding trust is one way of telling God we don't want to give in to Him.

Whatever anger we feel – whether with God, ourselves or those around us – can only heal completely when we face that anger, acknowledge it, and work it through to forgiveness.<sup>1361</sup>

### **6.8.6 Healing the Soul**

The soul consists of the mind, will and emotions. The complete healing of the soul has to involve all of these levels individually, to finally form a healthy whole unit functioning according to God's plan and design. The active mind studies and tests God's Word, sees it work, believes it, accepts it, trusts it and relies on it. It is continually learning more of God's will and obeying His precepts.

At a mental level, healing involves taking full responsibility for oneself, committing to oneself and to happiness and health, and releasing any habit, behaviour, job, persons, attitudes or emotions that are blocking healing. It also involves discipline, forgiveness of self and others, allowing (the process of receiving healing) and to surrender all to God: our fears, feelings of smallness, symptoms and even the ego's feelings of despair. Healing also involves a new understanding of who we are and why we are here; identifying and getting rid of wrong and

---

<sup>1361</sup> Johnson, M (1992) *Spiritual Warfare for the Wounded*. Michigan: Vine Books, pp. 160-178

damaging mind-sets, building new and healthy mental models and bringing our will intentionally under submission of Jesus (1 Peter 5:6-10); and finally through the renewal of the mind obtain the mind of Christ.

Emotional healing requires detaching oneself from what is for many people an emotional roller coaster. Emotional healing also involves letting go of all that is not conducive to a positive emotional environment. For many, this is the most difficult step in emotional healing. This can mean a change in one's relationships, one's family situation, work or even location. Some situations are clearly damaging and negative from an emotional viewpoint and will block healing.

*See Chapter 2 - Dissevering the Mind*

The client needs to take the responsibility to actively respond. The healing process requires taking full responsibility for everything in one's life. Taking full responsibility for whatever exists and acknowledging that there is a problem is the first steps to full recovery. If misunderstood, taking full responsibility can cause extreme guilt, remorse and self-blame. Much of this comes from old and wrong attitudes about a harsh, judgmental God or from other harsh authority figures that have become internalised. Guilt is always false because one does not ever know all the facts about a situation.

Finally a solid desire for healing, no matter how it is felt, is essential for healing. If the client does not really desire the healing but doing it for someone or something else, the healing will not be authentic and will not carry lasting results.

## **6.9. PHYSICAL HEALING**

<sup>37</sup> *For with God nothing is ever impossible and no word from God shall be without power or impossible of fulfillment.*

*Luke 1:37*

Before people can have a steadfast faith for the healing of their body, they must be rid of all uncertainty concerning God's will in the matter. Appropriating faith cannot go beyond one's knowledge of the revealed will of God. Before attempting to exercise faith for physical

healing, one needs to know what the Scriptures plainly teach, that it is just as much God's will to heal the body (of every person) as it is to heal the soul and spirit.

The Scriptures declare, in Romans 5:12, that *by one man sin entered the world, and death by sin*. Here it is plainly stated that death entered the world by sin. Therefore, it is clear that disease, which is incipient death (whether mental, spiritual or physically), entered into the world by sin. Since disease entered by sin, its true remedy must be found in the redemption of Christ. It is the devil who oppresses (Acts 10:38), so when nature fails, what power can remove disease but the power of the Son of God? As soon as disease has advanced beyond the power of nature to restore, it will result in death, in every case, unless removed by the power of God. When disease has advanced beyond the power of nature, neither nature, nor the physician, nor even prayer can save the sufferer until he confesses the relevant sins and/or iniquity or unless God, for some sovereign purpose of His own, removes the disease. Since disease is a part of the curse, its true remedy must be the cross. Who can remove the curse but God, and how can God justly do it except by substitution?<sup>1362</sup>

Repentance is the condition for all healing. Repentance, from a Biblical perspective, doesn't involve just saying sorry with words – the original Greek word for repentance means to change your thinking. There is a connection between healing and repentance – confessing your faults and putting things right. The medical field discovered that 87% of diseases are a result of what goes on in our thought life. Science is therefore saying that you need to change your thinking in order to recover or be healed from 87% of diseases. The Bible's definition of "changing your thinking" is "repentance". Therefore, even science is saying that you need to repent in order to recover from disease.

*See Chapter 1 – 1.5 The Brain and Thoughts*

Some people desire to be healed but they don't want to change or to be changed in order to be healed. These people need to come to the place where they have a change of heart so that they desire to have "I AM" in their life and not just to have the problem removed. God wants you changed before He ever wants you healed because He knows that if you repent and walk in obedience, healing is yours automatically in the overwhelming majority of cases (Deuteronomy 28:1-2).

---

<sup>1362</sup> Bosworth, F F (2000) Christ the Healer. USA: Baker Books, pp. 15,23-24

Jesus died for all people and paid the price for our sins once and for all. Does that mean that all people in the world are saved? No. If it was finished why isn't everyone saved? The reason is that we have to appropriate what Jesus did on the cross to our lives by faith. The same principle applies to healing. According to Isaiah 53:5, by His stripes we are healed and made whole. So is everybody healed of disease? No. Why not? Because we have to appropriate it through our obedience. Some people in the church are trying to appropriate what Jesus did on the cross but are continuing in disobedience to the Word and therefore it is not working. Just because it was finished and Jesus bore the penalty of the curse, this does not mean that you can keep your sin and still have your healing.

There are conditions to healing. So many people are not healed because they use the Name of Jesus but they are disobedient to the Word of God, and Psalm 138:2 tell us that *He exalts His Word even above His Name*. If you want the Name of Jesus to work, be obedient to the Word of God and then His Name will be powerful in healing. God does not have to honour the Name of Jesus if you are disobedient to the Word. Unfortunately, the church has come to the place where they have overplayed grace and mercy to the point where they flippantly say, "Because you are in covenant (being under grace) you can sin like the devil and there are no consequences". What a lie and deception! There are consequences to sin for the believer as well as the person who hasn't received Christ into his life yet. Grace and mercy are not a licence to sin; they require an application of truth. Grace makes it possible for us to repent for sin and receive healing in the process.<sup>1363</sup>

A final note: it is central to manage healing expectations as the wrong expectations can bring disappointment and disbelief. Therefore, it is important to understand the difference between a healing and a miracle<sup>1364</sup>:

- A *miracle* speaks of an instantaneous and complete healing that goes beyond any law of physics and beyond any human ability.
- *Healing*, however, is a gradual process which means that the individual becomes restored to complete wholeness over a longer time period

---

<sup>1363</sup> Strydom, M K (2010) Healing Begins with Sanctification of the Heart. Eagle Wings Ministries, pp. 38-40

<sup>1364</sup> Complete Christian Living, Is there a difference between Bible Healing and Miracles? [Online] Available from: <http://www.complete-christian-living-bible-study.com/bible-healing.html> [Accessed: 30 October 2014]



### 6.9.1 Healing the Brain

In order to bring complete and lasting physical healing to the brain, the following needs to happen: (1) repentance of the underlying associated sin, iniquity and rebellion; (2) dealing with any associated ties, strongholds, curses and covenants; (3) deliverance of the demonic hosts attached to the brain and workings of the brain; (4) restoration and healing done by Jesus; and (5) eating and living healthy.

*See Annexure: Partnering with the Human Spirit for Cleansing the Brain*

## 6.10. LIGHT, JOY AND PEACE

The book of Enoch 6:9 states that<sup>1365</sup>

*The elect shall possess light, joy, and peace; and they shall inherit the earth.*

That is the ultimate place for the believer to be – the place of ‘life in abundance’ which Jesus came for (John 10:10), a place where there is no darkness, joy unstoppable and peace that surpasses all understanding.

### 6.10.1 Light

*<sup>6</sup>For God Who said, Let light shine out of darkness, has shone in our hearts so as [to beam forth] the Light for the illumination of the knowledge of the majesty and glory of God [as it is manifest in the Person and is revealed] in the face of Jesus Christ (the Messiah).*

*2 Corinthians 4:6*

---

<sup>1365</sup> The Book of Enoch, Chapter 6 [Online] Available from: <http://www.bibliotecapleyades.net/enoch/1enoch01-60.htm> [Accessed: 30 October 2014]

In this light<sup>1366</sup>, we will see the glory of Christ, that it cannot bear any secret, hidden, scandalous practices, and that it held forth the word of light and life to others. The true God is represented as the author of light, and producing it by a word of command out of mere darkness. When darkness was upon the face of the deep God said, *let there be light and there was light* (Genesis 1:2-3). This character of God, as creating light in this wonderful manner, is prefaced to His giving spiritual light unto his people. As there was darkness upon the earth before there was light, so there is a natural darkness in the minds of men, before any spiritual light is infused into them; and as light was the first production out of the dark and unformed chaos, so light is the first thing that is struck into the soul in conversion. Moreover, as light was the effect of almighty power, so is the spiritual illumination, or the opening of the eyes of the understandings of men, who are naturally born blind. As light was a creation of that which was not before, so the work of grace on the soul is not an increase of, or an addition to, or an improvement on the light of nature, but it is a new light, created in the understanding.

The hearts of men are like a dark globe, having no light in them. God is as the sun, the fountain of light, which shines upon them and in them so as to give them a true sight and sense of sin, and of their lost state and condition; so as to cause them to see the fullness and suitableness of Christ as a Saviour; so as to warm their affections, and draw out their desires after Christ, his ways, truths, ordinances, and people; and so as to give them light into the mysteries of the Gospel.<sup>1367</sup>

The Lord showed the late Smith Wigglesworth a vision about an end time ministry<sup>1368</sup>. In this vision, he saw a giant representing the Church and as this giant stands and praises the Lord great drops of liquid light like rain drops are poured out onto His children.

---

<sup>1366</sup> Etymology: Light: "brightness, radiant energy," Old English leht, earlier leoht "light, daylight; luminous, beautiful," from Proto-Germanic \*leukhtam (cognates: Old Saxon lioht, Old Frisian liacht, Middle Dutch lucht, Dutch licht, Old High German lioht, German Licht, Gothic liuhap "light"), from PIE \*leuk- "light, brightness" (cognates: Sanskrit rocate "shines;" Armenian lois "light," lusi "moon;" Greek leukos "bright, shining, white;" Latin lucere "to shine," lux "light," lucidus "clear;" Old Church Slavonic luci "light;" Lithuanian laukas "pale;" Welsh llug "gleam, glimmer;" Old Irish loche "lightning," luchair "brightness;" Hittite lukezi "is bright"). <http://www.etymonline.com>

<sup>1367</sup> Bible Study Tools, 2 Corinthians 4:6 [Online] Available from: <http://www.biblestudytools.com/commentaries/gills-exposition-of-the-bible/2-corinthians-4-6.html> [Accessed: 1 November 2014]

<sup>1368</sup> Wigglesworth, S (2005) *The Smith Wigglesworth Prophecy and the Greatest Revival of All Times*. New Kensington: Whitaker House, pp. 123-127

Wigglesworth continues:

*suddenly I saw a figure in white, in glistening white-the most glorious thing that I have ever seen in all my life. I did not see the face, but somehow I knew that it was the Lord Jesus Christ. Somehow I knew it was Jesus Himself. And He stretched forth His hand. As He did so, He would stretch it forth to one, and to another, and to another; He stretched forth His hand upon the peoples and the nations of the world, men and women. As He pointed towards them, this liquid light seemed to flow from His hand into this person, and a mighty anointing of God came upon him or her. And those people began to go forth in the name of the Lord. He continued to stretch forth His hand. But there was a tragedy. There were many people, as He stretched forth His hand, who refused the anointing of God and the call of God. I saw many women I knew, people whom I felt certainly would receive the call of God, but, as He stretched forth His hand toward this one, and toward that one, they simply bowed their heads and began to back away. And to each of those who seemed to bow down and back away, he or she seemed to go into darkness. Blackness seemed to swallow them everywhere... I saw people who were bound with paralysis and sickness and blindness; as the Lord stretch forth His hand to give them this anointing, they became well, they became healed and they went forth.... Those people with this anointing would stretch forth their hand exactly as the Lord did. And it seemed that there was this liquid fire that seemed to be in their hands. As they stretch forth their hand, they said "According to my word, be thou made whole". The Lord says: "when My people will stretch forth their hands and these people shall be made whole".*

## 6.10.2 Joy

Joy<sup>1369</sup> is a relational experience that is the basis for spiritual experience, human bonding, healthy identity growth and good health generally. Joy is the normal state as biological beings. No one seeks treatment for joy reduction. No one complains to co-workers about too much joy in their lives. No one worries about loved ones who are just too joyful these days. The problem is people who are failing to thrive, living in conflict and not seeming to know or remember that joy is a natural and rewarding way to live.

---

<sup>1369</sup> Etymology: Joy: c.1200, "feeling of pleasure and delight;" c.1300, "source of pleasure or happiness," from Old French joie (11c.), from Latin gaudia, plural of gaudium "joy," from gaudere "rejoice," from PIE root \*gau- "to rejoice" (cognates: Greek gaio "I rejoice," Middle Irish guaire "noble"). Joy-riding is American English, 1908. <http://www.etymonline.com>

We are conformed to Christ's likeness through suffering. It is the potter's hand putting pressure on the clay. Christ called us to sacrifice and die to self in our lives, with the following instructions for rejoicing:

*12 Beloved, do not be amazed and bewildered at the fiery ordeal which is taking place to test your quality, as though something strange (unusual and alien to you and your position) were befalling you. 13 But insofar as you are sharing Christ's sufferings, rejoice, so that when His glory [full of radiance and splendor] is revealed, you may also rejoice with triumph [exultantly]. 14 If you are censured and suffer abuse [because you bear] the name of Christ, blessed [are you—happy, fortunate, to be envied, with life-joy, and satisfaction in God's favor and salvation, regardless of your outward condition], because the Spirit of glory, the Spirit of God, is resting upon you. On their part He is blasphemed, but on your part He is glorified.*

*1 Peter 4:12-14*

*<sup>17</sup> And if we are [His] children, then we are [His] heirs also: heirs of God and fellow heirs with Christ [sharing His inheritance with Him]; only we must share His suffering if we are to share His glory.*

*Romans 8:17*

Rick Joyner<sup>1370</sup> had a prophetic dream in September 2014 of which the following are some of the things the Lord showed him<sup>1371</sup>. God's people are going to experience increasing joy, peace and success in accomplishing what they are here to accomplish in this world, which in itself is breaking down into increasing chaos. Their lives are going to get better every day. The believer cannot put off any more to draw closer to God and to seek the Kingdom of God, which is the key to joy. There are going to be two recognisable streams of believers to come, the ones drawing closer to God and building their lives on the Kingdom of God, and the ones who don't. Those who pursue the Lord with all their heart and soul and might will find new and deeper joy in the Lord. A person's capacity for joy and love in heaven are being set while being on earth. The believer needs to be consumed and overcome by God and not the darkness. He needs the joy of the Lord to be his strength to make it through what is coming. You will know the people by the joy as ones who walk with the Lord. The key to eternal joy is

---

<sup>1370</sup> Rick Joyner is Founder and Executive Director of MorningStar Ministries and Heritage International Ministries and is the Senior Pastor at MorningStar Fellowship Church. Rick is President of The Oak Initiative, an interdenominational movement that mobilizes Christians to engage in the great issues of our time. He has authored more than forty books, including *The Final Quest Trilogy*, *There Were Two Trees in the Garden*, and *A New America*.

<sup>1371</sup> Joyner, R, Heaven [Online] Available from: <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=7yxtHh7UEL0> [Accessed: 13 October 2014]

available to all believers and they need to advance into the Kingdom every day, otherwise they will be falling into increasing chaos, darkness, anxiety and fear with the rest of the world.

Rich Joyner testifies<sup>1372</sup>:

*I was told that in the times to come, God's people will be so happy that the rest of the world will think we are mentally challenged. One major reason for this is that God's people will have become obedient to the exhortation of Colossians 3:1-2: Therefore if you have been raised up with Christ, keep seeking the things above, where Christ is, seated at the right hand of God. Set your mind on the things above, not on the things that are on earth.*

<sup>12</sup> *Restore to me the joy of Your salvation and uphold me with a willing spirit.*

*Psalm 51:12*

### 6.10.3 Peace

*You will guard him and keep him in perfect and constant peace whose mind [both its inclination and its character] is stayed on You, because he commits himself to You, leans on You, and hopes confidently in You.*

*Isaiah 26:3*

The result of focusing our minds on God is peace,<sup>1373</sup> the opposite of war, turmoil and chaos. A person can be victorious in the battle with Satan for his mind. When he is, he will find his mind at peace with God. That prepares him to worship and serve Him with all of his heart and mind<sup>1374</sup>.

- Pray now, committing your mind to God and asking Him to help you be aware of the ways Satan is attacking you in this area.
- Pray continuously throughout the day to rid your mind of empty or destructive thoughts and to replace these with positive, constructive ones.

---

<sup>1372</sup> Joyner, R True Peace and Joy [Online] Available from: <http://www.morningstarministries.org/resources/word-week/2014/true-peace-and-joy-great-commission-part-18#.VFS7yVf4Lg4> [Accessed: 30 October 2014]

<sup>1373</sup> Etymology: Peace: Sense of "quiet" is attested by 1300; meaning "absence or cessation of war or hostility" is attested from c.1300. <http://www.etymonline.com>

<sup>1374</sup> The Battle for Your Mind (<http://www.lwf.org/site/News2?id=11295>)

- Pray God will use your victories to encourage others that are in the battle of their minds.

Romans 8:6 tells us that to be spiritually-minded is life and peace.

*<sup>28</sup> Invoke blessings upon and pray for the happiness of those who curse you, implore God's blessing (favor) upon those who abuse you [who revile, reproach, disparage, and high-handedly misuse you].*

*Luke 6:28*

For those who love the Lord and long for His coming, there is no greater peace than seeing who Jesus is and where He sits—far above all rule and authority and dominion. There are none that can overcome Him, and none that He cannot overcome. He is the Irresistible Force and the Immovable Object. He is the Rock that cannot be moved. If we build our lives on doing His will, nothing can move us either. He encouraged us in John 16:33:

*<sup>33</sup> I have told you these things, so that in Me you may have [perfect] peace and confidence. In the world you have tribulation and trials and distress and frustration; but be of good cheer [take courage; be confident, certain, undaunted]! For I have overcome the world. [I have deprived it of power to harm you and have conquered it for you.]*

If our hope is in the things of this world, we will experience increasing tribulation. If we have built our lives on this world, our hearts will be full of fear like everyone else's in the world. It is only in the Lord that we have peace. Now is the time to set our hearts wholly on Him and seek first His kingdom and His righteousness.

## **6.11. FINAL NOTES**

The secret with dealing with insanity and psychosis is to constantly carry the client in prayer. There might be instances where the Lord will show to no longer pray or counsel someone. This will be the exception, but only the Lord knows the heart and desires of people. These people might have given their lives over to Satan by choice and will and therefore not be saveable.

## 6.12. CONCLUSION

Jesus Christ of Nazareth, Son of the Almighty God, is the only answer to insanity and psychosis, bringing lasting freedom, healing and full restoration to spirit, soul and body. There is no quick fix when it comes to this solution: it takes a lifetime of commitment in maturing into a son or daughter of the Most High.

Whatever the origin or location of the insanity and psychosis, the first step to recovery and healing is for the client to recognise and acknowledge that he has a problem and that he cannot deal with it himself; secondly he must desire with everything in him to be released, no matter the cost; and lastly, he needs to have surrendered his life with every aspect thereof to the Lord Jesus of Nazareth.

True joy can only come from a sold-out relationship with the Lord Jesus Christ and the infilling of His Holy Spirit. The fruit of the Spirit is manifold and includes love and joy.

*<sup>6</sup> Humble yourselves therefore under the mighty hand of God, that he may exalt you in due time:<sup>7</sup> Casting all your care upon him; for he careth for you. <sup>8</sup>Be sober, be vigilant; because your adversary the devil, as a roaring lion, walketh about, seeking whom he may devour: <sup>9</sup>Whom resist steadfast in the faith, knowing that the same afflictions are accomplished in your brethren that are in the world. <sup>10</sup> But the God of all grace, who hath called us unto his eternal glory by Christ Jesus, after that ye have suffered a while, make you perfect, stablish, strengthen, settle you. <sup>11</sup> To him be glory and dominion for ever and ever. Amen.*

*1 Peter 5:5-11*

This Scripture simply means, "Don't think you can solve all your problems on your own". Instead of pridefully taking matters into your own hands, you must learn to humble yourself under God's mighty hand. When He knows that the time is right, He will exalt you and lift you up. As a person, wait on God and refuse to move in fleshly zeal; there is a "dying to self" that takes place. He begins to die to his own ways and his own timing and to become alive to God's will and way.

Satan will aggressively fight against the renewal of a person's mind, but it is vital that the person press on and continue to pray and study in this area until he gains measurable

victory. Believers all over the world are presently engaged in a battle against principalities, powers and demons. These spirits, serving in the kingdom of Satan, are striving for *the souls of men*; and the outcome of this conflict, like any conflict, is determined by proper or improper preparation as one engages the enemy. Then there is the matter of roaming alien human spirits that the body of Christ is not yet familiar or comfortable with as it does not fit into the theology of many, nor and does it follow the same rules as in the case of deliverance of demonic entities.

However, the battle remains the Lords and He will give the strategy to receive the victory already obtained by the cross. He is very willing and able to do it! There is no recipe when it comes in partnering with a client through spiritual warfare. What worked for one client might not work for the next. Our part (as counsellors) in all this is to simply keep our hearts submissive to His leading. God has called us to rejoice with those who rejoice, and weep with those who weep (Romans 12:15). It is the work of the cross that continues to enforce Christ's victory over Satan today. It is the only way out of insanity and psychosis. But we must apply it daily to receive our full deliverance and to keep the freedom. Anyone can be delivered from this evil age, from the law, from self, from the flesh, from the enemy and from the world.

You *can* disarm Satan and his followers. And when you disarm the enemy using the cross as your weapon, you will be in a place of ultimate security, a place on the other side of the cross. That security comes as we make a commitment to God to go His way in His timing. It comes as we deny ourselves, take up our cross, and follow Him, unconditionally. Deny yourself. Take up your cross. Follow Him!

Now let us make this personal declaration in this spiritual warfare to full and complete restoration and healing from insanity and psychosis, given to us by Derek Prince<sup>1375</sup>:

*Through the blood of Jesus, I am redeemed out of the hand of the devil. While I'm walking in the light, the blood of Jesus is cleansing me, now and continually, from all sin. Through the blood of Jesus, I am justified, acquitted, not guilty, made righteous, just-as-if-I'd never sinned. Through the blood of Jesus, I am sanctified, set apart from sin and Satan's kingdom, and made partaker of God's holiness.*

---

<sup>1375</sup> Prince, D (2006) *Lucifer Exposed*. UK: Derek Prince Ministries, p. 68



There are evil powers, but Jesus is greater than all evil powers. There are tremendous diseases, but Jesus is the Healer. There is no case too hard for Him. The Lion of Judah *will break* every chain, no matter the source, no matter the intensity. He came to relieve the oppressed and to set the captives free (Luke 4:18). He came to bring redemption, to make every believer as perfect as man was before the Fall.

-----oOo-----



## Conclusion

*<sup>32</sup> And you will know the truth, and the truth will set you free. <sup>36</sup> So if the Son sets you free, you are truly free.*

*John 8:32,36*

*Happy is he who has broken the chains which hurt the mind, and given up worrying once and for all.*

*Ovid.*

When Solomon stood before God and asked what the people of Israel should do in light of their sins and subsequent social demise, God provided an answer, spelled out in four biblical fundamentals: they were to humble themselves, pray, seek His Face and turn from their wickedness (2 Chronicles 7:14). If Israel would do these things, revival was certain to come. God would hear their prayers, forgive their sins, and heal their cities. These principles are eternal. God is unchanging. Jesus is the same yesterday, today, and forever, and the law of precedence suggests that what He has done for others He will do for us – TODAY.

Much like the Godhead being Father, Son, and Spirit, we are a unity of three distinct but interconnected parts: body, mind and spirit. Because of this, the person struggling with insanity or psychosis needs a holistic approach to treatment that takes into account all three aspects of a person's being.

In the area of the body, the brain and endocrine system needs to be functioning as per original design from God. Insanity or psychosis can be the result of a damaged brain; however, it is a plastic, living organ that can actually change its own structure and function, even into old age. Arguably the most important breakthrough in neuroscience since scientists first sketched out the brain's basic anatomy, this revolutionary discovery called *neuroplasticity* promises to overthrow the centuries-old notion that the brain is fixed and unchanging. The brain is not, as was thought, like a machine, or 'hardwired' like a computer. Neuroplasticity not only gives hope to those with mental limitations, or what was thought to be incurable brain damage, but expands our understanding of the healthy brain and the resilience of human nature.

In the area of the soul, the mind, will and emotions need to be brought in alignment with the Word of God. Insanity and psychosis are often a battle between reality and wrong or negative thoughts that overwhelm a person's mind. *You're not good enough! No one loves you! You are a waste to humanity!* In relationship to the mind, we can take our guidance directly from Romans 12:2: *Be transformed by the renewing of your mind.* Our minds are truly transformed only by the truth of the Scriptures. The real person is represented by his true thoughts. His thoughts are a result of the true nature of his heart. If his heart is evil, his true thoughts will be evil, no matter what he pretends on the outside. Guard your thoughts carefully, then, as they are more powerful than you may imagine. The world says we can mould ourselves and create our own destiny by the powers of our own minds. The Bible says the opposite – that we have no hope in and of ourselves. Our only hope for eternal life and abundant life now is to put our trust in the Lord Jesus Christ. The Bible doesn't teach "positive thinking". The Bible doesn't teach "negative thinking". The Bible teaches TRUTHFUL thinking.

*For the rest, brethren, whatever is true, whatever is worthy of reverence and is honorable and seemly, whatever is just, whatever is pure, whatever is lovely and lovable, whatever is kind and winsome and gracious, if there is any virtue and excellence, if there is anything worthy of praise, think on and weigh and take account of these things [fix your minds on them].*

*Philippians 4:8*

Only the presence of the Holy Spirit can transform our hearts. He is the One who sets the captives of the heart and mind free from the prisons of darkness. This is why it is important to spend time with the Lord, for in the measure He brings His glory to our lives, we can see

His light that changes us into His image. Christ is the image of the invisible God, and it is His image in us that beholds with open face the glory of God.

*<sup>20</sup> Whenever our hearts in [tormenting] self-accusation make us feel guilty and condemn us. [For we are in God's hands.] For He is above and greater than our consciences (our hearts), and He knows (perceives and understands) everything [nothing is hidden from Him].*

*1 John 3:20*

In the area of the human spirit, you need to know that you are legitimate and valued. Insanity and psychosis are numerous times rooted in “*there is no hope – I give up – I am bad at the core*” mentality. However, every human spirit is made of light, the same kind of light that God is made of. You need to realise that in your essence you are not bad, no matter who you are, what you have done, what you have been involved in or what you have been exposed to. Each of our human spirits was designed by God before the foundation of the world, and was made from the same light that He is, with a specific design and plan for a specific time. That essence *cannot* be removed from us.

It is this very essence of His light in us that makes us more valuable than gold and silver, more valuable than even the very life of Jesus, God's only begotten Son (John 3:16). Jesus declares:

*<sup>18</sup> And the Ever-living One [I am living in the eternity of the eternities]. I died, but see, I am alive forevermore; and I possess the keys of death and Hades (the realm of the dead).*

*Revelation 1:18*

God is not asking you to do more than He has empowered you to do. You can do nothing apart from Him anyway (John 15:5). He is asking you to do two things in every situation: (1) Love the Lord God with all your heart, soul, and strength; and (2) love your neighbour as yourself (Mark 12:28-31). The very foundation of Jesus's ministry is rooted in God the Father's love for mankind and the grace the Father extends towards us, drawing us to Him. Nothing can separate us from this love:

*<sup>38</sup> For I am persuaded beyond doubt (am sure) that neither death nor life, nor angels nor principalities, nor things impending and threatening nor things to come, nor powers, <sup>39</sup>*

*Nor height nor depth, nor anything else in all creation will be able to separate us from the love of God which is in Christ Jesus our Lord.*

*Romans 8:38-39*

The question at hand is not whether Jesus can bring the answer to the problem of insanity and psychosis, but whether a person in the trap of insanity and psychosis will acknowledge that he is wrong and seek help. People need to get to a point where they are willing to go beyond their fear, their beliefs, their pride, their selfishness, their “seared-ness” (seared conscience) to get to a place where they need to realise that there might really be a problem. The only certainty is death. Nobody knows when the day of death might come. Life needs to be treated with respect and responsibility.

Mankind's deepest problems are those to do with relationships. Man becomes unable to relate, love or give, and is filled with guilt, condemnation, fear, rejection, insecurity and loss. None of these are ingredients of a mature relationship. Deeply rooted problems can be the result of things suffered as a child, and things suffered alone. The lie that inspires fear is that we are alone. Through deep hurts, Satan can gain a place (not only through sin) and he can inflict oppression, fear, confusion and control over the person through emotional bruising. The purpose of this bruising is to bring man to a place where he cannot have a proper relationship with anybody; Satan's strategy is to separate and destroy.

Fear entered the world after man sinned against God, shattering the peaceful communion he enjoyed with God. Man saw that he was 'naked' — on his own and apart from God — hiding behind fig leaves. He was separated from the life of God, the blessing of God, the purpose of God, and the communion of God. It is the very root and origin of all other emotions: rejection, worthlessness, shame, insecurity, defilement, and hopelessness.

Satan succeeded in separating man from God and through fear, has tried ever since to destroy him. Unconditional love and acceptance were replaced by fear and shame. Open intimate fellowship with God gave way to hiding behind fig leaves and bushes. However, God, who is rich in His mercy, is more concerned with *where* mankind was than what they've *done*, and He calls them *back to intimacy*.

Satan uses emotions to attack humans by amplifying the electrical signals of the brain. The first response he attempts to generate within an individual is the feeling of fear, and the second response is anger. That is why God, through His Holy Scripture, tells the believer not

to fear anyone or anything except the Lord and to be slow to anger. The emotions of fear and anger draw demonic activity to a person. Once this cycle begins, it manifests into a vicious cycle around and within the person. Satan's plan behind this increased attack is to break mankind to such a point, and then deceitfully cut him off from God, so that he will give in to Satan by cursing and blaming God for his apparent misfortunes.

Once a person turns his back on God, he has sinned. Satan wants mankind to follow in this selfish tradition which began with his first son, Cain. Scripture warns that committing sin is of the Devil:

*<sup>8</sup> [But] he who commits sin [who practices evil-doing] is of the devil [takes his character from the evil one], for the devil has sinned (violated the divine law) from the beginning. The reason the Son of God was made manifest (visible) was to undo (destroy, loosen, and dissolve) the works the devil [has done]. <sup>9</sup> No one born (begotten) of God [deliberately, knowingly, and habitually] practices sin, for God's nature abides in him [His principle of life, the divine sperm, remains permanently within him]; and he cannot practice sinning because he is born (begotten) of God. <sup>10</sup> By this it is made clear who take their nature from God and are His children and who take their nature from the devil and are his children: no one who does not practice righteousness [who does not conform to God's will in purpose, thought, and action] is of God; neither is anyone who does not love his brother (his fellow believer in Christ). <sup>11</sup> For this is the message (the announcement) which you have heard from the first, that we should love one another, <sup>12</sup> [And] not be like Cain who [took his nature and got his motivation] from the evil one and slew his brother. And why did he slay him? Because his deeds (activities, works) were wicked and malicious and his brother's were righteous (virtuous).*

*1 John 3:8-12*

Satan's rise to power as the coming 'Prince of this World' will be the result of mankind's tolerance to evil and man's acceptance of him as saviour. The control of the human soul and the brain will allow Satan to exercise power over mankind. He who has control of the mind has complete power over the body. Satan's plan is evolving. In this generation, the finale to his plan is to take the step of freedom from God a little farther, to the point where mankind chooses evil all the time because he cannot distinguish between right and wrong. Indeed, doing your own selfish thing, as long as you are tolerant of others, is quickly becoming the

accepted way of the world. The Bible warns about Satan's tactics and mankind's failure to acknowledge good:

*<sup>20</sup> Woe to those who call evil good and good evil, who put darkness for light and light for darkness, who put bitter for sweet and sweet for bitter! <sup>21</sup> Woe to those who are wise in their own eyes and prudent and shrewd in their own sight!*

*Isaiah 5:20-21*

The Devil, his demonic factions and allies are preparing the world to accept 'good as evil and evil as good' through deception and manipulation of the mind. A massive number of mind control programs are presently being developed around the world in a combined effort to suppress human consciousness. With advances in science and energy technology, Satan's plan of mind control is only steps away from implementation. God knew that when this time came to fruition, mankind would be vulnerable and could not fight back if the ability to choose was lost.

Unless you know what is being used against you, you cannot engage in spiritual warfare. We are currently facing an apocalyptic future in which slavery, world government and world currency will emerge. In the light of prophesied onslaughts of deceiving spirits against the Church in the last days (1 Timothy 4:1-3), so apparent in its emerging fulfilment now, the unbelief of Christian people is all the more tragic as many believers suffer demonic deception and despoliation out of sheer ignorance of Satan and his devices. Even many spiritual believers are unable to wage a successful war against this army of wicked spirits because of a lack of knowledge of what is involved. Many shrink from the subject altogether, insisting that so long as Christ is preached, the profession of Satan and his followers is unnecessary and spiritually unhealthy. All the while, however, Satan is continuously gaining advantage because of believers' ignorance.

Not only are we presently dealing with vast numbers of people with mental illnesses including insanity and psychosis but this is due to increase at a phenomenal rate as the enemy brings in place his final onslaught against the human race, affecting both the believer and the unbeliever. This final onslaught will be so great that the Bible predicts:

*<sup>22</sup> And if those days had not been shortened, no human being would endure and survive, but for the sake of the elect (God's chosen ones) those days will be shortened.*

*Matthew 24:22*

These two streams of people living with the time bombs of insanity or psychosis (if not yet caught in the trap), both unbelievers and believers, are perfectly defined by Unger as<sup>1376</sup>

*a perfect genius at compromise, a mixer of unmixables, of righteousness with iniquity, of light with darkness, of Christ with Belial, of the portion of a believer with that of an unbeliever, and of the temple of God with idols - a nauseating effects of spiritual lukewarmness: Outwardly religious, inwardly apostate; having a form of godliness, but having denied the power thereof; temporally rich, but spiritually destitute; self-satisfied and contented, but wretched and miserable; boastedly wise and scientific, but utterly blind to God's truth; clothed in self-righteousness and the garments of man-made salvation without vicarious sacrifice, but shamefully naked and sinful before God; proudly democratic and free, but enslaved by license, and victimized by anarchy.*

So what is the safeguard from insanity and psychosis for the unbeliever? Only redemption through Jesus Christ.

What is the safeguard for the believer? Only through a pragmatic application, day by day, of discerning both good and evil. This is not sin consciousness. This discernment separates you from sin. The Word of God anointed by the Holy Spirit brings you to spiritual understanding. Your mind is renewed continually by revelation until it is cleansed of evil thought and realities.

*See what [an incredible] quality of love the Father has given (shown, bestowed on) us, that we should [be permitted to] be named and called and counted the children of God! And so we are! The reason that the world does not know (recognize, acknowledge) us is that it does not know (recognize, acknowledge) Him.<sup>2</sup> Beloved, we are [even here and] now God's children; it is not yet disclosed (made clear) what we shall be [hereafter], but we know that when He comes and is manifested, we shall [as God's children] resemble and be like Him, for we shall see Him just as He [really] is.*

*1 John 3:1-2*

Therefore, as a son or daughter of God, the Spirit of God is within us to lead us into all truth. By obtaining knowledge, you can have hope even while in bondage preceding your freedom.

---

<sup>1376</sup> Unger, MF (1994) Biblical Demonology. Grand Rapids: Kregal Publications, p. 203



You cannot be free unless you understand what freedom represents. The worst thing someone could do is to cast out an evil spirit without laying foundations of knowledge so that you know how to keep your freedom. If someone has an evil entity, we must fill them up with God's truth and knowledge until that evil is literally squeezed out. We want to bring them to a place where there is no room for it any more.

However, victory over all the power of evil is not by human works or self-effort but on the basis of the believer's faith in his position in Christ; victory is the believer being baptized into a vigorous union with the Lord Jesus Christ. The victory that overcomes insanity and psychosis (and all other mental illness in fact) is our faith. It is our assured belief that we are what we are "in Christ" that alone defeats the devil. Victory is possible because we are united to the Victor. Victory is appropriable as we realise and reckon upon our position in Him.

The believer is "dead unto sin" and "alive unto God" (Romans 6:2-10) whether he reckons (counts it true) or not. The difference is that when he does believe it is true, the indwelling Holy Spirit is set free to make it experientially real. Then, and only then, is he conqueror in the conflict with Satan, flesh and sin, and then solely because Christ conquered Satan and the powers of evil at the Cross (Colossians 1:14-15). So the believer united with Christ shares the victory.

*But thanks be to God, Who in Christ always leads us in triumph [as trophies of Christ's victory] and through us spreads and makes evident the fragrance of the knowledge of God everywhere.*

*2 Corinthians 2:14*

"Stand, therefore!" That is what God asks of the believer. Stand as the victors we are; stand in the victory of Calvary, whether you see the victory manifest at this moment or not. We are "in Christ". We stand victors in Him. Our armour is significantly defensive rather than offensive.

However, we must understand why the Lord allows evil in the first place. From the beginning, God's plan has been to create mankind in His image, according to His likeness. To facilitate His eternal purpose, the Lord accommodates evil to bring forth godly character in us. In other words, we would never ascend to the heights of Christ-like love, which loves even one's adversaries, without there being actual enemies to perfect our love. God cannot

establish in us a pure heart and a steadfast spirit without allowing genuine temptations and obstacles to be refused and overcome. The reason the Lord even tolerates evil in this world is to produce a righteousness within us that not only withstands the assault of evil, but grows stronger and brighter in the midst of it.

Therefore, to deal with insanity and psychosis, we must understand that the Lord's primary objective is *not* the complete eradication of wickedness from society, but the transformation of our hearts to Christ-likeness. As we become like Jesus – that is, loving our enemies, blessing those who curse us – Christ Himself literally and tangibly manifests Himself in our spirits. It is the transformed soul which dwells in the Place of Immunity.

Reckoning faithfully upon his position in Christ, the believer's joyful testimony becomes *"thanks be unto God, who always causeth us to triumph in Christ"* (2 Corinthians 2:14). Facing the foe, strong in the Lord and in the power of His might (Ephesians 6:10), the Christian warrior finds that soon every foe is vanquished from the field of battle, as his glad shout ascends: *"thanks be to God, who giveth us the victory through our Lord Jesus Christ"* (1 Corinthians 15:57).

So is there hope and *complete* healing and restoration for all mental illness including insanity and psychosis - with no exception? Yes, His name is Jesus Christ of Nazareth. He is light; He is the only way; He is living waters; He is fire. For some, this process of healing and restoration might be easy, or it might be tough, or it might be instantaneous or it might take a long time. No quick fixes exist; no recipes exist. Each case is unique. Whatever the location of the insanity or psychosis – spirit, mind (soul) or brain (body) – and whatever the source – demon possession, demonic oppression, demonic devices or alien human spirits – we *do not* have to fear.

*For God did not give us a spirit of timidity (of cowardice, of craven and cringing and fawning fear), but [He has given us a spirit] of power and of love and of calm and well-balanced mind and discipline and self-control.*

*2 Timothy 1:7*

The battle remains the Lord's. He created all (Malachi 2:10) and He wants all to be free from possession, oppression and obsession. Nobody is excluded from His plan for sanctification and godly knowledge. Our preservation is that we need to have an unquenchable hunger and desire for Jesus Christ in our spirit man for more until we are hidden from the fiery darts

of the enemy by the Light which we carry in us, and by the living waters that flow from the mighty power of the Holy Spirit's anointing which surrounds us, with an unwavering love for the Father that drives us every day with "today I choose life!"

*I call heaven and earth to witness this day against you that I have set before you life and death, the blessings and the curses; therefore choose life, that you and your descendants may live*

*Deuteronomy 30:19*

-----oOo-----



## *Annexure*

### **EXAMPLE PRAYERS**

#### **Sealing-Off Prayer BEFORE Deliverance – Example Prayer**

Dear Heavenly FATHER, we come to You in the Name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth. We thank You that You are GOD Almighty and that You are the Great I AM. We thank You that You have given us the Holy Spirit to be the Counsellor, Standby, Advocate, Teacher, the Deliverer. We thank You for Your Presence and for Your Deliverance Anointing — it is the anointing that will break the yoke. Come and fill us with Your Spirit, Compassion, Love, Discernment, Word of Knowledge, Wisdom, Interpretation, and Insight.

We as Your children choose to crucify the flesh so that nothing from ourselves will be transferred here. We clothe ourselves with Your Priestly Garments to fulfil the calling You have upon our lives. Open our spiritual eyes and ears FATHER. Thank You FATHER that You have given us all the power over the enemy and that nothing shall in any way harm us. We forbid any interference with the work of the Holy Spirit.

FATHER, we come against any communication lines (according to Ephesians 6:12) between the powers, world-rulers, principalities, spiritual hosts, and demonic hosts in the air, earth, heavenlies, and under the earth. We close off all entrances and exits in the Name of Jesus Christ.

We ask that all spiritual cameras and recorders be smashed in Name of Jesus Christ. We come against any witches, witch doctors, magicians, and wizards in the Name of Jesus Christ. We cut off all communication with Satan himself and close the doors in the Name of Jesus Christ. We forbid any spirit from the outside to enter this place for whatever reason, and we forbid any evil spirit to be sent to any other place or person as a result of what happens here.

We now forbid any reinforcement of power from the side of Satan in the Name of Jesus Christ. FATHER, we ask for confusion in the enemy's camp. FATHER we ask You to set up Your warring angels in this room and arrest any human spirit, dead human spirit, spirit guide, familiar spirit, and remove them to become the footstool of our King Jesus Christ.

We bind every evil spirit in this place and forbid any violence, manifestations and tormenting in the Name of Jesus Christ. We refuse any meditation circles — isolate any power of demonic forces from each other in the Name of Jesus Christ.

We forbid and bind any hypnosis and self-hypnosis, meditation, psychic powers in the Name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth. We isolate the powers one from another in the Name of Jesus Christ. We cleanse the four elements — water, air, fire and earth — with the Blood of the Name of Jesus Christ.

We ask You, FATHER, to cover all mirrors with Your Blood and seal off the gateways in the Name of Jesus Christ. We come against any spells, rituals, incantations, hexes, sacrifices, curses, or altars raised up against us and the person. Thank You that You blow out all candles which may have been lit in rituals against us in the Name of Jesus Christ. Thank You that all curses are reversed into blessings.

FATHER, we ask that You seal off this room with Your Precious Blood, that You hide us in the Spirit and declare this room as holy ground. FATHER, we ask You to send Your ministering angels to come and minister to us in the Name of Jesus Christ according to Hebrews 1:14. We surrender to You, Holy Spirit of GOD, because we know that it is not by might, nor by power, but by Your Spirit (Zechariah 4:6) says the FATHER! We ask that You cover our loved ones and we place all circumstances under Your Control and Protection (our finances, marriages, relationships, ministries). We now bind Satan's kingdom here on earth just as it is bound in heaven. We ask You FATHER to prepare the heavenly courtroom

where all the demons and familiar spirits come and take their places. We ask You FATHER to be the Judge, Jesus the Advocate, and the Holy Spirit the Witness.

Thank You for Your Word: Revelation 12:11 – we have overcome the enemy by the Blood of the Lamb and the word of our testimony!

In the Name of Jesus Christ, Amen <sup>1377</sup>

---

<sup>1377</sup> Buys, A, Prayers of Renunciation: Germanic Roots. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished, pp. 15-17

## **Dealing with Covenants - Example Prayer**

Father, in the Name of Jesus Christ of Nazareth, we bring every ancient generational covenant and any other covenant agreement that was made on my behalf, or done knowingly or unknowingly by me, before You now. We acknowledge that they were made voluntarily at some point and in so doing provided a measure of protection for the demons in my personal life.

We want to declare that every one of those covenants be subject to the higher Law of the universe. We now appeal to the Righteous Judge of the Universe on the basis of those covenants not being JUST or RIGHTEOUS according to the Supreme Law that God has established. We petition You, Father, to hear our cry that those covenants stand in direct violation of Your Law, and that You will declare them annulled.

We thank You Father, for now removing the protection the demons once had!! We declare the unholy alliances and the covenants of protection for the demons now annulled by God, Creator of the Universe!! We proclaim that we have, as individuals, voluntarily entered into a Blood Covenant relationship with Jesus Christ. We proclaim that this Covenant transcends and supersedes every other covenant, agreement or protection.

We command each of the different demonic heads to stand alone and at attention with those that are assigned under you. You are not allowed to communicate with each other and you are not allowed to help each other, in Jesus Christ's Name! We separate you one from the other in the Name of Jesus Christ! We now also block any demonic reinforcement coming from the land or the building we are in, in Jesus Christ's Name! We cut off all communication lines with the demons present in this deliverance situation with the strongman and his demons operating over the city/area/locality, in Jesus Christ's Name!

We speak to any external strongman: "In the Name of Jesus Christ, you will not send any reinforcements to help the demons here in this place that we are trying to evict!!" In the Name of Jesus Christ, we proclaim the truth that we have a legal right to receive everything God has given us:

- Life, Health, Beauty, Mental Sharpness
- Skills, Talents, Spiritual Gifts
- Family, Wealth, Fame, Ministry

- Open Doors, Joy, Peace, Future
- Destiny and Sonship in Jesus Christ of Nazareth

We ask You God to open the Books and to identify every individual who has thought, spoken, or written untrue words about the things God has given us. We now ask You, Father, to sever every agreement that was entered into between any two people or any groups of individuals and to only allow to stand, those things that are true. We now also ask You Father, to sever the agreements between human beings and the demonic realm where those agreements empowered the spirit of jealousy, directly or indirectly, and which resulted in curses upon our lives – namely to steal, kill and destroy.

Father, we petition that You will now judge the thoughts and words of any agent of Satan or child of God that has come to falsely accuse us before You, Almighty God, Satan and men – Lord, sever every agreement of lying accusation against us, in Jesus Christ's Name!! We ask You to break every curse in the Name of Jesus Christ, reverse the curses and turn them into blessings!!

Thank You, Father, for Your Faithfulness!! Thank You Jesus Christ, for the price You paid by taking on all the forces of darkness and OVERCOMING THEM FOR US!! Thank You Holy Spirit for leading us every step of the way to appropriate what Jesus Christ has done for us, and for being the seal on our lives that we are more than conquerors through Jesus Christ the Messiah, Who always leads us into triumph over our enemies!!

Amen<sup>1378</sup>

---

<sup>1378</sup> Buys, A, Africa, come forth out of Bondage. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished, pp. 116-117



## **Prayer of Renunciation for Sodomy and Sexual Abuse – Example Prayer**

Father, in the Name of Jesus, I choose with my whole being to separate the precious from the vile – I lay my life before You now and know that I cannot hide anything from Your Eyes. I choose to be transparent and invite You to search my heart as David prayed in Psalm 51. Show me please, Lord, all the wicked and perverse ways in my life as well as in the lives of my forefathers.

I bring before You specifically the sin of sodomy that has been affecting my life by a family spirit or by any means of violation in my life. I ask for Your forgiveness, Father, where we have grieved You and caused many to be defiled, in Jesus' Name. Please help me now Lord, to deal with this stronghold in my life – I accept You paid the price for me and that You have given me Your power and authority to deal with these forces in my life. I now take up my authority in the Name of Jesus and declare death to every stronghold!!

I shine the Light of God onto every animal trap of sodomy and I expose the traps of the enemy in my life and in the lives of my loved ones, in Jesus' Name. I renounce every animal trap that I have fallen into and I also renounce being abused or treated like an animal in any form in my life. Thank You Jesus that You are The Lion of Judah, and You destroy every chain and break open every trap. I release my faith to believe for a complete release from the trap of sodomy. I declare the snare is breaking over my life and over the lives of my loved ones and I am escaping out of the snare of the fowler!

Father, I believe for complete healing and restoration, for complete FREEDOM where sodomy has defiled my body, defiled and affected my soul, and contaminated my spirit. I renounce every time I compromised Your Word by stubbornly believing that sodomy is acceptable. The Word of God says it is an abomination, so I choose to come out of all compromised thinking, and I will not fellowship with these unfruitful works of darkness at all.

I renounce all deception that has come with sodomy, all blindness where I have not been able to see the consequences of sodomy in my life. I will see the Truth of Your Word only, and that Truth will set me free.

I choose to take accountability for my actions – I will not deny what I have done wrong anymore. My moral boundaries were violated and I have been shattered into pieces. My

mind, my emotions, and even my very life has been shattered – I ask You Lord, please put me together again!! Only You can heal the brokenness of my body, soul and spirit!! I come to You for total deliverance. Father, sodomy has opened the door to deception and a web of lies. I now choose to speak the Truth because that is the ONLY way out of this web!! I break all agreements that I made with the lying spirit bonded to the deception of sodomy.

Where I have been caught in a web of deception of my own doing, or the deeds of somebody else, I take the Sword of the Spirit and destroy the web of lies, in the Name of Jesus.

I ask You to send Your angels with special detergents from Heaven to remove all the stickiness from the web off me now, in Jesus' Name! I take authority over the spirits of deception and seduction in the Name of Jesus. I strip you of your assignment against me and my family and I decommission you to the Feet of the Lord Jesus!! I renounce all the tactics I used to cover-up and to be silent about that which was part of the lifestyle and deception of sodomy. I renounce any self-deception that has bound my life unknowingly through sodomy. I break all blindness of self-deception. Scales, come off my eyes, in Jesus' Name.

I choose to love the Truth. Father, in the Name of Jesus I repent of the sin of sodomy which according to Your Word has been an opponent of a clear conscience. My conscience has been defiled and I also repent of the family sin for many generations that has totally violated the God-given conscience. My conscience has been lawless in adultery, incest and other vile works, so I ask You Father for the Blood of Jesus to cleanse my body, soul and spirit, and to destroy the family iniquity of all actions of perversion throughout all my generations.

I break any curse of a seared conscience through rebellion, in Jesus' Name. Father, I now choose to have the fear of the Lord over my conscience, lest I be destroyed. Thank You, Father that I can now break the curse of being shipwrecked in life because of lawlessness over the conscience. I renounce any family spirit of perversion and I cast you out in Jesus' Name! I take authority over every evil spirit that has caused me and my family to sin; of flaming, burning lusts out of control, that have silenced my conscience – in Jesus' Name I bind you and I cast you out of my life! I shut the door that I opened to you and I seal it with the Blood of the Lamb!

Father, I renounce the curse of being a victim of sodomy. In the Name of Jesus I break that curse and reverse it into a blessing! Where guilt has lodged in my subconscious from a defiled consciousness, Lord, I ask You to unlock all of the guilt that has been suppressed in the subconscious. I invite You, Lord, to completely cleanse my memories and subconscious – bring everything into Your marvellous Light and expose all secrets of the past that have kept me locked away in places and times in the spirit.

I renounce a guilt-complex that has made me a very anxious person. All terror and fear in the subconscious shall also be totally released. I submit to the healing power of Jesus to totally set me free. I shall be free, and released into liberty in Jesus' Name – this is my inheritance as a child of God! Father, I renounce the family worship of the creature or the body, rather than the worship of the Creator. I smash the idol of body worship and self-worship. Father, burning lusts have had a life-controlling effect on my life through sexual abuse. In the Name of Jesus, I now destroy all those chains of control of sodomy over me.

I proclaim that my mind, my thoughts, my emotions, my body and my spirit will come under the full control of the Holy Spirit. In the Name of Jesus I break the curse of promiscuity or frigidity (coldness) because of the chains of sodomy. I declare that I will be restored to how You created me to be from the beginning, in Jesus' Name. In the Name of Jesus, I break the curse of slavery with sodomy. Where slavery has come down the family line, I renounce the curse of being a slave. I break the yoke of slavery that was placed on my neck; I break every ball and chain that kept me tied to any master. I declare that I will only be a servant of the Lord Jesus Christ, not a slave forever to sodomy. I renounce the curse of 'ownership' and 'slavery' through sexual abuse.

*Sodomy is a curse of the dog. Prostitution can open the door to the wearing of a dog collar - literally. Such a picture of a prostitute slave...*

Father, in the Name of Jesus, I bind any respiratory diseases from the choking of the dog collar in the spirit. I take authority over this spirit of prostitution; I bind it in Jesus' Name and send it to the Feet of Jesus. With the Sword of the Spirit, I cut off the collar of prostitution that has come from my forefathers and I call upon the FIRE of God to burn it up, in Jesus' Name!

In the Name of Jesus, I also cut off the collar and cable tow that comes through demonic curses made by Freemasonry on my bloodline causing me to be a slave of sodomy through

rituals done to me during initiations. Father, I also renounce the whip, the shackles and chains that go with being a slave of prostitution. Destroy these with Your Fire, Father!

Father, I bring before You any false religions with temple prostitution as well as any Masonic temple prostitution, in my bloodline; I repent for presenting my body as a living sacrifice to demons to be used in this way, in Jesus' Name. I ask You Father, to please cleanse me body soul and spirit from all defilement and brokenness that was caused through the years of serving in these temples – in the natural as well as in the spirit. I cancel all worship that Satan and all the fertility gods received through me and my family's involvement in this type of service. I renounce and break every demonic covenant that I or my forefathers made with BAAL and every other Fertility Cult, in Jesus' Name.

I call down the FIRE of God to destroy every satanic altar and idol that is still standing in the spirit and testifying against me, in Jesus' Name! Lord, please SILENCE the voices from my past and cut me free from any hooks, chains and pulleys that will try to pull me back into this type of lifestyle!! Father, if there is any programming done in the heavenlies, written in the planets, stars and constellations prophesying against me because of the agreements made with fertility cults by my forefathers, blot it out now with the Blood of the Lamb!! I ask You, Father, to please cleanse me from all defilement that was smeared or poured upon me by the violation of sodomy; cleanse me with the Water of Your Word.

I cut myself free from every spiritual bonding that has bound me to sodomy in Jesus' Name. I ask You to remove from me any mind and spirit of any master as well as every other person with whom I was ever involved. Name the person/s.....

#### Bestiality and Zoophilia

Father, I am so sorry for grieving You with going even lower to the level of seeking sexual pleasure with animals – bestiality and zoophilia. Please cleanse me now from this terrible defilement and break every curse that has come upon me for practising this terrible sin. Cut me free from every animal spirit and loose me body, soul and spirit. Blot out even the memories of these acts with the Blood of Jesus!! Remove from me the smells and tastes of my encounters with animals. I ask You, Father, to please cleanse me from all physical and spiritual deposits of seed and bodily fluids, with all the people I was involved with as well as every animal.

Father, where I moved into unreality and isolation, alienation and separation to try and cope with the shame and guilt; I repent. Please help me to come out of these places in the spirit. In the Name of Jesus, I now break the curse of feeling alienated from the whole family as well as the family of God. I reverse this curse and change it into a blessing! I declare I will be accepted by the Father and the family of God!! Father, in the Name of Jesus, I break the curse of sodomy of being a wanderer without roots – the curse of Cain. I declare that as your child I will grow, multiply and take dominion!

In the Name of Jesus, I break the curse of Cain and bind the spirit of murder, death and destruction over every area of my life. I declare that my inheritance in You is LIFE and not death! Father, in Jesus' Name, I cut myself loose from every perpetrator who has abused me in my life time – I take authority over every spirit of murder and death in the Name of Jesus. I bind you and cast you out and send you to the Feet of the Lord Jesus Christ! I smash the time clocks of Satan over my life to cause cycles of death and destruction, in Jesus' Name! I break the stronghold of death over my mind, my emotions, my relationships and over all my whole life!!

I take authority over the grim reaper in Jesus' Name; I break his sickle and declare that his reaping time over my life is over!! I declare that Father Time cannot keep me bound to any time period in my life – I redeem back every second, minute, hour, day, week, month and year of my life and place it in the Hands and authority of Jesus Christ alone!! I thank You Father for RESURRECTION LIFE in every area of my life in Jesus Name!!

Father, I bring before You the stronghold of deep depression through being sodomised and having my conscience defiled. I ask You to please come and lift me out of this deep pit of miry clay and destroy the shackles and chains that have kept me as a slave in this place. Please destroy this place in the spirit Lord so that I will never again be able to go back into this pit, in Jesus' Name. Thank You Father that you destroy the power of death and hell – Jesus You overcame all the powers of the grave and therefore I can live and be an overcomer by Your power and grace!!

In Jesus' Name I take authority over the spirit of death, hell and decay; I bind you and cast you out and send you to the feet of the Lord Jesus! Father, I bring before You my lifestyle of being an addict because of living with a defiled conscience – I ask You for complete healing of my conscience and memories and that You will deliver me from every addictive spirit and habit, in Jesus' Name. Lord, I bring before You the curse of mutilation that has come

because of a lifestyle of sodomy; where I have mutilated my body, soul and spirit, I repent Father! Where I have opened up myself to mutilating diseases of the body, I repent, Lord!

I bring before You Father, the SODOMITE SEAL that has been placed upon me sealing me into the Sodomite kingdom never to be broken and keeping me a victim for the rest of my life. I thank You Jesus, that You are the One Who has the power to break open the seals! I ask You now to destroy this sodomite seal over my life and sexuality, in the Name of Jesus! Please remove me from the sodomite kingdom – I step out of this kingdom by FAITH and close the door behind me. Please seal it with the Blood of the Lamb, place an angel before the door with a flaming sword, that it will NEVER again be opened, in Jesus' Name!

I petition before You now for my complete healing: body, soul and spirit. My inheritance as Your child is that I can stand upon the completed work of Calvary! I receive it now by faith!! Thank You Father!! I thank You Father that You are healing my bowels, sexual organs and breathing passages in Jesus' Name!! The hold of sodomy and mutilations are broken over my life in Jesus' Name!! Father, I bring before You every incident of sodomy and rape that has ever occurred in my life; I ask You Lord to break the curse of cancer that has come into my life because of this, in Jesus' Name.

Father, I bring before You every act of sodomy that was done to me as a child in child abuse, witchcraft or ritual abuse; In the Name of Jesus, I ask You Lord to heal all those painful memories and to set me free from all demonic spirits that entered me; You know who they are and how many entered me – set me free from murder, death, even physical death that entered my body through any mutilating diseases.

*[You may need to fast and pray if the abuse has been extensive because the spirit of death and murder will have taken a very strong hold of your life.]*

Father, my deliverance is the Blood of Jesus! Thank You Lord that You silence the murderous blood of sodomy. The Blood of Jesus has the final Word over my life!! Please give me a powerful revelation of the Blood of Jesus and the Water of Your Word to totally cleanse my conscience, and to completely cleanse the murder and the death over every part of my being – body, soul and spirit – in Jesus' Name.

Father I stand upon the promise of Your Word Ezekiel:

*<sup>25</sup>Then will I sprinkle clean water upon you, and you shall be clean from all your uncleanness; and from all your idols will I cleanse you. <sup>26</sup>A new heart will I give you and a new spirit will I put within you, and I will take away the stony heart out of your flesh and give you a heart of flesh. <sup>27</sup>And I will put my Spirit within you and cause you to walk in My statutes, and you shall heed My ordinances and do them. <sup>28</sup>And you shall dwell in the land that I gave to your fathers; and you shall be My people, and I will be your God. <sup>29</sup>I will also save you from all your uncleannesses, and I will call forth the grain and make it abundant and lay no famine on you.*

*Ezekiel 36: 25-29*

The Blood of Jesus has cleansed me from all sin!!

The vile thing is being washed off me totally!!

This is my inheritance in Christ Jesus!

THANK YOU FATHER, THANK YOU JESUS, THANK YOU HOLY SPIRIT!!

Amen<sup>1379</sup>

---

<sup>1379</sup> Buys, A, The Defiled Bride, Sodomy and Sexual Abuse. Kanaan Ministries, pp.74-81

## DEALING WITH THE HUMAN SPIRIT

### Engaging with the God-given Human Spirit – An Example

#### ***First engagement:***

I am speaking now to your God-given human spirit, the spirit that was designed by God and by His choice placed in you (the person). Spirit you know a lot more about me than I know about you. I want to begin this dialogue by simply saying there things I know about you:

**First** of all, you are there – she (the person) is alive, she would not be alive without your presence, so however far back you are – you are there.

**Secondly**, I know that you were designed by God; Scripture says that before the foundation of the world, you were exquisitely crafted to do a set of good works that nobody else can do. You are unique, one of a kind; you have a contribution to make to the world at large that nobody else can do like you can do.

**Third**, I know that you were made of the light that God is made of. God's light is infinite, but He weaved together a unique blend of His light and loaded it with wisdom that He calls your spirit. And you have been in heaven since eternity passed; you have watched the Almighty on his throne; you've seen human spirits be dispatched into time and space and return from time and space.

This much I know about you and I think it is a beautiful thing. That is all I have to say to you right now. I will be back in a little bit. Thank you for listening and engaging with me.

#### ***Second engagement:***

Speaking now to your spirit again: Spirit, I am delighted that you were able to respond, and that she was able to hear you (if she did). This is a good thing. It's my desire in a little while to speak to you about your incompleteness. When you left heaven all seven portions were there but some things have happened, that I do not know about but that you know about, that have left you a little bit less than how you were. And I have some good news for you: it does not have to stay this way. I have some tools that will enable us to position you well. Right now you are far to the back. You've been marginalised pretty significantly. The soul pretty much runs the operation; but there are tools that can be used to restore you to the rightful place to find the portions of the spirit that are not currently present and to restore the whole community of the human spirit. It brings me immense pleasure to assist somebody's



spirit to come to the place of completion where everybody is restored the way you were when you came from heaven. I am not doing this because you need to do something for me; I am simply doing this because it is a beautiful thing when all seven portions are present and reconciled, aligned and restored.

Before I ask you to move or change anything, just a straight up question: Is it safe for you to dialogue with me or is there anything in sight that is hostile to me and this conversation? Are you comfortable partnering with me and finding out who is there and who is not? Spirit, thank you – it's been an honour to speak with you.

Notes:

- The spirit will not respond to a question if it is not relevant. Ask binary questions (e.g. yes or no questions as to which of the parts are there).
- Spirit might be there but not close enough. (Example: Exhorter, are you present? Prophet, are you present?) Thank them when they answer.
- Which one is in the best position to work with the counsellor on getting the sense of the location of the missing portions? Does he feel safe in going forward in the exploration?
- Teacher is excellent in merging the portions into one.

Teacher, are you willing to do some priestly work?

Teacher, I blessed your priestly gift. I call it good, and I am now going to step back and let you narrate as you go along. Or you can simply go and do the work and then tell us what happened.

Teacher, I thank you for being a life-giver.<sup>1380</sup>

---

<sup>1380</sup> Burk, A, Ministering to SRA/DID Clients. 13 August 2014

## **Partnering with the God-given Human Spirit in Cleansing the Brain**

Arthur Burk encourages counsellors to partner with the God-given human spirit of a client to ask each of the relevant portions to go to their relevant part of the brain to look for demonic devices, demons, Leviathan and alien human spirits. The counsellor can then deal with the exposed element through the spiritual warfare encounter.

The following parts of the brain are linked to the portions of the spirit as follows<sup>1381</sup>:

<b>Part of the Brain</b>	<b>Portion of the Human Spirit</b>
Frontal Lobe (left and right)	Prophet
Parietal Lobe (left and right)	Servant
Temporal Lobe (left and right)	Teacher
Occipital Lobe (left and right)	Exhorter
Cerebellum (3 parts)	Giver
Brain Stem	Ruler
Basal Ganglia	Mercy

---

<sup>1381</sup> Burk, A, Deliverance on the Brain. 15 November 2014

## **Partnering with the God-given Human Spirit in Cleansing the Endocrine System**

Arthur Burk encourages the counsellors to partner with the God-given human spirit of a client and to ask each of the relevant portions to go to their relevant part of the Endocrine System to look for demonic devices, demons, Leviathan and alien human spirits. The counsellor can then deal with the exposed element through the spiritual warfare encounter.

The Endocrine system as a whole functions with the redemption gift of Mercy. The following parts of the Endocrine system are linked to the portions of the spirit as follows<sup>1382</sup>:

<b>Part of the Endocrine System</b>	<b>Portion of the Human Spirit</b>
Pituitary and Hypothalamus	Prophet
Pineal	Servant
Thymus	Teacher
Thyroid	Exhorter
Pancreas	Giver
Adrenals	Ruler
Gonads	Mercy

---

<sup>1382</sup> Burk, A, Your Health and Redemptive Gifts , 4 CDs

## COMMON DEMONIC GROUPINGS

As seen before, demons work most often in groupings. Frank Hammond gives some common demon groupings in his book *Pigs in the Parlor*. Below are examples of the ones relevant to this study<sup>1383</sup>:

Main demon	Associated demons
Bitterness	resentment, hatred, unforgiveness, violence, temper, anger, retaliation, murder
Depression	despair, despondency, discouragement, defeatism, dejection, hopelessness, suicide, death, insomnia, morbidity
Grief	sorrow, heartache, heartbreak, crying, sadness, cruel
Guilt	condemnation, shame, unworthiness, embarrassment
Heaviness	Gloom, burden, disgust
Jealousy	envy, suspicion, distrust, selfishness
Mind Idolatry	intellectualism, rationalisation, pride, ego
Mental Illness	insanity, madness, mania, retardation, senility, schizophrenia, paranoia, hallucinations, imbecility
Mind-binding	confusion, fear of man, fear of failure, occult spirits, spiritism spirits
Paranoia	jealousy, envy, suspicion, distrust, persecution, fears, confrontation
Pride	ego, vanity, self-righteousness, haughtiness, importance, arrogance
Rebellion	self-will, stubbornness, disobedience, anti-submissiveness
Rejection	fear of rejection, self-rejection
Sexual Impurity	lust, fantasy lust, masturbation, homosexuality, lesbianism, adultery, fornication, incest, harlotry, rape, exposure, frigidity
Worry	anxiety, fear, dread, apprehension

---

<sup>1383</sup> Hammond F & I M (1986) *Pigs in the Parlor*. United States of America: Impact Christian Books, p. 114

## PSYCHIATRIC DRUGS

The following are example drugs prescribed for mental disorders<sup>1384</sup>:

	Antidepressants (SSRI)	Stimulants (depression)	Tranquilizers (Anti-Anxiety)	Antipsychotic (Neuroleptics)	Mood stabilizers
Generalized Anxiety Disorder, GAD	Effexor, Tofranil		Klonopin, Xanax, Buspar		
Panic Disorder	Prozac, Zoloft, Lexapro, Paxil, Celexa, Tofranil, Nardil, Parnate, Marplan		Ativan, Xanax		
Social Phobia	Prozac, Zoloft, Lexapro, Paxil, Celexa, Nardil, Parnate, Marplan		Klonopin, Inderal		
Obsessive-Compulsive Disorder OCD	Prozac, Zoloft, Lexapro, Paxil, Celexa, Anafranil				
Tourette's Syndrome, TS				Haldol, Orap, Catapres, Rivotril, Mogadon	
Seasonal Affective Disorder, SAD	Wellbutrin				
Depression	Remeron, Effexor, Cymbalta, Prozac, Zoloft, Paxil, Celexa, Lexapro, Luvox, Elavil, Limbitrol, Norpramin, Sinequan, Norpramin, Tofranil, Pamelor, Aventyl, Vivactil, Nardil, Marplan, Parnate			Abilify, Zyprexa, Seroquel, Geodon, Risperdal, Buspar, triiodothyronine or "T3", Ritalin, Aderall, Mirapex, Requip, Lamictal, SAME, testosterone, estrogen, DHEA	
Bipolar Disorder				Clozaril, Zyprexa, Risperdal, Seroquel, Geodon	Lithium, Anticonvulsants with mood stabilizing effects: Depakote, Tegretol, Lamictal, Neurontin, Topamax
Schizophrenia				Thorazine, Haldol, Etrafon, Trilafon, Prolixin, Clozaril, Risperdal, Zyprexa, Seroquel, Serdolect, Geodon	

<sup>1384</sup> Psychiatric Drugs (<http://www.bible.ca/psychiatry/psychiatry-mental-illness-cures-drugs-antidepressants-ssris-tricyclics-maoi-beta-blockers-stimulants-tranquilizers-sleeping-pills-antipsychotics-neuroleptics.htm>)

Postpartum Depression, PPD	Prozac, Paxil, Zoloft, Celexa				
Repressed memory syndrome					
Eating disorders: Anorexia, bulimia	Prozac, Zoloft, Paxil, Effexor, Luvox			Zyprexa, Solian	
Post-Traumatic Stress disorder (PTSD)	Prozac, Zoloft, Lexapro, Paxil, Celexa				
Multiple Personality Disorder (MPD) or Dissociative Identity Disorder, DID					
Borderline Personality Disorder, BPD					
Attention-Deficit, ADHD		Adderall, Concerta, Cylert, Dexedrine, Dextrostat, Focalin, Metadate, Ritalin >6 yrs			

## FERTILITY GODS AND GODDESSES

The following is a summary of the names of fertility gods and goddesses through history<sup>1385</sup>:

CULTURE	FATHER	MOTHER	SON
Egyptian (3500BC)	Osiris	Isis	Horus
Sumerian (3500BC)	Nannar	Inanna	Dumuzi
Babyfonian (3200 BC)	Apsu Marduk Nimrod	Tiamat Sarpanitu Ishtar	Merodach Nabu Tammuz
Canaanite (3200BC)	Dagan Ba'al	Anath Astareth	Ba'al
Assyrian (2800BC)	Nimrod	Sammu-ramat (Greek form: Semiramis)	Tammuz
Syria (2500 BC)	Min	Kadesh	Resheph
Hittite (2000 BC)	Teshub	Ishtar	
Hebrew (2000 BC)	El	Asherah	
Philistine (1300 BC)	Dagon	Atargatis	
Pheonician (1200 BC)	Ba'al Hammon	Tanit	
Persian (900 BC)	Ahura-Mazda	Mitra	
Greek (850 BC)	Uranus Cronus Zeus	Gaia Thea Hera	Cronus Zeus
Roman (700 BC)	Hippolytus Upiter	Diana Juno	Virbius
Celtic (500 BC)	Brighid	Brigit	
Norse (500 BC)	Freyr	Freyja	

<sup>1385</sup> Buys, A, The Druidism root and its Fruits. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished, p. 120

## **RECOMMENDED READING AND STUDYING**

### **Spiritual Warfare and Deliverance**

Recommended authors:

- Professor Connie MJ Brand
- Ana Mendez-Ferrel
- Richard Ing
- Rebecca Brown
- Jessie Penn-Lewis
- John Eckhardt

### **The Human Spirit**

Arthur Burk has a vast amount of experience and information on dealing with land, time, nurturing and growing the human spirit as well as on the redemptive gifts that God has given man. He is also an authority dealing with Alien Human Spirits.

Products can be ordered from: [www.TheSLG.com](http://www.TheSLG.com).

-----oOo-----







## *Bibliography*

### **BOOKS**

Alberts, L (2002) Is Jesus Christ Unique? Vereeniging: Christian Art Publishers.

American Psychiatric Association (1987) Quick Reference to the Diagnostic Criteria from DSM-III-R. Cambridge: Press Syndicate

Anderson, N T (1990) The Bondage Breaker. Crowborough: Monarch.

Anderson, N T and Zuehlke, T E and Julianne S (2000) Christ - Centered Therapy. Grand Rapids, Michigan: Zondervan.

Anderson, R A (1974) Unfolding the Revelation. Canada: Pacific Press Publishing Association.

Andrews, L (1986) Jaguar Woman and the Wisdom of the Butterfly Tree. San Francisco: Harper & Row.

Ankerberg J and Weldon J (1996) Encyclopaedia of New Age Beliefs. US: Harvest House Publishers.

Armstrong C L and Morrow L (2010) Handbook of Medical Neuropsychology. New York: Springer

Baigent, M (1982) The Holy Blood and the Holy Grail. Great Britain: Book Club Associates.

Bailey, A A (1955) Discipleship in the New Age. New York: Lucis Publishing Company.

Banks, B (1988) Deliverance from Fat and Eating Disorders. Missouri, USA: Impact Books Inc.

Baxter, M K (1997) A Divine Revelation of Hell. New Kensington: Whitaker House.

Baxter, M K (2001) A Divine Revelation of the Spirit Realm. New Kensington: Whitaker House

Baxter, M K (2005) The Power of the Blood. New Kensington: Whitaker House.

Baxter, M K (2006) A Divine Revelation of Spiritual Warfare. New Kensington: Whitaker House.

- Benner D, (1985) *Encyclopaedia of Psychology, Hypnotism*, Grand Rapids: Baker Book House.
- Bentall, R P (2003) *Madness Explained: Psychosis and Human Nature*. London: Penguin Books
- Berkhof, H (1977) *Christ and the Powers*. Scottdale: Herald.
- Bevere, J (1997) *The Fear of the Lord*. United States of America: Charisma House.
- Black, H C (1995) *Law Dictionary – Definitions of the Terms and Phrases of American and English Jurisprudence, Ancient and Modern*. New Jersey: The Lawbook Exchange, Ltd.
- Blavatsky, H P (1877) *Isis Unveiled*. New York: Trow's Printing and Bookbinding Company.
- Blavatsky, H P (1888) *Secret Doctrine*. Theosophical University Press.
- Bloom, A (1987) *The Closing of the American Mind*, New York: Simon & Schuster.
- Bloomer, G (2003) *The Battle Plan, Strategies in engaging in Spiritual warfare*. Legacy Publishers International
- Bosworth, F F (2000) *Christ the Healer*. USA: Baker Books.
- Braiker, H B (2004) *Who's pulling your strings?* USA: McGraw-Hill.
- Brand, C M J (1998) *Geestelike Oorlogvoering. Satan se Struktuur en Strategiee*. Pretoria: RÂDÂH. Unpublished.
- Brand, C M J (1998) *Verwerping: Genesing van Kneusings en Wonde*. Pretoria: RÂDÂH. Unpublished.
- Brand, C M J (2002) *Teaching Manual III*. Pretoria: CMJ Brand
- Brand, C M J (2007) *Spiritual Warfare Five*. Pretoria: CMJ Brand.
- Brand, C M J (2007) *Spiritual Warfare Four*. Pretoria: CMJ Brand.
- Brand, C M J (2007) *Spiritual Warfare Two*. Pretoria: CMJ Brand.
- Brand, C M J, *Bloodline Curses and Deliverance*. Pretoria: RÂDÂH. Unpublished.
- Brand, C M J, *Doctrine of Sin and the Cross of Christ*. Pretoria: RÂDÂH. Unpublished.
- Brand, C M J, *Geestelike Oorlogvoering: Satan se Struktuur en Strategieë*. Pretoria: RÂDÂH Academy. Unpublished.
- Brand, C M J, *Leadership in Spiritual Warfare and Counselling*. Pretoria: RÂDÂH Academy. Unpublished.
- Brand, C M J, *Sexual Brokenness and Deviation Part 1*. Pretoria: RÂDÂH. Unpublished.
- Brand, C M J, *Sexual Brokenness and Deviation Part 2*. Pretoria: RÂDÂH. Unpublished.
- Brand, C M J, *Sexual Brokenness and Deviation Part 3*. Pretoria: RÂDÂH. Unpublished.
- Brand, C M J, *Spiritual Warfare – Document 2*. Pretoria: RÂDÂH Academy. Unpublished.
- Brand, C M J, *Teaching Manual – Volume 4 – Module 31*. Pretoria: RÂDÂH. Unpublished.
- Brand, C M J, *Voodoo*. Pretoria: RÂDÂH. Unpublished.
- Breggin P and Cohen D (2007) *Your Drug may be Your Problem*. Da Capo Press
- Bromberg, W (1975) *From Shaman to Psychotherapist*. Henry Regnery Co.

- Brown, R (1986) *He came to Set the Captives Free*. New Kensington: Whitaker House.
- Brown, R (1987) *Prepare for War*. New Kensington: Whitaker House.
- Brown, R (1987) *Unbroken Curses*. New Kensington: Whitaker House.
- Brown, R (1990) *Becoming a Vessel of Honor*. Springdale: Whitaker House.
- Bubeck, M I (1975) *Overcoming the Adversary*. USA: The Moody Bible Institute of Chicago.
- Bulfinch, T (1981) *Myths of Greece and Rome*. New York: Penguin Books.
- Burk, A (2001) *Overcoming the Victim Spirit*. USA: Plumblin Ministries.
- Burk, A, *Ministering to the Human Spirit*. Sapphire Leadership Group, Inc.
- Buys, A, *Life Through Choice*. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished.
- Buys, A, *Africa, come forth out of Bondage*. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished.
- Buys, A, *Breaking Generational Curses over Cities and their People*. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished.
- Buys, A, *Healing the Sexually Broken Hearted*. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished.
- Buys, A, *How Fertility Cults devour our Blessings*. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished.
- Buys, A, *Prayers of Renunciation: Germanic Roots*. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished.
- Buys, A, *Prayers of Renunciation: Secret Societies*. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished.
- Buys, A, *The ABC of DID*. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished.
- Buys, A, *The Background of Voodoo*. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished.
- Buys, A, *The Defiled Bride, Sodomy and Sexual Abuse*. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished.
- Buys, A, *The Druidism root and its Fruits*. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished.
- Buys, A, *The Tree of Knowledge and Serpent*. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished.
- Buys, A, *Understanding Jezebel*. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished.
- Buys, A, *Understanding Neshamah*. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished.
- Cardinal, R N & Bullmore E T (2011) *The Diagnosis of Psychosis*. Cambridge University Press
- Carroll, P J. (1987) *Liber Null & Psychonaut*. Maine: Weiser Books.
- Cartledge, P (2002) *Sparta and Lakonia: A Regional History 1300 to 362 BC*. Oxford: Routledge
- Castaneda, C (1987) *The Power of Silence*. Simon and Schuster.
- Cheytan, H () *Greek Mythology*. PediaPress
- Chiniquy, C (1985) *Fifty Years in the Church of Rome*. Chino: Chick Publications.
- Ciccarelli S K and White J N (2012) *Psychology*. USA: Prenticehall
- Clark, J (2003) *Exposing Spiritual Witchcraft*. Florida: Spirit of Life Publishing.
- Claudy, C H (1931) *Introduction to Freemasonry: Entered Apprentice, Fellowcraft, and Master Mason Complete in One Volume*. Washington DC: The Temple Publishers.

- Code, L (2000) *Encyclopedia of Feminist Theories*. London: Routledge.
- Collin, G R (1988) *Christian Counselling*. Vancouver: Word Publishing.
- Cox, S (2004) *Illuminating Angels & Demons*. London: Micheal O'Mara Books Ltd.
- Croft, P (1989) *Roman Mythology*. Octopus Books Limited.
- Davis, R H C (1975) *A History of Medieval Europe*. Longman Group Limited.
- Deere, J (2002) *The Gift of Prophecy*. USA: Struik Christian Books.
- Dickerson, C S (1975) *Angels Elect and Evil*. Chichago: Moody Press.
- Ditmore, M H (2006) *Encyclopedia of Prostitution and Sex work*. Volumn 1 and 2. London: Greenwood Press.
- Dobson, S (2003) *Verseker van Vrede in Onseker Tye*. Vereeniging: Christelike Uitgewersmaatskappy.
- Doidge, N (2007) *The Brain that Changes itself*. Penguin Books.
- Duer, C H (1978) *The Rise of Babylon, Sign of the End Times*. Illinois: Tyndale House Publishers Inc.
- Earle, R (1998) *Word Meanings in the New Testament*, Baker Books.
- Ebert, A & Dyck M J (2004) *The Experience of Mental Death: The Core Feature of Complex PTSD*. Australia: Curtin University of Technology.
- Eckhard, J (2004) *Deliverance and Spiritual Warfare Manual*. Chicago: Crusaders Ministries.
- Edinburgh Leventis Studies 5 (2010) *The god of Ancient Greece*. Edinburg University Press.
- Eifert, G H and Forsyth, J P (2005) *Acceptance and Commitment Therapy for Anxiety Disorders*. Oackland: New Harbinger Publications Inc.
- Erasmus C (2001) *Traumatology, Study Guide*. Commonwealth Training Consultants. Unpublished
- Erasmus, C (2001) *Traumatology, Study Guide*. Pretoria: Commonwealth Training Consultants.
- Ferrell, L E (2010) *Immersed in Him*. United States of America: Destiny Image Publisher Inc.
- Foakes-Jacson, F J (1917) *Biblical History of the Hebrews*. Cambridge: W. Heffer & Sons Ltd.
- Fontaine, D. Fiona *Possess the Land*. Teaching Seminar, City of Life, South Africa. Unpublished.
- Ford, M W (2003) *The book of the witch moon, a Grimoire of Luciferian Witchcraft, Vampirism and Chaos Sorcery*. Houston: Succubus Inner Publications.
- Ford, M W (2008) *Beginning of Luciferian Magick*. Houston: Succubus Inner Publications.
- Fox, L. *The Spiritual and Clinical Dimensions of Multiple Personality Disorder*. Salida , CO: Books of Sangre de Cristo.
- Frangipane, F (1987) *The Three Battlegrounds*. New Wine Press: England.
- Fries, J (1992). *Visual Magick: A Handbook of Freestyle Shamanism*. Mandrake of Oxford.
- Gallager M and Nelson R J (2003) *Handbook of Psychology, Volume 3, Biological Psychology*. New Jersey: John Wiley & Sons, Inc.
- Gerric, R J and Zimbardo, P G (2005) *Psychology and Life*. USA: Pearson.

- Godwin, J (1988) *Dancing with Demons*. Chino: Chick Publications.
- Goldberg, B Z *A day with Baal and the Sexual Worship of the gods*. United States: Kessinger Publishing.
- Gondwe, E I (2008) *Major Spiritual Warfare Principles*. Cambridge: Jesus Work Ministry
- Greer, J M (2003) *The New Encyclopedia of the Occult*. St. Paul, MN: Llewellyn Publications.
- Grudem, W (1994) *Systematic Theology, An Introduction to Bible Doctrine*. Great Britain: Zondervan Publishing House.
- Grudem, W (2000) *Systematic Theology, An Introduction to Bible Doctrine*. England: Inter-Varsity Press.
- Guiley, R E (1989) *The Encyclopedia of Witches and Witchcraft*. New York: Facts On File
- Guiley, R E (2009) *The Encyclopedia of Demons and Demonology*. New York: Infobase Publishing.
- Hall, M P *The Secret Teachings of All Ages*. The Philosophical Research Society Press.
- Hammond F & I M (1986) *Pigs in the Parlor*. United States of America: Impact Christian Books.
- Hammond, F D (2006) *Overcoming Rejection*. USA: Impact Christian Books, Inc.
- Harris, L H and WALTKE, B K (2003) *Theological Wordbook of the Old Testament*. Moody Press
- Hayford, J (2004) *The Atonomy of Seduction*. USA: Regal Books.
- Hepden, S (1992) *Explaining Rejection*. England: Sovereign World
- Hewitt, J P (2009) *Oxford Handbook of Positive Psychology*. Oxford University Press.
- Hickey, M (1987) *Breaking Generational Curses*. Oklahoma: Harrison House.
- Hieronimus, R (1989) *America's Secret Destiny: Spiritual Vision and the Founding of a Nation*. Vermont: Destiny Books.
- Hiller-Sturmhöfel, S and Bartke, A (1998) *An Overview of the Endocrine System*. Unpublished.
- Hillstrom, E L ( 1995) *Testing the Spirits*. Downers Grove: InterVarsity Press.
- Horn, T and Horn N (2010) *Forbidden Gates*. Missouri: Crane.
- Horn, T R (1998) *Spiritual Warfare, the Invisible Invasion*. Louisiana: Huntington House Publishers.
- Horn, T R (1999) *The gods who walk among us*. Louisiana: Huntington House Publishers.
- Horn, T R (2009) *Apollo Rising 2012*. USA: Defender.
- Horrobin, P J (2003) *Healing through Deliverance*. Volume 2. Grand Rapids, Michigan: Chosen Books.
- Howitt, D (2006) *Introduction to Forensic Criminal and Psychology*. Essex: Pearson Education Limited.
- Hunt, D (1990) *Global Peace and the Rise of the AntiChrist*. Oregon: Harvest House Publishers.
- Hunt, D (2011) *America, The Sorcerer's New Apprentice*. Oregon: The Berean Call.
- Hunt, D and McMahon, T (1985) *The Seduction of Christianity*. Oregon: Harvest House Publishing.
- Icke, D (1999) *And the Truth shall set you free*. United Kingdom: Bridge of Love Publication.

- Icke, D (2002) *Children of the Matrix*. United Kingdom: Bridge of Love Publication.
- Ing, R (1966) *Spiritual Warfare*. Whitaker House: United States of America.
- Ing, R (2008) *Waging Spiritual Warfare*. Whitaker House: United States of America.
- Inman, T (1874) *Ancient Pagan and Modern Christian Symbolism*. Kessinger Publishing.
- Isichei, E (2002) *Voices of the Poor in Africa*. Rochester: University of Rochester Press
- Jenkins, J. B (1999) *Are we living in the End Times?* Vereeniging: Christian Art Publishers.
- Johnson, M (1992) *Spiritual Warfare for the Wounded*. Michigan: Vine Books.
- Jones, N and Land, G (2012) *Battle for the Mind*. USA: Destiny Image Publishers.
- Joyner, R (1994) *Mobilizing the Army of God*. New Kensington: Whitaker House.
- Joyner, R (1995) *Epic Battles of the Last Days*. New Kensington: Whitaker House.
- Joyner, R (2001) *Shadows of the Things to Come*. USA: Thomas Nelson Publishers.
- Kah, G H (1991) *En Route to Global Occupation*. Huntington Galleries.
- Kah, G H, (1991) *En Route to Global Occupation*. Huntington Galleries.
- Kastleman, M B (2007) *The Drug of the New Millennium*. USA: PowerThink Publications.
- Kayser, P G and Bubek M (2009) *Prayers for Spiritual Warfare*. USA: Biblical Blueprints
- Kelsey, M T (1984) *Christo-Psychology*. Crossroad Pub Co.
- Kinman, D L (1995) *The Last World's Dictator*. Oregon: Solid Rock Books.
- Kitchen Y and Triplett D (2000) *Jezebel's Murder*. A Fruitful Vine Publication.
- Klein, John & Spears, A (2007) *Lost In Translation Series (Volume 1): Rediscovering The Hebrew Roots Of Our Faith*. USA: Zondervan Publishing House.
- Kock, K E (1986) *Occult ABC*. Grand Rapids: Kregel Publications.
- Kock, K E (1991) *Occult Practices and Beliefs. A Biblical examination from A to Z*. Grand Rapids, Michigan: Kregel Publications, p.II
- Kock, K. *Occult Bondage and Deliverance*. US: Kregel Publications.
- Kordis, A (2013) *Multiple Personality Disorder*. The International Academic Forum. Unpublished.
- Koster, C J (1998) *Gaan uit haar uit my volk*. South Africa: Institute for Scripture Research (PTY) LTD.
- Kraft, C H (1992) *Defeating Dark Angels*. USA: Regal Books.
- Kroger, W S and Fezler, W D (1976) *Hypnosis and Behavior Modification: Imagery Conditioning*. Philadelphia: Lippincott
- Kylstra, Chester and Betsy (2003) *Restoring the Foundations*. Florida: Proclaiming His Word Publications.
- Lamont, C (1997) *The Philosophy of Humanism*. New York: Humanist Press.
- Larson, B (1989) *New Book of Cults*. Illinois: Tyndale House Publishers.

- Lewis, A H (1892) Paganism Surviving in Christianity. London: The Knickerbrocker Press.
- Lewis, A L (1998) Signs of His Coming. USA: New Leaf Press.
- Liardon, R (1996) God's Generals. Oklahoma: Albury Publishing.
- Liardon, R (2004) Die Uitdaging van die Eindtyd. Westgate: VG Uitgewers.
- Little, W (1961) Oxford Universal Dictionary Illustrated, The. Clarendon Press.
- Little, W (1961) Oxford Universal Dictionary Illustrated, The. Clarendon Press.
- Lloyd-Jones, D (2003) The Christian Warfare. Michigan: Baker Books.
- Lorie, P (2004) What the Bible Scholars have missed: World's End 2009. New York: Penguin Group Inc.
- Ludwig, A M (1972), Altered States of Consciousness in Charles Tart, ed., Altered States of Consciousness. NY: Doubleday/Anchor.
- Machacek D W and Wilcox M M (2003) Sexuality and the World's Religions. California: ABC-CLIO Inc.
- Malan, J S (1991) Gevare van die Nuwe Era-Beweging. Alberton: Bassuin Uitgewers.
- Marin, N (Unknown) The Causes, Treatments, Classifications of Mental Illness, as Well as the Portrayal of Mental Illness in Fiction. Webster's Digital Services
- Marrs, T (1988) Mystery Mark of the New Age. Satan's Design for World Domination. Westchester: Cross Way Books.
- Marrs, T Circle of Intrigue: The Hidden Inner Circle of the Global Illuminati Conspiracy. Rivercrest Publishing.
- Martin, F P (1979) Hung by the Tongue. Louisiana: Bible Teaching Series.
- Martin, W (1997) The Kingdom of the Cults. Bethany House Publishers.
- Martin, W (2008) The Kingdom of the Occult. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Inc.
- Mason, A (2007) Necronimicon Gnosis. Germany: Edition Roter Drache.
- Matthew, H (1996) Commentary on the Whole Bible. Hendrickson Publishers.
- May, L (1983). On Conscience. American Philosophical Quarterly. 20
- McAll, K (2013) Healing the Family Tree. SPCK Publishing.
- McIntosh, J R (2005) Ancient Mesopotamia: New Perspectives. Santa Barbara: ABC-CLIO Inc.
- McLoud, W (2001) Alles omtrent die opkomende Antichristelike Orde. Die Wilgers: Perspektief.
- McQuate, S D (2007) Blueprint for Bondage. USA: Xlibris Corporation.
- Melton J G (2001) Encyclopedia of Occultism and Parapsychology, Firth Edition, Volume A-N, USA:Gale Group
- Melton J G (2001) Encyclopedia of Occultism and Parapsychology, Firth Edition, Volume M-Z, USA:Gale Group
- Mendez-Ferrell, A (2006) Eat My Flesh and Drink My Blood. Florida: Voice of the Light Ministries.
- Mendez-Ferrell, A (2010) Regions of Captivity. Florida: Voice of the Light Ministries.



- Mendez-Ferrell, A (2010) Seated in Heavenly Places. Florida: Voice of the Light Ministries.
- Mendez-Ferrell, A (2011) Iniquity. Florida: Voice of the Light Ministries.
- Mendez-Ferrell, A (2011) Pharmakeia. Florida: Voice of the Light Ministries.
- Meyer, J (2002) Battle Field of the Mind. New York: Warner Faith.
- Meyer, J (2006) The Confident Women. Start Today living Boldly And Without Fear. USA: Warner Faith.
- Michaelsen, J (1982) The Beautiful Side of Evil. Oregon: Harvest House Publishers.
- Moody, G B, The Deliverance Manual. Deliverance Ministries. Unpublished.
- Morey, R A (1991) Islam Unveiled: The True Desert Storm. Sherman's Dlae: The Scholar Press.
- Mowrer, O H (1961) The Crisis in Psychiatry and Religion. Van Nostrand: Princeton.
- Muck, T (1989) Sins of the Body: Ministry in a Sexual Society. CTi.
- Murphy, E F (2003) The Handbook for Spiritual Warfare, Revised and Updated. Thomas Nelson Publishers.
- Murray, A (1982) Humility. New Kensington: Whitaker House.
- Murray, A (1982) The Believer's Secret of Obedience. Bethany House Publishers.
- Nee, W (1968) The Spiritual Man. New York, USA; Christian Fellowship Publishers, Inc., Vol.III.
- Nevius, J L (1984) Demon Possession and Allied Themes. New Jersey: Old Tappen.
- Newman, B M and Newman, P R (1975) Development Through Life: A Psychosocial Approach. Homewood, IL: Dorsey
- Newton, D (2009). Gay and Lesbian Rights: A Reference Handbook. ABC-CLIO.
- O'Martian, S (2003) Die Krag van biddende Gelowiges. Vereeniging: Christelike Uitgewersmaatskappy.
- Olsen, J M and Breckler, S J and Wiggins, E C (2008) Social Psychology Alive. Toronto: Thomson Nelson.
- Olukoya, D (1998) Deliverance for the Head. Nigeria. MFM Ministries.
- Olukoya, D (2002) Power against Marine Spirits. Nigeria. MFM Ministries.
- Olukoya, D (2003) Prayer Warfare Against 70 Mad Spirits. Nigeria. MFM Ministries.
- Olukoya, D (2003) The Madness of the Heart. Nigeria. MFM Ministries.
- Olukoya, D (2009) Deliverance for the Brain. Nigeria. MFM Ministries.
- Olukoya, D (2013) Prayer Rain. Nigeria. MFM Ministries.
- Olukoya, D K (2005) Dealing with Satanic Exchange. Iwaya: The Battle Cry Christian Ministries.
- Otis, G Jr (1991) The Last of the Giants. Michigan: Chosen Books.
- Pausanias (1918) Description of Greece. Cambridge, MA: London.
- Penn-Lewis, J (1996) Secrets of Spiritual Warfare. New Kensington: Whitaker House.

- Penn-Lewis, J (2004) War on the Saints. Pennsylvania: CLC Publication.
- Phelps, E J (2001) Vatican Assassins: Wounded in the House of My Friends. Publisher unknown.
- Picknett, L and Prince, C (1999) The Stargate Conspiracy. London: Warner Books.
- Pierson A T C (1965) The Traditions, Origin and Early History of Freemasonry. New York: Masonic Publishing Company.
- Pittman, H O (1995) Demons, An Eyewitness Account. USA: Philadelphian Publishing House.
- Porter, R (2002) Madness, a brief history. Oxford University Press.
- Price, S. and Kearns E (2003) The Oxford Dictionary of Classical Myth & Religion. Oxford University Press.
- Prince, D (1) They Shall Expel Demons. Michigan: Chosen Books.
- Prince, D (1984) Lucifer Exposed. UK: Derek Prince Ministries.
- Prince, D (2003) Blessings and Curses. Michigan: Chosen Books.
- Prince, D (2006) Lucifer Exposed. UK: Derek Prince Ministries.
- Pugh, J J (2006) Eden. United States of America: Tate Publishing.
- Riggs, D, Articles and Information. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished.
- Ring, K (1974) A Transpersonal View of Consciousness: A Mapping of Farther Regions of Inner Space, Journal of Transpersonal Psychology, no. 2.
- Robeson, J and C (1984) Strongman's His Name ... What's His Game? USA: Whitaker House.
- Rohall, D E & Milkie M A & Lucas J W (2014) Social Psychology. USA: Pearsons
- Rohde, E (2006) Psyche: The Cult of Souls and Belief in Immortality among the Greeks. New York: Harper & Row
- Scheb, J and Scheb J II (2013). Criminal Law and Procedure. Cengage Learning.
- Schmoyer, J, Spiritual Warfare Handbook. Doylestown: Main St. Baptist Church. Unpublished
- Schoebelen, W (1990) WICCA. USA: Chick Publications.
- Schoebelen, W. J. Twice the Child of Hell. Washington: Saints Alive in Jesus.
- Schoen, M (1940) The Psychology of Music. Michigan: The Ronald press company
- Schullian, D M and Schoen M (1948) Music and Medicine. Henry Schuman.
- Schulze, R (1999) There are No Incurable Diseases. California: Natural Healing Publications.
- Senge, P M (1990) The Fifth Discipline: The Art and Practice of the Learning Organization. Doubleday Currency.
- Shaw, G (1978) The Power of the Precious Blood. USA: End-Time Handmaidens Inc.
- Shepard, L A (1978) Mesmerism, Encyclopaedia of Occultism and Parapsychology, Volume 2, Detroit: Gale Research Co.
- Sherman, D (1990) Spiritual Warfare: How to life in Victory and Retake the Land. Seattle: YWAM Publishing.

- Shirelle Phelps (2001). *World of Criminal Justice: N-Z*. Gale Group.
- Shutt, T B (2009) *A History of Ancient Sparta*. Recorded Books LLC.
- Silvoso, E (1994) *That None Should Perish*. California: Regal Books.
- Smith, H V (2013) *4 Step Process to Mental Illness*. Unknown.
- Staffer, C R (1987) *Dr. Leslie Gray, Bridge between two Realities*. Shaman's Drum. Woodfish Institute.
- Stanford, M S (2008) *Grace for the Afflicted - Viewing Mental Illness Through the Eyes of Faith*. USA: Inter-Varsity Press.
- Sternberg, R J (2001) *Psychology, In search of the Human Mind*. Harcourt College Publishers.
- Strassman, R. (2001) *DMT: The Spirit Molecule: A Doctor's Revolutionary Research into the Biology of Near-Death and Mystical Experiences*. Rochester, VT: Park Street Press.
- Streeter, M (2002) *Witchcraft, A Secret History*. Herfortshire: Eagle Additions.
- Strydom, M K (2010) *Healing Begins with Sanctification of the Heart*. Eagle Wings Ministries.
- Sumrall, L (1979) *Demons, The Answer Book*. Nashville: Thomas Nelson Publishers.
- Sumrall, L (1983) *You can conquer Worry*. South Bend, Indiana: Sumrall Publishing Company.
- Swanepoel J, Disney. *Radah Academy*. Unpublished.
- Swanson, J (1997) *Dictionary of Biblical Languages with Semantic Domain Hebrew*.
- Sydney, H T (1995) *Powers over Evil*. Michigan: Baker Books.
- Szasz, T (2009) *Psychiatry: Coercion as Cure*. Transaction Publishers.
- Taylor, R S (1997) *The Right Conception of Sin*. USA: Nazarene Publishing House.
- Tenney, M (1976) *The Zondervan Pictorial Encyclopedia of the Bible*. Zondervan Publishing .House, Vol. 3, p. 46.
- Thomas, I D E (2008) *The Omega Conspiracy*. Crane: Anomalos Publishing House.
- Tozer, A W (1990) *I Talk Back to the Devil*. Pennsylvania: Christian Publications.
- Unger, M F (1977) *What Demons can do to Saints*. Chicago: Moody.
- Unger, M F (1994) *Biblical Demonology*. Grand Rapids: Kregal Publications.
- Uzorma, I N (2004) *Know Your Enemies Watch Your Friends*. Nigeria: Harbinger Christian Publications.
- Uzorma, I N (2007) *How to overcome Witches and Wizards and all the Powers of Darkness*. Nigeria: Harbinger Christian Publications.
- Uzorma, I N (2007) *Occult Grandmaster*. Nigeria: Harbinger Christian Publications.
- Van der Wall, W (1946) *Music in Hospitals*. Russell Sage foundation.
- Vine, W. E (1940) *An Expository Dictionary of New Testament Words*. Old Tappan: Fleming H. Revell Company.
- Vitimus, A (2009). *Hands-on Chaos Magic: Reality Manipulation Through the Owayki Current*. Llewellyn Worldwide.

- Waldeck, V (1996) I can't keep my eyes off the clouds. Durban: Pilgrim Publishers.
- Westropp, H M and WAKE, S. C (1875) Ancient Symbol Worship. New York: The Book Tree.
- White, T B (1990) The Believer's Guide to Spiritual Warfare. UK: Regal Books.
- Whitehouse, D and Devey G (1996) Understanding Anxiety. England: Gazelle Books.
- Wigglesworth, S (1999) Healing. New Kensington: Whitaker House.
- Wigglesworth, S (2005) The Smith Wigglesworth Prophecy and the Greatest Revival of All Times. New Kensington: Whitaker House.
- Wilder, E J (2004) Fear Bonds and Love Bonds in Families and Cults. Unpublished.
- Wood, J T (1976) What are You Afraid of? USA: Prentice-Hall, Inc.
- Woodrow, R (1966) Babylon Mystery Religion Ancient and Modern. Evangelistic Association, Inc.
- Woods, G N (1979) A Commentary on the New Testament Epistles of Peter, John, and Jude Gospel Advocate Co.
- Wright, H W (2001) A more excellent way. South Africa: Be in Health Ministries.
- Zampano, B (1998) Healing the Broken Heart and the Wounded Spirit. Miami: Harbour Light Publishers.
- Zodhiates, S (1992) The Complete Word Study Dictionary. New Testament. AMG Publishers.
- Zumpano, B (1998) Ministering Spiritual Warfare for Sexual Sin. Miami: Harbor Light Publishers.

## **INTERNET RESOURCES**

Alzheimer Association, [Online] Available from: <http://www.alz.org/dementia/traumatic-brain-injury-head-trauma-symptoms.asp> [Accessed: 17 May 2014]

Bible Study Tools, 2 Corinthians 4:6 [Online] Available from: <http://www.biblestudytools.com/commentaries/gills-exposition-of-the-bible/2-corinthians-4-6.html> [Accessed: 1 November 2014]

Clark, J, Seven Signs of Family Curses [Online] Available from: <http://secure.jonasclark.com/articles/spiritual-warfare-prayer/286-seven-signs-of-family-curses.html#ixzz2xXExI7Kn> [Accessed: 8 March 2014]

Encyclopaedia Mythica, Mami Wata [Online] Available from: [http://www.pantheon.org/articles/m/mami\\_wata.html](http://www.pantheon.org/articles/m/mami_wata.html) [Accessed: 8 September 2014]

Goldstein, R L, Effects of Suicide on Family Members. [Online] Available from: <http://robingoldstein.net/suicide-the-mourning-after/> [Accessed: 8 April 2014]

Sane, Families and friends of people affected by mental illness. [Online] Available from: <https://www.sane.org/information/factsheets-podcasts/206-families-and-friends-of-people-affected-by-mental-illness> [Accessed: 8 April 2014]

TM Ministry, Music and Moods [Online] Available from: <http://www.tmministry.co.za/resources/MUSIC%20AND%20MOODS.pdf> [Accessed: 8 August 2014]

About Bipolar Disorder, Postpartum Psychosis [Online] Available from: <http://bipolar.about.com/od/relateddisorders/a/postpartumpsych.htm> [Accessed: 4 July 2014]

Africa This Day, Confession of a Former South African Devil Worshipper [Online] Available from: <http://africathisday.com/2014/04/16/shocking-confession-of-a-former-south-african-devil-worshiper-and-her-secret-notes/> [Accessed: 14 August 2014]

After Abortion, Abortions Risks [Online] Available from: <http://afterabortion.org/2011/abortion-risks-a-list-of-major-psychological-complications-related-to-abortion/> [Accessed: 29 September 2014]

All About Prayer, Fasting [Online] Available from: <http://www.allaboutprayer.org/types-of-fasting-faq.htm> [Accessed: 1 April 2014]

All Psychology Careers. Brain, Mind and Mental Illness [Online] Available from: <http://www.allpsychologycareers.com/topics/brain-mind-mental-illness.html> [Accessed: 12 May 2014]

Ameen, S, Organic Mental Disorders [Online] Available from: <http://www.psypexus.com/neuropsychiatry/introduction.htm> [Accessed: 27 June 2014]

Arango, J B, Mental Models [Online] Available from: <http://www.algodonesassociates.com/planning/Mental%20models.pdf> [Accessed: 12 May 2014]

Artificial Telepathy, Hearing Voices [Online] Available from: <http://artificialtelepathy.blogspot.com/2006/06/hearing-voices.html> [Accessed: 1 November 2014]

Ask Define, Escapism [Online] Available from: Escapism <http://escapism.askdefinebeta.com/> [Accessed: 14 July 2014]

Ask.com, Delusional Disorder, [Online] Available from: <http://www.ask.com/question/delusional-disorder> [Accessed: 7 March 2014]

Ask.Healthline.com. Causes of Psychosis. [Online] Available from: <http://ask.healthline.com/health/psychosis#Causes> [Accessed: 7 April 2014]

Association of Biblical Counsellors. Biblical Counselling Defined [Online] Available from: <http://christiancounseling.com/content/biblical-counseling-defined> [Accessed: 29 October 2014]

Babacek, M, [Online] Available from: Psychotronic and Electromagnetic Weapons: Remote Control of the Human Nervous System <http://www.globalresearch.ca/psychotronic-and-electromagnetic-weapons-remote-control-of-the-human-nervous-system/5319111> [Accessed: 24 June 2014]

Bailey, P T, The Reality of Psychotronic Weapons Today [Online] Available from: <http://stopthecrime.net/docs/bailey%20mind%20control.pdf> [Accessed: 22 July 2014]

Barium Blues, Electromagnetic Mind control [Online] Available from: [http://www.bariumblues.com/em\\_mind%20control.htm](http://www.bariumblues.com/em_mind%20control.htm) [Accessed: 24 June 2014]

BBC News, Autism begins long before Birth [Online] Available from: <http://www.bbc.com/news/health-26750786> [Accessed: 7 July 2014]

BBC News, Study links synaesthesia to Autism [Online] Available from: <http://www.bbc.com/news/health-24995232> [Accessed: 7 July 2014]

Behavenet, Mental Disorders Due to a General Medical Condition, [Online] Available from: <http://behavenet.com/mental-disorders-due-general-medical-condition> [Accessed: 11 April 2014]

Bessel A, van der Kolk, MD, Developmental trauma disorder [Online] Available from: [http://www.traumacenter.org/products/pdf\\_files/preprint\\_dev\\_trauma\\_disorder.pdf](http://www.traumacenter.org/products/pdf_files/preprint_dev_trauma_disorder.pdf) [Accessed: 11 November 2014]

Bible History, Ancient Babylonia - Religion of the Ancient Near East [Online] Available from: [http://www.bible-history.com/babylonia/BabyloniaReligion\\_of\\_the\\_Ancient\\_Near\\_Eas.htm](http://www.bible-history.com/babylonia/BabyloniaReligion_of_the_Ancient_Near_Eas.htm) [Accessed: 5 May 2014]

Bible History, Nebuchadnezzar [Online] Available from: <http://www.biblehistory.net/newsletter/nebuchadnezzar.htm> [Accessed: 25 November 2014]

Bible Hub, Hebrew [Online] Available from: <http://biblehub.com/hebrew/1100.htm> [Accessed: 29 August 2014]

Bible.org, Angels, God's Ministering Angels [Online] Available from: <https://bible.org/article/angels-god%E2%80%99s-ministering-spirits> [Accessed: 1 November 2014]

Biblical Discernment Ministries, Silva Mind Control (Silva Method) [Online] Available from: <http://www.rapidnet.com/~jbeard/bdm/Cults/silva.htm> [Accessed: 13 June 2014]

Blanton, R, Sodomites [Online] Available from: <http://www.biblebelievers.com/Sodomites.html> [Accessed: 5 May 2014]

Borrelli, L, Can An Organ Transplant Change A Recipient's Personality? [Online] Available from: <http://www.medicaldaily.com/can-organ-transplant-change-recipients-personality-cell-memory-theory-affirms-yes-247498> [Accessed: 13 June 2014]

Bowman, S, The Pool Ministries [Online] Available from: <http://www.thepoolministries.org> [Accessed: 9 October 2014]

Brain and Behaviour, Breakthrough Technology-CLARITY-Offers 3-D View of Inner Structures of the Brain [Online] Available from: <http://bbrfoundation.org/discoveries/breakthrough-technology-clarity-offers-3-d-view-of-inner-structures-of-the-brain> [Accessed: 12 May 2014]

Brain and Spinal Cord, Psychosis [Online] Available from: <http://www.brainandspinalcord.org/brain-injury/psychosis.html> [Accessed: 29 September 2014]

Brain Computer, Computing Brain for Control [Online] Available from: <http://mind-computer.com/> [Accessed: 25 July 2014]

Brown R, Prophecy from Daniel [Online] Available from: <https://www.facebook.com/pages/Official-Rebecca-Brown-Page/131827026858516> [Accessed: 2 April 2014]

Browning, D, History and Religion of Babylon [Online] Available from: <http://www.studylight.org/dic/hbd/view.cgi?number=T636> [Accessed: 5 May 2014]

Burk, A, Theft of Honor and the Mesmerizing Spirit [Online] Available from: [http://www.mysteryofdreams.com/wp-content/resourcefiles/Theft\\_of\\_Honor\\_and\\_the\\_Mesmerizing\\_Spirit.pdf](http://www.mysteryofdreams.com/wp-content/resourcefiles/Theft_of_Honor_and_the_Mesmerizing_Spirit.pdf) [Accessed: 24 July 2014]

Burns and Grove, Ways of Approaching Research: Qualitative Designs [Online] Available from: <http://www.frprtunecity.com/greenfield/grizzly/432/rra3.htm> [Accessed: 7 March 2014]

Canadian Mental Health Association, Fast Facts About Mental Illness, [Online] Available from: <http://www.cmha.ca/media/fast-facts-about-mental-illness/> [Accessed: 10 April 2014]

Centre of Psychiatric Rehabilitation, What is Psychiatric Disability and Mental Illness? [Online] Available from: <http://cpr.bu.edu/resources/reasonable-accommodations/what-is-psychiatric-disability-and-mental-illness> [Accessed: 28 March 2014]

Chinese Words, Madness [Online] Available from: [http://www.words-chinese.com/symbols/\\_madness.htm](http://www.words-chinese.com/symbols/_madness.htm) [Accessed: 14 August 2014]

Christianity Today, Christians can't ignore the uncomfortable reality of mental illness, [Online] Available from: <http://www.christianitytoday.com/women/2013/april/healthier-christian-response-to-mental-illness.html> [Accessed: 7 March 2014]

COEDU, The Impact of Mental Illness on Society [Online] Available from: <http://www.coedu.usf.edu/zalaquett/gua/TheImpactofMentalIllnessonSociety.htm> [Accessed: 28 March 2014]

Complete Christian Living, Is there a difference between Bible Healing and Miracles? [Online] Available from: <http://www.complete-christian-living-bible-study.com/bible-healing.html> [Accessed: 30 October 2014]

Conference Board, Mortality Due to Mental Disorders. [Online] Available from: <http://www.conferenceboard.ca/hcp/details/health/mortality-mental-disorders.aspx> [Accessed: 10 April 2014]

Copier, M, Connecting Worlds. Fantasy Role-Playing Games, Ritual Acts and the Magic Circle [Online] Available from: <http://www.digra.org/wp-content/uploads/digital-library/06278.50594.pdf> [Accessed: 29 August 2014]

Corner, D, Spiritual Death: The Righteous can Die Spiritually. [Online] Available from: <http://www.evangelicaloutreach.org/spiritual-death.htm> [Accessed: 28 March 2014]

Creation History, The Brain and the Bible [Online] Available from: [http://www.creationhistory.com/CreationMessages/The\\_Brain\\_and\\_the\\_Bible.shtml](http://www.creationhistory.com/CreationMessages/The_Brain_and_the_Bible.shtml) [Accessed: 5 May 2014]

Demon Buster [Online] Available from: [www.demonbuster.com](http://www.demonbuster.com) [Accessed: 26 September 2014]

Dial the Truth Ministries, Soft Rock [Online] Available from: <http://www.av1611.org> [Accessed: 11 August 2014]

Diaz, R M, Emotion [Online] Available from: <http://prezi.com/s-4hlcjqxcrz/emotion/> [Accessed: 14 July 2014]

Dictionary Reference [Online] Available from: <http://dictionary.reference.com> [Accessed: 17 May 2014]

Douglas Mental Health. Psychosis: Causes, Symptoms and Treatments [Online] Available from: <http://www.douglas.qc.ca/info/psychosis-causes-treatments> [Accessed: 7 March 2014]

DSM Library, Substance Related and Addictive Disorders [Online] Available from: <http://dsm.psychiatryonline.org/content.aspx?bookid=556&sectionid=41101782> [Accessed: 27 June 2014]

Edbatista, The Meaning of Mindset [Online] Available from: <http://www.edbatista.com/2012/01/the-meaning-of-mindset.html> [Accessed: 5 May 2014]

Education Portal, Environmental Stressors: Examples, Definition & Types [Online] Available from: <http://education-portal.com/academy/lesson/environmental-stressors-examples-definition-types.html#lesson> [Accessed: 14 August 2014]

Empowering your Memory and Mind, The Role of Emotion in Memory [Online] Available from: <http://www.memory-key.com/memory/emotion> [Accessed: 1 November 2014]

EMVS, Artificial/Synthetic Telepathy and Mind Control [Online] Available from: <http://emvsinfo.blogspot.com/2012/03/artificialsynthetic-telepathy-and-mind.html> [Accessed: 24 June 2014]

Encyclopaedia of Dying and Death [Online] Available from: <http://www.deathreference.com> [Accessed: 7 July 2014]

Encyclopaedia of Mental Disorders [Online] Available from: [www.minddisorders.com](http://www.minddisorders.com) [Accessed: 27 June 2014]

Encyclopaedia of Philosophy [Online] Available from: <http://plato.stanford.edu> [Accessed: 10 July 2014]

Exposing Satanism, False Religion [Online] Available from: [http://www.exposingsatanism.org/false\\_religions.htm](http://www.exposingsatanism.org/false_religions.htm) [Accessed: 29 August 2014]

Fabio Ghioni, Scientists successfully implant chip that controls the brain [Online] Available from: <http://www.fabioghioni.net/blog/2011/09/15/scientists-successfully-implant-chip-that-controls-the-brain-allowing-thoughts-memory-and-behavior-to-be-transferred-from-one-brain-to-another/> [Accessed: 24 July 2014]

Faith and Health Connection, Spirit Soul and Body [Online] Available from: [http://www.faithandhealthconnection.org/the\\_connection/spirit-soul-and-body/](http://www.faithandhealthconnection.org/the_connection/spirit-soul-and-body/) [Accessed: 28 March 2014]

Faith, Prayer [Online] Available from: [http://www.faith.com/community/prayer/articles/f\\_lib\\_article\\_hc\\_what.html](http://www.faith.com/community/prayer/articles/f_lib_article_hc_what.html) [Accessed: 1 April 2014]

Fathers Sword, A Sodomite Mindset [Online] Available from: <http://fatherssword.wordpress.com/tag/sword/> [Accessed: 5 May 2014]

Fetrow, K, Government Mind Control Experiments [Online] Available from: <http://programmingthenation.com/WordPress/?tag=government-mind-control-experiments> [Accessed: 25 July 2014]

Fithian, L, Domination Techniques [Online] Available from: <http://organizingforpower.org/wp-content/uploads/2009/03/forms-of-domination.pdf> [Accessed: 11 August 2014]

Fox News, The most Addictive Prescription Drugs on the Market [Online] Available from: <http://www.foxnews.com/health/2014/03/22/most-addictive-prescription-drugs-on-market/> [Accessed: 2 July 2014]

Fox News, What the Bible really says about sex [Online] Available from: <http://www.foxnews.com/opinion/2012/01/03/what-bible-really-says-about-sex/> [Accessed: 17 May 2014]

Free Dictionary, Totalitarian [Online] Available from: <http://www.thefreedictionary.com/totalitarian> [Accessed: 12 May 2014]

Gaming as Women, Madness, Insanity and Derangement [Online] Available from: <http://www.gamingaswomen.com/posts/2012/08/madness-insanity-derangement-mental-illness-in-rpgs/> [Accessed: 29 August 2014]

Gautam, S, Basic Emotions and Basic Psychological Disorders. [Online] Available from: <http://www.psychologytoday.com/blog/the-fundamental-four/201307/basic-emotions-and-basic-psychological-disorders> [Accessed: 16 April 2014]

Gods Way, Steps to Spiritual Maturity [Online] Available from: [http://www.gospelway.com/christianlife/steps\\_maturity.php](http://www.gospelway.com/christianlife/steps_maturity.php) [Accessed: 30 October 2014]

GoMentor, Cognitive Disorders [Online] Available from: <http://www.gomentor.com/articles/cognitive-disorders.aspx> [Accessed: 28 March 2014]



Gonzalez, R, History of Rock Music. [Online] Available at <http://www.sundaylaw.net/studies/truelife/music/rockmusc.htm> [Accessed on 10 January 2014]

GotQuestions [Online] Available from: <http://www.gotquestions.org> [Accessed: 28 March 2014]

Guptara Twins, Symbol of Insanity [Online] Available from: <http://twins.guptara.net/old/downloads.htm> [Accessed: 14 August 2014]

Hackett, R I J, Mermaids and End-time Jezebels [Online] Available from: <http://web.utk.edu/~rhackett/mwucla.pdf> [Accessed: 8 September 2014]

Harvard Medical School. How Addiction Hijacks the Brain. [Online] Available from: [http://www.health.harvard.edu/newsletters/Harvard\\_Mental\\_Health\\_Letter/2011/July/how-addiction-hijacks-the-brain](http://www.health.harvard.edu/newsletters/Harvard_Mental_Health_Letter/2011/July/how-addiction-hijacks-the-brain) [Accessed: 12 May 2014]

Health and Social Care, Mortality rate three times as high among mental health service users than in general population. [Online] Available from: <http://www.hscic.gov.uk/article/2543/Mortality-rate-three-times-as-high-among-mental-health-service-users-than-in-general-population> [Accessed: 10 April 2014]

Health Central, Alzheimer's Disease [Online] Available from: <http://www.healthcentral.com/alzheimers/c/57548/161124/psychosis-alzheimer/#sthash.C9EsbHMM.dpuf> [Accessed: 2 July 2014]

Health Line, The Most Addictive Prescription Drugs on the Market. [Online] Available from: <http://www.healthline.com/health-slideshow/prescription-drug-addictions#1m> [Accessed: 10 April 2014]

Health Systems Trust, Mental illnesses on the rise in SA <http://www.hst.org.za/news/mental-illnesses-rise-sa> [Accessed: 10 April 2014]

Health, Achieving the Millennium Development Goals: Addressing mental health. [Online] Available from: <http://www.health.uct.ac.za/usr/health/research/groupings/mhapp/resources/SAHRC2.pdf> [Accessed: 10 April 2014]

Health, Psychotic Disorder Due to a General Medical Condition. [Online] Available from: <http://www.health.am/psy/psychotic-disorder-due-to-condition/> [Accessed: 11 April 2014]

Health24, Effects of mental illness on the family. [Online] Available from: <http://www.health24.com/Medical/Depression/Caring-for-someone-depressed/Effects-of-mental-illness-on-the-family-20120721> [Accessed: 28 March 2014]

Health24, Mental Health in SA [Online] Available from: <http://www.health24.com/Mental-Health/Mental-health-in-SA> [Accessed: 24 July 2014]

Help Guide, Sleep Disorder and Sleeping Problems. [Online] Available from: [http://www.helpguide.org/life/sleep\\_disorders.htm](http://www.helpguide.org/life/sleep_disorders.htm) [Accessed: 28 March 2014]

His Kingdom Prophecy, Overcoming the Deaf and Dumb Spirits [Online] Available from: <http://www.hiskingdomprophecy.com/overcoming-deaf-dumb-spirits/> [Accessed: 1 November 2014]

Insight for Living [Online] Available from: The Grace Awakening. [http://www.insightforliving.com/pdf/retailseries/TheGraceAwakening\\_MessageMates.pdf](http://www.insightforliving.com/pdf/retailseries/TheGraceAwakening_MessageMates.pdf) [Accessed: 29 October 2014]

International Standard Bible Encyclopaedia, Hatred [Online] Available from: <http://www.internationalstandardbible.com/H/hate-hatred.html> [Accessed: 8 September 2014]

Iskip, Full Moon [Online] Available from: [http://iskip.com/blog/2011/11/marvelous-night-for-a-moon-skip/full\\_moon2\\_1-10-09\\_b\\_lr/](http://iskip.com/blog/2011/11/marvelous-night-for-a-moon-skip/full_moon2_1-10-09_b_lr/) [Accessed: 14 August 2014]

James G F, Discerning Alter Personalities from Demons [Online] Available from: <http://www.healthypace.com/abuse/wermany/discerning-alter-personalities-from-demons/> [Accessed: 11 November 2014]

Japanese Symbols, Madness [Online] Available from: <http://www.japanese-symbols.org/japanese-word-for-madness> [Accessed: 14 August 2014]

Jewish Encyclopaedia, Binding and Loosing [Online] Available from: <http://jewishencyclopedia.com/articles/3307-binding-and-loosing> [Accessed: 11 November 2014]

Joe, The Works of Philo [Online] Available from: <http://www.scribd.com/doc/8326130/The-Works-of-Philo> [Accessed: 29 July 2014]

Johnson, S, The Bohemian Grove Exposed [Online] Available from: <http://www.contendingfortruth.com/wp-content/uploads/Bohemian-Grove-Exposed-Edited-Version.pdf> [Accessed: 14 August 2014]

Joyner, R [Online] Available from: <http://soundofheavenblog.wordpress.com/2014/05/16/rick-joyner-true-peace-and-joy-signs-of-the-coming-kingdom/> [Accessed: 8 September 2014]

Joyner, R True Peace and Joy [Online] Available from: <http://www.morningstarministries.org/resources/word-week/2014/true-peace-and-joy-great-commission-part-18#.VFS7yVf4Lg4> [Accessed: 1 November 2014]

Kelch, B, The Pineal Gland, Third Eye Chakra and DMT [Online] Available from: <http://www.circusofmind.com/words/BrianKelch5.pdf> [Accessed: 11 August 2014]

Layman Evangelism, Spiritual Warfare, Wounds Inflicted by Demons or Satanists [Online] Available from: [http://www.layevangelism.com/qreference/topicscip/s/spiritual\\_warfare/13.htm](http://www.layevangelism.com/qreference/topicscip/s/spiritual_warfare/13.htm) [Accessed: 27 August 2014]

Lendman, S, Electromagnetic Frequency Mind Control Weapons [Online] Available from: <http://www.thepeoplesvoice.org/TPV3/Voices.php/2011/01/04/electromagnetic-frequency-mind-control-w> [Accessed: 24 June 2014]

Liberating Ministries for Christ International, Principalities, Powers and Demons [Online] Available from: <http://www.lmci.org/articles.cfm?Article=76> [Accessed: 1 April 2014]

Live Strong, Impulse Control Disorder in Children [Online] Available from: <http://www.livestrong.com/article/152870-impulse-control-disorder-child-symptoms/> [Accessed: 27 June 2014]

Luciferian Apotheca, Luciferianism an Introduction [Online] Available from: <http://luciferianapotheca.myshopify.com/pages/luciferianism-an-introduction> [Accessed: 14 August 2014]

Lundbeck Institute, Overview of Mental Disorders [Online] Available from: [http://www.brainexplorer.org/factsheets/psychiatry\\_overview.pdf](http://www.brainexplorer.org/factsheets/psychiatry_overview.pdf) [Accessed: 7 March 2014]

Lux, G The Voodoo Shaman [Online] Available from: [http://3A%2F%2Fwww.angelfire.com%2Fd20%2Fnecropolis%2FVoodooe.pdf&ei=BKHOU\\_LTK-Xb7Abxh4DYBA&usg=AFQjCNGVOSWlzfBxmGppW6S19V4qJPdyw&bvm=bv.72676100,d.ZGU](http://3A%2F%2Fwww.angelfire.com%2Fd20%2Fnecropolis%2FVoodooe.pdf&ei=BKHOU_LTK-Xb7Abxh4DYBA&usg=AFQjCNGVOSWlzfBxmGppW6S19V4qJPdyw&bvm=bv.72676100,d.ZGU) [Accessed: 11 August 2014]

Mail Online, Driven Insane by your own Immune System [Online] Available from: <http://www.dailymail.co.uk/health/article-2316825/Driven-insane-immune-One-womans-terrifying-story-reveals-rogue-particles-brain-trigger-mental-illness.html> [Accessed: 27 June 2014]

Mayo Clinic, Deep Brain Stimulation [Online] Available from: <http://www.mayoclinic.org/tests-procedures/deep-brain-stimulation/basics/definition/prc-20019122> [Accessed: 4 July 2014]

- Mayo Clinic, Personality Disorders Symptoms [Online] Available from: <http://www.mayoclinic.org/diseases-conditions/personality-disorders/basics/symptoms/con-20030111> [Accessed: 11 April 2014]
- McGuire P, Sorcery Prophetic Warning for the Last Days [Online] Available from: <http://paulmcguireblog.blogspot.com/2011/07/sorcery-prophetic-warning-for-last-days.html> [Accessed: 25 July 2014]
- Medical News Today. What Cause Psychotic Symptoms? [Online] Available from: <http://www.medicalnewstoday.com/articles/248159.php> [Accessed: 7 April 2014]
- MedicalMed, Antidepressants. [Online] Available from: <http://www.medicinenet.com/antidepressants/article.htm> [Accessed: 7 March 2014]
- MedicalMed, Bipolar Disorder. [Online] Available from: [http://www.medicinenet.com/bipolar\\_disorder/article.htm](http://www.medicinenet.com/bipolar_disorder/article.htm) [Accessed: 7 March 2014]
- MedicalMed, ICU Psychosis. [Online] Available from: [http://www.medicinenet.com/icu\\_psychosis/article.htm](http://www.medicinenet.com/icu_psychosis/article.htm) [Accessed: 7 March 2014]
- MedicalMed, Psychotic Disorders. [Online] Available from: [http://www.medicinenet.com/psychotic\\_disorders/page1.htm](http://www.medicinenet.com/psychotic_disorders/page1.htm); [http://www.medicinenet.com/psychotic\\_disorders/page2.htm](http://www.medicinenet.com/psychotic_disorders/page2.htm); [http://www.medicinenet.com/psychotic\\_disorders/page3.htm](http://www.medicinenet.com/psychotic_disorders/page3.htm) [Accessed: 7 March 2014]
- MedicalMed, Schizoaffective Disorder. [Online] Available from: [http://www.medicinenet.com/schizoaffective\\_disorder/article.htm](http://www.medicinenet.com/schizoaffective_disorder/article.htm) [Accessed: 7 March 2014]
- MedicalMed, Schizophrenia [Online] Available from: <http://www.medicinenet.com/schizophrenia/article.htm> [Accessed: 19 March 2014]
- MedicalMed, Schizophrenia. [Online] Available from: <http://www.medicinenet.com/schizophrenia/article.htm> [Accessed: 7 March 2014]
- MedicalMed, Substance Abuse. [Online] Available from: [http://www.medicinenet.com/drug\\_abuse/article.htm](http://www.medicinenet.com/drug_abuse/article.htm) [Accessed: 7 March 2014]
- MedicalMed, What are the symptoms of factitious disorders? [Online] Available from: [http://www.medicinenet.com/factitious\\_disorders/page2.htm#what\\_are\\_the\\_symptoms\\_of\\_factitious\\_disorders](http://www.medicinenet.com/factitious_disorders/page2.htm#what_are_the_symptoms_of_factitious_disorders) [Accessed: 8 April 2014]
- Medicine Health, Anatomy of the Central Nervous System [Online] Available from: [http://www.emedicinehealth.com/anatomy\\_of\\_the\\_central\\_nervous\\_system/page2\\_em.htm](http://www.emedicinehealth.com/anatomy_of_the_central_nervous_system/page2_em.htm) [Accessed: 1 November 2014]
- MedicineMed, Brain Tumor [Online] Available from: [http://www.medicinenet.com/brain\\_tumor/article.htm](http://www.medicinenet.com/brain_tumor/article.htm) [Accessed: 27 June 2014]
- Medscape, Cerebral Achromatopsia [Online] Available from: [http://www.medscape.com/viewarticle/774934\\_4](http://www.medscape.com/viewarticle/774934_4) [Accessed: 27 June 2014]
- Meerloo, J A M, The Rape of the Mind [Online] Available from: <http://www.ninehundred.net/control/> [Accessed: 24 June 2014]
- Members AOL, Transgressions, [Online] Available from: <http://www.members.aol.com/yadadocs/lessons/transgression1.htm> [Accessed: 30 September 2014]

Mental Health Foundation, Mental Health Statistics. [Online] Available from: <http://www.mentalhealth.org.uk/help-information/mental-health-statistics/> [Accessed: 10 April 2014]

Mental Health, Self-Harm [Online] Available from: <http://www.mentalhealth.org.uk/help-information/mental-health-statistics/self-harm/> [Accessed: 12 May 2014]

Mental Illness Fellowship Victoria, Understanding the Brain and Mental Illness [Online] Available from: <http://www.mifellowship.org/sites/default/files/styles/Fact%20Sheets/Understanding%20the%20brain%20and%20MI.pdf> [Accessed: 12 May 2014]

Mental Illness Fellowship Victoria, Understanding Mental Illness. [Online] Available from: <http://www.mifellowship.org/content/fact-sheets> [Accessed: 7 March 2014]

Mental Illness Fellowship Victoria, Understanding the Brain and Mental Illness. [Online] Available from: <http://www.mifellowship.org/sites/default/files/styles/Fact%20Sheets/Understanding%20the%20brain%20and%20MI.pdf> [Accessed: 7 March 2014]

Merriam-Webster Dictionary [Online] Available from: <http://www.merriam-webster.com> [Accessed: 28 March 2014]

Miller Q, The Downside of Body Piercing [Online] Available from: <http://www.tesoltasks.com/Piercing.htm> [Accessed: 8 September 2014]

Mind Frame, Mental Illness Facts and Statistics. [Online] Available from: <http://www.mindframe-media.info/for-media/reporting-suicide/Downloads/?a=6009> [Accessed: 10 April 2014]

Mindvalley Academy, You Too Can Learn How to Activate Your Mind's Natural Healing Mechanisms, and Start Improving Your Overall Health and Well-Being [Online] Available from: <http://mindvalleyacademy.com/store/silva-mind-body-healing/> [Accessed: 13 June 2014]

Montandon, A, Neil Harbisson, the Cyborg [Online] Available from: <http://www.adammontandon.com/neil-harbisson-the-cyborg/> [Accessed: 27 June 2014]

Moody, E, Incest and Bastard Curses [Online] Available from: [www.deliveranceminister.com](http://www.deliveranceminister.com) [Accessed: 29 August 2014]

Mullen G, Are you winning the Battle for your Mind? [Online] Available from: <http://drgrantmullen.com/> [Accessed: 28 March 2014]

Murphy, J, Overcoming Hindrances to Intimacy with God [Online] Available from: <http://www.wwccr.org/ministry/hindrances.htm> [Accessed: 28 November 2014]

Nairaland, Marine Spirits [Online] Available from: <http://www.nairaland.com/1143926/marine-spirits...what-how-identify-defeat> [Accessed: 29 August 2014]

National Alliance on Mental Illness [Online] Available from: <http://www.nami.org> [Accessed: 8 March 2014]

National Geographic News, Full Moon Effect On Behavior Minimal [Online] Available from: [http://news.nationalgeographic.com/news/2002/12/1218\\_021218\\_moon.html](http://news.nationalgeographic.com/news/2002/12/1218_021218_moon.html) [Accessed: 14 August 2014]

National Institute of Health, The Numbers Count: Mental Disorders in America. [Online] Available from: <http://www.nimh.nih.gov/health/publications/the-numbers-count-mental-disorders-in-america/index.shtml> [Accessed: 10 April 2014]

National Institutes of Mental Health, Brain Basics [Online] Available from: <http://www.nimh.nih.gov/health/educational-resources/brain-basics/brain-basics.shtml> [Accessed: 12 May 2014]

National Institutes of Mental Health, Information about Mental Illness and the Brain [Online] Available from: <http://science.education.nih.gov/supplements/nih5/Mental/guide/info-mental-a.htm> [Accessed: 12 May 2014]

Natural News, Tattoos [Online] Available from: [http://www.naturalnews.com/022073\\_tattoos\\_health\\_skin.html](http://www.naturalnews.com/022073_tattoos_health_skin.html) [Accessed: 8 September 2014]

Nehemiah Ministries, Escapism [Online] Available from: <http://www.nehemiahministries.ca/2009/escapism-ps-55/> [Accessed: 24 October 2014]

Net Burst, Powerful Answers & Surprising Help For People Traumatized as Children [Online] Available from: [http://www.net-burst.net/sex\\_abuse/alters.htm#demons](http://www.net-burst.net/sex_abuse/alters.htm#demons) [Accessed: 11 November 2014]

NetBible, Insanity [Online] Available from: <http://classic.net.bible.org/dictionary.php?word=Insanity> [Accessed: 17 May 2014]

NetBible, Madness [Online] Available from: <http://classic.net.bible.org/dictionary.php?word=Madness> [Accessed: 17 May 2014]

New Covenant. Helmet of Salvation [Online] Available from: [http://www.newcovenantgj.org/web\\_documents/the\\_helmet\\_of\\_salvation.pdf](http://www.newcovenantgj.org/web_documents/the_helmet_of_salvation.pdf) [Accessed: 29 October 2014]

Newport, M, What if there was a cure for Alzheimer's? [Online] Available from: <http://www.coconutketones.com/whatifcure.pdf> [Accessed: 29 August 2014]

NHS [Online] Available from: <http://www.nhs.uk> [Accessed: 7 April 2014]

NLM, Brief Reactive Psychosis disorder. [Online] Available from: <http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/ency/article/001529.htm> [Accessed: 4 July 2014]

NLM, Somatization disorder. [Online] Available from: <http://www.nlm.nih.gov/medlineplus/ency/article/000955.htm> [Accessed: 8 April 2014]

Norriss, H, How our mind sets can affect our mental health. [Online] Available from: <http://www.lawsociety.org.nz/lawtalk/lawtalk-archives/issue-818/how-our-mind-sets-can-affect-our-mental-health> [Accessed: 16 April 2014]

O'Brien [Online] Available from: <http://wilderdom.com/OEcources/Proflit/Class6Qualitative1.htm> [Accessed: 7 March 2014]

Office of Mental Health, Dealing with Cognitive Dysfunction Associated with psychiatric disabilities [Online] Available from: [https://www.omh.ny.gov/omhweb/cogdys\\_manual/CogDysHndbk.htm](https://www.omh.ny.gov/omhweb/cogdys_manual/CogDysHndbk.htm) [Accessed: 28 March 2014]

Olson, R, Mental Models [Online] Available from: <http://peakeffectiveness.com/Positive%20Psychology/Mental%20Models.pdf> [Accessed: 12 May 2014]

Outlaw, Mind Control [Online] Available from: <http://outlawjimmy.com/tag/mind-control/> [Accessed: 11 August 2014]

Pagan and Proud of IT, Norse Gods and Goddesses [Online] Available from: <http://paganandproudoft.com/norse.html> [Accessed: 14 August 2014]

Palmer, J, The Stone of Madness [Online] Available from: <http://scienceblogs.com/bioephemera/2008/08/25/the-stone-of-madness/> [Accessed: 14 August 2014]

Parada, C, Greek Mythology Madness [Online] Available from: <http://www.maicar.com/GML/Madness.html> [Accessed: 24 July 2014]

Paradox Parables, Overcoming the Deaf and Dumb Spirit [Online] Available from: <http://paradoxparables.justparadox.com/2010/04/23/overcoming-a-deaf-dumb-spirit-conquering-the-spirit-of-rejection/> [Accessed: 11 November 2014]

Parental Rights, The Vital Child-Parent Relationship [Online] Available from: <http://www.parentalrights.org/index.asp?SEC=%7B780255DE-D387-4493-BFDB-1C371844036A%7D> [Accessed: 11 November 2014]

Patient, Psychosis Diagnosis and Management. [Online] Available from: <http://www.patient.co.uk/doctor/psychosis-diagnosis-and-management> [Accessed: 7 March 2014]

Pimidi, Psychosis - Subtypes - Cycloid Psychosis [Online] Available from: [http://www.pimidi.com/psychosis/subtypes/cycloid\\_psychosis](http://www.pimidi.com/psychosis/subtypes/cycloid_psychosis) [Accessed: 14 July 2014]

PMC. Behavioral Addiction versus Substance Addiction [Online] Available from: <http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC3354400/> [Accessed: 12 May 2014]

PMC. Menstrual psychosis: a bipolar disorder with a link to the hypothalamus [Online] Available from: <http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21424263> [Accessed: 14 July 2014]

PMC. Menstrual psychosis: a bipolar disorder with a link to the hypothalamus [Online] Available from: <http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21424263> [Accessed: 14 July 2014]

PMC. Psychiatric Disorders and Traumatic Brain Injury [Online] Available from: <http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pmc/articles/PMC2536546/> [Accessed: 12 May 2014]

Princeton, General Paresis of the Insane [Online] Available from: [https://www.princeton.edu/~achaney/tmve/wiki100k/docs/General\\_paresis\\_of\\_the\\_insane.html](https://www.princeton.edu/~achaney/tmve/wiki100k/docs/General_paresis_of_the_insane.html) [Accessed: 27 June 2014]

Proclamation, Invitation, and Warning, Occult Terms [Online] Available from: <http://procinwarn.com/occult.htm> [Accessed: 12 May 2014]

Psychcentral, Brain Scans can display Mental Models of Other [Online] Available from: <http://psychcentral.com/news/2013/03/06/brain-scans-can-display-mental-models-of-others/52268.html> [Accessed: 12 May 2014]

Psychcentral, Conduct Disorder Symptoms. [Online] Available from: <http://psychcentral.com/disorders/conduct-disorder-symptoms/> [Accessed: 8 April 2014]

Psychcentral, Higher Death Rates for the Mentally Ill. [Online] Available from: <http://psychcentral.com/lib/higher-death-rates-for-the-mentally-ill/0008645> [Accessed: 10 April 2014]

Psychcentral, Types of Brain Imaging Techniques [Online] Available from: <http://psychcentral.com/lib/types-of-brain-imaging-techniques/0001057> [Accessed: 12 May 2014]

Psychedelic Information Theory, Shamanic Sorcery [Online] Available from: <http://psychedelic-information-theory.com/Shamanic-Sorcery> [Accessed: 12 May 2014]

Psychiatric Times, Infectious Agents in Schizophrenia and Bipolar Disorder [Online] Available from: <http://www.psychiatrictimes.com/articles/infectious-agents-schizophrenia-and-bipolar-disorder> [Accessed: 12 May 2014]

Psychiatric Times, Managing Psychosis in Patients With Alzheimer Disease [Online] Available from: <http://www.psychiatrictimes.com/geriatric-psychiatry/managing-psychosis-patients-alzheimer-disease/page/0/5> [Accessed: 11 April 2014]

Psychiatric Times, Psychosurgery—Old and New [Online] Available from: <http://www.psychiatrictimes.com/articles/psychosurgery%E2%80%94old-and-new> [Accessed: 11 April 2014]

Psychiatrist, Encyclopaedia of Philosophy [Online] Available from: <http://plato.stanford.edu> [Accessed: 10 July 2014] [Online] Available from: <http://www.psychiatrist.com/pcc/pccpdf/v05n06/v05n0603.pdf> [Accessed: 14 July 2014]

Psychology Today, Adjustment Disorder [Online] Available from: <http://www.psychologytoday.com/conditions/adjustment-disorder> [Accessed: 27 June 2014]

Psychology Today, Delusional-Disorder [Online] Available from: <http://www.psychologytoday.com/conditions/delusional-disorder> [Accessed: 4 July 2014]

Psychology Today, Gender Identity Disorder [Online] Available from: <http://www.psychologytoday.com/conditions/gender-identity-disorder> [Accessed: 27 June 2014]

Psychology, Sleep Disorders. [Online] Available from: [http://psychology.about.com/od/stateofconsciousness/p/sleep\\_disorders.htm](http://psychology.about.com/od/stateofconsciousness/p/sleep_disorders.htm) [Accessed: 8 April 2014]

Psychosis Sucks, What Causes Psychosis? [Online] Available from: <http://www.psychosissucks.ca/whatcausespsychosis.cfm> [Accessed: 7 April 2014]

PubMed Health, Drug Dependence, [Online] Available from:

<http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmedhealth/PMH0002490/> [Accessed: 27 June 2014]

PubMed, A multinational study of mental disorders, marriage, and divorce. [Online] Available from: <http://www.ncbi.nlm.nih.gov/pubmed/21534936> [Accessed: 8 April 2014]

Punto Neuro Psicomotricita, Humanistic Mindset [Online] Available from: <http://www.puntoneuropsicomotricita.com/humanistic-mindset-3> [Accessed: 5 May 2014]

Richard, M G, Fixed Mindset vs. Growth Mindset: Which One Are You? [Online] Available from: <http://michaelgr.com/2007/04/15/fixed-mindset-vs-growth-mindset-which-one-are-you/> [Accessed: 16 April 2014]

Roe, A, The Great god Pan [Online] Available from: <http://www.whitedragon.org.uk/articles/pan.htm> [Accessed: 7 August 2014]

Roe, J, How to have the Mind of Christ [Online] Available from: <http://www.charismamag.com/spirit/spiritual-growth/7041-living-the-truth-have-the-mind-of-christ> [Accessed: 28 March 2014]

Rogers, A, The Battle for Your Mind [Online] Available from: <http://www.lwf.org/site/News2?id=11295> [Accessed: 28 March 2014]

Rudd, S, The Interactive Bible [Online] Available from: <http://www.bible.ca> [Accessed: 12 May 2014]

Sayadi Al Nas, The Ministry of Angels [Online] Available from: [http://www.sayadi-al-nas.com/misc/ministry\\_angels.htm](http://www.sayadi-al-nas.com/misc/ministry_angels.htm) [Accessed: 1 November 2014]

Science Nordic, Head injury can cause mental illness [Online] Available from: <http://sciencenordic.com/head-injury-can-cause-mental-illness> [Accessed: 12 May 2014]

Shepherd, P (2009), Transforming the Mind [Online] Available from: <http://www.trans4mind.com/transformation> [Accessed: 17 May 2014]

Skandanava, Symbols [Online] Available from: <http://www.skandanava.org/symbols.html> [Accessed: 27 August 2014]

Skeptic's Dictionary, Cellular Memory [Online] Available from: <http://skepdic.com/cellular.html> [Accessed: 27 June 2014]

Smith, S, Body Memories [Online] Available from: [http://www.ipt-forensics.com/journal/volume5/j5\\_4\\_2.htm](http://www.ipt-forensics.com/journal/volume5/j5_4_2.htm) [Accessed: 27 June 2014]

Smith, T, What is the Soul and How Does God Heal Soul Sickness? [Online] Available from: <http://holdingtotruth.com/2013/12/08/whats-human-soul-bible-heal-soul-sickness/> [Accessed: 28 March 2014]

Smiths, I, Why do we have emotions? [Online] Available from: <http://www.psychologytoday.com/blog/the-literary-mind/200911/why-do-we-have-emotions> [Accessed: 16 April 2014]

Somatic Experiencing Trauma Institute, Distinguishing Between Trauma Activation and Healthy Discharge of Trauma [Online] Available from: <http://www.traumahealing.com/somatic-experiencing-trainings/trauma-awareness-for-massage-therapists.html> [Accessed: 13 June 2014]

Spectra Intelligence Solutions, Demon Possession Facts [Online] Available from: [http://spectralintelligencesolutions.com/demon\\_possession\\_facts.html](http://spectralintelligencesolutions.com/demon_possession_facts.html) [Accessed: 11 November 2014]

Springmeier F and Wheeler C, Deeper Insights into the Illuminati Formula [Online] Available from: <http://www.crowhealingnetwork.net/pdf/Deeper%20Insights%20into%20the%20Illuminati%20Formula.pdf> [Accessed: 28 July 2014]

Springmeier F and Wheeler C, The Illuminati Formula used to Create an Undetectable Mind Control Slave [Online] Available from: [http://www.whale.to/b/springmeier\\_formula.html](http://www.whale.to/b/springmeier_formula.html) [Accessed: 28 July 2014]

Springmeier F and Wheeler C, Using Spiritual Things to Control a Person [Online] Available from: <http://educate-yourself.org/mc/illumformula10Bchap.shtml> [Accessed: 7 July 2014]

Spurgeon C H, The Cause and Cure of a Wounded Spirit [Online] Available from: <http://www.biblebb.com/files/spurgeon/2494.htm> [Accessed: 30 October 2014]

Stanley, C, Escape the Guilt Trap [Online] Available from: [http://www.intouch.org/you/bible-studies/content/topic/escape\\_the\\_guilt\\_trap\\_study](http://www.intouch.org/you/bible-studies/content/topic/escape_the_guilt_trap_study) [Accessed: 17 May 2014]

Stokes, H B, Sex and Religion [Online] Available from: [http://hbrucestokes.com/images/Kesher\\_-\\_Sex\\_and\\_Religion.pdf](http://hbrucestokes.com/images/Kesher_-_Sex_and_Religion.pdf) [Accessed: 7 August 2014]

Stout, J H, Brain Lateralization [Online] Available from: <http://www.theorderoftime.com/politics/cemetery/stout/h/brain-la.htm> [Accessed: 2 June 2014]

Strause and Corbin, [Online] Available from: <http://wilderdom.com/OECourses/Profilit/Class6Qualitative1.htm>

Strict, F, The Role of Infections in Mental Illness [Online] Available from: <http://www.alternativementalhealth.com/articles/infections.htm> [Accessed: 12 May 2014]

Stuart, D J, Jesus is Savior [Online] Available from: <http://www.jesus-is-savior.com> [Accessed: 7 August 2014]

Subversive Elements, Psychotronic Weapons [Online] Available from: [http://www.bibliotecapleyades.net/ciencia/ciencia\\_psychotronicweapons10.htm](http://www.bibliotecapleyades.net/ciencia/ciencia_psychotronicweapons10.htm) [Accessed: 24 June 2014]

Sullivan, K, Ritual Abuse and Mind Control [Online] Available from: <http://www.whale.to/b/sullivan.html> [Accessed: 25 July 2014]



Symbol Dictionary [Online] Available from: <http://symboldictionary.net> [Accessed: 29 August 2014]

The Book of Enoch, Chapter 6 [Online] Available from: <http://www.bibliotecapleyades.net/enoch/1enoch01-60.htm> [Accessed: 1 November 2014]

The Cicle of Ancient Iranian Studies, Gods and Goddesses [Online] Available from: [http://www.cais-soas.com/CAIS/Mythology/gods\\_goddesses.htm](http://www.cais-soas.com/CAIS/Mythology/gods_goddesses.htm) [Accessed: 27 August 2014]

The Deliverance Place, Spirit Wife and Spirit Husband [Online] Available from: <http://www.deliveranceplace.com/stronghold.html> [Accessed: 29 August 2014]

The Good Fight, Robin Williams [Online] Available from: [http://www.goodfight.org/a\\_v\\_williams\\_robin.html#.U-qPm-kVBOc.facebook](http://www.goodfight.org/a_v_williams_robin.html#.U-qPm-kVBOc.facebook) [Accessed: 14 August 2014]

The Gospel Truth, A Seared Conscience [Online] Available from: [http://www.gospeltruth.net/1841OE/410428\\_seared\\_consci\\_pt1.htm](http://www.gospeltruth.net/1841OE/410428_seared_consci_pt1.htm) [Accessed: 17 May 2014]

The Myth Encyclopaedia [Online] Available from: <http://www.mythencyclopedia.com> [Accessed: 27 August 2014]

The Phoeron, Astral Projection and Body Theft [Online] Available from: <http://thephoeron.wordpress.com/2012/09/23/astral-projection-possession-and-body-theft/> [Accessed: 30 November 2014]

The Star, Mental illness: is 'chemical imbalance' theory a myth? [Online] Available from: [http://www.thestar.com/news/insight/2013/10/18/mental\\_illness\\_is\\_chemical\\_imbalance\\_theory\\_a\\_myth.html](http://www.thestar.com/news/insight/2013/10/18/mental_illness_is_chemical_imbalance_theory_a_myth.html) [Accessed: 17 May 2014]

The Vigilant Citizen, Origins and Techniques of Monarch Mind Control [Online] Available from: <http://vigilantcitizen.com/hidden-knowledge/origins-and-techniques-of-monarch-mind-control/> [Accessed: 24 July 2014]

Theoi Greek Mythology, Lyssa [Online] Available from: <http://www.theoi.com/Daimon/Lyssa.html> [Accessed: 24 July 2014]

Thesaurus.com [Online] Available from: <http://thesaurus.com> [Accessed: 11 August 2014]

Thinking Biblically Today, What is a Biblical Principal? [Online] Available from: <http://thinkingbiblicallytoday.com/?p=104> [Accessed: 30 October 2014]

Thomas, T L, The Mind has no Firewall [Online] Available from: <http://dprogram.net/2009/07/01/the-mind-has-no-firewall-army-article-on-psychotronic-weapons/> [Accessed: 24 June 2014]

Total Life Ministries, Deliverance [Online] Available from: <http://www.wordbasedcounseling.org/Articles/Deliverance.htm> [Accessed: 1 November 2014]

Traditional Witchcraft and Occultism, Television and the layering of Black Magic Spells to cause Confusion and Trauma [Online] Available from: <http://traditionalwitchcraftandoccultism.wordpress.com/2013/11/11/traditional-witchcraft-and-the-occult-television-and-the-layering-of-black-magic-spells-to-cause-confusion-and-trauma/> [Accessed: 14 August 2014]

Truth Magazine, The Worldly Mindset [Online] Available from: <http://www.truthmagazine.com/the-worldly-mindset> [Accessed: 17 May 2014]

Tufts University, Cognitive Disorder [Online] Available from: <http://ocw.tufts.edu/data/18/302956.pdf> [Accessed: 27 June 2014]

- UCDMC, Self-esteem [Online] Available from: [http://www.ucdmc.ucdavis.edu/hr/hrdepts/asap/Documents/Self\\_esteem.pdf](http://www.ucdmc.ucdavis.edu/hr/hrdepts/asap/Documents/Self_esteem.pdf) [Accessed: 5 May 2014]
- Unger, K, Can Christ Cure Psychosis?. [Online] Available from: <http://onlygodsfineest.com/ArticleDetails.aspx?aid=5> [Accessed: 7 March 2014]
- Van Hunks, Tokoloshe [Online] Available from: <http://www.vanhunks.com/tokoloshe1.html> [Accessed: 12 May 2014]
- Van Sutphin, P, Overcoming Deaf and Dumb Spirits [Online] Available from: <http://www.hiskindomprophecy.com/overcoming-deaf-dumb-spirits/> [Accessed: 30 September 2014]
- Vertical Thought, Pornography [Online] Available from: <http://www.ucg.org/christian-living/pornography-adult-entertainment-definitely-not-adults-or-youth/> [Accessed: 14 August 2014]
- Warnock, W E Hatred: A Spiritual Malignancy [Online] Available from: <http://www.truthmagazine.com/archives/volume37/GOT037009.html> [Accessed: 8 September 2014]
- Warrior Philosophers, Spartans [Online] Available from: <http://www.spartanwarriorphilosophers.com/warrior-philosophers> [Accessed: 5 May 2014]
- Watchman, Hypnosis [Online] Available from: <http://www.watchman.org/profiles/pdf/hypnosisprofile.pdf> [Accessed: 22 July 2014]
- WebMD [Online] Available from: <http://www.webmd.com> [Accessed: 8 April 2014]
- Welch, K, Reversed Speech [Online] Available from: <http://www.ken-welch.com/ReversedSpeech.html> [Accessed: 7 August 2014]
- White, E G Mind, Character, and Personality Volume 2 [Online] Available from: [http://www.gilead.net/egw/books/misc/Mind,\\_Character,\\_and\\_Personality\\_Volume\\_2/](http://www.gilead.net/egw/books/misc/Mind,_Character,_and_Personality_Volume_2/) [Accessed: 8 September 2014]
- Wilder, J, Trauma and Recovery [Online] Available from: <http://www.lifemodel.org/topic.php?rn=7> [Accessed: 29 August 2014]
- Wilson, L, Hatred [Online] Available from: <http://drlwilson.com/ARTICLES/HATRED.htm> [Accessed: 8 September 2014]
- Wizards Community, Role Playing Insanity [Online] Available from: <http://community.wizards.com/forum/whats-player-do/threads/1122846> [Accessed: 29 August 2014]
- Wize Geek, Where is the Brain's Pleasure Centre [Online] Available from: <http://www.wisegeek.org/where-is-the-brains-pleasure-center.htm> [Accessed: 1 November 2014]
- World Heritage Encyclopaedia [Online] Available from: <http://cdn.worldheritage.org> [Accessed: 14 July 2014]
- Wright, H, Be in Health [Online] Available from: <http://www.beinhealth.com> [Accessed: 30 September 2014]

## **ACADEMIC DISSERTATIONS**

Brand, A (2012) An Exegetical Interpretation of the Esoteric Powers Working Through Fantasy Role-playing Games as a Catechism of the Occult, Philosophiae Doctor, St Clements Private Swiss University.

Brand, C M J (2006) Exoteric and Esoteric Evidence Pertaining to the Structures and Strategies to destruct Christianity – involving the Theodicy of Darkness, Philosophiae Doctor, Calvary University.

Brown, L B (1991) He Who Controls the Mind Controls the Body: False Imprisonment, Religious Cults, and the Destruction of Volitional Capacity. Valparaiso University Law Review. Volume 25 Number 3

Fouché, A C M (2005) Exposing the Hidden Secrets of the Bloodlines, South Africa a Case Study. Master's degree. Common Wealth University

Fouché, A C M (2007) Eschatological Exposition of Sun Worship. Philosophiae Doctor. Calvary University.

Garcia, A D (2013) Voodoo, Witchcraft and Human Trafficking in Europe. Research Paper, Policy Development and Evaluation Service, United Nations High Commissioner for Refugees

Malan, C E M (2008) An Exposition of Fear from a Biblical Perspective and its Effect on Mankind, specifically the Christian. Master's degree. Calvary University.

Moses, R E (2012) Powerful Practices: Paul's Principalities and Powers. Doctor of Theology . Divinity School of Duke University

Stenseng, F., Rise J., & Kraft, P. (2010). Two dimensions of escapism: Self-suppression and self-expansion. Department of Psychology, Faculty of Social Sciences, University of Oslo.

Van der Walt M (2012) The Emergence of the Techno-Dimensional Era as Instrument in Human Enhancement as Part of a Secret Alien Agenda. Master's degree. Pretoria: Radah Ministries.

Van der Walt, M (2013) The Phenomenological Strategies of Supernaturalism pertaining to the Corruption and Destruction of the Human Mind through Powers and Mind Control. Philosophiae Doctor. Pretoria: Radah Ministries.

## **MAGAZINES**

Discover magazine, August 2007, 10 Unsolved Mysteries of the Brain.

Honig, A S, What Happens if you did not feel Loved as a Child?, American Psychological Association, March 7, 2012, Vol. 57, Release 10, Article 4

Kaiser, D, Against Biologic Psychiatry, Psychiatric Times, December, Dec. 1996, Vol. XIII, Issue 12

Nwongu, V (2008) Human trafficking from Nigeria and voodoo. *Any connections?*, La Strada International Newsletter issue 9, Amsterdam

## **SEMINAR AND CONFERENCES**

Burk, A, Deliverance on the Brain. 15 November 2014

Burk, A, Growing When You Are Stuck. 16 August 2014

Burk, A, Ministering to SRA/DID Clients. 13 August 2014

## **AUDIO**

Burk, A, PSTD, 9 CDs

Burk, A, Redemptional Gifts for the Individual, 9 CDs

Burk, A, Spiritual Warfare, 9 CDs

Burk, A, The Mercy Season, 10 CDs

Burk, A, Tools for Cleansing Time and Land, 2 CDs

Burk, A, Trauma Bonds to Time, 3 CDs

Burk, A, Unstoppable Joy: Leviathan, 10 CDs

Burk, A, Your Health and Redemptive Gifts , 4 CDs

Burk, A, Alien Human Spirit Part 1, 6 CDs

Burk, A, Alien Human Spirit Part 2, 8 CDs

## **ACADEMIC PUBLICATIONS**

Brown, L B (1991) He Who Controls the Mind Controls the Body: False Imprisonment, Religious Cults, and the Destruction of Volitional Capacity. Valparaiso University Law Review. Volume 25 Number 3

Stenseng, F., Rise J., & Kraft, P. (2010). Two dimensions of escapism: Self-suppression and self-expansion. Department of Psychology, Faculty of Social Sciences, University of Oslo.

## **VISUAL TECHNOLOGY**

Burk, A, Helping a Divided Person [Online] Available from: [http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=u-UrVVQMj\\_I](http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=u-UrVVQMj_I) [Accessed: 30 July 2014]

Burk, A, Three Levels of Repentance [Online] Available from: [http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=eP3KFRz\\_0K8](http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=eP3KFRz_0K8) [Accessed: 13 October 2014]

Joyner, R, Heaven [Online] Available from: <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=7yxtHh7UEL0> [Accessed: 13 October 2014]

King, P, The Gift of Discernment [Online] Available from: <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=GRXfUuO4VOA&list=PL43236F95E3BCE2E9> [Accessed: 13 October 2014]

Prince, D, Discerning of Spirits [Online] Available from: <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=PGMG2iiLYtw> [Accessed: 13 October 2014]

Prince, D, How to Recognize and Expel Demons <http://www.youtube.com/watch?v=waA6LEI5o0M> [Accessed: 13 October 2014]

## **INTERVIEWS**

Personal Interview with Professor Dr Connie Brand, 4 November 2014. Professor Dr Connie Brand is founder and president of RÂDÂH Academy, currently Professor of Christian Theology (Protestantism) at the University of St Clements Private Swiss University. She is a specialist Christian counsellor for the past 30 years, in the ministry of spiritual and demonic warfare with a heart for cleaning the bloodlines. She was awarded a Doctor of Letters in Creative Ministry Theology.

-----o0o-----



## *Terminology and Abbreviations*

### **TERMINOLOGY**

**Amnesia:** The inability to recall significant events or other important information which is too extreme to be explained by ordinary forgetfulness; the absence of memory.<sup>1386</sup>

**Autism:** A variable developmental disorder that appears by age three and is characterised by impairment of the ability to form normal social relationships, by impairment of the ability to communicate with others, and by stereotyped behaviour patterns.<sup>1387</sup>

**Believer:** see Christian

**Bloodline:** The direct line of descent or pedigree. A child will have the same bloodline as his father and mother through whom he was conceived. There are many who define the bloodlines by referring to the forefathers. Bloodlines are created through conception and do not refer to the physical blood that has been transferred from the parents to the child.

**Child of God:** see Christian

---

<sup>1386</sup> Buys, A, The ABC of DID. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished, p. 83

<sup>1387</sup> Merriam-Webster Dictionary, Autism [Online] Available from: <http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/autism> [Accessed: 28 March 2014]

**Christian:** A Christian is a re-born believer in the Trinity: the Father, the Son Jesus Christ, and the Holy Spirit. It is person who has a personal relationship with Jesus Christ and is filled with the Holy Spirit, to be a living sacrifice to Christ. This person lives according to the stipulations of the Bible.

**Core:** The identity which represents the original, whole person conceived in the womb; carries the strongest sense of 'self'; used synonymously with the preferred term 'Original Self' formerly called the 'Original Person'; sometimes used to refer to the identity who, among all those currently participating in life, is most directly related to the 'Original Self'.<sup>1388</sup>

**Daemon:** A demon is believed by the occult to be a neutral spirit intelligence or elemental which holds its own godlike association, not associated with any dogma such as good or evil.<sup>1389</sup>

**Deceive:** To ensnare; to catch by craft; to overreach; to mislead; to cause to believe what is false; to lead into error; to beguile.

**Delirium:** a mental state in which you are confused and not able to think or speak clearly, usually because of fever or some other illness.<sup>1390</sup>

**Dementia:** a usually progressive condition (as Alzheimer's disease) marked by deteriorated cognitive functioning, often with emotional apathy. Madness and insanity are fanaticisms bordering on *dementia*.<sup>1391</sup>

**Demon:** Lower level evil spiritual beings of uncertain origin frequently mentioned in Scripture tormenting people in various ways (Mark 5); may be equated with 'evil Spirits'.<sup>1392</sup>

---

<sup>1388</sup> Buys, A, The ABC of DID. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished, p. 84

<sup>1389</sup> Ford, M W (2003) The book of the witch moon, a Grimoire of Luciferian Witchcraft, Vampirism and Chaos Sorcery. Houston: Succubus Inner Publications, p. 5

<sup>1390</sup> Merriam-Webster Dictionary, Delirium [Online] Available from: <http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/delirium> [Accessed: 28 March 2014]

<sup>1391</sup> Merriam-Webster Dictionary, Dementia [Online] Available from: <http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/dementia> [Accessed: 28 March 2014]

<sup>1392</sup> Buys, A, The ABC of DID. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished, p. 84

**Demonisation:** The association of one or more specific demons with an individual (or part of a person-alter identity or Primary part) resulting in varying degrees of control or influence over the person.<sup>1393</sup>

**Devil:** see Satan

**Frotteuris:** The paraphilic practice of achieving sexual stimulation or orgasm by touching and rubbing (usually one's pelvis or erect penis) against a person without the person's consent and usually in a public place; called also *frottage*. A person who practices *frotteurism* is known as a *frotteur*.<sup>1394</sup>

**God:** (Capital G) The creator and ruler of the universe and source of all moral authority; the Supreme Being. The only one true living God who is perfect, almighty, omniscient, all-knowing, all-powerful and all-good; a Trinity God.

**god:** (Lowercase g) A superhuman being or spirit worshipped as having power over nature or human fortunes; a deity. Satan is worshipped as a god.

**Jesus:** Jesus Christ of Nazareth lived in Palestine from about 5/4 BC until AD 33 (or possibly AD 30). The name 'Jesus' corresponds with the Hebrew 'Joshua' and means 'Jehovah is salvation'. Jesus is the Messiah, or Christ, promised in the Old Testament of the Bible, and He died to save human beings from the penalty of sin. Jesus is the second Person of the Trinity; He was and is fully God and fully man; He was born of a virgin, died on the cross as a substitutionary atonement for our sins, and rose bodily from the dead overcoming Satan and death.

**Legal Right / Legal Ground:** An abstract idea of that which is due to a person by law or tradition or nature. A person can be endowed by a senior (parent or manager, for example) or created with certain unalienable rights. A right is something that nobody can take away but has to be 'overwritten' to be nullified. When man sins, Satan is given a legal right according to God's laws, to influence the person's life

---

<sup>1393</sup> Buys, A, The ABC of DID. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished, p. 84

<sup>1394</sup> Merriam-Webster Dictionary, Frotteurism [Online] Available from <http://www.merriam-webster.com/medical/frotteurism> [Accessed: 28 March 2014]



(causing calamity or death), also called legal ground. When the sin is confessed and renounced, this legal right is overwritten by the blood of Jesus and deliverance, healing and restoration can take place in the person's life.

**Lycanthropy:** a delusion that one has become a wolf; the assumption of the form and characteristics of a wolf held to be possible by witchcraft or magic.<sup>1395</sup>

**Man:** Man is a creation from God<sup>1396</sup>. Man consists of three parts<sup>1397</sup>:

*The body:* this is the entire physical structure of a person; everything that one can see with physical eyes when looking at a human being. The body is comprised of organs and cells which consist of protein carbohydrates and fats. Our body contains our nervous system with nerves and the brain. It's through our bodies that we connect to the physical world with our five senses.<sup>1398</sup>

*The soul:* this is defined as the conscious intellect, the will, and the emotions of the human being.

*The spirit:* this is defined in various ways by various belief systems. For the Christian it is the 'breath of God'.

**Manipulate:** To influence or control man candidly or deviously; to tamper with the intention of deceit.

**Megalomania.** A symptom of mental illness marked by delusions of greatness or wealth; an obsession with doing extravagant or grand things.<sup>1399</sup>

**Mental abnormality.** A congenital or acquired condition affecting the emotional or volitional capacity which predisposes the person to the commission of criminal sexual acts in a degree constituting such a person a menace to the health and safety of others.<sup>1400</sup>

---

<sup>1395</sup> Merriam-Webster Dictionary, Lycanthropy [Online] Available from: <http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/lycanthropy> [Accessed: 28 March 2014]

<sup>1396</sup> Genesis 2:7

<sup>1397</sup> 1 Thessalonians 5:23

<sup>1398</sup> Faith and Health Connection, Spirit Soul and Body [Online] Available from: [http://www.faithandhealthconnection.org/the\\_connection/spirit-soul-and-body/](http://www.faithandhealthconnection.org/the_connection/spirit-soul-and-body/) [Accessed: 28 March 2014]

<sup>1399</sup> Dictionary Reference, Megalomania [Online] Available from: <http://dictionary.reference.com/browse/megalomania> [Accessed: 17 May 2014]

<sup>1400</sup> Howitt, D (2006) Introduction to Forensic Criminal and Psychology. Essex: Pearson Education Limited, p. 156

**Mental Retardation:** Sub-average intellectual ability equivalent to or less than an IQ of 70 that is accompanied by significant deficits in abilities (as in communication or self-care) necessary for independent daily functioning, is present from birth or infancy, and is manifested especially by delayed or abnormal development, by learning difficulties, and by problems in social adjustment.<sup>1401</sup>

**Misogyny:** The hatred or dislike of women or girls. Misogyny can be manifested in numerous ways, including sexual discrimination, denigration of women, violence against women and sexual objectification of women. Misogyny has been characterised as a prominent feature of the mythologies of the ancient world as well as of various religions.<sup>1402</sup>

**Occult:** Hidden or secret; often involving evil, supernatural powers or a secret knowledge of them.<sup>1403</sup>

**Organic Brain Syndrome:** An acute or chronic mental dysfunction (as Alzheimer's disease) resulting chiefly from physical changes in brain structure and characterised especially by impaired cognition.<sup>1404</sup>

**Original Self:** see Core

**Re-born:** The entrance requirement for God's kingdom is a new birth. It's in the Bible, John 3:3-8, NKJV. "*Jesus answered and said to him, "Most assuredly, I say to you, unless one is born again, he cannot see the kingdom of God."* Eternal life begins at the moment of spiritual rebirth. When we receive Christ, we are reborn (John 1:12-13, NKJV). "*But as many as received Him, to them He gave the right to become children of God, to those who believe in His name: who were born, not of blood, nor of the will of the flesh, nor of the will of man, but of God."* Spiritual rebirth means dying to your old life (Romans 7:4). Spiritual rebirth brings changes in our lives and goals (1 John 3:9).<sup>1405</sup>

---

<sup>1401</sup> Merriam-Webster Dictionary, Mental Retardation [Online] Available from: <http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/mental%20retardation> [Accessed: 28 March 2014]

<sup>1402</sup> Code, L (2000) Encyclopedia of Feminist Theories. London: Routledge. p. 346

<sup>1403</sup> Buys, A, The ABC of DID. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished, p. 86

<sup>1404</sup> Merriam-Webster Dictionary, Organic Brain Syndrome [Online] Available from: <http://www.merriam-webster.com/dictionary/organic+brain+syndrome?show=0&t=1396706746> [Accessed: 28 March 2014]

<sup>1405</sup> Bible Info, Spiritual Rebirth[Online] Available from: <http://www.bibleinfo.com/en/topics/spiritual-rebirth> [Accessed: 5 May 2014]

**Satan:** This is the appropriate name of the supreme evil spirit, the Devil, opposing the living God Almighty. He was created by God and once served God. Also known as Lucifer. He is the highest ranking fallen angel who wanted to be exalted to the position of God. Through this sin he fell and now leads a large number of rebellious fallen angels, spirits and demons.

**Sigil:** The sigil involves an inverted pentagram within the centre.<sup>1406</sup>

**Sin:** Sin the collective word used to describe sin, transgressions and iniquity. Sin can be defined as missing the mark. Transgressions can be defined as overstepping the limits; therefore, to trespass. Iniquities are the unconfessed sin and transgressions from the forefathers.

**Spiritual Warfare:** The utilisation of spiritual principles which apply the authority of the name and the shed blood of the Lord Jesus Christ to counteract demonic activity.<sup>1407</sup>

**Substance Abuse:** Drug abuse, also called substance abuse or chemical abuse, is a disorder that is characterised by a destructive pattern of using a substance that leads to significant problems or distress. It affects more than 7% of people at some point in their lives. [Teens](#) are increasingly engaging in prescription drug abuse, particularly narcotics (which are prescribed to relieve severe pain), and stimulant medications.<sup>1408</sup>

**Survivor:** A person who has been severely abused; a preferred term to 'victim'.<sup>1409</sup>

**Synchronicity:** the arrangement or treatment of synchronous things or events in conjunction, as in a history.<sup>1410</sup>

---

<sup>1406</sup> Ford, M W (2003) *The book of the witch moon, a Grimoire of Luciferian Witchcraft, Vampirism and Chaos Sorcery*. Houston: Succubus Inner Publications, p. 19

<sup>1407</sup> Buys, A, *The ABC of DID*. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished, p. 87

<sup>1408</sup> MedicalMed, Substance Abuse. [Online] Available from: [http://www.medicinenet.com/drug\\_abuse/article.htm](http://www.medicinenet.com/drug_abuse/article.htm) [Accessed: 7 March 2014]

<sup>1409</sup> Buys, A, *The ABC of DID*. Kanaan Ministries. Unpublished, p. 87

<sup>1410</sup> Dictionary, Synchronicity, [Online] Available from: <http://dictionary.reference.com/browse/synchronicity> [Accessed: 12 May 2014]

**Tic:** A non-voluntary body movement or vocal sound that is made repeatedly, rapidly and suddenly. It has a stereotyped but non-rhythmic character. Tics are a type of dyskinesia, which is the general medical term given to impairments or distortions of voluntary movements. There are four tic disorders: (1) Transient tic disorder (also known as benign tic disorder of childhood); (2) Tourette's disorder (also known as Tourette syndrome, or TS); (3) Chronic motor or vocal tic disorder; and (4) Tic disorder not otherwise specified: this category includes all cases that do not meet the full criteria for any of the other tic disorders<sup>1411</sup>.

**Thought Disorder:** A disturbance in one's ability to generate a logical sequence of ideas, as indicated by disordered speech and/or writing. There are different types of thought disorder:

- A *flight of ideas* refers to language that may be difficult to understand when it switches quickly from one unrelated idea to other.
- *Circumstantiality* refers to language that may be difficult to understand when it is long-winded and convoluted in reaching its goal.
- *Word salad* refers to words that are inappropriately strung together resulting in gibberish.

A thought disorder may be a symptom of many different mental disorders, but is most commonly associated with schizophrenia or some related psychotic disorder.<sup>1412</sup>

**Totalitarian Control:** Of, relating to, being, or imposing a form of government in which the authority exercises absolute and centralised control over all aspects of life, the individual is subordinated to the authority, and opposing expression of any form is suppressed.<sup>1413</sup>

**Voyeurism.** A person who derives sexual gratification from observing the naked bodies or sexual acts of others, especially from a secret vantage point; an obsessive observer of sordid or sensational subjects; the actions of a Peeping Tom.<sup>1414</sup>

---

<sup>1411</sup> Encyclopedia of Children's Health, Tics [Online] Available from: <http://www.healthofchildren.com/T/Tics.html> [Accessed: 30 November 2014]

<sup>1412</sup> Psychcentral, Thought Disorder. [Online] Available from: <http://psychcentral.com/encyclopedia/2008/thought-disorder/> [Accessed: 8 April 2014]

<sup>1413</sup> Free Dictionary, Totalitarian [Online] Available from: <http://www.thefreedictionary.com/totalitarian> [Accessed: 12 May 2014]

<sup>1414</sup> Free Dictionary, Voyeurism [Online] Available from: <http://www.thefreedictionary.com/voyeurism> [Accessed: 12 May 2014]

## ABBREVIATIONS

ADHD	Attention Deficit Hyperactivity Disorder
AHS	Alien Human Spirit
AIDS	Acquired Immune Deficiency Syndrome
BCE	Before the common era
CE	Common era
DALYs	Disability Adjusted Life Years
DID	Dissociative Identity Disorder
DNA	Deoxyribonucleic Acid
GID	Gender Identity Disorder
HIV	Human Immune-deficiency Virus
KJ	King James Bible
KZN	Kwazulu Natal
MAO	Monoamine Oxidase Inhibitors
MAOI	Monoamine Oxidase Inhibitors
MPD	Multiple Personality Disorder
NASB	New American Standard Bible
NIV	New International Version of the Bible
NKJ	New King James Bible
NLT	New Living Translation Bible
NRS	New Revised Standard Version of the Bible
NT	New Testament
OCD	Obsessive-Compulsive Disorder
OMD	Organic Mental Disorder
OT	Old Testament
PTSD	Post-Traumatic Stress Disorder
SRA	Satanic Ritual Abuse
SSRI	Selective Serotonin Reuptake Inhibitors
TBI	Traumatic Brain Injury
Wey	WEYmouth New Testament
%	Percentage

-----o0o-----



**ChickPea Proofreading and Editing Services  
by Dr Laura Budler**

This is to certify that  
AN EXEGETICAL EXPOSITION ON SPIRITUAL AND DEMONIC WARFARE  
PERTAINING TO INSANITY AND PSYCHOSIS

by ALETTA C. M. FOUCHÉ

Submitted in accordance with the requirements for the degree of

PHILOSOPHIAE DOCTOR of THEOLOGY  
in  
CHRISTIAN COUNSELING

at ST. CLEMENTS PRIVATE SWISS UNIVERSITY

PROMOTOR: Prof Dr CONNIE MJ BRAND DLitt PhD MTh

was professionally proofread by Dr Laura Budler of ChickPea Proofreading and  
Editing for Students and Professionals, finalised 30 January 2015.

Date: 30/01/2015

Signature: Dr L Budler

Dr Laura Budler  
[www.chickpea.co.za](http://www.chickpea.co.za)  
084.618.2095